





Presented to  
The Library  
of the  
University of Toronto  
by  
Professor W.J. Alexander

NDBOUND  
AT THE



UNIVERSITY OF  
TORONTO PRESS





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation









8318 I

78.

A GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
LATIN LANGUAGE



~~Lat. Gr~~  
~~T. 6684~~

*U. 12. 12. 12.*

111

# A GRAMMAR

OF THE

## LATIN LANGUAGE

FROM PLAUTUS TO SUETONIUS

BY

HENRY JOHN ROBY,

M.A. late FELLOW OF ST JOHN'S COLL. CAMBRIDGE.

IN TWO PARTS

PART II. containing:—

BOOK IV. *SYNTAX*.

*Also PREPOSITIONS &c.*

SECOND EDITION

372177  
2. 11. 39

London:

MACMILLAN AND CO.

1875

[*All Rights reserved.*]

PA  
2079  
R63  
1876  
pt. 2

**Cambridge:**

PRINTED BY C. J. CLAY, M.A.  
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.



# Table of Contents.

## PREFACE.

### Observations on Book IV.

Remarks on method observed, p. xvii.

Of the analysis of the sentence, p. xxii.

Of the syntax of concord, p. xxiv.

Of the predicative dative, p. xxiv.

Alphabetical list of words so used, p. xxxvii.

Of the ablative, p. lvi.

Of the so-called genitive (locative) of value, p. lvii.

Of the gerund and gerundive, p. lxi.

i. Connexion of the various usages, p. lxiii.

A. Use of gerund as active and apparently as passive, p. lxiii.

B. Rise of (oblique) gerundive, p. lxvii.

C. Predicative use of nominative gerund, p. lxxi.

D. Use of gerundive with notion of 'obligation,' p. lxxiii.

E. Participial use of verbal stems in **-undo**, p. lxxviii.  
Criticism of other theories, p. lxxx.

ii. Origin of verbal stem in **-undo**, p. lxxxv.

iii. Analogies in other languages, especially English, p. lxxxvii.

History of English form in **-ing**, p. xciv.

Of the subjunctive mood generally, p. xcvi.

Especially in hypothetical and conditional sentences, p. xcix.

Of the expressions *dicat aliquis*, *dixerit aliquis*, p. ci.

Instances of *videro*, &c. p. cvi.

Advice to students of grammar, p. cvii.

Acknowledgment of obligations, p. cviii.

Miscellaneous remarks, p. cix.

*Addenda et Corrigenda*, p. cxi.

## BOOK IV. SYNTAX.

- Chap. I. Classification of words, p. 3.
- II. Parts of a simple sentence and use of Parts of speech,  
p. 5.  
i. Elements of a sentence, p. 5.  
ii. Of attributes, p. 7.  
iii. Of predicates, p. 8.  
iv. Of the use of oblique cases and adverbs, p. 9.  
v. Of coordination by conjunctions and otherwise,  
p. 11.  
vi. Of fragmentary or interjectional expressions, p. 11.
- III. Of the different kinds of sentences,  
Affirmative, negative, interrogative; simple, com-  
pound, p. 12.  
Coordinate sentences, p. 12.  
Subordinate sentences, p. 13.
- IV. Order of words and sentences.  
i. Order of words in a prose sentence, p. 16.  
ii. Position of subordinate sentences, p. 22.
- V. Use of NOUN INFLEXIONS, especially those of gender  
and number, p. 23.  
(A) General usage, p. 23.  
(B) Use of the Participles, p. 29.  
As predicate, p. 29; ordinary noun adject-  
tive, p. 30; noun substantive, p. 31.
- VI. Use of Cases, p. 32.
- VII. Use of Nominative Case, p. 33.  
(A) Person or thing spoken of.  
(B) Person (or thing) spoken to.

## VIII. Use of Accusative Case, p. 34.

## (A) Compass or measure, p. 34.

Of space, p. 34 ; of time, p. 36 ; extent of action, p. 36 ; cognate accusative, p. 40 ; part concerned, p. 40 ; description, p. 42 ; use with prepositions, p. 42.

## (B) Place towards which, p. 44.

An action as goal of motion (active supine), p. 46 ; Use with prepositions, p. 46.

## (C) Direct object, p. 48.

Double object, p. 50 ; object of passive verbs, p. 52 ; in exclamations, p. 52.

## IX. Use of Dative Case, p. 54.

## (A) Indirect object, p. 54.

Special usages, viz. ; of local relation, p. 58 ; agent, p. 60 ; person judging, p. 60 ; person interested (*dativus ethicus*), p. 62 ; person possessing, p. 62 ; in place of genitive, p. 62 ; work contemplated, p. 64.

## (B) Predicative, p. 64.

With *esse*, p. 65 ; with other verbs, p. 65.

## X. Use of Locative and Ablative Cases, p. 68.

## (A) Place where (Locative and Ablative), } p. 68.

## (B) Instrument (Ablative).

Place (Loc.), p. 68 ; (Abl.), p. 70 ;

Time (Loc.), p. 74 ; (Abl.), p. 76 ;

Amount (Loc.), p. 78.

Price, penalty (Abl.), p. 82.

Amount of difference, p. 84.

Part concerned, means, cause, p. 86.

Description, manner, circumstances, p. 96.

## (C) Place whence (Ablative), p. 108.

Of place, p. 108 ; of things, p. 110 ; origin, p. 110 ; standard of comparison, p. 112.

XI. Use of Genitive Case, p. 116.

(A) Dependent on nouns or as secondary predicate, p. 116.

Possessor, &c., p. 116; divided whole, p. 120; kind or contents, p. 124; description, p. 126; object, p. 128; thing in point of which, p. 130.

(B) Dependent on verbs (and some adjectives).

Of accusing, &c., p. 132; of pitying, &c., p. 134; of remembering, &c., p. 134; of filling or lacking, p. 136.

XII. Use of Infinitive, p. 138.

(A) Ordinary usages, p. 139.

As object, p. 139; oblique predicate, p. 142; secondary predicate, p. 143; subject, p. 144; in exclamations, p. 145.

(B) As primary predicate to a subject in nominative case, p. 146.

(C) As genitive, ablative, or adverbial accusative, p. 147.

XIII. Tenses of Infinitive, when used,

(A) as object, &c., p. 148.

(B) as oblique predicate, p. 148.

(C) in special usages, p. 150.

XIV. Use of Verbal Nouns, especially the Gerund and Gerundive. General account, p. 152.

(A) Verbal nouns in oblique cases; viz.

Accusative, p. 154; Dative, p. 156;

Ablative, i. Locative and Instrumental, p. 158;

ii. expressing place whence, p. 161; Genitive, p. 163.



(B) Verbal nouns in nominative and (in oblique language) the accusative, p. 164.

(C) Further uses of gerundive and passive participle, p. 166.

XV. Use of VERB INFLEXIONS.

Inflections of voice, p. 171.

Construction of passive verbs, p. 174.

XVI. Use of Verbal Inflections of Person and Number.

i. Subject and predicate contained in verb, p. 177.

ii. Subject expressed by a separate word, p. 180.

iii. Omission of verbal predicate, p. 182.

XVII. Of Indicative and Imperative moods and their tenses.

(A) Tenses of Indicative, p. 185.

i. Time to which the tenses relate, p. 186.

ii. Completeness or incompleteness of the action, p. 187.

Principal usages of

Present tense p. 189; Future, p. 191; Imperfect, p. 192; Perfect, p. 194; Completed future, p. 196; Future in *-so*, p. 197; Pluperfect, p. 198.

Future participle active with verb *sum*, p. 200.

(B) Tenses of Imperative, p. 201.

XVIII. Of the Subjunctive mood and its tenses.

i. Of the mood, p. 202.

ii. Of the tenses, p. 205.

XIX. Typical examples of Subjunctive mood and its tenses.

(A) Hypothetical, p. 208; (B) Conditional, p. 209;

(C) Optative, Jussive, Concessive, p. 212;

- (D) Final, p. 213; (E) Consecutive, p. 214;
- (F) Expressing attendant circumstances, p. 215;
- (G) Expressing reported definitions, reasons, conditions, questions, p. 216;
- (H) Because dependent on subjunctive or infinitive, p. 217.

XX. Use of Moods in Hypothetical and Conditional clauses.

(A) Hypothetical subjunctive, p. 218.

- i. With condition expressed in separate clause, p. 220.
- ii. With condition not formally expressed, p. 224.

*Contrasted Indicative*, p. 219.

- 1. *With conditions expressed in separate sentences*, p. 221.
- 2. *Unconditional statement of power, duty, &c.*, p. 225.
- 3. *Various uses of indicative*, p. 227.

(B) Conditional subjunctive, p. 234.

- 1. With apodosis in subjunctive, p. 236.
- 2. With apodosis in infinitive, future, participle or gerund, p. 240.
- 3. With suppression or contraction of the proper hypothetical apodosis, p. 244.

*Contrasted Indicative (and Imperative, § 537)*, p. 235.

- In conditional clause*, 1. *with apodosis in indicative*, p. 237.
- 2. *With apodosis in imperative*, p. 243.
- 3. *With apparent apodosis in subjunctive*, p. 245.

*Indicative in sentences of comparison*, p. 249.

## XXI. Use of Subjunctive mood to express desire.

## (C) Optative and jussive subjunctive.

1. Expressing wish, p. 254.
2. Expressing simple command, p. 256.
3. In quasi-dependence on another verb, p. 260.
4. In interrogative sentences, p. 262.
5. In concessions, p. 266.

*Contrasted Indicative and Imperative*, p. 253.

1. *Various uses of Indic.*, e.g. *videro*, p. 255.
2. *Use of Imperative mood*, p. 257.
3. *Indicative in quasi-dependence*, *faxo scies*, &c., p. 261.
4. *Indicative in noticeable questions*, p. 263.
5. *Indicative and Imperative in concessions*, p. 267.

## (D) Final Subjunctive, p. 270.

1. With *qui* (adj.), p. 272.
2. With *ut*, *quo*; *ut ne*, *ne*; *quominus*, *quin*, p. 274.
3. With *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, p. 284;  
*prius* (ante) *quam*, *potiusquam*, p. 288.

*Contrasted Indicative*, p. 271.*With qui* in simple statements, p. 273.*Comparative sentences*, viz. *tantus...quantus*,  
*tam...quam*, *sic...ut*, p. 275.*With eo...quod*, *eo...quo*, p. 277; *mirum*  
*quantum*, *nimis quam*, &c., p. 279.*With sat in' ut*, *vide ut*, p. 281.*With ne...quidem*, *non modo...sed etiam*,  
p. 283.*With dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, *quamdiu*, p. 285.*With quam after prius*, *ante*, *citius*, &c.,  
p. 289.

## XXII. Use of Subjunctive mood to express causation.

## (E) Consecutive Subjunctive, p. 292.

1. With *qui* (adj.), *quin* (= *qui non*), *cum*,  
p. 294.

2. With *ut, ut qui* (adv.), *ut non, quin*, p. 300.

*Contrasted Indicative*, p. 293.

*With qui* (adj.) *in simple definitions*, p. 295.

*With qui quidem, qui modo*, p. 299; *quis-quis, quamquam, &c.* p. 301.

*With quod, 'that,'* p. 303; *tantum quod*,  
p. 303.

*With ut, 'as,'* p. 305.

## (F) Subjunctive of attendant circumstances, p. 308.

1. With adjectives *qui, ut qui, utpote qui, quippe qui*; also *ut ubi*, p. 310.

2. Of cases frequently occurring; with *quicumque, cum, 'whenever,' ubi, &c.*,  
p. 312.

3. With *cum* (a) 'when,' p. 314; (b) 'whereas,' p. 316; (c), (d) 'although,'  
p. 316.

*Contrasted Indicative, especially with temporal conjunctions*, p. 309.

1. *With adjectives qui, quippe qui*, p. 311;  
*qui, 'such,'* p. 311.

2. *Of cases frequently occurring; with quicumque, cum, 'whenever,' &c.*, p. 313.

3. *With other conjunctions of time, e.g. ut, ubi, posteaquam, &c.*, p. 315.

4. *With cum* (a) 'when,' p. 315; (b) 'to the time that,' p. 317; (c) 'because,' p. 319; (d) 'in that,' p. 319; 'although,' p. 321; (e) 'and then,' p. 321; (f) 'whilst,' 'both,' p. 321.



## XXIII. Use of Subjunctive to express alien or contingent assertions.

## (G) Subjunctive of reported statements, p. 322.

1. Reported definition with *qui* (adj.), p. 324.
2. Reported or assumed reason with *quod*, *quia*, &c., p. 324.
3. Reported condition with *si*, *ni*, p. 328.
4. Other reported clauses, e.g. of time, p. 332.
5. Reported question, p. 332; *forsitan*, *quia*, p. 334.

*Contrasted Indicative*, p. 323.

1. *With qui* (adj.) *of facts*, p. 325.
2. *With causal conjunctions quod, quia, &c.*, p. 325.
3. *Vide si, &c., mirum ni, nimirum*, p. 331.
4. *In direct questions, especially in connexion with expletives, as dic mihi, scio, viden', &c.*, p. 333.
5. *Scio quod quæris; forsitan*, p. 335; *nescio quis, &c.*, p. 337.

## (H) Subjunctive because dependent

1. on infinitive, p. 338.
2. on subjunctive, p. 340.

*Contrasted Indicative.**Indicative, although dependent*

1. on infinitive, p. 339.
2. on subjunctive, p. 341.

## XXIV. Of Reported Speech.

Use of moods, tenses, persons, p. 342.

Tabular statement of same, p. 344.

Examples, p. 345.

## SUPPLEMENT TO SYNTAX.

## I. Prepositions and quasi-prepositional adverbs.

Summary, p. 351.

Abs, ab, a, af, p. 353.	Palam, p. 415.
Absque, p. 357.	Penes, p. 416.
Ad, p. 357.	Per, p. 416.
Adversum, Adversus; exadver- sum, exadversus, p. 363.	Pone, p. 420.
Amb-, am-, an-, p. 364.	Por-, p. 420.
An- ( <i>ἀνὰ</i> ), p. 365.	Post, pos, postid, poste, p. 420.
Ante ( <i>ἀντί</i> ), p. 365.	Præ, p. 422.
Apud, p. 367.	Præter, p. 425.
Circum, circa, circiter, p. 368.	Pro, p. 427.
Cis, citra, citro, p. 371.	Procul, p. 430.
Clam, clanculum, p. 373.	Prope, p. 432.
Com, cum, p. 373.	Propter, p. 433.
Contra, p. 377.	Red-, re, p. 434.
Coram, p. 380.	Retro, p. 437.
De, p. 380.	Sed, se, p. 437.
Dis-, di-, p. 386.	Secundum, p. 439.
Erga, p. 387.	-Secus, p. 439.
Ergo, p. 388.	Simul, similitu, p. 439.
Ex, e, p. 389.	Sub, subter, p. 440.
Extra, extrad, p. 395.	Super, insuper, desuper, p. 445.
In, endo, indu, p. 397.	Supra, supera, p. 447.
Infra, p. 405.	Tenus, p. 449, protenus, protinam, p. 450.
Inter, p. 406.	Trans, p. 450.
Intra, intro, p. 409.	Vorsus, vorsum ( <i>versus, ver-</i> <i>sum</i> ), p. 451.
Intus, p. 410.	Uls, ultra, ultro, p. 453.
Juxta, p. 411.	Usque, p. 455.
Ob, obs, p. 412.	

## II. Conjunctions.

- i. Copulative, p. 457.
- ii. Adversative, p. 461.
- iii. Disjunctive, p. 464.

III. Negative Particles, p. 466.

IV. Interrogative Particles, p. 473.

i. In simple questions, p. 474.

ii. In alternative questions, p. 475.

V. Pronouns.

**Hic, iste, ille, is,** p. 476.

**Se, suus, ipse,** p. 478.

**Quis, quispiam, aliquis, quidam, alteruter, nonnemo, &c.,** p. 482.

**Quisquam, ullus, uter, quivis, quilibet, utervis,** p. 483.

**Quisque, uterque, omnes, ambo, singuli, alterni,** p. 485.

**Quisquis, quicunque, utercunque, &c.,** p. 487.

**Idem, alius, alter, ceteri,** p. 489.

**Quis ? quisnam ? ecquis ?** p. 491.

Miscellaneous Remarks on pronouns, p. 491.

INDEX, p. 495.



## Preface to Book IV.

### General Remarks on Method Observed.

IN writing this Book I have had three aims specially in view, which taken together have led to my treating the matter somewhat differently from most other recent writers on the subject.

1. I have endeavoured to set forth the usages both of the Latin of Plautus and of the post-Augustan writers, as well as the usage of Cicero and of the Augustan age. Few things can be more important in the treatment of language than an historical method: what appears hopelessly intricate and irrational, when judged from a scientific point of view which is not that of the historical development, becomes intelligible and almost simple, when we look along the line of growth. No doubt there is much about Latin constructions, as well as about Latin forms, which will always be dark, because we come upon the language not in its youth, but in its maturity, when it was no longer a mere rustic dialect, but a literary language; and, even so, we have at first but the plays of Plautus, a few fragments of other writers, and a few brief inscriptions. Nor have the materials, which exist, been as yet sufficiently studied from this point of view. There is no book on syntax which can bear comparison with Neue's work on inflexions. Yet something of the kind is necessary before a shorter treatise, such as I have attempted, can speak with real precision. Every year however increases the number of contributions to the work. All that I have thought to be within my limits of space and leisure is, starting from Cicero, Cæsar and Livy as a standard, to introduce earlier and later usages, when they are different, and to vary the sources of my examples where possible, so as to remind the reader that the question concerns the language, not of one writer or

period only, but of the Roman people. Especially I have aimed at doing this, when the nature of the usage in question was such as to suggest a doubt, whether it belonged to the early language. But other considerations rendered it difficult to carry the plan out systematically. For the collection of examples under any one head has a double purpose: it has to illustrate what I may call the internal extension of the principle in various grammatical connexions, as well as the external extension of the principle in the historical series of authors. The number of such combinations would soon become unmanageable, and a limit must be put. I fear none but an arbitrary limit is possible for a book like this.

2. Secondly, I have desired to set example above precept, and to appeal to the intuition of my readers rather than to their power of abstract grammatical conception. A writer on (written) language has herein a great advantage over expositors of many other branches of science, that he can incorporate in his work specimens of the natural objects. I have made full use of this advantage, and aimed at giving my book the form, not so much of a treatise, as of a scientific arrangement of specimens interwoven with a *catalogue raisonné*. For this puts grammar in the proper light, as an account of what men do say, not a theory of what they should say. Moreover few, except practised grammarians, can get a clear conception from grammatical exposition, except as a commentary on examples and as a clue and justification for the arrangement of them. On the selection of the examples I have naturally bestowed considerable pains. It is important that they should be various, exhibiting not only (as I have said above,) authors of more ages and styles than one, but also various types of circumstances in which the special case or mood in question occurs. A difference of tense often, and a difference of person sometimes, has influence over the mood; the presence or absence of an epithet, the meaning of the word itself, the character of the governing word, the position in the sentence, all have or may have a bearing on the particular case or construction. I have thought it well to give the examples with tolerable fulness, because we are hardly able to appreciate accurately the aspect of a particular expression, unless we see the whole of its surroundings. Further it is important that the exam-

ples should be typical. We have to note the deliberate speech, we have also to note the natural, ordinary, habitual speech. But the accidental clumsiness or eccentricity of an individual on this or that particular occasion is no subject of interest or instruction, unless it happen to illustrate general laws. In that case it may be a suitable text for a commentator; it will rarely be a fit specimen for the ordinary grammarian's museum. But many eccentric instances owe their peculiarities to the copyist; and I have therefore used none but the best critical texts so far as I knew them, and endeavoured to avoid examples which were not free from critical uncertainty, at least in the vital parts. It would be more easy to insure this, if convenient texts existed, containing at the foot of the page the most important of the deviations from the best MSS. Baiter and Kayser's Cicero and Madvig's Livy are sadly deficient in this respect. It is still more to be regretted that there is not even one convenient critical edition of Livy, of the oratorical books of Cicero, of half Plautus, of Ovid, of Suetonius, and of others. Cato, Varro and Columella *de re rustica* remain as they were edited eighty years ago. An Englishman has however little right to complain, for he can hardly hope for the defect to be supplied except by German scholars.

3. Thirdly, I have regarded syntax not as being a synthesis of rules for the formation of sentences, but as an analytical statement of the meaning and use of the inflexions and of the parts of speech. This is a province capable of definition, and large enough to justify separate treatment without the intrusion of foreign matter. Accordingly I have followed the inflexions as my guide. Uninflected words require simply to have their general functions described; the rest of their use depends on their individual meaning, and is matter for a dictionary. Inflected words require to be treated according to the general character of their inflexions. Pronouns for instance are either substantives or adjectives, and their inflexions are referable to the ordinary classes of gender, number and case. Their distinctions from one another, e.g. the distinction of *quisquam* from *aliquis*, is no part of syntax, but of lexicography. Adjectives require only the general significance of their inflexions to be set forth (§ 1060), and they then (in Latin) fall under the general laws which regulate the use of cases. Incidentally indeed many matters of phraseology in



which our own idiom differs from that of Rome, but which do not strictly belong to syntax, find place as illustrative of the use of the cases or moods, or as more or less directly affecting them. Thus *ut*, *cum*, *dum*, *si*, &c., receive tolerably full discussion, so far as they bear on tense or mood; the degrees of adjectives come into prominence in treating of the ablative and genitive cases; the pronouns in various parts; the prepositions as enforcing the meaning of the cases, and limiting, while supplementing, the independent use of the cases. Indeed the use of prepositions is so full of interest and grammatical bearing, that besides this incidental though frequent reference to them, I have treated them at some length in connexion with each other, in a supplement to the Syntax. Coordinating conjunctions, negative and interrogative particles and the distinctive use of various pronouns I have noticed briefly.

It will be seen that the Syntax here falls into three main divisions: the first of which is a general introduction describing the names and functions of the several parts of speech, the classification of sentences, the order of the words in a sentence (chapp. I—IV); the second contains the use of noun inflexions (chapp. V—XIV); the third contains the use of verb inflexions (chapp. XV—XXIV). The infinitive and its complement, the gerund and gerundive, are verbal nouns, and, as such, come naturally at the end of the noun inflexions. Participles are verbal adjectives, and the only notice which collectively they appear to require is part of the general doctrine of attribute and predicate. Their use in the ablative absolute cannot be separated from the treatment of the ablative. Some other uses give and receive most illustration in connexion with the gerundive (§§ 1402, 1406).

In the analysis both of cases and moods (and of prepositions) I have tried to avoid minute subdivisions, and to form the various applications of the cases, &c., at any rate primarily, into broad groups. If the ordinary English translation were chosen as the clue, the subdivision would frequently become so extreme as to bewilder a student. English and Latin, or indeed any two languages that may be taken, shew different modes of conceiving the relation of actions and circumstances, and a different development of the same conception, according as this or that, among many possible analo-



gies, has ruled the imagination. It thus becomes necessary to be constantly on one's guard against divorcing two usages of a case, because English does not use the same preposition, and against uniting two usages, because English does use the same. Much depends on the precise conception which belongs to the word itself, apart from consideration of its case or its tense or mood. This fact has led many grammarians to carry more of lexicography into grammar than it seems to me desirable to do. For such additions tend to obscure the main lines of the analysis, and lead to an insufficient and confused apprehension of the force of the case-suffix. The use of particular cases or particular prepositional constructions with particular verbs is a consequence of the notion, or circle of notions, which the Romans understood under that verb or adjective, and this notion or circle of notions it is for a dictionary to give. Whether such cases or expressions are usual or not with particular verbs or with particular classes of verbs, is the natural result of a harmony or want of harmony between the force of the case-suffix, and the sphere of the verb's meaning. The grammarian has done his part, when he has so explained the meaning of the case, as to render such a harmony or the want of it natural and intelligible. These case-suffixes are, as it were, the moulds into which the verbs or adjectives governing them must fit, and, as the case-suffixes are few, it is better to fix the attention on them, rather than distract it by enumerating the scores of different materials which can take the impress of the moulds. Hence, for instance, in my treatment of the dative, the enumeration of verbs and adjectives, whose meaning makes them associate with the dative, is omitted. For a grammar of the size of this cannot possibly give them fully; and to give them without properly distinguishing between ages, authors, styles and circumstances, is as likely to mislead as to instruct. A student had much better go to a dictionary at once for this information, as well as for much else. I have however endeavoured, by making a very full index, to obviate any difficulties, which may naturally be experienced by those accustomed to a different conception of the subject and a different arrangement of the materials.

## Of the Analysis of the Simple Sentence.

The analysis of the simple sentence, although in some features the same as that put forth in my Elementary Grammar some years ago, has been further developed and corrected. I have thought it indefensible not to state at once that a predication may be made without a verb, when one has only to take up Livy and find the past participle used over and over again, without any form of the verb *sum* or of any other verb. Nor is it tolerable to see the finite verb spoken of primarily as predicate, or predicate and copula only, when every one knows, and is ready to whisper in a note, that it has subject and predicate combined in itself. Krüger, I find, in this as in many other matters, has clearly seen and stated the true view. It is probably the different formation of modern languages, which has prevented more general recognition of the fact. Again if in *fusi hostes*, *fusi* is a predicate, it seems to me merely the expression of an obvious truth, to give the same name of predicate to *fusi*, *fusos*, *fusis* in *fusi sunt hostes*, *fusi redeunt hostes*, *fusos vidi hostes*, *fusis hostibus redeunt*. It is most important to trace and mark an identity of relation under various forms and with words of various significance; and, if a familiar term is adequate to express it, so much the better. The same applies to the infinitive. *Cupio mortem* and *cupio mori* shew substantives in the same relation—that of an object, to the verb. In *dicar victor* and *dicar vincere*, these substantives are secondary predicates. But if we say *dicar esse* (or *mori*) *victor*, *cupio esse*, or *mori*, *victor*, *victor* is still (as well as *esse* and *mori*) a predicate—secondary, as I call it, tertiary as perhaps some may think it should strictly be called. The fact of the word *victor* being connected in sense with *esse* or *mori*, though these infinitives stand in different relations to *cupio* from what they do to *dicar*, makes no difference in the grammatical relation of *victor* to the subject of *dicar* or *cupio*. It is very remarkable how persistently a nominal predicate takes the case of its subject in spite of apparent impediments. In *cupio esse victor*, the *esse*, though the channel through which *victor* is brought into relation with the subject, would, if it had case inflexions, be put in the accusative. The absence of case inflexions in *esse* makes the use of the nominative *victor* to us less striking. But the Romans did not even require

this absence of inflexions to reconcile them to the maintenance of their rule, that a direct predicate should here, as elsewhere, be in the nominative. Look at the three last sentences in § 1069 and the passages from Liv. 41. 10 and 4. 44 in § 1073. The word *solus* in *gerendo solus censuram* is as closely connected with *gerendo* as is possible, but this neither hinders the predicate (*solus*) from being put in the nominative, nor the means (*gerendo*) from being put in the ablative. The same of *ipse*, *quisque*, and *adveniens*, in the other sentences. (See Madvig, *Em. Liv.* p. 311.) The Greeks have the same use; e.g. ὁπόθεν ποτέ ταύτην τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἔλαβες τὸ μανικὸς καλεῖσθαι, οὐκ οἶδα ἔγωγε (Plat. *Symp.* 175 D); γίνεται Θεμιστοκλῆς παρὰ τῷ βασιλεῖ μέγας ἀπὸ τοῦ πείραν διδοῦς ξυνετὸς φαίνεσθαι (Thuc. 1. 138). They have even gone further; for *dixit non se sed eum imperatorem esse* is οὐκ ἔφη αὐτὸς, ἀλλ' ἐκείνον στρατηγεῖν.

The only deviation from this rule, that I have noticed, is that mentioned in § 1347 e.g. *descensuros pollicebantur*. I agree with Madvig (*Lat. Gr.* § 401), in regarding this use, though not rare, as an irregularity. It has arisen from the want of a proper future infinitive, which was therefore supplied by the use of the future participle in the case of the object, until this accusative case at length seemed part of this new infinitive, and not changeable with a change of position in the sentence. But the fuller and regular expression *descensuros se pollicebantur* is also the more common.

In the sentence so often quoted *civī Romano licet esse Gaditanum*, and the few others<sup>1</sup> like it (p. 145 note), *Gaditanum* is a predicate, not of *civī*, but of the unexpressed subject which lies in the abstract use of the infinitive: 'The being a Gaditan is a thing permitted to a Roman citizen.' But this again is not the way in which the Romans usually spoke: and the fact that *esse* is subject to *licet* did not prevent them from saying *Gaditano*, as they also in perfect consistency usually said *Nomen est mihi Marco*, although they could legitimately say, and often did say *nomen est mihi Marcus* (cf. §§ 1058, 1059). Similarly *tibi templum Statori Jovi voveo*, i.e. 'by the name of Jove the Stayer,' (infr. § 1751).

<sup>1</sup> I see Draeger (*Hist. Synt.* i. 400) quotes from Val. M. 6. 9. 14, *cui...consulem creari contigit*, but the best MS. has only the abbreviation *cons.* On some other passages, sometimes quoted, see Madvig *Opusc.* ii. 29.

## Of the Syntax of concord.

The three concords are in this book not honoured with the pre-eminence, which has long been assigned to them. In truth the first two are generally stated in a way, which disguises their true nature, and the third is apt to confuse a learner. In the grammatical construction of the relative adjective *qui*, &c., there is nothing to distinguish it from *is* or from any other demonstrative pronoun, or indeed really from any other adjective. The gender and number will be regulated by the meaning, the case will be regulated by the function the word performs in the sentence. The ordinary rule leads to awkward explanations, when the 'antecedent' is expressed in the same sentence as the relative, and when the 'antecedent' is really wanting; e.g. *solī sapientes, quod est proprium divitiarum, contenti sunt rebus suis* (C. Par. 6, § 52). The real fault of treatment here, as in the other concords, is in not putting prominently forward the significance of the inflexions. Grammarians too often start with an erroneous conception of the finite verb, as if it were not complete in itself, but required the separate expression of a subject, and again with an erroneous conception of the adjective as if it required the expression of a substantive. It is well indeed, if grammar be not distorted to please logic, and *videt* be resolved into *est videns*. But *rosa floret* is not first, and *floret* second with the ellipse of *rosa*, or *ea*, or something, to be accounted for, any more than *Jupiter pluit* is to be regarded as properly prior to *pluit*. Nor is *boni homines* first, and *boni* second, with an ellipse of *homines* to be accounted for. Just the contrary: *floret*, *pluit*, *boni* are not degenerate offspring of the fuller originals, but these fuller forms are simply explanations and specifications of the shorter and vaguer originals. The *i* in *boni* is even more indicative of males, than the *i* of *viri* is. For there are feminine substantives with an *i* in the nom. plural, e.g. *alni*, *ulmi*, &c., and there are no feminine adjectives with *i*; just as there are a few masculine substantives with *ae* in the nom. plural, but no adjectives. It will be seen that systematic regard to the significance of the inflexions leads to some novelties in the statement of the matter of Chapp. v. and xvi.; and, I think, simplifies the treatment



of some usages; e.g. *capita conjurationis caesi sunt* requires no special rule or justification. 'The heads of the conspiracy were slain males,' is the literal translation, and the discrepancy of genders is of no more importance than in *capita conjurationis viri sunt*. Such expressions as *triste lupus stabulis* are not deviations from a normal *tristis lupus stabulis* (as I fear some students are led to think), but have a different meaning and therefore a different form. There is no more necessity to account elaborately for *triste* than there would have been to account for *exitium*, if *exitium* had been used instead. *Tristis* is 'a grievous he or she,' *triste* is 'a grief.' And the rules of concord, were it not for old habits requiring a more distinct treatment of these usages, might almost be reduced to the simple statement, that if a writer wishes to say one thing, he must not select forms that convey another. There is no sin against grammar in a man's saying '*sum timida*' any more than in his saying '*sum timidus*,' but the propriety of his using the feminine depends on his wishing to charge himself with being a very woman for fear, and not merely to declare himself a fearful man. If he means this last, then his error is in forgetting the meaning of the inflexion, not in the disregard of a rule of positive obligation. The more a student accustoms himself to regard the use of a wrong inflexion, as saying what he does not mean, as putting, for instance, *man* for *woman*, a *thing* for a *person*, the clearer will be his insight into what may otherwise appear a tangle of obscure threads.

### Of the Predicative dative.

The second class of datives, commonly called datives 'of the purpose', deserve more special attention than grammarians have generally given to it. The class has well marked characteristics, although, as in other parts of grammatical classification, some ambiguous specimens will be found. Certain usages, not uncommonly referred to the same head, as what I have called predicative datives, appear to me to be of a different kind, and are therefore placed in §§ 1156 and 1163. I propose here to discuss more fully, than I could in the body of the work, the characteristics and connexions of this class of datives, and to subjoin a complete list of all

the instances that I have been able to collect. Some abridgment of this list might no doubt have been made without much probable loss, but on the whole the list tells its own tale better, if given in full. That it is some distance from being complete, I do not doubt; for, though I have hunted pretty vigorously, I have not *read* through the Latin authors for the purpose<sup>1</sup>. But the additions that I have been able to make lately, are so few and slight, as to suggest that the matter, though not exhausted, is unlikely to yield any instances of such a character, or so numerous, as seriously to affect the account I shall give of the usage. If a similar list were prepared of other usages, our grammars would gain greatly in precision, and possibly some considerable aid might be obtained for the criticism of the text of the authors.

The characteristics of the class, broadly stated, are these. This dative is (1) a semi-abstract substantive, (2) in the singular number, (3) used predicatively, (4) and most frequently with *est*. It is not qualified (5) by any adjective except the simplest adjectives of quantity, nor (6) by a genitive or prepositional phrase, though a personal dative, as indirect object, is a very frequent accompaniment. (7) The usage is not very frequent anywhere, except in the case of some few words; and (8) there is, as it appears to me, a noticeable capriciousness shewn in the use of some words in this case and the non-use of others. This statement requires some illustration and some modification.

1. The usage is nearly confined to semi-abstract substantives, i.e. names of actions, effects, feelings. The only words originally of a thoroughly concrete character are *cordi*, *cibo*, *frugi*, *melli*, *stomacho*, *veneno*, and of these only *cordi* occurs frequently, the rest being found once only, and only *cibo* is used in its original character, the rest are used metaphorically. Of other words, which occur tolerably often, *dono*, *impedimento*, *pignori*, *oneri*, *ornamento*, *remedio*, *spectaculo*, have the best claim to be regarded as concrete terms. But equally, or more, common are *auxilio*, *præsidio*, *subsidio*, *ludibrio*, *exitio*, *honori*, *vitio*, and the perhaps still more

<sup>1</sup> Especially I have paid little attention, here or elsewhere, to the post-Augustan epic poets; and I cannot speak at all confidently of the elder Pliny, or Vitruvius.

abstract *cure*, *glorie*, *aiiā*, *saluti*, *voluptati*, *usui*, *invitiis*, *putori*. Indeed there seems to have been on the one hand something which suggested abstract terms, and again an instinct which militated against an indiscriminate use of them. The stems in *-tu*, between 20 and 30 in number, are with the exception of *optantui*, *otentui*, *potui*, *questui*, *sumptui* and *usui* rare, and found chiefly in Varro and Tacitus. (Apuleius does not come within my range.) Of other verbals, there are 14 with stems in *-tion*, but they are found rarely in more than one passage; stems in *-ia* are 20 in number and oftener used; in *-ia* only 4 (from verbs); in *-ar* 10; in *-menta* 16; in *-cū* 9. Of stems derived from adjectives there are 3 each in *-at*, and *-ia*. The rest (over 50) are various, but contain some of the words most in use, e.g. *cordi*, *cure*, *crimini*, *danno*, *dedecori*, *exemplo*, *dono*, *fraudi*, *frugi*, *honori*, *laud*, *mal*, *oneri*, *opere*, *pignori*, *prede*, *saluti*. But the etymological formation, though an objective, is not a certain criterion either way: an examination of the list will show that on the whole the words, used in this construction in more than isolated instances, are words of a somewhat ambiguous use, which denote sometimes a quality or an action, and sometimes an object which manifests that quality or action.

2. So far as I have noticed, this usage is absolutely confined to the singular number. We have *voluptati* and *amori*, but not *delictis*; *prede*, but not *manibus*; *maculis* and *turpitudinis*, but not *sordibus*; *ulio*, but not *inimicitis*; *lucra*, *questui*, *emolumento*, *spendari*, &c., but not *apious*, or *divitiis*; *frugi*, not *frugibus*. This restriction seems to accord with the semi-abstract character of the usage.

3. This dative is used predicatively, and herein lies in my opinion the characteristic note of the usage. The word put in this dative is a name of the thing or person, of which it is predicated. 'To whom was it a benefit' (*bono*); 'That was not an hindrance' (*impedimento*); 'Food was not with them a lust or luxury'; 'You should be an honour to yourselves, a utility to your friends, a gain to the state'; 'His drink (*potui*) should be boiled water'; 'He leaves five cohorts, as a guard to the camp.' It is true there is not always such an English equivalent, as, being properly abstract, is

yet used in a concrete manner; but that is not a strong objection; there are enough such to show that the thing is possible, and indeed easy; and there is proof of the general truth in the fact, that many of these words are also found used predicatively in the nominative. Thus, besides the examples given in § 1161, may be mentioned such as *cura* (*nostra* C. Att. 10. 2); *insigne documentum* (L. 21. 19); *emolumentum* (C. Fin. 2. 18); *exitium* (*totius Asiæ* C. Verr. Act. 1. 4); *indicium* (L. 35. 44); *ludibrium* (Curt. 6. 10. 28); *monumentum* (C. Verr. 2. 2); *mora et impedimentum* (L. 23. 9); *pignus* (L. 43. 10); *præsidium* (Plin. 22. § 90); *pudor* (L. 40. 27); *remedium* (*manifestum*) Colum. 6. 6; *risus* (Ov. Fast. 1. 438); *rubor* (Val. M. 4. 4. 5); *una est salus* (L. 7. 35); *solacium* (Sen. Dial. 11. 1. fin.; ib. 5 fin.; but *solacio* ib. 12); *quæ verecundia est postulare vos* (L. 21. 19). Similarly *præsidium et decus meum* (Hor. Od. 1. 1. 2), *desiderium* (Catull. 2. 5), *ludibrium* and *pudor* (Lucan. 7. 380), *perniciēs* frequently, (e.g. Plaut. Pseud. 363; C. Verr. Act. 1. 1,) are used as names of persons. A remarkably close resemblance is seen in *maximum vero argumentum est naturam ipsam de immortalitate animorum tacitam judicare, quod omnibus curæ sunt, et maxumæ quidem, quæ post mortem futura sint* (C. T. D. 1. 14), compared with *magnoque esse argumento, homines scire pleraque ante quam nati sint, quod jam pueri ita celeriter res adripiant &c.* (C. Sen. 21). Further the use of *tibi*, not *tuo*, speaks strongly for the predicative character. *Tuæ gloriæ est* may be 'it contributes to your glory<sup>1</sup>, but *tibi gloriæ est* is more naturally 'it is a glory for you,' and when the latter form of expression is the regular one, and is never, or scarcely ever, exchanged for the former, the inference becomes inevitable, that the predicative conception is the true one. A good illustration may be seen in Cic. Dom. 33, where we have *illis injuria inimicorum probro non fuit* contrasted with *tuum scelus meum probrum esse*. The *meum* required *probrum*.

4. It is used most frequently with the *vero esse*. Of the whole number of datives about 117 are used with *esse* only; and there are

<sup>1</sup> Thus in C. Or. 2. 49 we have *saluti fuisse* and *auxilium ferre* in the same sentence. So also *non terrorem afferre, sed præsidio esse* (C. Mil. 26).



not more than 11 which I have found used with other verbs, but not used with *esse*. Of these latter only *vitio*, *dono*, and perhaps *muneris* are used often enough to make the non-occurrence of *esse* with them at all noticeable. The other verbs, which are used with this dative, are such as readily admit of an oblique predicate; e.g. *habere*, 'treat as' (*curæ*, *questui*, *ludibrio*); *dare*, 'assign as' (*crimini*, *honori*, *hypothecæ*, *laudi*, &c.); *ducere*, 'consider as' (*damno*, *gloriæ*, &c.); *dicere*, 'declare to be' (*doti*); *ponere*, 'lay down as' (*exemplo*); *vertere*, 'make out to be' (*vitio*); *feri*, *existere*, *accipere*, *interpretari*, &c. *Habere* and *dare* are the most frequent, being as it were active correlatives to the neuter *esse*. *Auxilio*, *præsidio*, *subsidiis* are used with a great variety of verbs, e.g. *mittere*, *proficisci*, *venire*, *relinquere*, &c.

In apposition the use of this dative is quite exceptional. I have noticed only the following instances: *præsidio* once in Livy; *auxilio* twice in Petronius; the rest in Tacitus only; viz. *debonestamento*, *documento*, *subsidiis*, *opulentis* once, *ostentis* and *usui* twice each. On a special use of some words with stem in *-tu*, I will speak presently.

5. The limited number and character of epithets, which this dative admits of, is very remarkable. They are just such as give to a substantive the meaning which the suffixes of the comparative and superlative degrees, or which the relative particles *tam*, *quam*, give to an adjective, and, with the faintest exceptions, no more. They are *magnus*, *major*, *maximus*, *tantus*, and *quantus*. Besides these I have found only *bonæ frugis*, and (once) *bono usui*, both in Plautus only; *nimie voluptatis* twice in Plautus; *minori curæ* in Cic., and (once) *minori gloriæ* in Justin; *nullo* (not *nulli*) with *adjumento* (once each) in Cornificius and Cicero, with *impedimento* once in Sallust, with *præsidio* once in Cicero, with *usui* once in Cæsar; *summo honori* occurs thrice, *summo præsidio* once in Cicero; *summæ sollicitudini* once in Plautus. All these are quantitative adjectives. So perhaps is *semperternæ* (*laudi*) which occurs once in Cicero; and *eidem cui* in C. Fam. i. 9 § 11: if it refers to *curæ*. One real exception occurs, in Vergil, viz. *iuste inæ*. It is an exception which proves the rule; for the whole expression is one of Vergil's experiments, and described as such by Macrobius. In Pliny (23 § 149), *Præsenti remedio* appears to be the dative. (*præsens remedium*. Colum. 6. 17. 24),

and he may have other exceptions<sup>1</sup>. Vitruvius has *majori et communi calamitati*. In Cæs. G. 7. 55 most editors read *ne cui esset usui*; Nipperdey has *quoi*: but all the best MSS., except one and that not the oldest, have *quo*, which I have no doubt is quite right. It is *ne quo*, 'lest for any purpose.' Compare Liv. 26. 9 (quoted in § 1225) and 27. 28 *si quo opera eorum opus esset*; also the use of *quo* interrogative<sup>2</sup>. (See too Madvig, *ad C. Fin.* 4. 12 § 30.)

Further it may be noticed, that it is only when used with *esse* that any epithet whatever is found.

6. This dative is rarely attended by any genitive or prepositional phrase. The habitual use of the personal dative renders a genitive of the possessor superfluous, and the objective genitive is found in but few cases. *Faliscorum auxilio venerunt* (L. 4. 17); *cujus rei...esse documento* (Quint. 7. 1. 2); *indicio dominatus* (C. Dom. 42); *indicio sui facti* (Lucr. 4. 1019); *causæ remotionis hoc nobis exemplo sit* (C. Inv. 2. 29); *ostentui scelerum* (Sall. J. 24); *ostentui clementiæ suæ* (Tac. A. 12. 14); *ejus rei testimonio sunt* (C. Rosc. C. 4.); probably also *monumento oppressæ spei* (Liv. 4. 16); possibly *lepus omnium prædæ nascens* (Plin. 8, § 219); and, if *deliquio* be a dative, Plaut. *Capt.* 626. Of prepositional phrases I have noted only *hæc res ad levandam annonam impedimento fuit* (L. 4. 13) and similar expressions in L. 8. 32; Cæs. C. 3. 46. Cælius (ap. C. Fam. 8. 11) has *tibi curæ fuisse de Sittiano negotio gaudeo* where *cur. fu.* is impersonal. So in C. Att. 7. 5. *In bellum usui esse* often occurs; and there are probably other instances which have not caught my eye.

7. This usage is not very frequent. For although the list I have made is a tolerably long one, yet one may turn over many pages of an author without finding a single instance. And in some authors instances appear to be distinctly rare, e.g. in Martial, and

<sup>1</sup> e.g. *feralis arbor et funebri indicio posita* (16 § 40); *funebris signo posita* (ib. § 139), *invidiæ probro* 18 § 13. The last word Urlichs takes as ablative and we have unquestionably such an abl. in *maiore miraculo* (36 § 82), perhaps also *gratissimo pabulo* (18 § 120) is ablative of description.

<sup>2</sup> e.g. in such expressions as *nescis quo valeat nummus, quem præbeat usum?* (Hor. S. 1. 1. 73); *quo tamen hæc Ithaco?* (sc. datis) Ov. M. 13. 103. In a recent grammar I have seen this *quo* explained as equivalent to *cui usui*; in another as for *cui bono*. What is the authority for this supposed use of *cui* as a non-quantitative attribute to this dative?

the younger Pliny. There are between 170 and 180 such datives in my list; and of these little over one-third only have I found in five places or more. About forty words may be said to be pretty frequent; and half of these may be considered each as the standing expression for a particular idea. Thus *auxilio*, *præsidio*, *subsidio* in the military writers; *fraudi*, *pignori*, *hypothecæ* in the lawyers; *potui* in Celsus; *frugi* as an indeclinable adjective; *dono*, *cordi*, *curæ*, *impedimento*, *odio*, *saluti*, *usui* and some others in ordinary language. On the other hand upwards of fifty words are only found once, at least to my knowledge. No doubt in all such matters we ought to bear constantly in mind, what (to apply one of Darwin's phrases) I may call the imperfection of the philological record. There were a great many books written between Plautus and Tacitus, which have perished altogether; and many expressions may have been common enough in the talk of daily life, in the atrium and the forum, in the camp and on the farm, which have found but scanty recognition in a studied literature like the Roman. And the usage now in question, though capable of being applied to things of moment in a style elevated to the occasion, was yet mainly a usage of ordinary conversation.

8. There seems to be much capriciousness in the use and non-use of words in this manner. Thus *crimini* is tolerably frequent, *culpæ* rare; *amori* rare, *odio* very frequent, perhaps however because it was convenient to form a passive to *odi*, e.g. *odi odioque sum Romanis* (Liv. 35. 19). *Auspicio*, *beneficio*, *commodo*<sup>1</sup>, *incommodo*, *omini*, *prodigio*, *officio*, *compendio*, *effugio* are not used at all. Some words are only found, when the keynote is struck by another word, which is more frequently so used, e.g. *acerbitati* (*quibus odio sunt nostræ secures*, *nomen acerbitati*, *scriptura decumæ portorium morti*, C. Flac. 8); *deformitati* (*s' iudicibus ipsis aut gloriæ damnatio rei aut deformitati futura absolutio*, Quint. 6. 1. 12); and similarly *amori*, *frustratui*, *gratulationi*, *ignominie*, *libertati*, *maculæ*, *miseriæ*, *splendori*. The use of some words appears to have been hazarded on the analogy

<sup>1</sup> Diomedes (p. 295 Putsche) mentions *commodo tibi sum*, *commodo mihi est hæc res*; and both he and Charisius (p. 260 Putsche) speak of *consilio tibi sum* (which I have not found).

of other words of like or contrasted meaning. Thus Vergil uses *ira* on the analogy probably of *invidia*; and *venire excidio* on that of *venire auxilio*. Cicero probably would defend *stomacho* by *cordi*, *consolationi* by *solacio*, *damnationi* by *crimini*, which again may have suggested *absolutioni* to Tacitus. *Vituperationi* is a correlative to *laudi*, *offensioni* to *voluptati*. Sallust would not have said *urbs pœna fuit* if he had not been going to couple it with *præda*.

In this connexion may be noticed the stems in *-tu*, which form in some respects a remarkable group, because of their semiverbal use in the accusative case, and the parallelism of their use in the accusative, dative and ablative cases to the gerund and gerundive (see Chap. XIV). Over thirty words of this formation are found in my list, and almost all are used passively; that is to say, the subject of the expression is the object of the action denoted. This is so with *amictui*, *cibatus*, *circumjectui*, *contemptui*, *derelictui*, *derisui*, *despectui*, *despicatus*, *dîvisui*, *esui*, *fructui*, *frustratus*, *indutus*, *irrisui*, *laniatus*, *neglectui*, *optentui*, *potui*, *satus*, *stratus*, *usui*. The only stems in *-tu* used actively are *extersui* (once), *ornatu* (once), *ostentui* (Sall. and Tac.). The rest, *qvæstui*, *receptui*, *sumptui*, *vestitui* (once), *victui* (once), can hardly be referred to either category. True this passive use is by no means confined to these stems: witness *amori*, *desiderio*, *dolori*, *fastidio*, *formidini*, *invidiæ*, *ludibrio*, *mœrori*, *miraculo*, *odio*, *rubori*, *spectaculo*, *timori*. The last word is the more remarkable because *terrori* (its opposite) is also found. (For *ludibrio* comp. Curt. 8. 6 § 23 *an tibi uni digni videmur esse ludibrio? Ille nec regem ludibrio nec se contemptu dignum esse respondit* 'deserving to be laughed at.') The possibility of such a double use is inherent in verbal substantives, as may be seen both in the use of the gerund, e.g. *vestimentorum sunt omnia lanea &c. quæ induendi, præcingendi, amiciendi, insternendi, iniciendi, incubandive causa parata sunt* (Ulp. ap. Dig. 34. 2. 43), and in the traditional assignment of the two supines, one to the active and one to the passive voice. English corresponds very closely; e.g. *potum it*, 'he goes to drink'; *mibi potui dat*, 'he gives me to drink'; *potu jucundum*, 'pleasant to drink.' It is the predominance of the so-called passive use in these stems, that is here specially noticeable. None of them however occur very frequently, except *usui* and *potui*, and these have possibly been



the pattern for the others. It should be remembered, that *bibere do* or *ministra* (§ 1345) is an old phrase, which seems to belong to a time when *bibere* was realised as the dative of a verbal substantive (cf. § 612), though probably Cicero, when using it, regarded *bibere* as an object. Language, like political and social institutions, is continually being underpinned: the usage remains, but a new theory is made or assumed, consciously or unconsciously, to justify its existence.

Some of these words had a peculiar use, which may have been very common, and yet might have escaped us, had it not been for a few words in Varro (quoted in the list below, under *amictus*). *Amictui*, *circumjectui*, *indutusui*, were used as indeclinable names of garments, in some such way as we speak of 'a wrap', 'a tie', and might speak of 'a throw-around', a 'put on'. Similarly, *stratusui*, 'a spread' or 'spreads', is in fact what we call 'bedding' (cf. Ulp. ap Dig. 50. 16. 45); and *extersui* was probably 'a wipe', though we find it (like *frugi*) joined to *linteum* as an adjective, 'a wiping-towel'. *Receptui* is rarely so used as to bring it under the head of predicative dative. *Receptui signum dare* is parallel to *colloquio diem dicere*. In two passages of Livy (3. 22; 26. 44), where *receptui* occurs, most interpreters consider *canit* to be impersonal; but I believe *receptui* (originally *signum receptui*) is the subject, *si receptui cecinisset* being 'if the retreat should have sounded'. *Cibatus*, properly 'feeding', is practically identical with *cibus*, and so Varro uses *cibatus quod sit* as Sextus Ælius (or Scevola) spoke of *que esui et potui forent* (cf. § 1383); and Ulpian carried the analogy further in *terbo victus continentur, que esui, potui, cultuique corporis, queque ad vivendum homini necessaria sunt* (ap Dig. 50. 16. 43). In *oleas esui optime condi scribit Cato* (Varr. R. R. 1. 6c) I take *esui* with *oleas*, 'eating-olives', 'olives to eat', as *satus semen* in Cato (quoted in § 1137) is 'sowing seed'. *Potui* alone of these words is frequent, and exactly corresponds to our phrases 'to drink', 'as a drink'. (See below, pp. lxxxix, xci.) *Esui* they did not use so often, and we have no analogous expression 'as an eat'. The nearest phrase is 'this is good eating'. That words, properly meaning an action, should come to mean the object of the action, is not peculiar to this usage or to these stems: *venatio* 'hunting' came to mean 'game';

*sessio* 'a sitting' (as in English) means also 'a seat', as *exercitus* came to mean 'an army', and *quæstus* 'gain'; &c.

Some of these phrases, e.g. *signum receptui*, *linteum extersui*, *oleas esui*, *satui semen*, perhaps also *esui*, and *cultui corporis*, are scarcely assignable to the class of predicative datives, as I have defined it, and I have consequently put them under the head of 'Work contemplated' § 1156. These two heads are in other grammars apparently regarded as one under the general signification of 'purpose' (*Zweck*, *Ziel*, *Absicht*). I quite admit that there are some expressions, especially with stems in *-tu* (comp. 1156—1162, and 1382, 1383) which are ambiguous: e.g. in *eo natus sum ut Jugurthæ scelerum ostentui essem* (§ 1160) *ostentui* may be taken as either predicative or not, according as we consider it to mean 'a field on which to exhibit', or simply as equivalent to *ostentandis sceleribus* 'for exhibiting crimes'. But the dative gerundial expressions with *esse* have the meaning 'capable of', which is not Sallust's meaning here; and therefore, notwithstanding the dependent genitive, I am inclined to treat *ostentui* as predicative. *Potui dare* is similarly ambiguous, and though I have given it under the head of predicative dative, I think it perhaps strictly belongs to § 1156. On the other hand *domicilio locum deligere* is usually treated as an instance of the predicative dative, 'as a home', but the analogy of similar expressions is against it. And nearly as the two classes seem to touch one another, it is often in seeming only. *Comitia consulibus rogandis habita* has a very different dative from *comitia ludibrio* or *quæstui habita*, 'made fun of', 'made a gain of'. In a customs-law for Sicily (quoted by Alfenus ap. *Dig.* 50. 16. 203 *servos quos domum quis ducet suo usu, pro is portorium ne dato) ducet suo usu* means 'take with him for his own convenience': but *ducit sibi usui esse* would be 'thinks to be of use to him'. The words *nunquam fore in præoccupatis beneficio animis vero crimini locum* (L. 6. 20), 'there would not be room for the true charge to occupy' (where *crimini* may be referred to § 1152 or § 1156), would mean, if *crimini* be treated as predicative, 'the place could not be made into a charge'. When Sallust writes *pænam illorum sibi oneri, impunitatem perdundæ reipublicæ fore credebat* (*Cat.* 46), the two datives are not necessarily of the same type, because they are parallel; and we may translate, 'their

going unpunished would be capable of destroying the commonwealth'; but it is more likely that Sallust meant simply 'it would be the destruction of the state', though this use of the dative gerundive, as precisely equivalent to a predicative dative, is at least rare. Had it been in Tacitus we might almost have inferred a difference in syntax from the correspondence in the sentence: comp. *gratia eneri, ultio in questu habetur* (*Hist.* 4. 3).

But besides the dative of 'work contemplated' there are two other usages of the indirect object which verge upon the predicative dative. The first is that noticed in § 1163. *Ignaviae in hoc illi tribuebatur ignaviae* is generally classed with predicative datives, and possibly it may be so, on the analogy of *crimini* or *vitio datur*. But this would not suit all the passages in that section. The second usage is the ordinary indirect object, when dependent on an adjective. Compare

*Fides urbem sine legibus, sine judiciis, relictam direptioni et insidiis.*  
(*C. Fam.* 4. 1.)

*Vasa omnis generis usui magis quam ornamento in speciem facta.*  
(*L.* 41. 18.)

*Exitio nata theatra mea.* (*Prop.* 3. 15.)

*Exitio suo omniumque vivere.* (*Suet. Cal.* 11.)

with

*Quid si Hannibal velit castra invadere, praeda relictæ sine viribus, sine imperio, sine auspicio.* (*L.* 27. 44.)

*Intellegat nullam rem sibi majori usui aut ornamento quam meam commendationem esse potuisse.* (*C. Fam.* 13. 49.)

*Quam ita (i.e. cum dentibus) nata esset Valeria, exitio civitati, in quam delata esset, futuram vaticinati haruspices.*  
(*Plin.* 7. § 69.)

The resemblance is great: but in the first example *direptioni* is an action, not like *præda* a thing, 'booty': and the two differ as 'abandoned to plundering' differs from 'abandoned as plunder'. In the others *facta*, *nata* and *vivere* are full-blooded words, not mere expressions of predication like *esse*. It is possible that the origin of the predicative dative is to be sought in *esse* having had, or having been conceived to have had, originally a fuller meaning:

just as *decemviri legibus scribendis* is very possibly an abbreviated expression for *decemviri legibus scribendis creati*<sup>1</sup>. The expression in Cato R. R. 3 (if indeed the text is right), *Patremfamiliae villam rusticam bene edificatam habere expedit, cellam oleariam vinariam, dolia multa, uti lubeat caritatem expectare, et rei et virtuti et gloria erit*, may mean 'it will be to him a property, and a virtue, and a glory', but this is awkward for *rei*, and it seems better to translate 'it will advance his property, and his manliness, and his fame'<sup>1</sup>. Compare *si in rem tuam esse videatur, gloriae aut famae, sinam* (Pl. Trin. 629); and *si quid rei esse videbitur* (Fronto p. 107, Naber) where *rei* means 'of importance' just as *usui* means 'of use'. So we have come to drop the preposition and predicate identity, when we say 'What use is it?' 'it is no use'.

Key (Lat. Gr. §§ 982, 983) seeks the origin of the predicative dative in book-keeping, and the pattern in such expressions as *postulare id gratiae apponi sibi*: and the dative he ultimately identifies with the locative. I dare say Gellius took *cordi* for a locative, when he wrote *hos versus habere cordi et memoriae operae pretium est* (2. 29; &c.). But we lose hold of all fast ground, when we refer any usage to the locative, which has not the characteristics of *-a* in *-a* stems, and *-i* in *-o* stems. The Latin locative has just that characteristic and no other. Mere suitability of meaning is too indefinite to trust to against such a difficulty from the form. Nor can such instances as are put under 'work contemplated' (§ 1156) be regarded with much confidence as the path of historical transit from the indirect object to the predicative dative. I think they, or most of them, are not improbably of later origin, in fact, a cross between the two main heads. Doubtless such expressions as *decemviri legibus scribendis* are much older than any literature that we have, but so are also, I expect, such expressions as *cordi esse, frugi, fraudi esse, dono dare*, and others: *pœnæ* (see s.v.) was perhaps so used in the Twelve Tables. The usage was fully developed at the time when Roman literature begins, for Plautus uses between forty and fifty words in this dative.

That the usage is sufficiently distinct to demand a coordinate,

<sup>1</sup> The same three words occur together in Cic. Or. 2. 55. *Cui rei, cui gloriae, cui virtuti studere (te dicam)?*



not subordinate, rank to the indirect object, appears to me the ultimate result, to which we can at present attain. It may be historically a daughter, though so old as to look like a sister. Intermediate usages may be found, but such would almost inevitably exist, even if the two classes had quite distinct origin. And till we know the precise meaning and history of the suffix which forms the dative case, it is impossible to be confident whether the tree had one trunk or two.

The following is a list of all the words that I have found in writers (not later than Suetonius) used in this dative, and of the places where they occur.

- absolutioni** 'ground for acquittal'; **esse** Tac. *A.* 3. 13.  
**acerbitati** 'a bitterness'; **esse** Cic. *Verr.* 4. 30; *Flac.* 8.  
**adjumento** 'an aid'; **esse** Varr. *L. L.* 5. 90; Corn. 2. 11 (*nullo*);  
 ib. 18; ib. 30; 3. 5; ib. 16; 4. 23; ib. 27; Cic. *Quint.* 1;  
*Verr. Act.* 1. 3; ib. 5. 40 (*nullo*); *Mur.* 5 (*magno*); *Font.* 21;  
*Planc.* 9 (*quanto*); *Balb.* 7; *Fam.* 2. 6 (*tanto*); 13. 29; 30;  
 38; 39; 46; 71; 77 (all *magno*); ib. 24; 34 (both *maximo*);  
 14. 18; *Att.* 12. 31 (*magno*); *Brut. Ep. ad Cic.* 1. 4 (*maximo*);  
 Plin. *Ep.* 4. 20.  
**admirationi** 'a subject of wonder'; **esse** Just. 12. 3.  
**alimento** 'food'; **esse** Sen. *Ben.* 4. 14.  
**amictui** 'a cloak'; **esse** Var. *L. L.* 5 § 131 (*amictui quæ sunt*);  
 Compare ib. § 132 (*amictui dictum, quod ambiectum est, id est, circumjectum: a quo etiam, quo vestitas se involvunt, circumjectui appellant; et quod amictui habet purpuram circum, vocant circumtextum. Antiquissimis amictui ricinium*); Cic. *T. D.* 5. 32.  
**amiculo** 'a cloak'; **esse** Sall. ap. Macro. *Sat.* 3. 13 § 9.  
**amori** 'a cause of love', 'loveable'; **esse** Cass. ap. C. *Fam.* 15. 19 (*quanto*).  
**argumento** 'a proof'; **esse** Cic. *Verr.* 3. 65; 5. 19 bis; *Phil.* 2. 16 (*magno*); *Fam.* 10. 5; *Att.* 10. 12; *Fin.* 2. 10; *N. D.* 1. 1 (*magno*); *Sen.* 21; *Liv.* 4. 29; 5. 33; ib. 44; ib. 54; 26. 31 (*maximo*); 39. 10; ib. 51. Plin. 33 § 28; *eventre* Plin. 14 § 37 (perhaps ablat.).  
**arrhaboni** 'as earnest' dare Plaut. *Most.* 649; *relinqui* Ter. *Haut.*

**auxilio** 'an assistance', 'support'; **esse** Plaut. *Amph.* 92; *Aul.* 707; *Epid.* 5. 2. 11; *Most.* 146; *Pæn.* 5. 3. 18; 5. 4. 107; *Ter. Haut.* 992; *Corn.* 1. 5; 3. 5; 4. 33; *ib.* 34 (*magno*); *Cic. Verr.* 4. 35; *ib.* 45; *Mil.* 34; *Pis.* 9; *Prov. Cons.* 8; *Pseudo-Cic. Or. prid. q. in exil.* 9; *ib.* 10; *Cæs. G.* 5. 44; *C.* 1. 80; 3. 20; *ib.* 79; *Pseudo-Cæs. B. Afric.* 26; *Sall. C.* 2; *J.* 52; *Nep.* 1. 5; 25. 11; *Verg. A.* 11. 428; *Hor. S. I.* 4. 141; *Ov. M.* 12. 90; *Liv.* 2. 29; *ib.* 55 § 5; 3. 49; *ib.* 65; 4. 53; *ib.* 60; 5. 6; 9. 26 § 10; *ib.* 34 *fin.*; 21. 39; 28. 45 *bis*; 38. 52; *ib.* 57; *Val. M.* 5. 3; *ext.* 2; 6. 5. 4; *Sen. Ben.* 5. 9; *Plin.* 26 § 139; 32 § 43; *Stat. Theb.* 2. 199.

In apposition, *Petron.* 89. 45; **adcurrere**, *Sall. J.* 101; **addere**, *Sall. J.* 56; **adesse**, Plaut. *Amph.* 1131, **adtrahere**, *Colum.* 10. 24; **arcessere**, *Cæs. G.* 3. 11; **mittere**, *Cæs. G.* 1. 18; 4. 37; *Nep.* 20. 1; **proficisci**, *Nep.* 13. 1; **reperire**, *Plin.* 25 § 20; **subire**, *Verg. A.* 2. 216; **summittere**, *Cæs. G.* 7. 81; **superesse**, *Verg. A.* 11. 420; **venire**, *Cæs. G.* 2. 29; 6. 8; *C.* 3. 51; *Sall. J.* 56; *Verg. A.* 7. 551; *Liv.* 4. 17; 9. 43; *Nep.* 8. 3; *Stat. Theb.* 9. 122; **vocare**, *Tac. A.* 12. 45.

**bono** 'an advantage', 'serviceable'; **esse** *Corn.* 2. 4 *bis*; 4. 41; *Cic. Rosc. Am.* 5 *ib.* 30; *Mil.* 12; *Phil.* 2. 14; *Liv.* 7. 12; *Phædr.* 5. 4. 12; *Sen. Ben.* 4. 14 (*quanto*); *Ir.* 1. 12; *Ep.* 110 § 10; *Pseudo-Ov. Nux.* 96.

**calamitati** 'a calamity', 'disastrous'; **esse** *Cic. Brut.* 35; *Verr.* 4. 34; *Balb. fin.*; *Flac.* 42; *Nep.* 14. 6 (*majori*); 16. 3 (*quantæ*); *Pseudo-Cic. Or. prid. q. in exil.* 9; *Vitruv.* 2. 8 § 20 (*majori et communi*).

**captioni** 'a catch', 'snare'; **esse** Plaut. *Most.* 922; *Lex Rubr. (Corp. I. R. i. No. 205)* xx. 45.

**causæ** 'a cause'; **esse** *Cic. Inv.* 2. 6; *Brut.* 23; *Cæcin.* 7; *Flac.* 17; *Att.* 15. 3; *Fat.* 15; *Cæs. C.* 3. 72; *Ov. Am.* 2. 6. 31; *Liv.* 38. 52 *bis*.

. Probably also in the expressions *quid est causæ, hoc causæ est* &c. where the genitive is possible; Plaut. *Most.* 202; *Rud.* 758; *Cic. Verr.* 3. 46; *Clu.* 21; *Rab. P.* 14; *Phil.* 1. 5; *Fat.* 20; *Fam.* 2. 13; *Att.* 15. 7; *Hor. S. I.* 1. 20; *Quint.* 6. 2. 26; Compare *Cic. Verr.* 5. 41 (*hoc causæ dicit*).

[*cenæ* probably genitive, *Ter. Haut.* 211 (*quid cenæ siet*).]

- cibatus** 'food'; **esse** Varr. *R. R.* 3. 8. 3; **ponere** Varr. *R. R.* 3. 5.  
4 (*cibatus offas positus*).
- cibo** 'food'; **esse** Lucr. 6. 771.
- circumjectui** 'a wrap'; Varr. *L. L.* 5. 132 (see above s. v. *amictui*).
- cladi** 'disastrous'; **esse** Sall. *J.* 85 § 43.
- commendationi** 'a recommendation'; **esse** Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 3.  
præf. § 3 (*majori*).
- consolationi** 'a consolation'; **esse** Cic. *Fam.* 5. 17.
- contemptui** 'contemptible'; **esse** Cæs. *G.* 2. 30; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.*  
9. 25 § 20; Suet. *Claud.* 15; **habere** Suet. *Aug.* 93.
- cordi** 'dear'; **esse** Plaut. *Bac.* 1073; *Cist.* 1. 1. 111; Cato ap.  
Macr. *Sat.* 3. 5 § 10; Ter. *Andr.* 238; *Phorm.* 800; Lucil. ap.  
Non. p. 88 bis (xxvi. 12; 21; ed. Müll.); Afran. ap. Prisc. 5.  
44; Varr. *R. R.* 2. 10 § 3; Cic. *Quint.* 30; *Ferr.* 1. 44; *Or.* 16;  
*Lucil.* 4; *Att.* 5. 3; Catull. 81. 5; 64. 158; Lucr. 5. 1391; Cæs.  
*G.* 6. 19; Bibul. ap. Suet. *Jul.* 49; Verg. *A.* 9. 615 (without  
*esse*); 11. 369; *Cir.* 260; Hor. *Od.* 1. 17. 14; Ov. *Med. form.*  
32; Liv. (usually with *diis*) 1. 39; 6. 9; *ib.* 20; 8. 7; 9. 1  
bis; *ib.* 8; 10. 42; 22. 1; 23. 31; 26. 50; 28. 20; 30. 17;  
Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 36; Sen. *Ben.* 1. 15; Curt. 4. 3 § 23;  
6. 9 § 36; 9. 2 § 6; *ib.* 3 § 5; 10. 1. § 26; Colum. 5. 5 § 9; 6.  
27 § 1; Plin. 18 § 36; Sil. 5. 97; 7. 320; 15. 350; Stat. *Silv.*  
1. 4. 4; 3. 3. 108; *ib.* 5. 14; 4. 4. 46; *ib.* 5. 53; *Theb.* 5. 473;  
12. 113; Petron. § 121; Tac. *H.* 5. 53; **habere** only in Gell.  
2. 29; 17. 19; 18. 7.
- corruptelæ** 'a corrupting influence'; **esse** Plaut. *As.* 867 Fleck.
- crimini** 'ground for charge'; **esse** Cic. *Brut.* 35; *Rosc. A.* 17 bis;  
*Ferr.* 5. 8; *Mur.* 35; Liv. 2. 52; 40. 15; Vell. 2. 116.
- dare** Corn. 4. 36; Cic. *Inu.* 2. 24; *Brut.* 80; *Rosc. Am.* 17;  
*Cecil.* 10 bis; *ib.* 11; *Ferr.* 5. 29 bis; *ib.* 50; *Dom.* 35; Nep.  
15. 8; Liv. 1. 5; 7. 4; *ib.* 20; 40. 15; Just. 8. 1; 43. 2;  
Tac. *A.* 1. 73; 6. 13; 13. 10.
- culpæ** 'ground for blame'; **esse** Colum. 5. 1 § 2; **adsignare** C.  
*Ferr.* 5. 50; **dare** C. *Rosc. Am.* 16.
- cultui esse** See under *esui*, and p. xxxiii.
- curæ** 'a subject for care'; **esse** Plaut. *Bac.* 1076; *Merc.* 120  
Ritschl; *Men.* 761 Ritschl; Ter. *Heu.* 193; *Ad.* 129 bis; 680;  
894; Corn. 2. 30 (*quantæ*); Poet. ap. C. *T. D.* 4. 34; Lucr. 5.

982; Cic. *Inv.* 1. 53; *Verr.* 3. 60 (*quantæ*); 4. 33 (*magnæ*); *post red. ad Quir.* 9 (*majori*); *Man.* 7; *Phil.* 2. 40; 3. 3; *ib.* 15 (*magnæ*); *Fin.* 3. 2 (*magnæ*); *T. D.* 1. 14 (*maximæ*); *Læl.* 12 (*minori*); *Fam.* 1. 9 § 22 (possibly with *eidem cui*); *ib.* § 24 (*tantæ*); 2. 6 (*tantæ quantæ*); *ib.* 11 (*magnæ*); 18 (*majori*); 3. 5 (*magnæ*); *ib.* 8 § 9; 9 *fin.*; 6. 2 (*minori*); *ib.* 3 (*maximæ*); 5 (*maximæ, magnæ*); 10 (*minori*); 7. 10 (*minori*); *ib.* 18 (*majori*); 9. 16 § 1 (*quantæ*); *ib.* 24 (*magnæ*); 10. 1 (*maximæ*); *ib.* 27 (*magnæ*); 11. 27 (*majori*); 12. 1 (*maximæ*); *ib.* 17; *ib.* 19; 13. 11; *ib.* 14; 68; 14. 19; 15. 2 *ter* (*magnæ, tantæ*); 15. 13; 16. 19; *Q. Fr.* 2. 4 § 1; *ib.* 12 (14) § 2 (*maximæ*); *Att.* 1. 1 (*summæ*); 4. 16 § 4; 5. 13; 6. 2 § 2 (*maximæ*); 7. 5 (*curæ esse de*); 11. 6; 12. 37 *bis* (*magnæ, majori*); *ib.* 49; 14. 18; *Anton. ap. C. Att.* 10. 8 A (*magnæ*); *Brut. Ep. ad Cic.* 1. 17 *fin.*; *D. Brut. ap. C. Fam.* 11. 4; *Cæ. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 2; 8. 8 § 10; *ib.* 11 § 4 (*curæ esse de*); *Cass. ap. C. Fam.* 12. 12; *Lentul. ap. C. Fam.* 12. 14; *Mat. ap. C. Att.* 9. 15; *Planc. ap. C. Fam.* 10. 24 § 2; *Trebon. ap. C. Fam.* 12. 16; *Cæs. G.* 1. 33; *ib.* 40; *Sall. J.* 14; 26; 75; *Or. Phil.* 15; *Nep.* 25. 12; *Verg. G.* 3. 112 (*tantæ*); 4. 113; *ib.* 178; *Hor. S.* 1. 6. 34; *ib.* 8. 18; 2. 4. 8; *Ep.* 1. 3. 30 (*quantæ*); *Tibull.* 1. 5. 29; 2. 3. 43; *Ov. Ep.* 7. 73; 16 (17). 160; *A. A.* 1. 749; *Met.* 1. 250; 2. 683; *Trist.* 3. 14. 8; 5. 12. 41; *Fast.* 4. 4. 37; *Pont.* 2. 118; *Liv.* 2. 24; 4. 7; *ib.* 21; 10. 25 (*majori*); *ib.* 45; 25. 15; 26. 2; *ib.* 32; 30. 31; 34. 32; 35. 23; *ib.* 44; 39. 13; 42. 14; 44. 19; *ib.* 34; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 1. 2 § 18; 2 *præf.* § 4; *Vell.* 2. 97; *Sen. Ir.* 2. 35; *Clem.* 1. 13; *N. Q.* 1. 1. 4; *Ep.* 88 § 23; *Curt.* 6. 7 § 21; 7. 5 § 41; *Colum.* 6. 30. 22; *ib.* 35; 12. 12. 3; *Petron.* 71; *Plin.* 2 § 117; 7 § 49; 36 § 157; *Stat. Theb.* 11. 428; *Quint.* 2. 4. 5; 7. 1. 4; 9. 3. 74; 10. 1. 131 (*magnæ*); 12. 1. 8; *Plin. Ep.* 1. 17; 7. 10; *ib.* 33 § 2; *Traj. ap. Plin. Ep.* 7. 10; 8. 14 § 10; *Tac. A.* 1. 73 (*est* not expressed); *H.* 1. 3; *habere Pl. Men.* 991; *Cæ. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 8 *fin.*; *Sall. C.* 21; *Nep.* 25. 20; *Ov. Am.* 1. 8. 32; *Corp. I. R.* i. p. 285 (*curai sibi habuit*); *Val. M.* 5. 1. 1 *fin.*; *Sen. Dial.* 2. 1; *Ben.* 1. 8; 2. 4; *Quint. Pref.* 16; *Suet. Aug.* 48; *Cand. ap. Dig.* 16. 3. 28.

**damnationi** 'ground for condemnation'; **esse** *C. Verr.* 3. 40.

- damno** 'a loss', 'cause of loss'; **esse** Plaut. *Asin.* 571; *Bac.* 1103; *Cist.* 1. 1. 32; *Trin.* 585; Hor. *S. I.* 2. 52; Ov. *Am.* 1. 10. 35; *Ep.* 16 (17). 39; ib. 169; *Met.* 2. 540; 10. 339; *Trust.* 2. 338; ib. 492; *Pont.* 3. 1. 155; *Nux.* 49; Liv. 4. 13 fin.; 9. 18; 23. 27 (*quanto*); 26. 37; 27. 8; ib. 34 (*magno*); 38. 34 (*tanto*); 40. 17; Plin. 14. § 5; **ducere** Plaut. *Bac.* 1103.
- decori** 'an honour', 'a credit'; **esse** Plaut. *Asin.* 192 (*decōri*); Corn. 4. 15; Lucr. 2. 643 (*decōri*); Verg. *B.* 5. 32 (*decōri*); Prop. 5. 11. 29 (*decōri*); Ov. *Met.* 13. 849 (*decōri*); Sall. *J.* 19; ib. 73; ib. 85 § 40; Sen. *Clem.* 1. 3. **habere** Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 1. 8.
- dedecori** 'a disgrace', 'cause of disgrace'; **esse** Plaut. *Asin.* 571; *Bac.* 1201; Ter. *Haut.* 334; Corn. 3. 7 bis; 4. 35; Cic. *Dom.* 33; *Q. Fr.* 1. 4; *Att.* 8. 11. § 1; *Off.* 1. 39; Pseudo-Cæs. *Bell. Alex.* 15 (*magno*); Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 2. 9 (*maximo*); Hor. *S. I.* 2. 53; Ov. *Am.* 2. 15. 21; Liv. 4. 13; Rutil. *Lup.* 2. 9; Fronto p. 235 Naber; **feri** C. *Off.* 1. 39.
- deformitati** 'a disgrace'; **esse** Quint. 6. 1. 12.
- dehonestamento** 'a dishonour'; in apposition. Tac. *A.* 12. 14.
- delectationi** 'a source of delight', 'delightful'; **esse** Cic. *Fam.* 4. 3; 6. 6 § 12 (*quantæ*); *Att.* 13. 23 (*majori*); Varr. *R. R.* 3. 3. § 1.
- ? **deliquio** 'a ground for losing'; **esse** Plaut. *Capt.* 622. dat. or nom.?
- derelictui** 'as a castaway', **habere** *Censor. edict.* (?) ap. Gell. 4. 12. (In Cic. *Att.* 8. 1, we have *pro derelicto habere.*)
- deridiculo** 'an object of ridicule'; **esse** Pl. *Mil.* 92 ed. Ritschl; Tac. *A.* 3. 57.
- derisui** 'matter for scorn'; **esse** Phædr. 1. 11. 2; Tac. *Agr.* 39.
- desiderio** 'regretted'; **esse** Ter. *Haut.* 753 (*magno*); Sen. *Dial.* 11. 5.
- despectui** 'an object of contempt'; **esse** Tac. *H.* 4. 57; Suet. *Galb.* 17; [opponi, Corn. 4. 39. probably belongs to § 1163].
- despicatui** 'an object of contempt'; **habere** Plaut. *Men.* 693; Fronto p. 205 Naber; **duci** C. *Fiac.* 27.
- detrimento** 'a source of loss'; **esse** Corn. 3. 7 bis; Cic. *Inu.* 2. 32 (*magno*); *Cæcil.* 4; *Ferr.* 3. 62; Cæs. *G.* 1. 44; Sall. *C.* 48; Sen. *Ben.* 4. 36 (*magno*).



**dignitati** 'a source of dignity'; **esse** Cic. *Dom.* 33; *Phil.* 13 fin.; *Lal.* 19.; *Liv.* 23. 15.

**disciplinæ** 'a model'; **esse** Plaut. *Most.* 154.

**dividiæ** 'a worry'; **esse** Plaut. *Bac.* 770; *ib.* 1033; *Casin.* 2. 2. 11; *Merc.* 615; *Stich.* 19; *Truc.* 4. 4. 3; Turpil. ap. Non. p. 96. Varro *L. L.* 7. 60 apparently found *dividiæ* in Nævius.

**divisui** 'matter for distribution'; **esse** *Liv.* 1. 54 fin.; 33. 46.

**documento** 'a proof', 'a warning'; **esse** Cæs. *G.* 7. 4; *Civ.* 3. 10; *Liv.* 3. 56; 4. 31; 5. 51; 6. 25; 7. 6; 24. 8 fin. (but doubtful text); 26. 5; 28. 41 § 15; *ib.* 42 § 1; § 17; 45. 44; *Quint.* 6. 3. 10; 7. 1. 2; 11. 3. 4; 12. 11. 23; in appos. Tac. *A.* 15. 27; **habere** Cic. *Agr.* 1 fin.

**dolori** 'a cause of grief'; **esse** Cic. *Har. Resp.* 18; *ib.* 20; *Fam.* 6. 10 (*magno*); 7. 2; 13. 5 (*magno*); Cæs. *G.* 5. 29 (*magno*); Pseudo-Cæs. *Bell. Alex.* 15 (*magno*); Catull. 96. 5 (*tanto*); Ov. *Am.* 3. 9. 57; *Met.* 1. 246; *Pont.* 1. 1. 61; *Liv.* 26. 37. Possibly also Sulpic. ap. Tib. 4. 10. 5 (but *doloris* Haupt).

[**domicilio deligere** Cæs. *G.* 1. 30; 2. 29; *Liv.* 35. 37; belongs to § 1156; compare *castris locum capere* *Liv.* 9. 17 § 15; &c. *hunc urbi condendæ locum elegerunt* *Liv.* 5. 54.]

**dono** 'as a gift'; **accipere** Tac. *A.* 15. 27; **dari** *atque accipi* Sall. *J.* 8½ § 38; *Or. Cott.* 5; **dare** Corp. I. R. i. No. 173, 177, 183 (but Mommsen, p. 33, takes *dono* as accus. Other old inscriptions (no. 166, 190, 191) have *donom*, *donum*. See p. 555); Plaut. *Amp.* 534; 538; 790; *Asin.* 194; *Cist.* 1. 2. 14; *Men.* 689; *Merc.* 400; *Pan.* 1. 1. 41; 2. 21; *Stich.* 665; *Truc.* 4. 3. 28; Ter. *Eun.* (eight times); Haut. 1050; Sall. *J.* 5; *Or. Lep.* 17; *Cott.* 12; *Macr.* 27; Verg. *B.* 2. 37; *Liv.* 2. 13; *ib.* 14; 3. 57; 4. 51; 6. 41; 7. 37; 24. 21; 40. 17; 42. 61; 45. 44; Mela 3. 45; Sen. *Dial.* 6. 10; Curt. 4. 11 § 15; 8. 5 § 20; *ib.* 13 § 16; 10. 5 § 28; Plin. 2. § 170; 8 § 149; 35 § 86; Suet. *Aug.* 7; *Tib.* 11; Tac. *A.* 15. 55; *H.* 1. 78; Just. 3. 7. **advehere** Pl. *Merc.* 333; **ducere** 'lead', Ter. *Eun.* 229; **emere** Ter. *Eun.* 135; **figere** *Liv.* 4. 20; **habere** Pl. *Pseud.* 1074.

**doti** 'as dowry'; **esse**, Formula ap. Dig. 23. 3. 25; *ib.* 44 § 1; *ib.* 46 § 1; *ib.* 57; &c. **dicere** Ter. Haut. 942; Cic. *Flac.* 35; **dari** Curt. 4. 5 § 7. (In ordinary legal language *in dotem esse*, *dare*, &c.)

**emolumento** 'source of gain': **esse** Cic. *Or.* 1. 8; *Rosc. Am.* 49; *Fam.* 7. 10; Liv. 23. 15; 24. 48.

? **esui** 'to eat', 'as an eatable': **esse** Sext. *Æl.* (?) ap. Gell. 4. 1 § 20 Varr. *R. R.* 1. 60; (*oleas esui cundi* 'eating olives') Ulpian ap. *Dig.* 33. 9. 3 *ter* (*que esui potuique sunt*); 50. 16. 43 (*verbo vicius continenter que esui potui cuiusque corporis, quæque ad vivendum homini necessaria sunt*); ap. Macrobi. *Sat.* 3. 19 § 1; dare Cels. 4. 16 (9); Plin. 20 § 173.

**exemplo** 'an example': **esse** Corn. 4. 12; Cic. *Inv.* 2. 29; *Brut.* 69; *Lecl.* 11; Hor. *S. r.* 1. 33; *Ov. Ep.* 3. 19; Liv. 2. 46; 4. 57; 9. 43 § 18; 25. 31; Sen. *Dial.* 11. 5 § 4; Curt. 6. 4 § 24; Quint. 2. 5 § 16; Suet. *Gram.* 2; **assumere** Tac. *A.* 6. 8; **ponere** Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 8.

**exitio** 'fatal', 'the ruin of': **esse** Plaut. *Bac.* 947; 953; Lucr. 6. 1129; Cic. *Q. Fr.* 1. 4; Verg. *G.* 3. 511; *A.* 9. 315; Hor. *Od.* 1. 12. 18; Liv. 4. 9; Val. M. 7. 2. ext. 1; Sen. *Dial.* 7. 1; Plin. 7 § 69; 8 § 79; 28 § 149; Stat. *Silv.* 2. 1. 214 (without *est*); Tac. *A.* 3. 28; *ib.* 55; 11. 24; *H.* 1. 80; Suet. *Jul.* 1; Just. 12. 7; 45. 4. **exstare** Pseudo-Cic. *Or. pr. q. in exil.* 9; **haberi** Tac. *A.* 6. 30.

? **experimento** *fidei super ipsam Rheni ripam collocanti* Tac. *G.* 28. (dat. or abl.?)

**exscidio venire** 'come to devastate': Verg. *A.* 1. 22.

**expectationi** 'a thing to wait for': **esse** Plaut. *Mil.* 1179 *ex conj.* (*in expectatione* Lorenz).

[**extersui** Plaut. *Curr.* 573 *Intusum extersui* (so Fleck.) 'a wiping towel'. Comp. *amictui, esui*.]

? **famæ esse** Cato *R. R.* 3; and perhaps Plaut. *Trin.* 629. see p. xxxvi.

**fastidio** 'a cause of disgust', 'wearisome': **esse** Val. M. 6. 3. ext. 1; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 10. *præf.* § 1; Sen. *Dial.* 9. 2 § 23; *ib.* § 15; 12. 7; *Ben.* 6. 16; *Ep.* 100 § 2; Curt. 4. 10 § 3; 5. 5 § 12; 10. 2 § 23; Plin. 7 § 8; 29 § 28; Tac. *H.* 1. 7.

**firmamento** 'a stay' **esse** Cæs. *Gov.* 2. 15.

**flagitio** 'a disgrace': **esse** Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 1. 3; Fronto p. 23; Naber.

**formidini** i.e. 'to inspire dread': **esse** Sall. *C.* 20 § 7; Sen. *Ir.* 2. 11.

? **fortunæ** 'a piece of luck': **esse** Cæs. *G.* 6. 30 (*magne*); (dat. or gen.?)

**fraudi** 'cause of risk' or 'of damage'; **esse** Cic. *Rosc. Am.* 17; *Verr.* 2. 71; 3. 40; *Clu.* 33; *Mur.* 35; *Rab. Post.* 7; *Phil.* 5. 12; *ib.* 14; 8. 9; *ib.* 11; *Att.* 5. 21 § 12; *Fam.* 1. 5 a (*majori*); 7. 26; *Lucr.* 6. 187; *Ov. Trist.* 2. 463; *Nux.* 106; *Liv.* 1. 47 § 9; 3. 53; *ib.* 54; 7. 41 bis; 27. 17; 30. 19; 33. 20; *S. C. ap. Liv.* 39. 14; *ib.* 19; *Val. M.* 6. 1. 13; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 9. 27 § 9; *Sen. Ben.* 1. 3; *Suet. Aug.* 54; *Fronto* p. 102 Naber.

*Lex Rubr.* 21 *id ei fraudi pænæve ne esto*; *Fragm. Tuder.* (Bruns p. 90) *id ei fraudi multæ pænæ ne esto*: *Lex de imp. Vesp. fin.* (Bruns p. 94) *id ei ne fraudi esto*; *S. C. de ædif. non dir.* (Bruns p. 111) *ne quid fraudi multæ pænæque esset Celsillæ*.

**fructui** 'source of profit'; **esse** *Varr. R. R.* 3. 3 § 1; Cic. *Man.* 6; *Fam.* 10. 5 (*majori*); *Liv.* 5. 4; 34. 36; *Suet. Gr.* 24; *Papin. ap. Dig.* 6. 1. 64 (*ea quæ usui, non fructui, sunt*).

**frugi** 'thrifty'; **esse** *Plaut. Asin.* 175; 498; *Bac.* 370; 654; *Epid.* 3. 4. 57; *Mil.* 1360; *Pæn.* 3. 4. 11; 5. 2. 3; *Trin.* 1182; *Ter. Eun.* 608; 816; *Haut.* 597; Cic. *T. D.* 3. 8; Cic. *fil. ap. C. Fam.* 16. 21 (*vita est frugi*); *Hor. Ep.* 1. 16. 49; *Petron.* 75; 140 (*tam frugi*); *censere Pl. Cas.* 3. 2. 32; *dicl Hor. S.* 1. 3. 49; *existimare C. Fam.* 5. 6; *Plin. Pan.* 88; *fieri C. Phil.* 2. 28; *habere Mart.* 6. 21. 8 (*tam frugi*); *haberi Pl. Men.* 577; *reri Pl. Asin.* 857; 861; *videri Pl. Pers.* 841 (*sat frugi*).

*bonæ frugi esse Pl. As.* 602; *Capt.* 956; *Cas.* 2. 4. 5; *ib.* 5. 19; *Curc.* 521; *Pæn.* 4. 2. 23; 5. 4. 56; *Pseud.* 339; 468; *Trin.* 321; *Truc.* 20; Cic. *Att.* 4. 8; *arbitrari Pl. Merc.* 321 (where *Ambr.* has *bona hercle fruge*). (*Gellius* 6 (7) 11 § 1, and later writers use *bonæ frugis*: see *Charis.* p. 105, ed. Keil.)

**frugi** is used attributively as indecl. adj. generally in nom. or acc.; with *homo Pl. Epid.* 5. 2. 27; *Trin.* 1018 (*cum frugi hominibus*); *Ter. Haut.* 580 (*hominis*); *Ad.* 959; *Nov.* 61 ed. Ribb.; *Laber.* 18 ed. Ribb.: *Syr.* 190; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 27 (*plane frugi*); *Dejot.* 9; *T. D.* 3. 8; 4. 16; *Brut. ad Cic.* 1. 6. 2; *Corp. I. R.* nō. 1098; *Petron.* 73; *Quint.* 1. 6. 29; also with other words: *quisquam Pl. Curc.* 502; *servus Pl. Cas.* 2. 37 (*servo frugi*); *ib.* 50; *mancipium Hor. S.* 2. 7. 3; *populus Hor. Ep.* 2. 3. 207; *filia Phædr.* 4. 5. 5; by itself, *Mart.* 12. 62. 14; and as epithet of a woman, *Hor. S.* 2. 5. 81 (*tam frugi tamque*



*padica*); *Corp. I. R.* 1256 *bona proba frugei salve*); 1301 (*p. f. frugi*); 1072 *Pontia uxor fruge bona padica arce*): as name of L. Piso *C. I. R.* 2. 28; *Fest.* 17 § 39; and on coins of L. Piso *C. I. R.* 411; of C. Piso *ib.* 463; of M. Piso *ib.* 501; and in *inscr. C. I. R.* 594.

In post-Augustan writers also used of things *atrium* *Plin. Ep.* 2. 17 § 4; *cena* *Juv.* 3. 167; *Plin. Ep.* 3. 1; *ib.* 19; *jentacula* *Mart.* 13. 31; *victus* *Quint.* 5. 10. 21.

*frustratui* 'to trick'; *habere* *Pl. Men.* 695 (*Quando tu me bene merentem tibi habes despiciatui. Nisi feres argentum frustra's: me ducere non potes. Aliam posthac invenito quam habeas frustratui*).

*gaudio* 'a joy'; *esse* *Pl. Pen.* 5. 4. 47; *Sall. J.* 9; *Liv.* 26. 37; *Plin. Ep.* 2. 11 § 1; 4. 19 § 1.

*gloriæ* 'a glory'; *esse* *Cato R. R.* 3; *Plaut. Trin.* 629 (? see p. xxxvi); *Cic. Planc.* 36 (*maxime*); *Fam.* 5. 12 § 7; 10. 5 (*majori*); *Sall. J.* 6; *ib.* 7 § 2; *Liv.* 27. 20; 34. 58 § 7; 40. 15 § 5; *ib.* § 8; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 9. 24 § 15; *Sen. Clem.* 1. 3; *Quint.* 6. 1. 12; *Suet. Gram.* 24; *Just.* 28. 2 (*minori*); *ducere* *C. Gracch.* ap. *Gell.* 11. 10; *haberi* *Just.* 43. 3.

*gratulationi* 'a voice of congratulation'; *esse* *C. Mar.* 5, following *adjumento* and *solacio*.

*honori* 'an honour'; *esse* *Plaut. Epid.* 1. 1. 31; *Corn.* 4. 13; *Cic. Or.* 1. 8; *ib.* 25 (*magno*); *Planc.* 10 bis; *Mil.* 35; *Phil.* 13 fin.; *Lecl.* 19; *Off.* 1. 39; 2. 17 (*magno*); *ib.* (*summo*); 3. 20 (*summo*); *Fam.* 5. 2 (*summo*); *Att.* 3. 22; 11. 3; ap. *Rutil. Lup.* 1. 3 (*honoris* MSS.); *Cæs.* ap. *Gell.* 4. 16; *Sall. C.* 12; *Liv.* 3. 68; 4. 3; 25. 31; 26. 4; 27. 17; 45. 15; *Curt.* 3. 7 § 12 (*magno*); 7. 5 § 42; *Veil.* 2. 95; *Fronto* p. 195 Naber; *duci* *Sall. J.* 11; *habere* *Sall. J.* 31 § 10; (*al. honores*) *Tac. A.* 3. 32; *interpretari* *Plin.* 15 § 91; *dari* *Fronto* p. 136 Naber.

*hortamento* 'an encouragement'; *esse* *Sall. J.* 98.

[*hospitio patere* *Verg. A.* 1. 199; but more probably ablative.]

*hypothecæ* 'mortgaged'; *esse* *Gai. Dig.* 20. 1. 1. 15 § 2; *Marcian.* *ib.* 1. 11 § 3; &c. *dare* *Marcian. Dig.* 20. 1. 1. 11 § 2; *ib.* 1. 16 often; &c.

*ignominia* 'a disgrace'; *esse* *S. C.* ap. *Liv.* 39. 19; *haberi* *Tac. A.* 3. 32.

**impedimento** 'a hindrance'; **esse** Plaut. *Cas.* prol. 61; Ter. *Andr.* 707; Corn. 1. 12; 2. 11 (*maximo*); 4. 1; Cic. *Inv.* 2. 30; ib. 31; ib. 33; Rosc. *Am.* 4; ib. 51; Vat. 6; Balb. 7; Flac. 28; Rab. 7; Fam. 3. 10 § 6; 10. 22; 11. 2 § 3; Cæs. G. 1. 25 (*magno*); 2. 25; Civ. 3. 46 (*magno*); Bell. *Alex.* 23; ib. 61 (*magno*); Sall. *J.* 97 (*nullo*); Liv. 4. 13; 6. 15; 8. 32; 9. 18; 26. 24; 28. 2; 38. 40 § 13; 39. 39 § 7; 40. 51; 41. 11; 44. 46; 45. 39 § 18; Cels. 8. 25; Val. M. 1. 1 § 8; 5. 1 § 5; 6. 9 § 5; Curt. 4. 2 § 15 (*magno*); Quint. 1. 2 § 12; 2. 5 § 2; 5. 10 § 123; 5. 14 fin.; 7 præf. § 2; 11. 3 § 142; Plin. *Ep.* 6. 28; Tac. *A.* 14. 15.

**impensæ** 'an expense'; **esse** Liv. 28. 45.

**indicio** 'evidence'; **esse** Ter. *Haut.* 384; *Ad.* 4; Varr. *L. L.* 7. 4; Cic. *Dom.* 42; Or. *prid. q. in exil.* 11; Lucr. 2. 433; 4. 1019; Nep. 6. 3; 20. 2; 25. 16; Verg. *G.* 2. 182; Liv. 3. 6; 7. 33; 22. 61 § 10; 23. 19; 44. 46 fin.; Hygin. ap. Macr. *Sat.* 1. 7 § 24; Plin. 6 § 1; 7 § 69; ib. § 210; 14 § 88; 15 § 87; 19 § 17; § 169; 22 § 78; 29 § 58; 33 § 15; 36 § 185; 37 § 43.

**indutui** 'a shirt'; Varr. *L. L.* 5 § 131 (*Indutui alterum quod subtus, a quo subucula; alterum quod supra, &c.*); ib. 10 § 27 (*eam dicimus muliebrem tunicam, quæ de eo genere est, quo indutui mulieres ut uterentur est institutum*); **gerere** Tac. *A.* 16. 4. Comp. above **amictul**.

**infamiæ** 'discreditable'; **esse** Ter. *Andr.* 444; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 62; Liv. 29. 9 fin.; 39. 6.

**invidiæ** 'a cause of ill-will'; **esse** Cato ap. Fronton. p. 100 Naber; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 62; 5. 8; Sall. *J.* 73; Nep. 10. 4 (*magnæ*); Prop. 1. 12. 9; Ov. *Am.* 3. 3. 17; ib. 3. 12. 14; Met. 10. 731; Liv. 2. 52; 4. 49; ib. 53; 29. 9 fin.; Tac. *H.* 2. 95.

**iræ** 'cause of anger'; **esse** Verg. *A.* 10. 714 (*justæ*); commented on by Macrob. *Sat.* 66 § 9.

**irridiculo** 'a laughing-stock'; **haberi** Plaut. *Cas.* 5. 2. 3; *Pæn.* 5. 4. 10.

**irrisul** 'an object of derision'; **esse** Cæs. *C.* 2. 15; Plin. 22 § 15; Tac. *A.* 14. 39; *H.* 1. 7.

**jucunditati** 'an enjoyment'; **esse** Cic. *Dom.* 28 (*tantæ*).

**labori** 'a trouble'; **esse** Plaut. *Rud.* 190; Ter. *Haut.* 82 Wagner; C. *Verr.* 1. 6; Hor. *S.* 1. 8. 18.

- lætitia** 'a delight'; **esse** Sall. *C.* 51 § 34; Nep. 13. 2 (*tantæ*); Liv. 45. 13 (*tantæ*); Ov. *M.* 8. 430.
- laniatui** 'object for mangling' i.e. 'torn to pieces'; **esse** Val. *M.* 9. 2. ext. 11.
- laudi** 'creditable'; **esse** Ter. *Ad.* 382; 418; Corn. 3. 7; Cic. *Fam.* 2. 7 (*sempiternæ*); 5. 8; 13. 73; Nep. 15. 2 (*magnæ*); Hor. *S.* 2. 3. 99 (*magnæ*); Ov. *F.* 5. 290; **dare** Cic. *Clu.* 19; *Planc.* 36; *T. D.* 1. 2; *Off.* 1. 21; Tac. *Or.* 19 (*laudi dabatur*; al. *laudabat*); **ducere** Ter. *Ad.* 5; 105; Nep. præf. § 4.
- levamento** 'an alleviation'; **esse** Cic. *Att.* 12. 43; Sen. *Dial.* 11. 9 init. (*magno*).
- levationi** 'relief'; **esse** Cic. *Fam.* 6. 4 § 5 (*magnæ*).
- libertati** 'liberty,' i.e. 'cause of liberty'; **esse** Plaut. *Pæn.* 5. 4. 48 (following *gaudio* and *voluptati*).
- lubidini** 'a lust'; **esse** Sall. *J.* 89.
- lucro** 'a gain'; **esse** Pl. *As.* 192; *Cist.* 1. 1. 52; *Men.* 355; *Mil.* 675; Ter. *Hec.* 287; Anton. ap. C. *Phil.* 13. 19; Pseudo-Ov. *Nux* 41; **jacere** Lucr. 5. 875.
- ludibrio** 'a jest, sport'; **esse** Cic. *Verr.* 5. 38; *Ep. ad Brut.* 1. 2 § 2; Sall. *C.* 13; ib. 20 § 9; *J.* 31 § 2; Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 1. 5; in Cic. sub init.; Liv. 1. 41; 2. 23; 4. 12; 5. 45; 9. 2; 24. 34; 39. 4; 40. 4; ib. 22; Val. *M.* 6. 2 § 4; 9. 1 § 8; Curt. 6. 11 § 4; Tac. *Agr.* 31; [In Liv. 1. 7 *ludibrio fratris* we have probably ablative]; **habere** Plaut. *Cas.* 3. 5 19; 5. 1. 13; *Epid.* 5. 2. 1; *Men.* 396; 782; Ter. *Hec.* 149; 526; Lucr. 5. 1235; Sall. *J.* 34; Liv. 28. 40; Sen. *Dial.* 6. 14; [*opponi* Corn. 4. 3. 9 probably belongs to § 1163; *retentus* Plin. *Ep.* 8. 14 § 8 to § 1142.]
- ludificatui** 'sport'; **habere** Plaut. *Pæn.* 5. 4. 2 *ex conj.*
- luxuriæ** 'a luxury'; **esse** Sall. *J.* 89.
- maculæ** 'a stain'; **esse** Corn. 4. 35; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 62.
- mærori** 'a grief'; **esse** Cic. *Or.* 3. 3 bis; Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 2. 4 (*quanto*); Sen. *Dial.* 6. 24.
- maledicto** 'a term of reproach'; **esse** Sen. *Ep.* 115 § 11.
- malo** 'harm'; **esse** Plaut. *Curc.* 499; *Mil.* 492 (*magno*); *Men.* 355; Corn. 2. 24; Cic. *Par.* 1 § 7; *Att.* 14. 22; Nep. 7. 7; Ov. *Ep.* 16 (17), 147; *Met.* 2. 597; Phædr. 5. 4. 12; Pseudo-Ovid *Nux* 108; 109; Sen. *N. Q.* 2. 49; *Ep.* 94 § 67; **vertere** Tac. *A.* 6. 19.

[**mancipio dare** Plaut. *Curc.* 494; *Pers.* 525, 589; Lucr. 3. 971; Cic. *Att.* 13. 50 bis; *Top.* 10 ter; Sen. *Ep.* 72 § 7; Gai. *Inst.* 1. 121; 4. 79; *Corp. I. R.* ii. 5042. Inscr. ap. Bruns p. 132 sq.; **accipere** Plaut. *Curc.* 495; Cic. *Agr.* 3. 2; Gai. l. c.; Inscr. l. c. &c. I take *mancipio* as abl. 'by handtake', for which the later language used *mancipatione* from the secondary verb *mancipare*. See § 1243. **Dono dare** is different; because *donum* is the effect of a transaction, not the mode of transacting.]

**melli** 'honey'; **esse** Hor. *S.* 2. 6. 32.

**miraculo** 'a surprise'; **esse** Liv. 1. 27; ib. 45; 25. 8; 42. 62; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 1. 2 § 17; Plin. 7 § 6; ib. § 180; 11 § 111; 34 § 41; 36 § 59 (*magno*); Tac. *A.* 4. 66.

**miseriæ** 'a source of misery'; **esse** Sall. *G.* 10.

**molestiæ** 'an annoyance'; **esse** Plaut. *Asin.* 571; *Curc.* 501; *Pæn.* prol. 35 (dat. or plur. nom.?); Cic. *Att.* 6. 2 § 1 (*magne*).

**monumento** 'a monument'; **esse** Liv. 1. 12; 2. 33; 4. 16; 8. 11.

**moræ** 'to cause delay'; **esse** Plaut. *Bac.* 224; Ter. *Ad.* 712; ib. 904 (*hoc mihi moræ est*); L. 7. 34 (*id moræ Samnitibus esset*); *Bell. Afr.* 1 (*sibi moræ quicquam esse* dat. or gen.?); L. 35. 38 (*quid moræ esset?*) [In C. *Verr.* 4. 64 *ut aliquid esset moræ* the case appears to be the genitive. So also in L. 22. 12 *nihil aliud, quam quod impar erat imperio, moræ ad rempublicam præcipitandam habebat.*]

**morbo** 'a cause of disease'; **esse** Plaut. *Truc.* 2. 5. 14; Lucr. 6. 1095.

**mortī** 'a cause of death'; **esse** Cic. *Flac.* 8; *Phil.* 9. 1; Lucr. 6. 1095.

**multæ esse** 'to be cause for fine'; see under **fraudi**.

**munerī** 'as a present'; **accipere** Tac. *A.* 14. 31; **dare** Nep. 8. 4; 17. 8; 23. 12; Quint. 1. 10. 16; Suet. *Gram.* 21; **mittere** Catull. 12. 15; Nep. 4. 2; 25. 8; Val. M. 4. 8. ext. 1; Plin. 37 § 74.

**munimento** 'a defence'; **esse** Sall. *J.* 47; 50; 97.

**neglectul** 'a matter to neglect'; **esse** Ter. *Haut.* 357 (*neglectumst Bemb.*).

**noxæ esse** 'to be prejudicial' Sall. *Or. Phil.* § 1; Suet. *Oth.* 10; Tac. *A.* 3. 13; 4. 36 [**dedere** Liv. 26. 29; Col. 1 proæm; see Gai. *Inst.* 4. 75 sq.; ap. *Dig.* 9. 4 passim; Just. *Inst.* 4. 8. I think *noxæ* was not originally a predicative dative (see § 1163);

but, by Justinian's time at any rate, it came to be so considered, as is shewn by the definition *noxæ est corpus quod nocuit*. In a few places e.g. *Dig.* 4. 3. 9; 9. 4. 8 (*si dederis, dederit*) probably by mistake the perfect of *dare*, not *dedere*, is found. But always, I believe *deditio*, not *datio*; *dedendo*, not *dando* &c.]

**noxæ esse** 'to be prejudicial'; *Liv.* 8. 18 (some MSS. *noxæ*); *10.* 19; 33. 20; 34. 19; 36. 7; *Cels. ap. Dig.* 17. 1. 48 pr.

**oblectamento** 'an amusement'; **esse** *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 13; *Sen. Ben.* 6. 1.

**obtrectationi** 'ground for reproach'; **esse** *Tac. Agr.* 1.

**odio** 'hateful'; **esse** *Plaut. Curc.* 499; *Men.* 111; *Merc.* 81; *Mil.* 748; *Pæn. prol.* 50; *ib.* 4. 2. 100; *Pseud.* 1264; *Trin.* 632; *Truc.* 1. 2. 23; *Turpil. ap. Non. p.* 2; *Ter. Hec.* 343; *Cic. Verr.* 1. 13; 2. 5 (*tanto quanto*); 4. 7; *ib.* 30; *Agr.* 2. 37; *Mur.* 40; *Flac.* 8; *ib.* 29; *Vat.* 3; *Mil.* 21 (*quanto*); *Fin.* 5. 22; *Fam.* 12. 10 (*tanto*); *Att.* 4. 8; *Cæ. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 6; *Cass. ap. C. Fam.* 15. 19 (*quanto*); *Catull.* 66. 15; *Hirt. G.* 8. 7 (*summo*); *Pseudo-Cæs. Bell. Alex.* 53; *Verg. B.* 8. 33; *Hor. Epist.* 1. 14. 11; *ib.* 2. 1. 101; *Liv.* 3. 42; 35. 19; *Ov. Met.* 2. 438; *Rutil. Lup.* 2. 1. (*magno*); *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 7. 18 § 7; *Val. M.* 5. 1. ext. 2; *Sen. Dial.* 7. 7; *ib.* 19; *Ir.* 1. 14 bis; *Quint.* 3. 7 § 24; *Tac. A.* 15. 21. **habere** *Plaut. Men.* 111; *Pers.* 206; *Ov. Rem.* 124; *Sen. Ben.* 5. 5; **venire** *Plin.* 28 § 106.

**offensioni** 'annoyance'; **esse** *Cic. Att.* 13. 23 (*majori*).

**oneri** 'a burden'; **esse** *Lucr.* 5. 539; *ib.* 541; *Cæs. C.* 1. 32; *Cic. ap. Rutil. Lup.* 1. 3 (MSS. *oneris*); *Sall. C.* 2; *ib.* 10; *J.* 14 § 5; *Ep. Pomp.* § 9; *Liv.* 1. 56; 23. 43; *ib.* 48; 42. 1; *Ov. Ep.* 16. 167; *A. A.* 2. 586; *Met.* 10. 195; *Sen. Ben.* 6. 16; *Plin.* 11 § 78; 18 § 31; *Tac. A.* 2. 37; **haberi** *Tac. H.* 4. 3.

**operæ** 'matter for attention'; **esse** (e.g. *mibi non est operæ*, 'I have not time') *Plaut. Amph.* 151; *Mil.* 252; 817; *Merc.* 10; 917; *Pseud.* 377; *Truc.* 4. 4. 30; *Enn. ap. Pers.* 6. 9; *Liv.* 1. 24; 4. 8; 5. 15; 9. 23; 21. 9; 29. 17; 33. 20; 41. 26; 44. 36; *Sen. Rhet. Suas.* 6 § 23. See § 1283.

**opprobrio** 'ground for reproach'; **esse** *Nep.* 9. 3; *Ov. Trist.* 2. 445; *Quint.* 3. 7 § 19; *Suet. Gram.* 24.

**optentul** 'a cloak' (metaph.); **esse** *Sall. Or. Lep.* § 24; *Pseudo-*



Sall. *ad Cæs.* 2. 11; Val. M. 6. 5. 4; Tac. *H.* 1. 49; in apposition Tac. *H.* 2. 14; **sumi** Tac. *A.* 1. 10.

**ornamento** 'a distinction'; **esse** Cic. *In v.* 1. 4; *Rosc. Am.* 49; *Verr.* Act. 1. 5; 4. 3; ib. 33; ib. 54 bis; *Font.* 21; *Balb.* fin.; *Off.* 2. 18; *Fam.* 3. 10 § 9 (*magno*); 11. 22 (*magno*); 13. 34 (*maximo*); ib. 36 (*magno*); ib. 49 (*majori*); *Cæs. G.* 1. 44; 7. 15; *Nep.* 10. 2 (*quanto*); *Sen. Dial.* 18; *Quint.* 5 fin.

**ornatu** 'an ornament'; **esse** *Cæs. ap. Gell.* 4. 16.

**ostentui esse** 'to show off'; Sall. *J.* 24; Tac. *A.* 15. 64; in apposition Tac. *A.* 12. 14; *H.* 1. 78; **abicere** Tac. *A.* 1. 29; **credere**, 'believe it to be' Sall. *J.* 46; **ire** Tac. *A.* 15. 29; **mittere** Tac. *H.* 3. 35.

? **perfidiae esse** Pseudo-Sall. *in Cic.* sub init. Read *prædæ*?

**periculo** 'a source of danger'; **esse** Cic. *Verr.* 4. 49; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 11; *Sen. Ir.* 3. 43; *Suet. Oth.* 10.

**pernicii** (cf. § 360) 'a cause of destruction'; **esse** *Nep.* 8. 2; 12. 4.

**pigneri** 'a pledge'; **esse** *Plaut. Most.* 978; *Cato R. R.* 147; 149; 150; *C. Clu.* 67; *Curt.* 7. 10 § 9; 10. 2 § 26; *Edict. ap. Dig.* 20. 1. 1. 11; *Gai. ib.* 1. 15 § 2; *Papin. ib.* 1. 1 § 2; *Jul. ap. Dig.* 30. 86; and other places; **accipi** Tac. *H.* 3. 65; *Paul. ap. Dig.* 9. 4. 1. 22; **dare** *Ulp. ap. Dig.* 4. 3. 9; *Papin. ap. Dig.* 20. 1. 1. 1 quater; ib. 4. 1. 1; &c. **ponere** *Ulp. ap. Dig.* 13. 7. 1. 27; **retinere** *Plaut. Capt.* 651.

**pœnæ** 'a ground of penalty'; **esse** *Lex xii. Tab. ap. Gell.* 20. 1 § 12 (where *pœnæ* appears to have been taken for nom. plur. by Festus p. 371 ed. Müll.): *Prop.* 4. 5 (6), 20; *Mela* 3 § 35. See also under **fraudi**. In Sall. *J.* 69 *urbs cuncta pœnæ aut prædæ fuit*, the datives (or genitives) mean 'an object of punishment or plunder.'

**potui** 'a drink'; **esse** *Sext. Æl.?* *ap. Gell.* 4. 1; Tac. *G.* 23; *Ulp. ap. Dig.* 33. 9. 3 ter; 50. 16. 43; (see under **esui**); **dare** *Cels.* 2. 13; 3. 6; ib. 9; 4. 11 (5); 14 (7); ib. 16 (9); ib. 19 (12); 21 (14); &c. *Plin.* 13 § 131; 21 § 136; 22 § 26; ib. 49; 29 § 50; **sumere** *Cels.* 4. 8 (4); **offerre** *Cels.* 4. 20 (13); **præstare** *Cels.* 4. 12 (5). See p. xxxiii.

**prædæ** 'plunder', 'source of plunder'; **esse** *Varr. R. R.* 2. 9 § 3; *Cic. Verr.* 3. 37; 5. 31; Sall. *C.* 21; ib. 48; (*J.* 69 see under **pœnæ**); Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 1. 5; *Liv.* 1. 56; 3. 29; 4. 51;

9. 36; 24. 24; ib. 36; 25. 25; 26. 39; 31. 28; 33. 46; Curt. 5. 1 § 6; Quint. præf. 14; Just. 30. 4; 31. 1<sup>1</sup> (*præda* Jeep.); (See also under *perfidia*.) *habere* Sall. J. 31 § 10; *jacere* Lucr. 5. 875. Probably here belong *dari* Liv. 2. 25; Tac. *A.* 1. 57; *relinquere* Liv. 27. 44; possibly *nascens* Plin. 8 § 219. Comp. however p. 59. note 11.

*præmio* 'reward', 'ground for reward'; *esse* Nep. 4. 4; 23. 10 (both *magne*); Liv. 24. 45; 31. 28.

*præsidio* 'a protection', 'a garrison'; *esse* Scip. Æmil. ap. Fest. p. 151 Müller; Varr. *R. R.* 2. 9. 3; ib. 6; Cic. *Inu.* 1. 4; Quint. 1 (*nullio*); Ferr. 1. 58; 2. 56; 5. 65; Planc. 33; Mil. 26; Phil. 3. 15; 7. 4; Fam. 3. 10 § 3 (*summo*); ib. § 9 (*magne*); 15. 2 § 7; Or. *prid. q. in exil.* 9; Planc. ap. C. Fam. 10. 7 (*maximo*); Pomp. ap. C. Att. 8. 12. A; Lucr. 2. 643; Cæs. G. 1. 25; ib. 44; 2. 19; 5. 9; 6. 34; 7. 15; ib. 57; Crat. 2. 8 (*magne*); 3. 46; ib. 89; ib. 99; ib. 101; Hirt. G. 8. 29; Pseudo-Cæs. *Bell. Afr.* 46; 55; 85 bis; Sall. C. 36; J. 19; ib. 93; Or. *Phil.* 21; Nep. 9. 2; 17. 7; 25. 10; Liv. 6. 6 § 14; 21. 21; 22. 57; 25. 31; 26. 2; 27. 8 (ex Madv. conj.); 29. 5; ib. 25; 31. 11; 35. 29; 37. 22; 42. 67; 44. 4; Colum. 6. 3 § 3; 11. 2 § 71; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 11; Plin. 28 § 35; 30 § 135; Plin. *Ep.* 3. 2 § 31.

In apposition Liv. 22. 23; *adesse* Sall. J. 85 § 4; *ducere* 'to lead' Cæs. C. 3. 7; Tac. *A.* 3. 9; *deduci* Cæs. C. 2. 19; *educi* Cæs. C. 2. 23; *mittere* Cic. *Cat.* 3. 2; Hirt. G. 8. 11; ib. 17; Cæs. C. 3. 75; Sall. J. 106; *præmittere* Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Afr.* 60; *proficisci* Nep. 17. 3; *relinquere* Cæs. G. 3. 26; 5. 11; 6. 32; 7. 40; ib. 49; 60; 62; 68; C. 1. 41 bis; ib. 55; 63; 69; 2. 22; ib. 39; 3. 36; ib. 89; 95; 101; Pseudo-Cæs. *Bell. Alex.* 76; Liv. 1. 59; 22. 59; 29. 22 fin.; 37. 59; 44. 38; *restare* Hirt. G. 8. 35; *stare* Tac. *A.* 1. 8; *transire* Cæs. C. 1. 40.

*probro* 'a disgrace'; *esse* Cic. *Rosc. Am.* 17; *Dom.* 53; *Vat.* 2 (*quanto*); Sen. *Ep.* 115 § 11; Fronto p. 235 Naber; *ducere* 'consider' Pl. *Amph.* 492; Scip. Æm. ap. Macr. *Sat.* 3. 14. 7; *haberi* Sall. C. 12.

<sup>1</sup> Madvig (as I have since seen) makes the same correction, *Adv.* II. 617.



**propugnaculo** 'a bulwark'; **esse** Cic. *Verr.* 5. 34.

**pudori** 'a source of shame', i.e. 'a thing to be ashamed of'; **esse** Hor. *Od.* 2. 4. 1; *A. P.* 406; Sulp. ap. Tibull. 4. 7. 1; Ov. *Am.* 3. 14. 21; *Met.* 5. 526; 7. 687; Liv. 24. 24; 34. 58 § 7; 40. 15 § 6; Val. M. 9. 5. ext. 1; Tac. *A.* 2. 37; 4. 57.

**quæstui** 'gain'; **esse** Cic. *Quint.* 3; *Verr.* 3. 7 (*magno*); ib. 37; ib. 40; ib. 71; 5. 49; ib. 52; Sall. *J.* 31 § 12; Liv. 3. 68; 4. 30; **habere** Plaut. *Pæn.* 3. 3. 13; Cic. *Off.* 2. 22; Cæs. *C.* 3. 60.

**receptaculo** 'a retreating place'; **esse** Liv. 9. 41.

**receptui** 'a retreating place'; **esse** Sall. *J.* 50. [The expressions **canere receptui**, **signum receptui** appear to belong to § 1156. They occur as follows: **canere** Cic. *Phil.* 12. 3; *T. D.* 3. 15; *R. P.* 1. 2; Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Alex.* 47; L. 3. 22; 22. 29; 26. 44; 27. 42; ib. 47; Quintil. 12. 11 § 4; Plin. *Ep.* 3. 1 § 11; Tac. *H.* 2. 26; **cani** Cæs. *G.* 7. 47; Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Afr.* 40; L. 4. 31; 26. 6 § 7; Colum. 6. 23; **signum** Cic. *Phil.* 13. 7; Liv. 2. 62; ib. 64; 25. 19; ib. 37; 26. 45; Curt. 4. 6 § 10. In L. 3. 22, and 26. 44, *receptui* appears to be subject to *canit*.]

**?rei esse** Cato *R. R.* 3. (See above p. xxxvi.) Front. p. 107 Naber.

**religioni** 'a ground of pious scruples'; **esse** Liv. 5. 13; ib. 31; 41. 16; **habere** Cic. *Div.* 1. 35; *Off.* 2. 14; Atei. Cap. ap. Gell. 4. 6 fin.

**remedio** 'a remedy'; **esse** Corn. 3. 12; Liv. 5. 52; 26. 2; Cels. 4. 27 (20); Curt. 9. 10 § 1; Col. 6. 4 § 3; 6 § 2; 7 § 2; 10 § 2; 13 § 1; 27. 11; 30 § 3; 12. 11; Plin. 11 § 90; 12 § 78; 21 § 108; 22 § 116; 23 § 149 (*præsenti*, cf. p. xxix.); 25 § 152; ib. § 165; 28 § 45; 29 § 39; ib. § 88; ib. § 89; 32 § 56.

**ridiculo** 'a joke'; **esse** Ter. *Eun.* 1004.

**risui** 'a subject of laughter'; **esse** Liv. 4. 35; 6. 34.

**rubori** 'a cause of blushing'; **esse** Ov. *A. A.* 3. 83; Liv. 45. 13 (*ruboris* MSS.); Sen. *Ben.* 4. 36 (*magno*); Tac. *A.* 11. 17; 14. 55.

**saluti** 'a cause of safety'; **esse** Plaut. *Capt.* 952; *Merc.* 143; *Most.* 351; Lucil. ap. Non. 13 (v. 7, ed. Müll.); Cic. *Inu.* 1. 38; *Verr.* 4. 49; 5. 31; ib. 46; *Rosc. Am.* 28; *Lig.* 5; *Arch.* 1; *Planc.* 1; *Agr.* 2. 18; *Or.* 1. 9; 2. 48; ib. 49; *Brut.* 3; *R. P.* 1.

1; *Leg.* 2 (*quantæ*); *Fam.* 15. 4 § 6; *Q. Fr.* 1. 1 § 10; *Att.* 9. 11 A; *Q. Cic. pet. cons.* 6; *Cæs. G.* 5. 44; 7. 50; *Sall. J.* 33; *Nep.* 2. 2 (*quantæ*); 8. 2; 17. 6; *Liv.* 1. 51; 5. 47; 22. 51; 31. 37; 37. 40; 41. 27 § 4; 43. 10; *Val. M.* 1. 5 § 5; *Vell.* 2. 82; *Curt.* 4. 5 § 15; 5. 1 § 5; 7. 9 § 7; 8. 4 § 10; *ib.* § 17; *ib.* 11 § 18; 9. 1 § 18.

[*satui semen* 'sowing-seed'; *Cato R. R.* 5. Compare *esui*, *extersui*.]  
*senio* 'old age'; *esse* *Plaut. Stich.* 19; *Truc.* 2. 5. 14; *Turpil. ap. Non.* 1. 2.

*sermoni* 'common talk'; *esse* *Plaut. Pseud.* 418.

*signo* 'a sign'; *esse* *Cic. Inv.* 1. 34; *ib.* 43; *ib.* (*magno*); *darl Val. M.* 1. 5. 7.

*solacio* 'a solace'; *esse* *Cic. Mur.* 5 (*magno?*); *Fam.* 6. 6 § 12 (*quanto*); 9. 1; *Cæs. C.* 1. 22; *Liv.* 40. 57; *Vell.* 2. 19. *Curt.* 4. 10 § 21; *Sen. Dial.* 6. 26; 11. 12 (*maximo*); *Ep.* 78. 3.  
*sollicitudini* 'a subject of anxiety'; *esse* *Plaut. Mil.* 671 (*summæ*); *Ter. Pb.* 588; *Q. Cic. ap. C. Fam.* 16. 8 (*magnæ*); *Sen. Dial.* 6. 24.

*spectaculo* 'a spectacle'; *esse* *Cic. Att.* 10. 2; *Nep. præf.* § 5; *Liv.* 1. 23; *ib.* 25; 2. 5; *ib.* 38; *ib.* 46; 3. 17; 25. 29; 35. 11; 41. 11; 45. 33; *Val. M.* 3. 2. 23; *Curt.* 8. 7 § 5; *Frontin. Strat.* 1. 5. 16; *Just.* 11. 13; 38. 8.

*splendori esse* 'confer splendour on'; *Corn.* 4. 15.

*stomacho esse* 'to occasion displeasure'; *Cic. Att.* 5. 1 § 4 (*majori*).

?*stratui esse*; *Testamentum ap. Bruns p.* 151 (*stratui* 'couch coverings' cf. *indutui*).

*studio* 'an object of pursuit'; *habere Ter. Ad.* 382.

*subsidio* 'reinforcement'; *esse* *Cic. Sull.* 16; *Cæs. G.* 2. 20; *Pseudo-Cæs. B. Hisp.* 31; *Ov. Ib.* 281.

In apposition *Tac. A.* 12. 29; *addi Cæs. C.* 3. 64 (or abl.); *adducere Cæs. G.* 7. 87; *comparare Cic. Quint.* 1. (but *subsidium* *Bait. Kays.*); *deponi Varr. L. L.* 5. 89; *ducere Cæs. G.* 2. 8; *C.* 3. 69; *egredi Pseudo-Cæs. B. Afr.* 25; *ire Pomp. ap. C. Att.* 8. 12 A; *Pseudo-Cæs. B. Afr.* 11; 25; *Nep.* 17. 8; *Liv.* 2. 53; 27. 27; *mittere Cæs. G.* 2. 7; *ib.* 26; 5. 15; 7. 62; *ib.* 86; *C.* 1. 40; *ib.* 55; 2. 3; *Pseudo-Cæs. B. Alex.* 21; *Bell. Hisp.* 34; *Liv.* 3. 4; 4. 58; *Nep.* 6. 3; *Stat. Theb.* 3. 10; *Tac. A.* 4. 73; *occurrere Pseudo-Cæs. Bell. Afr.* 18; 85;

**poscere** Tac. *A.* 6. 2; **proficisci** Cic. *Phil.* 5. 17; Cæs. *C.* 3. 78; Nep. 11. 2; 16. 5; **succurrere** Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Afr.* 6; **summittere** Cæs. *C.* 3. 64; **venire** Cic. *Font.* 20 (16); *Att.* 8. 7; Cæs. *G.* 5. 27; 7. 36; *C.* 1. 19; 3. 80; Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Alex.* 59; *Bell. Hisp.* 4; 7; 18; Nep. 1. 5; 12. 1; Liv. 2. 48; 3. 12; 5. 13; 8. 11; 9. 43; 27. 19; 31. 25; 35. 22; 36. 19; 40. 25; Tac. *A.* 4. 59.

**sumptui** 'an expense'; **esse** Plaut. *Mil.* 672 (*tanto*); 740 Ritschl (*quanto*); Cic. *Verr.* 1. 6; *Att.* 5. 14; Sall. *Ep. Pomp.* § 9; Liv. 23. 48; 42. 1.

[**supplemento** in apposition Liv. 8. 11, probably ind. obj. belonging to § 1156.]

**tædio** 'a (cause of) weariness'; **esse** Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 10. præf. § 1; Sen. *Dial.* 7. 7 § 4; Plin. *Ep.* 8. 18 § 8.

**tegimento** 'a covering'; **esse** Cæs. *C.* 2. 9.

**terrori** 'a terror'; **esse** Cæs. *G.* 7. 66; Sall. *J.* 7 § 4 (*maxumo*); Liv. 10. 29; 26. 2; 37. 30 (*maximo*); Vell. 2. 42; Sen. *Ir.* 2. 11; Curt. 5. 4 § 25; Plin. 28 § 30; ib. § 31 (*tanto*); ib. § 93; 31 § 28; Just. 4. 1; 14. 1.

**testimonio** 'evidence'; **esse** Cic. *Quint.* 13; *Rosc. Com.* 4; *Verr.* 5. 22; *Font.* 7 (3); *Cæcin.* 18; Planc. ap. C. *Fam.* 10. 17; Pomp. ap. C. *Att.* 8. 12 B; Cæs. *G.* 6. 28; Quint. 1. 10. 10; 12. 1. 16.

**timori** 'cause of dread'; **esse** Cic. *Har. Resp.* 20; Cæl. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 12; Sen. *Ir.* 3. 43.

**tormento** 'a torment'; **esse** Sen. *Dial.* 11. 5.

**turpitudini** 'disgraceful'; **esse** Nep. præf. 5; Rutil. *Lup.* 1. 3.

**tutelæ** 'a protection'; **esse** Fronto p. 195 Naber. (In L. 42. 19 *petere ut eum, non sub hospitum modo privatorum custodia, sed publicæ etiam curæ ac velut tutelæ vellent esse* we have probably genitives; cf. Liv. 21. 41 in § 1282.)

**veneno** 'poison'; **esse** Varr. *R. R.* 1. 2. 18.

**enerationi** 'object of awe or worship'; **esse** Vell. 2. 42; Plin. 34 § 45.

**verecundiæ** 'a cause of shame'; **esse** Liv. 3. 62; ib. 70; 9. 26 § 18.

**vestitui** 'dress'; **esse** Tac. *G.* 46.

**victui** 'food'; **esse** Tac. *G.* 46; **obicere** Varr. *R. R.* 3. 10 § 6.

[**visui præbere** Tac. *A.* 12. 21 probably not 'as a sight', but 'to the sight' (§ 1143 note 11), or 'to look at' (§ 1156).]

**vitio** 'as a fault'; **dare** Ter. *Andr.* 8; *Ad.* 418; Cic. *Rosc. Am.* 16; *Off.* 1. 21; ib. 31; 2. 17; Matius ap. C. *Fam.* 11. 28; **duci** Ter. *Ad.* 5; **vertere** Plaut. *As.* 450; *Capt.* 256; *Epid.* 1. 2. 5; 3. 3. 50; *Mil.* 1350; *Pers.* 387; *Rud.* 700; Lucr. 5. 1357; Cic. *Fam.* 7. 6; Hor. *S.* 1. 6. 85; Liv. 8. 32.

**vituperationi** 'matter for blame'; **esse** Cic. *Brut.* 25; *Fam.* 13. 73.

**voluptati** 'a source of pleasure'; **esse** Plaut. *Cas.* 2. 8. 29; *Pæn.* 1. 1. 17; 5. 4. 35 (*nimiæ*); ib. 47; *Pseud.* 1280 (*nimiæ*); *Rud.* 1183; 1373; Ter. *Haut.* 71; 1024; *Hec.* 859; Cic. *Verr.* 3. 69; 5. 52; *Mur.* 19; *Planc.* 33; *p. red. ad Quir.* 1 (*tantæ...quantæ* Schol. but abl. MSS.); *Fam.* 1. 7 fin.; 2. 10 (*magnæ*); 3. 10; *Att.* 2. 25; 14. 19 (*magnæ*); Pseudo-Cic. *pid. q. in exil.* 3; Sall. *G.* 2; Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 2. 4 (*tantæ*); *Corp. I. R.* i. 1008; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 9. 25 § 7; Sen. *Dial.* 1. 4; 9. 2 § 12; *Ir.* 3. 40; *Ben.* 2. 31; *Ep.* 98. 1; Plin. 8 § 20. **habere** Sall. *J.* 100.

**usui** 'of use', 'useful'; **esse** Plaut. *Cist.* 4. 2. 23; *Curc.* 499 (*bono*); *Men.* 358; *Merc.* 32; *Mil.* 603, 604; *Pseud.* 305 (*quanto*); Corn. 2. 17; Cic. *Inv.* 2. 35 (*magno*); *Verr.* 3. 69; *Flac.* 5 (*magno*); *Balb.* 9 (*magno*); *Phil.* 9. 7 (*magno*); 10 fin (*magno*); *Brut.* 4 (*tanto*); *Off.* 2. 4; *R. P.* 1. 20; *Fam.* 4. 3; 12. 29 (*maximo*); 13. 10; ib. 16; 20; 35; 71 (all *magno*); ib. 49 (*majori*); *Att.* 1. 1 § 3 (*magno*); 1. 2 (*maximo*); 7. 12 (*magno*); *Cæs. G.* 3. 14; 4. 20; ib. 25 (all three *magno*); 28; 31; 5. 1; 7. 41 (*magno*); ib. 55 (where *quo usui* should be retained: see above, p. xxx.); *Civ.* 1. 19; ib. 45; 2. 7 (*nullo*); ib. 8 (*magno*); ib. 15; 35; Pseudo-Cæs. *B. Alex.* 61; *B. Afr.* 47; Sall. *J.* 4 (*magno*); 14 § 1 (*maximo*); ib. § 5; 54; and see p. lvi.; Pseudo-Sall. *ad Cæs.* 2. 6; ib. 9; 12 (*maximo*); 13 fin.; Nep. 9. 2 (*magno*); Liv. 3. 33; 10. 9 (*majori*); 24. 36; ib. 46; 26. 40; 27. 45; 31. 42 (*maximo*); ib. 45; 34. 6 § 6; 37. 15; 38. 22 (*maximo*); 40. 26; 42. 27; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 36; Sen. *Ben.* 6. 1; *Ep.* 98. 1; Curt. 3. 4 § 3; 8. 14 § 16; Vell. 2. 95; Plin. 2 § 182; 8 § 97; Just. 20. 5 (*magno*); S. C. ap. Bruns. p. 111; Fronto p. 142 Naber (*magno*); Tac. *A.* 3. 54; 12. 11; 15. 15; *H.* 1.79; Papin. ap. *Dig.* 6. 1. 64.

So *bello usui esse* Sall. *G.* 32; 39; *J.* 27; 36; 37; 91; 93; *Liv.* 44. 17; *ad bellum usui* Cæs. *G.* 1. 38; Pseudo-Cæs. *Bell. Afr.* 36; *in bellum usui* *Liv.* 31. 9; *in bello usui* Sall. *J.* 43.

In apposition Tac. *A.* 11. 14; *H.* 3. 20; *habere* Tac. *A.* 3. 31.

*utilitati* 'of service'; *esse* Cic. *Or.* 1. 8; *Planc.* 5 (*magnæ*); *R. P.* 2. 9 (*quantæ*).

### Of the Ablative.

Unlike the other cases the ablative has a confused birth. It plays a very important part in Latin, but the precise arrangement of its meanings, which shall best correspond either with the historical development, or with that living sense of its analogies, which the Roman writers had, is hard to determine. The arrangement which I have made is dictated by consideration of Latin usage only, excepting that I have been assisted in assigning the ablative of 'the standard of comparison' to the ablative proper ('place whence') by the fact of the genitive, not the dative, being so used in Greek. But the analogy of other languages, even those so nearly allied as Greek and Sanskrit, must not be pressed very far in such a matter. For it would not be difficult to account for any particular use of a case on more than one theory of its origin, as correlatively we find several relations expressible by more than one case. The dative in Latin sometimes occupies the positions which a genitive (§§ 1154, 1143), or an accusative (§ 1107) might claim; the genitive stands side by side with the ablative (§§ 1201, 1309, 1335), with the accusative (§ 1333), with the locative (§§ 1190, 1325); the ablative is used where the accusative is also found (§§ 1087, 1099, 1184, 1223) and the dative (§§ 1215, 1217, 1229). Moreover a class of verbs, which have a common general meaning, may have arrived at this meaning by a different path and from a different origin, and consequently find their appropriate companion in a different case. *Rego, impero*, and *potior, laedo* and *noceo, præsto* and *excello*, have respectively a general resemblance to one another in meaning, but yet, owing to their own special history, take different cases. It requires therefore a very careful analysis of the lexicography, as well as the grammar,



of two languages, before we can fairly treat the syntactical usages, at least of some kinds, in one, as entitled to much weight in deciding on the classification and arrangement of the usages in another. Delbrück has in his tract (*Ablativ Localis Instrumentalis im Altindischen Lateinischen Griechischen und Deutschen* 1867) instituted a comparison of the Latin ablative usages with those of Sanskrit, on the principle of taking the use in the Rigveda as the clue to the assignment of these usages among the three original cases. Knowing nothing of Sanskrit, I cannot test his accuracy, but I am glad to find that in the main the distribution appears to agree with mine. Specially to the ablative proper he refers the ablative of the 'standard of comparison,' and that after verbs and adjectives of want; to the locative, the 'ablative absolute'; to the instrumental, the ablative of 'manner,' 'time throughout which,' 'road by which,' 'price,' 'part concerned,' and the ablative after verbs denoting abundance, and in such expressions as *omnibus copiis proficiscitur*. The confusion of cases is not peculiar to Latin. The old Sanskrit has the same form for ablative and dative in plural, for ablative dative and instrumental in dual, and for genitive and locative in dual.

### Of the (so-called) Genitive of value or price.

I have ventured to refer this usage to the locative<sup>1</sup> and will briefly give my reasons. Those who may not agree with me in this, will still not object to find examples of this usage placed in the Grammar in immediate neighbourhood to those of the ablative. How great the intermixture of the two cases in this meaning is, may be seen from Madvig's account: viz., (1) that the *cost* or *price* may be expressed by this genitive of *tantus*, *quantus* and the comparatives; by the ablative of *nihilum*, *tantum* and of the positives and superlatives: (2) that *value* is expressed by either the ablative or genitive after *estimo*, but, after other verbs (*duco*, *facio*, *habeo*, *pendo*, *puto*, *taxo* and *sum*), by the genitive only; and that in the language of every-day life after verbs of valuing (with a negative), *flocci*,

<sup>1</sup> Practically this is Key's view, but he calls the locative an 'old dative.' He points out that Catullus (17. 17) says, *nec pili facit uni* (not *unius*). *Lat. Gr.* § 946 note.



*nauci, assis (unius assis), teruncii, hujus* occur. There must have been some confusion or false analogy to produce such a result.

Now the only words which are shewn by their form to be genitive, as distinguished from locative, are (cf. § 1187) *pluris, minoris, majoris, hujus, assis, unius assis, decussis, centussis*. Of these *pluris* and *minoris* alone, I believe, occur more than once, and alone occur before Terence. They alone therefore seem to be of any real weight in this matter. *Pluris facere* occurs in Nævius (ap. Charis. p. 210 Keil), *pluris refert, pluris est, minoris facere* occur in Plautus; who has also *me nemo potest minoris quisquam nummo ut surgam subigere* (*Pseud.* 809) and possibly other expressions of the kind.

The use of the genitive is therefore certainly old, but it is not found in many words in the early language. Yet Latin was spoken for hundreds of years before Nævius, and simple expressions of value must have been among the earliest subjects of conversation. And there was every circumstance to make people think *tanti* and *magni* to be the genitive, and thus to give rise by a false analogy to *pluris* and *minoris*. For the form of the genitive and the locative were exactly alike both in *-o* stems and *-a* stems; indeed absolutely identical, if, as Bopp and others have supposed, the proper genitive was supplanted by the locative in these stems. Nor is this usage one, which, superficially regarded, is unlike other genitival usages. Hence if the case really was the locative, some such use as that of *pluris* and *minoris* might very probably have arisen from the specious appearance of analogy<sup>1</sup>. The existence of such true genitives in this sense is not therefore a fatal objection to the supposition that the original case was the locative.

But further, these words themselves are noticeable, especially *pluris*. If the Romans ceased to use the proper locative in these stems, it was not without reason. For, first, a locative or ablative singular from *plus* ceased to be in use in any sense. The only trace we have of it is in the assertion of Charisius (quoted in § 1187) that the ancients said *plure* or *minore emptum*, and in his quotations from Cicero and Lucilius (Keil, p. 109), and from Plautus, *plure altero tanto quanto ejus fundus esse velim* (Keil, p. 211), to which

<sup>1</sup> Compare the discussion in § 1321.

may be added Lucil. xv. 23, *præterquam in pretio primus semisse, secundus nammo, tertius jam plurest quam totu' medimnus* (so L. Müller for codd. *plures*). In all these places the case is this ablative or locative of value or cost. And, curiously enough, the only other singular form of this so-called adjective, besides *plus* itself, is *pluris*, and *pluris* is used in this sense only. And the only instance of this singular being used as an adjective, not as a substantive, is in *pluris pretii* (see § 1187). Secondly, comparatives would often have an ablative (either of the measure § 1204, or standard of comparison § 1266) dependent on them, and this fact at once gives a reason for the eventual preference of *pluris* and *minoris* to *plure* and *minore*. (In C. Att. i. 12 we have *minore centesimis* used of interest: whether *minore* occurs elsewhere I do not know. Charisius refers to it: see above.) It is clear therefore that the forms *plure*, *minore*, which may have been locatives (locative and ablative being indistinguishable in *i* and consonant stems), once existed in this sense, and were, for the above-named or for some other reason, driven out of the field by *pluris*, *minoris*. Similarly *asse carum est* (§ 1196), a phrase of Cato's, shews a construction prior to *assis*, which Catullus used.

Now, if we look to the meaning and general habit of the cases, the improbability that this use originally belonged to the genitive seems to me considerable.

1. *Tanti*, *magni*, &c., qualify verbs not substantives. *Nihil* seems to be the only word of this class, which is used more than once, and, except *triboli* in Plaut. *Pæn.* i. 2. 168, the only word used at all, with a substantive. Now the genitive, above all other cases, has the habit of depending on a noun: and, even when it does depend on a verb, seems to rest on some noun-notion in the verb; e.g. *impleo* = *plenum facio*; *indigeo* = *indigus sum*; *accuso sceleris* = *causam sceleris duco*, *memini* = *memor sum*; *pudet me* = *pudor me caput*, &c. (See also § 1327.)

2. The genitival usages most nearly approaching *tanti est*, &c., are such as (*a*) *facere ditionis, stultii esse* (§ 1282); (*b*) *facere lucri or compendi* (§ 1306); and (*c*) *vestis magni pretii* (§ 1308). But in the first two of these classes (*a b*) the person or thing denoted by the genitive is capable of being regarded as a possessor or a whole, whereas *tanti*, *magni*, &c., are words of the meagrest

meaning, not capable of filling the grooves of *stulti* or *lucri*. True, *floci*, *nauci*, &c., have somewhat more meaning, but no one will regard them as the originals and *tanti*, *magni*, &c., to be due to a supposed analogy with them. The descriptive genitive (*c*) has two characteristics: it is almost always dependent on a substantive, and itself shews a combination of adjective and substantive. If *tanti* be taken to be a substantivally used adjective, it fails to exhibit either of the two characteristics: and if we adopt the **only** other course, that of supposing the full form to have been *tanti pretii*, we must concede what should never be conceded without reluctance, an almost perpetual ellipse (of *pretii*). It is curious that while this last theory may claim in its favour the fact that *magni* (never *multi*, except in a fragment of Cato) is used, a contrary inference may be drawn from the fact that *pluris* is used and *majoris* never used, except once and that in Phædrus.

3. These simple quantitative adjectives used substantivally are a class not found in the genitive (at least in other uses) nor in the dative, the case which perhaps in character is nearest akin to the genitive; but found frequently in the adverbial accusative and the ablative, which are the cases standing nearest to the locative.

For the claims of the locative we have these considerations:

1. The form is quite right, with the exceptions of *pluris*, *minoris*, &c., and these are known to have been to some extent usurpers.

2. The locative is, like the forms under discussion, regularly dependent on verbs, not on nouns.

3. There is a similar interchange of these forms in *i* with the ablative in questions of amount (compare §§ 1186—1194 with 1196—1202), to that which is found between the locative and ablative in expressions of place where and time where. There is also some interchange with adverbs; comp. *care veneunt* (Varr. R. R. 3. 5. 2); *vilissime constare* (Cat. ap. Plin. 18 § 44): and *magni*, *pluris*, *multum*, *plus*, *magis*, *maxime*, all occur with *refert* and *interest* (cf. § 1189).

4. The meaning of the case seems to be precisely suitable. Value is naturally figured to the imagination by place on a scale. Compare English; 'at Rome,' 'at twelve o'clock,' 'at so much,' 'at a high price.'

Apart from the use of *pluris* and *minoris* I should have little or no hesitation in referring this usage to the locative; and the use of *pluris* and *minoris*, being quite capable of explanation on the locative theory, seems to me insufficient to outweigh the other considerations.

Greek can hardly be brought into the discussion, as its genitive differs in use greatly from the Latin genitive, and *πρὸς* is genitive as well as *πρός*.

The confusion prevalent in actual use arose probably thus: The forms in *i* denoted *value*; the ablative denoted *price* (as a means). The forms in *-i* became naturally applied to price, and only by accident became in this use restricted to *tanti*, and *quantū*. The use of the ablative was extended to express value after *estimo*, perhaps through some original meaning of that word, and was excluded accidentally only from *tantus*, and *quantus*. *Pluris* and *minoris* in expressions of price supplanted *plure*, *minore*, according to Charisius, after Cicero's time.

### Of the Gerund and Gerundive.

The use of the Latin Gerund and Gerundive is so remarkable and apparently anomalous, that it has been the subject of much discussion from the times of the Roman grammarians to the present. Weissenborn has written an elaborate monograph on the subject (Eisenach 1844) in which he recounts and criticises with much fairness and sense, though in a very heavy style, the different theories which have been held, and adds a learned account of the use of the forms. This has been of much service to me, though the view I take was formed before I saw Weissenborn's book. The most important of the other books dealing with the matter, so far as I know are Madvig's *Bemærkninger*, p. 39 sq.; Donaldson's *Farrinianus* (Chap. XI. § 13, pp. 418, 419 ed. 3); Corssen's *Krit. Beitr.* p. 110 sq.; Naeff's p. 138 sq.; Poter's *Etym. Forsch.* II. p. 489 sq. ed. 2; Schömann's *Die Lehre von der Redestellen*, p. 36 sq.; Schröder's paper in *Zeitschr. Vergl. Spr.* XIV. 330; and L. Tobler's paper in the same journal XVI. p. 241; Bopp, Schleichner, and L. Meyer's *Comparative Grammars*; and Ruddimann's, G. T. Krüger's,



Kühner's and Key's Latin Grammars. My view agrees most, I think, with Key's and Donaldson's, but partly with Madvig's.

I use the term *gerund* for the substantive in the nominative<sup>1</sup> as well as in the oblique cases; *gerundive* for the adjective.

The principal points on which the discussion turns are five: viz.

A. The use of the gerund in apparently both an active and passive sense; e.g. *Vir ad agendum idoneus* and *res ad tolerandum facilis*.

B. The coincidence in meaning of the oblique gerund and oblique gerundive; e.g. *cupido salutem dandi* and *cupido salutis dandæ*.

C. The meaning of *obligation* attached to the nominative use of both gerund and gerundive; e.g. *eundum est*, 'we (you, they) must go'; *hæc facienda sunt*, 'This must be done.'

D. The coincidence of meaning of the old (active) form *agitandum est vigilas* with the more usual (apparently passive) form *agitandæ sunt vigilæ*.

E. The connexion of the gerund and gerundive with such phrases as *volvenda dies (hoc) attulit ultro* (Verg. *A.* 9. 7), and with the verbal adjectives in *-bundus* and *-cundus*.

I propose first to explain the development of these different usages; secondly to discuss briefly the origin of the form; lastly to point out some analogies in other languages. I put the parts of the discussion in this order, that I may avoid appearing even to base the development either upon a particular explanation of the form, or upon the usages of other languages. For the etymology of a suffix seems to me a matter which in the present state of our knowledge scarcely admits of sure conviction; and the usages of other languages, much as they may surprise us by their resemblance to Latin, yet, unless their several histories, as well as that of the Latin usage, are known, or at least probably conjectured, may be incomparable, because not analogous, but derived from a widely different origin.

<sup>1</sup> Krüger, Madvig, and others consider *agendum* in the nominative to be the neuter of the gerundive.

## I. The connexion of the Latin usages.

A. I assume as the primary notion of the gerund, that of a neuter verbal substantive expressing action (or state), less abstract than (say) a substantive in *-ion*, and practically equivalent in meaning to a declinable infinitive (cf. § 1342). Now when the gerund denotes an action which does not require or imply an object, or when its object is expressed in grammatical dependence upon it, no notion of a passive meaning can arise. But when the gerund does require or imply an object, and this object is expressed, or plainly presumed in the sentence, but is not grammatically dependent on the gerund, a notion of the gerund being passive will arise or not according to the sense and grammatical frame of the sentence. The two opposite poles are when the subject of the clause is the subject of the gerund (e.g. *vir apertus est ad iudicandum*), and when the subject of the clause is the object of the gerund (e.g. *facilis est res ad iudicandum*). I say 'subject of the clause,' because the relation may for this question be the same, when the gerund is not in direct relation to the subject of the sentence, e.g. *viris viri apertus ad iudicandum, res ad iudicandum facillimum proprius*. But between these two poles lie other, which seem mediating, usages. Accordingly I arrange the usages of the (oblique) gerund thus:

1. An action either upon no object or upon an object grammatically dependent on the gerund. This may be either

(a) An action of the subject of the clause: e.g.

*Sunt deficiens queritandi.* (Pl. *Amph.* 1011.)

*Fac tibi iudicium vitam omnem pro illa sollicitudinem dependeris.*  
(Sen. *Ep.* 4.)

*Iudicem conciliabimus nobis non tantum iudicandi cum, sed &c.*  
(Quint. 4. 1. § 16.)

(b) An action of a person or thing, which is named or clearly implied, but is not the subject of the clause: e.g.

*Per exordium grammatis artem auditoris constituitur ad iudicandum.*  
(Cern. 1. 2.)

*Dies hic mihi, ut satis sit, venio, ad agendum.* (Ter. *Andr.*



*Et difficiliorem cogitationem exprimit et expellit dicendi necessitas et secundos impetus auget placendi cupido.* (Quint. 10. 7, § 17.)

(c) An action quite abstractly, without reference to any particular subject: e.g.

*Triste enim est nomen ipsum carendi.* (C. T. D. 3. 36.)

*Hæ fere sunt emendate loquendi scribendique partes.* (Quint. 1. 7, § 32.)

*Audendo atque agendo res Romana crevit.* (L. 22. 14.)

*Hæc res ad volgi assensum spectat, et ad aurium voluptatem, quæ duo sunt ad judicandum levissima.* (C. Or. fin.)

2. An action upon a person or thing, which is named in the sentence, but is not grammatically dependent on the gerund.

(a) If the person or thing so named is not the subject of the clause, the gerund may or may not according to circumstances appear to assume a passive meaning.

*Multa sæpe ad te cohortandi gratia scripsimus.* (C. Off. 3. 2.)

*Cæsar oppidum ad diripiendum militibus concessit.* (Cæs. G. 3. 80.)

*Ornatissimos scriptores ad cognoscendum imitandumque delegit.* (C. Or. 3. 31.)

*Quanto illud flagitiosius eum, a quo pecuniam ob absolvendum acceperis, condemnare?* (C. Verr. 2. 32.)

and Cic. T. D. 1. 28 (quoted in § 1377).

(b) If the person or thing so named is the subject of the sentence, the gerund appears to assume a passive meaning: e.g.

*Ulcus inveterascit alendo.* (Lucr. 4. 1068.)

*Hæc ad judicandum sunt facillima.* (C. Off. 3. 6.)

*Ubi ad decuriandum aut centuriandum convenissent, sua voluntate ipsi inter sese, decuriati equites, centuriati pedites, conjurabant.* (L. 22. 38.)

*Adice cotidianas sollicitudines, quæ pro modo habendi quemque discruciant.* (Sen. Ep. 115, § 16.)

The notion that the gerund is passive as well as active, is based on its use in such sentences as those under the last head. No doubt in such cases the subject of the sentence is the object of the action

denoted by the gerund. But the gerund is not predicated of the subject, and there is no difficulty in allowing it its active signification, the reference to its proper subject being easily supplied. In many cases the gerund should be regarded as purely abstract.

Other instances of this apparently passive, or quasi-passive use, are the following, which may be divided into three classes, the first (a) containing those instances in which the supposed subject of the gerund would, if expressed as its object, be in the accusative case; the second (b) containing those in which it would be in the dative or ablative case; the third (c) containing those instances, where the gerund may be regarded not as passive but as reflexive.

(a) ACCUSATIVE: *boves ad domandum proni* (Varr. R. R. 1. 20); *difficilis ad distinguendum similitudo* (C. Or. 2. 53); *cibus facillimus ad concoquendum* (C. Fin. 2. 28); *beluam facilem ad subigendum frenat* (C. R. P. 2. 40); *res difficilis ad explicandum* (C. Att. 2. 6); *res ad patiendum tolerandumque difficilis* (C. T. D. 2. 7); *quo ad cognoscendum omnia magis illustria sint* (Sall. J. 5 § 3); *equi ante domandum ingentis tollunt animos* (Verg. G. 3. 206).

DATIVE: *nullum semen ultra quadrimatum utile est, dumtaxat serendo* (Plin. 19 § 181); *ferrum rubens non est habile tundendo* (Plin. 34 § 149).

ABLATIVE: *servi studiosiores ad opus fiunt liberalius tractando* (Varr. R. R. 1. 17. 7); *catuli, quam paucissimos reliqueris, tam optimi in alendo fiunt* (Varr. R. R. 2. 9 § 12); *anulus subter tenuatur habendo* (Lucr. 1. 312); *fluctus murmur dant in frangendo graviter* (id. 6. 143); *ne fando quidem auditum* (C. N. D. 1. 29); *fando aliquid pervenit ad auris* (Verg. A. 2. 81); *videbamus, quemadmodum res obscuræ dicendo fierent apertiores, sic res apertas obscuriores fieri oratione* (C. Inv. 2. 51); *id malum opprimi sustentando ac prolatando nullo modo potest* (C. Cat. 4. 4); *tellus lentescit habendo* (Verg. G. 2. 250); *urit videndo femina* (ib. 3. 215); *vulnera curando fieri majora* (Ov. Pont. 3. 7. 25); *differendo elanguit res* (Liv. 5. 26); *res sæpius usurpando excitata* (7. 2); *se daturum (venenum), quod nec in dando nec datum ullo signo deprendi posset* (L. 42. 17); *vel optima nomina non appellando fieri mala fenerator Alpbius dixit* (Col. 1. 7. 2); *memoria excolendo augetur* (Quint. 11. 2. 1).

GENITIVE: *navis inchoandi exordium cepit* (Ennius ap. Corn.

2. 22); *esse in imaginibus causa videtur cernundi* (Lucr. 4. 257); *jus lectica per urbem vehendi* (Suet. Claud. 28; but *vehens* also is used of the person carried). So *equitum turmas frequenter recognovit, reducto more transvectionis, sed in travehendo*, &c. (Suet. Aug. 38). In some of the half compounds with *facere* we see a similar use of an apparently active form to suggest a passive sense, e.g. *perterrefacio*, 'I frighten' (cf. § 994).

(b) ACCUSATIVE: *Equus bujuscemodi, cum est æger, ad medendum est appositus* (Varr. R. R. 2. 7. 25); *Jugurtha ad imperandum vocatur*, 'to receive commands' (Sall. J. 62); *nunc ades ad imperandum vel ad parendum potius, sic enim antiqui loquebantur* (C. Fam. 9. 25); *pecus ad vescendum hominibus apta* (C. N. D. 2. 64); *pecudes ad vescendum videmus* (C. T. D. 1. 28); *voluptas percipitur rebus exquisitissimis ad epulandum* (C. Fin. 2. 28).

DATIVE: perhaps *charta emporetica inutilis scribendo* (Plin. 13 § 76).

ABLATIVE: *violentia ægrescit medendo* (Verg. A. 12. 40); *cantando rumpitur anguis* (id. B. 8. 71).

GENITIVE: *unus imperitat, nullis jam exceptionibus, non precario jure parendi* (Tac. G. 44); perhaps *habet percipiendi notam* 'it has a mark by which one perceives it' (C. Ac. 2. 31).

Abstract substantives are found used in a similar manner; e.g. *iter summa cum admiratione fecimus* (C. Att. 5. 11 § 5); *cum privamur dolore, ipsa liberatione et vacuitate omnis molestiæ gaudemus* (C. Fin. 1. 11); cf. §§ 1387, 1390; Nägelsbach, *Stilistik* § 59. Pott (*l. c.* pp. 504, 505) compares Fr. *Il est digne de remarquer*: Germ. *bemerkenswerth*; so *das Kleid ist noch zu tragen, prächtig anzusehen*: Ital. *bello a vedere*; Gr. ἀνὴρ ῥάων φυλάσσειν.

(c) *Ceteris, quæ moventur, hoc principium est movendi* (which however may be taken actively; C. T. D. 1. 23); *neque signo recipiendi dato constiterant* (Cæs. G. 7. 52); *quibus ad recipiendum crates disjectæ magno impedimento fuerunt* (Cæs. G. 3. 46); *pueros ante urbem lusus exercendique causa producere* (L. 5. 27); *robur legionum perexiguo ad instruendum dato tempore, aciem direxit* (L. 28. 22); *vix spatium instruendi fuit* (L. 31. 21); *dat ipsa lex potestatem defendendi* (C. Mil. 4).

Compare also the use of *parcens*, *versans* (e.g. L. 2. 46), *vebens*, *volvens* (e.g. Verg. G. 1. 163); *volutans* (e.g. Verg. A. 3. 607); *loca nuda gignentium* 'of growing things' (Sall. J. 81): *res moventes* 'moveables' (L. 5. 25). See Neue II. 103; Madvig *ad C. Fin.* 1. 20, and in Liv. Vol. III. Part I. p. xxix.

B. The gerundive is due to an attraction<sup>1</sup> caused by a concurrence of three tendencies.

(1) The sense of the active meaning of the gerund is weakened by its being thus used either as a mere equivalent for an abstract substantive, or without having for its subject the subject of the sentence. The mind is thus predisposed to accept a passive usage as compatible with the form.

(2) The object of the action, which is denoted by the gerund, must often be in some sort an object or qualification of that on which the gerund depends. Thus by comparing

*Peligni miserunt Romam oratores pacis petendæ amicitiaque*

(L. 9. 45 fin.)

with *Ad senatum pacis oratores missi* (L. 9. 43) we see that *pacis* will express the meaning as well as *pacis petendæ = pacem petendi*.

So in such sentences as

*Materiam excitandi belli quærebat* (L. 1. 22);

*Dictator feriarum constituendarum causa dicitur* (L. 7. 28);

*Hic adeo his rebus anulus fuit initium inveniundis* (Ter. Hec. 821);

*Galli locum oppido condendo ceperunt* (L. 39. 22);

*Hodie stat Asia Luculli institutis servandis et quasi vestigiis persequendis* (C. Ac. 2. 1);

*His artibus instituimur. ad hunc usum forensem, ad capessendam rem publicam, ad honorem, gloriam, dignitatem* (C. Cæl. 30);

*Cæsar ad vexandos hostes profectus* (Cæs. G. 6. 43);

*In voluptate spernenda virtus vel maxime cernitur* (C. Leg. 1. 19);

we might omit the gerundive, and yet have much the same sense, though not so clearly defined and guarded against ambiguity. But that sense would be more precisely given, if the gerundive were in each of these sentences converted into the gerund, and the substan-

<sup>1</sup> So also says M. Schmidt (ap. Weissenborn. p. 93).

tive were made dependent on it. All these changes would not be in conformity with the Latin usage<sup>1</sup>, but that is not now the question. They help to shew us how easily the mind might be led to view the case, in which the gerund itself stands, as not inapplicable to the word which in strict meaning depends upon the gerund. This word however, (if the gerundive did not exist as well as the gerund,) would have a different case, and therefore be out of relation to the word which governed the gerund.

An attempt seems at one time to have been made to preserve the gerund, and yet to put the dependent substantive into direct relation to the principal governor. The following are all the instances of this that are now extant and trustworthy (see Madvig *ad C. Fin.* 1. 18). *Nominandi istorum tibi erit magis quam edundi copia* (Pl. *Capt.* 848); *date crescendi copiam, novarum qui spectandi faciunt copiam* (Ter. *Haut.* 29); *pænarum solvendi tempus* (Lucr. 5. 1225); *principium generandi animalium* (Varr. *R. R.* 2. 1); *exemplorum eligendi potestas* (C. *In v.* 2. 1); *reiciundi amplius quam trium judicum potestatem* (Verr. 2. 31); *earum rerum nullam neque infitiandi rationem neque defendendi facultatem* (ib. 4. 47); *facultas agrorum suis latronibus condonandi* (Phil. 5. 3, quoted at length in § 1396); *eorum adipiscendi causâ* (Fin. 5. 7); *reliquorum siderum quæ causa conlocandi fuerit, quæque eorum sit conlocatio, differendum* (Tim. 9); and perhaps *quarum potiendi spe* (Fin. 1. 18); *licentia diripiendi pomorum et obsoniorum* (Suet. *Aug.* 98 but text doubtful); and three passages in Gellius, 4. 15 § 1; 5. 10 § 5; 16. 8 § 3. The similarity of the governing substantive (*copia, potestas, ratio, facultas, causa, principium, &c.*) in all these cases is noticeable.

In the following sentences Madvig considers the gerund to form as it were one notion with the substantive: *quarum (translationum) aut inveniendi rationem aut genera ponam* (C. *Or.* 3. 38); *omnium rerum una est definitio comprehendendi* (Ac. 2. 41); *quorum (sc. verborum) quattuor explanandi gradus* (Varr. *L. L.* 5 § 7). Compare *quæ omnia perfacilem rationem habent reprehendendi* (C. *Cæl.* 26); *omnis res eandem habet naturam ambigendi* (Or. 3. 29).

Madvig thinks the desire of avoiding the long termination of the

<sup>1</sup> See § 1375 sqq.; Madvig *Opusc.* 1. 380 sq.; Weissenborn *de gerundivo* p. 113 n. Corssen (*Beitr.* p. 134) seems actually to believe in such expressions as *ad levandum fortunam* even in Cicero.



genitive plural of the gerundive had something to do with this use. There seem indeed to be at most two instances of it, in which the substantive is not in the plural: viz. *ejus* (sc. *uxoris*) *videndi cupidus* (Ter. *Hec.* 372), and *lucis tuendi copiam* (Pl. *Capt.* 1008). But Cicero was not always solicitous to avoid the sonorous termination: e.g. *audaciæ decemvirali corrumpendarum tabularum publicarum, fingendorumque senatus consultorum* (*Agr.* 2. 14). Many other instances are quoted by Ruddiman 2. 253.

[The usual mode of accounting for this gerund (adopted by Corssen, Key, &c.), viz. that the gerund as a substantive (*condonandi* = *condonationis*) has here a genitive dependent upon it, is liable to the objection, that it is only the *genitive* gerund that is ever so used, whereas the theory would equally account for the dative, ablative, or accusative, gerund having a similar use. Weissenborn (p. 122) takes a middle line, and suggests that the genitive was so far substantival that it could, as we see in these instances, have a genitive dependent, but so predominantly verbal, that it had this rarely, and only when it was supported by another substantive. As this support could be given only to the genitive gerund, the genitive gerund alone is found in this use.]

(3) A string of substantival words dependent on each other is very awkward; but besides awkwardness, ambiguity arises from the tendency of Latin (as of German) to inclose the governed words between the first links of the chain.

Thus if a Latin writer had put *ad veterum rerum memoriam comprehendendum impulsus sumus* (cf. C. *Brut.* 5) a hearer or reader would have at first naturally supposed *ad* to be connected with *memoriam*, and *comprehendendum* would have been perplexing.

Again in *vestis frigus depellendi causa reperta primo est* (cf. C. *Or.* 3. 38) *vestis* and *frigus* might at first be supposed to be in some way co-ordinate with one another, or *frigus* might be supposed to depend on some verb at the end of the sentence. The substitution of *frigoris* for *frigus* removes this ambiguity.

Livy (34. 48) speaking of Philip's præfects says *cum sue factionis hominum vires augenda ius ac libertatem aliorum deprimerent*. This would have been clearer, if he had written *augendis sue factionis hominum viribus*.



To these three causes (1, 2, 3) concurrent I am inclined to refer the rise of the gerundive. To avoid ambiguity by giving gerund and dependent noun identical or at least corresponding inflexions, to gratify an instinctive sense of a real connexion between the word which governs, and the word which the gerund governs, by giving it a grammatical expression, and to do this at the cost only of using, as if it were passive, a form not identical but cognate with an active form, which active form itself sometimes almost demanded a passive signification to be given to it—to do this, by the creation of the gerundive, was a triumph of grammatical genius, and the result is seen in the great flexibility combined with precision which characterises much of the Latin style. The creation was long prior to any Latin literature which we possess, and probably to any systematic grammatical study; it was a natural growth, and as such took place gradually and left several traces in the language in the shape of transitional usages, which survived by the side of those more fully developed. Or rather, it may be more correct to say, the causes which produced the gerundive, being continually present, were always capable of initiating the process afresh, and thus Cicero, when he says *agrorum...condonandi*, is not necessarily to be conceived as reproducing an archaism, but as (at least partly) again venturing by a natural instinct on the path which had already led to the discovery of the gerundive.

The gerundive when created was instinctively subjected to regulation in accordance with the analogies which led to it. Theory regarded it as passive; therefore it should not be used in intransitive verbs. The exceptions are very few; three of them are from Varro; they are all expressions of the same nature and all from verbs in *-sc-*. *Seclum spatium annorum centum vocarunt, dictum a sene, quod longissimum spatium senescendorum hominum id putarant* (Varr. *L. L.* 6. 11), where *senesc. hom.* is ‘of the old-ageing of man.’ (*Senescendi hominibus* would have been better Latin.) *Ad homines quoque nascendos vim numeri istius porrigi pertinereque ait M. Varro* (Gell. 3. 10 § 7), i.e. ‘to the birth of men.’ *Præter hoc modum esse dicit summum adolescendi humani corporis septem pedes* (ibid. § 10), ‘of the growth of the human body.’ *Ædis Floræ quæ rebus florescendis præest*, ‘over the flowering of things’ (Verrius Flaccus in the *Prænestine Calendar*, *Corp. I. R.* 1. 317).

C. The nominative of the gerund is used with the verb *est*, and with a substantive in the dative case to express the agent; and though both *est* and dative are often omitted, the full expression seems to be the original, and best expresses the meaning. Now as *est mihi domus* means 'there is a house for me' or 'I have a house,' so *est mihi agendum* means 'there is acting for me' or 'I have an acting.' And since *egi* or sometimes *est mihi* (or *a me*) *actum* means 'I have acted,' 'action has been taken by me,' and *ago*, or sometimes *a me agitur*, means 'I am acting,' or 'action is being taken by me,' *est mihi agendum* can be used without risk of confusion for 'I have action to take,' 'I am to act.' This notion of an action existing, but unperformed, is in fact the notion of an action requiring to be done. The action exists in the imagination, as a spur to the will. The phrase thus acquires or contains the notion of obligation<sup>1</sup>, but the notion does not lie in the word itself, etymologically considered, but in the predication; and predication may exist in this case as in others, though the word *est* be not present to express it.

That this notion of obligation is not in the form, but in the predication of an abstract substantive, denoting action, is seen from the similar meaning of the verbal substantives in *-ion* (cf. § 1400): e.g.

*Mihi caueant, ne suffraganea extraxit ex malis meis* (Pl. Bac. 998). 'I must take care' = *caueendum*. So Ter. Andr. 400. *Me sinas curare ancillas, quae meam curatio* (Pl. Cur. 2. 3. 43) = *quod mihi est curandum*.

The use of *opus est*, *opus est* is analogous also. Both these expressions have the notion absorbed into the words themselves, so that *opus* and *opus* have come to mean not 'work' and 'employment' but 'need.' *Unus est filio viginti minis* is not what it should literally mean 'some one is employing 20 minae for my son,' but 'my son requires 20 minae.'

<sup>1</sup> The equivalence of the gerund and gerundive to an infinitive with *opus* is clearly seen in such sentences as *In tabulis quon portuerunt, aut subducendum, quon pepererunt, tollere tabulam in eorum alius ratiore* (Var. R. R. 3. 9. 8), where *tollere* and *ratiore* are used as if *subducendum opus* had preceded. So *Quid id dicit mandatum fuit, cumque putat, qui matris, an iam qui sapientia factus est?* (C. Fin. 2. 31), where *cum* (object) shows that *mandatum opus* is supposed to have preceded. See other passages in Madvig's note ad C. Fin. 1. c.

Other phrases somewhat similar have obtained a different shade of meaning, that of *possibility*, e.g. *quod versu dicere non est* (Hor. S. 1. 5. 87); *neque est te fallere quicquam* (Verg. G. 4. 447); *necnon et Tityon terræ omniparentis alumnum cernere erat* (id. A. 6. 595). So also *regressus inde in tuto non erat* (L. 38. 4), 'there was no retracting' = 'they could not retract.' *Erat nulla omnino recusatio* (C. Rab. P. 10), 'there was no refusing' = it could not be refused; *ibi occultatio nulla est* (C. Att. 9. 13 § 5), 'there no concealment is possible' (Nägelsbach, § 58). How much in these matters depended on the context and on association with particular phrases or turns of language, is seen from comparing *est dicere* (above) with *hæc fere dicere habui* (§ 1345), 'I had to say' = *hæc mihi erant dicenda*.

There is nothing in the origin of this usage of the gerund which should restrict it either to transitive or to intransitive verbs, and accordingly we find instances of both. But while the gerund from intransitive verbs is at all times frequent, with and without an indirect object, the gerund from transitive verbs is usual, only where no object is specified. Thus *serviundum populo est*, *utendum est populo*, *eundum est*, *agendum est*, are all normal expressions; but *agendum est hanc rem* is used by two writers only in more than isolated passages. These writers are Lucretius and Varro, both comparatively early writers, and both lovers of older language than their time. The following list contains all the instances (except in Varro) that I have met with:

PLAUTUS Trin. 869 (quoted § 1398).

AFRANIUS. *Optandum uxorem quæ non vereatur viri* (ap. Non. p. 496 = 99 ed. Ribbeck). As however this is a single line, we can scarcely be sure that *optandam* (as part of an infinitive sentence) was not what Afranius wrote.

LUCRETIUS 1. III (quoted § 1398); 138; 381; 2. 492; 1129; 3. 391 (e conj.); 4. 777; 5. 43; 6. 917 (3. 626 and 926 are not properly instances, as the accusative is subject to an oblique predicate and is not a mere object).

VARRO L. L. 7. 4; 9. 48; ib. III; R. R. 1. 6 § 1; 11 § 2; 12 § 1; 17 § 5; 20 § 1 bis &c.; 2. 2 § 13; § 18; 7 § 11; § 12 &c.; 3. 9 § 6; § 8; § 13 ter &c. (Instances of transitive

gerunds without a direct object expressed, and of the gerundive used predicatively, are also common.)

CICERO *Scarr.* 7; *Sen.* 2 (quoted § 1393).

CATULL. 39. 9 (quoted § 1393).

VERGIL *A.* 11. 230 (on authority of Donatus and Servius).

SILIUS 11. 562; 15. 105.

QUINTIL. 4. 5 § 17 (Halm reads *audenda*, against the Ambr. MS. which has *audendum*).

PAPINIAN ap. *Dig.* 15. 1. 50 § 3 (*admittendum esse distinctionem* &c.).

TRYPHONINUS ap. *Dig.* 49. 15. 12 § 2.

PAULUS ap. *Dig.* 2. 11. 12 § 1; 3. 5. 19 § 1 (*reudendum rationem intellegi*); 46. 2. 19 fin.

If we may suppose, as seems most natural, that these instances of the transitive gerund used with a direct object are but relics of a use much more common once, they form a significant fact in the history of these forms. The eventual disappearance of this use altogether and its rarity in most writers find a ready solution in the rise of the gerundive and its application as a predicate.

D. This predicative use of the gerundive was inevitable, when its use for the oblique gerund had become established, and may very probably have been developed along with that. For *virtus colenda est* stands in the same relation to *virtutem est colendum* than *ad virtutem colendum* does to *ad virtutem colendum*. Just as the object of the gerund is in some sort frequently an object of that on which the gerund depends, so the object of *colendum est* would also be a possible subject to *est*. That is to say, *virtutem mihi colendum est* and *virtus mihi est* might together produce *virtus mihi est colenda*. As soon as this last usage had grown up, and the conception of a passive signification became attached to an adjectival gerund, (as the gerundive would at first appear to be,) the active use (e.g. *virtutem est colendum*) becomes an awkward-looking anomaly, and is retained only where it is justified by the analogy of other passive forms, i.e. as a so-called impersonal in the third person and neuter gender. And as they said *virtus colatur*, *virtus colita est*, and *virtus imitatur*,

*virtuti invisum est*, so while they could say *virtus colenda est*, they might say *virtuti invidendum est*. But to say *virtutem colendum est* would have been as irregular as to say *virtus invidenda est*; and if *virtutem colendum est* was to be allowed, there would be risk of people saying *virtutem cultum est* and *virtutem colitur*. But such expressions as *actum est* and *agitur* were used absolutely, though from a transitive verb; and accordingly *agendum est* was similarly retained.

There are two points which, though certainly not conclusive, seem to afford some confirmation of this view, that the passive sense of the gerundive is really due to an attraction and not to any original passive meaning.

(a) The agent with passive verbs is regularly expressed by the ablative with *ab*; the agent with the gerundive is regularly expressed by the dative (§ 1152). There are, it is true, instances of the use of a dative with the passive participle, very few of its use with other parts of the passive verb: and there are instances of the ablative with *ab* being used with the gerundive; but they are by no means numerous; and moreover it is not absolute, but relative, frequency which has most bearing on this point. Of the relative frequency the best test is the examination of a continuous passage.

In the first book of Cicero *de officiis*, if I have counted rightly, there are

- (a) 22 instances of *ab* with agent after past participle passive;
- (b) 15       ,,       ,,       ,, after finite passive verb;
- (c) 11       ,,       dative of agent after gerundive.

In the second *Philippic* the numbers are respectively (a) 31, (b) 12 and (c) 8.

In neither of these writings is there a single instance of the agent being expressed either by the dative after a passive, or by the ablative with *ab* after a gerundive.

The speech *pro lege Manilia* happens to contain two instances of *ab* with the agent after the gerundive. But it contains (in Madvig's edit.) 24 instances of *ab* with the agent after passive verbs [viz. 17 instances of (a), and 7 of (b)]; 10 instances of (c); and no instance of the dative of the agent after a passive. (I do not reckon instances of *videor*, for they belong to a different class, § 1148.)



So much for the relative frequency of the usage. As to its absolute frequency, all the instances of the gerundive used with the agent expressed by the ablative with *ab*, that I have been able to find referred to in grammars and annotations, are the following:—

CORNIFICIUS I. 3 § 5.

CICERO *Or.* 2. 20 § 85; 3. 36 § 147; *Part. Or.* 30 § 103; *Verr.* 3. 24 § 60; *Font.* 19 § 42; *Cæcin.* 12 § 33; *Man.* 2 § 6; 12 § 34; *Agr.* 2. 35 init.; *C. Rabir.* 2 init.; *Mur.* 26 § 54; *Sull.* 8 § 23; *post red. in sen.* 12 § 31; *Har. Resp.* 3 § 5; *Sest.* 18 § 41; *Balb.* 3 § 7; *Planc.* 3 § 8; 32 § 78; *Scaur.* 22 § 44; *Mil.* 38 § 104; *Pbil.* 3. 8 § 21; 13. 11 § 24; 14. 4 § 11; *Att.* 6. 6 § 4; 10. 4 § 6; 11. 3 § 3; 13. 30 § 2; *Fam.* 3. 11 § 3; 13. 16 § 2; 15. 4 § 11; *Brut. ap. C. Fam.* 11. 20.

LIVIUS 9. 40 § 17 (*initium fori ornandi ab ædilibus*).

OVID *Met.* 8. 710.

JUVENAL 12. 14.

In most cases the reason of divergence from the ordinary construction is evident (see § 1147). It will be observed that no instance is produced from early writers<sup>1</sup>, and that Cicero has most of these instances, as he has of those on p. lxviii.

(b) The other point is that deponent verbs have the gerundive in full use just as much as other verbs. Now deponents are verbs which have received passive (or reflexive) inflexions in order to adapt their original stem to the meaning they are to bear, and cannot consequently make a further use of these inflexions in order to have a passive meaning as well as an active one. And besides the forms with (ordinarily) passive inflexions, which with them have an active meaning, they also take the present and future participles belonging to the active voice, and attach to them active meanings. If therefore the gerundive is really passive, it would be the single passive form to which they gave a passive sense, i.e. the passive of that which appears to us, who translate the deponent by an active verb, to be their ordinary active sense.

<sup>1</sup> Ter. *Andr.* 156 is not an instance.



Corssen indeed in order to justify his supposition of the gerundive's being a form common to active and passive voices, instances the use of some past participles of deponents, e.g. *testatus*, *meditatus* &c. (cf. § 734) in both an active and passive sense. But the cases are far from parallel. (a) The passive meaning of such words is exceptional, as compared with their ordinary use, whereas the use of the gerundive is universal. (b) Some of these verbs had in the early language an active form, and the use of the participle in *-to* as passive is a reminiscence of the fact. (c) The form in *-to*, being in the great mass of verbs passive, was not unnaturally so used even in deponents, when the reason of their being deponents had faded from the consciousness of the language.

From this predicative use of the gerundive, analogous to the nominative gerund, have arisen two other uses of the gerundive in which it stands alone.

1. The use of the gerundive in such expressions as *Demus nos philosophiæ excolendos*, *Pontem faciendum locant*, &c. is obviously a natural extension of the foregoing usages of the gerundive. The former sentence, it might be thought, exhibits an extension principally of D; the latter of B.

Now the words used with such a dependent gerundive are such as the following. (Instances of those here given without a reference will be found in § 1401.) *Accipere* (Verg. *A.* 6. 770); *adnotare* (Plin. *Ep.* 10. 96); *attribuere* (C. *Cat.* 4. 6); *conducere* (C. *Div.* 2. 21); *curare* (often); *denotare* (C. *Man.* 3); *deposcere* (Suet. *Vitel.* 1); *dividere*; *dare* (often); *edicere* (Verg. *A.* 3. 235); *edocere*; *ferre* (Plin. *Ep.* 5. 14); *habere*; *locare* (often); *mandare* (Suet. *Jul.* 26); *obicere* (L. 3. 19 § 9); *permittere* (Ov. *M.* 1. 57); *petere* (Pl. *Aul.* 397); *ponere* (Verg. *A.* 4. 602); *præbere* (Ov. *M.* 2. 866); *propinare* (Ter. *Eun.* 1087); *relinquere* (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 7. 19); *rogare*; *suscipere*; *tradere* (Hor. *S.* 2. 5. 51); *vovere* (C. *R. P.* 2. 20). In all these cases the proper object of the verb is the person or thing itself, not the doing of the action upon the person or thing. All these verbs can have as their object a substantive of this kind in the accusative and without the gerundive. Nor do we ever find the gerund used as a substitute for such a gerundival expression. Hence we may conclude that this usage is not so much a development of B, as of D.

Another class of expressions is at first sight similar: e.g. *Non illi ornandum M. Catonem sed relegandum, nec illi committendum illud negotium sed imponendum putaverunt* (C. Sest. 28). So probably *sistendam puellam promittere* (L. 3. 45 § 3). These instances are to the others as *scio eum (esse) mortuum* is to *relinquo eum mortuum*. In both sentences *mortuum* is a predicate, but the object of *scio* is *eum mortuum* or *eum esse mortuum*, the object of *relinquo* is *eum* only; the sense of *relinquo eum* is complete, though the information is incomplete. (Comp. an analogous matter noticed in the note to § 1349, p. 141.)

2. Finally the use of the gerundive as a mere attributive, e.g. *Dividit ut bona diversis, fugienda petendis* (Hor. S. 1. 3. 114); *Definiunt animi agrotationem opinationem vehementem de re non expetenda, tamquam valde expetenda sit* (C. T. D. 4. 11); *Juvenis memorande* (Verg. A. 10. 793); *Huic timendo hosti obvisus* (L. 21. 41), &c., has arisen from its use as a secondary predicate. The form itself has become able to convey the notion of obligation without, at least, any plain and manifest mark of predication.

The occasional use of this form to express, not so much *obligation*, as *possibility*<sup>1</sup> (§ 1406), is not surprising after the evidence of the connexion of the two ideas which has been given above (pp. lxxi, lxxii). It was not till post-classical times, that the gerundive came to be used as a mere future participle passive; e.g. *cum omnibus se prospiceret undique periculis opprimendum* (Ammian. 18. 5. 2).

The use of the gerundive in this sense of obligation &c. is limited, like its use as a substitute for the oblique gerund, to transitive verbs. The exceptions appear to be but few, and admit of easy explanation<sup>2</sup>. *Fruendus, fungendus, potiundus, utendus*, all used in good writers, are justified by the verbs to which they belong having originally had their object in the accusative (§ 1223). So also *carendus* (Ov. H. 1. 50), *vescendus* (Plin. 20 § 41), *dolendus* (C. T. D. 5. 17 &c.), *erubescendus* (Hor. Od. 1. 27. 15, &c.), *medendus* (L. 8. 36), may all find a justification in the fact of a direct object being found with the finite verb; e.g. *parentes careo* (Turpil.

<sup>1</sup> The gerundive in Plin. 18, § 265, *quamquam his et in villa petendis*, is curious.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Neue II. 188, 192, 262.

ap. Non. p. 466); *laurus vescor* (Tib. 2. 5. 64, &c.); *meum casum luctumque doluerunt* (C. Sest. 69); *jura erubuit* (Verg. *A.* 2. 541); *quas mederi possis* (Ter. *Phorm.* 822). *Pudendus* (= *cujus aliquem pudet*) found in Augustan poets and other writers, *pœnitendus* (L. 1. 3. 5), *supersedendus* (Corn. 2. 17), *glôriandus* (C. *T. D.* 5. 17), *desuescendus* (Quint. 3. 8. 70), *regnandus*<sup>1</sup> (Verg. *A.* 6. 770), are irregularities of the same sort as our English 'reliable.' *Nox dormienda* (Catul. 5. 6), *nox vigilanda* (Tib. 1. 2. 76), have arisen from a confusion of the accusative expressing the duration of time with an accusative of the direct object. But it must be added that it is chiefly by reference to the theory of the gerundive's being properly passive, that there arises a necessity for any justification. The instances from Plautus are probably mere comic formations purposely irregular: *Si illa tibi placet, placenda dos quoquest quam dat tibi*, 'The dower must please' (*Trin.* 1159). *Puppis pereunda est probe*, 'The stern must be finely perished' (*Epid.* 1. 1. 70).

E. There is another use of stems in *-undo*, which must not be left out of sight. *Volvendus* 'rolling' occurs in several places; *Glamor ad cælum volvendus per æthera vagit* (Enn. *Ann.* 520, p. 76 Vahlen); *plumbea glans longo cursu volvenda calescit* (Lucr. 6. 177); so also in Lucr. 5. 514; 1276; Verg. *A.* 1. 269; 9. 7. *Oriundus* 'sprung' is pretty frequent; e.g. *o sanguen dis oriundum* (Enn. *Ann.* 117), *meminerint sese unde oriundi sient* (Plaut. *Aul.* 534); &c. (see Lexx.); *secundus* 'following' from *sequor*; *rotundus* probably 'wheeling,' hence 'round;' *blandus* 'blowing;' and perhaps *Kalendæ*, have a similar origin; and *crepundia* is connected with *crepare* 'to rattle' (see § 817). *Jucundus* 'pleasing' and some other stems in *-cundo* (§ 820) have the same suffix; as have also numerous stems in *-bundo* (§§ 818, 819), some of which in the historians are found used as present participles with an object accusative (§ 1405). Though some of these (e.g. *oriundus*, *secundus*, *jucundus*, &c.) have become mere adjectives without any specially verbal use, the meaning of a present participle appears clearly to be the original meaning with all. And this participle was not passive. The only

<sup>1</sup> *Regnatus*, 'ruled over,' is common; *regnari* is only in Tacitus.

words which could suggest a passive meaning are *volvendus*, *oriundus* and *rotundus*. But in the case of *volvendus* Vergil has negated the necessity of the supposition by putting *volventibus*<sup>1</sup> *annis* (*A.* 1. 234) by the side of *volvendis mensibus* (ib. 269); and Lucretius speaks of *volventia lustra* (5. 931), as he does of *volvenda ætas* (ibid. 1276): *oriundus* is from a deponent (comp. also *oriens*); and *rotundus* may be compared to *rotans* in Vergil's *saxa rotantia late impulerat torrens* (*A.* 10. 362). The precise origin of the *b* in -bundo and *c* in -cundo is not clear. The *b* is generally held to be of the root seen in *fui*<sup>2</sup>, and reminds us of the tense-endings -bam, -bo. The *c* may be the same as in the verbal suffix -sc. But the correspondence of the labial and guttural suffixes is seen not only in *mira-bundus*, *ira-cundus*; but in *voca-bulum*, *mira-culum*; *voluta-brum*, *simula-crum*; *super-bus*, *pris-cus*; &c.

The connexion between this use of stems in -undo, and the ordinary gerund and gerundive, is not obvious, though an Englishman may be excused for thinking so, when he finds he can translate *volvendo lapides*, and *volvendis lapidibus*, by the same words 'by rolling pebbles,' and that too whether *volvendis* be taken to be a true gerundive or a present participle, as used by Lucretius and Vergil. And, as we shall see later on, this same form in -ing is sometimes used in English to imply obligation or possibility, like the gerund and gerundive. But the use of the English form itself requires explanation; and it is therefore necessary to put out of sight, so far as one can, the English idiom, and discuss the question more abstractly. I have shewn how in my view all the uses of the Latin gerund and gerundive may be explained, if we start from a neuter singular verbal substantive, denoting action. The participial use of stems in -undo is, as I have said, the use of a present participle of the active voice; i.e. it is the use of an adjective describing a person or thing by its action or state at the moment spoken of. The connexion between these may be any one of three. Either (a) the neuter singular of this present participle has become abstract, and denotes (as gerund) action itself instead of a thing acting

<sup>1</sup> So also *volventia plaustra* (*G.* 1. 163).

<sup>2</sup> This theory has found a new opponent in Savelsberg (*Umr. Stud.* p. 91, sqq.), who regards the *b* as arisen from a present suffix *v*. This is not the place to discuss the matter.

or being; or (*b*) the adjective (i. e. participial) use has grown out of the substantive, and words denoting action have, without any further change or suffix, except those of gender and number, come to describe persons or things to which the action is attributed; or (*c*) both forms have a common origin, the uses being collateral to, not derived from, one another. Lest any should think that the second alternative is excluded on the ground that *regendum* presupposes *regendus*, I add that this would be true only, if language presumed all our grammatical pigeon-holes; whereas language is before grammar, and can coin *odium* without *odius* (masc.) or *odia* (fem.), and *elegantia* (fem.) without either *elegantius* (m.) or *elegantium* (n.). Words are formed for the sake not of symmetry, but of use: and their use dictates their form.

It is not difficult to shew that in point of meaning any of these three hypotheses is possible.

(*a*) Can a gerund rise out of a participle? A gerund is essentially a verbal noun, which has retained some verbal force in determining construction. Now there can be no doubt that a verbal noun can arise from a participle without the addition of any elaborate suffix; for we have them in numbers. Stems in *-entia* (§ 933) are formed from the stem of the present participle by the addition of the simplest suffix. *Multum effeci silendo* and *m. e. silentio*; *vitam servavi prudentia* and *v. s. providendo* are really equivalent expressions. If an abstract substantive *silentium* can be formed so simply from the present participle *silenti-*, it is not going far to assume, that an abstract substantive *silendum* could be formed from, (being in fact the neuter of,) a participle *silendo-*. Again the gerund is, practically, the infinitive in oblique cases. If *temperantia* is equivalent to *temperare*, it must be (apart from special use) equivalent to *temperandum*. And the difference between *temperantia* and *temperandum* is of a kind which seems apt to the difference between a more and a less personal conception, between a feminine and a neuter. *Temperantia* is the enduring habit, *temperandum* the passing act. A similar difference appears to lie between *mercatura* and *mercandum*; and *mercatura* is, I presume, closely connected with *mercaturus* the future participle, of which masculine form *mercator* 'a trader' appears to be an abridgment. (Cf. vol. I. *Pref.* p. lxxxvii, ed. I.)



(b) Can a participle rise out of a gerund? Cicero (*Mil.* 29) says *Hujus ergo interfector si esset, in confitendo ab eisne pœnam timeret, quos liberavisset?* 'If then Milo had been the man that killed Clodius, would he, if he admitted the fact, have stood in fear of punishment from those whom he had thereby set free?' *Confitens* might be substituted for *in confitendo*. In *aer effluens huc et illuc ventos efficit* (*C. N. D.* 2. 39), *effluendo* might be substituted for *effluens*. In fact a present participle might easily be formed by attaching to such oblique cases or prepositional phrases an adjectival suffix, which should denote that a person is in the attitude or condition thereby described. Such an adjectival suffix needs not itself be full of meaning in order to convey this notion. *Devi*us, *obvi*us, means 'a person *de via*,' 'a person *ob viam*;' *eques* (*equet-*) 'a person *in equo*;' &c. See illustrations of this from many languages in Garnett's Essay "On the formation of words by the further modification of inflected cases" (*Essays*, p. 260)<sup>1</sup>.

(c) The third hypothesis requires no argument. If two uses can spring from one another, there can hardly be any impossibility in point of meaning in their both springing from a third.

On the whole I am inclined to think that the simplest hypothesis is that the form in *-undo* existed in early times as a present participle, either before the gerundial use, or contemporaneously with it; that the gerundive was formed from the gerund simply by treating the gerund not as governing but as agreeing with the object; and that the gerundive, being in fact precisely the same in form as the participle, drove the participial use of the form out of the field, except in the special case of suffixes in *-bundo* and *-cundo*.

Before passing to the next division of the subject I will say a few words on some views of other grammarians.

Weissenborn considers the gerundive to be intermediate between participle and adjective (p. 152), and to mean 'causing action,' so that *homo legendus* is 'a man causing others to mourn for him'

<sup>1</sup> See also M. Müller's *Lectures* II. 18 sq. ed. 6.

(p. 108); *lugendum* is (in meaning) the same as *lugere* (p. 109). Corssen holds the gerundive to be a verbal adjective, having a meaning intermediate between active and passive, and expressing rather the capacity of action (*Beitr.* p. 136). Such conceptions really amount to nothing more than abstractions from two apparently opposite uses of the same form, for which a possible etymology is then sought. We are thus left in the region of the possible and conceivable only, without, so far as I see, any facts showing that this possible was probably actual, because they fit this hypothesis but will not readily fit others. On the contrary, such theories are open to the objection that they do not explain, (1) why such an ambiguous conception should be developed in two opposite directions, as active and passive, and yet the lines of the one should be precisely parallel to the other; e.g. *musa colendast = musam colendumst*; and *musæ colendæ = musam colendi* &c.: (2) why it did not develop other usages, e.g. *virgo est colenda musam* instead of, or as well as *virgini est colenda musa* &c.: (3) why the gerundive was not formed and used from intransitive as well as from transitive verbs. The few instances, which are found, I have already dealt with. It is not clear to me that the explanation I have given of them is equally open to those who start with a form which they maintain to be neither active nor passive but really neutral. Such views as Kühner's, who attributes to the gerundive itself the meaning of 'must' or 'should,' but says it lays aside that meaning both in the neuter (i.e. the gerund) and whenever it is used in lieu of the gerund, are still more full of difficulty. Whatever difficulties there may be in my theory in deducing a gerund from the neuter of a present participle are not less in theories like Corssen's, Weissenborn's or Kühner's.

Besides the theory of attraction which I have defended, there is, so far as I am aware, only one, which professes to explain the precise identity in meaning of e.g. *cupido vexandi hostes* with *cupido vexandorum hostium*. According to this the expression with the gerundive is parallel to the use of a substantive with the past participle to express, not so much the person or thing acted on, but the action itself, e.g. *Lentulus et Cethegus deprehensi eum terrebant*, 'the arrest of Lentulus and Cethegus frightened them;' *Occisus dictator Cæsar pulcherrimum facinus videbatur*. See other instances

in §§ 1406—1411. Kühner (*Schulgram.* § 131. 5) illustrates the parallel thus:

*Dux urbe defensa magnam sibi peperit gloriam :*

*Dux urbe defendenda magnam sibi gloriam parere studuit.*

There are a few passages, in which the gerundive and the passive participle are put in this sense in close connexion, e.g. *Que ante conditam condendamque urbem traduntur*, i.e. 'before the city was built or building,' (*Liv. præf.*) and the passages quoted in § 1408.

There are four objections to the pertinency and adequacy of Kühner's theory.

(a) The parallelism fails strikingly in at least one important point. This use of the past participle is most common in those classes of ablatives, viz. the ablatives of 'manner,' 'attendant circumstances' and 'time' in which an oblique predicate is required (cf. § 1230). It is exactly these ablatives in which the gerundival expression is rare: and the significance of this fact is the greater, because not only is the gerund also rare in such expressions (for this might be expected), but the use of the gerundive in the ablative, as elsewhere, follows closely the usage of the gerund, being practically almost confined to expressing the means or instrument, or to prepositional usages. Such instances as that in *C. Phil.* 6. 6 (§ 1408), are the result, I conceive, partly of the close connexion of most ablative usages, and partly of the natural tendency of a writer to follow specious analogies when they suggest neat modes of expression.

The instances of the nominative (e.g. *arctus Caesar*) have no parallel in the gerundive, except, as some might say, in the one word *jurjurandum*, which is properly 'a swearing one's rights.' Here however, I suppose, either *jus* is the object of the gerund *jurandum*, or, which is more probable, the whole expression is a nominative formed to correspond with the oblique cases *jurijurandū*, *jurejurando*; just as some modern writers have coined an imaginary *res repetundæ* 'extortion.'

(b) The theory supposes a participle which is used in a way parallel to that of the past participle passive, and yet which differs, only as an adjective with an *e* stem differs from a substantive with

an *o* stem, from an unmistakeably active verbal substantive. *Libe-randarum Thebarum* (Nep. 16. 4, § 1.) may be very parallel to *liberatarum Thebarum*, but what should we say to *gloria liberati Thebas* as a parallel to *cupido liberandi Thebas*? It may be replied that analogies rarely go upon all fours. True, but that is no merit in them; and here it is of the essence of the difficulty, which a theory has to explain, that the gerundival expression is as identical with the gerundial expression, as the gerundival form is with the gerundial form.

(c) What does the theory suppose the gerundive to be? According to the analogy it ought to be a participle passive either of present or future time. But if so, why is it never used as an ordinary participle is? why does not Livy (42. 17) instead of *se daturum* (sc. *venenum*) *quod, nec in dando nec datum, ullo signo deprendi posset* say *nec dandum nec datum*? Why *melior tutior-que est certa pax quam sperata victoria* (30. 30, § 19) instead of *speranda victoria*? why is 'so-called<sup>1</sup>' not expressed in Latin by *ita dicendus*, instead of *qui dicitur, quem vocant, &c.* (Madvig *Lat. Gr.* § 431. *Ann.* 1.)?

(d) If we attribute to the gerundive itself, in its original formation, the meaning, which it has, as I conceive, gradually acquired, viz. that of destiny or obligation, there seems to be no such natural propriety in the usage as to encourage us to accept it. Reverting to Kühner's illustration, we may see an easy suggestiveness in the use of the past participle, e.g. 'He gained glory by a city defended.' But 'He strove to gain glory by a city requiring defence' or 'by a city to be defended' does not so readily appear the same as 'by defending a city.' It rather suggests, that he looked out for a city in that position, not that he defended the particular city in question.

It seems to me that this theory is exposed to more numerous and more serious objections, than is that which I have advanced.

<sup>1</sup> Our English 'to be called' is not a proper future any more than the Latin *vocandus*. It does indeed approach to the meaning of 'it shall be called,' but not to the merely future 'it will be called.'

ii. Origin of verbal stem in *-undo*.

The theories of the origination of this stem are numerous. Bopp (*Vergl. Gr.* § 809) followed by others (e.g. L. Meyer, *Vergl. Gr.* II. 91) held the gerundive to be only another form of the present participle. Pott (*Et. Forsch.* II. Th. I. 489 ed. 2) and Weissenborn consider the *-do* to be identical with the stem of the verb *dare* (Sansk. *dhâ-*) in the sense of 'causing,' 'doing' (comp. *effectum dare*, &c. § 1402). The *-un* Pott and Schröder (*Zeits. d. verg. Spr.* XIV. 350) hold to be *-ana*, the suffix used to form the German infinitive: Weissenborn (pp. 29, 104 sq.) to be the accusative case-suffix appended to a verbal noun-stem (comp. *pessum dare*). Corssen (*Beitr.* p. 121 sq.; *Nachtr.* p. 133, 153; *Ausspr.* I. 575), considering the suffix to have been originally *-ondo* (which is possible enough, although we have no evidence for it from early inscriptions *Ausspr.* II. p. 180), identifies the first part with the substantival suffix *-ōn* (see § 851), and the latter part with the adjectival suffix found in *vali-dus*, &c. (cf. § 816). This suffix he thinks is not from *dhâ*, but from *dā*, possibly pronominal, possibly verbal, in origin, and possibly found in Latin in the verb *dare* 'to give,' used in the sense which it has in *ruinam dare*, *dare se in fugam*, &c. Curtius, *Gr. Etym.* (p. 590 ed. 2 = p. 649 ed. 4), derives the gerundival suffix from that which appears in Sanskr. as *anîyas* and has the same meaning. The original form would then be *anya-s*, the *d* arising from a strengthening of *y*. Schleicher (*Verg. Gr.* p. 397 ed. 2 = p. 382, ed. 3) identifies this first part of the suffix with the *an* in the suffix *anîyas*, the second part with the suffix in *validus*, which he, like Pott<sup>1</sup> and Weissenborn, derives from *dhâ*. Schröder takes *d* to be the Gothic preposition *-du*, Greek *-δε* (e.g. *οἰκόνδε*), Germ. *zu*, appended to an infinitive. Key (*Essays* pp. 212, 218) considers e.g. "*scriben* (in *scribenti-*, *scribendo*) to be an old substantive like *ungven* (whence *ungvent-um*) and still more like the German so-called infinitive *schreiben*," the *t* and *d* being parasitical outgrowths from the preceding *n* (see § 48 of this Grammar). It may be noted that

<sup>1</sup> Pott holds the present participle to have the same origin as the gerundive as regards *n*, but the *t* to be the demonstrative pronoun (l. c. pp. 534, 535).



Schleicher, Curtius and L. Meyer have previously published other opinions which they have now given up for those named above. There is certainly little room for anyone to dogmatize. Corssen declares against Bopp's theory on the grounds that (medial) *t* does not change in Latin to *d* except under the influence of a following *r*; (2) that specially in Latin, when *o* is suffixed to *nt*, the *t* remains (e.g. *cruentus*, *violentus*, &c.); and (3) that in meaning and syntactical use the present participle and the gerund and gerundival forms are so essentially different, as to render it highly improbable that they could be identical. Pott (l. c. p. 522 sqq.) says the same, and discusses elaborately the analogies supposed to be afforded by the Romance, Slavonic, and other languages.

I quite agree in thinking that there is no evidence for the gerundive being formed from the present participle in *nti*, and that such a derivation is decidedly improbable, so far as the forms are concerned. It is more likely that, if one were derived from the other, the present participle would be not parent but child, nominal stems in *i* being sometimes in this relation to nominal stems in *o* (Vol. I. *Pref.* p. lxxxvii). But the relation of sister seems to me at least as likely to be true. The present participle in Sanskrit, Zend, Greek, Latin, old Irish, Slavonic and old high German has the suffix *-nt*; but in the other Teutonic languages and in Persian *-nd*. It is not extravagant to suppose that Latin had both forms, and was therefore able to give one a special use, which ultimately became the gerundive.

Further the Romance languages exhibit a similar variety. Diez (Vol. II.) gives as gerund Italian, Spanish and Portuguese *cantando*, Sardinian *cantende*, Wallachian *cüntünd*; but Provençal *chantan*, Catalan and French *chantant*. If these forms all come from the Latin gerund, then we have in some cases a sharpening of the final *d*: if, as is possible, they arise from a confusion of the Latin gerund and participle, then it is not rash to assume that a connexion between these parts of speech may have been felt or fancied in early Indo-European times also.

But, that the meaning of the two cannot be so far apart as not to be referable to a common stock, is, I think, clearly deducible from the actual use of the same form as equivalent to a gerund and as equivalent to a present participle (above, pp. lxxviii, lxxix.).

Moreover from this point of view the fact (pointed out by Bopp) is very important, that the gerundive, like the present participle, always follows the form of the present stem, whatever that may be. We have *gignendus* (not *genendus*); *sternendus*, not *strandus*; *nascendus*, *extimescendus*, *rumpendus*, *capiendus*, *fluendus*, *vivendus*, *trabendus*, *tollendus*, *dūcendus*, *lēgendus*. *Exeundus* agrees in form with *exeun-tis*, and differs from *exien-s* only as an older form differs from a younger. (When -uns gave place to -ens (as *regundus* to *regendus*), the *e* (*exe-uns*) gave place to *i* (*exi-ens*), in order to prevent the two vowels from coalescing.) No other class of verbal nouns follows the present stem, as distinguished from the verbal stem, except those which are derived from the present participle (e.g. *excandescencia*, § 933). Corssen's selection of suffixes seems very infelicitous; the suffix -ōn, which he appends to the verbal stem, is usually appended to noun stems; and the suffix -do, which he then appends to his verbal noun in -ōn, is a suffix usually appended to verb-stems, not to nouns. Of any tendency in either to follow the present stem, as distinguished from the verbal stem, I see no trace.

Beyond this I cannot carry the question of etymology. I think it probable that *scriben*-<sup>1</sup> in *scribenti*- is identically the same form as *scriben*- in *scribendo*, but the precise origin and meaning of the -ti and the -do is for me an unsolved problem. Not that the suggestions already enumerated are all wrong, but that none is proved, or even distinctly raised from possibility to probability.

### iii. Analogies in other languages.

The analogies to which, in common with other writers, I desire to point attention (I pretend to no more) are all in Teutonic languages: but the Teutonic languages seem especially applicable, because their present participle has the suffix -nd.

<sup>1</sup> Compare the dialect of Henneberg in Thuringia which forms its present active participle by adding -ing to the infinitive in -en, e.g. *lachen-ing*=*lachen-d*, 'laughing'; *schlafen-ing*=*schlafen-d*, 'sleeping.' (Müller, *Lectures*, II. p. 19 note, ed. 6.)

Grimm (iv. 64 sqq.) gives instances from German of present participles used passively from transitive verbs, and of others, used in a looser relation, from intransitive verbs. Of the former class the following may serve as instances. From middle high German; *lebende Tage* 'days which are lived through,' *klagende Arbeit* 'work which is complained of:' from new high German; *essende Speise*; *von essenden und trinkenden Dingen*; *anziehende Kleider*; *meine fübrenden Waaren*; *eine besorgende Gefabr*; *eine melkende Kuh*; *der leidende Schade*; *verkaufendes Brot*; *wieder erlangende Gesundheit*; *bei empfindender Hilfe*; *vorhabende Reise*. Of the latter class, take the following instances. From middle high German *uf der jagenden Weide*; *iwer her komende Wart*; *wachende Arbeit*: from new high German; *sterbende Läufe*, i.e. 'times when the plague prevails'; *keine bleibende Stätte haben* (Luther); *eine schwindelnde Höhe*; *sitzende Arbeit*; *gebende Arbeit*; *wohl schlafende wohlgeruhende Nacht wünschen*, similar to which is *nach einer schlechtschlafenden Nacht* (Schiller). Few of the instances quoted by Grimm appear to be later than the 16th century, and neither usage seems to have been frequent. Göthe has *blasende Instrumente*; Voss has *mit handschlagendem Lob*; Hauff has *einen tanzenden Thee*, *ein singendes Butterbrot besuchen*. Mätzner (*Eng. Gr.* ii. 2. 70) compares Engl. *falling sickness* with old high Germ. *fallandiu Subt*, new high Germ. *fallende Sucht*, and *fallendes Leid*.

Grimm quotes also from some Friesic dialects *tha drivanda* and *tha dreganda* meaning 'the cattle which are driven,' and 'the things which are carried.' So also Danish *bläsende Instrumenter* 'blowing-instruments'; *mit iboënde Hus* 'my dwelling-house'; *den afholdende Avksion* 'the auction to be held'; *den udgivende Bog* 'the book about to be published.' (Rask's *Dan. Gr.* § 41 ed. Repp.)

The modern Icelandic (Grimm iv. 113) has its present active participle used just like a gerundive, e.g. *alt er segjanda*—*alles ist zu sagen*; *varla er truanda* 'it is scarcely to be believed.'

Modern German has a still more noticeable usage. For this I translate Schleicher (*Deutsche Sprache* p. 225 ed. 2). 'The infinitive, originally an abstract substantive and so still used often enough, in middle high German has in genitive and dative<sup>1</sup>, when the stemsyllable is long, the *n* doubled; e.g. *vindennes vindenne*;

<sup>1</sup> They are not properly cases, but further formations, according to Schleicher's latest opinion, as reported by Jo. Schmidt, the editor.

\* but not so after short syllables, e.g. *sagenes*, *sagene*. As from  
 \* *nieman*, *niemannes* in new high German arose *niemand*, *niemandes*,  
 \* so from the frequent middle high German *ze vindenne*, *ze lesene*,  
 \* (i.e. *za finden*, *za lesen*) arose a new participle in *nd* with passive  
 \* functions, which accordingly is found only in connexion with *za*,  
 \* e.g. *ein za findender*, Fem. *za findende*, Neutr. *za findendes*, *za*  
 \* *lesendes* &c.\* Perhaps,\* adds Schleicher, \*the Latin forms in  
 \* *-ndus*, e.g. *legendus*, may have had an influence on the function of  
 \* this form.\*

The English is very remarkable, both in itself and because it illustrates several points of the discussion. It shows (a) the active infinitive being so used as to convey a passive meaning: (b) another verbal form being used at the same time in the character both of an active and a passive participle, an active and, what appears at first sight to be, a passive adjective, a substantive proper and a gerund: (c) a predicative use of verbal forms in a way which implies obligation and possibility. Yet with such diversity, and even contrariety, of functions these forms rarely give rise to any ambiguity.

(a) The prepositional infinitive is frequently used, in denoting a purpose, so that it suggests a passive meaning. Thus we can say not only *I am glad to see you*; *Too bad to fight and much too poor to pay* (Planché); *In me sense they are our best men: they are the best to go, not the best to stay* (Sargant); but also *This is good to eat*; *That is easy to get*; *Something to drink*; *A house to let*; *This is the man to kill*; *Coy and difficult to win* (Cowper); *O sight of terror foul and ugly to behold, horrid to think, how horrible to feel* (Milton). Shakespeare says *Eleven long hours I took to write is done*: he might have said *Eleven long hours it took to write*. The usage is old, and the infinitive had once an oblique inflexion (compare modern German, *supra*). *Hic it seeme to tellanne ac his ne deute this nan seeme to donne* (Chron. of Peterborough anno 1085), i.e. *It is a shame to tell, but it seemed not to him any shame to do*-. This prepositional infinitive is really analogous to such forms as *scilicet potui*, &c. (*supra*, p. xxxvii, xxxiii, the historical speech of the Romans, and to the infinitive *biedere* in the præ-historical speech (cf. § 311).

\* Earle's *Phil. of Eng. Tongue*, § 453, ed. 1: from which I have taken some other instances.

(b) The verbal form in *-ing*, which was not used for the present participle till the twelfth century, is now used in various ways<sup>1</sup>.

(1) As present participle active<sup>2</sup>: e.g. *Pleased with some happy tone of meditation slipping in between the beauty coming and the beauty gone* (W). *With budding, fading, faded flowers they stand the wonder of the bowers* (W). *Late and soon, getting and spending, we lay waste our powers* (W). *The people lead a quiet life, tilling the ground and tending the cattle* (G. E.). *Men's muscles move better, when their souls are making merry music* (G. E.). *Insects that will come teasing you* (G. E.). *There you go strolling along* (G. E.). *Ruth went wandering<sup>3</sup> over dale and hill* (W). *I saw her singing at her work and o'er the sickle bending* (W). *Her maidens thought her dying* (Scott). *I've heard of hearts unkind, kind deeds with coldness still returning; alas the gratitude of men has oftener left me mourning* (W). *The jerk sent the contents leaping out from the farthest corners* (G. E.). *It was impossible to imagine these things happening at Hayslope* (G. E.). *I have heard of a learned man meekly rocking the cradle* (G. E.). *She set me intriguing* (Thackeray).

(2) As present participle passive: e.g. *The kingdom was depopulating from the increase of inclosures* (Hume). *Whilst these preliminary steps were taking* (Robertson). *The illustrations preparing for this volume* (Ruskin). *The extent of ravage continually committing* (Ruskin). *The debts which are owing. The house is not built but building. I want my coat brushing<sup>4</sup>. The designs manifestly carrying on against his person* (Burke). *Women are angels, wooing* (Sh. Troil. i. 2). *While the verses were yet singing* (Scott).

(3) As adjective with an active (or neuter) meaning: *A wandering voice. Like sleeping flowers, O'er glittering sands. A*

<sup>1</sup> In the references W. is for Wordsworth; G. E. for the author of *Adam Bede*.

<sup>2</sup> Southey's *Lodore* is entirely composed of this use.

<sup>3</sup> Earle, *Phil. of Engl. T.* §§ 580—581 g, takes this as an infinitive derived from the old form in *-en*. Abbott, *Shaksp. Gr.* § 349, somewhat doubtfully takes the same view, when the forms in *-ing* are used after verbs of *seeing, hearing, &c.*

<sup>4</sup> Earle calls this a Yorkshire form (*Phil. of Engl. Tongue*, § 580 h).



*blooming girl. A spreading oak. Soothing thoughts. Torturing doubts. A distressing noise. A thoroughly misleading statement. Our life's succeeding stages (Campbell). My never-failing friends (Southey). A running commentary. A patronising disposition. Startling exceptions. He exacted the most humiliating submissions (Macaulay). A commanding voice (Id.). An uneasy questioning expression (G. E.). My heart swells with loving admiration (G. E.). The grass lay in silvered sweeping lines (G. E.). They never see any good in suffering virtue (Burke). Come, gentle yet prevailing force (Cowper). Eating cares (Milton). My faltering voice and pausing harp (Coleridge). Ennobling thoughts (W). A waking eye, a prying mind (Lamb). Their tameness is shocking to me (Cowper). This state of things is naturally embittering (G. E.).* Hence occasionally used without a substantive but with the definite article, e.g. *The living and the dead; The poor and the suffering; I can make the sleeping see (Shelley); A rod to check the erring (W).*

(4) Apparently as adjective with passive meaning: i.e. it is grammatically an attribute of that which in meaning is its object; e.g. *eating-olives; drinking-water; wearing-apparel; a riding-horse; washing-silk; knitting-cotton.* Often the two parts of the phrase stand in looser relation to each other than that of object; e.g. *drawing instruments; brewing tub; heating apparatus; writing materials; boxing gloves; walking stick; leaping pole; reaping hook; riding habit; shooting boots; working day; milking time; resting place; stumbling block; winding sheet; looking glass; calculating machine; dying moments; dying testimony; &c.*

These phrases are usually regarded as compound words, the first word being as much a substantive as it is in *bat box, work table, door key, house porter, watch tower, railway carriage, &c.* This is probably the right view, at any rate for modern English. But a comparison of the German expressions quoted above (p. lxxxviii), suggests that the usage may have been originally in some cases participial, and the participial notion is probably still present to the feeling<sup>1</sup>. It is noticeable that in all the instances (except the last two) the form in -ing denotes the purpose or destiny like *esui oleæ, linteam extersui, &c.* See above p. xxxiii.

<sup>1</sup> Mätzner (*Eng. Gr.* ii. 2, p. 71) takes a similar view.

(5) As substantive proper; shewn by its use as subject, &c., by its having an attribute, by its having a plural, and by its object being in the genitive (i.e. with preposition 'of'). *A fine building. A fair warning. A second bearing. High standing. An heroic bearing. A good saying. A calling in life. Great learning. Too narrow openings. The first turning. High breeding. Their trampling sounded nearer (Campbell). A wedding or a festival, mourning or a funeral (W). Plain living and high thinking are no more (W). Thoughts that spring out of human suffering (W). But for those obstinate questionings of sense and outward things, fallings from us, vanishings, blank misgivings of a creature moving about in worlds not realized (W). O ye groves, forbode not any severing of our loves (W) Thousands at his bidding speed (Milton). All silencing of discussion is an assumption of infallibility (Mill). They remember the taking of the king's castles (Burke). The laying on of hands (Macaulay). There was no end to the making and mending of clothes (G. E.). To watch her love's returning (Scott). She heard her lover's riding (Scott).*

(6) As gerund, i.e. as a substantive, but qualified by an adverb instead of an adjective, and with its object in the case which a verb would require. It can have (differing in this from the Latin gerund) a substantive in the possessive case to qualify it. The definite article is usually, though not always, omitted.

*Meeting Hetty was a mere circumstance of his walk (G. E.). It was no use blinking the fact now (G. E.). How could he help feeling it? (G. E.) She had to encounter the pain of his feeling himself ill-used (Jane Austen). Don't tell me about her not deceiving herself (G. E.). The saying mass was forged into a crime; the teaching school, even the teaching in a private family, was subjected to punishment (Burke). Nothing must content the Captain but the taking a much finer house (Thackeray). Instead o' wearing yourself out with walking and preaching and giving away every penny you get (G. E.). I took to going nowhere but to church, and hearing nobody but Mr. Irvine (G. E.). Who could have expected meeting you here? (Goldsmith.) After considering him attentively (W. Irving). For it strikes me ther's sech a thing ez sinnin' by overloadin' children's underpinnin' (Biglow Papers). Defend me from the toil of dropping buckets into*

empty wells, and growing old in drawing nothing up (Cowper). What is there to hinder the mind from gradually acquiring a habit of attending to the lighter relations of ideas? (S. Smith.) A vain ostentation of wit often sets a man on attacking an established name and sacrificing it to the mirth of those about him (Addison). I have been in training above a month (F. Fairleigh). It is worth looking over and considering (Clarendon).

By the side of this gerundial use, as seen in such sentences as *The possibility of Frank's marrying a foreigner* (Bulwer); *They laid weight on his client's refusing to answer certain queries* (Scott); a participial use<sup>1</sup> has arisen; e.g. *Upon Nigel insisting upon his commands being obeyed* (Scott); *These circumstances may lead to your ladyship quitting the house* (Thackeray); *She felt some comfort in their whole party being immediately afterwards collected* (Jane Austen). Both Koch (*Engl. Gr.* ii. § 100) and Mätzner (*Engl. Gr.* ii. 1, p. 68) give this participial use as modern<sup>1</sup>. The usage is not uncommon in ordinary conversational language, and has probably risen from the supposed analogy of such expressions as *I saw him wandering*, *I thought of him saying this*, and may have been assisted by the want of any distinction in sound between the possessive and other cases of plurals and other words ending in -s; e.g. *The ladies thinking* is *mulieres cogitantes* and *mulierum cogitatio*.

(c) Both these verbal forms (1) the prepositional infinitive and (2) the form in -ing are sometimes used predicatively in a way

<sup>1</sup> At first sight this usage may appear to support Kühner's theory which explains the rise of the gerundial use, parallel to the gerundial use, by the occasional use of the past participle in Latin, which I have noticed above. But the difference is great. The English idiom consists in changing the *subject* of the gerund (the subject being in the possessive) into an *object* of the word governing the gerund; and then regarding the form in -ing no longer as the gerund, but as the well-known present participle, e.g. '*He earned the chief's defending the city*' is changed into '*He earned the chief defending the city*'. This *subject* (possessive case) is never expressed in Latin with the gerund. The change is merely from *devictis civibus defensioem civis* to *vincit civis partem defensivam*. The Latin idiom consists in changing the *object* of the gerund into an *object* of the word governing the gerund.

<sup>2</sup> Koch however quotes one instance from the older Wiclifine translation: *He wolde censen after the rumour pynnyng down* (Gen. 38. 11); but if the instance be really solitary it cannot be trusted.

which implies either destiny or, as is usually the case in a negative sentence, possibility. The two notions shade into one another.

(1) Destiny. *When the Roman empire was broken up, the work of conversion was to begin again* (Southey).

*Good night then, Casca, this disturbed sky is not to walk in* (Shaksp. *Jul. Cæs.* i. 339).

*He is to blame. You are to go. There is no time to waste. We have not an instant to lose. What's more to do?* (Shaksp., see Abbott, § 405.)

Possibility. *There was no one to rob. I have nothing to do.*

(2) Obligation. *If this which he avouches does appear, there is nor flying hence nor tarrying here* (Sh. *Macb.* 5. 5. 48).

*Fly, fly, my lord, there is no tarrying here* (Sh. *Jul. C.* 5. 5. 30). This is taken from North who translates εἰπόντος δέ τινος, ὡς δέῃ μὴ μένειν, ἀλλὰ φεύγειν (Plut. *Brut.* 52) by 'Amongst the rest one of them said, there was no tarrying for them there.' Compare *Nemini nostrum cessandum est aut expectandum, quid decernat senatus* (Poll. ap. *C. Fam.* 10. 33).

Possibility. *There is no getting rid of him. There is no resisting your luck.*

The history of these usages of the form in *-ing* is not certain: the following is a summary of the facts, mainly taken from Morris' *Engl. Accidence* §§ 290 sqq.).

In the 12th century there were four distinct forms,

- (1) An infinitive in *-en*, or *-e*, e.g. *breken* or *breke*.
- (2) A dative of this infinitive, ending in *-enne* or *-ene*, and with the preposition *to* or *for to* prefixed, e.g. *to brekenne* or *to brekene*. A form in *-ende* is also found, e.g. *The synfulle man fasteth for to clensen him, the rihtwise for to witiende his rihtwisnesse* (O. E. Hom., Sec. Ser. p. 57).
- (3) A present active participle in *-ende* (*-and* Northern), e.g. *brekende*.
- (4) A verbal substantive in *-yng* or *-ynge* (written also *-ing* or *-inge*), e.g. *brekyng* or *brekynge*. (In Anglo-Saxon the termination is usually *-ung*.)

In the 14th century, changes, some of which had already commenced in the 12th, had produced the following result.

- (1) The infinitive remained the same. Wicliffe for the most part has the suffix *-e*; Chaucer and the author of *Piers Plowman* both *-en* and *-e*.
- (2) The dative infinitive ends rarely in *-ene*, usually in *-en* or *e*, and is thus indistinguishable in form from the simple infinitive. But a form in *-inge* also occurs; e.g. *And the dragoun stood before the swomman that was to beringe child.... And she childede a sone male, that was to reulinge alle folkes* (Wicliffe).
- (3) The present participle ends often in *-ing* instead of, as previously, in *-ende*, which form died out in this century. *Ande* however remained in the Northern dialect. Parts of the Wicliffite translations have *-ende*, other parts *-yng*.
- (4) The verbal substantive remained as before, in *-yng* distinguished in form from the participle in *-and*; e.g. in Ham-pole (*Pr. of Cons.* p. 58), a Northern writer (cir. A.D. 1340).

*Than es our birthe here bygynnyng  
Of the dede that is our endyng;  
For ay the mare that we wax alde  
The mare our lif may be ded talde.  
Tharfor whylles we er bere lyffand  
Ilk day er we thos dyband.*

In the 16th century both forms of the infinitive are alike, the suffix being either dropped, or written *e*, but not pronounced.

The form in *-and* is still retained for the present participle in the Northern dialect beside the form in *-yng*, which is also sometimes written for the past part. in *-en*; e.g. in Lyndesay A.D. 1552.

*Sum on the feild salbe lauborand;  
Sum in the templis mariand.  
Sum afore jugis makand pley;  
And sum men saland on the sey.  
Two salbe in the myll grindyng,  
Qubilk sal be taking but warnyng.*

(for taken without warning.)



The form in *-ing* continues common to the participle and noun, but according to Morris ceased to be used for the dative infinitive about the beginning of the 15th century.

But "in old English writers after the conquest we find the verbal noun with *on*, *an*, *in*, *a* employed after verbs of motion as '*he went on hunting*,' '*he fell on sleeping*<sup>1</sup>:'" *I go a fishing* (John 21. 3), *to be a fishing* (Fielding).

So even now in provincial English: *She's all of a tremble when thee't a-sittin' down by her at breakfast, and a-looking at her* (G. E.). *He's gone somewhere else a preachin' and a prayin'* (G. E.). *For while your million papers, wut with lyin' an' discussin', keep folk's tempers all on eend a-fumin' an' a-fussin', a-wondrin' this an' guessin' that,* &c. (Biglow Papers).

From the 14th century at least until the 17th this verbal noun is often used after the same prepositions (*in*, *a*) passively: e. g. *The churche was in byldynge* (Robt. of Brunne); *we have a windowe in werchyng* ('Piers Plowman'); *Ther the man lith an helyng* (Id.); *There you shall see my tombe a makynge* (Berners' Froissart); *Whilst these things were a dooing* (Holingshed); *While the ark was a preparing* (Tyndall and King James transl. 1 Pet. 3. 20). See Marsh's *Engl. Lang.* p. 472, ed. Smith.

In the 17th or 18th century the *a* began to be dropped and the form in *-ing* is used, both predicatively and attributively, in a passive as well as an active sense: e. g. *The book now preparing*, *the book is now preparing*, as well as *John preparing the book* and *John is preparing the book*.

The theory of these changes is not certain.

At first sight it would appear that the verbal substantive in *-ing* began to encroach upon the present participle, at the same time as the present participle encroached upon the dative infinitive; and that the form in *-ing* at a later date completely drove out the form in *-nd* from both provinces, and itself invaded the dative infinitive: and finally, while continuing to be used freely after prepositions, dropped in certain expressions the preposition, and thus became indistinguishably used both as active and passive present participle.

<sup>1</sup> Morris, § 292. See also Koch, II. § 96.

And yet with the confusion of forms there is rarely any ambiguity of meaning, the other parts of the sentence showing the way in which this ambiguous form is used.

But this may not be the true history. The three forms *-en* (or *-ene*), *-ede*, *-inge*, after the final vowel became mute, differed phonetically but little from one another. For *e* is a dental nasal; *d* is a dental flat mute, closely allied to *e*; *ng* is, not two sounds, but a single guttural nasal. A very common provincialism (frequent also in America) pronounces *give* for *give*: e.g. *an' there is justice with your hearts* (Biglow Papers). *We ain't none riled by their frettin' an' frettin', we're used to keepin' the string on our slaves* (Ib.). *There's no work in tirlin' an' dancin' about an' starvin' an' not rightly knowin' what you're givin' to de next* (G. E.) &c. And many careless or rapid speakers now say *an* for *and*<sup>1</sup>. So that the history of this confusion may be not syntactical, but phonetical. The dative infinitive may have developed at one time a parasitical out-growth, and *driven* have become *drived*, as *grown* becomes *growed*, and in Germ. *nemen* has become *nemend*; and at another time or by other tongues have had the *e* nasalized; and the present participle may have first lost its final *d* and then nasalized its *e*.

Probably both syntax and sound contributed to the result.

### Of the Subjunctive mood.

In dealing with the subjunctive mood, I have endeavoured to classify its meaning and usage, just as we classify the meaning and usage of an inflected case. I have seen no reason to alter the primary classification, which I put forth in my *Elementary Latin Grammar* in 1862, excepting that both the optative and concessive uses have been reduced under the same head as the jussive subjunctive, instead of being put as separate co-ordinate heads. The eight heads, so formed, combined naturally into four, so far as the

<sup>1</sup> "The elision of a final *d* in such words as *hand*, *wind*, *field*, *held*, is by no means uncommon in ancient poetry, and arises simply from pronunciation." (Madden.) Cf. *don'* for *hand* in Burns. (Morris and Skeat, *Early English*, II. p. 300.) So in the Biglow Papers, *gid'*, *hid'*, *hid'*, *don'*, &c. (not *field*, *wind*, *held*, *stand*).

meaning of the subjunctive itself is concerned. These four meanings *supposition, idea to be realized, causation, alien statement* exhibit the whole sphere of the subjunctive mood. They give rise to eight classes of usage, according to the character of the sentence in which they are, or to their use with particles. A *supposition* is either in an independent or principal clause, or, usually with *si*, in a subordinate clause; that is to say, it is either a conditioned event, or the condition of another event taking place. An *idea to be realized* is either uttered as such and forms a wish or command, or, usually with *ut*, &c. in a subordinate sentence, is an object kept in view when another action is in doing. *Causation* may be looked at either from the side of result or from that of cause. In both uses we have subordinate sentences, the resulting action being coupled by *ut*, &c., the causing action by *cum*. An *alien statement* may be a reason, a condition, a question, and thus appendent to a principal clause in the indicative; or it may be a part only of a fuller alien statement, and thus be dependent on a subjunctive or infinitive.

This is an abstract statement of the result of the classification; it is deduced from it, not invented to support it. The grouping of the various uses of the subjunctive was made purely by empirically collecting them, and then arranging them according to their natural affinities. The groups seem to me thoroughly natural, and none the less so, because sentences may be found in which the subjunctive might be referred to more than one of these groups. Thus some sentences with the relative adjective *qui* might be referred to the head of condition, or cause, or hypothesis, or consequence: the subjunctive with *ut* after *efficio*, and in some restrictive meanings, might be referred to 'purpose' or 'result;' *quin* might in some sentences be treated almost indifferently as being a relative and expressing a purpose, or as being a dependent interrogative; *dum* might be regarded as introducing a sentence of purpose or a condition; subjunctives, here considered due to their qualifying a subjunctive or infinitive clause, might be explained, as themselves possessing the same ground for the subjunctive inflexions, which the principal clause has, or as having some other independent ground. This interlacing of branches is sure to arise when the branches are from the same tree. Had the uses of the subjunctive, like those of the ablative, sprung from a union of two or three different original inflected forms, some

confusion would still have resulted. But the subjunctive inflexions had originally, and have properly, one meaning only, which has been differently fixed and developed by association with particular particles, or by use in particular classes of sentences or on particular occasions. The vague has received definiteness and precision by being drawn into specific channels, or by being caught and exhibited by several mediums.

The subordinate groups of subjunctive usages are of course mainly such as are recognised by most grammars: the systematic arrangement, by reference to the meaning of the subjunctive itself, is I believe new. Other grammars have treated this matter, at least so far as subordinate sentences are concerned, either by reference to the division of sentences into substantival, adjectival and adverbial sentences, or by the particles used to introduce the clause. The latter was the old method; e.g. in Ruddiman, and, more or less modified, is common still; the former is not unusual in Grammars by German writers, at least since Becker's time. I agree with Madvig in thinking it important to collect the uses of the subjunctive together, just as the uses of the ablative and other classes are collected. The main difference of my procedure from his is in the arrangement of these uses by reference to certain specific meanings, in a similar way to that in which I have treated (here again more systematically, I believe, than others) the uses of the cases.

The use and meaning of the subjunctive in hypothetical and conditional sentences is, I think, often misapprehended. The indicative is often said to be used only when the condition is a fact, or when it is only an apparent condition. The subjunctive present is said to be used when an event is regarded as probable or possible; the imperfect, when it is regarded as improbable or impossible. I have ventured to deny these views. The matter, I take it, stands really thus. The indicative is a simple combination of subject and predicate, and has of itself no special meaning. The subjunctive has been formed, or at least is applied, in order to warn the hearer that the event is *thought*, and only thought. The indicative by contrast with this gets a sub-implication of *fact*. The subjunctive again by a secondary contrast gets (in certain classes of sentences) the special implication of *not fact*. Now the statements used in hypothetical and conditional clauses are referable in the speaker's



mind and intention (we have nothing to do with the objective reality), either to fact, or to not fact, or to a neutral head. In other words I either put a case avowedly as a fact, or avowedly as not a fact, or I put it simply without meaning to imply either one or the other. This intermediate class is of course a thought, and might have been left to the subjunctive mood. But this is not what the Romans have done. The subjunctive with them in such sentences means distinctly *not fact*, and the class of fact and the neutral class are given to the indicative. Grammarians often speak, as if this neutral class belonged to the subjunctive, and then, getting embarrassed, introduce conceptions which have nothing to do with grammatical categories; they talk of the subjunctive implying *doubt* or *probability* or *improbability*—conceptions which may or may not be present to the speaker's or the hearer's mind, but are in no way implied by the use of the subjunctive inflexions. If the instances of the subjunctive and indicative given in §§ 1532, 1533 be attentively considered, it will be seen that the indicative may be used when the condition is not and cannot be a fact, and when it is expressly a matter of doubt; e.g. see the passage from *C. Verr.* 3. 29, where after putting *si* with indicative, Cicero declares he must alter the form of expression, because there is no doubt.

On the other hand many cases, in which the event is only thought, may be put neutrally, or as a not-fact. According as the one or the other mode of viewing it is predominant, the indicative or the subjunctive will be used. And for practical purposes it is often indifferent which is used. It is obvious that where a future event is spoken of, the notion of fact is necessarily out of the question, or at least becomes very faint. Here therefore we get a very close approximation of the indicative with the subjunctive; an approximation which is shewn, not merely by the identity of the form, e.g. *faciam*, *feceris*, &c., but by the use indifferently of the future indicative and present subjunctive in putting hypothetical cases (e.g. in *C. Off.* 3. 23). On the other hand past time is less open to the display of neutral conceptions. An event in past time is either fact or not-fact. And the pluperfect indicative, the most thoroughly past tense, is thus rare in hypothetical sentences, except as a wilful exaggeration (§ 1574), and rare in conditional clauses, except where it denotes facts, *si* being then equivalent to 'whenever.'



Of the expressions *dicat aliquis*, *dixerit aliquis*.

Grammarians are in the habit of giving *dicat aliquis*, *dixerit aliquis*, 'some one may say,' as instances of what is called the potential mood, and giving them apparently as ordinary and common forms<sup>1</sup>. Now in the use which I understand to be intended, that of introducing an opponent's or bystander's supposed remark, *dixerit aliquis* is not uncommon. But the form leaves it uncertain whether the mood be indicative or subjunctive. The subjunctive, as the mood of supposition, seems at first sight so suitable, that *dixerit* has naturally been referred to it. And this theory seems to require little support, when *dicat aliquis* is placed by the side of *dixerit aliquis*; for *dicat* proclaims its mood as subjunctive unmistakeably. But how stands the fact? The fact is, so far as I can find, *dicat aliquis* is distinctly rare, and the form which is common is *dicet aliquis*—the indicative.

The only tolerably clear instances of *dicat* which I have found, are Ter. *Andr.* 610: Liv. 9. 4 § 12: 57. 53: Hor. *S.* 1. 3. 19; Pers. 3. -8: and Plin. 36 § 4 (*dicat fortassis aliquis*). Probably also Ter. *Enn.* 511, *roget quis*. One passage often quoted as an instance is C. N. D. 2. 53, *hic querat quispian*. But all Baiter's MSS. except *Codex regius Waltheri* have *sen queret* (and so have all the British Museum MSS. that I have seen, viz. Harl. 2463: 2511: 4662: 5114 and Burney 118: though doubtless this evidence is but slight, as a transposition of about forty chapters in this book shews that these MSS. all come from one source).

In Corn. 2. 11, Kayser has *inquit quispian* against the best MSS., which have *inquit*. Ibid. 4. 3 Kayser gives *aliquis inquit*, from the majority of the best MSS. The rest (apparently) have *inquiet*. Priscian (10. 2) quotes the passage, and his MSS. have *inquit*, *inquit* or *inquiet*. Either *inquiet* or *inquit* would suit his argument. (A similar variety of the MSS. is found in Corn. 4. 31, *si...inquit*.)

<sup>1</sup> For *dicat aliquis*, see for instance Muirig, *Lat. Gr.* §§ 360. 370, 493, 494 ann. 5; *dicat quispian* 493.

In Ovid *Am.* 2. 10. 37; 3. 15. 11, *atque aliquis...dicat*, clearly a wish is expressed: in Sen. *Ep.* 13 § 14 *alius dicat*, and Plin. 11 § 52 *quærat nunc aliquis*, an ironical command; in Ov. *Rem. Am.* 225 *aliquis vocet*, a concession. (Compare C. T. D. 3. 20 § 49, *dicat quamlibet*.)

Probably many would take Quintilian's words: *est et incertæ personæ ficta oratio: 'hic aliquis,' et 'dicat aliquis'* (9. 2 § 37), as referring to this commonly quoted use; but there is really nothing to shew that he was referring to such a use, as is seen in Liv. 9. 4 as above, and not to such uses as in Ovid or Seneca or Pliny just quoted.

Now with this paucity of instances of the subjunctive compare the instances of the future indicative:

*Dicet aliquis*, Corn. 4. 26; Cic. *Verr.* 2. 23; 4. 5; ib. 7; *Cæ.* 17; *Pis.* 28; *T. D.* 3. 20; ib. 23; *Par.* 3. 2 § 24; Sall. *J.* 31 § 18; Liv. 21. 10 § 11; Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 2. 9 § 38; 7. 16 § 19; Sen. *Dial.* 9. 14 § 6; 12. 2 § 2; *Ben.* 5. 6 § 7; *Ep.* 16 § 4; 47 § 18; 86 § 12; Stat. *Silv.* 1. præf.; Plin. *Ep.* 3. 9 § 21; Fronto p. 152 Naber. *Dicet fortasse quispiam*, C. Sull. 30.

*Quæret aliquis*, Corn. 4. 9; Cic. *Par.* 1. 1 § 9; *quæret quispiam*, C. *Arch.* 7; *quæret fortassis quispiam*, C. *Clu.* 52; *quæret aliquis fortasse*, C. *Verr.* 5. 70.

*Inquiet aliquis*, C. *Verr.* 2. 18; *aliquis...inquiet*, Hor. *S.* 2. 5. 42.

Similar, except that the statement is made dependent on the verb, are C. *Verr.* 3. 46 (*iniquum me esse quispiam dicet*); ib. 4. 25 (*nimum fortasse dicet aliquis hunc diligentem*); *Agr.* 2. 8 (*quæret quispiam in tanta injuria quid spectarit*); Phædr. 3. 51 (*rem me professum dicet fors aliquis gravem*); Ov. *Rem. Am.* 419 (*forsitan hæc aliquis... parva vocabit*).

I do not count here Ov. *A. A.* 3. 341; *Fast.* 2. 75 (*dicet*); for they are mere prophecies of the future, not interlocutory remarks.

Now for the purposes of comparison it is unimportant whether my enumeration is complete; for the same reading which has produced six, or say seven, instances of the present subjunctive, has produced 30, or, I may say, 35, instances of the future indicative.

The instances in Cicero and Cornificius, where the texts vary, I have not counted on either side.

I do not say that the six or seven instances of present subjunctive are not genuine: there is nothing in the tense or mood, which makes either unsuitable for such a use: rather their apparent suitability makes it at first sight odd that the instances should be so few. But, where the forms differ by one letter only, there is nothing hazardous in supposing that a copyist may have corrected what seemed to him too positive a statement<sup>1</sup>.

In corroboration of the view that the indicative is the ordinary use, may be mentioned the fact, that it is exceedingly frequent in the second person, when a definite person is meant, however hypothetical may be the prospect of his making any such statement.

e.g. *dicēs*, Cic. *T. D.* 2. 25; *Rosc. Am.* 33; *Att.* 4. 16 § 6; *ib.* § 10; *ib.* § 14; 5. 1 § 4; 8. 14 § 2, &c.; *Fam.* 10. 19; *Plin. Ep.* 5. 8 § 7. *fortasse dicēs*, Phædr. 3. 8.

*inquies*, Cic. *Or.* 29; *Acad.* 2. 36; *ib.* 47; *Fin.* 2. 31; *Dir.* 2. 57; *Rab. Post.* 10; *Att.* 1. 13 § 6, &c.

*querēs*, Asin. Poll. ap. C. *Fam.* 10. 31 § 6; Cæli. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 7; *Plin. N. H.* præf. § 10; similarly *succurret fortasse hoc loco alicui vestrum*, D. Brut. ap. C. *Fam.* 11. 1.

So also the present *inquis*, Cæli. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 3 § 3; *ib.* 17; D. Brut. ap. C. *Fam.* 11. 1; C. *Att.* 9. 7 § 3; Phædr. 3. præf. 4; *queris puto*, Cæli. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 3 § 3; *queris fortasse*, *Plin. Ep.* 8. 22; *fortasse queritis*, C. *Terr.* 3. 31.

Similarly *dicet eques*, Hor. *Ep.* 1. 15. 13; *respondebit Diogenes*, C. *Off.* 3. 12 § 52; *inquiet ille*, *ib.* § 53, and in other places.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Madvig's argument (*Opusc.* II. 77) for *faxe scrias*, occurring more than fifty times in Plautus and Terence, against *faxe scrias* occurring sixteen times. The argument on which he lays due stress, viz. that where the future indic. and pres. subj. are not distinguished by one letter only, but by more (e.g. *amabit* from *amet*), the future indic. not the present subj. is found, is not applicable to my argument: for only in *Ov. Rem. Am.* 419 *amabit* have we an *a*-verb, and that is possibly balanced by *taedet*, *ib.* 225.

If we endeavour to find criteria by which to judge whether *dixerit aliquis* is subjunctive or indicative, the form being in itself ambiguous, four possible helps to a decision occur: viz.

1. The general frame of the sentence, and its relation to neighbouring clauses;
2. The possibility of substituting for it some other tense of either mood;
3. The use of the first person singular (which has a distinctive form) in analogous sentences;
4. The meaning.

I put them in this order, because the first three have an objective character; the last, though apparently the decisive consideration, is liable to deceive, because we view it through an ambiguous medium, that of another language.

Some examples of this use of *dixerit* will be found in § 1545. Including those, the whole number of instances that I have found are the following:

*dixerit quis*, Cic. *Off.* 3. 19; *ib.* 28; *dixerit quispiam*, Cic. *Off.* 3. 27; *Phil.* 14. 5; *fortasse dixerit quispiam*, Cic. *Sen.* 3; *dixerit fortasse quispiam*, Cic. *Agr.* 2. 13; *id fortasse quispiam improbus dixerit*, Cic. *Phil.* 10. 5; *dixerit hic aliquis*, Catull. 67. 37; *dixerit e multis aliquis*, Ov. *A. A.* 3. 7; *aliquis vostrum subjecerit*, Sall. *Or. Macr.* 14; *dixerit ille*, Hor. *S.* 2. 7. 37; *riserit fortasse aliquis*, C. *Or.* 2. 24. Possibly also *hoc aliquis...ponendum dixerit*, Val. M. 6. 3. 5. I do not put here C. *N. D.* 3. 31, for there *dixerit quispiam* may probably be the apodosis to *si...accuset*: nor C. *Off.* 3. 6 § 29 *forsitan quispiam dixerit*, for *dixerit* after *forsitan* must in Cicero be subjunctive.

Now (1) the characteristic of the expression is that it is not protasis to a directly expressed apodosis, but is the simple statement of an objection or remark, to which an answer is given by the author, but the answer is not in grammatical relation to the objection. It is not therefore strictly referable (though from the frequency with which the verb *precedes* the subject, it reminds one of them) to the class exemplified by *roges me, respondeam* (§ 1552)

or *rogat quis, respondet* (§ 1553) nor to the class exemplified by *emeris, artioribus vinculis tenebitur* (§ 1622) though instances of the form in *-erit* are found in all these classes of sentences, and are almost frequent in the two latter. Nor can we argue from their analogy to the mood of *dixerit quis*, for the first has the subjunctive in both clauses, the second has the indicative in both, the third (i.e. concessive sentences) has the subjunctive in the protasis, and usually the indicative in the apodosis.

2. A better clue is given by the possibility of substituting for *dixerit*, without harm to the sense, some other form of the verb. Here the remarks about *dicat* and *dicet aliquis* become applicable. *Dicat* is, to say the least, somewhat scarce, *dicet* is frequent. And other tenses of the indicative are also found in a similar use. See the last three sentences in § 1545.

3. The use of the first person singular would be decisive of the question, if it were found in sentences of this class. But the first person is just the one which we cannot expect to find. The circumstances repudiate it. An objection to a speaker's words, arising during the time of his speaking, is necessarily the objection not of the speaker, but of him whom he is speaking to, or of a bystander. So that any precisely parallel sentence with the verb in the first person is out of the question. It may however occur to some that the common use of the first person in such expressions as *hoc ego dixerim*, &c. is analogous: and this shews the subjunctive mood. But the form with the third person really analogous to this sentence is not our *dixerit aliquis* but *illos merito quis dixerit miseros*, i.e. 'one might (would, could) fitly call them wretched,' i.e. 'if occasion arose:' whereas this mode of translation would not be at all suitable to *dixerit quis*, which has no reference to what might be said generally, but to the probability of such an objection being raised at once.

4. In truth the meaning seems on examination to be much more suitable to the indicative than to the subjunctive. The speaker, if he wishes to speak diffidently of the possibility of the objection, can and does so readily by throwing in *forte*. The objection itself requires only simple statement. *Dicet quis*, 'some one will now proceed to say;' *dixerit quis*, 'some one will have said, while I have been speaking.'



No doubt the ordinary English expression on such occasions is 'Some one may say', which we are in the habit of regarding as correspondent to the present subjunctive. But if this argument does not prove, in the face of the facts, that therefore the Romans ordinarily said *dicat aliquis*, it is still less likely to prove that, when they said *dixerit aliquis*, they were using the subjunctive. For the naturally corresponding English expression for *viderit ille* is 'he may (must) look to it', and yet *viderit ille* is precisely paralleled by *sed ego videro* and *tu videbis*, &c., as Madvig has pointed out in proof of *viderit* being the indicative.

In conclusion, without denying the possibility of *dixerit quis* in the expressions here treated of being subjunctive, I think the indicative is decidedly the more probable. The analogy of *riserit*, *adride*, &c. (§§ 1571 *b* and 1553) makes it possible; the meaning of the indicative is quite suitable; and the frequent use of *dicet aliquis* makes it distinctly probable. I see nothing distinctly in favour of the other hypothesis.

[I have given in § 1593 instances of all persons of *videro*, but perhaps a fuller list may be useful.

**videro**, Ter. *Hec.* 700; *Ad.* 538; ib. 845; Cic. *Cæl.* 15; *Flac.* 23; *Or.* 2. 8; ib. 3. 10; *Fin.* 1. 10; ib. 2. 3; *Ac.* 2. 24; *T. D.* 2. 11; ib. 5. 7; *R. P.* 2. 9; *Leg.* 1. 21; *Fam.* 7. 16; ib. 25; *Q. Fr.* 2. 13 § 2; *Liv.* 8. 33 § 8.

**videris**, Cic. *Phil.* 2. 46; *Or.* 1. 58; *Brut.* 86; *Att.* 13. 23; ib. 14. 20; *Q. Fr.* 3. 1 § 7; Anton. ap. C. *Phil.* 5. 12; *Liv.* 2. 40; *Sen. Rhet. Suas.* 6 § 27; *Contr.* 9. 27 § 19; *Sen. Ep.* 96 § 4.

**viderit**, Ter. *Ad.* 437; Cic. *Or.* 2. 58; *Ac.* 2. 7 § 19; *T. D.* 1. 11; *N. D.* 1 § 17; *Fam.* 13. 29; *Att.* 4. 10; ib. 5. 11; ib. 6. 4; ib. 12. 5; ib. 12. 21 bis; ib. 14. 11; ib. 13; *Liv.* 3. 45; *Verg. A.* 10. 743; *Prop.* 3. 7. 22; *Ov. H.* 12. 211; *A. A.* 2. 371; ib. 3. 671; *Rem.* 249; ib. 601; *Met.* 9. 519; ib. 10. 624; *Trist.* 5. 2. 43; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 9. 27 § 16; *Sen. Ben.* 2. 14; *Dial.* 11. 13.

**viderimus**, Cic. *Ac.* 2. 44; *Att.* 4. 5 fin.

**videritis**, Var. *R. R.* 2. 5 § 13; *Cæl. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 13; *Liv.* 1. 58; *ib.* 42. 13.

**viderint**, Cic. *Quint.* 17; *Phil.* 3. 6; *ib.* 12. 11; *Or.* 45; *T. D.* 2. 13; *ib.* 5. 41; *Læl.* 3; *Fam.* 9. 6; *ib.* 13. 29; *Att.* 8. 2 § 3; *ib.* 14. 21; *Sen. Rhet. Contr.* 7. 17 § 5; *Sen. Dial.* 1. 3; *ib.* 12. 14; *Petron.* § 61; § 62; *Plin. Ep.* 2. 10 § 4.

**videbis**, Cic. *Fam.* 4. 13 § 4; 13. 29 § 7; *Att.* 13. 33.

**videbimus**, Cic. *Verr.* 5. 40; *Quint.* 5; *Fin.* 5. 21; *Fam.* 3. 9; *Att.* 10. 7; *ib.* 12. 34; *Sen. Ep.* 110 § 2; *ib.* 117 § 5.]

### How to study grammar.

If I may give advice to students of grammar, I would recommend them to get into their heads a clear skeleton of this book first, and then to study more carefully the subordinate divisions. The examples under one head should be carefully thought over and compared with examples under another head of kindred or opposed meaning.

Further the student should take some portion of a good author, say a speech or even a few chapters of Cicero, or one of the longer epistles of Horace, and study the grammar carefully, noting the instances it affords illustrative of the different heads, either of this book (Book iv), or one of the others. He should read it, once looking to nothing but the verbs, their tenses and moods; another time looking to the cases, or some of the cases, of the nouns; another to the order of the words and of the sentences; another to the use of the several prepositions and conjunctions; another to the use of the different classes of words and the way in which their functions are assumed by phrases or sentences. Again he may look to the formation of the words, their derivative suffixes, and their composition; or to the laws of sound which their component letters follow or exhibit. Or again to the adherence of the several words to their primitive meaning or the course of their deviation. And then he may further by comparison with other writers examine how far in these matters prose accords with verse, the prose of an

orator, as in Cicero's speeches or the fictitious speeches inserted by Livy in his narrative, with that of a gentleman as seen in Cicero's letters, or that of the everyday world as seen in Plautus, or that of an historian as Livy or Tacitus; or note in what respects the age of Cicero differed from that of the previous century, or that of the Augustan or post-Augustan age. But the reading and noting should not be done lazily and perfunctorily. He should, at first at any rate, write out all the instances illustrative of the particular part of grammar which he is studying, or note them carefully in his book.

Besides this he ought to study more than one grammar. Whatever arrangement of the materials of a Latin grammar we may think the best, it is almost certain that other arrangements, if made on some intelligible principles, will bring into stronger light some parts of the language, and furnish a different collection of instances and views taken from a different side.

### Acknowledgment of obligations.

My principal obligations in this book are to Madvig whose grammar supplied the basis on which I first worked, and to whose critical knowledge of the Latin language I attach far the greatest weight. There is certainly no Latin scholar who can be put nearly on a level with him, at any rate as regards the Latin prose authors. Other writers have furnished me with occasional hints and examples. Of grammars, besides Key's (2nd ed. 1858), of which I have spoken in my former volume (Pref. p. xciii), I am principally indebted to Ruddiman's (ed. Stallbaum 1823), Weissenborn's (1838), Krüger's (1842), Blume's (2nd ed. 1858), Kühner's (5th ed. 1861) and Gossrau's (1869): and of special treatises to Holtze's *Syntaxis Priscorum Script. Latin. usque ad Terentium* (1861, 1862), Kühnast's *Hauptpunkte der Livianischen Syntax* (1871, 1872), Dräger's *Syntax und Stil des Tacitus*, and in some degree to the small portion (pp. 1—322), which has at present appeared<sup>1</sup>, of his *Historische Syntax der Lateinischen Sprache* (1872), and to the *Syntaxis Lucretianæ*

<sup>1</sup> While this preface is printing I have received the rest of Vol. I, viz. pages 323—626. I have taken one or two references from it.

*lineamenta* (1863) of Holtze. I am conscious also of assistance from the collections of instances in Hoffmann's *Die Construction der lateinischen Zeitpartikeln* (1860)<sup>1</sup>, Lübker's *Die Syntax von Quam* (1870) and E. Becker's *De Syntaxi Interrogationum obliquarum* (in Studemund's *Studien* I. i. 1873). I have also got a considerable number of hints and examples from Munro's *Lucretius* (some indeed from the recently published 3rd edit. 1873), Brix's and Lorenz's editions of some plays of Plautus, Wagner's edition of the *Aulularia*, Fabri's *Lex* xxi. xxvi. (edited by Heerwagen) and xxiii. xxiv., Mayor's edition of the second Philippic; and some from other books. Many of the examples given form part of the common stock of grammarians and annotators: many others, possibly a fourth or a third of the whole, are from my own reading, though some of them may very likely occur in other grammars. Of course I have never taken an instance without verifying it in a recent edition, though I have sometimes referred it to a different head from that indicated by the authors from whom I took it. The editions I have used are stated in the preface to the first volume, p. xciv. For Seneca Rhetor I have of course used lately Kiessling's edition.

In the account of the *oratio obliqua* I have benefited by some hints and criticisms of the Rev. J. H. Backhouse on my Elementary Grammar, and generally by some of Rev. Prof. J. B. Mayor, who has kindly read over many of the proof-sheets, though not in their final form.

#### Miscellaneous remarks.

Most of my references will be readily understood: but it may be well to state that I have referred to Cicero (I regret to say) by the larger chapters, not by the smaller sections. By *C. Or. 26* &c. I mean the treatise called *Orator*; by *C. Or. 1. 26*, &c. I mean the *De Oratore* Lib. 1. &c.; by *C. Ferr. 1. 24*, the 1st book of the *Actio Secunda*: in references to the *Actio prima* I have always named the pleading, e.g. *C. Ferr. Act. 1. 24*. *C. Man.* is for Cicero's speech

<sup>1</sup> The new edition of this treatise was not out in time for me to make any use of it.

*pro lege Manilia* (or *de imperio Cn. Pompeii*) ; *Læl.* is for the *Lælius* or *de Amicitia* ; *Sen.* for the *Cato Major* or *de Senectute*. By *Plin.* simply, I mean the elder Pliny : the references are to the sections printed in the margin of Jan and Detlefsen's editions. The younger Pliny's works are denoted by *Plin. Ep.* or *Plin. Pan.* Cicero and Livy are usually denoted simply by *C.* and *L.* *Cat.* is Cato ; *Catull.* is Catullus ; *Corn.* is for Cornificius, the supposed author of the *Libri ad Herennium*. *C. I. L.* is the *Corpus Inscript. Latin.*, usually the first volume. In quoting poets the number which I have given is that of the line, in which the pertinent expression occurs, not that with which the quotation may commence. The spelling is usually that of the edition from which I have taken the example ; and thus the spelling of the quotations from Livy (except the last five books, in which Madvig has followed the MS. pretty closely) is more conventional than the spelling of most other quotations.

In two important sections of the book (viz. the cases and the moods), the right-hand pages are parallel, not continuous, to the left-hand pages. In the first of these the right-hand page contains either further illustrations, or special details, or parallel or contrasted usages of other cases or of cases with prepositions. In the section on the moods the right-hand pages are almost entirely given up to the indicative and imperative. See the remarks on p. 219. By this arrangement I have obtained a thorough contrast of the indicative with the subjunctive, and at the same time have not broken the connection of the subjunctive usages. I do not think the breaches of continuity, such as they are, in the treatment of the indicative are of any moment in comparison with these advantages. All grammars have some.

In the Index I have not only referred to the places where a particular usage is made the subject of remark, but to a great many other places where a usage happened to find illustration in an example adduced for a different purpose. In references of the latter kind I have (in the Index) added an asterisk to the sectional number. By this means the Index may often serve as a summary of Latin usages arranged on different principles from those adopted in the book itself. But of course it must be borne in mind that it is an Index to this book only, and therefore, if any Latin usages do not happen to occur in the book, they will not be found in the Index. On the



other hand I have often referred to constructions by loose popular names, although such as I have in the body of this work endeavoured to avoid. Being popular they appeared most likely to answer the purpose of an Index.

Any corrections will be gladly received.

HENRY J. ROBY.

*May, 1874.*

#### PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

Some misprints and clerical errors have been corrected. Otherwise this edition scarcely differs from the first.

H. J. R.

WOOD HILL,  
PENDLETON, MANCHESTER,  
*Feb. 1875.*



BOOK IV.

*SYNTAX*

OR

*USE OF INFLEXIONAL FORMS.*



## BOOK IV.

### SYNTAX, OR USE OF INFLEXIONAL FORMS.

SYNTAX is an account of the way in which the different parts of speech (*i.e.* classes of words), and their different inflexional forms are employed in the formation of sentences.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

WORDS in Latin may be divided into four classes, according as they denote, (i) a complete thought: (ii) a person, thing, or abstract notion: (iii) a relation or quality: (iv) a mere connexion of words or sentences. Words of the first two classes are, with some special exceptions, inflected: the last two are not inflected.

i. Words which express a complete thought (called in logic a judgment) are *finite verbs* (*i.e.* verbs in indicative, subjunctive and imperative moods): *e.g.* *dico, dicis, dicit, I say, thou sayest, he says; dicat, he should say; dicito, thou shalt speak.*

ii. Words which denote persons and things and abstract notions are called nouns (*i.e.* names), and are divided into two classes, substantives and adjectives.

1. *Substantives* are such names of things, &c. as are representative, not of their possessing one particular quality, but of the sum of all the qualities and relations which we conceive them to have.



(a) *Pronoun Substantives.*

*Personal Pronouns* (in Latin) are names to denote the person speaking and the person spoken to; e.g. **ego**, I; **tu**, thou.

(b) *Noun Substantives.*

*Proper nouns* are names of individual persons or places; e.g. **Lucius**, *Lucius*; **Roma**, *Rome*.

*Common nouns*, or *appellatives*, are names of classes of persons or things; e.g. **victor**, *conqueror*; **aurum**, *gold*; **flos**, *a flower*.

*Abstract nouns* are names of qualities, actions, and states, considered apart from the persons or things possessing or performing them; e.g. **magnitudo**, *greatness*; **salus**, *health*; **discessus**, *departure*.

(c) *Infinitive mood of verbs and gerunds* are names of actions or states conceived in connexion with the persons or things performing or possessing them; e.g. **videre**, *to see*; **videndi**, *of seeing*.(d) Any word or phrase which is spoken of as a word or phrase only, is the name of itself; e.g. **vidit**, *the word vidit*. Such words are necessarily indeclinable.

2. *Adjectives* are such names of persons or things as are expressive simply of their possessing this or that quality, or being placed in this or that relation. (See § 1060.)

(a) *Pronominal adjectives* describe by means of certain relations, chiefly those of local nearness to the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of. They are often used instead of nouns; e.g. **meus**, *mine*; **hic**, *this*; **ille**, *that*; **qui**, *which*.(b) *Numeral adjectives* describe by means of number or rank; e.g. **septem**, *seven*; **septimus**, *seventh*. Some are indeclinable.(c) *Nominal* (or *noun*) adjectives describe by means of qualities; e.g. **magnus**, *great*; **salutaris**, *healthy*.(d) *Participles* (including *gerundive* in some uses) are verbal adjectives used to describe persons or things by means of actions done by or to them; e.g. **amans**, *loving*; **amatus**, *loved*; **amandus**, *that should be loved*.

iii. Words (besides oblique cases of nouns), which denote relations or qualities of qualities or of actions, are called *adverbs*, and are indeclinable.

- (a) *Connective* adverbs; *i.e.* those which besides qualifying a word in their own sentence, also connect that sentence with another sentence. These are all pronominal; *e.g.* **quum**, *when*; **dum**, *whilst*; **ubi**, *where*; **ut**, *how, as*; **si**, *in whatever case, if*; **quia**, *whereas, because, &c.*
- (b) Other pronominal adverbs; *e.g.* **hic**, *here*; **tum**, *then*
- (c) *Numeral* adverbs; *e.g.* **septies**, *seven times*.
- (d) *Nominal* adverbs (of *quality, manner, &c.*); *e.g.* **bene**, *well*; **clāre**, *brightly*.
- (e) *Prepositions* either express modes of actions or qualities, and in this usage are generally compounded with the verb or adjective, or give precision to the relations denoted by the case-suffixes of nouns; *e.g.* **in**, *in*; **ex**, *out*; **per**, *through*.

iv. Words which denote a mere connection (not of things, but) <sup>1006</sup> of names with names, sentences with sentences, or parts of sentences with like parts, are called *conjunctions*; *e.g.* **et**, **nec**, **sed**, in the following sentences, **Cæsar et Cicero eunt et colloquuntur**, *Cæsar and Cicero go and talk together*; **Non eros nec dominos appellat eos, sed patriæ custodes, sed patres, sed deos** (C. R. P. I. 41), *He calls them not masters nor lords but guardians of their country, fathers, aye gods*.

To these four classes may be added

*Interjections*; which are either natural vocal sounds, expressive of sudden emotions, or abbreviated sentences; *e.g.* **O!** **heu!** **ehem!** **st!** **medius fidius**, *upon my word*. <sup>1007</sup>

## CHAPTER II.

### PARTS OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE, AND USE OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

#### i. ELEMENTS OF A SENTENCE.

WHEN we speak we either *name* a person or thing, or we *declare* <sup>1008</sup> something of a person or thing.

The name of a person or thing is expressed by a *substantive*.

A complete thought always contains more than the name, for it *declares* something of the person or thing named. Every complete thought (called in Grammar a *sentence*) contains at least two ideas, viz.

1. The person or thing of which we speak, called the *Subject*.
2. Our declaration respecting it, called the *Predicate*.

A complete thought may be expressed most simply in Latin <sup>1009</sup> either (a) by a finite verb, or (b) by two nouns.

(a) A finite verb contains in its personal suffixes the subject, in its stem the predicate; e.g. **curr-it**, *he (she, it) runs*; **plu-it**, *it rains*; **ama-mus**, *we love*; etc.

(b) When the thought is expressed by two nouns only, the sentence will contain a substantive (or substantively used adjective), in the nominative case, for the subject, and either a substantive or an adjective for the predicate. Of two substantives it is, apart from the context, indifferent which is considered as the subject, but usually the least general name will be the subject: e.g. **Julius fortis**, *Julius is brave*; **Julius consul**, *Julius is the Consul*, or, *the Consul is Julius*.

The junction of the two ideas, i.e. the predication itself (called <sup>1010</sup> in logic the *copula*), is not expressed by any separate word, but (a) is implied in the indissoluble junction of the stem and personal suffixes in the finite verb; or (b) is inferred from the close sequence of the two names.

Both these simple forms of sentences are liable to be ambiguous: viz:

(a) The personal suffixes of a finite verb are often insufficient <sup>1011</sup> to define the subject, especially when the subject is of the third person. For the purpose of further definition, a substantive in the nominative case is often expressed with it, and the verb may then be regarded as containing only the predicate; e.g. **Equus currit**, *the horse runs* (properly *horse run-he*<sup>1</sup>).

(b) The relation of two nouns to each other is also ambiguous. <sup>1012</sup> The adjective or second substantive may be used, not to assert a connexion (i.e. as a *predicate*), but to denote an already known or assumed connexion (i.e. as an *attribute*), of the person or thing named by the first substantive with the quality named by the second substantive or the adjective. To remedy this ambiguity, some part of the verb **sum** is generally used (except in animated

<sup>1</sup> More strictly perhaps (if we may regard the **o** stems as properly masculine, and notice the nominative suffix) *horse-he run-he*.

language) to mark the fact of a predication, and then (usually but not necessarily) means little more than the logical copula, e.g. *Julius est consul*, *Julius (he) is consul*.

A finite verb, when its subject is expressed by a separate word, <sup>1003</sup> is put in the same person, and, as a rule, in the same number, as its subject. (See § 1433 sqq.)

(The distinctions of mood tense and voice do not concern the analysis of the simple sentence.)

Any substantive (§ 1003) may be used as a subject. The subject <sup>1004</sup> of a sentence is, if declinable, in the nominative case; but the relation of subject and predicate may exist also between words in oblique cases.

A noun, whether used as an attribute or predicate, is put in the same case, if it denote the same person or thing, as the substantive to which it is attributed, or the subject of which it is predicated.

(Pronouns and participles follow the same rule as nouns, and will therefore, unless separately mentioned, be included here under the term *noun*. Adjectives used otherwise than as attributes or predicates of a substantive will be included under the term *substantive*.)

## II. Of Attributes.

If a substantive by itself does not express the full name or definition <sup>1005</sup> which we wish to give of a person or thing, a word or expression is added, called an *attribute*<sup>1</sup> of the substantive. The simplest forms of attributes are nouns, denoting the same person or thing, as the substantive of which they are attributes. An attribute may be

(a) A substantive (often said to be in *apposition*); e.g. *Caius Julius Caesar*; *Julio consuli credidi*, *I believed the consul Julius*.

(b) An adjective; e.g. *hæc res* 'this thing'; *fortem consulem vidi*, *I saw the brave consul*. This is the normal use of the adjective, the adjectival suffixes, like the personal suffixes of the finite verb, acquiring further definition by the accompaniment of a substantive.

(c) For the use of other words or expressions as attributes, see below (§ 1017 &).

<sup>1</sup> Whether in any given sentence a word or expression is an attribute and intended merely to aid in identifying the subject, or is a predicate and intended to give fresh information about it, may be sometimes doubtful. Latin has no mark to distinguish these uses. In Greek an attribute has the article prefixed, a secondary predicate has not.

## iii. Of Predicates.

A predicate<sup>1</sup> is either *primary* or *secondary*, and each of these is either *direct* or *oblique*. A predicate is *direct*, if its subject is in the nominative case; *oblique*, if its subject is in an oblique case. It is *primary*, if predicated immediately of the subject; *secondary*, if predicated only through, or in connexion with, a primary predicate. 1016

A finite verb always contains a primary direct predication; and is never used otherwise (except 1003 *d*).

A noun or infinitive mood may be a primary or secondary, direct or oblique, predicate.

(a) As *primary* predicate some form of the verb is usual, and chiefly the finite verb; but a past participle or gerundive is not uncommon: a noun or pronoun is comparatively rare. (For the infinitive see § 1359). *e.g.* 1017

**Invadunt hostes: Romani fugere: occisus Marcellus. Hæc nuntianda.**

The distinction of the use of a noun as a primary predicate from its use as a secondary predicate with the verb of *being* (see next paragraph) is practically so unimportant, that the term *secondary predicate* will often be used to cover both.

(b) A *secondary* predicate is often added to a verb of indeterminate meaning (*e.g.* a verb of *being, becoming, naming, &c.*) to complete, as it were, the predication: *e.g.*

**Dux fuit Julius. Occisus est Marcellus. Hæc sunt nuntianda.**

**Liberati videbamus. Galus dicitur advenire. Cæsar imperator appellatur (or appellatus, or appellari).**

(c) A secondary predicate is often employed to denote the character in which, or circumstances under which, a person or thing acts, or is acted on. (Such a secondary predicate might, if it needed distinction from the preceding class, be called a *subpredicate*. It is often called an *apposition*, or *adverbial apposition*.)

**Hannibal peto pacem, It is Hannibal who now asks for peace.**

**Primus Marcum vidisti, You are the first that has seen Marcus.**

**Senex scribere institui, I was an old man when I began to write.**

**Neque loquens es, neque tacens, umquam bonus. (Pl. Rud. 1116.)**

**Cæsar legatus mittitur (or missus or mitti).**

<sup>1</sup> It is convenient sometimes to regard the whole of the sentence as divisible into two parts only: in this view the grammatical subject with all its attributes, &c. is the (logical) subject; the rest of the sentence is the (logical) predicate.



(d) Oblique predicates are usually in sentences containing a finite verb. The following contain *primary oblique* predicates.

**Dicit Romanos fugere.** *He says the Romans are fleeing (speaks of the Romans as fleeing).* **Fama est Romanos fugere.**

**Minabar me abiturum.** *Minantur puellæ se abituras.*

**Te heredem fecit.** *Quem te appellem?* **Marcum primum vidisti.**

**Advenienti sorori librum dedit.** *He gave the book to his sister as she was coming up.*

**Ante Ciceronem consulem interlit.** *He died before Cicero was consul.*

**Capta urbe rediit.** *Pudor vos non latī auxilii cepit (§ 1409).*

**Testes egregios! (§ 1128).** *At te ægrotare! (§ 1358).*

(e) An infinitive, when used either as (1) predicate or (2) object, &c. is often accompanied by a noun or other predicate; e.g.

(1) **Cæsarem dico appellari** (or **appellatum esse**) **imperatorem.**

**Cæsar dicitur appellari** (or **appellatus esse**) **imperator.**

**Fertur ille consules reliquisse,** **invitus invitōs.**

**Spero vos in urbem triumphantes ingressuros esse.**

(2) **Cæsar bonus esse** (or **haberi**) **cupit.**

**Cogito iter facere armatus.** *Licuit esse otioso Themistocli.*

**Movit me vir,** *cujus fugientis comes, rempublicam recuperantis socius, videor esse debere. (C. Att. 8. 14.)*

(f) Participles are (sometimes attributes, but) usually predicates to some substantive in the sentence, and are thus the means of combining into one sentence several subordinate predications: e.g.

**Venit iste cum sago, gladio succinctus, tenens jaculum; illi, nescio quid incipienti dicere, gladium in latere defixit.** (Corn. 4. 52.)

**Hæc taliaque vociferantes, adversarium haud imparē nacti sunt App. Claudium, relictum a collegis ad tribunicias seditiones comprimendas.** (L. 5. 2.)

**Consul nuntio circumventi fratris conversus ad pugnam, vulnere accepto, ægre ab circumstantibus ereptus, et suorum animos turbavit et ferociōres hostes fecit.** (L. 3. 5.)

In these sentences all the participles (except *circumstantibus*), as well as *adversarium*, *haud imparē*, and *ferociōres*, are predicates.

#### iv. Of the use of oblique cases and adverbs.

1. If a verb by itself, or with a secondary predicate, does not express all that we wish to declare of a person or thing by that sentence, additions may be made of various kinds; viz.

(a) If the verb express an action conceived as in immediate connexion with some person or thing upon which it is exercised, or

to which it gives rise, a substantive in the accusative case may be added to denote such person or thing. This is called the *object* (or *direct* or *immediate object*); e.g. *amicos fugiunt*; *Cæsar librum teneat*; *carmina fingo*. If the object be itself an action, it is usually expressed by an infinitive mood; e.g. *cupio discere*.

(b) If the verb express an action or fact indirectly affecting a person (or, less frequently, a thing), who is not the subject or direct object, a substantive, in the dative case, may be added to express such an *indirect* (or *remoter*) *object*. Some (i.e. intransitive) verbs admit this indirect object only: many verbs admit of both a direct and indirect object: e.g. *Placet oratio tibi*, *The speech is pleasing to you*; *hoc fratri facite*, *Do this for your brother*; *liber Cæsari datur*.

(c) Some verbs have what may be called a *secondary* object in the genitive case: if transitive, they have also usually a direct (frequently personal) object: e.g. *Accuso te furti*, *I accuse thee of theft*; *cadum vini implet*, *He fills the cask with (makes it full of) wine*; *miserescite patris*, *Have pity on your father*.

(d) A verb may be further qualified by adding oblique cases of substantives (with or without prepositions), or adverbs, to denote the *place*, *time*, *value*, *means*, *manner*, *cause*, &c. at, in, by, from, &c. which the action is done or state exists: e.g. *Ful annum Capuæ*, *I was a year at Capua*; *litteras abs te Balbus ad me attulit vesperi*; *magni hoc æstimo*, *I value this at a large sum*; *ardet dolore*.

The infinitive mood and the participles admit the same qualifications as finite verbs.

2. Oblique cases of substantives (with or without prepositions), and adverbs, when they qualify (a) the verb of *being* and other verbs of similarly colourless meaning, have often the same effect as a secondary predicate. They are rarely used predicatively without a verb. But they are also used to qualify (b) substantives attributively, and (c) adjectives, and sometimes (d) adverbs.

(Such words do not (like those in § 1015) denote the same person or thing as the word of which they are predicates or attributes; and the maintenance of their own special case is necessary to give them the requisite meaning.) e.g.

(a) *Cæsaris est* (or *vocatur*) *gladius*, *The sword is (is called) Cæsar's*.<sup>1019</sup>  
*Scio hoc laudi esse mihi*. *Præstanti prudentia est*. *In me odium est tuum*. *Sic est vita hominum*. *Frustra es*.

(b) *Cæsaris gladius*. *Cupiditate triumphi ardebam*. *Aliquid læti*.  
 (This use as attribute is the most common use of the genitive.)  
*Decemviri legibus scribendis*. *Vir præstanti prudentia*. *In me odium*. *Omnes circa civitates*.

- (c) *Maximus regum : cupidus triumphi. Arti cuilibet idoneus. Tanto major, (b) so much greater; splendidior vitro, brighter than glass. Ex composito hilaris. Valde utilis. Aliquando latus.*  
 (d) *Maximē omnium. Convenienter naturæ. Tanto magis. In dies magis. Pene pedetemptim.*

## v. Of coordination by conjunctions and otherwise.

(a) Conjunctions and connective adverbs of manner (*e.g.* <sup>1001</sup> *quam, ut*), when used to unite words or phrases, unite those only which are *coordinate* to one another, *i.e.* which fulfil the same function in the sentence: *e.g.* two objects, two attributes, two adverbial qualifications; &c. *e.g.*

*Romani ac socii veniunt. Nec regem nec reginam vidi. Illine credam an tibi? Bella fortius quam felicitus geris. Tibi cum meam salutem, tum omnium horum debeo. Cum omnibus potius quam soli perire voluerunt. (C. Cat. 4. 7.) Tu mihi videris Epicharmi, acuti nec insulsi hominis, ut Siculi, sententiam sequi. (C. T. D. 1. 18.)*

(b) Coordinate words are often put simply side by side, without any conjunction: sometimes another word is repeated with each: (*cf.* § 1439—1441); *e.g.*

*Veios, Fidenas, Collatiam, Ariciam, Tusculum cum Calibus, Teano, Neapoli, Puteolis, Nuceria comparabunt. (C. Agr. 2. 35.)*

*Nihil vos civibus, nihil sociis, nihil rebus respondistis; nihil iudices sententia, nihil populus suffragiis, nihil hic ordo auctoritate declaravit: mutum forum, elinguem curiam, tacitam et fractam civitatem videbatis. (C. Or. p. red. in Sen. 3.)*

(c) An answer, when not framed as an independent sentence, is often made in words coordinate to the pertinent part of the question: *e.g.* *Quis librum dedit? Cicero. Cui? Bruto. Quem? Tusculanas Disputationes. Ubi? In Tusculano.*

## vi. Of fragmentary or interjectional expressions.

A noun or infinitive mood is sometimes used (a) as subject without a predicate expressed, or (b) as predicate without a subject expressed: or (c) as a mere address. Similarly (d) adverbs and interjections. <sup>1002</sup>

- (a) *Quid, si adeo? Agendum; eundum. (§ 1399.) Malum (§ 1081). Tantum laborem capere ob talem filium! (Ter. Andr. 870.)*  
 (b) *Mirum ni hic miles est. (§ 1757.) Factum (in answers § 2254).*  
 (c) *Andi, Cæsar. Tibi, Marce, loquor. (§ 1082.)*  
 (d) *Bene mihi, bene amicæ meæ. (Pl. Pers. 775.) Hei mihi.*

## CHAPTER III.

## OF THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF SENTENCES.

A sentence may be affirmative or negative or interro- 1023  
gative.

An affirmative sentence asserts the connexion of two ideas;  
e.g. *Julius moritur, Julius dies; Julius est consul, Julius is consul.*

A negative sentence denies the connexion of two ideas; e.g.  
*Julius non moritur, Julius dies not; Julius non est consul, Julius is  
not consul.*

An interrogative sentence suggests the connexion and calls  
for an affirmation or denial of it; e.g. *Num Julius moritur? Dies  
Julius? Juliusne est consul? Is Julius consul?*

Commands and wishes are special forms of affirmative or nega-  
tive sentences.

A simple sentence contains only one direct assertion, and there- 1024  
fore one primary predicate.

A compound<sup>1</sup> sentence contains two or more single sentences.  
If these sentences though connected together yet remain quite  
independent of each other in sense, they are said to be coordinate  
to one another. If they are not independent of each other, one will  
be principal and the others subordinate.

A subordinate (relative, temporal, causal, concessive, or con- 1025  
ditional) sentence is often called the protasis, the principal (i.e.  
demonstrative, conditioned, &c.) sentence is often called the apo-  
dosis.

## Coordinate sentences.

1. *Coordinate sentences are connected by*

(a) *certain conjunctions and adverbs; e.g. et, ac; aut, vel, nec; 1026  
sed, autem; an; tum...tum, qua...qua; &c.*

<sup>1</sup> Some grammarians confine the term *compound* sentence to one  
which is composed (primarily at least) of coordinate sentences; and call  
a sentence which is divided (primarily at least) into a principal and  
subordinate sentence (or sentences) *complex*.

Tullius non convenerat me, nec erat jam quisquam mecum tuorum. (C. Fam. 3. 11.)

Vale et matrem meosque tibi commendatos habe.

(Treb. ap. C. Fam. 12. 16.)

Quid ais? an venit Pamphilus? (Ter. Heu. III. 2. 11.)

Stellæ tum occultantur, tum rursus aperiuntur. (C. N. D. 2. 20.)

(b) *or by the relative qui, when it is merely equivalent to et is, nam is; i.e. when it continues a statement instead of introducing a definition or limitation of it.*

Res loquitur ipsa; quæ semper valet plurimum. (C. Mil. 20.)

Nam quod ad populum pertinet, semper dignitatis iniquus iudex est, qui aut invidet aut fâvet. (C. Plaut. 3.)

2. *A similar effect is produced, especially in (a) animated language, or (b) sharp contrast, by mere juxtaposition, without any expressed grammatical connective.*

(a) Volt hoc multitudo, patitur consuetudo, fert etiam humanitas. (C. Off. 2. 14.)

Pompeius fremit, queritur, Scauro studet, sed utrum fronte an mente, dubitatur. (C. Arr. 4. 13.)

(b) Ergo hæc veteranus miles facere poterit, doctus vir sapiensque non poterit? (C. Tull. 2. 17.)

Neminem oportet esse tam stulte adrogantem, ut in se rationem et mentem putet inesse, in cælo mundoque non putet.

(C. Legg. 2. 7.)

3. *Occasionally two sentences, in form coordinate, are in meaning, the one principal, the other subordinate.*

Attendite, jam intelligetis.

Dares hoc Crasso, in foro saltaret.

(See Chap. XI.)

### Subordinate sentences.

*Subordinate sentences fulfil the same functions as a Substantive, an Adjective, or an Adverb, and occupy a corresponding position in the principal sentence. They are called respectively, Substantival, Adjectival, or Adverbial sentences.*

1. *Substantival sentences occupy the place which a substantive may in the nominative or accusative case would occupy, i.e. Subject, Object, Apposition.*



*They are in Latin of four kinds:*

(a) *Infinitive sentence*, i.e. *an infinitive mood with its subject in the accusative.* (§§ 1351, 1356.)

(N.B. *Expressions in the infinitive are not strictly sentences but merely fragments of sentences. They are here classed with sentences, because in indirect narration they represent what would be proper sentences in direct narration.*)

Scio te hæc dixisse.

Fama est Gallos adventare.

Ducuntur homines spe, sibi id utile futurum. (C. Off. 2. 6.)

(b) *Sentences introduced by the connective adverb quod.*

Bene mihi evenit, quod mittor ad mortem. (C. T. D. 1. 41.)

Prætereo, quod hanc sibi domum sedemque delegit. (C. Clu. 66.)

(c) *Dependent questions.*

Quid futurum sit, non video. (C. Att. 7. 13.)

Di utrum sint necne sint, quæritur. (C. N. D. 3. 7.)

(d) *Some sentences introduced by ut or ne; especially as objects after verbs of entreating, commanding, effecting, &c. and as subjects to the verbs est, accidit, &c. These are originally and strictly adverbial sentences expressing purpose or consequence.*

Peto non ut decernatur aliquid novi, sed ut ne quid novi decernatur. (C. Fam. 2. 7.)

Faciendum mihi putavi, ut tuis litteris brevi responderem.

(C. Fam. 3. 8.)

Thrasybulo contigit ut patriam in libertatem vindicaret.

(Nep. Thras. 1.)

Quando fuit ut, quod licet, non liceret? (C. Cæl. 20.)

2. *Adjectival sentences stand as attributes to a substantive, <sup>1030</sup> to specify or define some particular class or individual; and are always introduced by a relative (adjective or adverb), as, qui, qualis, quantus, &c. ubi, quando, &c.*

*A demonstrative pronoun (adjective or adverb) is often found in the principal sentence to give additional distinctness to the substantive specified.*

Locus, quem delegi, ubi constitui, hic est.

Duabus iis personis, quas supra dixi, tertia adjungitur. (C. Off. 1. 13.)

3. *Adverbial sentences are used to qualify verbs or adjectives, and are introduced by a connective adverb. They fulfil the same functions as adverbs, oblique cases (except genitive), with or without prepositions (§ 1011 & 1019), and participial clauses (§ 1003). The different significations of adverbial sentences, with the conjunctions introducing them, are as follows:*

(a) *Place where, whence, whither. Ubi, qua, quo, unde, &c. (Local sentences.)*

(b) *Time when, during which, until, after, before, as often as. Quam, ut (when), ubi, dum, donec, postquam, penesquam, quoties, &c. (Temporal sentences.)*

(c) *Manner in which: ut (as), eum, quasi, quam, tanquam, velut, &c. Ac has sometimes the same effect as quam. (Modal or Comparative sentences.)*

(d) *Purpose: "that", "in order that". Ut, ut ne, ne, &c. (Final sentences.)*

(e) *Result; "so that". Ut, ut non. (Consecutive sentences.)*

(f) *Condition; "if". Si, &c. (Conditional sentences.)*

(g) *Cause; "because", "since". Quod, quoniam, quia, siquidem, &c. (Causal sentences.)*

(h) *Concession or Assumption; "although", "supposing that". Etenim, quamquam, ut, dum. (Concessive sentences.)*

*Examples of these different kinds of adverbial sentences will be given in treating of the moods. Chap. XII—XVIII.*

4. (a) *A subordinate sentence may itself be principal to a third one.*

*Ut his bonis erigimur, quæ expectamus, ita letamur his, quæ recordamur.*

*The principal sentence here is sic letamur his: in this there are two subordinate sentences, viz. (1) quæ recordamur, a simple adjectival sentence qualifying bonis; (2) ut bonis his erigimur, quæ expectamus, a complex adverbial sentence of manner. Thus, ut erigimur bonis is subordinate to ita letamur, but principal to quæ expectamus.*

(b) *Sentences which are coordinate to one another, (a) may both be subordinate to a third sentence; or (b) may each contain one or more subordinate sentences.*

Qui cum Sicyonem advenisset, adhibuit sibi in consilium quindecim principes, perfecitque æstumandis possessionibus, ut persuaderet exulibus ut pecuniam accipere mallent, possessionibus cederent. (Cf. C. Off. 2. 23.)

*The compound sentences, of which adhibuit and perfecit are the predicates, are coordinate to one another. Cum advenisset is subordinate to adhibuit (temporal). Ut persuaderet is subordinate to perfecit (substantival, § 1029). Ut mallent and cederent are coordinate to one another, and subordinate to persuaderet.*

It will be seen, that subordinate sentences correspond in their <sup>1034</sup> functions to the several cases of substantives.

The nominative (as subject) and accusative (as object) are represented by substantival sentences.

The genitive (as indeclinable adjective) is represented by adjectival sentences.

The ablative, the locative, the adverbial accusative (*place whither, measure*), and the quasi-adjectival dative (§§ 1156, 1158), may be represented by adverbial and adjectival sentences.

All sentences are expressions denoting facts, and consequently the dative as ordinary indirect object, and the nominative of address (or vocative), which are, strictly speaking, always regarded as names of persons, can rarely be represented by any sentence.

## CHAPTER IV.

### ORDER OF WORDS AND SENTENCES.

#### i. Order of words in a prose sentence.

*The order in which the words stand in a Latin sentence, is not <sup>1035</sup> fixed by any invariable rule, but depends chiefly on the requirements of facility of comprehension, emphasis, and rhythm.*

(A) *Facility of comprehension suggests the following rules, which however are frequently superseded, if emphasis or rhythm requires a different order.*

1. The subject is put first, the predicate last, and the object and other qualifications of the predicate interposed, in order that the precise extent and purport of the predicate may be known, before the hearer or reader can suppose the sense to be complete.

Cur ego tuas partes suscipio? Cur M. Tullius P. Africani monumenta requirit. P. Scipio eum, qui illa sustulit, defendit? (C. Verr. 4. 34.)

Et Fabius cum equitatu impetum dederat et consul eruptionem e castris in trepidos jam hostes fecerat. (L. 4. 14.)

Dictator præcones edicere jubet ut ab inermi abstineantur. (L. 5. 11.)

In poetry the order depends greatly on the requirements of the metre:

Ponitur ad patrios barbara præda deos. (Ov. Her. 1. 14.)

2. Qualificatory expressions (except attributes) are for a similar reason placed immediately before the word they qualify. Consequently,

(a) The preposition precedes its substantive, either immediately, or with qualificatory expressions only interposed.

Consul de bello ad populum tulit. (L. 4. 31.)

Sine ullo metu et summa cum honestate vivemus. (C. Clu. 51.)

Hæc officia pertinent ad earum rerum, quibus utuntur homines, facultatem, ad opes, ad copias. (C. Off. 1. 1.)

Some prepositions, chiefly disyllabic, occasionally stand after a relative pronoun without a substantive. So especially *contra*, *inter*, *propter*, and *de* in the phrase (borrowed from *latu*), *quo de agitur*.

*Cum* is always suffixed to personal and usually to relative pronouns.

Quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. (Cæsar. G. 6. 34.)

Homo disertus non intellegit eum, quem contra dicit, laudari a se, eos, apud quos dicit, vituperari. (C. Phil. 2. 8.)

Senatus, quos ad soleret, referendum censuit. (C. N. D. 1. 4.)

In poetry the order is often deranged:

Solus avem cælo dejecit ab alto. (Verg. A. 5. 341.)

Fœdera regum vel Gabiis vel cum rigidis æquata Sabinis.

(Hor. Epist. 2. 1. 15.)

(b) Adverbs and oblique cases precede the verb or adjective to which they belong.

Bellum civile opinione pierumque et fama gubernatur. (C. Phil. 5. 10.)

Multi autem, Gnathonum similes, sunt loco, fortuna, fama superiores. (C. Læli. 25.)

Cuniculus delectis militibus eo tempore plenus in æde Junonis, quæ in Veientana arce erat, armatos repente edidit. (L. 5. 21.)

Cicero per omnes superiores dies, præceptis Cæsaris, summa diligentia, milites in castris continuerat. (Cæs. G. 6. 36.)

In itinere de prælio facto Brutoque et Mutina obsidione liberatis audiui. (Plancus, ap. C. Fam. 10. 11.)

Legati proficiscantur : bellum nihilo minus paretur. (C. Phil. 5. 9.)

(c) *Negatives precede the word they qualify.*

1040

Nec animo nec benevolentiae nec patientiae cujusquam pro vobis cedam. (Plancus, ap. C. Fam. 10. 11.)

Haud segnius, quam fide populi Romani dignum fuit, exercitus Tusculum ductus. (L. 6. 33.)

Nihil ne ab iis quidem tribunis ad Velitras memorabile factum. (L. 6. 36.)

Aratoribus nihil non modo de fructu sed ne de bonis quidem suis reliqui fuit. (C. Verr. 3. 48.)

Cur non ita magno vendidisti? (C. Verr. 3. 53.)

3. *Attributes, whether adjectives, substantives in apposition, or oblique cases, usually follow their substantive, but the reverse order is frequent, and with demonstrative pronouns, and adjectives of number and quantity, is the rule.*

1041

Principio male reprehendunt præmeditationem rerum futurarum. (C. T. D. 3. 16.)

Peripatetici, familiares nostri, mediocritates vel perturbationum vel morborum animi mihi non sane probant. (C. T. D. 3. 10.)

Balbus quæstor, magna numerata pecunia, magno pondere auri, majore argenti coacto de publicis exactionibus, Kal. Junii traiecit se in regnum Bogudis, plane bene peculiatus. (Asin. Pollio apud C. Fam. 10. 32.)

Bellienus verna Demetrii Domitium quendam, nobilem illic, Cæsaris hospitem, a contraria factione nummis acceptis comprehendit et strangulavit. (Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 13.)

Lex ipsa de pecuniis repetundis sociorum atque amicorum populi Romani patrona est. (C. Cæcil. 20.)

*Adjectives and (not so frequently) a genitive case are sometimes put before, instead of between or after, a preposition and its substantive:*

e.g. Magna ex parte, tribus de rebus, ea de causa; deorum in mente.

*In many expressions the order of the words is fixed by custom:*

1042

e.g. Populus Romanus, Civis Romanus, res familiaris, res gestæ, æs alienum, jus civile, senatus consultum, via Appia, magister equitum, tribunus plebi, pontifex maximus, Bona Dea, Carthago nova, &c.



4. *When a substantive is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, or by a genitive and a prepositional expression, the adjective or genitive is usually put first, and the other attribute interposed between that and the substantive, e.g.* 1043

Amicitia nullam ætatis degendæ rationem patitur esse expertem sui.  
(C. Læl. 23.)

Cujus rationis vim ex illo cælesti Epicuri de regula et judicio volumine accepimus. (C. N. D. 1. 17.)

5. *Relative pronouns regularly stand at the commencement of their clause, never after their verb.* 1044

Ad L. Vibium, equitem Romanum, virum primarium, quem reperiēbam magistrum fuisse eo ipso anno, qui mihi maxime quærendus erat, primum veni. (C. Verr. 2. 74.)

*But sometimes an emphatic word (or words) is prefixed to the relative, especially when the demonstrative sentence is put after the relative sentence.* 1045

Romam quæ apportata sunt, ad ædem Honoris et Virtutis videmus.  
(C. Verr. 4. 54.)

Cohortem autem Metelli, quam vocat. quid erat quod corrumpere, ex qua recuperatores in aratorem nulli dabantur. (C. Verr. 3. 68.)

6. *Connective adverbs and interrogative pronouns usually (except for emphasis' sake) stand at the head of their clause or only after words (e.g. relative or demonstrative pronouns) referring to the preceding sentence; never after their verb.* 1046

Quæ cujuscmodi sint, facilius jam intelligemus, cum ad ipsa ridiculorum genera veniemus. (C. Or. 2. 59.)

Hæc tu, Eruci, tot et tanta si nactus esses in reo, quam diu diceres?  
(C. Rosc. Am. 32.)

Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri in castra irruerunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 14.)

*But in poetry we have, e.g.:*

Tu numina ponti victa domas ipsumque, regit qui numina ponti.  
(Ov. M. 5. 32.)

7. *Words belonging to two or more co-ordinate words or expressions should strictly be put either before them all or after them all. But it is very usual, partly for rhythm's sake, for the common word to be put after the first of the co-ordinated words.* 1047

Jam viris vires, jam ferro sua vis, jam consilia ducibus deerant. (L. 8. 38.)

O condicionem miseram non modo administrandæ verum etiam conservandæ reipublicæ. (C. Cat. 2. 7.)

An tu existimas cum esset Hippocrates ille Cous, fuisse tum alios medicos, qui morbis, alios qui vulneribus, alios qui oculis mederentur? (C. Or. 3. 33.)

Una est enim eloquentia, nam sive de cæli natura loquitur, sive de terra, sive de divina vi sive de humana, sive ex inferiore loco sive ex æquo sive ex superiore, sive ut impellat homines, sive ut doceat, sive ut deterreat, rivis est diducta arctis, non fontibus. (C. Orat. 3. 6.)

*But in poetry irregularities occur: e.g.*

Pacis eras mediisque belli. (Hor. Od. 2. 19. 28.)

(B) *Emphasis suggests the following rules:*

1048

1. *Any word which is to be made prominent is placed at or near the beginning of the sentence, or sometimes, if not the primary predicate, at the end (as an unusual position).*

A malis mors abducit, non a bonis. (C. T. D. 1. 34.)

Dedi veniam homini impudenter petenti. (C. Att. 5. 21. § 12.)

Sequemur igitur hoc tempore et in hac quæstione, potissimum Stoicos. (C. Off. 1. 2.)

2. *An unemphatic word is sometimes inserted between words connected with one another, partly to throw the words before it into greater relief, partly to prevent itself occupying a more important position in the sentence. So especially est, sunt, &c.*

Quadrivii sermonem superioribus ad te perscriptum libris misimus. (C. T. D. 5. 4.)

Desperatio est ægritudo sine ulla rerum expectatione meliorum. (Ib. 4. 8.)

Qui in fortunæ periculis sunt ac varietate versati. (C. Verr. 5. 50.)

Primum Marcelli ad Nolam prælio populus se Romanus erexit. (C. Brut. 2.)

3. *Contrasted words are put next to one another.*

1050

Ego Q. Fabium, senem adulescens, ita dilexi ut æqualem. (C. Sen. 4.)

Quid quod tu te ipse in custodiam dedisti? (C. Cat. 1. 8.)

Compare Mihi ad pedes misera jacuit, quasi ego ejus excitare ab inferis filium possem. (C. Verr. 5. 49.)

4. *Contrasted pairs of words are often put with the words in one pair in a reverse order to that of the other pair, (two of the con-*

1051

*trusted words still often being together as by last rule). This figure is called "chiasmus" (i.e. crossing).*

*Ratio enim nostra consentit: repugnat oratio. (C. Fin. 3. 3.)*

*Cum spe vincendi simul abieceris certandi etiam cupiditatem. (C. Fam. 4. 7.)*

*Clariorem inter Romanos deditio Postumiam, quam Pontum in-  
cruenta victoria inter Samnites fecit. (L. 3. 11.)*

*Quæ hic reipublicæ volnera imponebat, eandem ille sanabat. (C.  
Fin. 4. 14.)*

3. *Where similitude exists in a sense of similarity rather than in contrast, the same order of words is preserved in the sim-  
ponent clauses. This figure is called "anaphora" (i.e. repetition).*

*His similes sunt omnes qui virtuti student: levantur vitis, levantur  
erroribus. (C. Fin. 4. 11.)*

*Ut non nequiquam tantæ virtutis homines facilius deberet anses  
esse transire huiusmodi flumen, ascendere altissimas rupes, subire  
iniquissimum locum. (Læs. G. 3. 17.)*

*Id totum evenitur eo delectæ rerum, quem modo dixi constituto,  
ut ut voluptates antecurrant maiorem voluptatum adipiscen-  
dum causa, ut dolores suscipiantur maiorem dolorum effu-  
gendorum gratia. (C. Fin. 1. 10.)*

(C) *Repetition admits of no definite rules being given, but suggests two:*

1. *short words or expressions occupying a distinct position as  
subject, predicate, &c. being put first.*

*Erant ei veteres inimicitie cum duobus Roscis Americis. (L. Rasc.  
Am. 4.)*

*Terrebat et proximus annus ingubris dæorum consilium fœneribus.  
(L. 17. 45.)*

*Movet ferocem animum juvenis seu ira seu detestandi criminis  
pudor seu inmensurabilis vis fœli. (L. 1. 7.)*

2. *variety in the arrangement of neighbouring sentences so as to  
regulate phrase and syntax. (Four B. 4. and B. 5. are often found  
together.)*

*Vos autem, quam perspicuis dubia debentis instruire, dubis per-  
spicua certaminis reddere. (C. Fin. 4. 14.)*

*Vide quid intersit inter tuam Modestam magnanimitatem  
inter amorem favoremque tuum et Modam consilium atque  
prudentiam. (C. Fam. 3. 11.)*

*Idde hac sententia gelidas perennitates, Egeres periculis annuum,  
aparam venturis viridissimas, speculorum concavis ampli-*

tudines, saxorum asperitates, impendentium montium altitudines immensitatesque camporum: adde etiam reconditas auri argentique venas infinitamque vim marmoris. (C. N. D. 2. 39.)

(D) *The position of the following adverbs may be specially noticed:* 1055

(a) *Nam always, namque almost always, at the beginning; enim after one or (rarely) two words.*

(b) *Itaque almost always at beginning; igitur usually after one or two words.*

(c) *Etiam immediately precedes the word it qualifies; quoque, quidem, demum, immediately succeed such a word.*

(d) *Tamen first except for emphasis; autem, vero, after one or two (closely connected) words.*

## ii. Position of subordinate sentences.

1056

1. *Subordinate sentences (except those which express a result) follow the rule of qualificatory words or phrases, i. e. they are put before the principal sentence to which they belong; either before the whole of it or before all but a few words.*

Cum hostium copiae non longe absunt, etiamsi inruptio nulla facta est, tamen pecunia relinquitur, agricultura deseritur. (C. Man. 6.)

Qui autem ita faciet, ut oportet, primum vigilet in deligendo (quem imitetur), deinde, quem probavit, in eo, quæ maxime excellent, ea diligentissime persequatur. (C. Or. 2. 22.)

Quid autem agatur cum aperuero, facile erit statuere quam sententiam dicatis. (C. Phil. 5. 2.)

Ibi quum Herculem, cibo vinoque gravatum, sopor oppressisset, pastor accola ejus loci, nomine Cacus, ferox viribus, captus pulchritudine boum, quum avertere eam prædam vellet, quia, si agendo armentum in speluncam compulisset, ipsa vestigia quærentem dominum eo deductura erant, aversos boves, eximium quemque pulchritudine, caudis in speluncam traxit. (L. 1. 7.)

2. *A short principal sentence is often prefixed to the whole or part of the subordinate sentence, especially if this be a dependent interrogative.* 1057

Stoicorum autem non ignoras quam sit subtile vel spinosum potius disserendi genus. (C. Fin. 3. 1.)

Existimo gratum te his, Crasse, facturum, si ista exposueris, quæ putas ad dicendum plus quam ipsam artem posse prodesse. (C. Or. 1. 24.)

## CHAPTER V.

USE OF NOUN INFLEXIONS; ESPECIALLY THOSE  
OF GENDER AND NUMBER.

## (A) General usage.

1. *A substantive when used as attribute or secondary predicate* <sup>1058.</sup>  
*is put in the same case as the substantive which it qualifies. Usually*  
*also the sense will require that it be put in the same number, and, if it*  
*have more than one form, in the appropriate gender.*

(a) *As attribute, i.e. in apposition.*

Caius Julius Cæsar; Cai Juli Cæsaris; &c. .

Urbs Roma; Urbem Romam; &c.

Duas filias juvenibus regiis, Lucio atque Arrunti Tarquiniis, jungit.  
(*L. 1. 42.*)

P. et Ser. Sullæ. (*Sall. C. 17.*) *Rarely* Ti. et C. Gracchus. (*Ib. J. 42.*)

Tulliola, deliciolæ nostræ, tuum munusculum flagitat. (*C. Att. 1. 8.*)

O vitæ philosophia dux, O virtutis indagatrix expultrixque vitiorum.  
(*C. T. D. 5. 2.*)

Omitto Græciam atque illas omnium doctrinarum inventrices  
Athenas. (*C. Or. 1. 4.*)

Sustinisset hoc crimen ipse ille latronum occultator et receptor  
locus. (*C. Mil. 19.*)

Encolpius quidem lector, ille seria nostra, ille deliciæ, sanguinem  
rejecit. (*Plin. Ep. 8. 1.*)

In aliquo numero fuerunt M. Fulvius Flaccus et C. Cato, Africani  
sororis filius, mediocres oratores. (*C. Brut. 28.*)

Hoc tibi, Porsinna, juvenus Romana indicimus bellum. (*L. 2. 12.*)

Ei morbo nomen est avaritia. (*C. T. D. 4. 11.*)

(b) *As secondary predicate, either direct or oblique.*

1059

Hæc urbs est Roma. Cæsar creatus est consul.

Licet Cæsari esse, (creari, legem ferre,) consuli.

C. Junius ædem Salutis, quam consul voverat, censor locaverat,  
dictator dedicavit. (*L. 10. 1.*)

Dolabella hesterno die hoste decreto, bellum gerendum est.

(*C. Phil. 11. 7.*)

Lælium Decumum cognovimus virum bonum et non illiteratum,  
sed nihil ad Persium. (*C. Or. 2. 6.*)



Clitomachus usque ad senectutem cum Carneade fuit, homo et acutus, ut Pœnus, et valde studiosus et diligens. (C. *Ac.* 2. 31.)

Tuum<sup>1</sup>, hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus. (C. *Pb.* 2. 43.)

Num potui Ciliciam Ætoliā aut Macedoniā reddere?

(C. *Att.* 5. 20.)

Nequam et cessator Davus: at ipse subtilis veterum iudex et callidus audis. (Hor. *S.* 2. 7. 101.)

Bonis utimur tribunis pl., Cornuto vero Pseudocatore.

(C. *Att.* 1. 14, § 6.)

Adventus Philotimi—at cuius hominis, quam insulsi et quam sæpe pro Pompeio mentientis—exanimavit omnes. (C. *Att.* 10. 9.)

Quam hesternus dies nobis, consularibus dico, turpis inluxit.

(C. *Pb.* 8. 7.)

Huic item Menæchmo nomen est. (Pl. *Men.* 1096.) *So usually in Plautus.*

Puero ab inopia Egerio inditum nomen. (L. 1. 34.)

*The above rules for substantives apply equally to adjectives; that is to say, adjectives, whether used as attributes or secondary predicates, are put in the case in which a substantive similarly used would be put. The gender and number will vary with the meaning. For adjectives should be regarded as substantives of wide general application (e.g. bonus, 'a good he', bona, 'a good she', bonum, 'a good thing'; cf. §§ 308—311; 1003, 1004). Sometimes they are used in this general application without a substantive (§ 1061); sometimes (and this is their ordinary use as attributes) they are specialised by use with a substantive (§ 1062); sometimes this special meaning is inferred (though the substantive is not found adjacent) from the substantive being expressed elsewhere in the sentence, or from the known associations of the word and from the context (§§ 1063—1065).*

2. *An adjective is sufficient by its inflexions of gender and number to denote, if in the masculine, males (or persons generally); if in the feminine, females; if in the neuter, things in general.*

a) *Hence many adjectives of special meaning are constantly used in the appropriate gender as substantives. See e.g. §§ 880, 942, 944, and Book III. passim. So e.g.*

Adolescens, agnatus, amicus, animans, infans, juvenis, maritus, necessarius, rusticus, serpens, socius, &c.

Commodum, decretum, dictum, factum, fatum, ostensum, pactum, peccatum, responsum, secretum, verum, votum, &c.

<sup>1</sup> **Tuum** may be considered as a genitive case (of **tu**) with adjectival inflexions (§ 388).

(b) *An ordinary adjective is not commonly so used in the masculine singular nominative as subject. But demonstrative and relative pronouns are frequently so used in all cases*

Docti censent. Suavia delectant. Quid est hoc?

Cui pretium dedit? unde aut quantum dedit? (C. *Rosc. Am.* 27.)

Sum timidus. Sum timida. Sunt timidæ.

Est miserum igitur mors, quoniam malum. (C. *T. D.* 1. 5.)

Ex pacto jus est, si qui quid inter se pepigerunt, si quid inter quos convenit. (Corn. 2. 13.)

Ita prorsus existimo, bonos beatos, improbos miseros. (C. *T. D.* 5. 12.)

Adsentatio non modo amico, sed ne libero quidem, digna est.

(C. *Lael.* 24.)

Tempori cedere semper sapientis est habitum. (C. *Fam.* 4. 9.)

Labor voluptasque, dissimillima natura, societate quadam inter se naturali juncta sunt. (L. 5. 4.)

Olim mulieres aurum et purpuram data et oblata ultro non accipiebant. (L. 34. 4.)

Otium atque divitiæ, quæ prima mortales putant. (Sall. *C.* 36.)

Capita conjurationis ejus virgis cæsi ac securibus percussi sunt.

(L. 10. 1.)

Tum vero omnis ætas currere obvii. (L. 27. 51.)

Archias est ex eo numero, qui semper apud omnis sancti sunt habiti.

(C. *Arch.* 12.)

Ad extremum. In præsens. In majus. Præter hæc.

Sine dubio. De improvviso. Ex adverso. Ab imo.

Quod fuimus lauda, si jam damnas, quod sumus. (Phædr. 5. 10. 9.)

Triste lupus stabulis. (Verg. *B.* 3. 80.)

Varium et mutabile semper femina. (Verg. *A.* 4. 569.)

3. *An adjective when used as attribute to a substantive is put in the same case, gender, and number as that substantive.*

Vana illa res veræ mox cladis causa fuit. (L. 37. 41.)

Diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 6.)

Ego tibi illam Aciliam legem restituo, qua lege multi, semel dicta causa, condemnati sunt. (C. *Verr.* 1. 9.)

Litteras abs te M. Calenius ad me adtulit a. d. XIII. Kal. Mart. in quibus litteris scribis, &c. (Cn. Pompeius ap. C. *Att.* 8. 12 c.)

Hoc crimen nullum est, nisi honos ignominia putanda est. (C. *Balb.* 5.)

4. *An adjective intended as attribute to more than one substantive is, unless for emphasis' sake, expressed only once, and is put in the case and number of the substantive nearest to itself in the sentence.*

Omnes agri et maria. Agri et maria omnia.

Hominis utilitati agros omnis et maria parentia videmus.

(C. T. D. I. 28.)

Mens et animus et consilium et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus. (C. Cluent. 53.)

[Semproniae multae facetiae, multusque lepos inerat. (Sall. C. 25.)]

5. *The substantive to which the adjective is an attribute, is frequently, in certain constructions almost always, omitted: viz.*

(a) *Many adjectives being specially applicable, or frequently applied, to particular substantives are used without them, and pass as ordinary substantives.* (Comp. § 429.)

e.g. Africus (ventus); cani (capilli); circenses (ludi); natalis (dies); novalis (ager); occidens (sol); September (mensis); sestertius (nummus);

Africa (terra); agnina (caro); amona (copia); Appia (via); arenaria (rodina); arithmetica (ars); calda (aqua); decuma (pars); dextra (manus); fera (bestia); Latinae (feriae); laurea (corona); patria (terra); praerogativa (tribus); praetexta (toga); prosa (oratio); quartana (febris); summa (res); triremis (navis);

Cumanum (praedium); Falernum, merum (vinum); hiberna, stativa (castra); mulsum (vinum).

*Some are only so used in particular phrases.*

primas (partes) agere, frigidam (aquam) potare.

(b) *When the same substantive is used both as subject and predicate, it is expressed once only, the adjective thus often appearing by itself as secondary predicate.*

Veræ amicitiae sempiternae sunt. (C. Lel. 9.)

Cæsar Gomphos pervenit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Epiro. (Cæs. G. 3. 80.)

Eadem nunc mea adversum te oratio est. (C. Fin. 5. 27.)

Dixit Campanum Calenumque et Falernum agrum pervastatos esse. (L. 22. 25.)

Verres deorum templis bellum semper habuit indictum.

(C. Verr. 5. 72.)

Equidem ego vobis regnum trado firmum, si boni eritis, sin mali, inbecillum. (Sall. J. 10.)

*Similarly where the substantive is not expressed at all (cf. § 1050):*  
 Illi tardo cognomen pingui damus. (Hor. S. 1. 3. 53.)  
 In judiciis ille sumus, qui fuimus. (C. Q. F. 2. 4. 6.)

(c) *A substantive is often omitted in one sentence, if it is expressed in the neighbouring clause or sentence. So usually (1) where two attributes referring to different things of the same class require the same substantive.*

(1) Ipsorum lingua Keltæ, nostra Galli appellantur. (Cæs. G. 1. 1.)  
 Postero die terrestrem navalemque exercitum, non instructos modo sed hos decurrentes, classem in portu simulacrum et ipsam edentem navalis pugnae, ostendit. (L. 19. 21.)

Dux fuerant Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, altera Norica: utrique in ea fuga perierunt. Dux filiae harum, altera occisa, altera capta est. (Cæs. G. 1. 53.)

Diversa cornua, dextrum ad castra Samnitium, laevam ad urbem tendit. (L. 10. 41.)

Hæ quondam arationes, Campana et Leontina, grandiferae et fructuosae ferbantur. (C. Phil. 2. 33.)

[*Rarely two singular adjectives with a plural substantive follow.* (For substantives so followed, see § 1053.)]

Putabam quartam et Martiam legiones mecum futuras. (D. Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 19.)

(2) *With relative and demonstrative pronouns, the substantive (often called the antecedent) is usually expressed in the former of the two clauses only. (Sometimes the relative is, or appears to be, attracted into the case of the antecedent.)*

Caritate ea prestat patria, pro qua mori et cui nos totos dedere et in qua nostra omnia ponere debemus. (C. Leg. 2. 2.)

Me tuæ litteræ nunquam in tantam spem induxerunt, quantam aliorum. (C. Afr. 3. 12.)

Severitatem in senectute probō, sed eam, sicut alia, modicam. (C. Sen. 18.)

Vostra consilia accusantur, qui mihi summum honorem imposuistis. (Compare tuum, p. 11, and note.) (Sall. J. 35.)

Scire hoc vis? Cui. Hæc quidem causa, qua dixi tibi. (Ter. Ha. 37.)

In quem primum Eneæ Trojanique egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur. (L. 1. 1.)

Scipio cum quibus ante dictum est copiis (sc. Scipionem profectum esse) substitit. (L. 25. 32.)

Notante iudice, quo testi, populo. (Hor. S. 1. 6. 25.)

Compare Raptim quibus quisque poterat elatis, exhibant. (L. 1. 29.)

*In Plautus and Terence the subject is sometimes attracted into the case of a following relative.* 1067

*Illum quem ementitu's, is ego sum ipse Charmides.* (Pl. *Trin.* 985.)  
*Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit!* (Ter. *Eun.* 653.)

6. *A demonstrative or relative pronoun, used substantively as the subject of a definition, is usually attracted into the gender and number of the defining substantive.* 1063

*Eas divitias, eam bonam famam magnamque nobilitatem, putabant.*  
 (Sall. *Cat.* 7.)

*Quæ apud alios iracundia dicitur, ea in imperio superbia atque crudelitas appellatur.* (Sall. *Cat.* 51.)

*Haud erat dubium quin Lucerinis opem Romanus ferret: ea modo, qua irent, consultatio fuit.* (L. 9. 2.)

*Hannibal ad Druentiam flumen pervenit. Is et ipse Alpinus amnis difficillimus omnium transitu est.* (L. 21. 31.)

*Patres C. Mucio agrum dono dedere, quæ postea sunt Mucia prata appellata.* (L. 2. 13.)

*Pompeio patre, quod imperio populi Romani lumen fuit, extincto, interfectus est patris simillimus filius.* (C. *Ph.* 5. 14.)

*Sed jam forma ipsa restat et χαρακτηρ ille qui dicitur.* (C. *Or.* 39.)

*But Sabini spem in discordia Romana ponunt: eam impedimentum delectui fore.* (L. 3. 38.)

*Maturavimus proficisci, si hoc profectio et non fuga est.* (L. 2. 38.)

7. *An adjective is frequently found as secondary predicate, where in English we use an adverb or prepositional phrase. (For a like use of an adjective as an attribute see § 1295.) See also § 1073.* 1072

*Soli hoc contingit sapienti, ut nihil faciat invitus, nihil dolens, nihil coactus.* (C. *Par.* 5. 1.)

*Natura ipsa de immortalitate animorum tacita judicat.* (C. *T.D.* 1. 14.)

*Marius antea jam infestus nobilitati, tum vero inultus atque ferox instare.* (Sall. *J.* 84.)

*Senex si quæret me, modo isse dicito ad portum: si non quæret, nullus dixeris.* (Ter. *Hec.* 79.)

*Philotimus non modo nullus venit, sed ne per litteras quidem certio rem me facit.* (C. *Att.* 11. 24.)

*Gnavus mane forum et vespertinus pete tectum.* (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 6. 20.)

*Appius jam inde antiquitus insitam familiæ pertinaciam, gerendo solus censuram, obtinuit.* (L. 9. 29.) 107



Quibus dum locum ad evadendas angustias cogendo ipse agmen præbet, sustinens impetus hostium, prolapso equo, et suo ipse casu et onere equi super eum ruentis haud multum afuit quin exanimaretur. (L. 39. 49.) *See also p. 30.*

Tum vero omnes velut diis auctoribus in spem suam quisque acceptis prælium uno animo poscunt. (L. 21. 45.)

## (B) Use of the Participles.

*The participles either predicate some action or state of a person (or thing), or describe a person (or thing) by some action or state. They are of three different times, past, present, and future, in reference to the time of the principal action.*

*The present and future, and, in deponent, and a few other verbs usually, the perfect (cf. § 734), have an active meaning; the perfect participle in other verbs has a passive meaning.*

### 1. Use to predicate action or state.

1072

(a) *As primary predicate, or, more commonly, as secondary predicate with verb of being, &c. (§ 1017 b), they supply the place of deficient tenses in active and passive voice. (See §§ 1449, 1494.) The present participle is hardly ever so used. (As mere adjective it falls under § 1076.)*

Amatus est, amaturus est, &c.

Accepta itaque res, sæpiusque usurpando excitata. (L. 7. 2.)

Senectus est operosa, et semper agens aliquid et moliens. (C. Sen. 8.)

Verum ego seditiosus, qui præmia turbarum queror, et bellum cupiens, qui jura pacis repeto! (Sall. Or. Lep. § 16.)

(b) *As secondary predicate (§ 1017 c.f) they denote the circumstances, in which some person or thing is placed when the principal action occurs. In præ-Augustan prose the future participle is rarely found in this case.*

*(The passive participle when not predicated of the subject of the sentence generally denotes an action done by the subject; unless another agent is named.)*

*A participle thus stands in place of an adverbial expression or sentence, by which it is often best translated; or sometimes by a finite verb coordinate with the principal verb.*

Hæc locutus sublimis abiit. (L. 1. 16.)

Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens est mortuus. (C. Sen. 5.)

Supplex te ad pedes abiciebas: quid petens? (C. Phil. 2. 34.)

- Tribunos, ubi primum summoventes præbuere causam, adorti sunt. (L. 3. 14.)
- Omne malum nascens facile opprimitur; inveteratum fit plerumque robustius. (C. Phil. 5. 11.)
- Miserum est nihil proficientem angere. (C. N. D. 3. 6.)
- Servientes servitutem ego servos instruxi mihi. (Pl. Mil. 745.)
- Sæpe illum audivi furtiva voce loquentem. (Catull. 67. 41.)
- Ego, ut sæpe tu me currentem hortatus es, cotidie meditor. (C. Att. 5. 9.)
- C. Servilius Ahala Sp. Mælium regnum adpetentem, occupatum interemit. (C. Sen. 16.)
- Contione adveniens de Manlio et Junio habita, non ultra triduum moratus Romæ, paludatis lictoribus votisque in Capitolio nuncupatis in provinciam abit. (L. 41. 10.)
- C. Sempronius nihilo demissiore animo, quum dies venit, causa ipse pro se dicta, nequicquam omnia expertis patribus, ut mitigarent plebem, quindecim millibus æris damnatur. (L. 4. 44.)
- Jugurtha, fratre meo interfecto, regnum ejus sceleris sui prædam fecit. (Sall. Jug. 14.)
- Valet apud nos clarorum hominum memoria etiam mortuorum. (C. Sest. 9.)
- Non hercule mihi, nisi admonito, venisset in mentem. (C. Or. 2. 42.)
- Nec vixit male, qui natus moriensque fefellit. (Hor. Ep. 1. 17. 13.)
- Lucretium, dum in Hernicis sedet, prædonum agmen fefellit supra montes Prænestinos ductum, inde demissum in campos. (L. 3. 8.)
- Cogitate quantis laboribus fundatum imperium, quanta virtute stabilitam libertatem una nox pæne deleat. (C. Cat. 4. 9.)
- T. Manlius Torquatus Gallum, cum quo provocatus manum consuevit, in conspectu duorum exercituum cæsum torque spo-liavit. (L. 6. 42.)
- Horatius Cocles ausus est rem plus famæ habituram ad posteros quam fidei. (L. 2. 10.)
- Inde Græciæ præsidebis, et speciem Romanis trajecturum te præbens, et si res poposcerit, trajecturus. (L. 36. 7.)
- Hostes carpere multifariam vires Romanas, ut non suffecturas ad omnia, aggressi sunt. (L. 3. 5.)
- See also §§ 1402, 1405—1411.

## 2. Use as an ordinary noun adjective.

1074

- Minime male cogitantes sunt, qui in agricultura occupati sunt. (Cato, R. R. 1.)
- Tibi sum obediens. (Pl. Mil. 806.)

Qui privatus intolerabili superbia fuerit, eum commodum et cognoscentem sui fore in potestate qui speres? (Corn. 4. 18.)

Acrem enim oratorem incensum et agentem et canorum concursus hominum forique strepitus desiderat. (C. Brut. 92.)

Medicus plane confirmat propediem te valentem fore. (C. Fam. 16.9.)

Animalia alia rationis expertia sunt, alia ratione utentia. (C. Off. 2.3.)

Immoderata lætitia est voluptas animi elata et gestiens.

(C. T. D. 3. 10.)

Num igitur fortem virum, num magno animo, num patientem, num gravem, num humana contemnentem potes dicere Philoctetem illum? (C. T. D. 2. 14.)

Super eminentem carnem exedentia medicamenta conjicienda sunt; super concavam, implentia. (Cels. 5. 26 fin.)

*Many participles become so completely adjectives, that they are inflected for the comparative and superlative degrees, and take an object in the genitive instead of the accusative, e.g. prudens, diligens, peritus, &c. (Cf. § 1314.)*

### 3. Use as substantive. (See also § 1061.)

1075

*This is rare in nominative, infrequent in other cases, singular masculine and feminine; except in certain words, e.g. amans, sapiens, adolescens, candidatus, prefectus, natus, &c.: and is never found in the neuter singular of the present participle. (Nor could such an expression as faciens id laudatur be used for is qui id facit laudatur.)*

*If used completely as a substantive, it would be qualified, if necessary, by an adjective: otherwise by an adverb. Thus præclarum factum, or præclare factum, 'a glorious deed.'*

Movemur enim sæpe aliquo acute concluso. (C. T. D. 1. 39.)

Multa Catonis et in senatu et in foro vel provisæ prudenter vel acta constanter, vel responsa acute ferebantur. (C. Læl. 2.)

Senatus consultum. Plebiscitum. Edictum Prætoris.

Primus omnium instituit, ut tam senatus quam populi diurna acta conferrent et publicarentur. (Sall. Jul. 20.)

Sunt maximorum ordinum homines, sunt municipales rustici Romani, sunt negotii gerentes, sunt etiam libertini optimates.

(C. Sest. 45.)

Jacet corpus dormientis ut mortui. (C. Div. 1. 50.)

Nihil difficile amanti puto. (C. Or. 10.)

Quoja hic vox prope me sonat? ME. Tui benevolentis.

(Pl. Trin. 45.)

Solus omnium post memoriam humani generis supplicia in post futuros composuit. (Sall. Or. Lcp. § 6.)

## CHAPTER VI.

## USE OF CASES.

OF the six cases in Latin five have each more than one use: the <sup>1076</sup> locative has one only.

The *nominative* is quite distinct from the others, which have all some points of resemblance among themselves.

The *nominative* is used both of the subject of the sentence and of the person addressed.

Of the *oblique* cases the accusative, dative, locative, and ablative are mainly used in connexion with verbs; the genitive with nouns.

The accusative and ablative have a great variety of applications, <sup>1077</sup> which, however, may be ultimately reduced to three main uses each; and there is considerable analogy between them.

(1) The accusative denotes the area over which an action prevails; the ablative (as also the locative) denotes the point at which it is done.

(2) The accusative denotes the goal; the ablative the place of departure.

(3) The accusative denotes the object of a verbal action; the ablative denotes the attendant influences and circumstances.

The dative and the genitive resemble one another in so far that <sup>1078</sup> they both have an adjectival use, and both have also a use with verbs: but the adjectival use is the principal use of the genitive and the less important use of the dative; the use with verbs is much the commonest with the dative, and is occasional and isolated with the genitive.

In their relation to verbs the accusative, dative, and genitive may <sup>1079</sup> all denote objects of action; the accusative the direct object, the dative the indirect object; the genitive a secondary object; the usual combinations being that the accusative denotes a thing and the dative a person; or the accusative a person and the genitive a thing.

Outside this sphere of immediate action the accusative (in its other uses) and the ablative denote the numberless qualifications of place, time, extent, degree, manner, cause, and circumstances generally.

In their relation to nouns, whether as attributes or predicates, the genitive has the largest use, but the predicative dative, and the ablative of description, also play some part.

# CHAPTER VII.

## USE OF NOMINATIVE CASE.

THE NOMINATIVE Case expresses

(A) Name of the person or thing spoken of, i.e. *the sole subject of a sentence.*

Milo adruit. Dixit Pompeius, sive voluit. Qui ut peroravit, surrexit Clodius. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 3.)

Omnes illo die, Scauri, Metelli, Claudii, Catuli, Sczevolæ, Crassi, arma sumpserant. (C. Phil. 4. 5.)

Qui latrones, igitur, siquidem vos consules, qui prædones, qui hostes, qui proditores, qui tyranni nominabentur? magnum nomen est, magna species, magna dignitas, magna majestas consulis. (C. Phil. 11.)

Venit ad Chelidonem C. Mustius, eques Romanus, publicanus, homo cum primis honestus. (C. Verr. 2. 51.)

*The nominative is used with en, ecce, as subject to an unexpressed verb predication of existence. So perhaps malum.*

En crimen, en causa cur regem fugitivus accuset. (C. Dejot. 4.)

Ecce multo major etiam dissensio. (C. Ac. 2. 43.)

Quæ te, malum, ratio in istam spem induxit. (C. Off. 2. 23.)

(B) Name of the person (or thing) spoken to. note

*(This is often called the Vocative case. It is distinct in form from the nominative only in some nouns in -o. See §§ 351, 344, 352.)*

Rem hand sane, Scipio et Læli, difficilem admirari viderini. (C. Sen. 2.)

Ego sum M. Valerius Corvus, milites. (L. 7. 40.)

Audi Juppiter, et tu, Juno Quirine, dicite omnes cælestes, vosque terrestres vosque inferni, iudice. (L. 7. 32.)

Agendum pontifex publicus populi Romani, præi verba quibus me pro legionibus devoceam. (L. 4. 4.)

Ave, mi Gai, meus asellus jucundissimus. (August. 10. Gell. 15. 7.)

O peritura, tuoque illis documenta dature morte, ut, eade tuum nomen. (Ov. Met. 3. 370.)

Pro sancte Juppiter! (C. Phil. 2. 23.) Di boni! Pro pudor!



## CHAPTER VIII.

## USE OF ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1084

The ACCUSATIVE is used in three senses<sup>1</sup>. It expresses

- (A) The *compass* of an action or quality ;
- (B) The *goal* to which motion is directed ;
- (C) The *direct object* of an action.

(A) Compass or measure of action, state, or quality; 1086  
used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and nominal adverbs.

1. Space<sup>2</sup> over, along, about, which; i.e. distance, length<sup>3</sup>, &c. Usually with adjective or attributive genitive.

Cæsar tridui iter processit. (Cæs. G. 1. 38.)

Reliquas munitiones ab ea fossa pedes quadringentos reduxit.

(Cæs. G. 7. 72.)

Teaunum abest a Larino octodecim milia passuum. (C. Clu. 9.)

Zama quinque dierum iter a Carthagine abest. (L. 30. 29.)

Duas fossas xv pedes latas eadem altitudine perduxit. (Cæs. G. 7. 72.)

Materia perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerumque introrsus revincta. (Cæs. G. 7. 23.)

Turres toto opere circumdedit, quæ pedes LXXX inter se distarent.

(Cæs. G. 7. 72.)

A recta conscientia transversum unguem non oportet discedere.

(C. Att. 13. 30.)

Nego tibi hoc annis viginti fuisse primis copiæ, digitum longe a pædagogo pedem ut efferres ædibus. (Pl. Bac. 423.)

Negavit Marcellus e republica esse vestigium abscedi ab Hannibale.

(L. 27. 4.)

Triginta dies obsidio fuit, per quos raro unquam nix minus<sup>4</sup> quattuor pedes alta jacuit. (L. 21. 61.)

Continued on p. 36.

<sup>1</sup> These senses are subdivided as follows:

- A. 1. Space over which. §§ 1086, 1088.
- 2. Time throughout which. §§ 1090, 1092.
- 3. Extent of action of verb. §§ 1094—1100.
- 4. Part concerned (poetic). § 1102.
- 5. Description (rare). § 1104.
- 6. Use with prepositions, &c. § 1106.
- B. 1. Place towards which. §§ 1108—1112.
- 2. An action as the goal of motion. § 1114.
- 3. Use with prepositions, &c. § 1118.
- C. 1. Direct object of transitive verb. § 1120.
- 2. Certain special usages;
  - (a) Accusative with infinitive. (See § 1351.)
  - (b) Two direct objects. § 1122.
  - (c) Accusative after passive or reflexive verbs. § 1126.
  - (d) In exclamations. § 1128.

---

<sup>2</sup> A thing 'over which,' 'along which,' &c., motion takes place <sup>1083</sup> requires a preposition; e.g. *Turris per aggerem parum densati soli agebatur.* (L. 32. 18.); Or it is put in the ablative with *totus*; e.g. *Nuntios tota civitate Edueram dimittit* (Cæs. G. 7. 38), the whole over which being conceived as one place at which (cf. § 1170).

---

<sup>3</sup> An ablative is not unfrequently found in expressions of size, &c. <sup>1085</sup> Thus there is

(1) the abl. of description (the abstract substantive instead of the adjective. For this abstract subst. in the genitive, see § 1394).

*Hæc teretes stipites feminis crassitudine demittebantur.*

(Cæs. G. 7. 73.)

*Lingua purpuræ longitudine digitali.* (Plin. 9. 36. 129.)

(2) Abl. of measure, with *abesse*, *distare*; see § 1206.

(3) Abl. of circumstance; see §§ 1087 and 1248.

(4) Abl. of comparison (§ 1273) after comparatives.

(5) Only in inferior writers is the abl. used for the accus.: e.g.

*Quidam disponio et dodrante altum sulcum, latum pedum quinque faciunt.* (Col. 3. 13. 5.)

---

<sup>4</sup> For expressions of size with *plus*, *minus*, &c. see § 1273.

Continued on p. 37.

*By a looseness of expression the accusative<sup>1</sup> is used in other cognate expressions, space traversed being put instead of point reached.* 1088

Cæsar milia passuum tria ab Helvetiorum castris castra ponit.

(Cæs. G. I. 22.)

Quadringentos inde ferme passus constituit signa. (L. 34. 20.)

Huic ab Rhegio profectæ classi Democrates quindecim millia ferme ab urbe ad Sapirorem obuius fuit. (L. 26. 39.)

## 2. Time throughout which<sup>2</sup>.

1090

Annum jam audis Cratippum. (C. Off. I. 1.)

Urbs decem æstates hiemesque continuas circumsessa est. (L. 5. 22.)

Neque ille hoc animo erit ætatem. (Ter. Hec. 747.)

Frustra ibi totum desedi diem. (Ib. 800.)

Cogitationem sobrii hominis punctum temporis suscipe.

(C. Phil. 2. 3.)

Dies noctesque omnia nos fata circumstant. (C. Phil. 10. 10.)

Ab illo tempore annum jam tertium et vicesimum regnat. (C. Man. 3.)

Duo de quadraginta annos tyrannus Syracusanorum fuit Dionysius, cum quinque et viginti natus annos dominatum occupavisset.

(C. T. D. 5. 20.)

Sex. Roscius annos natus major<sup>3</sup> quadraginta. (C. Rosc. Am. 14.)

*Some loose expressions are found similar to those in § 1088. So always with abhinc, 'ago<sup>4</sup>.'* 1092

Quæstor Cn. Papirio consule fuisti abhinc annos quattuordecim.

(C. Verr. I. 12.)

Id temporis eos venturos esse prædixeram. (C. Cat. I. 4.)

Quis hic est homo quem ante ædis video hoc noctis<sup>5</sup>? (Pl. Amp. 292.)

Ego istuc ætatis non amoris operam dabam. (Ter. Haut. 110.)

Id nobis, hominibus id ætatis, oneris imponitur. (C. Or. I. 47.)

3. The extent<sup>6</sup> of action of the verb, &c. expressed, either (a) by a neuter adjective, or (b) by a substantive of same meaning as the verb. 1094

(a) The extent of action may be expressed by a neuter adjective of definition (i.e. a pronoun) or of quantity. (Compare the adverbs in § 528.)

Quid prodest? Quid me ista ledunt? (C. Agr. 2. 13.)

Vellem idem possem gloriari<sup>7</sup> quod Cyrus. (C. Sen. 10.)

Continued on p. 38.

<sup>1</sup> *The accusative is the case most usually found. It is frequent in* 1087  
*Livy with ponere (locare) castra. But the distance at which an*  
*event takes place is also expressed by*

(a) *simple ablative (see § 1206):*

Eodem die castra promovit, et milibus passuum sex a Cæsaris castris sub monte consedit. (Cæs. G. 1. 48.)

(b) *Abl. with ab, but only when the place, from which the distance is measured, is not expressed:*

Ad castra Cæsaris contenderunt, et ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 7.)

(c) *Abl. of circumstance, spatio, intervallo, with a gen. § 1248:*

Juba sex millium passuum intervallo a Saburra consederat.  
 (Cæs. C. 2. 38.)

<sup>2</sup> *The ablative is rarely used in this sense, except in post-Augustan* 1089  
*writers; e.g.*

Caligula vixit annis viginti novem, imperavit triennio et decem mensibus diebusque octo. (Suet. Cal. 59.) *But see § 1184.*

*Sometimes per is used:*

Ludi per decem dies facti sunt ('for ten days,' C. Cat. 8).

Imber continens per noctem totam usque ad horam tertiam insequentis diei tenuit. (L. 23. 44.)

*Inter, da, 'whilst,' 'in the course of:'*

Hæc inter cenam Tironi dicavi. (C. Q. Fr. 3. 1. 6.)

De quarta vigilia profectus est. (Cæs. G. 1. 41.)

<sup>3</sup> *For other expressions of comparative age, see § 1273.*

<sup>4</sup> *Abhinc is used with the abl. in two passages only (PL. Most. 1091*  
*494; C. Ferr. 2. 52), and in these it means 'from that time' (Madvig,*  
*Bemerk. p. 65). When the time is thus not measured from the present*  
*moment, the more usual expressions are ante sex annos, sex annis*  
*ante, &c. (§§ 1206, 1207).*

<sup>5</sup> *Hoc notis also in PL. Amph. 154, 163, 310; Curc. 1. Hoc ætatis*  
*Tren. 717. Possibly hoc is the ablative.*

<sup>6</sup> *The matter in which the action of the verb is displayed is put in* 1093  
*a different case, with or without a preposition, as the circumstances*  
*may require: e.g.*

<sup>7</sup> *Quibus rebus gloriâmini in vobis, easdem in aliis reprehenditis.*  
 (C. Lig. 7.)

Non pudet philosophum in eo gloriari, quod hæc non timeat?  
 (C. T. D. 1. 21.)

*Continued on p. 39.*

Metellus pauca pro tempore milites hortatus<sup>1</sup> est. (Sall. J. 49.)

Non audimus ea quæ ab natura monemur<sup>2</sup>. (C. Læl. 24.)

A me consilium petis, quid sim tibi auctor<sup>3</sup>. (C. Fam. 6. 8.)

Ego illud adsentior<sup>4</sup> Theophrasto. (C. Or. 3. 48.)

Numquid, Geta, aliud me vis? (Ter. Ph. 151.)

Hoc te vehementer rogo<sup>5</sup>. (C. Fam. 13. 43.)

Vos id cogendi estis, ut prædas vestras in medium proferatis.

(L. 6. 15.)

Id eos ut prohiberet, quod ejus sine bello posset, prætori mandatum est. (L. 39. 45.)

Omnes mulieres eadem æque student noluntque omnia.

(Ter. Hec. 199.)

Omnia unus Gabiis poterat. (L. 1. 54.)

Unum sentitis omnes, unum studetis, M. Antonii conatus avertere a republica. (C. Phil. 6. 7.)

Multum te opinio ista fefellit. (C. Verr. 1. 35.)

Nos aliquid Rutulos juvimus. (Verg. A. 10. 84.)

Quicquid auræ fluminis appropinquabant, afflabat acrior frigoris vis.

(L. 21. 54.)

Nescio quid conturbatus esse videris. (C. Phil. 2. 14.)

C. Sempronium nihil moror. (L. 4. 42.)

Nihil aliud ad eum nuntium a proposito aversus, quam ut cadaver efferri juberet. (L. 2. 8.)

Quid id refert tua? (Pl. Rud. 178.)

Nihil opust<sup>6</sup> nobis ancilla, nisi quæ texat, quæ molat, &c.

(Pl. Merc. 394.)

Quid opust anulo? (Pl. Bacch. 328.)

*Other adjectives, chiefly in Augustan poetry, are so used<sup>7</sup>, qualifying usually verbs of bodily action.* 1096

Atque ille exclamat der repente maximum. (Pl. Most. 488.)

Cotta...sonabat contrarium Catulo, subagreste quiddam planeque subrusticum. (C. Brut. 74.)

Cur in amicorum vitiis tam cernis acutum? (Hor. Sat. 1. 3. 26.)

Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo, dulce loquentem. (Hor. Od. 1. 22.)

Asper, acerba tuens, retro redit. (Verg. A. 9. 794.)

Mutua<sup>8</sup> inter se rami stirpesque teruntur. (Lucr. 5. 1100.)

Tiberius torvus aut falsum renidens vultu. (Tac. A. 4. 60.)

Compare lidem bellicum<sup>9</sup> me cecinisse dicunt. (C. Phil. 7. 1.)

1098

Continued on p. 40.



<sup>1</sup> De Aufidiano nomine nihil te hortor; scio tibi curæ esse.

(C. Fam. 16. 19.)

<sup>2</sup> Prælium, de quo vos paulo ante invitatus admonui. (C. Man. 15.)

(For a genitive after monere, &c. see § 1332.)

<sup>3</sup> Auctores Bibulo fuere tantundem pollicendi. (Suet. Jul. 19.)

<sup>4</sup> Cum iidem huic orationi, qui litteris regis adsensi erant, adsentirentur, decretum differtur. (L. 41. 24.)

<sup>5</sup> For other constructions of rogo, &c. see §§ 1122, 1125.

To this general head (accusative of extent) belong many so-called <sup>1093</sup> adverbs, which qualify both adjectives and verbs: e.g. tantum (so much), quantum, aliquantum, multum, nimium, parum, plerumque, paullum, immensum (Ov., Tac.), &c.; amplius, plus, minus, melius, rectius, ocus, citius, libentius, facilius, potius, prius, &c.; plurimum, potissimum, minimum. And the ordinals, primum, iterum, tertium, &c.; millesimum, extremum, postremum, ultimum, supremum, summum; recens, æternum (Verg., Tac.), commodum 'just.' Non (nœnum § 86. 2) is of like origin. In Pl. Ps. 761 insanum appears to be so used: Insanum magnum molior negotium.

Similar to this use of the ordinals is Cicero's use of nunc ipsum (e.g. Att. 7. 3 § 2) and tum ipsum...cum (Fin. 2. 20, where see Madvig). Some other words referable here are given in § 528.

<sup>6</sup> For quid opust facto; see § 1257.

<sup>7</sup> Other instances are transversa tuens (Verg. B. 3. 8); equus <sup>1097</sup> terram crebra ferit (G. 3. 590 and comp. Lucr. 2. 359, where however crebra is probably nom.); sera comantem narcissum (G. 4. 122); belua horrendum stridens (A. 6. 288); torvum clamat (A. 7. 399); spirans inmane (A. 7. 510); Cacum insueta rudentem (A. 8. 248); infanda furentem (A. 8. 489); corneta lugubre rubent (A. 10. 273); hians immane (A. 10. 726); vana tumentem (A. 11. 854); mens turbidum lætatur (Hor. Od. 2. 19. 6); perfidum ridens Venus (Ib. 3. 27. 67); illa sonat raucum quiddam atque inamabile ridet (Ov. A. A. 3. 289, cf. 286 and C. Arch. 10; and vox hominem sonat, Verg. A. 1. 328).

<sup>8</sup> Mutua several times in Lucret. Vergil has pedibus per mutua nexis examen subitum ramo frondente pependit. (A. 7. 66.)

<sup>9</sup> Also classicum canere; both frequent. Also consul classico ad contionem evocat (L. 7. 36); classicum (nom.) apud eos cecinit (L. 28. 27), &c. The word, whether originally so or not, came to be regarded as a substantive 'war tune,' and eventually classica (Tib. 1. 1. 4, Verg. G. 2. 539) was used for 'war trumpets.'

Continued on p. 41.

(b) *The extent<sup>1</sup> of action of the verb may be expressed by a substantive of the same meaning as the verb, accompanied (usually) by an oblique adjectival predicate. (Cognate accusative.)* 1100

Cur non eosdem cursus hoc tempore cucurrerunt. (C. Agr. 2. 17.)

Tamne tibi diu videor vitam vivere? (Pl. Mil. 628.)

Hunc, oro, sine me furere ante furorem. (Verg. A. 12. 680.)

Priusquam istam pugnam pugnabo, ego etiam prius dabo aliam pugnam. (Pl. Ps. 524.)

In theatrum Hortensius introiit, puto ut suum gaudium gauderemus. (Cælius ap. C. Fam. 82.)

Zenonis sententia est, solos sapientis, si servitutem serviant, reges esse. (C. Mur. 29.)

Itque reditque viam. Mille fugit refugitque vias.

(Verg. A. 6. 122; 12. 753.)

Vincit sponsionem<sup>2</sup>, si planum facit ab se illum aut vi aut clam aut precario possedissee. (C. Quint. 32.)

#### 4. Part concerned.

1102

*In Tacitus frequent, but in other prose, (a) only in a few expressions with partem, vicem<sup>3</sup>, cetera; in poetry (b) chiefly of parts of the body<sup>4</sup>; cf. § 1126.*

(a) Vos respondetote istinc istarum vicem. (Pl. Rud. 814.)

Romanas legiones nondum cura deseruerat, exanimis vicem unius.

(L. 1. 25.)

Suebi non multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 1.)

Inde bonam partem in lectum mærore dabantur. (Lucr. 6. 1249.)

Telum hastili abiegno et cetera tereti præterquam ad extremum, unde ferrum exstabat. (L. 21. 8.)

(b) Concidit et spumas agit, ingemit et tremit artus. (Lucr. 3. 489.)

Os humerosque deo similis. (Verg. A. 1. 589.)

Statque latus præfixa veru, stat saucia pectus<sup>5</sup>. (Tib. 1. 6. 49.)

Cressa genus Pholoe. (Verg. A. 5. 285.)

Cædit totidem nigrantis terga iuvenços. (Verg. A. 5. 97.)

Feminæ lincis amictibus velantur, nudæ brachia et lacertos.

(Tac. G. 17.)

*Continued on p. 42.*

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally an ablative (of the means or manner) is found with similar effect:

Patiamur illum ire nostris iumentis. (C. Q. F. 3. 3.)

Hoc deo complicitum est, mei hoc ornata ornata in regiones incertas esse ejectam. (Pl. Rud. 167.)

Scis scdere illam matrem illi ludo ludere. (Pl. Most. 1158.)

Divi denique vos precor quosque viri, qui in meo imperio gesta sunt geruntur, ea vos omnia bene juvenis, bonis moribus auribus.  
(L. 29. 27.)

Dixit me hic valere et servitorem servire huic homini optimo, qui me honore honestiorum semper fecit et fuit. (Pl. Capt. 387.)

Cognovi maximum eorum equitum qui in Ciliciam transisset ad equitum meorum armis conditione occisum. (C. Fam. 13. 4, § 7.)  
(This phrase often in Livy.)

Appius odisse plebem plus quam paterno odio. (L. 2. 55.)

Crispinus ad consules est deductus laudatusque illi magnifice et donis donatus. (L. 35. 18.)

<sup>2</sup> So vincere judicium (C. Terr. 1. 55); but vincere sponsione (C. Quin. 27); judicio (Rosc. Com. 18.)

<sup>3</sup> Vitum is 'in behalf'; instead; merely 'like,' e.g. Foris me Sand-  
nardi vitum in suo loculo mori male consuevis quam exire Themis-  
toclus. (C. Att. 10. 8, § 7.) In this sense (= 'like') the post-Augustan  
writers use vitum; e.g.

Principis omniumque civitatis que perpetuo dictas ac notibus vice  
mundi circumspiceretur. (Sen. Nec. 31.)

<sup>4</sup> This phrase was probably a development from the use of an ac-  
cusative after passive participles, e.g. vit § 1126, aided by the other  
usage of the accusative of extent. Additional examples are laudatum  
cum maximeque amicum (Terp. A. 4. 46); laurus viri omnium (The 7. 60);  
are viri fulgent (Pl. 10. 867); amicum matris (Hor. Od. 3. 10. 18);  
hircum virilis (Or. M. 2. 56); miles praestigiis matris (The. 4. 13. 35);  
maximam aget (Pl. H. 4. 81).

In ordinary prose the ablative is the usual word. Cf. § 1219.

Exhibetur in principis domini et tota mente acque artibus omnibus  
contemplantur. (C. Or. 1. 24.)

Facit vel parat, tunc omnium peritiorum similis. (C. T. D. 1. 33.)

<sup>5</sup> Quisquam viri (9. 3. 17). Jam valentem acris quoque saucius  
pectus.

5. Description<sup>1</sup>; *only hoc* (quod, id, omne), genus; *virile* 1104 (muliebre), *secus*; *qualifying substantives.*

Quod genus<sup>2</sup> Idæis fama est e montibus altis dispersos ignis orienti lumine cerni. (Lucr. 5. 663.)

Pascuntur omne genus objecto frumento, maxime ordeo.

(Varr. R. R. 3. 6.)

Scis me antea orationes aut aliquid id genus solitum scribere.

(C. Att. 13. 12.)

Liberorum capitum virile secus ad decem millia capta. (L. 26. 47.)

6. Use with prepositions, and verbs compounded 1106 with prepositions.

(a) *The accusative of compass or extent is often used with prepositions, viz. ad* (adversus), *ante, apud, circum, cis, clam, in, ob, penes, per, pone, post, prope, secundum, sub, super, trans, versus, and all disyllabic prepositions ending in -a and -ter, viz. circa, circiter, citra, contra, erga, extra, inter, infra, juxta, præter, propter, subter, supra, ultra.*

*Examples are given in the Appendix.*

(b) *Prepositions compounded<sup>3</sup> with verbs sometimes retain their proper meaning and even their ordinary use with particular cases. (Rare except with trans.)*

Hannibal Hiberum<sup>4</sup> copias trajecit. (L. 21. 23.)

Cæsar milites his navibus flumen transportat. (Cæs. C. 1. 54.)

Hos viros Pompeius omnia sua præsidia circumduxit atque ostentavit. (Cæs. C. 3. 61.)

Fretum Naupactum et Patras interfluit. (L. 27. 29.)

(c) *Analogous to the use with prepositions is the accusative after the adverbs propius, proxime<sup>5</sup>, the adjectives propior, proximus; and pridie, postridie.*

Esse officium meum putavi exercitum habere quam proxime hostem. (C. Att. 6. 5.)

Adeo varia fortuna belli fuit, ut propius periculum fuerint qui vice-runt. (L. 21. 1.)

Ipsc propior montem suos conlocat. (Sall. J. 49.)

P. Crassus cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. (Cæs. G. 3. 7.)

Tu pridie Compitalia<sup>6</sup> memento: balineum calferi jubebo.

(C. Att. 2. 3.)

Venatio postridie ludos Apollinares futura est. (C. Att. 16. 4.)

*Continued on p. 44.*

<sup>1</sup> *The normal usage has the ablative or genitive (§§ 1232, 1233, 1103 1308, 1311); e.g.*

*Alterum (ornithonis genus) est fructus causa, quo genere macellarii in urbe quidem habent loca clausa. (Varr. R. R. 3. 4.)*

*Epaminondam atque Hannibalem atque ejus generis homines nominabam. (C. Or. 1. 48.)*

*Generis ejus præda abstinuit Fabius. (L. 27. 16.)*

*Mancipia præter puberes virilis sexus restituenda censuerunt dominis. (L. 26. 34.)*

<sup>2</sup> *Quod genus, 'as for instance' is frequently used in Lucretius and in Cornificius, e.g. Corn. ii. 13 (four times), &c.*

<sup>3</sup> *The preposition is often repeated:*

1105

*Postulavit ne quam hominum multitudinem amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traderet. (Cæs. G. 1. 35.)*

<sup>4</sup> *So when the verb is in the passive voice;*

*Belgæ Rhenum antiquitus traducti sunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 4.)*

<sup>5</sup> *Cicero never, and Livy very rarely, have the dative with the adverbs propius, proxime; Cicero has not the accusative with the adjectives.*

1107

<sup>6</sup> *See also App. D. xv. (Vol. i. p. 454).*



(B) Place towards which motion takes place<sup>1</sup>.

1108

1. *Without a preposition*<sup>2</sup>. Confined in prose to proper names of towns, and of islands small enough to be considered as one place; **domum** (*home, not house*), **rus**, **foras**.

Leucadem venimus a. d. VIII. Id. Nov.; a. d. VII. Actium; inde a. d. v. Id. Coreyam bellissime navigavimus. (C. Fam. 16. 9.)

Appellitur navis Syracusas. (C. Verr. 5. 25.)

Usque Hennam profecti sunt. (C. Verr. 4. 49.)

Illo<sup>3</sup> cum pervenire non liceret, statim iter Brundisium versus contuli. (C. Att. 3. 4.)

Galli domos abierant et rex in hiberna concesserat Pergamum.

(L. 45. 34.)

Multitudinem omnem Romam traduxit. (L. 1. 33.)

Jam ex hoc loco proficiscatur Puteolos stadia triginta. (C. Ac. 2. 31.)

Exercitus omnis Aquiloniam est indictus. (L. 10. 38.)

Carthaginiensem matronam domum accepit. (L. 30. 13.)

Filiam Romam nuptum M. Livio dederat. (L. 23. 2.)

Quibus rebus Romam nuntiatis magnus repente terror invasit.

(Cæs. C. 1. 4.)

Ego rus ibo atque ibi manebo. (Ter. Eun. 216.)

Inermes cum infulis se porta foras<sup>4</sup> universi proripiunt.

(Cæs. C. 2. 11.)

Agelli est hic sub urbe paulum, quod locitas foras. (Ter. Ad. 949.)

Quid si doceo te non minus domum tuam avertisse quam Romam misisse decumarum nomine? (C. Verr. 3. 19.)

Ministerium restituendorum domos obsidum mihimet deponco ipse.

(L. 22. 22.)

Nocturnus introitus Zmyrnam quasi in hostium urbem.

(C. Phil. 11. 2.)

Concursatio regis magni ab Demetriade nunc Lamiam in concilium Ætolorum, nunc Chalcidem. (L. 35. 49.)

Tua me imago hæc limina tendere adegit. (Verg. A. 6. 696.)

Italiam fato profugus Lavinaque venit littora. (Ib. 1. 2.)

Verba refers aures non pervenientia nostras. (Ov. Met. 3. 462.)

*A similar use is found in the expressions:*

Venum ire, venum dare; pessum ire, pessum dare, premere.

1112

*Continued on p. 46.*

<sup>1</sup> *The accusative in its first adverbial use (A) denotes the line along which (or surface over which) we move: in the second use (B), the point to which we move. The ablative on the other hand expresses the point or place, at which we are, or from which we start.* 1109

<sup>2</sup> *A preposition is (in prose) required when the place to which* 1111

(1) *is expressed by common noun, or name of person, or house, &c., e. g. litteram illam ad caput adigens. (C. Ross. Am. 20.) Domum ad Ciceronem ivit.*

(2) *is interior of country, or town, or house, &c.: in. e. g. in Siciliam venit. In Formianum volumus venire Parilibus. (C. Att. 2. 8.)*

*is direction or neighbourhood of town: ad. e. g. ad Brundisium flexit iter. (L. 25. 24.) Adolescentulus miles ad Capuam profectus sum. (C. Sen. 4.) See also note to § 482.*

(3) *has urbem, oppidum prefixed in apposition. e. g. Victor pervenit in oppidum Cirtam quo initio profectus intenderat. (Sall. J. 102.) Usually also when the apposition follows: e. g. Demaratus contulit se Tarquinius in urbem Etrurie florentissimam (C. R. P. 2. 10); but L. 38. 24; 31. 25.*

(4) *is a Greek name which might be taken for a different case. e. g. a. d. viii. Idus ad Ceo jucunde venimus, inde Gyaram sævo vento. (C. Att. 5. 12.)*

<sup>3</sup> *The notion of 'whither' is contained in numerous adverbial forms, chiefly prepositional, in -e, which are frequently combined with versus, verum; and three of them with ad; viz. adeo, adhuc, quoad. See §§ 511, 4. 512.* 1113

Do fidem isto me intro ituram quo jubes. (Pl. Mu. 455.)

*Occasionally these forms are used of persons and things; e. g.*

Eo sumpti opus est. (Cato, R. R. 22. Eo=ad ill.)

Aventinum novæ multitudini datum. Aditi eodem hæc ita multo post Telluris Fœneque captis novi dives. (L. 1. 33.)

Sophoclidica hæc est peculiaris ejus, quo ego sum missus (quo=ad quam). (Pl. Pers. 201.)

Quo illæ nubent divites decore, si istud ius pauperibus ponitur? (Pl. Aub. 485.)

Homo nobilis et apud eos quo se contulit graciosus. (C. Verr. 4. 18.)

Dicunt haruspicium jussu ex illa ovis arcam esse factam, eoque condinas sortes. (C. Div. 2. 41.)

Dixit profecto quo velles aurum. (C. Cæl. 21.)

Hæc volo multo ante meditare, hæc te pares, hæc cogites, ad hæc te exerceas. (C. Fam. I. 7. § 9.)

\* On foras see § 1147.

## 2. An action as the goal of motion or the like.

1114

*This is almost confined to the use of the so-called supine in -um<sup>1</sup>: really the accusative of a verbal substantive with stem ending in u. Additional examples in Chap. XIV. Cf. also § 711.*

(a) Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ.

(Ov. *A. A.* 1. 99.)

Simul ad purganda crimina et questum de se Romam eos ituros comperit. (L. 34. 62.)

Exclusi eos, quos tu ad me salutatum miseras. (C. *Cat.* 1. 4.)

Ex suis unum sciscitatum Romam ad patrem mittit. (L. 1. 54.)

Consurrexisse omnes illi dicuntur et senem sessum recepisce.

(C. *Sen.* 18.)

Daturne illa Pamphilo hodie nuptum? (Ter. *And.* 301.)

Longius eam rem ductum iri existimabant. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 11.)

Coctum ego, non vapulatum, dudum conductus fui. (Pl. *Aul.* 454.)

Multi te ex jure manum consertum vocarent. (C. *Or.* 1. 10.)

Nec qui, quibus verbis herctum cieri oporteat, nesciat, idem herciscundæ familiæ causam agere non possit. (C. *Or.* 1. 56.)

(b) Exequias Chremeti quibus est commodum ire, em tempus est.

(Ter. *Ph.* 1026.)

Horum alterum neque nego neque infitias eo. (L. 6. 40.)

Edepol, ere, ne tibi suppetias<sup>2</sup> temperi advēni modo. (Pl. *Men.* 1020.)

3. (a) *The accusative of place towards which is used with the following prepositions:*

Ad (adversus), in, ob, pone, prope, secundum, sub, super, trans, versus; ante, extra, infra, inter, intra, ultra.

*Examples are given in the Supplement to Syntax.*

(b) *Occasionally an accusative (of this class) is found apparently dependent on a preposition in composition<sup>3</sup>. (See also § 1121.)*

Ne tu, quod istic fabuletur, auris immittas tuas. (Pl. *Capt.* 545.)

Ego autem, cum omnia conlustrarem oculis, animum adverti columellam. (C. *T. D.* 5. 23.)

Arbitrum illum adegit. (C. *Off.* 3. 16.)

Provinciam omnem in sua et Pompei verba jusjurandum<sup>4</sup> adigebat.

(Cæs. *G.* 2. 18.)

Hic tibi rostra Cato advolat. (Cic. *Att.* 1. 14, § 5.)

*Continued on p. 48.*

<sup>1</sup> Besides the supine other modes of expressing by verbal nouns the purpose of motion are:

(1) *ad* with gerund or gerundive:

Hannibalem in Syriam miserat ad Phœnicum accersendas naves.

(L. 37. 3.)

Tuis Meris nosmet ipsi ad veterem rerum nostrarum memoriam comprehendendam impulsi atque incensi sumus. (C. Brut. 3.)

(2) *Gerundive gerund or gerundios dependent on, but followed by, causa or gratia.* (See also § 1288.)

Duxit me amorem liberorum sibi quæsumdum gratia. (Enn. Frag. 141.)

Legatos ad Cesarum sui purgandi gratia mittunt. (Cæs. G. 7. 43.)

De discendi aut visendi causa maria transivimus. (C. L. P. 3.)

3. *Future participle often in Lat. Carthago, Turis, Pna. min.:*

Ipsæ per agrum Campanum mare inferum gent. oppugnaturus Neapolim, ut urbem maximam haberet. (L. 48. 1.)

Græci accesserunt vallo deliberaturi, quid potissimum a rege peterent.

(Carr. 5. 5. § 3.)

Deductis quadrimestres, ascendit ipse, non Rectina modo sed multis lituris amictum. (Enn. Ep. 6. 14. § 4.)

4. *Fessus indicat.* In Flaut. Ter., Lucr., and rarely in Augusti poets; see § 1292:

Vultusne tamis vultus? (Ter. Pl. 1. 2.)

Reidare hoc, non perbere, eris me mact. (Pl. Pl. 6. 42.)

Nec indices occurrent secunda tibi præcipere. (Lucr. 3. 86.)

5. *The dative of corpus a verbal nouns amille, puerille, subtile, velid minora, &c.* (See § 1293):

Murus fœderis equitibus obcurrit amille viris. (Sall. J. 101.)

Orpheumque missus cunctis, cunctis est a Plebanis. (Nep. Lyg. 4.)

<sup>2</sup> This use of supinas is found in Plautus, in this passage only, and Supplicas ferre. Rem. 1108: see. But the Amer. Bell. Annæ. has it frequently.

<sup>3</sup> But the proposition is never now repeated even in these phrases:

Magni in rebus acerbis acris adterunt animos ad religionem.

(Lucr. 3. 54.)

Plebeum Caninum ad purgandum popularis sceleris sui adulescere.

(C. Sall. C. 22.)

<sup>4</sup> Instead of purgandum, purgando dat. or obj. of sacra-mentum. § 1286 in other parts, &c. &c.

Populum purgando atque dominum Romæ passuros regnare.

(L. 2. 1.)

Continued in p. 49.

## (C) 1. Direct object of a transitive verb or participle. 1120

Many verbs not originally transitive become such either (b) by composition with a preposition (§ 1121), e.g. *venio*, 'I come;' *convenio*, 'I visit:' or (c) by a stretch of the conception (§ 1123), especially in poetry or animated language, e.g. *horreo*, 'I shudder,' hence, 'I fear.'

(a) *Græcia capta ferum victorem cepit.* (Hor. *Ep.* 2. 1. 156.)

*Ut tu fortunam, sic nos te, Celse, feremus.* (Ib. 5. 8. 17.)

*Dat mihi verba. Vir virum legit. Te citharæ decent.*

*Habeo gratiam Trebatio. Egi gratias diligenter.*

*Habere dicimur febrem, cum illa nos habeat.* (Sen. *Ep.* 119, § 12.)

*Hem, quisquis es, sine me.* (Ter. *Ad.* 321.) *Cette dextras.*

*Equitem cursu æquat. Virtutes majorum æmulemur.*

*Pudet regem facti. Non me fugit. Missum te facimus.*

*Signum excubanti tribuno dedit, 'optimam matrem.'* (Suet. *Ner.* 9.)

*Di ludos faciunt hominibus.* (Pl. *Merc.* 225.) *Cave canem.*

*Ludos me facit.* (Pl. *Rud.* 1. 70.) *Cornicum oculos confixit.*

*Alte extollens Brutus pugionem, Ciceronem exclamavit, et ei recuperatam libertatem est gratulatus.* (C. *Phil.* 2. 11.)

*Optas congressum pacemque non desperas.* (C. *Att.* 8. 15.)

*Primum me tibi excuso in eo ipso, in quo te accuso.* (C. *Or.* 2. 2. 1.)

*Lucem perosi projecere animas.* (Verg. *A.* 6. 435.)

*Parios ego primus iambos ostendi Latio, numeros animosque secutus Archilochi, non res et agentia verba Lycamben.*

(Hor. *Ep.* 1. 19. 23.)

*Nil relinquo in ædibus, nec vas nec vestimentum; conrasi omnia; ancillas, servos omnis produxi ac vendidi; inscripsi ilico ædis; mercedem quasi talenta ad quindecim coegi; agrum hunc mercatus sum: hic me exerceo.* (Ter. *Haut.* 140—146.)

(b) *Vires me deficient. Adeo hereditatem.*

*Extremum fato, quod te adloquor, hoc est.* (Verg. *A.* 6. 466.)

*Cælum suspeximus cælestiaque contemplati sumus.* (C. *N. D.* 2. 2.)

*Vallo atque fossa mœnia circumdedit.* (Sall. *J.* 23.)

*Atilium sua manu spargentem semen convenerunt.* (C. *Rosc. A.* 18.)

*Is periculum iudicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit.*

(C. *Mur.* 29.)

*Filia miseram sed honestam mortem occubuerat.* (L. 3. 50.)

*Unus velut morbus invaserat omnes Italiæ civitates.* (L. 24. 2.)

*Continued on p. 50.*



The following verbs have become transitive in certain senses by being compounded with a preposition. (Those printed wide have a personal passive voice.) The first (or principal phrase) authority is added. Those without author's name are so used in Cicero. Many of them have other constructions also, esp. in Cicero. Compare also § 1106 b; 1113.

accedere (Sall.), accumbere (Plaut.), adire, *metaph.*, adoriri, ag-gredi, adiacere (Liv.), adlatrare (Liv.), adloqui (Verg.), aisidiere (Verg.), adveni (Tac.), advolvi (Tac.);

antecedere, antecellere (Plin.), anteire, antegredi, antevenire (Sall.);

aversari (Liv.), averti (Verg.).

circumdare, 'surround' (as well as 'throw around') -duere (Varr.), -framere (Sen.), -fundere, *surround*, -ire, -latrare (Sen.), -sidiere, -sistere (Cæs.), -sonare (Liv.), -stare, strepere (Sen.), -tonare (Hor.), -vadere (Liv.), -vehi (Liv.), -venire, -volare (Hor.);

coire, *metaph.*, convenire;

excedere (Liv.), egredi (Cæs.), exire (Ter.), epturare, elabi (Tac.), eluctari (Liv.), enini, 'elimò' (Tac.), emungere (Plaut.), expugnare, erumpere (Verg.), evadere (Liv.), evagari (Hor.).

incedere (Liv.), incessere (Liv.), incidere (Tac.), increpare, in-currere (Liv.), inire, *metaph.*, ingredi, inolescere (Plaut.), innare (Verg.), innatare (Verg.), impendere (Ter.), impugnare, inquirere (Liv.; with in, Cic.), inrumpere (Cæs.), inservire (Plaut.), insidiere (Liv.), insilire (Ov.), insistere (Cæs.), insputare (Plaut.), insultare (Ter.), invadere (Liv.), inundare, involare (Plin.);

interduere (Liv.);

obambulare (Ov.), occumbere (mortem), oberrare (Pers.), obire, oburgare, oppugnare, obsidiere, obsidere (Sall.);

percurrere, peregritare (Liv.), pererrare (Hor.), permanare (Lucr.), permeare (Plin.), personare (Verg.), persultare (Lucr.), pervadere (Liv.), pervagari;

præcellere (Tac.), præcurrere, præduere (Hor.), prægredi (Liv.), præire, *dicant* (Liv.), præminere (Tac.), præsidere (Sall.), præstare, *avet* (Liv. but usually *intrans.*), *quaranty*, *perform* (Cic. &c.), prævehi (Tac.), prævenire (Liv.), prævertere, *outramp*, *prevent* (Liv.), præverti, *attend first to* (Liv.).

præterduere (Liv.), -gredi, -ire, -navigare (Suet.), -vehi, -volare (Cic. poet.);

transgredi, transire, tranare, transilire, transvehi;

subgredi (Sall.), subire;

subterlabi (Verg.);

supergradi (Sen.), -jacere, *overtop* (Verg.), -stare (Ov.), -vadere (Sall.), -venire (Hor.).

Continued on p. 51.

(c) Queritur salebras et acerbum frigus et imbres, aut cistam effractam et subducta viatica plorat. (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 17. 53.)

Tribunatum etiam nunc spirans, locum seditionis quærit. (L. 3. 46.)

Catilinam, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriæ nefarie molientem, ejecimus. (C. *Cat.* 2. 1.)

Et verba omnia et vox hujus alumnum urbis oleant, ut oratio Romana plene videatur. (Quint. 8. 1. 3.)

Cives meum casum luctumque doluerunt. (C. *Sest.* 69.)

Jura fidemque supplicis erubuit. (Verg. *A.* 2. 541.)

Legitimum sonum digitis callemus et aure. (Hor. *A. P.* 274.)

Vela damus, vastumque cava trabe currimus æquor. (Verg. *A.* 3. 191.)

Formosam resonant Amaryllida silvæ. (Id. 1. 5.)

Pastorem saltaret uti Cyclopa rogabat. (Hor. *Sat.* 1. 5. 63.)

2. *Certain special usages of the objective accusative may here be distinctly mentioned:*

(a) *For the accusative with the infinitive see § 1351.*

(b) *Some verbs have, in consequence of their own double meaning, two direct objects, one being a person, the other a thing<sup>1</sup>. These are doceo (and compounds), celo; some verbs of demanding, viz. posco, flagito, oro; and some verbs of questioning, viz. rogo, interrogo (chiefly with sententiam, testimonium), percontor (once). (These like other verbs may have an accusative of the class named in § 1094.)*

Consules causam Sthenii totum senatum docent. (C. *Perr.* 2. 39.)

Non te celavi sermonem T. Ampii. (C. *Fam.* 2. 16.)

Interim cotidie Cæsar Hæduos frumentum flagitare.

(Cæs. *G.* 1. 16.)

Tribunus me primum sententiam rogavit. (C. *Q. Fr.* 2. 1.)

Nullus est tibi quem roges mutuom argentum? (Pl. *Pseud.* 294.)

Factum senatus consultum, ut duo viros<sup>2</sup> ædiles ex patribus dictator populum rogaret. (L. 6. fin.)

Forte meum siquis te percontabitur ævum. (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 20. 26.)

*The accusative of the thing remains even when the verb is in the passive voice.*

Latinæ legiones longa societate militiam Romanam edoctæ.

(L. 6. 32.)

Scito primum me non esse rogatum sententiam. (C. *Att.* 1. 13.)

Negabis libellum ullius pretii esse, cujus pretium reposeris.

(Plin. *Ep.* 7. 12.)

*Continued on p. 52.*

*The following (mainly intransitive) verbs are used, chiefly in poetry, transitively by a stretch of the conception, the accusative often resembling the class in §§ 1094—1100. (Those used in passive are spaced.)*

ambulare (maria, Cic. *But cf. Quint. i. 5, § 39*); anhelare (scelus, Cic.); ardere (Alexin, Verg.); crepare (vineta, Hor.); currere (æquor, Verg.); deperire (illam, Plaut.); dolere (casum, Cic.); erubescere (fratres, Prop.); festinare (pœnas, Hor.); flare (flammas, Lucr.); flere (fidem, Hor.); fremere (arma, Verg.); gemere (ignominiam, Verg.); horrere (dolorem, Cic.); indulgere, *concede* (sanguinem, Liv.); instare (currum, Verg.); lacrimare (id, Ter.); lamentari (cæcitatem, Cic.); ludere (Appium, Cic.); lugere (mortem, Cic.); mærare (mortem, Cic.); manare (mella, Hor.); manere (patruum, Ter.); navigare (terram, Cic.); olere (malitiam, Cic.); pallere (pontum, Hor.); pavere (Parthum, Hor.); plorare (commisum, Hor.); properare (obsonia, Plaut.); queri (injuriam, Cic.); redolere (antiquitatem, Cic.); resonare (alcyonen, lucos, Verg.); ridere (me, Cic.); saltare (puellam, Ov.); sapere (mare, Sen.); silere (rem, Cic.); sitire (sanguinem, Cic.); sonare (atavos, Verg.); spirare (flammas, Liv.); stillare (rorem, Hor.); stupere (donum, Verg.); sudare (mella, Verg.); suspirare (Chloen, Hor.); tacere (clades, Liv.); tonare (deos, Verg.); triumphatae gentes (Verg.); vigilatae (noctis, Ov.); vivere (Bacchanalia, Juv.).

<sup>1</sup> *The thing (subject-matter) may be put in the abl. with de, after doceo, celo, rogo, interrogo, and (without an acc. of the person) seiscitari;*

*The person may be put in the abl. with ab after posco, flagito, and always after peto, precor, postulo; with ab or ex after quæro, seiscitor.*

L. Roscius de his rebus Cæsarem docet. (Cæs. C. 1. 3.)

De armis, de ferro, de insidiis celare te noluit. (C. Deiot. 6.)

Memoriter respondeto ad ea quæ (§ 1094) de te ipso rogaro.

(C. Vat. 4.)

Pusionem quendam Socrates interrogat quædam geometrica (§ 1094) de dimensione quadrati. (C. T. D. 1. 24.)

Non debbam ego abs te has litteras poscere. (C. Verr. 2. 16.)

Precor deos is used as well as precor salutem, but not precor deos salutem.

Multa (§ 1094) deos venerati sunt. (Cæcin. ap. C. Fam. 6. 7.)

Consulo with two accus. once in Plaut. (Men. 700). Cf. C. Att. 7. 20.

Con dono is used (rarely) in Plaut. and Ter. with two accus. (Compare the double use of donare aliquem re and rem alicui.)

Argentum, quod habes, condonamus te. (Ter. Ph. 947.)

Habeo alia multa quæ nunc condonabitur. (Ter. Eun. 17.)

*But the regular construction is condonare aliquid alicui.*

<sup>2</sup> *Compare comitia consulibus rogandis, post legem rogatam, &c.*

*Continued on p. 53.*

(c) *In the poets and Tacitus many passive verbs, especially in the past participle, retain the direct object, expressing, either (1) a part of the body, &c., or (2) a thing worn, &c., in the accusative<sup>1</sup>. The passive verb may usually be regarded as reflexive.*

(1) Succincti corda machæris. (Ennius, *Poen.* 15, fr. 2.)

Volucres percussæ corda tua vi. (Lucr. 1. 13.)

Consurgit senior tunicaque inducitur artus. (Verg. *A.* 3. 545.)

Unum exuta pedem vinclis, testatur moritura deos. (Ib. 4. 518.)

Inficitur teneras ore rubente genas. (Tib. 3. 4. 32.)

Virides manu siccata capillos. (Ov. *M.* 5. 575.)

(2) Census es mancipia Amyntæ. (C. *Flac.* 32.)

Arma circumdat humeris et inutile ferrum cingitur.

(Verg. *A.* 2. 511.)

Inscripti nomina regum, nascuntur flores. (Verg. *B.* 3. 106.)

Pueri lævo suspensi loculos tabulamque lacerto. (Hor. *S.* 1. 6. 74.)

Protinus induitur faciem cultumque Dianæ. (Ov. *M.* 2. 425.)

Inductaque cornibus aurum victima vota cadit. (Ib. 7. 161.)

(d) *The accusative is also used in exclamations<sup>2</sup>: really object to some verb understood. (The particular verb is often quite unimportant, and probably not distinctly conceived.) The substantive has usually an oblique predicate.*

Me miserum! Pro deorum atque hominum fidem<sup>3</sup>! (C. *T. D.* 5. 16.)

O excubias tuas, Cn. Planci, miseras! o flebilis vigiliæ! o noctis acerbæ! o custodiam etiam mei capitis infelicem! (C. *Planc.* 49.)

O te ferreum, qui illius periculis non moveris. (C. *Att.* 13. 30.)

Hocine sæclum! o scelera, o genera sacrilega, o hominem impium.

(Ter. *Ad.* 304.)

Huncine hominem! huncine impudentiam, judices! hanc audaciam!

(C. *Verr.* 5. 29.)

In balneis delituerunt: testis egregios! dein temere prosiluerunt; homines temperantis! (C. *Cæl.* 26.)

Di magni, horribilem ac sacrum libellum! (Catull. 14. 12.)

Edepol mortalem graphicum, si servat fidem. (Pl. *Pseud.* 519.)

Sed eccum<sup>4</sup> qui nos conduxit senex. (Pl. *Merc.* 747.) See § 999. 2.

Æschinus ubist? Sy. Ellum te expectat domi. (Ter. *Ad.* 260.)

En quattuor aras: Ecce duas tibi, Daphni, duas altaria Phœbo.

(Verg. *B.* 5. 65.)

*Continued on p. 54.*



<sup>1</sup> This usage (for which normal Latin has ablative) is doubtless of Greek suggestion, though it closely borders on and, in fact, runs into the use of the accusative of extent, § 1102. (The use of censor is only found in *O. Flav.* 32 [1.7], and *Hor. A. P.* 383.) Besides the instances quoted in § 1126.

(1) *Ennius* has *perculsi pectora Poeni*: *Lucretius*, *perculsus*, l. 261; *percussus*, 5. 1123. The *Augustan poets* (esp. *Verg. En.*, *Ov. Met.*) have *cremari* (ornatum), *expleri* (mentem), *tegi*, *velari*, *necti*, *succingi*, *erui* (oculos), *Ov. M.* 12. 269, *reflecti* (ungues), *moliri* (ingenium): *amicus*, *redimitus*, *protectus*, *circumdatas*, *coronatus*, *in-*, *præ-*, *cinctus*, *collectas*; *emertus*; *in-*, *per-*, *sui-*, *fusus* (oculos); *suffectus*, *oblitus*, *pictus*, *distinctus*, *odoratus*; *cæsus*, *percussus*, *pressus* (mentem), *pulsus*, *fractus* (membra); *fixus* (oculos), *de-*, *præ-*, *fixus*; *accensus* (*Verg. A.* 7. 75, *adscetus*, *saturatus* (horem), *matatus*). Also *incomptus*.

*Letus* in *L.* 21. 7; *Bell. Afr.* 78; *Suet. Aug.* 20; *vulneratus*, *Plin.* 7. § 108; *percussus*, *Bell. Afr.* 55. *Comp. sanctus*, § 1102. *Tacitus* has *manitus*, *tutus* (frontem, verga, latera, &c.); *confectus*, *oblitus*, *conversus*; *adlevatur* (animam).

(2) The *Augustan poets* have *accingi* (*Verg. A.* 4. 498, *succinctus*, *circumdatas*, *trajectas* (per pedes lora, *Verg. A.* 2. 273). *Tacitus* has *expressus* (*H.* 3. 74). *Indutus* frequent in poets, once in *Livy* (27. 37), then occasionally in *Curtius*, *Velleius*, *Suetonius*.

The English, 'his [having] his temples crowned,' 'his satchel suspended' (whence comes the English active, 'his crowned his temples,' &c.), would suit all these expressions both in (1) and (2).

The rules as to *inflections* here represent *mibi*, not *me*, & c.

(1) *velo mibi caput amictu*, *exto mibi pedem vinculis*, *indicio mibi genas*, *præcingo mibi cornu auro*; &c.

(2) *indico mibi vinctam*, *indico mibi aurum cornibus*, *inscribo mibi nomen sepulchro*, *censeo mibi mancipia*, 'enter in my return to the censors.' The use of *cingo* presumes a (not found) *cingo mibi gladium*. *Comp.* the double use of *circumdare*.

<sup>2</sup> The nominative is also used in exclamations: see § 1062.

<sup>3</sup> Similarly *Di vestram fidem* (*Pl. Capt.* 591, &c.). The verb omitted is *imploro*: e.g. *C. Verr.* 1. 9, *deum atque hominum fidem implorabis*. But these expressions are purely colloquial exclamations, = *Good heavens!* 'Oh Lord!', not real invocations. In *Ter. Ph.* 351, *pro deum immortalum!* the ellipse is still greater.

*Di melius* (e.g. *Ov. H.* 3. 125, *di meliora* (e.g. *C. Phil.* 9. 3), are found with the verb expressed; e.g. *diuis* (*Ter. Ph.* 1005), *faxins* (*Pl. Pa.* 315), *ferant* (*Tib.* 3. 4. 1), *velint* (*Ov. M.* 7. 37).

*Me hercules*, *me hinc edius* &c. *jivet* see § 999 are simply asseverations = 'Upon my word,' the former being worn down to *hercle* in speech, and a colloquial 'indeed' in meaning.

A different kind of elliptical exclamation is seen in *Marte Tiberi ita letatus est populus*, ut ai primum nuntium discurrerens, 'Tiberium in Tiberim' clamitarent *Suet. Tib.* 75.

<sup>4</sup> Except in the *Plautine* *ecceum*, *ecceillam*, &c., *en* and *ecce* are found most frequently with the nominative: cf. § 1081.

Continued on p. 55.



## CHAPTER IX.

## USE OF DATIVE CASE.

THE DATIVE case is used in two senses<sup>1</sup> only:

1130

(A) It expresses the *indirect object*, which is usually a person;

(B) It is used *predicatively* in a quasi-adjectival sense. (*Dative of the thing.*)

(A) 1. *The indirect object is the person (or thing) affected* <sup>1132</sup>  
*by the occurrence of an action or by the exercise of a quality, although not directly or primarily acted on. (Person for or to whom.)*

*The word put in the dative belongs properly to the whole predicate (whether principal or subordinate), and not (as the genitive) to some particular word, though there is often some word in the sentence (e.g. verb, adjective, preposition in composition, substantive) whose meaning is naturally supplemented<sup>2</sup> by such an indirect object. The Augustan and later writers, especially poets and historians, often employed the dative to express loosely, but vividly, what as a mere matter of fact would be more precisely expressed by a preposition with its case.*

*Transitive verbs can have the indirect object in addition to a direct object; Intransitive verbs have this indirect object only (with or without an accusative of the extent). In English the preposition for<sup>3</sup> or to is usually required, though not unfrequently the notion is differently conceived, and the indirect object in Latin corresponds to the direct object in English.*

Sex. Roscius prædia aliis coluit, non sibi. (C. Rosc. Am. 17.)

1134

Scriptitavit orationes multis Ælius. (C. Brut. 46.)

Vobis arabitur ager Campanus: vobis Capua urbs frequentabitur.

(L. 7. 30.)

Esset humanitatis tuæ consulere eorum commodis et utilitati salutique servire. (C. Q. F. 1. 1. 9.)

Illam mimam suas res sibi habere<sup>4</sup> jussit. (C. Phil. 2. 28.)

Nihil aut patri gratius<sup>5</sup>, aut sibi jucundius facere potuit.

(C. Rosc. Am. 18.)

Minus Dolabella Verri acceptum rettulit, quam Verres illi expensum tulit. (C. Verr. 1. 39.)

Debemur morti nos nostraque. (Hor. A. P. 63.)

T. Menenio diem dicunt. Cum capitis anquisissent, duo milia æris damnato dixerunt. (L. 2. 52.)

Nec nostris præbere vacat<sup>6</sup> tibi cantibus aures. (Ov. M. 5. 334.)

*Continued on p. 56.*

<sup>1</sup> These senses are subdivided as follows :

A. Indirect object. 1. General usage. §§ 1132—1142.

2. Certain special usages :

(a) Where a local relation is implied. § 1144.

(b) Agent. § 1146.

(c) Person judging. § 1148.

(d) Person interested in a statement. § 1150.

(e) Person possessing. § 1152.

(f) Where a genitive might have been expected. § 1154.

(g) Work contemplated. § 1156.

(Double indirect object. § 1161.)

B. Predicative dative. §§ 1158—1162.

(a) with the verb 'esse.' § 1160.

(b) with other verbs. § 1162.

<sup>2</sup> As specimens of the numerous words, whose meaning is naturally 113x  
supplemented by a dative (besides or without an accusative), may be  
named :

cedere, dare, esse, favere, ferre, fidere, indulgere, irasci, jungere,  
licere, mederi, minari, narrare, nocere, nubere, parcere, placere, ser-  
vire, suadere, &c.

adjacere, arridere, auferre, comparare, consentire, contingere, in-  
cumbere, innasci, insidere, obedire, obrepere, obrectare, repugnare,  
succurrere, sufficere, superstare, &c.

affinis, amicus, aptus, idoneus, infensus, obnoxius, obvius, par,  
sacer, similis, dissimilis, &c.

adjutor, auctor, comes, hostis, testis, finis, locus, tempus, materia,  
pretium, subsidium, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Pro with abl. properly 'in front of,' 'in place of,' sometimes ap- 1133  
proaches very nearly to the meaning of the dative :

In aliis causis intellexerant omnia me semper pro amicorum periculis,  
nihil umquam pro me ipso deprecatum. (C. Or. 2. 49.)

Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori. (Hor. Od. 3. 2. 13.)

<sup>4</sup> This is a formula used in divorces. But Habere tecum 'to keep 1135  
to one self,' e.g. Secreto hoc audi; tecum habeto. (C. Fam. 7. 25.)

<sup>5</sup> Credidi gratum fore beneficium meum apud te. (Pl. Pers. 718.)

Gratæ in vulgus leges fuere. (L. 2. 8.)

<sup>6</sup> Exponam, si vacas animo, neque habes aliquid quod huic sermoni  
prævertendum putes. 'Ego vero' inquam 'philosophiæ semper  
vaco.' (C. Div. 1. 6.)

Continued on p. 57.

Non Herculi nocere Deianira voluit, cum ei tunicam sanguine Centauri tinctam dedit. (C. N. D. 3. 28.)

Increpabant, consules magis non confidere<sup>1</sup> quam non credere suis militibus. (L. 2. 45.)

Dicit Cleomeni: 'Tibi uni parcam.' (C. Verr. 5. 40.)

Reliqua oratio fuit ut suæ fortunæ moderarentur<sup>2</sup>. (L. 37. 35.) 1136

Navis, quibus legatus præfuerat<sup>3</sup>, Cleomeni tradit. (C. Verr. 5. 31.)

Ad eam diem omnes magistratus sibi esse præsto Cordubæ voluit. (Cæs. G. 2. 19.)

Interroganti senatori si reticeam, superbus videar. Respondeam Himilconi, &c. (L. 23. 12.)

Cæpius olim, 'non omnibus dormio:' sic ego non omnibus, mi Galle, servio. (C. Fam. 7. 24.)

Nam et mundus deo paret, et huic obediunt maria terræque, et hominum vita jussis supremæ legis obtemperat. (C. Legg. 3. 1.)

Scire volam quantum simplex hilarisque nepoti discrepet<sup>4</sup> et quantum discordet<sup>5</sup> parcus avaro. (Hor. E. 2. 2. 192.)

Chremem conveniam; orabo gnato filiam. (Ter. And. 528.) 1138

Bona omnia populo Romano Gracchoque ipsi precabantur<sup>6</sup>. (L. 24. 16.)

Bovem eximium Marti immolavit. (L. 7. 37.)

Propino hoc pulchro Critiæ. (C. T. D. 1. 40.)

Epulari Gracchus permisit<sup>7</sup> militibus. (L. 24. 16.)

Nunquam conlegæ tuo gratiam referes. (C. Brut. 60.)

Socratis morti inlacrimari soleo, Platonem legens. (C. N. D. 3. 33.)

Interdictum mari Antiati populo est. (L. 8. 14.)

Ea quoque res in pugna terrorem attulit<sup>8</sup> Sabinis. (L. 1. 37.) 1140

Provinciae toti, quam maximum potest, militum numerum imperat. (Cæs. G. 1. 7.)

Victoriam hosti extorqueamus<sup>9</sup>, confessionem erroris civibus. (L. 22. 29.)

Vitam adolescentibus vis aufert<sup>10</sup>, senibus maturitas. (C. Sen. 19.)

Stultitia est, quoi bene esse liceat, eum prævorti litibus. (Pl. Pers. 799.)

Non solum illa gloria militaris vestris formulis atque actionibus anteponenda est, verum etiam dicendi consuetudo longe et multum isti vestræ exercitationi ad honorem antecellit. (C. Mur. 13.)

Corpora feris objiciuntur<sup>11</sup>: hoc luctuosum est parentibus. (C. Verr. 5. 45.)

*Continued on p. 58.*

<sup>1</sup> Multum natura loci confidebant. (Cæs. G. 3. 9.) Cf. § 1229.

<sup>2</sup> Res rusticas venti tempestatesque moderantur. (C. Verr. 3. 98.)

<sup>3</sup> Præsum is often absolute, e. g. Hasdribal ea parte præerat. (L. 22. 43.) Mago in Brutis præerat. (L. 25. 16.)

<sup>4</sup> Similarly Ut matrona meretrici dispar erit atque discolor, infido scurræ distabit amicus. Est huic diversum vitio vitium prope majus. (Hor. Ep. 1. 18. 3.)

In prose discrepare, discordare, distare, &c. are found in the same sense with ab, the two former also with cum: the dative is rare.

Hac in re discrepavit ab Antonii divisione nostra partitio.

(C. Or. 3. 30.)

Quid attinuit cum eis, quibuscum re concinebat, verbis discrepare.

(C. Fin. 22.)

<sup>5</sup> Confermanda vox est ne ab oratione discordet. (Quint. 11. 3. 45.)

<sup>6</sup> Quodni ita sit, quid veneramur, quid precamur deos? (C. N. D. 1. 44.)

<sup>7</sup> Similarly Ipsis iudicibus sine mea argumentatione conjecturam facere permistam. (C. Verr. 5. 9.)

But with sino an accusative of the person receiving the permission is used, e. g. Nos Transalpinas gentis oleam et vitem serere non sinimus. (C. B. P. 3. 9.)

(Such an accus. as in Otho concedi corpora sepultura cremarique permisit (Tac. H. 1. 47), is part of the thing permitted. See note to § 1348.)

<sup>8</sup> So also afferre vim or manus alicui, use force or one's hands to a person; afferre periculum reipublicæ, &c.; but nihil novi ad nos adferrebat. (C. Fam. 2. 14.)

Cn. Octavius primus in eam familiam attulit consulatum.

(C. Phil. 9. 2.)

Hoc est vim adferre sensibus, extorquere ex animis cogitationes verborum. (C. Fin. 2. 5.)

<sup>9</sup> Nihil exprimere ab agentibus, nihil ulla vi a miseris extorquere potuit. (C. Prov. 3.)

<sup>10</sup> Te has phaleras a Phylarcho abstulisse dicebant. (C. Verr. 4. 12.)

<sup>11</sup> Obiecit sese ad currum. (Verg. A. 12. 372.)

Tam conjuncta<sup>1</sup> populo Romano civitas ad vim descendit. 1142  
(Cæs. G. 7. 33.)

Hannibali imperatori parem consulem nomino. (L. 24. 8.)

Fiunt omnia castris quam urbi similia<sup>2</sup>. (L. 4. 31.)

Ego tamen tuis rebus sic adero ut difficillimis, neque Cæsari solum sed etiam amicis ejus omnibus, quos mihi amicissimos<sup>3</sup> esse cognovi, pro te libentissime supplicabo. (C. Fam. 6. 14.)

Romana acies distinctior ex pluribus partibus constans, facilis partienti quacunque opus esset, facilis jungenti. (L. 9. 19.)

Summum bonum a Stoicis dicitur convenienter<sup>4</sup> naturæ vivere.  
(C. Off. 3. 3.)

Suo sibi<sup>5</sup> gladio hunc jugulo. (Ter. Ad. 958.)

Invitum qui servat, idem<sup>6</sup> facit occidenti. (Hor. A. P. 467.)

Scipionem, Uticæ oppugnandæ intentum<sup>7</sup>, jamque machinas admoventem muris, avertit fama redintegrati belli. (L. 30. 8.)

Facilis<sup>8</sup> impetrandæ veniæ Claudius erat. (L. 26. 15.)

Relicua tempora demetendis fructibus et percipiendis<sup>9</sup> accommodata<sup>10</sup> sunt. (C. Sen. 19.)

Dixit se et Campanos paratos eruptioni fore. (L. 26. 13.)

Vides urbem sine legibus, sine judiciis, relictam direptioni<sup>11</sup> et incendiis. (C. Fam. 4. 1.)

2. *The indirect object is especially noticeable in the following classes of instances or in the following special meanings, which however cannot be separated by any clear line from the general usage or from each other.*

(a) *Often a local relation<sup>12</sup> (literal or figurative) is implied, and a preposition with its case might have been expected. Chiefly in Livy, Tacitus, poets, &c.* 1144

Eo ferocius adequitabant Samnites vallo. (L. 9. 22.)

Nos onera quibusdam bestiis, nos juga inponimus. (C. N. D. 2. 60.)

Sane homini præter opinionem improviso incidi. (C. Verr. 2. 74.)

Itineris finem sperent campum interjacentem Tiberi ac mœnibus Romanis. (L. 21. 30.)

Tecto adsuetus coluber succedere et umbræ fovit humum.  
(Verg. G. 3. 48.)

Rex se munitæ urbi cum magna manu popularium incluserat.  
(Curt. 9. 8, § 11.)

*Continued on p. 60.*



<sup>1</sup> Segestani cognatione se cum populo Romano conjunctos esse arbitrantur. (C. Verr. 4. 33.)

<sup>2</sup> Similis is frequent with the genitive. See below, §§ 1314, 1317.

<sup>3</sup> Amicus, inimicus, &c. often with genitive as substantives (§ 1280).

<sup>4</sup> Stoici finem bonorum esse senserunt congruere naturæ cumque ea convenienter vivere. (C. T. D. 5. 28.)

<sup>5</sup> This use of sibi is only in Plautus (e.g. Trin. 156; Capt. 5. 79, &c.), Cœmælia, and this passage of Terence, with an echo in C. Phil. 2. 37, and perhaps in Lal. 3. Its origin is seen in such passages as, In omni voce est quiddam medium sed suum cuique voci. (C. Or. 3. 61.)

<sup>6</sup> Idem with dat. 'same as' only (?) in Hor. l. c., Ov. Met. 13. 50, Lucr. 2. 919; 3. 1038; 4. 1174, and Just. 2. 4. 10. (Usually idem ac.) Esse idem alieni, 'behave the same to,' Ter. Hec. 7.

<sup>7</sup> Obliquis itineribus agmen sequebantur in omnem occasionem intenti. (L. 41. 2.)

<sup>8</sup> Patenti campo et ad fugam capessendam facili pugnatum est. (L. 28. 34.)

<sup>9</sup> For other instances of gerundival datives, see § 1156 and ch. xiv.

<sup>10</sup> Oratoria vis dicendi, explicatrix orationis perpetuæ ad persuadendum accommodatæ. (C. Ac. 1. 8.)

<sup>11</sup> A few out of numberless instances of abstract substantives as indirect objects are relinquere consultationi (L. 26. 2); dare, accipere, servare quæstioni (Pl. Most. 1087, 1091, 1095); ista omnia jam addicta vastationi videntur (C. Att. 9. 9); ille aditus Gallorum immanitati multitudinique patuisset (C. Prov. Cons. 14); dandæ cervicæ erant crudelitati nefariæ (C. Phil. 5. 16); mandari, credi fide ac fiduciæ (Pl. Trin. 117, 141); fidei commissum; timere receptui (Cæs. C. 3. 69); inventioni, dispositioni, elocutioni, ordini rerum verborumque animum sufficere (Quint. 10. 7. 9); quæstui atque sumptui deditus erat (Sall. C. 13); &c., &c. See also § 1163.

<sup>12</sup> Where a local relation is clearly, even though figuratively intended, a preposition (usually ad, de, ex, in, sub) with its case is generally used, especially by Cicero, Cæsar, &c. Sometimes a simple accusative or ablative without a repetition of the preposition.

Equites propius tumultum accedere et ad nostros adeqvitare. (Cæs. G. 1. 46.)

Torquem sanguinolentam sibi in collum imponit. (Claud. Quad. ap. Gell. 9. 3.)

Habebas, quid diceret, si quando in vituperatores meos incidisses. (C. Fam. 7. 3, § 6.)

Castra Punica et Romana interjacebat campus. (L. 27. 41, where inter may be taken as not compounded.)

Omnes sententiæ verbaque omnia sub acumen styli subeant et succedant necessesse. (C. Or. 1. 35.)

Habuerat turmas equitum, quibus inclusum in curia senatum Salamine obsederat. (C. Att. 6. 1, § 6.)

Continued on p. 61.

Extractum<sup>1</sup> custodiæ juvenem ducem populo imposuit<sup>2</sup>.

(Tac. *A.* 6. 23.)

Equites Hannoni Afrisque pugnando ac sequendo fessis se circumfudere. (L. 29. 34.)

Quæ nota domesticæ turpitudinis non inusta vitæ tuæ est?

(C. *Cat.* 1. 6.)

It cælo clamorque virum clangorque tubarum; hinc alii spolia occisis derepta Latinis coniciunt igni. (Verg. *A.* 11. 192.)

(b) *Agent. Regularly with gerundive<sup>3</sup>, and sometimes with* <sup>1145</sup>*passive participle, or adjective in -bili-. Otherwise rare.*

Hæc Epicuro confitenda sunt, aut ea, quæ modo dixi, tollenda de libro. (C. *T. D.* 3. 19.)

Aliorum judicio permulta nobis et facienda et non facienda et mutanda et corrigenda sunt. (C. *Off.* 1. 41.)

Video huic, si insidiaretur, noctem prope urbem exspectandam, illi accessum ad urbem nocturnum fuisse metuendum. (C. *Mil.* 19.)

Consulem invenerunt, quam poterat maxime, miserabilem bonis sociis, superbis atque infidelibus, ut erant Campani, spernendum.

(L. 23. 5.)

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit, nulli flebilior quam tibi.

(Hor. *Od.* 1. 24. 9.)

Cui non sunt auditæ Demosthenis vigiliæ? (Ib. 4. 19.)

Qui autem alia malunt scribi a nobis, æqui esse debent, quod scripta multa sunt, sic ut plura nemini e nostris. (C. *Fin.* 1. 4.)

Nihil intemptatum inexpertumque priscis illis fuit. (Plin. 25. § 1.)

Carmina quæ scribuntur aquæ potoribus. (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 19. 3.)

Dixit sibi apud horridas gentes e contuberniis hostem aspici.

(Tac. *A.* 1. 17.)

(c) *Person judging<sup>4</sup>:*

1148

Fortunatus sibi Damocles videbatur. (C. *T. D.* 5. 21.)

Animo cupienti nihil satis festinatur. (Sall. *J.* 64.)

Nequaquam visu ac specie æstimantibus pares. (L. 7. 10.)

Quintia formosast multis, mihi candida, longa, rectast. (Catull. 86.1.)

Vere reputantibus Gallias suismet viribus concidisse admonebat.

(Tac. *H.* 4. 17.)

Verum confitentibus latifundia perdidere Italiam. (Plin. 18. § 35.)

Gomphos pervenit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliæ venientibus<sup>5</sup> ab Epiro. (Cæs. *Civ.* 3. 80.)

Tantus anulorum acervus fuit, ut metientibus supra tres modios explesse sint quidam auctores. (L. 23. 12.)

*Continued on p. 62.*

- <sup>1</sup> Orabant (Fabium) ut ex cæno plebeio consulatum extraheret. (L. 10. 15.)  
<sup>2</sup> Hæc in eculeum coiciuntur. Iste chorus virtutum in eculeum impositus. (C. T. D. 5. 5.)

*Even in non-local meaning the preposition is generally repeated with addere, adicere, adjungere, applicare se, adhibere, conferre, comparare, componere, inesse, and often with subicere, subjungere. So always with communicare (aliquid cum aliquo). It is never repeated with adjacere, assidere. Cf. § 1121. (Madvig, Lat. Gr. §§ 243, 245.)*

<sup>3</sup> *The ablative with ab is sometimes (chiefly in Cicero) found to express the agent with the gerundive. This is in many cases due either (a) to a fear lest ambiguity should arise, if the dative were used, or (b) to a desire to balance neighbouring clauses; in other cases (c) the reason is not apparent. (With the passive participle ab is the ordinary usage.)*

(a) Aguntur bona multorum civium, quibus est a vobis et ipsorum et reipublicæ causa consulendum. (C. Man. 2. Quibus vobis would have left it uncertain which was agent, which ordinary indirect object.)

Cum res ejusmodi sit ut in primis a magistratibus animadvertenda videatur. (C. Cæc. 12.)

(b) Nunc mihi tertius ille locus est reliquus orationis de ambitus criminibus, perpurgatus ab eis qui ante me dixerunt; a me, quoniam ita Murena voluit, retractandus. (C. Mur. 26.)

Nec, si a populo præteritus est quem non oportuit, a iudicibus condemnandus est qui præteritus non est. (C. Planc. 3.)

Cui senatus pro me gratias agendas putavit, ei ego a me referendam gratiam non putem? (Ib. 32.)

(c) Id etsi talibus de rebus gravissimos homines et rogare solere et rogari scio, tamen admonendum potius te a me quam rogandum puto. (C. Fam. 15. 4, § 11.)

Quid expectatis? quid a me amplius dicendum putatis? (C. Verr. 3. 24.)

<sup>4</sup> *With some verbs the ordinary indirect object naturally expresses the person judging; e.g.*

Nihil cuiquam probari volo me dicente, quod non ante mihi met ipsi probatum sit. (C. Verr. 3. 70.)

Id huc reverti, uti me purgarem tibi. (Pl. Amph. 909.)

His omnibus, qui istius injurias noscent, me vehementer excusatum volo. (C. Verr. 1. 40.)

<sup>5</sup> *So Hercyniæ silvæ latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet. (Cæs. G. 6. 24.)*

*Continued on p. 63.*

(d) *Person interested in a statement*<sup>1</sup>: *only personal pronouns in lively, often in ironical, expressions.* (Dativus ethicus.) 1150

Hæc vobis illorum per biduum militia fuit. (L. 22. 60, § 25.)

Ecce tibi qui rex populi Romani esse concupiverit. (C. Off. 3. 21.)

At tibi repente venit ad me Caninius mane. (C. Fam. 9. 2.)

Pulset tum mihi lictorem, qui sciet jus de tergo vitæque sua penes unum illum esse, cujus majestatem violarit. (L. 2. 29.)

Quid mihi Celsus agit? (Hor. E. I. 3. 15.)

Nil moror mi istiusmodi clientes. (Plaut. Most. 746.)

(e) *Person possessing*<sup>2</sup>: *with verb of being.*

1152

(The dative is used when the gist of the question relates to the thing possessed: the genitive (§ 1282) when it relates to the possessor.)

Semper in civitate, quibus opes nullæ sunt, bonis invidet.

(Sall. C. 37.)

Non quæro unde hæc habueris, sed quo tantum tibi opus fuerit.

(C. Verr. 2. 74.)

Quid est jam non modo pudori, probitati, virtuti, rectis studiis, bonis artibus, sed omnino libertati ac saluti loci? (C. Fam. 5. 16.)

Res est omnis in hac causa nobis cum Clodia. (C. Cæcl. 13.)

Quid huic abest nisi res et virtus? (C. Or. 2. 70.)

Dide ac dissice: per me licebit: si egebis, tibi dolebit: mihi sat est, qui ætatis quod reliquum est oblectem meæ. (C. Cæcl. 3.)

Sed quis cenantibus una, Fundani, pulchre<sup>3</sup> fuerit tibi, nosse laboro. (Hor. S. 2. 8. 19.)

Quibus bellum volentibus<sup>4</sup> erat, probabant exemplum. (Tac. Agr. 18.)

Martis vero signum quo mihi pacis auctori? (C. Fam. 7. 24.)

Væ victis. Hei mihi.

(f) *The dative is often so closely connected in meaning with a noun in the sentence, that a genitive*<sup>5</sup> *might have been expected. Common in poets, Livy, and Tacitus.* 1154

L. Mescinius heres est M. Mindio fratri suo. (C. Fam. 13. 26.)

Homini ego isti talos suffringi volo. (Pl. Rud. 1059.)

Olli dura quies oculos et ferreus urguet somnus. (Verg. A. 10. 745.)

Puero dormienti, cui Servio Tullio fuit nomen, caput arsisse ferunt. (L. 1. 39.)

Militanti in Hispania pater ei moritur. (L. 29. 29.)

Sese omnes flentes Cæsari ad pedes projecerunt. (Cæs. G. 1. 31.)

Continued on p. 64.

<sup>1</sup> *As other examples may be regarded;*

1151

Nam ego hanc machæram mihi consolari volo, ne lamentetur, quia se jampridem feriatam gestitem. (Pl. Mil. 5.)

Hic mihi quisquam mansuetudinem et misericordiam nominat?

(Sall. C. 52.)

Hic mihi etiam Q. Fufius pacis commoda commemorat. (C. Phil. 8. 4.)

*And similar instances where a recommendation or description of a model is given; e.g.*

Depresso incipiat jam tum mihi taurus aratro ingemere.

(Verg. G. 1. 43.)

Quare ego tibi oratorem sic jam instituam; Sit enim mihi tinctus literis. (C. Or. 2. 20.)

Sed nobis jam paulatim adescere puer et exire de gremio, et discere serio incipiat. (Quint. 1. 2. § 1; and cf. 1. 11. § 14; 2. 4. § 9; &c.)

Ad illa mihi pro se quisque acriter intendat animum. (L. præf. § 9.)

<sup>2</sup> *The possession of mental qualities is usually denoted by inesse with in repeated (Cic.), or with dative.*

Insit in sermone lepos.... In primis provideat ne sermo vitium aliquod indicet inesse in moribus. (C. Off. 1. 37.)

Huic homini non minor vanitas inerat quam audacia. (Sall. C. 23.)

*The use of pronominal adverbs is noticeable here, especially if they were originally datives. (See also § 1171.)*

Dixit se dictatorem L. Quinctium dicturum, ibi animum parem tantæ potestati esse. (L. 4. 13.)

Eo nunc pejus mutata res est, quod istic cum ignavia est scelus.

(L. 1. 47.)

<sup>3</sup> *Similarly melius anno hoc mihi non fuit domi (Pl. Most. 690); non est mi male sed bene ac beate, quod non dispereunt mihi labores (Catull. 14. 10: cf. 23. 15); Perii; animo male fit: contine, quæso, caput (Pl. Rud. 510); male mihi esse malo quam molliter (Sen. Ep. 82. 2); hoc omne quod mihi ægrest evemam (Ter. Hee. 515), &c. Compare also bene habent tibi principia (Ter. Ph. 429).*

<sup>4</sup> *This use of volentibus is a Græcism, and is only found in Sall. J. 84; 100; Liv. 21. 50; Tac. H. 3. 43, Agr. 18. (But also invitis, &c. in Tac. A. 1. 59.) It has however some support in such expressions as patuit quibusdam volentibus fuga, "some who chose had the opportunity of flight." (L. 1. 54.)*

<sup>5</sup> *The difference between the genitive and dative in such expressions is analogous to that between an attributive and predicative adjective.*

*For the genitive compare:*

Heredes Staberi summam incidere sepulcro. (Hor. S. 2. 3. 84, but with heres the genitive of the thing is more common.)

Manlii cuspis super galeam hostis, Mæcii trans cervicem equi elapsa est. (L. 8. 7.)

*Continued on p. 65.*



Dixit finem<sup>1</sup> venisse Romano imperio. (L. 2. 46.)

Quid modi flendo quæso, hodie facies? (Pl. Mil. 1311.)

Tribuniciam potestatem munimentum libertati reparabant. (L. 3. 37.)

Solent et subterraneos specus aperire, suffugium hiemi et receptaculum frugibus. (Tac. G. 16.)

Ætolos fortuna sua hortabatur ut confitendo seu culpæ seu errori veniam supplices peterent. (L. 37. 49.)

*The sentences in the following section (§ 1156) also fall under this head.*

(g) *Work contemplated*<sup>2</sup>: chiefly verbal substantives, especially gerundival expressions, dependent mainly on substantives, or *esse*. 1156

Q. Fabius comitia<sup>3</sup> censoribus creandis habuit. (L. 24. 11.)

Decemviri legibus scribendis. Lex<sup>4</sup> operi faciundo.

His avertendis terroribus in triduum feriæ indictæ. (L. 3. 5.)

Dies composita gerendæ rei est. (L. 25. 16.)

Judicium communi dividundo, familiæ erciscundæ, finium regundorum tale est. (Julian. ap. Dig. 10. 1. 10.)

Receptui<sup>5</sup> signum aut revocationem a bello audire non possumus.

(C. Phil. 13. 7.)

Oleas esui<sup>6</sup> optime condi scribit Cato virides in muria.

(Varr. R. R. 1. 60.)

Ad Sullam nuntiatum mittit, colloquio diem<sup>7</sup> locum<sup>8</sup> tempus<sup>8</sup> ipse deligeret. (Sall. J. 108.)

Munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat. (Cæs. G. 5. 9.)

Hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 29.)

Nolo ego nos hoc prorsum ebibere; nulli rei erimus postea.

(Pl. Stich. 718.)

Solvendo<sup>9</sup> non erat Magius. (C. Att. 13. 10.)

Dedit huic ætas vires onerique ferendo est. (Ov. Am. 3. 6. 21.)

(B) Predicative dative: that which a thing (or person) serves as, or occasions. (See the Preface.) 1158

Usually a semi-abstract substantive<sup>10</sup>, always in the singular number and without any attribute, except sometimes *magnus*, *major*, *minor*, *maximus*, *summus*, *nullus*, *tantus*, *quantus*, and (chiefly in Plaut.), *bonus*. 'In this use the dative approximates to an adjective, the superlative of which is formed by the addition of *magnus*' &c. (Kühner).

*A personal dative is generally added (as indirect object).*

*Continued on p. 66.*

<sup>2</sup> Et audacia peritiorum et nostræ sollicitudinis hic finem reperimus.

(C. Fem. 10. 15.)

Quæ melior non aliquando impendii modum fecit? (C. Fem. 5. 16.)

(But also modum aliquem et finem orationi nostræ et eximitionem facimus. O. Verr. 2. 48.)

In urbem compulsi veniam erroris petebant. (L. 38. 13.)

<sup>3</sup> The difference of these datives from those of the Class B, § 1158 app., is shown by the fact that those (in theory at least) are connectible with gerundives, those with predicative nominatives or adjectives; the former express a sphere of operation, the latter express the light in which a thing is viewed, or the character which is ascribed to it. Both are connected, more or less, with substantives in the sentence; but in the former this substantiveness is rather governing than governed (e.g. dies colloquio, a day for a conference, a conference-day); in the latter rather governed than governing (e.g. navis exitio, ruin, or ruinous, to sailors).

<sup>4</sup> Extremo prioris anni comitia auguris creandi habita erant.

(L. 39. 45.)

<sup>5</sup> Legibus prædictorum vendendarum cavetur ut ad sepulchra aditus sit.

(Pompon. Dig. 47. 12. 5.)

<sup>6</sup> Often without signum, e.g. Quid enim exercitus, remaneat et recepti cunctis senatu, prosperes dimicare? (C. Phil. 12. 3.)

<sup>7</sup> So Satui semen, cibaria, oleum matrum dederit nemini. (Cato, R. R. 5.)

<sup>8</sup> His certum diem conveniendi dedit. (Cæs. G. 5. 57.)

<sup>9</sup> Nactus horum resevandis libidinis. (C. Att. 1. 18.)

Datum secreto cum his colloquendi tempus. (L. 26. 22.)

<sup>10</sup> For gerundives see § 1156, and Chap. XIV. Such gerundival gerundives are best translated by 'as a means of,' 'has a tendency to,' the datives by 'with a view to,' 'is capable of.'

<sup>11</sup> A personal name or adjective, used predicatively, is put in the case of its subject (§§ 1009, 1010), e.g. servus habetur Titus.

If the character is metaphorical or fictitious, the noun is put in the ablative with pro:

e.g. Tu amens es pro villicis pro tua pueris tot res sanctissimas incere. (U. Verr. 2. 16.)

Hic sunt adules pro mulieribus. (Cæs. G. 6. 27.)

Qui sunt me pro delectandis ac delectamento parati. (Ter. Hout. 952.)

Or in the positive with loco, numero, with or without in:

e.g. Ne id quod parat in mercedis parius quam benefici loco numerare videatur. (C. Fem. 2. 6.)

Is tibi parentis numero fuit. (C. Cæcil. 19. and just before, parentis loco esse.)

Continued on p. 67.

(a) *With the verb esse.*

1160

Ne quis usurpet illud Cassianum, Cui bono fuerit? Fuit omnibus bono, qui servire nolebant. (C. *Phil.* 2. 14.)

Nec tamen impedimento<sup>1</sup> id rebus gerendis fuit. (L. 26. 24.)

Cibus illis advorsus famem atque sitim, non lubrici neque luxuriæ erat. (Sall. *J.* 89 fin.)

Desinant amici ejus ea dictitare quæ detrimento, maculæ, invidiæ, infamiæ nobis omnibus esse possint. (C. *Verr.* 3. 62.)

Incumbite in studium eloquentiæ, ut et vobis honori<sup>2</sup> et amicis utilitati et reipublicæ emolumento esse possitis. (C. *Or.* 1. 8.)

Exitio<sup>3</sup> est avidis mare nautis (Hor. *Od.* 1. 28. 18.)

Singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documento<sup>4</sup>. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 4.)

Multarum semina rerum esse supra docui quæ sint vitalia nobis, et contra, quæ sint morbo mortique. (Lucr. 6. 1095.)

Genus est lenonium inter homines ut muscæ, culices, cimices, pedesque pulicesque, odio<sup>5</sup> et malo et molestiæ: bono usui<sup>6</sup> estis nulli. (Pl. *Curr.* 499.)

Fabia risui fuit sorori miranti ignorare id sororem. (L. 6. 34.)

Eo natus sum ut Jugurthæ, scelerum ostentui essem. (Sall. *J.* 24.)

Ea res nemini unquam fraudi fuit. (C. *Clu.* 33.)

Fennis mira feritas, fœda paupertas: victui<sup>7</sup> herba, vestitui pelles, cubile humus. (Tac. *G.* 46.)

Cupis me esse nequam; tamen ero frugi bonæ. (Plaut. *Ps.* 468.)

Evenit facile, quod dis cordi est. (L. 1. 39.)

(b) *With habere, ducere, dare, &c.; and (but auxilio, præsidio, subsidio only) with verbs of motion, &c.*

1162

Paupertas probro haberi, innocentia pro malivolentia duci cœpit. (Sall. *G.* 12.)

Si quis despiciatui ducitur, Mysorum ultimus esse dicitur.

(C. *Flac.* 27.)

Assa caro danda, potui vero pluvialis aqua decocta. (Cels. 4. 19.)

Habere quæstui rempublicam nefarium est. (C. *Off.* 2. 22.)

Nec habendum est religioni<sup>8</sup> nocentem aliquando defendere. (Ib. 14.)

Quis erit, vitio<sup>9</sup> qui id vortat tibi? (Pl. *Epid.* 1. 2. 5.)

Virtus sola neque datur dono<sup>10</sup> neque accipitur. (Sall. *J.* 85, § 38.)

Ita dictu opus est, me mea omnia bona doti<sup>11</sup> dixisse illi.

(Ter. *Haut.* 942.)

Nucleum amisi, retinui pigneri putamina. (Pl. *Capt.* 651.)

Equitatum auxilio Cæsari miserant. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 18.)

Quinque cohortes castris præsidio relinquit. (Ib. 7. 60.)

C. Cæsar Galliæ provinciæ cum exercitu subsidio profectus est.

(C. *Phil.* 5. 17.)

Continued on p. 68.

- 1 Ne id ipsum impedimentum incepti foret, imperavit. *Arg. Ll. 26. l. 1.* not.
  - 2 Idem non adsequi dedecus est nostrum. *(C. Am. T. 2. § 36.)*
  - 3 Idem amor exitium est peccati peccatisque magistrum. *(Verg. B. 3. 141.)*
  - 4 Turnus sui colapsi periculi, si adversarius esset, recens erat documentum. *(Ll. 1. 54.)*
  - 5 Si es odium publicum populi. *(C. Fust. 16.)*
  - 6 An quocunque visus homines, se ut amicos? *(Ter. Hant. 91.)*
  - 7 Mihi amicus est Syphacius capitem, cladamentum solvunt collum, cubile terra, pulmentum fuscus. *(C. T. D. 3. 42.)*
  - 8 Collegum suffici censori religio erat. *(Ll. 4. 27.)*
- Quae religio C. Mario non fuerat quamvis C. Glabrum praetorem occideret, ea nos religione in privato P. Lentulo pugnando liberali sumus. *(C. Cat. 3. 4.)*
- 9 Huc si perveneris, meum vitium fueris. *(C. Ac. 1. 16.)*
  - 10 Cujus rei ergo hanc tabulam ducam fore sedem. *(Insens. ap. Liv. 41. 26.)*
  - 11 Illa aurum mihi tantum opus te quod ducam tua gravis ducam.
- Fam. Ter. 1143.)*
- Actis et § 1304. ubi in ducam, ut opten unde: c. p.*
- Spondes meum grammatice vocem tui, et mille anni Philippum sedis.
- (Th. 1398.)*

5. The above statement is not intended to justify or excuse any individual's actions, nor does it imply that the author is responsible for the actions of others. The author is not a doctor and is not providing medical advice.

Продълже, се надявам, че не изпада, и продължи тази добра традиция още една година. С. Стоев, л. 44.

(Ammonia is an adulterant. Please confirm its proper use.)

NON EST REGULA IN MORALI BONA. Ter. 5. 10. 77

Ministerio de Hacienda y Contribuciones, en una de sus resoluciones, en la que se establece el impuesto de 100 pesos sobre el valor de los bienes inmuebles, en la forma siguiente: L. 4. 11.

Seitengruben entstehen durch eine horizontale Zugsch. durch die all. horizont. Zugsch. in die senkrechte Zugsch. übergeht. (Vgl. *Andr.* 1884.)

These numbers have not been entered, and the following numbers have been entered:

Регистрация в: г.п.п. Восток Министерство, Сектор Экономика  
г.п.п. Восток Министерство, Сектор Экономика

Edward or his father have never returned since in the 1940s. In  
C. West, 4, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 848, 849, 850,

ALL INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN IS UNCLASSIFIED  
DATE 11-04-2014

[illegible]

## CHAPTER X.

## USE OF LOCATIVE AND ABLATIVE CASES.

THE LOCATIVE and ABLATIVE cases express adverbial qualifications referable to the general types of (A) *Place where*, (B) *Instrument*, and (C) *Place whence*<sup>1</sup>. 1164

The locative expressed *place where*, and was applied also by analogy to *time* and *amount*. The uses of the ablative appear to arise from three sources; (1) a case expressing the general notion of an *instrument*; (2) a confusion of the form of this case with that of the locative; (3) a case expressing *place whence*. The result is that the ablative coincides with the locative in some of its uses, but mainly where the notion of instrument could be conceived as present. Any sharp division of the heads of *place where* and *instrument* is therefore impracticable: and some of the usages here referred to *place whence* have points of connexion with those classed under the former heads. See the Preface.

A preposition (*at, in, by, with, from*) is generally required in English translation.

(A) PLACE WHERE. (Locative and Ablative.)

(B) INSTRUMENT. (Ablative.) 1166

N.B. *The locative*<sup>2</sup> *is distinguishable with certainty from the ablative only in the singular number of -o and -a stems. The use of these stems has therefore been taken as the guide in classing instances as locatives or ablatives.*

1. Place at which<sup>3</sup>. *LOCATIVE*: almost confined to names of towns, or of islands small enough to be considered as one place. Also *humī*, *domī*, and (in connection with *domī*) *bellī*, *militiæ*; and apparently *animī*, in certain phrases expressing doubt or anxiety. For *rurī*, *Karthagini*, *Tiberī* see § 434. 1168

Here also belong the so-called adverbs, *hic*, *illīc*, *istīc* (more rarely *illī*, *istī*): also *ubi*, *ibi*, &c. (see Book II. Chap. xv.).

*Arbitrabantur Corinthi et Karthagini non defore qui senatum restituerent.* (C. Agr. 2. 33.)

*Verum esto: negotiari libet: cur non Pergami? Smyrnæ? Trallibus?* (C. Flacc. 29.)

*Cogitandum tibi erat Romæne et domi tuæ, cuicuiusmodi res esset, an Mytilenis aut Rhodi malles vivere.* (C. Fam. 4. 7.)

*Cæsar paucos dies in Asia moratus audiit Pompeium Cypri visum.*

(Cæs. C. 3. 106.)

*Data (sc. epistola) xvi. Kal. Sextilis Thessaloniciæ.* (C. Att. 3. 12.)

Continued on p. 70.



<sup>1</sup> These groups are subdivided as follows :

A. PLACE WHERE. B. INSTRUMENT.

1. Place at which.

*Locative*, § 1168.

*Ablative*, §§ 1170—1176.

2. (a) Time when.

*Locative*, § 1178.

*Ablative*, § 1180.

(b) Time within which.

*Ablative*, § 1182.

(c) Time throughout which.

*Ablative* (rare), § 1184.

2. Amount at which.

*Locative*, §§ 1186—1194.

*Ablative*, (a) Price, penalty.

(b) Amount of difference.

The remainder have *ablative* only ; viz.

4. (a) Part concerned, §§ 1210—1212.

(b) Means, §§ 1214—1226.

(c) Efficient cause, § 1228.

5. (a) Description, § 1232.

(b) Manner.

(1) With attribute, § 1234.

(2) Without attribute, § 1236.

(c) Attendant circumstances, §§ 1240—1254.

6. Use with prepositions, § 1258.

C. PLACE WHENCE. (*Ablative*.)

1. Place from which movement is made, §§ 1258, 1260.

2. Thing from which separation takes place, § 1262.

3. Origin, § 1264.

4. Standard of comparison, §§ 1266—1272.

5. Use with prepositions, § 1274.

<sup>2</sup> The *locative* was spoken of by old grammarians (cf. Charis. p. 188, <sup>1165</sup> Diom. p. 404, ed. Keil. &c.) as an *adverb*. The *relative* following the *locative* is the *adverb* (*ubi, quo, &c.*), not the *adjective*; e. g. *Mortuus cumis quo se post fractas opes Latinorum contulerat* (L. 2. 21); *never in quas* (but in *quam urbem* is right). Krüger, *Lat. Gr.* § 579.

<sup>3</sup> A *preposition* (with the *ablative*) is required, at least in prose, <sup>1167</sup> when the place at which is (1) expressed by a common noun, or name of person, or of house, &c.; e. g.

*Quor sedebas in foro?* (Pl. *Pseud.* 800.)

*Ut in Arcano Quintus maneret dies fecit, ego Aquini; sed prandimus in Arcano.* (C. *Att.* 5. 1.)

*Ego triduum cum Pompeio et apud Pompeium fui.* (C. *Att.* 5. 7.)

*In Lucanis Brutisque civium Romanorum delectus habebat.*

(Cæs. C. 1. 30.)

(2) *Interior of country, or neighbourhood of town:*

*Hic status rerum in Hispania erat. In Italia Consul Marcellus.*

(L. 27. 1.)

*Eoec litteræ Casarem ad Corfinium, Domitium Corfinii cum firmo exercitu.* (C. *Att.* 8. 3. § 7.)

*Lavinus circa Luceriam castra habebat.* (L. 23. 33.)

Continued on p. 71.

Ei plerique inermes ex acie fugientes, non prius quam Venusiæ aut Canusii constiterunt. (L. 22. 59, § 10.)

Sunt ista quidem, quæ disputas, difficillima, iter ad superum, navigatio infero, discessus Arpinum, ne hunc fugisse, mansio Formiis, ne obtulisse nos gratulationi videamur. (C. Att. 9. 5.)

Debemus patrem familias domi suæ occidere nolle, neque tamen id ipsum abunde. (C. Att. 4. 15.)

Semper ego plebem Romanam militiæ domique colui. (L. 7. 32.)

Atrox discordia domi forisque<sup>1</sup>. (L. 2. 60.)

Quid illam miseram animi<sup>2</sup> excrucias? (Pl. Mil. 1068.)

Qua tu cura sis nescio: ego quidem vehementer animi pendeo.  
(Cæ. ap. C. Fam. 8. 5.)

Abigam hunc rus: jam dudum aliquid ruri agere arbitror.  
(Ter. Ad. 401.)

Prosternite humi juvenem. (Ov. Met. 5. 197.)

Procubuit terræ<sup>3</sup> mactati more juveni. (Ov. Met. 5. 122.)

**ABLATIVE.** (a) In ordinary prose almost confined to **rure**<sup>1170</sup> (rare except with adjective), **parte**, **regione** (both with adjective or genitive), **loco**, **locis**, **dextra**, **læva**, **medio**, **terra**<sup>4</sup> **marique**; and expressions with **totus**<sup>5</sup> or **medius** as attribute. Names of towns with consonant or i- stems are sometimes in the locative, usually in the ablative. (Most words in the plural number are given in the preceding section.)

Bellum terra et mari comparat. (C. Att. 10. 4.)

Natura sic ab iis investigata est, ut nulla pars cælo, mari, terra (ut poetice loquar) prætermittitur sit. (C. Fin. 5. 4.)

L. Marcio Tarracone, M. Silano Carthagine Nova, quo pedibus ab Tarracone itineribus magnis ierat, relictis, ipse ab Carthagine profectus in Africam trajecit. (L. 28. 17.)

Totis<sup>5</sup> trepidatur castris. (Cæs. G. 6. 37.)

Hoc tu, Q. Fabi, quum victor tota volitaret Italia Hannibal, potuisti præstare. (L. 28. 44.)

Flumen, quod medio oppido fluxerat, extra frequentia tectis loca præterfluebat. (L. 24. 3.)

Seniores medio ædium eburneis sellis sedere. (L. 5. 41.)

Cicatrices advorso corpore possum ostentare. (Sall. J. 85, § 29.)

Tamesis uno omnino loco pedibus transiri potest. (Cæs. G. 5. 18.)

Ad mœnia ipsa Romæ populabundi regione<sup>6</sup> portæ Esquilinæ excessere. (L. 3. 66.)

Continued on p. 72.

(3) *Urbe, oppido, &c. prefixed in apposition. Usually also when it follows:*

Cassius in oppido Antiochiæ cum omni exercitu. (C. Att. 5. 18.)

In oppido Cizio est mortuus. (Nep. Cim. 3.)

Athenis, in civitate fracta Macedonum armis, contionari libere ausi sunt homines. (L. 9. 18.)

Milites Albæ constituerunt in urbe opportuna, munita, propinqua.

(C. Phil. 4. 2, and cf. 3. 15.)

Censuit senatus edici in urbe Roma et per totam Italiani edicta misti.

(L. 39. 14.)

<sup>1</sup> *Fora* (originally openings) was used to denote the world outside: hence (besides *foris* here) *foras*, § 1108; *foris*, § 1260; in opposition to *domi*, *intus*, &c. Comp. *θύραζε*, *θύρασι*. Thus *foras* exire, eijci, 'go out of doors,' 'be turned into the road;' *scripta foras dare* (C. Att. 13. 22), 'to give writings to the world;' *justitia foras spectat* (C. R. P. 3. 7), 'looks abroad outside of one's self;' *foris esse*, *cenare*, 'to be, dine, out;' *foris valde plauditur* (C. Q. Fr. 2. 6 (S). 1), 'great applause in the world without;' *foris sapere* (Ter. Haut. 923), 'be wise about other people's concerns;' *foris venire* (Lucr. 5. 543), 'come from without, from outside.'

<sup>2</sup> *On animi* see § 1321, and comp. Key. Lat. Gr. § 935 n.; Wessenberg. Cic. T. D. 1. 40; Wagner, Pl. Aut. 105.

<sup>3</sup> *In some places the reading is doubtful between terræ and terra. Vergil in Æn. 11. 87, Sternitur et toto projectus corpore terræ, and Ovid in the passage quoted may have been willing that terræ should be taken for a dative.*

*The locative adverbs are occasionally used of persons and things; 1171 (see also § 1153).*

Subsensi id quoque, illos ibi esse, id agere inter se clanculum.

(Ter. Haut. 471.)

'Ubi fides?' si roges, nil pudet hic, ubi opust: illic, ubi nil opust, ibi verentur. (Ter. Andr. 637.)

'Attende, quæso.' 'Istic sum,' inquit, 'expectoque quid ad id quod quærebam respondeas.' (C. Fin. 5. 26.)

<sup>4</sup> *On terra* see notes to § 1176.

<sup>5</sup> *But a preposition (in, per) is not uncommon with totus: 1173 Magni terræ motus in Liguribus Gallia compluribusque insulis totaque in Italia facti sunt. (C. Div. 1. 35.)*

Hic primo sensim tentantium animos sermo per totam civitatem est datus. (L. 2. 2.)

<sup>6</sup> *'In the line' or 'direction of.'* Non recta regione ita instituit sed ad levam flexit (L. 21. 31); declinamus item motus, nec tempore certo nec regione loci certa, sed ubi ipsa tulit mens (Lucr. 2. 260); Hercynia silva recta fluminis Danuvii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum, 'straight along the Danube' (Cæs. G. 6. 25). Cf. Liv. 10. 43; 37. 17; &c. (Verg. A. 7. 215; 9. 385 belong to § 1210.)

Continued on p. 73.

Dextro ipse cornu consistit; sinistro præfecit magistrum equitum.  
(L. 9. 40.)

Pluribus partibus vineæ cœptæ agi. (L. 21. 8.)

Locis impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat. (Cæs. 5. 19.)

Uxorem ferunt partum Romæ edidisse Prisci Tarquinii domo.  
(L. 1. 39.)

Rure meo possum quidvis perferre patique. (Hor. Ep. 1. 15. 17.)

Pectore<sup>1</sup> nil sistere consili quit. (Ter. Ad. 613.)

Ibi ei carpento<sup>2</sup> sedenti cum uxore aquila pilleum aufert. (L. 1. 34.)

Cernis custodia qualis vestibulo sedeat. (Verg. A. 6. 575.)

Octaviæ imagines gestant humeris, spargunt floribus, foroque ac  
templis statuunt. (Tac. A. 14. 61.)

(b) *In metaphorical expressions<sup>3</sup>, esp. loco (locis), numero, prin-* 1172  
*cipio, initio.*

Veteribus<sup>4</sup> stari malunt. (L. 34. 54.)

De hac re vos consulo, staturus eo, quod plures censueritis.  
(L. 34. 22.)

Illi se iudicum numero<sup>5</sup> haberi volunt. (C. T. D. 1. 41.)

Senatori jussa tria sunt: ut adsit: ut loco<sup>6</sup> dicat, id est rogatus; ut  
modo, ne sit infinitus. (C. Leg. 3. 18.)

Principio<sup>7</sup> nobis in cunctas undique partis nulla est finis.  
(Lucr. 2. 1048.)

Respondit se, quod in nummis haberet, nescire quo loci esset: alios  
non solvere, aliorum diem nondum esse. (C. Att. 8. 10.)

(c) *So also where the place is also the means<sup>8</sup>.* 1174

Conjurant, qui victus acie excessisset, eum ne quis urbe, tecto, mensa,  
lare reciperet<sup>9</sup>. (L. 26. 25.)

De amicitia alio libro<sup>10</sup> dictum est. (C. Off. 2. 9.)

Sublimem medium arripiam et capite in terram statuam.  
(Ter. Ad. 316.)

Equo<sup>11</sup> advectus, delapsus est in flumen: tum repente eodem equo  
adversam ascendit ripam. (C. Div. 1. 28.)

Vix arma humeris<sup>12</sup> gestabant. (L. 27. 48.)

Loquimur de Alexandro nondum merso<sup>13</sup> secundis rebus. (L. 9. 18.)

Quadam epistola me subinvitaras, si memoria<sup>14</sup> tenes, ut ad te scri-  
berem. (C. Fam. 7. 1.)

Eæ artes, quæ conjectura continentur<sup>15</sup> et sunt opinabiles.  
(C. Div. 1. 14.)

*Continued on p. 74.*

<sup>1</sup> Eum nemo umquam in equo sedentem viderit...Coronam habebat unam in capite, alteram in collo. (C. Verr. 5. 11.)

<sup>2</sup> The poets (e.g. Vergil) and Tacitus frequently use such ablatives; e.g. sedet culmine tecti (Verg. A. 4. 186); fulva moribundum extendit arena (A. 5. 374); tumulum, quo occubat Hector (Ib. 371); nebulae campo recumbunt (G. 1. 401); luna virgineum suffuderit ore ruborem (Ib. 430); &c. Ibi campo aut litore jacentes (Tac. A. 4. 74); lateribus aut fronte circumveniebantur (A. 15. 38); turrem vicino sitam (H. 3. 38); coloniam plano sitam (Ib. 19); &c. In some sentences it may be doubtful whether the ablative belongs here or to § 1260; e.g. aridus altis montibus audiri fragor (Verg. G. 1. 357); stellas præcipites cælo labi (Ib. 366); imbrem surgentem vallibus imis (Ib. 375); &c.

<sup>3</sup> A preposition is not uncommon in these metaphorical expressions: 1175 e.g.

<sup>4</sup> Titinius in eo quod ostenderat non stat. (C. Att. 2. 4.)

<sup>5</sup> Reductos in hostium numero habuit. (Cæs. G. 1. 28.)

Q. Ælius Tubero fuit illo tempore nullo in oratorum numero.

(C. Brut. 31.)

<sup>6</sup> Pecuniam in loco negligere maxumum interdumst lucrum.

(Ter. Ad. 216.)

<sup>7</sup> Id faciam quod in principio fieri in omnibus disputationibus oportere censeo. (C. Or. 1. 48.)

Dixeram a principio de re publica ut sileremus. (C. Brut. 42 fin.)

<sup>8</sup> When the notion of 'means' is not present, the preposition in 1177 is usually found.

<sup>9</sup> Recipere, 'receive,' often has in with the accusative, but rarely of purely local relations.

Recipe me in tectum. (Pl. Rud. 574.)

Ex Latio gentes universæ in civitatem receptæ sunt. (C. Balb. 13.)

<sup>10</sup> Where the whole contents of a book are not meant, in is used; e.g. De utilitate stercorandi dixi in eo libro quem de rebus rusticis scripsi. (C. Sen. 15.)

<sup>11</sup> With equo in such expressions in is rarely found: (but in equo sedere, ex equo pugnare).

<sup>12</sup> Quem ego modo puerum tantillum in manibus gestavi meis.

(Ter. Ad. 563.)

<sup>13</sup> Avidius ex insolentia in voluptates se merserant. (L. 23. 18.)

Advolabat ad eas aves quæ se in mari mergerent. (C. N. D. 2. 49.)

<sup>14</sup> In memoria habeo. (Ter. And. 40.)

<sup>15</sup> Common in the legal phrase for 'real property,' quæ solo continentur (e.g. L. 26. 34; Ulp. Dig. 6. 1. 1). For the abl. with contentus, constare see § 1216.

Continued on p. 75.



*With verbs of motion, the ablative (often) expresses the road by which.*

Omnibus viis<sup>1</sup> semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat.

(Cæs. G. 5. 19.)

Convocatos milites monuit via omnes irent nec deverti quemquam paterentur. (L. 25. 9.)

Lupus Esquilina porta ingressus, frequentissima parte urbis, quum in forum decurrisset, Tusco vico atque inde Cermalò per portam Capenam prope intactus evaserat. (L. 33. 26.)

Prima luce duabus simul portis eruptionem fecit. (L. 36. 38.)

Frumentum flumine Arare navibus subvexerat. (Cæs. G. 1. 16.)

Tum se ad Caietæ recto fert litore portum. (Verg. A. 6. 900.)

Batonius e navi recta ad me venit domum Ephesi. (C. Att. 6. 8.)

Lælius advenientem salutavit et eos qui una<sup>2</sup> venerant.

(C.R. P. 1. 12.)

Ibi omnibus solemniter peractis, eadem<sup>2</sup> revertens, ad suos rediit.

(L. 5. 46.)

Si via sit immunita, lex jubet, qua velit, agere jumentum.

(C. Cæcin. 19.)

Ad hæc in novitatem generis originisque, qua falsa, qua<sup>3</sup> vera jacere.

(L. 2. 45.)

## 2. (a) Time when.

*LOCATIVE. This is distinguishable from the ablative only in a few expressions, occurring chiefly in early writers. In other writers also we have pridie, postridie, quotidie, and (though these are perhaps ablatives) vesperi, heri, temperi, luci.* (Cf. § 524.)

Igitur dictatorem Karthaginiensium magister equitum monuit: mitte mecum Romam equitatum; die quinti in Capitolio tibi cena cocta erit. (Cato, Orig. ap. Gell. 10. 24<sup>4</sup>.)

Hoc die crastini quom erus resciverit, male castigabit eos exuviis bubulis. (Plaut. Most. 881.)

Cum Caninius ad me pervesperì venisset, et se postridie mane ad te iturum esse dixisset, conscripsi epistolam noctu. (C. Fam. 9. 2.)

Nosti materteræ meæ fundum in Sabinis? Quidni? inquit, ubi æstate diem meridiæ<sup>6</sup> dividere soleam, cum eo Reate ex urbe, aut, cum inde venio hieme, noctu ponere castra.

(Varr. R. R. 3. 2. 15.)

*Continued on p. 76.*

<sup>1</sup> Where the road denotes place merely, the preposition *in* is used: e.g. Cornicines *in via* paribus intervallis dispositos canere jubent.

(L. 24. 46.)

Jussum templum *in Nova via* Aio Locutio fieri. (L. 5. 50.)

(But also without *in*; e.g. Romæ signum Martis Appia via sudavit. (L. 22. 1. &c.)

So *in terra*, 'on land'; e.g. *et in terra* prosperum æque in palatos prædatores prælium fuerat. (L. 10. 2). Compare *naves prope terram*, exercitum *in litore* ducebat; *audivit classem Punicam stare in ostio fluminis*, castraque *in ripa* posita: tumultus prius *in terra et castris* quam ad mare et ad *naves* est ortus. (L. 22. 19, §§ 3. 5, 7).

But *terra* (cf. § 1170), 'by land,' is common of journeying or of war-  
ring with land forces, e.g. *breve terra iter eo*, *brevis navigatio ab Nau-  
pacto est* (L. 26. 26); *pedestres inde copias per Bæotiam terra* duci  
jussit, ipse præter *terram Atticam* navigans, &c. (L. 28. 28). Gnaeus  
Scipio *terra*, Publius *navibus* rem gerebat (L. 23. 26).

Here probably belongs *vestigii*, e.g. *Pergunt hostem vestigiis sequi*  
(L. 9. 45, § 16): *In spatio sumus Q. Hortensium ipsius vestigiis perse-  
cuti* (C. Brut. 90).

<sup>2</sup> For *una opera*, *eadem opera*, see § 1237. So *recta perge in exi-  
lium* (C. Cat. 9) literally refers to place, practically to time ('go  
straightway'). Compare *lex legi non miscetur: utraque sua via it*  
(Sen. Ben. 6. 6).

<sup>3</sup> *qua*, 'by which way,' 'on which side,' is used as equivalent to  
*et...et in Plautus* (Mil. 1113, Trin. 1044), Cicero several times (cf.  
§ 1180), Livy often, and Pliny Ep. 6. 28; ib. 33.

<sup>4</sup> See the whole chapter in Gellius, who also mentions *die noni* used 1179  
by the prætor in announcing the Compitalia; *die proximi* used by Cato;  
*die pristini* used generally; *die quinti* and *die quinte* used in Cicero's  
age and previously, also several times by Augustus in letters. He adds  
that the final syllable in *die* in this phrase was short. (Macrob. i. 4.  
20 &c. simply copies Gellius.) In Plautus besides *Most. l. c.* we have  
*Men. 1156 die septimi*; *mane sane septimi*, and *Pers. 260*.

<sup>5</sup> *Meridie* is for *mediū die* (cf. C. Or. 47). Probably *meridies* as a  
subst. is derived from it. (But see § 988.)

Advorsum veniri mihi ad Philolachem volo temperi<sup>1</sup>.  
(Pl. *Most.* 313.)

Cotidie vel potius in dies singulos breviores litteras ad te scribo.  
(C. *Att.* 5. 7.)

Tibi vota quot annis<sup>2</sup> agricolæ facient. (Verg. *B.* 5. 79.)

*ABLATIVE. Generally with adjective.*

1180

Castoris ædes eodem anno idibus Quintilibus<sup>3</sup> dedicata est. Vota erat Latino bello a Postumio dictatore. (L. 2. 42.)

Pyrrhi temporibus jam Apollo versus facere desierat. (C. *Div.* 2. 56.)

Mancipia venibant Saturnalibus tertiis. (C. *Att.* 5. 20.)

Anno trecentesimo altero<sup>4</sup> quam condita Roma est, ab consulibus ad decemviros translatum imperium. (L. 3. 33.)

Confecto negotio bonus augur 'alio die' inquit. (C. *Phil.* 2. 33.)

Eorum adventu equos Germanis distribuit. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 65.)

Afraniani diu nostrorum impetum sustinuerant, et initio tumultum tenuerant. (Cæs. *C.* 1. 47.)

Arabes campos et montes hieme et æstate<sup>5</sup> peragrant.  
(C. *Div.* 1. 42.)

Edoctus interdium tantum obsideri saltum, nocte<sup>6</sup> in sua quemque dilabi tecta, luce prima subiit tumulos. (L. 21. 32.)

Populi sensus maxime theatro et spectaculis perspectus est. Nam gladiatoribus<sup>7</sup> qua dominus qua advocati sibilis conscissi.  
(C. *Att.* 2. 19.)

Primo pugnatum est ad Spei æquo marte. (L. 2. 51.)

Tantum bellum Cn. Pompeius extrema hieme apparavit, ineunte vere suscepit, media æstate confecit. (C. *Man.* 12.)

Hic illest, senecta ætate qui factust puer. (Pl. *Trin.* 43.)

Pythagoras Superbo regnante in Italiam venit. (C. *T. D.* 1. 16.)

Annis fere ccccx post Romam conditam Livius fabulam dedit, C. Claudio, Cæci filio, M. Tuditano consulibus<sup>8</sup>, anno antenatum Ennium. (*Ib.* 1. 1.)

(b) Time in the course of which<sup>9</sup>.

1182

Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis. (Cæs. *G.* 6. 35.)

Ergo his annis quadringentis Romæ rex erat? (C. *R. P.* 1. 37.)

Respondit illud argentum se paucis illis diebus misisse Lilybæum.  
(C. *Verr.* 4. 18.)

*Continued on p. 78.*

<sup>1</sup> In tempore ad eam veni. (Ter. *Haut.* 364. cf. L. 25. 31). So in ipso tempore, 'at the nick of time.'

Satis erat dierum, ut Puteolos excurrere possem et ad tempus redire. (C. *Att.* 13. 45.)

<sup>2</sup> Quot mensibus also is found in Cato, *R. R.* 43: quotquot mensibus, quotquot annis, Varr. *R. R.* 3. 7. 3; L. L. 5. §§ 37, 39, 47; quot Kalendis in Pl. *Stich.* 60. And see Ulpian, *Dig.* 36. 2. 12. (For the use of the relative comp. quam primum, cum maxime.)

<sup>3</sup> See App. D. xv. (Vol. I. p. 454).

<sup>4</sup> Also post (ante) trecentessimum alterum annum.

red

Dixit Clodius periturum Milonem triduo: post diem tertium gesta res est, quam dixerat. (C. *Mil.* 16.)

A preposition is used in the expression for 'at present.'

Cæsar satis habebat in præsentia hostem rapinis prohibere.

(Cæs. *G.* 1. 15.)

<sup>5</sup> So vere et autumno (Plin. 2. § 136). Also verno arare incipito (Cato, *R. R.* 50; cf. ib. 54; Plin. 19. § 95); æstivo, diem si non diffinderem æpe insititio somno meridie, vivere non possem. (Varr. *R. R.* 1. 2 § 5.)

<sup>6</sup> Nocte dieque, 'by night and day' (Ov. *Met.* 4. 240; Cels. 4. 6. (3), &c.); with no practical difference, dies noctesque, noctes ac dies, &c., 'whole nights and days.' So the abl. in later writers, e.g. Quint. 6. proem. § 2. id agentem diebus ac noctibus. Diem ac noctem (singular) is 'for one day and night;' e.g. L. 35. 40. § 2; and though sometimes found in the MSS. for die ac nocte, should, as Madvig and Liv. xxxiii. 17. § 7) think, be corrected.

<sup>7</sup> So has orationes ego scripsi ludis et feriis, ne omnino unquam essem otiosus (C. *Planc.* 27). Cf. C. *Phil.* 9. 7. § 16.

<sup>8</sup> For the consuls as a mere note of the year, comp. C. *Varr.* 2. 76: Intelligeris illa tempora cum societatis tabulis, non solum consulis verum etiam mensibus convenire. (For these ablatives, cf. § 121.) Ea quæ secuta est hieme, qui fuit annus Gnae Pompeio Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Rhenum transierunt. (Cæs. *G.* 4. 1.)

<sup>9</sup> A similar meaning is expressed by prepositions:

red

Lucilius in hora sæpe ducentes versus dictabat. (Ter. *S.* 1. 49.)

Decrevire uti in diebus proximis decem Italia decederent.

(Sall. *J.* 28.)

Ferme in diebus paucis quibus hæc acta sunt Chrysis moritur.

(Ter. *And.* 104.)

Continued on p. 78.

Item reliquis itineribus nonnullæ cohortes in agmen Cæsaris incidunt. (Cæs. C. 1. 24.)

Quatriduo, quo hæc gesta sunt, res ad Chrysogonum in castra L. Sullæ Volaterras defertur. (C. Rosc. Am. 7.)

Si debuisset, Sexte, petisses statim; si non statim, paulo quidem post; si non paulo, at aliquanto: sex quidem illis mensibus profecto; anno vertente sine controversia. (C. Quint. 12.)

Ita nocte ac die bina castra hostium expugnata, ductu L. Marcii. (L. 25. 39.)

Ita multorum mensium labor hostium perfidia et vi tempestatis puncto temporis interiit. (Cæs. C. 2. 14.)

Nihil me existimaris usu didicisse, nisi brevi tempore desiderari nostra illa tempora videris. (C. Att. 2. 9.)

Fretum ipsum Euripi non septies die, sicut fama fert, temporibus statis reciprocatur. (L. 28. 6.)

S. Roscius Romam multis annis<sup>1</sup> non venit. (C. Rosc. Am. 27.)

(c) Time throughout which<sup>2</sup>: rare except in post-Augustan writers<sup>3</sup>.

Nostri quinque horis prælium sustinuerunt. (Cæs. C. 1. 47.)

Octoginta annis vixit...Quid quæris quamdiu vixerit?  
(Sen. Ep. 93, § 3, 5.)

Piso biduo duabusque noctibus perpotationem continuavit apud Tiberium. (Plin. 14, § 145.)

### 3. Amount at which.

1186

LOCATIVE<sup>4</sup>. In expressions of value, qualifying verbs.

(The genitives **pluris**, **minoris** (rarely others), are used in the same sense, apparently by a false analogy.)

**Tanti**, **quant**i (and compounds), **pluris**, **minoris**, are used also to express price with verbs of selling, &c.

Sume hoc ptisanarium oryzæ. Quanti emptæ? Parvo. Quanti ergo? Octussibus. (Hor. S. 2. 3. 156.)

Quis vestrum igitur nescit quanti hæc æstimentur? In auctione signum æneum non maximum HS XL milibus venire non vidimus? Quid? si velim nominare homines, qui aut non minoris aut etiam pluris emerint, nonne possum? (C. Ferr. 4. 7.)

Me a te plurimi fieri sentio. (C. Fin. 13. 4.)

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. (C. Off. 1. 22.)

Continued on p. 80.



Nos hic te ad mensem Januarium expectamus. (C. Att. 1. 3.) 'By January.'

Nuper intra decem annos C. Manius dictator dictatura se abdicavit. (L. 9. 34.)

Nulla abs te per hos dies epistola inanis aliqua re utili et suavi venit. (C. Att. 2. 8.)

<sup>1</sup> Nævius inter tot annos ne appellavit quidem Quinctium. (C. Quint. 14.)

<sup>2</sup> The accusative is regularly used of time throughout which; *cf.* § 1090.

<sup>3</sup> Some instances of the ablative are however found in Cicero: Negari non potest multis sæculis verax fuisse id oraculum. (C. Div. 1. 19.)

Scriptum a discipulo ejus Posidonio est. triginta annis vixisse Panætium postea quam illos libros edidisset. (C. Off. 3. 2.)

So Ferr. 2. 25, § 62. And *comp.* Quintilian's story of Cicero's jest (6. 3, § 73).

Cicero. Fabia Dolabella dicente triginta se annos habere, 'verum est,' inquit, 'nam hoc illam jam viginti annis audio.'

<sup>4</sup> The words so used are tanti, tantidem, quanti, quantivis, quanti-  
cumque, quantiquanti, magni, permagni, maximi, multi (Cato, *Frag.*), plurimi, parvi, minimi, nihili: also, with negative, flocci (twice also without negative), nauci, pili, terunci: and the genitives pluris, minoris, majoris (Phædr.), hujus (Ter. *once*), assis, unius assis (Catull.), decussis (Stat.), centussis (Varr.).

Equi boni facere, boni consulere, facere, are also apparently referable here. See § 1191. Possibly also *fenori* argentum dare, § 1163.

Charisius says: Plure aut minore emptum antiqui dicebant: Cicero 'plure venit:' et Lucilius, 'plure foras vendunt.' Sed consuetudo pluris et minoris dicit, p. 109, ed. Keil. Similarly where Festus wrote centussibus, decussibus (*cf.* Hor. l.c.), Paulus wrote centussis, decussis (pp. 2. 37, 24, ed. Mull.).

Occasionally pretii is added, but only when dependent on a substantive, or the verb esse, and thus referable to § 1308. *Comp.* Neque historionem ullum neque pluris preti eorum quam vilium habes. (Sall. J. 85, § 39.) Pluris pretii also in Varr. R. R. 1. 7. 4; Marcell. ap. Dig. 12. 6. 25 § 5; and (in MSS.) in Pl. Bac. 630.

Continued on p. 81.

Judices rempublicam flocci non faciunt. (C. Fam. 4. 5.)

Tempta Chrysogonus quanti doceat. (Juv. 7. 176.)

Pater id nili<sup>1</sup> pendit. (Ter. Ad. 452.)

Neque ridiculos jam terunci faciunt. (Pl. Capt. 477.)

Rumores senum severiorum omnes unius æstimemus assis.

(Catul. 5. 3.)

Quid tua, malum, id refert<sup>2</sup>? CH. Magni. (Ter. Phorm. 723.) 1188

Magni sua putabant interesse, publice potius quamvis magno emi decumas, quam in aliquem istius emissarium inciderent.

(C. Verr. 3. 42.)

Ambulatiuncula dimidio minoris constabit. (C. Att. 13. 29.)

Nulla pestis humano generi pluris stetit ira. (Sen. Ir. 1. 2.)

Tranquillissimus animus meus, qui totum istuc æqui boni facit<sup>3</sup>.

(C. Att. 7. 7.)

Tu quoque non melius, quam sunt mea tempora, carmen consule, Roma, boni<sup>4</sup>. (Ov. Tr. 4. 1. 106.)

Qui servum servamve alienum alienamve quadrupedem vel pecudem injuria occiderit, quanti id in eo anno plurimi fuit, tantum æs dare domino damnas esto. (Lex Aquilia ap. Dig. 9. 2. 2.) 1190

Majores nostri in legibus posiverunt furem dupli condemnari<sup>5</sup>, fæneratorem quadrupli. (Cato, R. R. pr.)

Clientes responderunt se collaturos quanti damnatus esset... Absens quindecim millibus gravis æris damnatur. (L. 5. 32.)

Cedo mihi unum ex triennio præturæ tuæ, qui octupli damnatus sit. (C. Verr. 3. 12.)

Non putavit esse tanti<sup>6</sup> hereditatem, ut de civitate in dubium veniret. 1192

(C. Cæc. 7.)

Tanti non fuit Arsacem capere, ut earum rerum, quæ hic gestæ sunt, spectaculo careres. (Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 14.)

Est mihi tanti, Quirites, hujus invidiæ tempestatem subire, dum modo a vobis hujus horribilis belli periculum depellatur.

(C. Cat. 2. 7.)

Nihili<sup>7</sup> and (in Plautus) trioboli are found qualifying a substantive: 1194

Ego me curo, equum Staius, nihili servus. (ap. Gell. 4. 20.)

Continued on p. 82.

<sup>1</sup> Pro nihilo is not uncommon:

Tu ausus es pro nihilo præ tua præda tot res sanctissimas ducere.

(C. Verr. 2. 16.)

<sup>2</sup> With re fert, interest are found tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, 118; parvi, pluris. But the adverbial accusative is more common with both; e.g. quid, quidquam, nihil, tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, minus, minimum, &c. So also are used magis, maxime, mag-nopere, quanto opere, vehementer.

(For meā, ejus see § 1285.)

<sup>3</sup> Æqui boni facere, 'to take in good part,' found also in Ter. 119; Haut. 787; Liv. 34. 22, appears to be strictly 'to value at a fair and reasonable price.' Æqui istuc faciam (Pl. Mil. 784) 'It is all the same to me.'

<sup>4</sup> Boni consulere, 'to view favourably,' 'be contented with,' is found as early as in Cato (ap. Gell. 10. 3, § 17); Varr. L. L. 7. 4; also in Ov. Pont. 3. 8. 24; Trist. 1. 1; Sen. Ben. 1. 8; Dial. 1. 2; 11. 10 § 6; Ep. 75. 6; 88. 17; 107. 10; Plin. 8 § 44; 33 § 4; Plin. Ep. 7. 12; Quint. 6, proem. § 16. It is explained by Quintilian (1. 6, § 32), as equivalent to bonum judicare. Its origin is obscure. If it belongs here, it must have meant originally, 'to consider (to be) at a fair price.' Compare however lucri facere, &c. § 1306.

<sup>5</sup> On other cases and expressions with damnare, &c. see § 1200 and notes; and § 1324 and notes.

<sup>6</sup> The subject to est tanti is properly (as in Cæc. 1 c.) the prize to 1193 be won; then (as in Cæl. 1 c.) the action of winning; lastly (as in C. Cat. 1 c.), the risk to be undergone. (Madvig, Opusc. II. 188.)

<sup>7</sup> Homo, &c. nihili was a common expression. See Varr. L. L. 9. 1195 § 54. Pl. Truc. 2. 3. 12; Bacch. 1188; Stich. 189 (nihili verbum). In Cic. (T. D. 3. 8) it is contrasted with homo frugi.

Continued on p. 83.

*ABLATIVE*<sup>1</sup>. (a) Price<sup>2</sup>, cost, penalty: *also after dignus*. 1196  
(Compare also § 1218, and for penalty, §§ 1324, 1325.)

In Sicilia summum ternis HS tritici modius erat. (C. Verr. 3. 81.)

Omnia vænibunt, quique licebunt, præsentī pecunia.

(Plaut. Men. 1159.)

Indica minumo daturus qui sis (hanc servam), qui duci queat.

(Pl. Pers. 590.)

Quid agas? nisi ut te redimas captum quam queas minumo: si nequeas paululo, at quanti queas. (Ter. Andr. 74.)

Arcem jam scelere emptam Sabini habent. (L. 1. 12.)

Vendidit hic auro patriam; fixit leges pretio atque refixit.

(Verg. A. 6. 621.)

Cum privatis non poterat transigi minore pecunia.

(C. Att. 4. 16, § 14.)

Quod non opus est, asse carum est. (Cato ap. Sen. Ep. 94.)

Conduxit in Palatio non magno domum. (C. Cæl. 7.)

1198

Triginta milibus dixistis Cælium habitare. (C. Cæl. 7.)

Athenagoram ducem mercede<sup>3</sup> militantium mittit. (L. 33. 7.)

Vitiis medendi una ratio, si non nummo sed partibus (prædia) locem. (Plin. Ep. 9. 37.)

Ecquid me adjuvas, ne gratis reipublicæ serviamus? (C. Clu. 26.)

Cum posita esset pecunia apud eas societates unde erat attributa, binis centesimis fæneratus est. (C. Verr. 3. 70.)

Pecoris et mancipiorum prædas mutabant cum mercatoribus vino advectione et aliis talibus. (Sall. Jug. 44.)

Multi leve compendium fraude maxima commutarunt. (Corn. 2. 19.)

Nimium risus pretium est, si probitatis impendio constat.

(Quint. 6. 3. 35.)

Edocet quanto detrimento et quot virorum fortium morte necesse sit constare victoriam. (Cæs. G. 7. 19.)

Magno illi ea cunctatio stetit. (L. 2. 36.)

Plurimi animos quasi capite<sup>4</sup> damnatos morte multant.

1200

(C. T. D. 1. 22.)

Omne humanum genus morte damnatum est. (Sen. Ep. 71. 15.)

Frusinates tertia parte agri damnati. (L. 10. 1.)

Idem fecit L. Philippus, vir patre, avo, majoribusque dignissimus<sup>5</sup>. 1202

(C. Phil. 3. 10.)

Vox populi Romani majestate indigna. (Cæs. G. 7. 17.)

Haud equidem tali me dignor honore. (Verg. A. 1. 335.)

Continued on p. 84.

<sup>1</sup> *The adjectival words so used substantively are magno, permagno, plurimo, parvo, minimo, paululo, nimio, istoc, vili. Similarly flocco (Plaut. fragm.), nauco (Næv.), asse, talentis, argento, &c. We have also bene emere, 'to make a good purchase,' male, melius, care emere, vendere, &c. Of verbs of valuing aestimare is found with the ablative as well as with the locative.*

<sup>2</sup> *So far as price denotes the amount at which a thing is valued, it belongs to this section (§ 1196); so far as it denotes the means by which a thing is obtained, it may strictly belong to § 1218.*

<sup>3</sup> *So mercede conducere (L. 34. 17); arcessi (Cæs. G. 1. 31); docere (C. Or. 1. 28).*

<sup>4</sup> *The penalty is in old formulæ often expressed in the accusative; e.g. Quanti ea res erit, tantam pecuniam judex Numerium Negidium Aulo Agerio condemnato. (Gai. 4. 47.) Possibly this may have sprung from an older form, dare damnas esto. For quanti damnatus see § 1190.*

*On the use of capitis, &c. e.g. Capitis absolutus, morte multatus est (Nep. Milt. 7), see § 1325.*

*The creditor in whose favour judgment was pronounced on another is in set legal forms put in the dative; e.g. Judex Numerium Negidium Aulo Agerio sestertium x millia condemna. (Comp. Gai. 4. 43; Lex Rubr. § 27.) Hence such expressions in the poets as*

*Se quisque videbat implicitum morbo, morti damnatus ut esset.*

(Lucr. 6. 1232.)

*Ilion mihi castæque damnatam Minervæ. (Hor. Od. 3. 3. 23.)*

*Stygioque caput damnaverat Orco. (Verg. A. 4. 699.)*

*Nec mea vos uni damnat censura puellæ. (Ov. A.A. 2. 387.)*

*In prose ad with the accusative is used of the penalty (strictly, the place of punishment):*

*Multos honesti ordinis ad metalla et munitiones viarum aut ad bestias condemnavit. (Suet. Cal. 27.)*

<sup>5</sup> *In the early language a neut. acc. adj. (cf. § 1094) is occasionally found qualifying dignus; e.g.*

*Di tibi omnes id quod es dignus duint. (Ter. Ph. 519.)*

*So also a genitive in the poets; very rarely in prose:*

*Descendam magnorum haud umquam indignus avorum.*

(Verg. A. 12. 649.)

*Suscipe curam et cogitationem dignissimam tuæ virtutis.*

(Balb. ap. C. Att. 8. 15 A.)

*In Plautus, Mil. 619, decorus, and in Rud. 47, Bacch. 488, æquom, are used like dignus with an ablative.*



(b) Amount of difference<sup>1</sup>: *with adjectives in comparative or superlative degree; ante, post, &c. Also with distare, abesse.*

Nonnumquam uno die longiorem mensem faciunt aut biduo.

(C. Verr. 2. 52.)

Altitudo muri L. cubitorum eminent spatio: turres denis pedibus quam murus altiores sunt. (Curt. 5. 1. 26.)

Legem una plures tribus antiquarunt, quam jusserunt. (L. 5. 30.)

Perii hercle; uno Gelasimo minus est quam dudum fuit.

(Pl. Stich. 498.)

Ille uno vitio minus vitiosus, quod iners, quod somni plenus.

(C. Att. 1. 14. § 6.)

Dente si nigro fieres vel uno turpior ungui, crederem.

(Hor. Od. 2. 8. 3.)

Sapientium vita omnibus partibus plus habet boni quam mali.

(C. Fin. 5. 31.)

Multis partibus sol major est quam terra. (C. Acad. 2. 36.)

Mihi semper frequens conspectus vester multo jucundissimus.

(C. Man. 1. 1.)

Ego sum in usu factus nimio nequior. (Pl. Most. 145.)

Quo plures erant Veientes, eo major<sup>2</sup> cædes fuit. (L. 2. 51.)

Impendio<sup>3</sup> magis animus gaudebat mihi. (Ter. Eun. 587.)

Reperietis quinquens tanto amplius (frumenti), quam quantum in cellam sumere ei licitum sit, istum civitatibus imperasse.

(C. Verr. 3. 97.)

Ei rei operam dare te fuerat aliquanto æquius. (Pl. Trin. 119.)

Minus dolendum fuit re non perfecta, puniendum certe nihilo minus. (C. Mil. 7.)

Tanto ille superiores vicerat, quanto tu omnibus præstitisti.

(C. Deiot. 4.)

Paulo supra hanc memoriam. (Cæsar. G. 6. 19.)

Voverat ædem decem annis ante Punicum bellum. (L. 34. 53.)

Interim paucis post diebus<sup>4</sup> fit ab Ubiis certior. (Cæsar. G. 6. 10.)

Milibus passuum duobus ultra Cæsarem castra fecit. (Ib. 1. 48.)

Æsculapi templum quinque milibus passuum ab urbe distat<sup>5</sup>.

(L. 45. 28.)

Septimo die certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et xx. abesse. (Cæsar. G. 1. 41.)

Xenophon a litore Scytharum tridui navigatione insulam esse imensæ magnitudinis tradit. (Plin. 4. § 95.)

*Continued on p. 86.*

<sup>1</sup> This ablative may be regarded as of an instrumental character.

Occasionally the adverbial accusative is used; e. g.

1203

Habitus formamque viri aliquantum ampliorem augustioremque humana intuetur. (L. 1. 7.)

Quantum juniores patrum plebi se magis insinuabant, eo acrius contra tribuni tendebant. (L. 3. 15.)

Perhibetur et corporis viribus et animi ferocitate tantum ceteris præstitisse. ut, &c. (C. R. P. 2. 2.)

So also longe;

Pedibus longe melior Lycus muros tenet. (Verg. A. 9. 556.)

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit Orgetorix. (Cæs. G. 1. 2.)

Longe absum, audio sero. (C. Fam. 2. 7.)

Unam longe ante alias insignem specie ac pulchritudine raptam ferunt. (L. 1. 9.)

Q. Hortensius M. Crassum longe præstitit. (C. Brut. 64.)

<sup>2</sup> Tacitus often has a positive in the relative clause with quanto, e. g. Præcepit clementiam ac justitiam quanto ignara barbaris tanto lætiora capesseret. (A. 12. 11.) If the apodosis is expressed absolutely, tanto, &c. is omitted: e. g. quanto incautius efferverat, pœnitentia patiens tulit absolvi reum. (A. 1. 74.) See Nipperdey, ad A. 1 68.

<sup>3</sup> A colloquial expression, found also in Pl. Aul. 18; Afran. 352; C. Att. 10. 4. § 9. 'A cost more.'

<sup>4</sup> Paucas post horas Philippus, appropinquans urbi, sustinuit signa. (L. 31. 24.)

(For the ordinals, e. g. decimo die ante, &c. see § 1180.)

The accusative before ante, post is used in its ordinary sense; e. g. Aliquot annos continuos ante legem Gabiniam populus Romanus magna parte imperii caruit. (C. Man. 18.) So Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Cæsar pro castris suis copias produxit. (Cæs. G. 1. 48.)

<sup>5</sup> See also § 1087. For the accusative with abesse, &c. see § 1086. For spatio, intervallo see § 1248.

Continued on p. 87.

4. Part concerned, means, cause<sup>1</sup>; *without requiring* 12  
*oblique predicate.* (Comp. § 1230.)

(a) Part concerned<sup>2</sup>, or thing in point of which<sup>3</sup> a term 12  
*is applied, or an assertion made: qualifying (chiefly) intransitive verbs*  
*and nouns.*

Qui uri appellantur, sunt magnitudine<sup>4</sup> paulo infra elephantos, specie  
et colore et figura tauri. (Cæs. G. 6. 27.)

Servati consulis decus Cælius ad servum natione Ligurem delegat.  
(L. 21. 46.)

Totidem annis tum mihi ætate præstabat Crassus. (C. Brut. 43.)

Athenis ludis quidam in theatrum grandis natu venit.  
(C. Sen. 18.)

Non tu quidem tota re, sed, quod maximum est, temporibus errasti.  
(C. Phil. 2. 9.)

Quærendum est utrum ista classis cursu et remis an sumptu tantum  
et literis navigarit. (C. Flacc. 14.)

Capti auribus et oculis metu omnes torpere. (L. 21. 58.)

Romani non mentibus solum consipere, sed ne auribus quidem  
atque oculis satis constare poterant. (L. 5. 42.)

Quasi natura et genere diijuncti sint, ita dissident a nobis animo et  
voluntate. (C. Verr. 5. 71.)

Adversus Latinos bellandum erat, lingua moribus armorum genere  
institutis ante omnia militaribus congruentes. (L. 8. 6.)

Alcibiades et Critias grandes erant verbis, crebri sententiis, com-  
pressione rerum breves. (C. Brut. 7.)

Quantus erat Calchas extis, Telamonius armis, Automedon curru,  
tantus amator ego. (Ov. A. A. 2. 737.)

Sero nunc desideratis patriam, deminuti capite, abalienato jure  
civium. (L. 22. 60.)

Coronam auream dictatori, libram pondo<sup>5</sup>, decrevit. (L. 3. 29.)

Servi igitur omnes improbi: nec hoc tam re est quam dictu inopina-  
tum ac mirabile. (C. Par. 5. 1.)

Quid est tam jucundum cognitu atque auditu quam sapientibus  
sententiis gravibusque verbis ornata oratio? (C. Or. 1. 8.)

*So also after expressions of plenty and want and verbs of* 12  
*deprivation<sup>6</sup>.*

Crassus cum cognomine dives<sup>7</sup>, tum copiis. (C. Off. 2. 16.)

Villa abundat<sup>8</sup> porco, hædo, agno, gallina, lacte, caseo, melle.  
(C. Sen. 16.)

*Continued on p. 88.*

<sup>1</sup> *These notions in many instances approach closely to one another, in other instances are clearly distinguishable. The use of English prepositions has been taken as the chief clue; sentences being referred to (a) where 'in,' 'in point of,' 'as regards;' to (b) where 'by,' 'by means of,' 'with;' to (c) where 'for,' 'from,' 'in consequence of,' are most suitable.* 1209

<sup>2</sup> *For the occasional use of the simple accusative to denote the part concerned see §§ 1102, 1126; for the locative animi see §§ 1168, 1321; for the poetic and Tacitean use of the genitive to qualify adjectives, see §§ 1320, 1321.*

<sup>3</sup> *The use of ad with accus. and ab with ablat. approaches sometimes to this use of the ablative. But ad is used rather of something external regarded as an effect; ab of the source; e.g.*

(Ad.) Nihil mihi ad existimationem turpius, nihil ad dolorem acerbius, accidere potuit. (C. Or. 2. 49.)

Vidi forum comitiumque adornatum ad speciem magnifico ornatu, ad sensum cogitationemque acerbo et lugubri. (C. Verr. 1. 22.)

(Ab.) Sumus flagitiose imparati cum a militibus, tum a pecunia. (C. Att. 7. 15.)

Proximum regnum, cetera egregium, ab una parte haud satis prosperum fuerat, neglectis religionibus. (L. 1. 32.)

<sup>4</sup> *Similar ablatives are very frequent, esp. in Pliny; e.g. Creta latitudine nusquam l̄ excedens et circa mediam sui partem maxime patens, longitudine implet cclxx, circuitu dlxxxviii. (4, § 58.)*

<sup>5</sup> *Pondo, properly as here, 'in weight,' was frequently used without libra, e.g. Quot (sc. librarum) pondo ted esse censes nudum? (Pl. Asin. 299); auri quinque (sc. libras) pondo abstulit (C. Clu. 64); sextarium aquæ cum dodrante (sc. libræ) pondo diluunt (Col. 12. 12); in ea fuisse clypeum argenteum pondo centum triginta septem (L. 25. 39); pateram ex quinque pondo auri factam (L. 27. 4). And observe the strange construction of auri pondo duo millia septuaginta fuit (L. 26. 14, &c.), where pondo = a quantity weighing...pounds.*

<sup>6</sup> *Some verbs of deprivation, &c. are used both with simple ablative and with the ablative attended by ab or ex. Instances of such are referred to § 1262.* 1211

*The genitive is also found after these expressions (cf. §§ 1334, 1336), especially in the Augustan poets:*

<sup>7</sup> Hospes opum dives rex ibi Battus erat. (Ov. Fast. 3. 570.)

<sup>8</sup> Illa via altero tanto longiorem habebat anfractum, sed erat copiosa omniumque rerum abundans. (Nep. Eum. 8.)

*Continued on p. 89.*

Metallis plumbi, ferri, æris, argenti, auri, tota ferme Hispania scatet.  
(Plin. 3. § 30.)

Illi honoribus et rerum gestarum gloria florebant. (C. Or. 1. 1.)

In monte Albano lapidibus<sup>1</sup> pluit. (L. 1. 31.)

Herculis simulacrum multo sudore manavit. (C. Div. 1. 33.)

Orba<sup>2</sup> fide pectora carcer habet. (Ov. Am. 2. 2. 42.)

Huic tradita urbs est, nuda<sup>3</sup> præsidio, referta copiis. (C. Att. 7. 13.)

Magnum opus est, egetque<sup>4</sup> exercitatione non parva. (C. Læl. 5.)

Quam Dionysio erat miserum carere consuetudine amicorum, societate victus, sermone omnino familiari. (C. T. D. 5. 22.)

Equidem mihi videor pro nostra necessitate non labore, non opera, non industria defuisse. (Cæs. ap. Gell. 13. 3.)

Censeo facias, ut supersedeas hoc labore itineris. (C. Fam. 4. 2.)

Med illo auro tanto circumduxit. (Pl. Bac. 311.)

Ariovistus omni Gallia interdixit Romanos. (Cæs. G. 1. 46.)

Leva me hoc onere. (C. Fam. 3. 12.)

P. Lentulum prætura se abdicare<sup>5</sup> coegistis. (C. Cat. 4. 3.)

Hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt.  
(Cæs. G. 7. 42.)

Extorres patria sacrum montem cepistis. (L. 9. 34.)

(b) Means, *i.e.* instrument<sup>6</sup> or stuff with, or by, which, 121  
Chiefly with transitive verbs. (See also §§ 1174, 1176, 1196, 1236.)

Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones, aliæ bestię fuga se, aliæ occultatione tutantur. (C. N. D. 2. 50.)

Bello subegit Æquorum gentem. (C. R. P. 2. 20.)

Mirifice capior facetiis, maxime nostratibus. (C. Fam. 9. 15.)

His ego rebus pascor, his delector, his perfruor. (C. Pis. 20.)

Britanni lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti.  
(Cæs. G. 5. 14.)

Arcem ab ipsa urbe muro et fossa ingenti sæptam videbat, eoque nec vi nec operibus expugnabilem esse. (L. 25. 11.)

Hunc nimis liberum populum libertas ipsa servitute afficit.  
(C. R. P. 1. 44.)

Non solum scribam tuum anulo, sed etiam virum fortissimum Q. Rubrium, excellentem virtute auctoritate copiis, corona et phaleris et torque donasti. (C. Verr. 3. 80.)

*Continued on p. 90.*



- <sup>1</sup> *The accusative (after pluere) is more rarely found; e. g.*  
*Lapides pluere et fulmina jaci de cælo vos portenta putatis.*  
 (L. 28. 27.)
- <sup>2</sup> *The genitive (after orbus) is not frequent; Tellus portenta creavit, orba pedum partim, manuum viduata vicissim.* (Lucr. 5. 840.)
- <sup>3</sup> *Per loca æqualia et nuda gignentium ventus coortus harenam humo excitavit.* (Sall. J. 79.)
- <sup>4</sup> *Oppidum magis opere quam natura munitum erat, nullius idoneæ rei egens, armis virisque opulentum.* (Sall. J. 57.)

<sup>5</sup> *The ablatives after abdicare, exuere, extorris may seem referable to § 1262, but the use of a preposition (ab or ex) with them is quite exceptional, and this makes a marked contrast with the words in that section. The notion is rather that of 'dispossession' than 'motion from.' Abdicare is also used with an acc. of the thing relinquished, and thus means 'resign.'*

<sup>6</sup> *When the instrument is a person, and regarded as such (in which case the agent ought to be evident), per with accus. is generally used.*

*(Some instances of names of persons, used as instruments, being put in the ablative will be found in § 1220.) Per is also used with things; e. g.*

*Lituo Romulus regiones direxit tum cum urbem condidit. Quis veterum scriptorum non loquitur quæ sit ab Atto Navio per lituum regionum facta descriptio?* (C. Div. 1. 17.)

*Nobilitatem istam vestram plerique oriundi ex Albanis et Sabinis non genere nec sanguine sed per cooptationem in patres habetis.*  
 (L. 4. 4.)

*Torserat senatores per omnia quæ in rerum natura tristissima sunt, fiduculis, talaribus, eculeo, igne, voltu suo.* (Sen. Ir. 3. 19.)

*Occasionally the poets, chiefly Ovid, use ab, where the simple ablative is the proper expression.* (Comp. § 1221):

*Hi jaculo pisces, illi capiuntur ab hamis.* (Ov. A. A. 1. 763.)

*Aderat nulla factus ab arte decor.* (Ov. F. 2. 764.)

*Turben quem celer adsueta versat ab arte puer.* (Tib. 1. 5. 4.)

*Continued on p. 91.*

In virgines deinde respersas matris cruore impetum faciunt, quæ, si effugissent, impleturæ<sup>1</sup> urbem tumultu fuerunt. (*Cf. L. 24. 26.*) 121

Devinctus erat fasciis, et multis medicamentis propter dolorem artuum delibutus. (*C. Brut. 60.*)

Curionis fuit puro sermone adsuefacta<sup>2</sup> domus. (*Ib. 59.*)

Repente est exorta mulieris nefaria lubido non solum dedecore verum etiam scelere conjuncta<sup>3</sup>. (*C. Clu. 5.*)

Alio incredibili scelere hoc scelus cumulasti. (*C. Cat. 1. 6.*)

Surrentina vafer miscet<sup>4</sup> fæce Falerna vina. (*Hor. S. 2. 4. 55.*)

Sortes Fortunæ monitu pueri manu miscentur atque ducuntur. (*C. Div. 2. 41.*)

Tempus tribus partibus constat<sup>5</sup>, præterito, præsentī, venturo. (*Sen. Ep. 124. 7.*)

Facilius phalaras et torques, quicquid auro argentoque constaret, quam vallares ac murales coronas dabat. (*Suet. Aug. 25.*)

Sorte caret; usura nec ea solida contentus est. (*C. Att. 6. 1.*)

Fretus<sup>6</sup> intelligentia vestra brevius dissero. (*C. N. D. 1. 19.*)

Tabernacula carbaseis intenta velis collocabat. (*C. Verr. 5. 12.*)

Pænula inretitus, ræda impeditus, uxore pæne constrictus erat. (*C. Mil. 20.*)

Dedistine hoc facto ei gladium, qui se occideret? (*Pl. Trin. 129.*) 1218

Amicos neque armis cogere neque auro parare queas: officio et fide pariuntur. (*Sall. Jug. 10.*)

Lege Julia civitas est sociis et Latinis data. (*C. Balb. 8.*)

Verres pretio, non æquitate, jura discribat. (*C. Verr. 5. 11.*)

Discriptus populus censu ordinibus ætatibus plus adhibet ad suffragium consilii, quam fuse in tribus convocatus. (*C. Leg. 3. 19.*)

Prædibus et prædiis populo cautum est. (*C. Verr. 1. 55.*)

Hecato utilitate officium dirigit magis quam humanitate. (*C. Off. 3. 23.*)

Brevitate epistolæ scire poteris eum valde esse distentum. (*Balbus apud C. Att. 9. 13 A.*)

Hortatur ne Sidicinorum Campanorumque cladibus Samnitium æstimarent virtutem. (*L. 7. 32.*)

Non dubitavit vel in foro alea<sup>7</sup> ludere. (*C. Phil. 2. 23.*)

Epaminondas fidibus præclare cecinisse dicitur. (*C. T. D. 1. 2.*)

Discebant fidibus<sup>8</sup> antiqui. (*C. Sen. 8.*)

<sup>1</sup> implere, complere, replere, are also used occasionally with genitive of the thing supplied (§ 1334), e.g. 1215

Tu mihi omnes angulos furum implevisti in ædibus misero mihi.

(Pl. Aul. 543.)

Æstimationes tuas vendere non potes, neque ollam denariorum implere. (C. Fam. 9. 18.)

<sup>2</sup> i.e. 'Trained in' or 'by.' Adsuefacere, adsuetus, &c. are also used (Liv. Verg.) with dative (i.e. 'used to') without practical difference of meaning: e.g.

Operi aliisque justis militaribus juvenes assuefecit. (L. 24. 48.)

Ex more cui adsueverunt nihil in foro putant esse mutandum.

(Quint. 4. 2. 29.)

<sup>3</sup> Junctus, conjunctus, are also used with dative in like meaning: see § 1142. Compare

Nec insignis improbitas et scelere juncta ridetur. (C. Or. 2. 58.)

Oratorem dico sapientiam junctam habere eloquentiæ. (Ib. 3. 35.)

<sup>4</sup> Miscere is occasionally used with dative in like sense: e.g.

Vulnera supplevit lacrimis fletumque cruori miscet. (Ov. M. 4. 140.)

<sup>5</sup> With constare 'be composed of' Cicero always uses ex; e.g. 1217  
Homo ex animo constat et corpore caduco et infirmo. (N. D. 1. 35.)

With consistere, 'consist in' he uses in. Lucretius has frequently constare re, ex re; consistere re, ex re, once in re: Quintilian has constare re frequently, consistere in re frequently, also consistere re. With contineri 'be contained in,' 'lie in,' the simple ablative is the constant construction. It appears referable to § 1174.

<sup>6</sup> Fretus (lit. 'borne,' from fero? cf. § 692), once or twice in Livy has dative (on analogy of fisis), Multitudo hostium, nulli rei præterquam numero freta, temere prælium iniit. (L. 6. 13.)

<sup>7</sup> Claudius aleam studiosissime lusit. (Suet. Claud. 33.) So usually in Sueton.

<sup>8</sup> For a similar ellipse, compare poscunt majoribus poculis (sc. bibere, C. Verr. 1. 26). In vicarium docendum cures equo armisque (L. 29. 1), docere is probably 'train;' comp. erudire, § 1222; adsuefacta, § 1216.

The instrument as well as the agent after a passive verb is often made the subject to the active; 1219

e.g. A deo mundus regitur, or

Dei providentia mundus regitur,

becomes

Deus mundum regit, or

Dei providentia mundum regit, or

Deus providentia sua mundum regit.

Continued on p. 93.

Agros ereptos reipublicæ turpissimis possessoribus<sup>1</sup> inquinavit. (C. *Phil.* 2. 17.) 1220

Odio premitur omnium generum, maxime testibus cæditur. (C. *Q. Fr.* 3. 3.)

Jacent suis testibus. (C. *Mil.* 18.)

Ipse uno graditur comitatus Achate. (Verg. *A.* 1. 312.)

Marcello, quibus consul rem gesserat, legiones decretæ. (L. 27. 7.)

Coactus sum in eadem illa lectica, qua ipse delatus eram, meisque lecticariis in urbem eum referre. (Serv. ap. C. *Fam.* 4. 12.)

Hostem tormentis sagittariisque et funditoribus eminus terrebat. (Sall. *J.* 94.)

Fonteii miseriis ac periculis commovetur colonia. (C. *Font.* 20.) 1222

Quinque omnino Oppianicum, sive imprudentia sive misericordia sive aliqua suspitione adducti, absolverunt. (C. *Clu.* 28.)

Incensa odio pristino, servum in quæstionem postulavit. (Ib. 64.)

Lycurgi leges laboribus erudiunt juventutem, venando currendo esuriendo sitiendo algendo æstuando. (C. *Tusc.* 2. 14.)

Omnis loquendi elegantia augetur legendis oratoribus et poetis. (C. *Or.* 3. 10.)

Quid hoc homine<sup>2</sup> faciatis? (C. *Verr.* 1. 16.) 1224

Quæsit, si quid Cn. Pompeio factum esset, in quo spem essetis habituri. (C. *Man.* 20.)

Majoribus hostiis sacrificarunt. (L. 22. 1.)

Cum faciam vitula pro frugibus, ipse venito. (Verg. *B.* 3. 77.)

*The ablatives<sup>3</sup> after fungor, 'I busy myself (with),' utor, 'I employ myself (with),' fruor, 'I enjoy myself (with),' potior, 'I make myself powerful (with),' vescor, 'I feed myself (with),' nitor, 'I support myself (with),' usus, opus est, 'there is need of,' 'a work to be done with,' &c. are originally of this class.* 1226

L. Crassus magnificentissima ædilitate functus est<sup>4</sup>. (C. *Off.* 2. 16.)

Commoda quibus utimur<sup>5</sup>, lucemque qua fruimur<sup>6</sup>, spiritumque quem ducimus, a Jove nobis dari videmus. (C. *Rosc. A.* 45.)

Utor Pompeio familiarissime. (C. *Att.* 1. 17.)

Tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, intercluso commeatu, sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri<sup>7</sup>. (Cæsar. *G.* 3. 24.)

Lacte, caseo, carne vescor<sup>8</sup>. (C. *T. D.* 5. 32.)

Stetit soleatus prætor muliercula nixus in litore. (C. *Verr.* 5. 33.)

Filiam quis habet, pecunia est opus<sup>9</sup>; duas, majore; pluris, majore etiam. (C. *Par.* 6. 1.)

Ad eam rem usus est tua mi opera. (Plaut. *Pers.* 328.)

*Continued on p. 94.*

<sup>1</sup> *The person who is the real agent or doer is put in the ablative, 1221 but with ab. So also sometimes a personified thing or quality:*

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis. (Hor. S. 1. 2. 11.)

Torqueor infesto ne vir ab hoste cadat. (Ov. H. 9. 36.)

Non est autem consentaneum qui metu non frangatur eum frangi cupiditate, nec qui invictum se a labore præstiterit, vinci a voluptate. (C. Off. 1. 20.)

Piget dicere ut vobis animus ab ignavia atque socordia corruptus sit. (Sall. J. 31.)

Visus gemitus est ille dedisse stipes, ut invitis correptus ab ignibus arsit. Inscius atque absens flamma Meleagros ab illa uritur. (Ov. Met. 8. 513.)

<sup>2</sup> *This use with facere is common in Plautus, Terence, and Cicero. 1223 The dative is also used in like meaning: e.g.*

Quom sciverit nos aurum abusos, quid mihi fiet postea? (Pl. Bacc. 360.)

Quid huic tu homini facias? (C. Cæcin. 11.)

<sup>3</sup> *Of these verbs fungor, fruor, utor, potior in the præ-Ciceronian writers, vescor later also, have sometimes a direct object in the accusative. (For genitive after potior, see § 1334):*

<sup>4</sup> Sequere hac me, gnata, ut munus fungaris tuom. (Plaut. Trin. 1.)

Omnia perfunctus vitai præmia marces. (Lucr. 3. 956.)

So Quo religiosius senatoria munera fungerentur, sanxit ut, &c. (Suet. Aug. 35.)

<sup>5</sup> Tantam abusos sum rem patriam. (Pl. Trin. 682.)

Cætera, quæ volumus uti, Græca mercamur fide. (Pl. Asin. 199.)

Ea, quæ fructus cunque es, periere profusa. (Ib. 940.)

Hinc tu nisi malum frunisci nil potes. (Pl. Rud. 1012.)

<sup>7</sup> Ille alter sine labore patria potitur commoda. (Ter. Ad. 871.)

<sup>8</sup> Regnum adeptus cœpit vesci singulas (columbas). (Phædr. 3. 11.)

<sup>9</sup> *Opus is also used as secondary predicate, the thing needed 1225 being the subject: see also §§ 1256, 1257.*

Maritumi omnes milites opus sunt tibi. (Pl. Capt. 160.)

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. (C. Fam. 2. 6.)

*In Livy and later writers the thing needed is occasionally put in the genitive, both with opus and usus:*

Ad consilium pensandum temporis opus esse. (L. 22. 51.)

Si nosse, quid quisque senserit, volet, lectionis opus est.

(Quint. 12. 3. 8.)

Alii offerunt se, si quo usus operæ sit. (L. 26. 9.)



(c) <sup>1</sup>Efficient cause, ground, influence.

Nostri majores Conlatinum innocentem suspicione cognationis expulerunt. (C. R. P. 2. 31.)

Animi vitio id evenit. (C. Fin. 5. 12.)

Multi homines officia deserunt mollitia animi. (Ib. 1. 10.)

Quod benevolentia fit, id odio factum criminariis. (C. Rosc. Am. 15.)

Pæne ille timore ego risu conrui. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 8.)

Levitare armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri potest.

(Cæs. G. 5. 34.)

Exercitus nostri interitus ferro, fame, frigore, pestilentia.

(C. Pis. 17.)

Sunt autem privata nulla natura, sed aut vetere occupatione, aut victoria, aut lege, pactione, condicione, sorte. (C. Off. 1. 7.)

Civi Romano licet esse Gaditanum sive exilio, sive postliminio sive rejectione hujus civitatis. (C. Balb. 12.)

Tam longo spatio multa hereditatibus, multa emptionibus, multa dotibus tenebantur sine injuria. (C. Off. 2. 23.)

Gubernatoris ars utilitate, non arte, laudatur. (C. Fin. 1. 13.)

Censetur<sup>2</sup> Apona Livio suo tellus. (Mart. 1. 61. 3.)

(Quid)si fructibus et emolumentis et utilitatibus amicitias colemus?

(C. Fin. 2. 26.)

Non possum ei non amicus esse, neque solum tua commendatione sed etiam voluntate ac judicio meo. (C. Fam. 9. 24.)

Si armis aut condicione positis aut defatigatione abjectis aut victoria detractis civitas respiraverit, et dignitate tua frui tibi et fortunis licebit. (C. Fam. 6. 2.)

Ita Marius cupidine atque ira, pessumis consultoribus, grassari.

(Sall. J. 64.)

Mærore et lacrimis consenescebat. (C. Clu. 5.)

Fusi inde Romani, quæ imperio consulis noluerant, suo pavore ac terrore castra repetunt. (L. 34. 47.)

Decius torpidos somno insuper pavore exanimat. (L. 7. 36.)

Timidos insolentia itineris levabat manu. (Sall. J. 94.)

Jungimus hospitio<sup>3</sup> dextras. (Verg. A. 3. 83.)

Scipio affinitate Pompei confidebat<sup>4</sup>. (Cæs. G. 3. 83.)

Cn. Pompeius gratulans meo beneficio patriam se visurum esse dixit. (C. Phil. 2. 5.)

Qui fit, ut omnes sciant? (C. Fin. 2. 4.)

Neque eo nunc dico, quo quicquam illum senserim. (Ter. Haut. 554.)

Macte virtute, milites Romani, este. (L. 7. 36.)

*Continued on p. 96.*

<sup>1</sup> A cause is often expressed by the accusative with *ob* or *propter*; a cause of hindrance is often expressed by ablative with *præ*; e.g.

*Ob hoc omnia neglecta apud hostes erant.* (L. 25. 37, § 17.)

*Proficiscor magno equidem cum dolore, nec tam id propter me aut propter fratrem meum, quorum est jam acta ætas, quam propter pueros.* (C. Att. 10. 4, § 5.)

*Nec divini humanique juris quicquam præ impotenti ira est servatum.* (L. 31. 24.)

*In Livy the ablative is used with (as well as without) ab to denote the cause:*

*Ea tum cura maxime intentos habebat Romanos, non ab ira tantum... quam quod, &c.* (L. 26. 1.)

[Comp. *Miserabantur quod vir talis etiam præcipuum apud hostes supplicium passurus esset ob iram diremptæ pacis.* (L. 9. 8.)]

*For such expressions as adductus ira, &c. see § 1222.*

*For mea causa (gratia), Ciceronis causa, &c. see § 1244.*

<sup>2</sup> The ablative with *censeri* is an old usage. Cf. Gell. 16. 10. Qui nullo aut perquam parvo ære censebantur 'capite censi' vocabantur. The ablative indicated the amount of property at which each citizen was assessed in the censors' books, and may belong to § 1196 or to § 1210. But the metaphorical use seems best referred to this head of cause or ground.

Something similar appears to be the occasional use of *scelere* and *repetundis* with *damnari*, &c. e.g. *quo scelere damnatus* (C. Phil. 13. 27); *scelere convictos* (Suet. Ner. 3). Cf. also *Lucr. 4. 1183* and *Munro's note*.

<sup>3</sup> *So quam petitis, juncta est mihi fœdere dextra.* (Verg. A. 8. 169.)

<sup>4</sup> *Fidere, confidere* are used alike with *abl.* ('have confidence on account of,' i.e. 'trust in'), except of personal pronoun; and *dat.* 'trust to:' *diffidere* almost always with *dative*.

*Non existimant oportere nimium nos causæ confidere.* (C. Fin. 1. 9.)

*Dolabella nulla alia confisus urbe, Laodiceam se contulit.*

(C. Fam. 12. 14.)

*Qui sibi fidit dux regit examen.* (Hor. Ep. 1. 19. 22.)

*Continued on p. 97.*

5. Description, manner, circumstances: *usually with* <sup>12</sup> *noun, participle, or genitive case*<sup>1</sup>, *as oblique predicate.* (Comp. § 1208.)

(a) Description<sup>2</sup>, or characteristic quality; *qualifying* <sup>12</sup> *the verb esse or substantives.* (Comp. § 1151.)

Qua facie fuit? Rufus quidam, ventriosus, crassis suris, subniger, magno capite, acutis oculis, ore rubicundo, admodum magnis pedibus<sup>3</sup>. (Pl. *Ps.* 1218.)

Ibes sunt aves excelsæ, cruribus rigidis, corneo proceroque rostro. (C. *N. D.* 1. 36.)

Agasilus statura<sup>4</sup> fuit humili et corpore exiguo et claudus altero pede. (Nep. *Ag.* 8.)

Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque præruptis. (Cæs. *G.* 6. 7.)

Apollonius adfirmabat se omnino nomine<sup>5</sup> illo servum habere neminem. (C. *Verr.* 5. 7.)

Capua litteræ sunt allatæ hoc exemplo. (C. *Att.* 9. 6, § 3.)

Quo genere in primis sensus et membra videmus. (Lucr. 4. 855.)

Accepi tuam epistolam vacillantibus litterulis, nec mirum tam gravi morbo. (C. *Fam.* 16. 15.)

Jubebat secum ipsos cogitare pictam in tabula Voluptatem, pulcherrimo vestitu et ornatu regali, in solio sedentem. (C. *Fin.* 2. 21.)

X. viri maxima potestate<sup>6</sup> sine provocatione creati sunt. (C. *R. P.* 2. 36.)

Sunt solida primordia simplicitate. (Lucr. 2. 157.)

Quamobrem fac animo<sup>7</sup> magno fortique sis. (C. *Fam.* 6. 14.)

Velut ignorantem monet eum, quo statu sit res. (L. 22. 22.)

L. Catilina nobili genere natus, fuit magna vi et animi et corporis sed ingenio malo pravoque. (Sall. *C.* 5.)

Sulpicius fortissimo quodam animi impetu, plenissima et maxima voce, summa contentione corporis et dignitate motus, verborum quoque ea gravitate et copia est, ut unus ad dicendum instructissimus a natura esse videatur. (C. *Or.* 3. 8.)

Iccius Remus summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos. (Cæs. *G.* 2. 6.)

*Continued on p. 98.*

<sup>1</sup> The genitive is usually a subjective genitive § 1278, never probably an objective genitive.

<sup>2</sup> This ablative is closely related to the ablatives of 'circumstance' <sup>1231</sup> and 'manner,' but it has also a connexion with that of 'part concerned' (§ 1210). Compare for 'part concerned.'

Cupressus satu morosa, fructu supervacua, baxis torva, folio amara, odore violenta, et ne umbra quidem gratiosa, materie rara, ut pæne fruticosi generis, Diti sacra et ideo funebri signo ad domus posita. (Plin. 16, § 139.)

On the difference between this ablative and the genitive of quality <sup>1233</sup> see § 1309.

<sup>3</sup> Compare *Belua multorum es caput*. (Hor. Ep. 1. 1. 76.)

*Ingenui vultus puer ingenuique pudoris*. (Juv. 11. 154.)

<sup>4</sup> (Rogabant) quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus, præsertim homines tantulæ staturæ, tanti oneris turrim moturos sese confiderent. (Cæs. G. 2. 30.)

<sup>5</sup> Occulte per homines nominis Latini et socios Italicos impedimenta parabant. (Sall. J. 40, where nom. Lat. is a class; cf. § 1309.)

<sup>6</sup> *Erit tum consul Hortensius cum summo imperio et potestate, ego autem ædilis*. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 13.)

<sup>7</sup> *Di bene fecerunt inopis me quodque pusilli finxerunt animi*. (Hor. S. 1. 4. 17.)

Both ablative and genitive are found in the following:

P. Murena mediocri ingenio sed magno studio rerum veterum, litterarum et studiosus et non imperitus, multæ industriæ et magni laboris fuit. (C. Brut. 67.)

Neque monere te audeo præstanti prudentia virum, nec confirmare maximi animi hominem unumque fortissimum. (C. Fam. 4. 8.)

(b) *Way or manner*<sup>1</sup>: usually with adjectival predicate, except in certain words and occasional expressions.

(1) *With adjectival predicate*<sup>2</sup>.

Deos pura, integra, incorrupta, et mente et voce venerari debemus.  
(C. N. D. 2. 28.)

Primo, si placet, Stoicorum more agamus, deinde nostro instituto vagabimur. (C. T. D. 3. 6.)

X viri x tabulas summa æquitate prudentiaque conscripserunt.  
(C. R. P. 2. 36.)

Hæc duo Græculi uno nomine appellant. (C. T. D. 2. 15.)

Marius quadrato agmine incedit. (Sall. J. 100.)

Ingenti classe, egregio terrestri exercitu, in Europam Antiochus trajecit. (L. 33. 44.)

His viginti cohortibus, nullo equitatu Hirtius cum tribus Antonii legionibus equitatuque conflixit. (C. Phil. 14. 10.)

Hanc igitur partem relictam explebimus nullis adminiculis, sed, ut dicitur, marte nostro. (C. Off. 3. 7.)

Polliceor hoc vobis Quirites, bona fide. (C. Agr. 2. 37.)

Omnibus me ludificatur hic modis. (Pl. Merc. 919.)

Optumis verbis causam explicat. (C. Div. 2. 26.)

(2) *Without adjectival predicate*<sup>3</sup>: mostly either words which may be regarded loosely as instruments or causes, or in certain old phrases. Frequently several such ablatives are used together.

Quod domi te inclusisti, ratione fecisti. (C. Att. 12. 44.)

Ait Aristoteles antea neminem solitum via nec arte, sed adcurate tamen et de scripto plerosque dicere. (C. Brut. 12.)

Cæsar ad opus consuetudine excubabat. (Cæs. G. 7. 24.)

Quid si fraude, si casu Veis incendium ortum sit? (L. 5. 54.)

Prætor quemadmodum more et exemplo opitulari possit, non habebit? (C. Cæc. 13.)

Tu isti narra omne ordine ut factum siet. (Ter. Eun. 970.)

Si quis testamento se heredem esse arbitraretur, quod tum non exstaret, lege ageret in hereditatem. (C. Verr. 1. 45.)

Agebat auctoritate, agebat consilio, agebat per summum ordinem, agebat exemplo bonorum et fortium civium. (C. Sest. 40.)

Ambiorix copias suas judicione non conduxerit, an tempore exclusus, dubium est. (Cæs. G. 6. 31.)

Nox apud barbaros cantu aut clamore, nostris per iram et minas acta. (Tac. H. 5. 15.)

*Continued on p. 100.*



<sup>1</sup> The preposition *cum* is often used in expressions which come under <sup>1235</sup> the general notion of manner or accompaniment:

1. It must be used to denote (a) the presence of a weapon, &c., e. g. *cum gladio* or *cum magno gladio comprehensus est*;

(b) The presence of a disease or mental quality or armed force, &c. unless an attribute be added, e. g. *cum febri redire domum*, *cum virtute vivere*, *cum cura exponere*, *cum legione venire* (but *dimicare equitatu*, &c. as an instrument);

2. And it may be used even if an attribute is added, e. g. *cum magno studio aliquem adjuvare*, *cum omni equitatu aggredi*.

3. It is not used (a) with substantives which of themselves denote a way or manner, e. g. *more*, *modo*;

Or (b) with expressions of temper or purpose, e. g. *hac mente feci*, *aequo animo fero*;

Or (c) to denote a condition, e. g. *ea lege*, *his conditionibus*;

Or (d) of parts of the body, e. g. *nudo capite*, *promisso capillo incedere*. (Madvig *Lat. Gr.* § 258, *Anm.* 1—5.)

<sup>2</sup> So in the following phrases (besides those in § 1234); *aequo* <sup>1237</sup> *animo* (often); *dolo malo* (Ter. *Eun.* 515; &c.) opposed to *bona fide*; *conceptis verbis* 'in set terms' (Pl. *Ps.* 1056); *dedita opera* (L. 2. 9; &c.) 'of set purpose'; *eādem operā* or *eādem only* (Plaut. *Most.* 1039, *Mil.* 303; &c.) 'at the same time' cf. § 1076; *una opera*, 'just as well' (Pl. *Most.* 249; &c.); *magno, summo, tanto, quanto opere*; *summo jure* (C. *Verr.* 5. 2), 'claiming one's full rights'; *meo jure*, 'of my own right'; and others. Compare also *paucis te volo* (Ter. *Andr.* 29); *sed nolo pluribus* (L. 34. 32); *rogando alternis suadendoque* (L. 2. 2).

<sup>3</sup> Besides the words of which instances are quoted may be mentioned: <sup>1239</sup> *acie* (L. 5. 28; &c.), *agmine* (L. 23. 26; &c.), *artificio* (C. *Inv.* 1. 14), *astu* (T. *And.* 208), *clamore* (Liv.), *consensu* (L. 3. 38; &c.), *condicionibus* (L. 9. 15; &c.), *contumacia* (L. 9. 46), *convivio* (Tac. *A.* 13. 29), *cura et cogitatione* (C. *Inv.* 1. 14), *discursu* (L. 23. 16), *dolo* (Sall. *J.* 113; &c.), *equis virisque* (C. *Off.* 3. 33), *fando* (audire, &c. 'hear tell' Pl. *Amph.* 588; C. *N. D.* 1. 29; &c.), *forte* (often), *gratiis* (cf. § 546), *injuria* (C. *Lig.* 9; &c.), *interdicto* (C. *Or.* 1. 10), *joco seriove* (L. 7. 41; &c.), *joculo* (Pl. *Amph.* 964; &c.), *judicio pati*, 'be defendant in a suit' (C. *Verr.* 2. 24; 3. 28), *jure* (C. *Verr.* 1. 42, and often), *libidine* (C. *Quint.* 4), *modo* (see in § 1172), *moribus* ('by custom, in customary fashion,' Ter. *Haut.* 839, C. *Sest.* 41), *nexu* (C. *Top.* 5; &c.), *numero versuque* (C. *Div.* 2. 57), *occidione* (occidere, Liv. cf. § 1097), *rivis* (Verg. *A.* 5. 200), *sponte* (Ov., Tac.), *statu liber* (probably 'free by appointment,' cf. Ulp. *Fragm.* 2, § 1, 4), *strepitu* (Sall. *J.* 53), *voluntate* (C. *Off.* 1. 9; L. 29, 38; &c.). Here also belong the adverbs *rite*, *vulgo*; *qui*, 'how,' *nequiquam*, *ingratis*, *incultu* (Tac. *A.* 4. 46), *injussu* (also *injussu meo*, &c.).

In many such expressions *per* with the accusative is used:

*Multa dolo, pleraque per vim, audebantur.* (L. 39. 8.)

*Ea ex fanis per scelus et latrocinium abstulisti.* (C. *Verr.* 1. 21.)

*Auferetur, quod promisi per jocum, a me præmium?* (Pl. *Ps.* 1224.)

Continued on, p. 101.

- Summa ope niti decet, ne vitam silentio<sup>1</sup> transeamus veluti pecora.  
(Sall. G. 1.)
- Curriculo jube in urbem veniat jam semul tecum. (Pl. Most. 930.)
- Omne equitatum et cum eis velocissimos pedites cursu tendere ad Capsam jubet. (Sall. J. 91.)
- Majore cum fiducia ad alteram turrin aggeremque eruptione pugnauerunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 14.)
- Civilis haud porrecto agmine sed cuneis adstitit. (Tac. H. 5. 16.)
- Ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus<sup>2</sup> præliantur. (Cæs. G. 4. 33.)
- Cæsar hæc de Vercingetorige usu<sup>3</sup> ventura opinione præceperat.  
(Cæs. G. 7. 9.)
- Docet ita se possedisse, ut nec vi nec clam nec precario possederit.  
(C. Cæs. 32.)
- Vitaque mancipio<sup>4</sup> nulli datur, omnibus usu. (Lucr. 3. 971.)
- Metu ceteri sacramento<sup>5</sup> dixere. (L. 4. 53.)
- Scripti etiam versibus tris libros de temporibus meis.  
(C. Fam. 1. 9, § 23.)
- Recordatus est vitio sibi tabernaculum captum fuisse, itaque vitio creatos consules esse. (C. N. D. 2. 4.)
- Ibi miscendo consilium precesque, nunc orabant, nunc monebant, &c. (L. 2. 9.)

(c) Attendant circumstances under which an action takes place, or an assertion is made: (commonly called, at least in some of these uses, 'ablative absolute').

*This ablative may often be translated into English by when, if, although, &c. with finite verb. It is indeed, especially when the oblique predicate is a participle, equivalent to an adverbial sentence.*

(1) With noun (adjective or genitive case) as predicate<sup>6</sup>.

- Æstu magno ducebat agmen. (C. T. D. 2. 15.)
- Inde, austro lenissimo, cælo sereno, nocte illa ac die postero in Italiam ad Hydruntem ludibundi pervenimus. (C. Fam. 16. 9.)
- Quid hoc populo optineri potest? (C. Leg. 3. 16.)
- Neque ad mare admovit urbem, quod ei fuit illa manu copiisque facillimum. (C. R. P. 2. 3.)
- Nulla est altercatio clamoribus umquam habita majoribus.  
(C. Brut. 44.)
- Tabulas in foro summa hominum frequentia exscribo.  
(C. Verr. 2. 77.)
- Hoc videmur esse consecuti, ut ne quid agi cum populo aut salvis auspiciis aut salvis legibus aut denique sine vi posset.  
(C. Fam. 1. 2.)

*Continued on p. 102.*

<sup>1</sup> *Frequent in Livy, &c.; but also cum silentio, Ter. Eun. 44; L. 7. 12, 35, § 1; &c.: auditus est magno silentio (C. Q. F. 2. 1).*

<sup>2</sup> *So iter pedibus conficitur (C. Vat. 5), metiri pedibus 'by stepping,' (C. Q. F. 3. 1, 2), and other expressions; esp. the phrase for voting on a division in the senate, pedibus ire in eam or ejus sententiam, e.g. L. 5. 9. Similarly manibus ingredi (C. Fin. 5. 12); quadrigis urbem inire (L. 28. 9) and duo muntii adlati sunt: unus, classe fratrem Epheso Athenas, alter, pedibus per Macedoniam venire (C. Att. 3. 8).*

<sup>3</sup> *usu venire (lit. 'come in practice,') 'happen,' turn out;' a common phrase; e.g. Corn. 2. 5; C. Verr. 5. 39; Or. 1. 40; Off. 3. 3; &c.*

<sup>4</sup> *Mancipium is, (1) literally, taking by hand, and hence formal acquisition of a physical object, which is equivalent on the side of the purchaser to formal delivery on the side of the vendor. The 'deed of feoffment' (lex mancipii) accompanying this 'livery of seisin,' contained a covenant for quiet enjoyment, and others. (Cf. C. Mur. 2.) It is (2) the thing so transferred; (3) the right over a thing resulting from the transference. Böcking (Pandekten, § 46, Vol. I. p. 178) takes mancipio dare (accipere) as an indirect object in this last sense, 'gives (receives) to ownership.' With this may be compared *fanori dare*, and probably *noxæ dedere* (§ 1163). Mancipio might be taken in the second sense, as a predicative dative 'give as a piece of property;' comp. *dono dare*, &c. (§ 1162). But this sense of mancipium is rare, except as another name for a slave (mancipium = a chattel). It seems best to take it in the first sense, 'to give by way of formal seizure,' and compare it with *testamento dare*, *usu capere*, and *nexu* in Cic. *Top. 5*, *abalienatio ejus rei quæ mancipi est aut traditio alteri nexu aut ex jure cessio*. This is the oldest sense of mancipium, as in the XII Tables: *Cum nexum faciet mancipiumque, uti lingua nuncupasset ita jus esto*. (Fest. p. 178, ed. Müller.) And it is so used in the common phrases *lex mancipii* (see above), *res mancipi*, 'a thing of handtake,' i.e. a thing which requires solemn delivery to pass the property; the later law used *mancipatio* in this sense. The third meaning, viz. the right thus acquired, = the freehold, is probably the meaning in C. *Fam. 7. 29*, where Curius writes to Cicero, *sum enim χρισται μέν tuus, κρησται δέ Attici nostri*; ergo fructus est tuus, mancipium illius. To which Cicero replies (ib. 30) *Attici quoniam proprium te esse scribis mancipio et nexu, meum autem usu et fructu, contentus isto sum*, where the ablatives appear referable to § 1210 part concerned.*

*Usu* in Luer. l.c. is probably like mancipio, but it may be dative.

<sup>5</sup> *'To declare by way of pledge,' hence 'to take the military oath;' frequent in Livy; (sacramentum dicere, Cæs. C. 1. 23. 86); also sacramento rogare, of the general putting the oath (L. 49. 26; &c., Cæs. G. 6. 1); adigere (L. 4. 5; &c.), cf. § 1119.*

<sup>6</sup> *Other phrases besides those in §§ 1244, 1246, are e.g. bono publico, 'to the public weal,' bono reipublicæ suoque (L. 28. 41; 29. 27; &c.); pessimo publico (Varr. R. R. 1. 13, § 7; L. 2. 1); bona venia, 'by good leave' (Ter. Ph. 378; O. Or. 1. 57; &c., also bona cum venia); fide tua, 'on your credit,' or 'responsibility;' (hence fide jubere, jussor, promittere, promissor, 'a surety,' cf. Gai. 3, §§ 92, 116); fide publica dicere, 'to speak on the state's guarantying his safety,' (Sall. C. 46; &c.); &c.*

*Continued on p. 103.*

Helico nequissimus HS CIO dabat, nullo aprico horto, nullo emissario, nulla maceria, nulla casa. (C. *Fam.* 16. 18.)

Bellum vobis indictum est, magno illorum malo, qui indixere, si viri estis. (L. 2. 38.)

Tuo periculo jubeo libros dari Varroni. (C. *Att.* 13. 25.)

Plane illuc te ire, nisi tuo magno commodo, nolo. (Ib. 13. 27.)

Quod maxime est utile, id nescio quo pacto etiam decet maxime. (C. *Or.* 3. 60.)

Hæc nostra vestraque causa dixi. (L. 1. 37.)

Quin ea ego huc præcucurri gratia, ne te opprimeret imprudentem. (Pl. *Merc.* 223.)

Rescripsit se coronam habuisse honoris Cæsaris causa, posuisse luctus gratia. (C. *Att.* 14. 19.)

Me nomine negligentiae suspectum tibi esse doleo. (C. *Fam.* 2. 1.)

Nicias a Dolabella magno opere arcessitus, etsi invito me, tamen eodem me auctore profectus est. (Ib. 13. 28.)

Nunc mittendum est, ut meo jussu cernat. (Ib. 13. 46.)

Vetat Pythagoras injussu imperatoris, id est dei, de præsidio et statione vitæ decedere. (C. *Sen.* 20.)

Sequanis voluntate Ariovisti reddere obsides licebat. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 35.)

Supplicatio fuit ob res prospere gestas in Hispania ductu auspicioque Ap. Claudii proconsulis. (L. 41. 28.)

Nil desperandum Teucro duce et auspice Teucro. (Hor. *Od.* 1. 7. 27.)

Nec vester æqualis Curio, patre mea sententia vel eloquentissimo temporibus illis, quemquam mihi magnopere videtur imitari. (C. *Or.* 2. 23.)

Judice te non sordidus auctor naturæ verique. (Hor. *Od.* 1. 28. 14.)

Di te deæque ament vel hujus arbitrato vel meo. (Pl. *Pseud.* 271.)

Is mille nummum se aureum, meo datu, tibi ferre aibat. (Pl. *Trin.* 1140.)

P. Clodium meo consilio interfectum esse dixisti. (C. *Phil.* 2. 9.)

Bruti judicium, pace tua dixerim, longe antepono tuo. (C. *T. D.* 5. 5.)

Oratorum aut interitu aut discessu aut fuga, primas in causis agebat Hortensius. (C. *Brut.* 90.)

Hannibal xv ferme milium spatium<sup>1</sup> castra ab Tarento posuit. (L. 25. 9.)

Crasso L. Philippus proximus accedebat sed longo intervallo tamen proximus. (C. *Brut.* 47.)

*Continued on p. 104.*

The subject or object direct or indirect of the finite verb is rarely ~~not~~ also put in the ablative as subject to an adjectival predicate.

*Marinus casum Gallum torque spoliaris*; not *Marinus casu Gallo torque eum spoliaris*; still less *Marinus Gallum, casu et, torque spol.*

Occasionally however such an ablative clause is made, in order to give it greater distinctness or preserve more clearly the historical order; e.g.

*Vercingetorix, convocatis suis clientibus, facile incendit* (sc. eos).

(Cæs. G. 7. 4.)

*Nemo eris qui credas te invito provinciam tibi esse decessam* [for *invito tibi prov. esse decess.*]. (C. Pomp. 11. 14.)

Such an ablative is often found when the person who is the subject is also expressed in the genitive case:

*Jugurtha fratre meo atque eodem propinquo suo interfecto, primam remam eius sceleris sui proclam fecit, post me...cessorem paravit efficit.* (Sall. J. 14. § 11.)

*M. Papius (Cato) viro proque eo Africano illustrare magnitudinem ejus solitus erat.* (L. 38. 34.)

In such sentences as the following the sense requires, or at least is assisted by, the distinctness of the ablative clause:

*Non potes effugere hujus vulgus penam te patrone: Marcus est adhibendus.* (C. Plin. 14. 26.)

*Me luce, ad hanc totam diem, me milia, veri.* (Cv. J. n. 2. 12. 13.)

*Acerbum est tui: quanto acerbior, si id te faciente patiaris!*

(Sen. Ep. 24. 5.)

*Dictatore habente comitia Cæsare, consules creantur Julius Cæsar et P. Servilius.* (Cæs. G. 3. 1.)

*Profecto in sedis meas me absente neminem voto innotuit.*

(Pl. Inv. 96.)

*Hic castas luce se jubet esse maritus.* (Cv. F. 2. 139.)

*Seque arma tenens ac novum struxit Magonem visisse narravit.*

(Liv. 4. 141.)

*Antiphonte neminem unquam melius ullam gravasse rapinis massam, cum se ipse defenderet se audiente, loquaces auctor scriptis Thucydides.* (L. Erat. 12.)

*Is se presente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat.* (Cæs. F. 1. 53.)

*Laudator temporis acti se puero.* (Hor. A. P. 173.)

<sup>1</sup> Similarly divergentia with genitive, 'in many places in the state of the road'; e.g. *Tepala concepitur, via Lavina, ad i. miliarium*, divergentia evadens ibi Lavina leuocresus milium passuras Lavina. *Evadens*, *Apuia*, 3, and often. So *cursu diei totius abbas*, 'a day's journey off.' (Mel. 2. 104.)



(2) *With participle as predicate:*

Senatus haberi mense Februario toto non potest, nisi perfectis aut rejectis legationibus<sup>1</sup>. (C. Fam. 1. 4.)

Testis productus, qui, septem et viginti enumeratis stipendiis, scissa veste, tergum laceratum virgis ostendit<sup>2</sup>. (L. 3. 38.)

Hæc dicente consule<sup>3</sup>, equites circumfunduntur. (L. 10. 36.)

Germani post tergum clamore audito<sup>4</sup>, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris ejece-  
runt, et cum ad confluentem Mosæ et Rheni pervenissent,  
relicua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, relicui se in  
flumen præcipitaverunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 15.)

Verres, quasi præda sibi advecta<sup>5</sup>, non prædonibus captis, siqui  
senes ac deformes erant, eos in hostium numero ducit; qui  
aliquid formæ, ætatis, artificique habebant, abducit omnes.  
(C. Verr. 5. 25.)

Antiochus Ephesi securus admodum de bello Romano erat, tanquam  
non transituris in Asiam Romanis<sup>6</sup>. (L. 36. 41.)

Quis est enim, qui nullis officii præceptis tradendis<sup>7</sup> philosophum  
se audeat dicere? (C. Off. 1. 2.)

Accusandis Camillus dis hominibusque senescebat, indignando mi-  
randoque<sup>8</sup>, ubi illi viri essent, qui, &c. (L. 5. 43.)

*So also with opus and usus:*

Opus fuit Hirtio convento<sup>9</sup>. (C. Att. 10. 4.)

Ibo domum ut parentur, quibus paratis opus est<sup>10</sup>. (Pl. Men. 953.)

Obsecro, quid istis (litteris) ad istunc usust conscriptis modum<sup>11</sup>.  
(Pl. Bacc. 749.)

*The perfect participle sometimes and occasionally other adjectives  
have a sentence for subject*<sup>12</sup>.

Consul, statione equitum ad portam posita, edicto ut, quicun-  
que ad vallum tenderet, pro hoste haberetur, fugientibus ob-  
stitit. (L. 10. 36.)

Hæc tibi dictabam, excepto quod non simul esses, cetera lætus.  
(Hor. Ep. 1. 10. 50.)

Perfecto enim et concluso neque virtutibus neque amicitiiis usquam  
locum esse, si ad voluptatem omnia referantur, nihil præterea  
est magno opere dicendum. (C. Fin. 2. 27.)

Inde ad Pluinnam est progressus, nondum comperto quam regionem  
hostes petissent. (L. 31. 39.)

*Continued on p. 106.*

These ablative clauses may easily be turned into subordinate, or sometimes into coordinate sentences:

<sup>1</sup> Nisi perfectæ sint aut rejectæ legationes.

<sup>2</sup> Cum septem et viginti enumerasset stipendia = se, qui septem et viginti meruisset stipendia, tamen verberatum esse dixit.

<sup>3</sup> Dum hæc dicit consul.

<sup>4</sup> Cum clamor post sanguinem auditus esset, suos interdum viderent, arma abiecerunt, signa militaria reliquerunt, se ex castris eiecerunt, et cum ad cond. M. et R. pervenissent, relictam fugam desperaverunt et cum magnus numerus interfectus esset, reliqui se in ducem precipitaverunt.

<sup>5</sup> Quasi præda sibi advecta esset, non prædones capti.

<sup>6</sup> Tanquam si Romani in Asiam non transituri essent.

<sup>7</sup> Tametsi nulla officii præcepta tradat.

<sup>8</sup> Dum indignabatur, mirabaturque.

<sup>9</sup> Oportuit Hirtius conveniretur (Hirtium conveniri).

<sup>10</sup> Quæ parari oportet.

<sup>11</sup> Quid prodest istas ad istum modum scribere,  
Or quid prosum istæ...scriptæ.

See also §§ 1225, 1226, 1253—1256.

An *ad idem* had the singular *absente*, *præsente*, with a plural *rege substantivæ*. It is mentioned by Ninius (pp. 76, 154), but of extant writers only Terence uses it (*incep*).

Quidam apud forum præsente testibus mihi vendidit.

(Pompon. ap. Non. p. 154.)

Nescio quid profecto absente nobis turbatumst Romæ. (Ter. Eun. 649.)

<sup>12</sup> This usage is found frequently in Livy, Tacitus, and Curtius; twice in Cicero (*Off.* 2, 12, *Fin.* 5. c., but cf. also *Inv.* 2, 19 fin.); never in Caesar, Sallust, or Nepos. (Gossrau, *Lat. Gr.* § 451.)

Nuntiatum Claudio epulanti perisse Messalinam, non distincto sua an aliena manu. (Tac. *A.* 11. 38.)

Senatus majorum beneficia introspectit, libero, ut quondam, quid firmaret mutaretve. (Tac. *A.* 3. 60.)

*Sometimes the perfect participle stands alone<sup>1</sup>; and this adverbial use is frequent in many adjectives:*

Tribuni militum non loco castris ante capto, non præmunito vallo, nec auspicato nec litato, instruunt aciem. (L. 5. 38.)

Eos sortito in provincias mitti placet. (S. C. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 8. 8.)

Alter alterum nec opinato videbamus. (C. *Fin.* 3. 2.)

Vix tandem magnis Ithaci clamoribus actus composito rumpit vocem. (Verg. *A.* 12. 129.)

Sederunt in tribunali P. Scipionis; lictor apparuit; summoto inceserunt; fasces cum securibus prælati sunt. (L. 28. 27.)

Nec diu certato Tungrorum cohors signa ad civilem transtulit. (Tac. *H.* 4. 16.)

Multum in vicem disceptato, Monobazus testis iis quæ pepigissent adhibetur. (Tac. *A.* 15. 14.)

Quam nihil festinato nihil præparato fecisse videtur Milo. (Quint. 4. 2, § 85.)

Tranquillo, ut aiunt, quilibet gubernator est. (Sen. *Ep.* 95, § 34.)

*So also with opus, and (rarely) usus.*

Erat nihil cur properato opus esset. (C. *Mil.* 19.)

Nam priusquam incipias, consulto, et ubi consulueris, mature facto opus est. (Sall. *G.* 1.)

Dubitabat quid facto<sup>2</sup> opus esset. (Ib. 46.)

Citius quod non factost usus fit, quam quod factost opus. (Pl. *Amph.* 505.)

In arcem transcurso opus est. (Ter. *Hec.* 431.)

6. *With the following prepositions the ablative is used in senses which fall under the general type of place where.*

Coram, cum, in, palam, præ, pro, sub, subter, super; also simul, tenus.

*See the Appendix.*

*Continued on p. 108.*

<sup>1</sup> This usage passes imperceptibly into a purely adverbial use (cf. § 1253 1239). Thus we have besides the words in the passages quoted: augurato, inaugurato, consulto (Sall. J. 64), inconsulto, explorato, (ante explorato, L. 23, 42), inexplorato, fenerato (Plaut.), intestato, improviso, optato, peroptato, palamfacto (L. 22. 55), permisso (L. 45, 5), tripertito, &c. Also the less distinctively participial words: certo, cito, haud dubio (L. 28, 7), falso, merito, immerito, manifestus, secreto, subito, tuto; and the adjectival, continuo, assiduo, fortuito, gratuito, necessario, liquido, vero, &c. (§ 511). (Satisdato, C. Att. 16. 6. 3, belongs to § 1250.)

<sup>2</sup> The ordinary usage with *opus* is either *c.g.* (I. a) *opus est gladius*; 1255 or (II. a) *opus est gladio* (instances in §§ 1225, 1226). If the thing needed is an action, either the infinitive or past participle is used. The infinitive corresponds to usage I. a, the participle to usage II. a; both may be either with a subject (b), or without a subject (c). The supine in -u is also very rarely found (II. cc).

I. b. Si quid erit, quod te scire opus sit, scribam. (C. Q. F. 2. 9 (11).

Themistocles dixit id sciri non opus esse. (C. Off. 3. 11.)

I. c. Quid opus erat de Dionysio tam valde affirmare? (C. Att. 7. 8.)

Quid opus est in hoc philosophari? (C. T. D. 1. 37.)

II. b. Opusne tibi hac tibi emptā? Dor. Si tibi vānissem opus (I. c), mihi quoque emptast. (Pl. Pers. 584.) Cf. § 1250.

c. Visost opus, cautost opus. (Pl. Capt. 222.) See also § 1256.

cc. Sed ita dictu opus est. (Ter. Haut. 941.) So Pl. Cist. 1. 1. 113. In C. Inv. 1. 20 the latest editors omit scitu. Any other example?

Quid is frequently found with I.; and with II. a (e.g. Quid opust gladio?) being accusative of extent (§ 1094). It is also found with II. c, the two phrases *quid opust* and *opust facto* being combined on the analogy of *quid opust gladio* into *quid opust facto*, equivalent in meaning to *quid opust fieri*. Possibly there may have been a desire to avoid the ambiguity of *quo* (masc.? neut.? adverb?). It is hardly likely that the phrase is a relic of the time when *quid* was a form of the ablative.

Quid opust facto? is common in Plautus and Terence: it is also in Cato ap. Gell. 6 (7), 3 § 14; Lucr. 5. 1053; Sall. C. 46; L. 3. 38; 4. 27; 44. 33; Nep. Eum. 9. So quid tibi quæsitost opus? (Pl. Men. 915). Also quod opust facto, facito ut cogites, Merc. 565; si quid opus facto esset (Cæs. G. 1. 42). Similarly Pl. Amph. 505, Stich. 61, Casin. 3. 3. 24, and quod parato opus est para (Ter. Andr. 523): plus minus, quam opus fuerat dicto, dixeram (Pl. Men. 592). In Cato, R. R. 2, quæ opus sient locato locentur is strange. In Ter. Ad. 740, si illud quod maxime opus est jactu non cadit, the abl. jactu may belong to cadit.

With *usus* we have (besides Pl. Amph. 505; Stich. 57) quod facto usus est, Ter. Ad. 429, Hec. 878, and quod tacito usus est (Pl. Cist. 1. 2. 10); and an anomalous combination in Ter. Hec. 327, Non usus factost mihi nunc hunc intro sequi.

Continued on p. 109.

(C) PLACE WHENCE. (*ABLATIVE*.) See § 1164.

1. Place from which movement is made.

*Without a preposition*<sup>1</sup>. In prose this is chiefly confined to the names of towns; smaller islands; domo, rure, humo.

Damaratus fugit Tarquinius Corintho. (C. T. D. 5. 37.)

Omnis hæc classis Alexandria<sup>2</sup>, Colchis, Tyro, Sidone, Arado, Cyprio, Pamphylia, Lycia, Rhodo, Chio, Byzantio, Lesbo, Zmyrna, Mileto, Coo ad intercludendos commeatus Italiæ comparatur.  
(C. Att. 9. 9.)

Populus Numam ad regnandum Romam Curibus accivit.  
(C. R. P. 2. 13.)

Ecquam tu advexti tuæ matri ancillam Rhodo. (Pl. Merc. 390.)

Simulacrum Cereris unum e sacrario Catina convellendum auferendumque curavit, alterum autem Henna ex sua sede ac domo sustulit. (C. Verr. 5. 72.)

Qui verò Narbone reditus! (C. Phil. 2. 30.)

Senex heri ea causa rure huc advenit. (Ter. Hec. 190.)

Canusio XIII. Kal. profectus erat Gnæus; hæc autem scribebam pridie Nonas, XIII. die post quam ille Canusio moverat.  
(C. Att. 9. 1.)

Triennio post Ægypto<sup>3</sup> advenio domum. (Pl. Most. 440.)

Interim Drusus rediens Illyrico urbem intravit. (Tac. A. 3. 11.)

Quo tenditis? inquit, Qui genus? unde domo? (Verg. A. 8. 114.)

Hi igitur his majoribus ab alienis potius consilium peterent quam a suis, et foris<sup>4</sup> potius quam domo? (C. Phil. 2. 11.)

Quæcumque foris veniunt inpostaque nobis pondera sunt, lædunt.  
(Lucr. 5. 543.)

Crebri cecidere cælo<sup>5</sup> lapides. (L. 1. 31.)

Eas litteras scribis Lentuli pueris et Equotutico et Brundisio datas<sup>6</sup>.  
(C. Att. 6. 1.)

Nos adhuc Brundisio nihil. Roma scripsit Balbus. (C. Att. 9. 6.)

d. (sc. data epistola) pr. Non. Nov. Brundisio. (C. Fam. 14. 12.)  
Continued on p. 110.



<sup>1</sup> The bare ablative usually stands in the older prose writers, but <sup>1257</sup> Livy's general habit is to prefix the prep. a.

<sup>2</sup> Cæsar uses *ex* in describing the same fact (but the *ex* may be caused by Asia Cycladibusque insulis):

Pompeius annum spatium ad comparandas copias nactus magnum ex Asia Cycladibusque insulis, Corcyra, Athenis, Ponto, Bithynia, Syria, Cilicia, Phœnice, Ægypto classem coegerat. (Cæs. C. 3. 3.)

A preposition is required (at least in prose) when the place from <sup>1259</sup> which is

(1) Expressed by a common noun, or name of person, e.g. a loco deicere, de tribunali citare, ex equis desilire; a Pollione venire.

(2) Interior of country or town; e.g. Ex Cypro discedere; or neighbourhood of a town; e.g. Cæsar a Gergovia discessit. (Cæs. G. 7. 59.)

(3) Urbe, oppido prefixed in apposition; e.g. Expellitur ex oppido Gergovia. (Cæs. G. 7. 4.) Usually also when the apposition follows; e.g. Genus Tusculo ex clarissimo municipio profectum. (C. Font. 18.) Comp. Fabris undique ex Etruria accitis. (L. 1. 56.)

(4) In expressions of mere distance; e.g. tria millia passuum a Roma abesse; or situation; e.g. municipia quæ sunt a Vibone Brundisium. (C. Planc. 41.)

(5) Dependent on a substantive (but cf. C. Phil. 2. 30, quoted in § 1258; Att. 7. 24):

Pestiferum a Brundisio tum M. Antonii reditum timebamus.

(C. Phil. 4. 1.)

Recentissimas a Cybistris te meas litteras habere ais. (C. Att. 6. 1.)

<sup>3</sup> Quintilian appears to consider the use of a name of a country without a preposition to be barbarous (i. 5. 39).

<sup>4</sup> See § 1169.

<sup>5</sup> Comp. § 1173 (p. 73).

<sup>6</sup> The locative is very commonly used for the date of letters; e.g. a.d. pr. Kal. Mai. Brundisii. (C. Att. 3. 7.)

But, when the place is a common noun, *ab* is used:

Ab Appii foro, hora quarta. Dederam aliam paulo ante a Tribus Tabernis. (C. Att. 2. 10.)

Continued on p. 111.

2. Thing from which separation takes place or exists; *with verbs<sup>1</sup> of motion, abstinence, &c., especially compounds of ab, de, ex; also with a few adjectives.*

P. Varium pellere possessionibus armis castrisque conatus est.  
(C. Mil. 27.)

Cæsar suos a prælio continebat, ac satis habebat in præsentia  
hostem rapinis pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere.  
(Cæs. G. i. 15.)

Barbari, signa procul conspicati, oppugnatione desistunt.  
(Cæs. G. 6. 39.)

Cæsar re frumentaria adversarios intercluserat. (Cæs. G. i. 72.)

Eundem vidi postea Velia, cedentem Italia, ne qua oreretur belli  
civilis causa propter se. (C. Phil. 10. 4.)

Ostreis et murænis me facile abstinebam. (C. Fam. 7. 26.)

Censores motis senatu adscribebant notam. (L. 39. 42.)

Turpe existimas illum ipsum, quem contra veneris, causa cadere.  
(C. Mur. 4.)

Servi illi de cognatorum sententia manu missi sunt. (C. Cæl. 29.)

Vilicus primus cubitu surgat, postremus cubitum eat.  
(Cato, R. R. 5.)

Exple animum mulieribus teque hoc crimine expedi.  
(Ter. Hec. 755.)

Respubliica et milite illic et pecunia vacet. (L. 2. 48.)

L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit. (C. Planc. 25.)

Quoi corpore sejunctus dolor absit, mente fruatur jucundo sensu,  
cura semotus metuque. (Lucr. 2. 18.)

Quemadmodum volucris videmus passim ac libere, solutas opere,  
volitare, sic nostri animi gestiunt ac volitare cupiunt, vacui cura  
ac labore. (C. Or. 2. 6.)

Utrumque (sc. vis et fraus) homine alienissimum. (C. Off. i. 13.)

### 3. Origin<sup>2</sup>.

Datames patre Camisare, natione Care, matre Scythissa natus.  
(Nep. Dat. 1.)

Apollo Jove natus est et Latona. (C. N. D. 3. 23.)

Matre satus terra taurus. (Ov. F. 3. 799.)

Latino Alba ortus, Alba Atys, Atye Capys, Capye Capetus, Capeto  
Tiberinus. (L. i. 3.)

Continued on p. 112.

<sup>1</sup> *The principal simple verbs so used are alienare, arcere, cadere, 1261*  
cedere, cessare, liberare, movere, pellere, temperare, solvere, surgere,  
vacare. *The principal prepositional compounds are abs, de, ex, -cedere;*  
*de, e, -gredi; ab, de, -sistere; abesse, abire, abstinere; deicere, de-*  
*movere, depellere; excludere, evadere; also prohibere, intercludere.*  
*The adjectives are alienus, liber, immunis, purus, vacuus. All these*  
*words are also used with the preposition ab (or ex), which is not the*  
*case (except very rarely) with those whose usage is referred to, § 1212.*

*Verbs compounded with these ablative prepositions frequently have*  
*ab, de, ex with the noun. With compounds of ab (according to Gossrau)*  
*the preposition ab is usual; all are usual with compounds of de; de is*  
*unusual with compounds of ex.*

*Compounds of dis have ab (differre, discrepare, dissentire, have also*  
*cum aliquo, inter se); rarely a simple ablative (for the thing or purpose*  
*differed from); e. g. Nec distare putant humana carne suillam, qua*  
*pater abstinuit. (Juv. 14. 98.)*

*According to Wessenberg (C. T. D. 5. 26) verbs compounded with*  
*inseparable prepositions (se, re, dis), e. g. refugio, reporto, discedo,*  
*dimoveo, &c., are probably never used of motion by Cicero, Caesar,*  
*Sallust, Nepos, without a preposition added to the ablative.*

*The adverbial forms denoting 'whence' are occasionally used of 1263*  
*persons and things, e. g.*

*Scriptis causam dicere prius unde petitur, aurum qua re sit suum,*  
*quam ille qui petit, unde is sit thesaurus sibi. (Ter. Eun. 11.)*

*Divinavi illo extincto fore unde discerem neminem. (C. Sen. 4.)*

*Cadus erat vini: inde implevi hircineam. (Pl. Amph. 429.)*

*Numquam auferes hinc aurum. (Pl. Bacc. 824.)*

*Hoc illud est: hinc illæ lacrimæ. (Ter. Andr. 126.)*

*Aliunde stat semper, aliunde sentit, infidus sociis, vanus hostis*  
*(L. 24. 45, comp. a me stare, 'on my side').*

*Unde tu me ex jure manum consortum vocasti, inde ibi ego te revoco.*  
*(Legal formula ap. C. Mur. 12; unde, inde = qua (ea) de re.)*

<sup>2</sup> *Of the parents ex is sometimes found:*

*Ex me hic natus non est sed ex fratre meo. (Ter. Ad. 40.)*

1265

*Of more distant ancestors ab is used:*

*Mamilus ab Ulixi deaque Circa oriundus. (L. 1. 49.)*

*Divesne prisco natus ab Inacho nil interest an pauper et infima de*  
*gente sub divo moreris. (Hor. Od. 2. 3. 21.)*

*Continued on p. 113.*

Regem habendum duxit qualiscumque is foret, qui modo esset Herculis stirpe generatus. (C. R. P. 2. 12.)

Si per alios fecisse dicis, quæro quos homines? indidemne Ameria an hosce ex urbe sicarios? (C. Rosc. Am. 27.)

Duobus his præliis Cæsar desideravit notos equites Romanos C. Fleginatem Placentia, A. Granium Puteolis, M. Sacrativirum Capua. (Cæs. C. 3. 71.)

Nunc perveni Chalcidem: video ibi hospitem Zacyntho. (Pl. Merc. 940.)

Scrib. adfuit L. Domitius Cn. F. Fabia Ahenobarbus. (Sen. Cons. apud C. Fam. 8. 8.)

4. Standard of comparison<sup>1</sup>: *qualifying adjectives, or adverbs, in the comparative degree.* (The case means 'starting from.')

(a) *Qualifying adjectives.*

*The adjective must be attribute (or predicate) of the noun compared with the standard.*

Nihil est magno et præclaro viro dignius placabilitate et æquitate. (C. Off. 1. 25.)

Quid magis est saxo durum, quid mollius unda? (Ov. A. A. 1. 475.)

Phidiæ simulacris, quibus nihil in illo genere perfectius videmus, cogitare tamen possumus pulciora. (C. Or. 2.)

Non tulit ullos hæc civitas aut gloria clariores, aut auctoritate graviores, aut humanitate politiores P. Africano, C. Lælio, L. Furio. (C. Or. 2. 37.)

Me pedibus delectat claudere verba Lucili ritu, nostrum melioris utroque. (Hor. S. 2. 1. 29.)

Pane egeo, jam mellitis potiore placentis. (Hor. Ep. 1. 10. 11.)

Brutum in orationibus minorem esse fama sua etiam admiratores ejus fatentur. (Tac. Or. 21.)

Ex hoc exercitu qui minores quinque et triginta annis erant, in naves impositi. (L. 22. 11.)

Humida terra majores herbas alit, ipsaque justo lætior. (Verg. G. 2. 251.)

Opinione omnium majorem animo cepi dolorem. (C. Brut. 11.)

Hasdrubali et sua et aliorum spe omnia celeriora atque expeditiora fuere. (L. 27. 39.)

Propius quædam subibant naves, quo interiores ictibus tormentorum essent. (L. 24. 34.)

*So also rarely after alius:*

Vereor ne putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum. (Hor. Ep. 1. 16. 20.)

*Continued on p. 114.*

Of the country ex is common: also ab:

Dixit cupere te ex Æthiopia ancillulam. (Ter. Eun. 165.)

Misitur Q. Junius ex Hispania quidam. (Cæs. G. 5. 27.)

Turnus Herdonius ab Aricia. (L. 1. 50.)

So also of the material; e. g.

Multum argentum, non pauca etiam pocula ex auro. (C. Verr. 4. 27.)

But adjectives, e. g. Syracusanus, Latinus, aureus, &c. are more usual, at least as attributes to a name.

<sup>1</sup> The second member of a comparison is often introduced by quam. It may be any word or combination of words having the same functions in the sentence as the first member.

(1) The comparison may qualify adjectives in comparative degree, and some verbs. (The adjective is not necessarily attribute, &c. of the first member.)

The compared member may be (a) Subject, or attribute of subject:

Certe ignorantio factorum malorum utilior est quam scientia.

(C. Div. 2. 9.)

Meliora sunt ea quæ natura, quam illa quæ arte perfecta sunt.

(C. N. D. 2. 34.)

Pauli sentio fuit verior quam gratior populo. (L. 22. 38. So frequently the comparative in the second member also.)

(b) Oblique case:

Ex quo judicari potest virtutis esse quam otiosis cursum celeriorum.

(C. Phil. 5. 17.)

Occidis nulli debilis quam tibi. (Hor. Od. 1. 24. 10.)

Cetera visu quam dona debitorum. (L. 21. 32.)

Rarely quam is found after alius in affirmative sentences, multiplex, dimidius, &c. Nihil aliud quam, &c. is common:

Brutus juvenis longe alius ingenii quam cujus simulationem indiderat.

(L. 1. 56.)

Pretor vix dimidium milium, quam quod acceperat, successori tradidit.

(L. 35. 1.)

Where the second member is in meaning unsuited to the grammatical position of the first, a new sentence is sometimes formed with quam:

Si vicinus tuus equum meliorem habeat quam tuus est, tuumne equum malis an illius? (C. Inv. 1. 31.)

Me quoque jube occidi, ut gloriari possis multo meliorem, quam ipse es, virum ab te occisum esse. (L. 26. 15.)

But Ego hominem callidorem vidi neminem quam Phormionem.

(Ter. Ph. 591.)

Hominem nonnullis rebus inferiorem quam te, superiorem aliis, adilem factum esse miraris. (C. Plane. 12.)

So also C. Vat. 17. See both forms in same sentence in C. Fam. 5. 7.

Continued on p. 115.



(b) *Qualifying adverbs, or adverbial cases of adjectives.*

The standard is properly (1) a word expressive of measure though often loosely; so e. g. *spe*, *expectatione*, *expectato*, *dicto*, *justo*, *æquo*, *solito*, *necessario*, *vero*; but sometimes (2) is a word which in meaning might be subject or object, &c. of the principal verb.

(1) *Cæsar opinione celerius venturus esse dicitur.* (C. *Fam.* 14. 23.)

*Serius spe omnium Romam venit.* (L. 26. 26.)

*Multi injurias suas gravius æquo habuere.* (Sall. *C.* 51, § 11.)

*Dicto prope citius equum in viam Claudius dejecit.* (L. 23. 47.)

*Fluvius Arnus per eos dies solito magis inundaverat.* (L. 22. 2.)

*Longius assueto lumina nostra vident.* (Ov. *H.* 6. 72.)

*Quos irrupta tenet copula, nec malis divulsus querimoniis supremam citius solvet amor die.* (Hor. *Od.* 1. 13. 20.)

*Operarium mercenarium politorem diutius eundem ne habeat die.*  
(Cat. *R. R.* 5.)

*Annos sexaginta natus es aut plus eo, ut conjicio.* (Ter. *Haut.* 62.)

*Me nemo potest minoris quisquam nummo ut surgam subigere.*  
(Pl. *Pseud.* 809.)

(2) *Hanc (urbem) Juno fertur terris magis omnibus unam posthabita coluisse Samo.* (Verg. *A.* 1. 15.)

*Fortuna plus humanis consiliis pollet.* (L. 44. 40.)

*Antea declamitabam causas, quod nemo me diutius fecit.*  
(C. *T. D.* 1. 4.)

*Recte auguraris de me nihil a me abesse longius crudelitate.*  
(Cæs. ap. C. *Att.* 9. 16.)

*Nullam, Vare, sacra vite prius severis arborem.* (Hor. *Od.* 1. 18. 1.)

*Ora fuere mihi plus ave docta loqui.* (Ov. *Am.* 2. 6. 62.)

*So also (rarely) in Plautus qualifying æque.*

*Nullust hoc meticulosus æque!* (Pl. *Amph.* 293.)

5. With the following prepositions the ablative is used in senses which fall under the general type of place whence.

**ab** (a), **de**, **ex** (e): **absque**, **sine**; **procul**.

*See the Supplement to Syntax.*

*Continued on p. 116.*

(2) *The comparison may qualify adverbs in comparative degree*: 1271

Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens. (C. Att. 10. 1.)

Non nascitur ex malo bonum non magis quam ficus ex olea.

(Sen. Ep. 87. 25.)

Scutum, gladium, galeam in onere nostri milites non plus numerant quam umeros, lacertos, manus. (C. T. D. 2. 16.)

Brutum non minus amo quam tu, pæne dixi, quam te.

(C. Att. 5. 20, § 6.)

Tumultuarius exercitus acrius primo impetu quam perseverantius pugnabit. (L. 41. 10.)

Ad exprimendam festinatæ rei velocitatem (ait Augustus), 'celerius quam asparagi cocuntur.' (Suet. Aug. 87.)

*In descriptions of size, age, &c. plus, amplius, more, minus, less, are used without change of case (as adverbs), and the noun of size, &c. if not put in the ablative, is subjoined in the proper case with or without quam.* 1273

Zeuxis et Polygnotus non sunt usi plus quam quattuor coloribus.

(C. Brut. 18.)

Reliquum spatium est non amplius pedum sexcentorum.

(Cæs. G. 1. 38.)

Catilina initio non amplius duobus milibus militum habuit.

(Sall. C. 56.)

*Instead of plus sometimes the comparative of the adjective is used.*

*Hence we may have all the following forms:*

Fossa (1) plus quam tres pedes lata (*where?*); (2) plus tres pedes lata; (3) plus tribus pedibus lata (*rare*); (4) tres pedes latior (*rare*); (5) tribus pedibus latior; (6) trium pedum latior (*rare*).

*So in expressions of age; (1) no instance at hand; (2) me non amplius novem annos nato (Nep. 23. 2); (3) plus triginta natus annis ego sum (Pl. Men. 446); (4) annos natus major quadraginta (C. Rosc. A. 14); (5) qui non major annis quinquaginta esset (L. 42. 33, and very commonly in Digest), and rarely ne qui major triginta annis natus legeretur (C. Verr. 2. 49); (6) ne minores octonum denum annorum neu majores quinum quadragenum (ap. L. 38. 38). Besides these we find (7) the more strictly grammatical major quam quindecim annos natus, 'older than one born,' &c. (L. 45. 32); (8) a strange form, major natu quam viginti annis (Ulp. Dig. 38. 2. 14, apparently taken from the Edict; cf. 4. 4. 1, § 1); (9) major quinquenni (L. 45. 15); and (10) boves minoris trimos (Varr. R.R. 1. 20).*

See §§ 1086, 1085 and Madvig, *Bemerkungen*, pp. 81—86.

<sup>1</sup> So *Curc.* 141; *adæque*, *Most.* 30. (In *Plin.* 35, § 17, *Picturæ* quibus equidem nullas æque miror, we have probably the dative.) The usual construction is with *ac* (so *Cic.*) or *quam*: e.g. 1275

*Pumex* non æquest aridus atque hic est senex. (Pl. Aul. 295.)

Nullum esse agrum æque feracem quam hic est. (Pl. Epid. 2. 3. 1.)

Continued on p. 117.

## CHAPTER XI.

## USE OF GENITIVE CASE.

THE GENITIVE is for the most part analogous to an adjective; *i.e.* the substantive put in the genitive (A) qualifies or limits another substantive, either immediately as attribute, or (generally with the verb of *being*), as a secondary predicate. It is also used to express the object after an adjective; and (B) a secondary object after a few verbs<sup>1</sup>.

## (A) DEPENDENT ON NOUNS, OR AS SECONDARY PREDICATE.

1. Person (or thing), possessing, or causing, or causing, to whom (or which) something belongs, or whose acting or condition is named. (*Subjective genitive.*)

N.B. Of the personal pronouns, the adjectives **meus**, **tuus**, **suus**, **noster**, **vester**, are used (as adjectives) in this sense. But, in conjunction with **omnium**, **nostrum** and **vestrum** (*gen. plur.*) are used.

(a) *Dependent on nouns*<sup>2</sup>.

Horti Cæsaris. Cupido Praxitelis. Hectoris Andromache.

Scriptores Græciæ. Majorum gentium di. (C. T. D. 1. 13.)

Ad Demetrium Phthiotidis. (L. 28. 6.)

Trasumenni quam Trebiæ, Cannarum quam Trasumenni pugna nobilior fuit. (L. 23. 43.)

Fuga Pompeji. Pugnatum est ad Spei. Pater familias.

Laus recte factorum. Magnitudo potestatis.

Qui illud animi causa fecerit, hunc prædæ causa quid facturum putatis? (C. Phil. 7. 6.)

Docendi gratiâ. Signum erumpendi. Labor discendi<sup>3</sup>.

Imploraret hominum fidem. Res Mancipi. Mancipi lex.

Mea unius opera respublica salva est. (C. Pis. 3.)

Patria est communis omnium nostrum parens. (C. Cat. 1. 7.)

Alia fori vis est, alia triclinii; alia subselliorum ratio, alia lectorum. (C. Cæl. 28.)

Quidam ex his, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 17.)

*Continued on p. 118.*

<sup>1</sup> These uses are subdivided as follows ;

A. Adjectival use, as attribute or predicate.

1. Person (or thing) possessing or causing. §§ 1280—1288.
2. Divided whole. §§ 1290—1300.
3. Particular kind or contents. §§ 1302—1306.
4. Quality or description. §§ 1308—1310.
5. Object of action implied in substantives and adjectives.
  - (a) Direct object. §§ 1312—1316.
  - (b) Remoter object. § 1318.
6. Thing in point of which a term is applied (poetic). § 1320.

B. 1. Secondary object to verbs. § 1322.

- (a) Matter charged. §§ 1324—1326.
- (b) Object of mental emotion. §§ 1328—1330.
- (c) Thing remembered. § 1332.
- (d) Thing lacking or supplied. §§ 1334—1338.

2. Usages properly referable to locative. § 1340.

<sup>2</sup> *Adjectives are not unfrequently used, especially in Livy and the poets, instead of genitives; e.g.*

Hector ille Nævianus. (C. Fam. 5. 12.)

Caput Evandrius abstulit ensis. (Verg. A. 10. 394.)

Siceii cædes decemviris et Appiana libido objiciebantur. (L. 3. 51.)

Clamor oppidanorum mixtus muliebri puerilique ploratu. (L. 4. 33.)

Inter jocos militares. (L. 5. 49.)

Pugna Romana stabilis et suo et armorum pondere incumbentium in hostem. (L. 30. 34.)

Equestris tumultus a tergo, simul a castris clamor hostilis auditus. (L. 27. 1.)

*Similarly the demonstrative and relative pronouns are used:* 1273

Hic terror omnes in Q. Fabium convertit. (L. 10. 13, i.e. hujus rei terror.)

Quæ pars major erit, eo stabitur consilio. (L. 7. 35.)

<sup>3</sup> *Varro (cf. L. L. 10. §§ 21, 31, 32, &c.) frequently has the gerund in such expressions as casus dandi ('the case which giving requires,' i.e.) the dative case; casus nominandi, nominative; declinatus or species rogandi (e.g. scribo-ne); respondendi (e.g. fingo); optandi (e.g. vivatur); imperandi (e.g. paretur): so Quintilian (1. 6. 7), fatendi modo, 'in the indicative mood.'*

*Continued on p. 119.*

Non censent nos illarum adfines<sup>1</sup> esse rerum quas fert adulescentia.  
(Ter. *Haut.* 215.)

Q. Metellus, cujus paucos paris<sup>2</sup> hæc civitas tulit. (C. *Pis.* 4.)

Reus Milonis lege Plotia fuit Clodius. (C. *Mil.* 13.)

Id quidem non proprium<sup>3</sup> senectutis vitium est, sed commune<sup>4</sup> valetudinis. (C. *Sen.* 11.)

Illius amicissimi<sup>5</sup>. Accusator meus. Imago tua.

Persuaserat nonnullis invidis meis. (C. *Fam.* 7. 2.)

Vadit in eundem carcerem Socrates, eodem iudicum scelere, quo tyrannorum Theramenes. (C. *T. D.* 1. 40 fin.)

Germanis neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatium<sup>6</sup> datum est. (Cæs. *G.* 4. 14.)

Est operæ<sup>7</sup> pretium diligentiam majorum recordari. (C. *Agr.* 2. 29.)

Nec conspectum multitudinis fugerat. (Ib. 7. 30.)

Quæ tum frequentia senatus, quæ expectatio populi, qui concursus legatorum, quæ virtus, actio, gravitas P. Lentuli consulis fuit.  
(C. *Sext.* 33.)

Illia navis urbis instar habere inter illos piraticos myoparones videbatur. (C. *Verr.* 5. 34.)

Prætori ad obtinendam Siciliam Cannenses milites dati, duarum instar legionum. (L. 26. 28.)

Tacita suspicionum. (Tac. *A.* 4. 41.) Subita belli. (Id. *Agr.* 37.)

(b) *As an invariable secondary predicate.*

Omnia, quæ mulieris fuerunt, viri fiunt, dotis nomine. (C. *Top.* 4.)

Est prudentis<sup>8</sup> sustinere impetum benevolentiae. (C. *Lael.* 17.)

Cujusvis hominis est errare; nullius, nisi insipientis, in errore perseverare. (C. *Phil.* 12. 2.)

Nihil est tam angusti animi tamque parvi, quam amare divitias.

(C. *Off.* 1. 20.)

Jam me Pompeji totum esse scio. (C. *Fam.* 2. 13.)

Cesserant in agros suarumque rerum erant, amissa publica. (L. 3. 38.)

Hoc sentire prudentiae<sup>9</sup> est, facere fortitudinis; et sentire vero et facere perfectæ cumulataeque virtutis. (C. *Sext.* 40.)

Olim arbitrabar esse meum libere loqui. (C. *Fam.* 9. 16. 3.)

Neque gloriam meam, laborem illorum, faciam. (Sall. *Jug.* 85.)

Carthaginenses tutelæ nostræ duximus. (L. 21. 41.)

Marcellus id nec juris nec potestatis suæ esse dixit. (L. 25. 7.)

Imperio alteri aucti, alteri dicionis alienæ facti. (L. 1. 25.)

*Continued on p. 120.*



<sup>1</sup> *The dative is not uncommon with some of these adjectives; e.g.* 1281

Duos solos video auctoritate censorum adfinis ei turpitudinis judicari.  
(C. Clu. 45.)

<sup>2</sup> Cratippus familiaris noster, quem ego parem summis Peripateticis judico. (C. Div. 1. 3.) Also par cum aliquo; e. g.

Eum tu parem cum liberis tuis regnique participem fecisti.  
(Sall. J. 14. 9.)

<sup>3</sup> Quod ut Cn. Pompeio proprium ac perpetuum sit, velle et optare debetis. (C. Man. 16.)

<sup>4</sup> Quid est tam commune quam spiritus vivis, terra mortuis, mare fluctuantibus, litus ejectis? (C. Rosc. A. 26.)

*Always dative in such sentences as mihi commune est cum aliquo.*

<sup>5</sup> *Also with dative: see § 1142.*

<sup>6</sup> Spatium quidem tandem adparandis nuptiis, vocandi sacrificandi dabitur paululum. (Ter. Ph. 701.)

Albutio spatium ad sese colligendum dederunt. (C. Cæcin. 2.)

<sup>7</sup> *So also facere operæ pretium (Liv. præf.) &c. A phrase, operæ est, usually with negative (non or nec), occurs in Enn. ap. Pers. 6. 9, and frequently in Plautus (Amph. 151; Mil. 252; 817; Ps. 377; Merc. 10; 917; Truc. 4. 4. 30), and Livy (1. 24; 4. 8; 5. 15; 9. 23; 21. 9; 29. 17; 33. 20; 41. 26; 44. 36), and is generally taken to be referable to the class noticed in § 1282 or to 1296—1300. As instances may be quoted; Trecentæ possunt causæ conligi; "Non domist; abiit ambulatum; dormit;" ornatur; lavat; prandet; potat; occupatast; operæ non est; non potest; quantum vis prolationumst. (Mil. l.c.) Postquam audivit haruspiciem esse, causatus de privati portenti procuratione, si operæ illi esset, consulere velle, ad colloquium vatem elieuit. (L. 5. 15.) But the absence of any epithet, the absence of any substantive like aliquid, nihil, multum, &c., the (frequent) coexistence of a personal dative (mihi, &c. not meæ, &c.), the use of esse not facere, the parallelism with the nominative and (subject) accusative (in Cic. Q. F. 3. 4, § 4; Pl. Merc. 286, and comp. Pl. Mil. 1086), these taken all together make it more probable that operæ is a predicative dative (like curæ). 'It is (not) a matter of attention,' hence, colloquially = (non) commodum est.*

<sup>8</sup> *Rarely est prudens: but with adjectives of the first class (e.g. stultus), we may have, e.g. 'stulti est, stultum est, stultitia est, stultitiæ est, nolle sumere quæ di porrigant.'*

<sup>9</sup> *Such a sentence as Jam illud cuius est, non dico audaciæ, cupit enim se audacem, sed, quod minime vult, stultitiæ, qua vincit omnis, clivi Capitolini mentionem facere (C. Phil. 2. 8), might equally well be referred to this section, or to §§ 1308—1310.*

Magis nullius interest<sup>1</sup>, quam tua, non imponi cervicibus tuis onus sub quo concidas. (L. 24. 8.)

Magni interest Ciceronis vel mea potius vel mehercule utriusque me intervenire discenti. (C. Att. 14. 16.)

Faciendum aliquid quod illorum magis quam sua retulisse videretur. (Sall. J. 111.)

Regium imperium initio conservandæ libertatis atque augendæ rei publicæ fuerat. (Sall. Cat. 6.)

Dixit, quæ temere agitassent, ea prodendi imperii Romani, tradendæ Hannibali victoriæ esse. (L. 27. 9.)

(c) Tacitus uses such genitives (with the gerundive) to qualify, not a single word, but a sentence.

Germanicus Ægyptum proficiscitur cognoscendæ antiquitatis. (Ann. 2. 59.)

Tum e seditiosis unum vinciri jubet, magis usurpandi juris, quam quia unius culpa foret. (Hist. 4. 25.)

Compare Arma cepit, non pro sua aut quorum simulat injuria, sed legum ac libertatis subvortundæ. (Sall. Or. Phil. 11.)

## 2. Divided whole<sup>2</sup>.

### (a) *Definite whole.*

Of the personal pronouns, *mei*, &c. *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used in this sense.

Magna pars militum. Solus omnium. Multi vestrum.

Tertius regum Romanorum. Fortissimus Græcorum.

Indus qui est omnium fluminum maximus. (C. N. D. 2. 52.)

Parte tamen meliore mei super alta perennis astra ferar. (Ov. Met. 15. 875.)

Ad ipsas venio provincias; quarum Macedonia, quæ erat antea munita et pacata, graviter a barbaris vexatur. (C. Prov. Cons. 2.)

Consulum anni prioris M. Atilium Romam miserunt, Geminum Servilium legioni Romanæ et socium peditum equitumque duobus millibus præficiunt. (L. 22. 40.)

Gum expeditis peditum equitumque<sup>3</sup> pugnam conserebant cum hoste. (L. 28. 14.)

Circum murum situm in prærupti montis extremo palus erat. (Sall. J. 37.)

Quicquid hujus feci, causa virginis feci. (Ter. Haut. 202.)

Continued on p. 122.

<sup>1</sup> With interest, or *refert*, used impersonally, instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun, the abl. sing. fem. of the possessive is used. So *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, and in a fragment of Cicero (ap. Prisc. XII. 20), *cuja*. (But *cujus* usually)

With *refert* the ablative construction is common as early as Plautus and Terence, the genitive is not found till Livy (34. 27; 40. 34, *ipsum referre*), except in Sall. l.c. With interest neither construction seems to be found before Cicero. [Possibly *mea re fert* was originally *meæ rei fert*, 'it contributes to my interest;' then *rei* being shortened to *re*, the pronoun was accommodated to the supposed ablative. *Mea interest* may be for *meæ (rei) interest*, but more likely was imitated from *refert*, when that had become almost a single word of much the same meaning ('it is of importance') as *interest*. The frequency of the genitive with *interest* may be due to its containing *est*; e. g. *Ciceronis interest* = 'there is a difference belonging to Cicero.']

Sometimes *ad* with *acc.* is found instead of these constructions, e. g. *Quid id ad me aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant?* (Pl. *Pers.* 513.)  
*Magni ad honorem meum interest quam primum ad urbem me venire.* (C. *Fam.* 16. 1.)

On *magni*, &c., *referre, interesse*, see § 1188.

<sup>2</sup> Where the whole, though divided in fact, is all concerned in the predication, the whole and the parts are often in apposition; e. g.

*Interfectores, pars in forum, pars Syracusas, pergunt.* (L. 24. 7.)

Other instances in §§ 1434, 1440.

Compare *Quod senatus juratus, maxima pars, censeat qui adsient, id volumus jubemusque.* (ap. L. 26. 33.)

A divided whole is also expressed by a prepositional phrase, chiefly after numerals or pronouns. *Ex* is most frequently used.

*Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus?* (C. *Rosc. A.* 1.)

*De præmiis quæritur, ex duobus uter dignior, ex pluribus quis dignissimus.* (Quint. 7. 4, § 21.)

*C. Marium vidimus, qui mihi secundis rebus unus ex fortunatis hominibus, adversis unus ex summis viris videbatur.* (C. *Par.* 2, § 16.)

*Noctu de servis suis quem habuit fidelissimum ad regem misit.* (Nep. *Them.* 4.)

*Nostri in primo congressu circiter LXX ceciderunt, in his Q. Fulginius... Ex Afranianis interticiuntur T. Cæcilius et centuriones III.*

(Cæs. *C.* 1. 46.)

*Innumerique alii, quos inter maximus omnes cedere Danubius se tibi, Nile, negat.* (Ov. *Pont.* 4. 10. 57.)

<sup>3</sup> *Misit expeditos pedites equitesque.* (L. 34. 25.)

Continued on p. 123.

Uterque<sup>1</sup> eorum. Uterque nostrum.

Medium<sup>2</sup> viæ. Mediterranea Acarnaniæ. (L. 28. 14.)

Plana urbis. Extremum æstatis. Dimidium pecuniæ.

Speculatoriæ naves sub constratis pontium per intervalla excurrebant. (L. 30. 10.)

Nec Apollinis opertis credendum existimo, quorum partim ficta aperte, partim effutita temere sunt. (C. Div. 2. 55.)

Sulpicius Gallus maxime omnium nobilium Græcis litteris studuit. (C. Brut. 20.)

Ubicunque terrarum et gentium violatum jus civium Romanorum est, id ad communem libertatis causam pertinet. (C. Verr. 5. 55.)

Decreverunt patres ut prætor urbanus decemviros agro Samniti Apuloque, quod ejus<sup>3</sup> publicum populi Romani esset, metiendo dividendoque crearet. (L. 31. 4.)

(b) *Indefinite whole.* Dependent on neuter adjective nominative or accusative<sup>4</sup>; also *nihil*, and some adverbs, *quo*, *eo*, &c.

Hoc præmii. Parum prudentiæ. Aliquid pulchri<sup>5</sup>.

Idem damni. (L. 35. 42.) Id ætatis. (Cf. § 1092.)

Hoc tantum exacta ætate laboris itinerisque suscepit. (C. V. 5. 49.)

Eo miseriarum venturus eram. (Sall. J. 14.)

Res eodem est loci, quo reliquisti. (C. Att. 1. 13.)

Neque post id locorum<sup>6</sup> Jugurthæ dies aut nox ulla quicta fuit. (Sall. J. 72.)

Navium quod ubique fuerat in unum locum coegerant. (Cæs. G. 3. 16.)

Eruditio in Lucilio mira et libertas atque inde acerbitas et abunde salis. (Quint. 10. 1. 94.)

Adfatimst hominum quibus negoti nihil est. (Pl. Men. 454.)

Obsidio continua oppidanos ad ultimum inopiæ adduxerat. (L. 23. 19.)

Undique ad inferos tantundem viæ est. (C. T. D. 1. 43.)

Mittit homini munera satis large hæc ad usum domesticum, olei, vini quod visum est, etiam tritici quod satis esset, de suis decumis. (C. Verr. 4. 27.)

Quid mulieris<sup>7</sup> uxorem habes? (Ter. Hec. 643.)

Ibi nec divini quidquam nec humani sanctum erat. (L. 27. 17.)

*Continued on p. 124.*

<sup>1</sup> *Uterque with a noun (not pronoun) substantive is used as attribute, e.g. uterque frater, not uterque fratrum.* 1293

<sup>2</sup> *The Romans often (esp. Cicero) used an adjective and substantive agreeing, where in English we use 'of.' So always, when the whole is not divided. Adjectives thus used are adversus, aversus, ceterum, extremus, imus, medius, multus, nullus, omnis, plerique, reliquus, summus, supremus, totus, ultimus, and other superlatives.* 1295

Nos omnes. In media urbe. Extremo anno.

Reliqua turba. Adversa basis. Aversa charta. Tota Asia.

Ad summam aquam appropinquare. Ex intima philosophia.

Trecenti conjuravimus. Amici, quos multos habebat, aderant.

Veniamus ad vivos, qui duo de consularium numero relicui sunt.

(C. Phil. 2. 6.)

Hominibus opus est eruditis, qui adhuc in hoc quidem genere nostri nulli fuerunt. (C. Or. 3. 24.)

<sup>3</sup> *Quod ejus (sc. agri) = 'so far as it,' 'so much of it as,' is a common phrase in laws. Cf. L. 5. 25; 38. 23; ib. 54; 39. 7; 39. 45 (quoted in § 1094); 42. 8. (Comp. quæ eorum, L. 26. 34, § 12.) Cicero uses it loosely; e.g. Tu tamen velim ne intermittas, quod ejus facere possis, scribere ad me. (Att. 11. 12.) Also Fam. 3. 2; 5. 8.* 1297

<sup>4</sup> *See also § 1304, which is closely related to this section.*

1299

<sup>5</sup> *Also aliquid pulchrum. But both forms of expression are not always allowable. Thus (Madvig, Lat. Gr. § 285)—*

(a) *Adjectives of quantity are used only with the genitive; e.g. multum novi; or, in the plural, e.g. multa nova.*

(b) *Adjectives dependent on a preposition are rarely (at least in the præ-Augustan writers) used with this genitive; e.g. ad tantum studium, not ad tantum studii.*

(c) *Adjectives of the second class are not put in the genitive; e.g. aliquid memorabile, not aliquid memorabilis, (nor [by the first rule] multum memorabile). In the following passage the genitive eminentis is due to the parallelism. Illud video pugnare te, species ut quædam sit deorum, quæ nihil concreti habeat, nihil solidi, nihil expressi, nihil eminentis. (C. N. D. 2. 27.)*

<sup>6</sup> *So ut adhuc locorum feci, faciam sedulo. (Pl. Capt. 382), &c.: similarly, without reference to place, merito hoc meo videtur factum? DE. Minume gentium. (Ter. Ph. 1033), &c.*

<sup>7</sup> *So quid hoc est hominis? (Pl. Amph. 769); aveo scire quid hominis sit (C. Att. 7. 3, § 9); &c. Comp. monstrum hominis non dicturu's? (Ter. Eun. 696); scelus viri, Palæstrio. (Pl. Mil. 1434); Pægnium, deliciæ pueri. (Pl. Pers. 204); which belong to § 1304.*

*Continued on p. 125.*



Nihil pacati respondebatur. (L. 38. 28.)

Solebat extra portam aliquid habere conducti. (C. Clu. 62.)

Præter arma et animos armorum memores nihil vobis fortuna reliqui<sup>1</sup> fecit. (L. 7. 35.)

Neque id quibus modis adsequeretur, dum sibi regnum pararet, quicquam pensi<sup>2</sup> habebat. (Sall. Cat. 5. 2.)

(c) *So also dependent on certain adjectives derived from substantives.*

Socium et consortem gloriosi laboris amiseram. (C. Brut. 1.)

M. Antonium omnis eruditionis expertem<sup>3</sup> atque ignarum fuisse magna fuit opinio. (C. Or. 2. 1.)

Consiliorum omnium particeps et socius pæne regni putabatur. (C. R. P. 2. 20.)

3. Particular kind or contents: that, in, or of which a thing consists.

(a) *Definite<sup>4</sup>. (Genitive of definition.)*

Honos consulatus. Familia Scipionum. Numerus trecentorum.

Epicurus non intelligit quid sonet hæc vox<sup>5</sup> voluptatis, id est, quæ res huic voci subiciatur. (C. Fin. 2. 2.)

Celsa Buthroti<sup>6</sup> urbs. Ausoniæ tellus. (Verg. A. 3. 293, 476.)

Parvulæ causæ vel falsæ suspicionis vel terroris repentini vel objectæ religionis magna detrimenta intulerunt. (Cæs. C. 3. 72.)

Nec erit justior in senatum non veniendi causa morbi quam mortis. (C. Phil. 1. 11.)

Nymphæ lactis alimenta dedere. (Ov. M. 3. 315.)

Aliis virtutibus, continentiæ, gravitatis, justitiæ, fidei, te consulatu dignum putavi. (C. Mur. 10.)

Nullam virtus aliam mercedem laborum periculorumque desiderat præter hanc laudis et gloriæ. (C. Arch. 11.)

Duo sunt genera liberalitatis; unum dandi beneficii, alterum reddendi. (C. Off. 1. 15.)

Mos traditus ab antiquis inter cetera sollemnia manet bona Porsinnæ regis vendendi. (L. 2. 14.)

Servati consulis decus Cælius ad servum delegat. (L. 21. 47.)

Colluvio mixtorum omnis generis animantium. (L. 3. 6.)

Ala<sup>7</sup> trecentorum equitum. Classis centum navium.

Captivorum numerus fuit septem milium octingentorum. (L. 10. 36.)

*Continued on p. 126.*

<sup>1</sup> Quod reliquum vitæ viriumque fames fecerat, id ferro potissimum reddere volebant (C. Verr. 5. 34), *where the genitive vitæ makes another genitive (reliqui) awkward. In a different sense we have* Prorsus ab utrisque nihil relicum fieri, 'left undone' (S. Jug. 76), *but in this sense also reliqui is often found.* 1301

<sup>2</sup> In Sallust, Cat. 12, nihil pensi neque moderati habere; 23, neque dicere neque facere, quicquam pensi habebat; 52; Jug. 41; Liv. 26. 15; 34. 31; ib. 49. Dixit, illis nec quid dicerent, nec quid facerent quicquam unquam pensi fuisse; 42. 23; 43. 7; Sen. *Ædip.* 298; Quint. 11. 1, § 29; Sueton. Nero 34; Dom. 12; and apparently Plaut. *Truc.* 52; always dependent on nihil, quicquam. Tacitus perhaps misunderstood the construction of the phrase when he wrote Ut proximus quisque Britannico neque fas neque fidem pensi haberet olim provisum erat. (A. 13. 15.) So also Or. 29; H. 1. 46; and Val. M. 2. 9. 3. Cf. Madvig, *Bemerk.* p. 64, n. Comp. the use of compendi facere, § 1306.

<sup>3</sup> The ablative also is used with *expers* in Plaut. and Sall.; e.g. 1303  
Plerique patriæ sed omnes fama atque fortunis expertes sumus.  
(Sall. C. 33.)

<sup>4</sup> The genitives arranged under this head are in the main convertible with an apposition in English; e.g. 'the office called the consulate,' 'the number three hundred,' 'the word pleasure,' 'the virtue temperance.' See § 1305.

<sup>5</sup> Compare Faxo ne juvet vox ista 'veto' (L. 6. 35); Audita intoleranda Romanis vox, 'væ victis' (L. 5. 48).

<sup>6</sup> The use of the genitive in these geographical expressions is rare. Usually urbs Buthrotum, &c.

<sup>7</sup> Campanorum alam, quingentos fere equites excedere acie jubet.  
(L. 10. 29.)

Continued on p. 127.

(b) *Indefinite*<sup>1</sup>. (*Genitive of sort, material, head.*)

Acervus frumenti. Præmia pecuniæ. Magnus numerus equorum.  
Tria milia pondo argenti. Mille<sup>2</sup> nummum Philippum.

An si quis Hispanorum aut Gallorum aut Thracum mille aut duo  
milia occidisset, eum imperatorem appellaret senatus?

(C. Phil. 14. 5.)

Lucus proceris abietis arboribus sæptus. (L. 24. 3.)

Perusti late agri, prædæ hominum pecudumque actæ. (L. 24. 20.)

Sæpe lapidum, sanguinis non nunquam, terræ interdum, quondam  
etiam lactis imber defluxit. (C. Div. 1. 43.)

Duco mecum Ciceronem meum in ludum discendi, non lusionis.

(C. Q. Fr. 3. 4, § 6.)

Magna vis seminum. Sex dies spatii<sup>3</sup>. (Cæs. C. 1. 3.)

Paribus alternis spatiis omissis senum pedum latitudinis<sup>4</sup> sulcos  
dirigunt. (Col. 3. 13. 4.)

Orationis operam compendi<sup>5</sup> face. (Pl. Most. 60.)

Ecquis homost, qui facere argenti cupiat aliquantum lucri<sup>6</sup>?

(Ib. 354.)

Populus publice coactus est Apronio conferre lucri tritici modium  
XXI et accessionis<sup>7</sup> HS CXCIO. (C. Verr. 3. 32.)

#### 4. *Quality or description*<sup>8</sup>; *always with adjective.*

Fossa centum pedum<sup>9</sup>. Puer sedecim annorum.

Pyramides stant quinque, imæ latæ pedum quinum septuagenum,  
altæ centenum quinquagenum<sup>10</sup>. (Varr. ap. Plin. 36, § 92.)

Scrobes trium in altitudinem pedum. (Cæs. G. 7. 73.)

Non multi cibi hospitem accipies sed multi joci. (C. Fam. 9. 26.)

Superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio. (Cæs. G. 3. 18.)

Omnia erant Metelli ejusmodi<sup>11</sup>. (C. Verr. 2. 26.)

Res magni laboris. Vestis magni pretii.

Complures senatorii ordinis. Homo infimi generis.

Tun' trium litterarum homo me vituperas? CONG. Fur?

(Pl. Aul. 324.)

Plurimarum palmarum vetus ac nobilis gladiator. (C. Rosc. A. 6.)

Est fons aquæ dulcis, cui nomen Arethusa est, incredibili magnitu-  
dine, plenissimus piscium. (C. Verr. 4. 53.)

Tuæ litteræ maximi sunt apud me ponderis<sup>12</sup>. (C. Fam. 2. 19.)

Tu aliquem patronum invenies, hominem antiqui officii.

(C. Quint. 22.)

Continued on p. 128.

<sup>1</sup> The genitives in this section (closely related to § 1296), are not to be regarded (like those in § 1302) as appositions, but as corresponding to an adjective or prepositional phrase, or part of a compound; e.g. 'a corn-heap,' 'a money-reward,' 'a thousand such as Gauls,' 'two additional sesterces,' 'three thousand pounds in silver.' 1305

<sup>2</sup> Mille (sing) with genitive, is found sometimes in Cicero, not unfrequently in Plautus and Livy, but is rare otherwise.

<sup>3</sup> Erat spatium dierum fere triginta ante Kal. Dec. (C. Verr. 2. 39.)

<sup>4</sup> Hoc intermisso spatio duas fossas xv pedes latas eadem altitudine perduxit. (Cæs. G. 7. 72.)

Fossas pedum xxx in latitudinem complures facere instituit.

(Cæs. Civ. 1. 61.)

<sup>5</sup> Compendi facere, 'to make of saving,' 'a saving of,' i.e. 'to save,' also in Pl. Asin. 307, Bacch. 183, Pers. 471; Pseud. 1141. Quisquis es, adulescens, operam fac compendi quærere. Compare ib. 605, Quisquis es, compendium ego te facere pultandi volo, and Rud. 180. (In Truc. 2. 4. 26, Si quid tibi compendi facere possim, &c.; compendi depends on quid; cf. § 1296.) Compare Tacitus' use of pensi habere (§ 1301). 1307

<sup>6</sup> Facere lucri (in this order) also in Pl. Pers. 668, 713; Pern. 3. 5. 26; Truc. 3. 2. 22. (Facere damni, Pl. Merc. 419.) So lucri facere in other writers; e.g. Varr. R. R. 3. 4; Nep. Thras. 1; Plin. 33, § 44; Mart. 8. 10; Gai. ap. Dig. 11. 7. 29; &c. Lucri (as well as lucrum, lucra, plus lucri, plus lucelli, &c.) dare, facere, &c. is very frequently used in C. Verr. 3. 30—49; 75. 'Of profit,' = 'a profit of' (so much) 'over' or 'gain.' Possibly it is a bookkeeping term; and it may have originally stood for lucri nomine, which is found ib. 45 §§ 106, 107; and compare below, § 1327. Compare also æqui boni facere, § 1191; juris sui facere, § 1291. De lucro is used in similar sense in Ter. Ad. 823; C. Fam. 9. 17. 1; Liv. 40. 8.

<sup>7</sup> Nec nummorum accessionem cogebatur arator dare nec ternas quinquagesimas frumenti (§ 1304) addere. (C. Verr. 3. 49.)

<sup>8</sup> For the ablative of quality see § 1232. The genitive (nearly related to the genitive of possessor, &c. § 1278) is used rather of the sort and quality; the ablative of the special characteristics and condition. Thus the genitive (and not the ablative) is used of specific measurements of what a thing or person requires, and of the class to which it belongs. The ablative, and not the genitive, is used of the characteristic parts of a thing or person (especially of the bodily parts), and of its temporary state. Both, though in Cicero chiefly the ablative, are used of mental qualities. 1309

The genitive is rare in Plautus, Terence, and Lucretius.

<sup>9</sup> Fossa centum pedes longa. Puer tres annos natus. (§§ 1086, 1090.) 1311

<sup>10</sup> Babylon lx p. amplexa muris ducenos pedes altis, quinquagenos latis. (Plin. 6. § 121.)

<sup>11</sup> Cuicunimodi, alii modi, &c. (§§ 373, 382) are perhaps locatives.

<sup>12</sup> Simillimus ejus filius eodem est apud me pondere, quo fuit ille.

(C. Att. 10. 1.)

Continued on p. 129.

Miserunt Romam oratores pacis petendæ amicitiaque. (L. 9. 45.)  
 Num quem ex illo globo nobilitatis ad hoc negotium mittetis, hominem veteris prosapiæ ac multarum imaginum et nullius stipendi?  
 (Sall. J. 25.)

Tum T. Manlius Torquatus, priscæ ac nimis duræ severitatis, ita locutus fertur. (L. 22. 60.)

Novem annorum<sup>1</sup> a vobis profectus, post sextum et tricesimum annum rediit. (L. 30. 37.)

Eodem anno Q. Fabius moritur exactæ ætatis<sup>2</sup>. (L. 30. 26.)

5. Object of action implied in substantives and adjectives<sup>3</sup>. (*Objective genitive.*) Many of the *genitives* under this head appear in meaning to belong to § 1280 or § 1302.

(a) *Direct object, corresponding to an accusative or infinitive after the corresponding verb.*

For the personal pronouns in this sense are used the *genitive singular neuter of the adjective*, viz.: *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*<sup>4</sup>.

Timor hostium. Accusatio sceleratorum. Fuga periculi.

Precatio deum. Testis veneni deprehensi.

Cura rerum alienarum. Jactura suorum. (Cæs. G. 7. 26.)

Dicendi doctrina. (C. Or. 2. 1 fin.) Finis oppugnandi.

Scientia juris. Actor partium optimarum.

Retinete istam possessionem gratiæ, libertatis, suffragiorum, urbis, fori, ludorum, festorum dierum. (C. Agr. 2. 27.)

Omnino omnium horum vitiorum atque incommodorum una cautio est atque una provisio. (C. Læl. 21.)

Atheniensium populi potestas omnium rerum. (C. R. P. 1. 28.)

Pigritia singulos sepeliendi. Cunctatio invadendi. (L. 5. 48; 41.)

Cæsar honoris Divitiaci atque Hæduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum dixit. (Cæs. G. 1. 15.)

Quintus misit filium ad Cæsarem, non solum sui deprecatorem, sed etiam accusatorem mei. (C. Att. 11. 8.)

Patiens laboris atque frigoris. Capacissimus cibi vinique.

Nemo unquam tam sui despiciens fuit, ut, &c. (C. Or. 2. 89.)

Neuter sui protegendæ corporis memor erat. (L. 2. 6.)

Semper appetentes gloriæ atque avidi laudis fuistis. (C. Man. 3.)

Tenax propositi vir. Tempus edax rerum. (Ov. M. 15. 234.)

C. Memmius perfectus litteris sed Græcis, fastidiosus sane Latinarum. (C. Brut. 70.)

Peritus earum regionum. Achæi locorum prudentes.

*Continued on p. 130.*



<sup>1</sup> So Hoc ipsum vere gloriantem audiui in funere matris suæ quam extulit annorum nonaginta, cum ipse esset septem et sexaginta. (Nep. Att. 17.)

<sup>2</sup> P. Valerius anno post moritur, gloria ingenti, copiis familiaribus adeo exiguis, ut funeri sumptus deesset. (L. 2. 16.) Here the ablative is probably one of circumstance.

<sup>3</sup> The genitive often alternates with the accus. with ad; e. g.

1313

Ardor pugnandi (L. 2. 45, § 8), ad dimicandum (L. 4. 47); conatus exercitus comparandi (C. Phil. 10. 11), ad erumpendum (L. 9. 4); mora dimicandi (L. 24. 15), ad dimicandum (L. 34. 12.).

(Similarly with locus, spatium, tempus, signum, the genitive after which probably belongs to § 1280. For the dative, see § 1156.)

<sup>4</sup> Sometimes by a difference in the conception the object (whether direct or remoter) is regarded as a possession, &c., and then, instead of sui, nostri, &c., the adjective is used as an attribute, as in § 1278. 1315

Neque negligentia tua neque odio id fecit tuo. (Ter. Ph. 1016.)

Me Cn. Pompeius semper sua conjunctione dignissimum judicavit.

(C. Pis. 31.)

Ea quæ faciebat, tua se fiducia facere dicebat. (C. Verr. 5. 68.)

Patres conscripti, vos in mea injuria despecti estis. (Sall. J. 14. 8.)

L. Catilinam non modo invidiæ meæ, verum etiam vitæ periculo sustulisse. (C. Cat. 2. 2.)

Similarly other adjectives are rarely used, the specific reference denoted by the objective genitive being merged in the general notion of a quality.

Oblatam sibi facultatem putavit, ut ex invidia senatoria posset crescere. (C. Clu. 28.)

Eum, etiamsi natura a parentis similitudine abriperet, consuetudo tamen ac disciplina patris similem<sup>1</sup> esse cogeret. (C. *Verr.* 5. 12.)

Itaque plectri similem linguam nostri solent dicere, chordarum dentis, naris cornibus iis qui ad nervos resonant in cantibus.

(C. *N. D.* 2. 59.)

Alius alii tanti facinoris consciū. (Sall. *G.* 22.)

Ignarus rerum omnium. Sui negotii bene gerens. (C. *Quint.* 19.)

Compos voti. Impotens regendi equi. (L. 35. 11.)

Jurisdictio. Juris consultus<sup>2</sup>. Juris prudentia.

Indoctusque pilæ discive trochive quiescit. (Hor. *A. P.* 380.)

(b) *Remoter object, corresponding to a dative (rare), or ablative or prepositional phrases after the corresponding verb. (The adjectives meus, &c. are rarely used in this sense as attributes.)*

Vacatio<sup>3</sup> muneris. Contentio<sup>4</sup> honorum. (C. *Off.* 1. 25.)

Di quibus imperium est animarum. (Verg. *A.* 6. 264.)

Hæc res omnem dubitationem adventus legionis expulit.

(Cæs. *G.* 5. 48.)

Inimicitiae ex reipublicæ dissensione<sup>5</sup> susceptæ. (C. *Sest.* 33.)

Hæc civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis.

(Cæs. *G.* 7. 59.)

Maxima inlecebra est peccandi impunitatis spes. (C. *Mil.* 16.)

Pompeium a Cæsaris conjunctione avocabam. (C. *Phil.* 2. 10.)

Studiosus literarum. Mens interrita leti. (Ov. *M.* 10. 616.)

Incertus sententiae. Trepidi rerum suarum. (L. 5. 11.)

Anxia furti. (Ov. *M.* 1. 623.) Dubius salutis (Ib. 15. 438.)

Ambiguus futuri. (Tac. *H.* 3. 43.) Profugus regni. (Id. *A.* 15. 1.)

(6) *Thing in point of which<sup>6</sup> a term is applied to a person: after adjectives in poets and later writers, especially Tacitus.*

Leporum disertus puer et facetiarum. (Catull. 12. 9.)

Ingens ipse virium atque animi. (Sall. ap. Arus. p. 236.)

Aevi maturus. (Verg. *A.* 5. 73.) Seri studiorum. (Hor. *S.* 1. 10. 21.)

Mamurius morum fabræne exactior artis? (Ov. *F.* 3. 383.)

Capitis minor. (Hor. *Od.* 3. 5. 42.) Judicii rectus. (Sen. *Dial.* 7. 6.)

Modicus virium. (Vell. 1. 12.) Irritus legationis. (Tac. *H.* 4. 32.)

Occultus odii. (Tac. *A.* 4. 7.) Spernendus morum. (Ib. 14. 40.)

Ambiguus pudoris ac metus. (Ib. 2. 40.)

Manifesta vitæ<sup>7</sup>. (Ib. 12. 51.) Linguae ferox. (H. 1. 35.)

*Continued on p. 132.*

<sup>1</sup> With *similis* is found the genitive always in Plautus and Terence; the dative almost always in Vergil, Horace, Ovid. When the object is a god, man, or beast, Cicero and his age, with comparatively few exceptions, use the genitive; when the object is a thing, the genitive and dative indiscriminately. Later and later writers use the dative quite as often of both classes. The personal pronoun is always in the genitive.

<sup>2</sup> The pass. part. *consultus* is justified by the frequent use of a personal accus. after *considerare*, and by Cicero's paraphrase, *qui de jure civili consulti solent*. (C. Ferr. l. 46.)

The genitive as a direct object after *consultus* is justified by such expressions as

*Rem nulli obscuram consultis*. (Verg. A. 11. 344.)

*Idem in pace, si jura consideres, peritissimas*. (L. 39. 49.)

<sup>3</sup> *Vacatio a belli administratione*. (L. 23. 32.)

<sup>4</sup> *Est inter eos non de terminis sed de tota possessione contentio*.

(U. Ac. 2. 43.)

<sup>5</sup> *Fuit inter peritissimos homines summa de jure dissensio*.

(U. Or. 1. 56.)

<sup>6</sup> This usage has arisen probably from three or four sources combined, viz. the locative use of *animi* (§ 1166), the oblique genitive (§§ 1312—1316), the genitive of the secondary object (esp. §§ 1326, 1334—1336), and perhaps the Greek usages.

*Animi*, "at heart," "in spirit," is used with *angere*, Plaut. *Epid.* 3. l. 6; C. Ferr. 2. 34; *aut Fim.* 16. 14; *Brus.* 2 *animos*; *dis-*, *ex-*, *ir-*, *tr-*, *adi-*, Plaut. *Aut.* 106; *Mil.* 1062, 1280; *Epid.* 3. 3. 8; *Eud.* 339; *Ter.* 4. d. 610; *Ph.* 187; *fallere*, *Ter. Eun.* 274 (*fallus animis*), and *acc* *me animi fallis* thrice in *Lucr.* l. 136; 922; 3. 37; *pendere*, Plaut. *Merc.* 127; 161; *Ter. Hunc.* 727; C. F. D. 1. 40 (MSS. *animus*); 4. 14; *Ley.* l. 3; *Aut.* 8. 5; 11. 12; 16. 12; *Cael. ap. C. Fim.* 3. 5; perhaps also in L. 7. 30 (MSS. *animis*); *suspensos*, L. 8. 13, § 17.

More or less similarly with *aeger* (L. l. 58; 2. 36, &c.); *anxius* Sall. *J.* 55; *cæcus*, Quint. l. 10, § 29; *confusus* *statu incertus* (L. l. 7); *dubius* (Verg. G. 3. 289); *eurgæus* (Verg. A. 11. 417); *felix* *Juv.* 14. 119; *fidens* (Verg. A. 3. 202; *furens* *id.* 5. 202); *infelix* *id.* 4. 520; *integer* (Hor. S. 2. 3. 220); *lassus* (Plaut. *Cuc.* 2. l. 8); *maturus* (Verg. A. 9. 246); *nimis* (L. 6. 11; Sen. *Ben.* 5. 6); *præceps* (Verg. A. 9. 445); *præstans* (Verg. A. 12. 19); *terrificus* (L. 7. 34); *viectus* (Verg. G. 4. 491).

Probably *desipiebam mentis* Plaut. *Epid.* l. 2. 35) and *Satin tu sanus mentis aut animi tu* (*Trin.* 454) are due to false analogy.

<sup>7</sup> The genitive after *manifestus* belongs originally to § 1326.

Continued on p. 133.

## (B) DEPENDENT ON VERBS.

1. Secondary object, of the thing, *after certain verbs, which, if transitive, have also a direct object of the person.*

(a) *The matter charged*<sup>1</sup>; *after verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting.*

Ambitus alterum accusavit. (C. *Læl.* 7.)

Potestne heres, quod furtum antea factum est, furti recte agere.  
(C. *Fam.* 7. 22.)

Dolabellam consularem et triumphalem repetundarum postulavit.  
(Suet. *Jul.* 4.)

Non quisquis hominem occidit cædis tenetur. (Quint. 5. 14. 11.)

C. Verrem insinuat avaritiæ et audaciæ. (C. *Verr.* 1. 49.)

Hic furti se adligat. (Ter. *Eun.* 809.)

Itaque et majestatis absoluti sunt permulti, quibus damnatis de pecuniis repetundis lites majestatis essent æstimatæ.  
(C. *Clu.* 41.)

Condemnari sponsonis necesse est, si fateatur esse dejectum.  
(C. *Cæcin.* 31.)

Dixit, damnatam voti benignitate deum, exsolvere id velle.  
(L. 39. 9.)

In pariete communi demoliendo damni infecti promisit. (C. *Top.* 4.)

Senatus nec liberavit ejus culpæ regem neque arguit. (L. 41. 19.)

Purgabant civitatem omnis facti dictique hostilis adversus Romanos. (L. 37. 28.)

*Compare* Capitis se anquirere dicebat, quoad vel capitis vel pecuniæ<sup>2</sup> judicasset privato. (L. 26. 3.)

*So also after adjectives and participles (besides those which follow the usage of their verbs).*

Quos sacrilegii compertos in vinculis Romam misit. (L. 32. 1.)

De confessis sicuti de manifestis rerum capitalium more majorum supplicium sumendum. (Sall. *C.* 52.)

Videbatur suspectum jam nimix spei Seianum ultra extulisse.  
(Tac. *A.* 3. 29.)

Insons culpæ cladis hodiernæ. (L. 22. 49.) Reus avaritiæ.

Opportuna dividenda præfectis sunt, ut suæ quisque partis tutandæ reus esset. (L. 25. 30.)

Duo rei locationis in solidum esse possunt.

(Ulp. *Dig.* 19. 2. 13, § 9.)

*Continued on p. 134.*

<sup>1</sup> *The matter charged is also expressed*

1323

(a) *by crimine, actione, and the like with epithet or genitive;*

Si iniquus es in me iudex, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine.

(C. Fam. 2. 1.)

Hoc præceptum officii diligenter tenendum est, ne quem umquam innocentem iudicio capitis arcessas. (C. Off. 2. 14.)

An commotæ crimine mentis absolves hominem, et sceleris damnabis eundem? (Hor. Sat. 2. 3. 278.)

Titius Seio vel mandati vel negotiorum gestorum nomine obligatus est. (Javol. Dig. 3. 5. 28.)

Qui tabulas testamenti depositas ita delevit, ut legi non possit, depositi actione et ad exhibendum tenetur. (Julian. Dig. 9. 2. 42.)

(b) *by ablative with preposition de;*

Nomen Sex. Roscii de parricidio deferebant. (C. Rosc. Am. 10.)

Blattius de proditione Dasium appellabat. (L. 26. 33.)

Per litteras purgat Cæsarem de interitu Marcelli. (C. Att. 13. 10.)

(c) *by making it an ordinary direct object; e. g.*

Inertiam accusas adolescentium, qui istam artem non ediscant.

(C. Or. 1. 58.)

Memineris excusare tarditatem litterarum mearum. (C. Att. 15. 26.)

(d) *For scelere damnari see § 1229.*

<sup>2</sup> *The genitive of the penalty appears to be confined to the words* 1325  
capitis (accusare, arcessere, absolvere, damnare, condemnare, Cic. Or. 1. 54, Deiot. 11; Quint. 9; L. 26, 33; Nep. Milt. 7; Paus. 2; Alc. 5; Eum. 5); pecuniæ (judicari, L. 6. 14, 23. 14; damnare, Gell. 20. 1), capitalis poenæ (damnat, L. 42. 43). *The matter charged is in these expressions to be regarded as a debt.* Cf. A quoquomque pecunia certa credita ...petitur, sei is...in jure non responderit...tum de eo siremps jus esto...atque utei esset sei...ejus pecuniæ...jure damnatus esset (Leg. Rubr. xxi. 13.). Aris confessi ac debiti judicatis (Gell. 20. 1. § 38). Hence damnatus longi Sisyphus laboris (Hor. Od. 2. 14. 19). In pecuniæ captæ reum accusarunt (L. 38. 51), pecuniæ publicæ condemnatus (C. Flacc. 18), we have genitives of the crime. In L. 26. 3 there appears to be a great confusion of crime and penalty: (see the whole chapter). For octupli, quanti, &c. see § 1190.

*It may very well be that this genitive (of crime, penalty, &c.) was* 1327  
originally dependent on crimine, iudicio, or some such word, and has grown into a common phrase through its use in legal formulae. The elliptical use in such expressions is seen in the common phrase for assassination 'inter sicarios,' e. g. Qui inter sicarios et de beneficiis accusabant. (C. Rosc. A. 32.)

*Continued on p. 135.*



(b) *The object exciting mental emotion*<sup>1</sup>: after **misereror**, and the impersonals **miseret**, **pænitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, **tædet**. In early writers, rarely, after a few other verbs.

Aliquando miseremini sociorum. (C. Verr. 1. 28.)

Dicebatur, sordidati rei non miseritos, candidam togam invito offerre. (L. 27. 34.)

Me quidem miseret parietum ipsorum atque tectorum.

(C. Phil. 2. 28.)

Num te fortunæ tuæ, num amplitudinis, num claritatis pænitebat?

(C. Phil. 1. 13.)

Ipsius pænitere homines apparuit, quem autem in ejus locum substituerent locum deesse. (L. 23. 3.)

Sunt homines, quos libidinis infamiæque suæ neque pudeat neque tædeat. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 12.)

Pudet me deorum hominumque. (L. 3. 19.)

Pudet optimi exercitus, qui si pacis, id est, timoris nostri nomen audierit, ut non referat pedem, sistet certe. (C. Phil. 12. 3.)

Me civitatis morum piget tædetque. (Sall. J. 4.)

Decemvirorum vos pertæsum est. (L. 3. 67.)

Neque hujus sis veritus<sup>2</sup> feminæ primariæ. (Ter. Ph. 971.)

Fastidit mei. (Plaut. Aul. 243.) Studet tui. (ap. C. N. D. 3. 29.)

*The following appear to be mere Græcisms*<sup>3</sup>:

13

Justitiæne prius mirer, belline laborum? (Verg. A. 11. 126.)

Neque ille sepositi ciceris nec longæ invidit avenæ. (Hor. S. 2. 6. 84.)

(c) *The thing remembered, &c.* after **memini**, **reminiscor**, **obliviscor**, **admoneo**<sup>4</sup>, &c.

Veteris proverbii admonitu vivorum memini, nec tamen Epicuri licet oblivisci, si cupiam. (C. Fin. 5. 1.)

Alii reminiscetes veteris famæ, ætatis miserebantur. (Nep. 19. 4.)

Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suæ.

(Sall. Cat. 21.)

Nemo est in Sicilia quin tui sceleris et crudelitatis ex illa oratione commonefiat. (C. Verr. 5. 43.)

Certio rem me sui consilii fecit. (C. Att. 9. 2.)

Venit mihi Platonis in mentem. (C. Fin. 5. 1.)

*Continued on p. 136.*

<sup>1</sup> An indefinite object of emotion is often expressed with *pœnitet*, *pudet*, *piget*, by a neuter pronoun in the nominative singular.

*Sapientis est enim proprium, nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facere.*

(C. T. D. 5. 28.)

*Nil, Charine, te quidem quicquam pudet.* (Pl. Merc. 912.)

*Nimio id quod pudet facilius fertur, quam illud quod piget.*

(Pl. Ps. 281.)

*Nequid plus minusve facit, quod nos post pigeat.* (Ter. Ph. 554.)

*Terence has once the plural: Non te hæc pudent? (Ad. 754.) So also Lucan 8. 494. (The passage of Plaut. Stich. 51, hæc conditio pœnitet is not in the Ambros. MSS.)*

(An infinitive or substantive clause is not uncommonly subject to these impersonals, and expresses the object of emotion.)

<sup>2</sup> The usual construction of *vereor* (genitive once also in Cic. Att. 8. 4), *fastidio*, *studeo*, is seen in

*Intellexerat vereri vos se et metuere ita, ut æquomst Jovem.*

(Pl. Amph. 23.)

*Fastidire lacus et rivos ausus apertos.* (Hor. Ep. 2. 3. 11.)

*Cur quemquam ut studeat tibi roges?* (C. Mur. 36.)

<sup>3</sup> The regular Latin construction has with *miror* the accusative; *invidio* with the dative of the person or thing envied; or, combined with a dative of the person, either an accusative or ablative of the thing grudged, or, of the subject matter of envy, the ablative with *in*. See C. T. D. 3. 9, Quint. 9. 3. 1 (ed. Halm.), who both speak of the construction.

*Mirari satis hominis negligentiam non queo.* (C. Att. 10. 5.)

*Honori inviderunt meo.* (C. Agr. 2. fin.)

*Forsit honorem jure mihi invideat quisvis.* (Hor. S. 1. 6. 49.)

*Non inviderant laude sua mulieribus viri Romani.* (L. 2. 40.)

*Ego vero ita fecissem, nisi interdum in hoc Crasso paulum inviderem.*

(C. Or. 2. 56.)

<sup>4</sup> *Memini*, *reminiscor*, *obliscor* often, and *recordor* always (unless C. Pis. 6 be an exception) have the object in the accusative. A neut. accus. (under § 1092) or abl. with *de* is common after *recordor*, *moneo*, &c.

*Qui sunt boni cives, nisi qui patriæ beneficia meminerunt?*

(C. Planc. 33.)

*Cinnam memini; vidi Sullam.* (C. Phil. 5. 6.)

*Dulcis moriens reminiscitur Argos.* (Verg. A. 10. 782.)

*Tu oblivisci nihil soles nisi injurias.* (C. Lig. 12.)

*Oro ut Terentiam moneatis de testamento.* (C. Att. 11. 16.)

*In utramque partem in mentem multa veniebant.* (C. Fam. 11. 29.)

Continued on p. 137.

(d) *Thing lacking or supplied after impleo, compleo, repieo*<sup>1</sup>, *iegeo, indigeo*<sup>2</sup>; *potio (old), potior*<sup>3</sup> and in early writers (rarely) some few others<sup>4</sup>.

Tullia celeriter adolescentem temeritatis suæ implet. (L. 1. 46.)

Lamentari ait illam miseram quia tis egeat, quia te careat.

(Pl. Mil. 1033.)

Virtus plurimæ commentationis et exercitationis indiget.

(C. Fin. 3. 15.)

Eam nunc potivit pater servitutis<sup>5</sup>. (Pl. Amph. 178.)

Nec efficere potest ut Adherbalis potiretur<sup>6</sup>. (Sall. J. 25.)

Nec satis audiebam nec sermonis fallebat tamen.

(Plaut. Epid. 2. 2. 55.)

Me omnium jam laborum levas. (Plaut. Rud. 247.)

Qui huic omnium rerum ipse semper credit. (Plaut. As. 459.)

*So also after adjectives*<sup>7</sup>:

Domus erat aleatoribus referta, plena<sup>8</sup> ebriorum. (C. Phil. 2. 27.)

Referta quondam Italia Pythagoreorum fuit. (C. Or. 2. 37.)

Intus sum omnium rerum satur<sup>9</sup>. (Ter. Ad. 765.)

Circa viam haud procul Capua omnium egena<sup>10</sup> corpora humi prostraverunt. (L. 9. 6.)

Sine me vocivum<sup>11</sup> tempus nequod dem mihi laboris. (Ter. Haut. 90.)

Inops<sup>12</sup> senatus auxilii humani ad deos populum ac vota vertit.

(L. 3. 7.)

Portoria quæ vellent, caperent, dum eorum immunes<sup>13</sup> Romani essent.

(L. 38. 44.)

*The following appear to be mere Græcisms*<sup>14</sup>:

Abstineti irarum calidæque rixæ. (Hor. Od. 3. 27. 69.)

Desine mollium tandem querelarum. (Ib. 2. 9. 18.)

Dulci laborum decipitur sono. (Ib. 2. 13. 38.)

2. *For the so-called genitive expressing place where,* see § 1168.

*For pluris, minoris, assis, and other expressions of value,* see § 1186.

*Continued on p. 138.*

<sup>1</sup> *impleo*, *compleo* usually, *repleo* nearly always (but *Liv.* 6. 25), <sup>135</sup> have the dative. (In *Livy* the *gen.* with *impleo* is the more usual.) See § 1216.

<sup>2</sup> *ego* (in *Cicero* always) and *inilgeo* often, have dative, see § 1212. (*Egeo* with *genitive* often in *Sallust*, rarely in *Livy*.)

<sup>3</sup> *potior* often has the dative and in old writers *divitiarum* *penitior* and *ablativus* the *accusative*. See §§ 1216, 1222.

<sup>4</sup> In *Liv.* 2. 533—545 we have *penitior* after *secrets*, among a number of similar ablatives: *Scire licet quidam tam constare orbis colore, quam sine colore ille quidam contiguo remota: nec minus licet animum cognoscere posse sapientem, quam quæ sunt aliis rebus privata nature. Sed ne forte putet solæ spoliata colore corpora prima manere, etiam secreta corporis sunt et frigoris cramine calidique vaporis, et sonitu sterila et sacro jejuna feruntur. In l. 194 secreta cælo.*

<sup>5</sup> *Hoc in mari fluctibus piscum novo me uberi compovira.* (Pl. *Rud.* 911.)

<sup>6</sup> In different meaning ('fall into power of') sometimes in *Plautus*: e.g. *Genas tuas potuisti hostium* (Pl. *Cup.* 140, et. 90, 705; *Epid.* 4. 1. 35).

<sup>7</sup> Some of these *penitior* may be referred to other words: e. g. after *imago*, *immanis* see § 1206; after *plenus*, *victus*, *satur* see § 1218, *etc.*

The analogy of these words is followed in *lasso rerum* (Verg. *A.* 1. 179; *lasso maris et varum et multique* (Hor. *Od.* 2. 6. 7); *magna vis camelorum onera frumenti* (Tac. *A.* 15. 12). The *ablativus* is the regular case.

The *ablativus* is also found after these adjectives; see §§ 1212, 1263. <sup>139</sup>

<sup>8</sup> *Plenus annis ætæ, plenus humoribus.* (Plin. *Ep.* 2. 1.) See Quint. 9. 3. 1.

<sup>9</sup> *Tunc iste nepos satur anseris ætæ.* (Pers. 6. 71.)

<sup>10</sup> *Nec aliud subditi quam castellum circumdanti æquum.* (Tac. *A.* 12. 46; et. 15. 12. *Elaborare aliusque penitus.*)

<sup>11</sup> *Consilium nostrum spero victum periculis fore.* (C. *Att.* 10. 16.)

<sup>12</sup> *On. Lentulus non tardus sententiæ, non inope verbi.* (C. *Bron.* 70.)

<sup>13</sup> *Una centuria hæc ego, immanis militum.* (L. 1. 43.)

<sup>14</sup> The regular *Latin* construction with these verbs is seen in

*Quotus enim quisque qui, impunitate et immolatione communis propitiâ, abstineret possit impia.* (C. *Off.* 3. 17.) But also occurs. *Tex. Hou.* 373.

*Libenter medicabile æterni desinerem.* (C. *Fam.* 7. 1.)

Continued on p. 138.

## CHAPTER XII.

## USE OF INFINITIVE.

THE infinitive, or, as it is generally called, the *infinitive mood* of a verb, is an indeclinable verbal substantive, distinguished from ordinary verbal substantives by being primarily and usually not abstract, but concrete, and representing an action or fact or event in connection with the person or thing of which it is predicated.

Its substantival character is shewn in its own construction. It is used as object, as predicate both oblique and direct, and as subject, so far as a substantive in the accusative or nominative case would be so used. It is used as direct primary predicate, only as a noun may be predicated without the intervention of a finite verb (§ 1009). But it is not properly used as a genitive, dative, or ablative case, or as an accusative after a preposition. The gerund is used instead. (See however §§ 1360—1363.)

On the other hand its verbal character is shewn partly by its containing the notion of time, partly by the construction and nature of words dependent on it. Its object is in the accusative or dative, not genitive case; it is qualified by adverbs, not adjectives; and it readily admits of the same enlargements and qualifications by means of phrases or subordinate sentences that a finite verb does. But it does not, either by itself, or with its subject, except when used as primary predicate, form an independent sentence, and it consequently has its subject, when expressed separately from that of the verb on which it depends, not in the nominative, but in the accusative case.

Compare 'Tullus bene fidit rebus suis' with 'Tullus diseit bene fidere rebus suis,' and 'Discimus Tullum bene fidere rebus suis,' 'Discit bene fidere rebus suis' with 'Discit bonam fiduciam rerum suarum.'

The ordinary usages of the infinitive will be given first (A); then its use as a primary predicate (B); lastly, its poetic and rare use instead of a gerund or prepositional expression (C).



## (A) The Infinitive is used as

1344

1. Direct object to a verb, or (sometimes) to an equivalent phrase.

(a) The verbs which have an infinitive for object are chiefly such as involve a reference to another action of the same subject, e.g. verbs expressing will, power, duty, purpose, custom, commencement, continuance, &c.

(Some of these verbs, e.g. *possum*, *soleo*, *desisto*, *insuesco*, &c., are not used with a noun put as an object in the accusative.)

Avi senectutem tueri et tegere debebat. (C. *Deiot.* i. 1.)

Nemo tam improbus inveniri poterit. (C. *Cur.* i. 2.)

Solebat narrare Pompeius se, cum Rhodum venisset, audire voluisse Posidonium. (C. *T. D.* 2. 25.)

Bona pars non ungues ponere curat. (Hor. *A. P.* 297.)

Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoria uti nescis. (L. 22. 51.)

Jugurtha apud Numantiam Latine loqui didicerat. (Sall. *J.* 101.)

Ibi primum insuevit exercitus populi Romani delubra spoliare.

(Sall. *C.* 11.)

Pompeius quoque statuerat prælio decertare. (Cæs. *G.* i. 86.)

Antium me ex Formiano recipere cogito. (C. *Att.* 2. 3.)

Nemo alteri concedere in animum inducebat. (L. 1. 17.)

Obstinaverant animis vincere aut mori. (L. 23. 29.)

Ea non aggrediar narrare. (L. 22. 54.)

Jugurtha omni Numidiæ imperare parat. (Sall. *J.* 13.)

Cæsar maturat ab urbe proficisci. (Cæs. *G.* i. 7.)

Occupavit Scipio Padum traicere. (L. 21. 39.)

Nocte prope tota P. Sempronius non destitit monere. (L. 22. 6c.)

Marcellus vestigiis institit sequi. (L. 27. 2.)

Solum quod de se movetur, quia numquam deseritur a se, numquam ne moveri quidem desinit. (C. *R. P.* 6. 25.)

Hancine ego vitam parsi perdere? (Ter. *Hec.* 282.)

Veretur quicquam aut facere aut eloqui, quod parum virile videatur. (C. *Fin.* 2. 14.)

Non erubescere collegam in sacerdotio habere. (L. 10. 8.)

Tu lucem aspicere audes? tu hos intueri. (C. *Or.* 2. 55.)

Desperatis Hippocrates vetat adhibere medicinam. (C. *Att.* i. 6. 15.) 1345

Cæsar receptui cani (or canere) jussit. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 47; L. 29. 7.)

Imperavi egomet mihi omnia adsentari. (Ter. *Eun.* 252.)

Res autem monet cavere ab illis magis, quam quid in illos statuamus consultare. (Sall. *C.* 52.)

Nemo suaserit studiosis dicendi adolescentibus in gestu discendo histrionum more elaborare. (C. *Or.* 1. 59.)

Pars eorum occidisse tribunos plebis, plerique eadem in vos fecisse pro munimento habent. (Sall. *J.* 31, § 13.)

Magni mihi muneris instar germanam vidisse dabis. (Ov. *M.* 6. 443.)

Hæc fere dicere habui de natura deorum. (C. *N. D.* 3. 39.)

Juppiter, da flammam evadere classi. (Verg. *A.* 5. 689.)

Ganymedes Jovi bibere ministrabat. (C. *T. D.* 1. 26.)

Galli consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 26.)

Dissimulare nos magis humanumst, quam dare operam id scire.

(Ter. *Hec.* 553.)

*So in verse, after a verbal substantive.* (Cf. § 1360.)

Si tantus amor casus cognoscere nostros. (Verg. *A.* 2. 10.)

(b) *As object to a verb of saying or thinking.* This is rare, except where the subject of the infinitive is the same as the subject of the principal verb (i.e. as in English, 'he speaks of doing' instead of 'his doing').

Cum id nescire Mago diceret, nihil facilius scitu est, inquit Hanno. (L. 23. 13.)

Nihil habent tuæ litteræ, quod definitum sit, nisi me voltu et taciturnitate significasse tibi non esse amicum. (C. *Fam.* 3. 8.)

Dividere argenti nummos dixit in viros. (Pl. *Aul.* 108.)

Quæ convenere in Andriam ex Perinthia fatetur transtulisse atque usum pro suis. (Ter. *And.* 14.)

Re nuntiata ad suos, quæ imperarentur, facere dixerunt.

(Cæs. *G.* 2. 32.)

Dicit unus et alter testis breviter: nihil interrogatur: præco dixisse pronuntiat. (C. *Verr.* 1. 30.)

Hi fratres in suspicionem venerant suis civibus fanum expilasse Apollinis. (C. *Verr.* 4. 13.)

*Without (rarely with) esse the future and (of deponents also) the past participle are so used in the accusative.*

Nec ille ad me rediit: oblitum credidi. (C. *Fam.* 9. 2. 1.)

Illi, quo vellem, descensuros pollicebantur. (C. *Verr.* 1. 38.)

De hoc Stratone quæsituram esse dixit. (C. *Clu.* 63.)

Ita enim pepigerant, quotannis juraturos in verba Philippi.

(L. 32. 5.)

Alco, insciis Saguntinis, precibus aliquid moturum ratus, ad Hannibalem transit. (L. 21. 12.)

(c) *As object of the thing, to a verb which has also a direct personal object.*

*These verbs are doceo, assuefacio, jubeo, veto, sino, arguo, insimulo, and sometimes cogo, moneo, hortor, impedio, prohibeo, &c.*

Docebo Rullum posthac tacere. (C. Agr. 3. 2.)

Cæsar Helvetios suum adventum expectare jussit. (Cæs. G. 1. 27.)

Inprobitas, cujus in animo versatur, numquam sinit eum respirare, numquam acquiescere. (C. Fin. 1. 16.)

Insimulant hominem fraudandi causa discessisse. (C. Verr. 2. 24.)

Plura de Jugurtha scribere dehortatur me fortuna mea. (Sall. J. 24.)

Equos eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 2.)

*This infinitive object is still retained when the verb is put in the passive voice, or gerundive.*

Num sum etiam nunc vel Græce loqui vel Latine docendus?

(C. Fin. 2. 5.)

Nolani muros portasque adire<sup>1</sup> vetiti sunt. (L. 23. 16.)

Prohibiti estis in provincia vestra pedem ponere. (C. Lig. 8.)

Nec videre advenam in sua terra assueti erant. (L. 27. 39.)

*A secondary predicate of the subject of the principal verb, though in sense following the objective infinitive, conforms to its subject, i.e. is in the nominative<sup>2</sup>. Such a nominative is, however, rare after an active verb of saying or thinking. Cf. § 1347.*

Fieri studebam ejus doctrina doctior. (C. Lel. 1. 1.)

Ne concupieris perversissimam gloriam infelicissima videri.

(Sen. Dial. 6. 5.)

Jubetur rura suburbana indictis comes ire Latinis.

(Hor. Ep. 1. 7. 76.)

Homerus solus appellari poeta meruit. (Vell. 1. 5.)

Phaseius ille, quem videtis, hospites, ait fuisse navium celerrimus.

(Catull. 4. 2.)

Uxor invicti Jovis esse nascis. (Hor. Od. 3. 27. 73.)

<sup>1</sup> This infinitive must be distinguished from that in § 1353. When the subject of the finite passive verb is the person receiving the command or prohibition, the infinitive belongs here: when it is the person who, or thing which, is part of the object of the command, the infinitive belongs to § 1351 or 1353. In the latter case the infinitive is always in the passive voice.

<sup>2</sup> Comp. Greek, e.g. διὰ τὸ σφόδρ ἐλατ. &c.

2. As oblique predicate, with its subject in the accusative case, the whole expression forming the object after a verb. 135

The verbs upon which such expressions depend are such as naturally have a fact or event for their object, e.g. verbs expressing declaration, opinion, knowledge, order, wish, permission, satisfaction, sorrow, surprise, &c. Sometimes expressions equivalent to a verb, e.g. *testis sum*, *certior factus sum*, &c. or verbal substantives, e.g. *opinio*, *spes*, &c., have a similar object.

A neuter pronoun (*id*, *illud*, Engl. that) is sometimes found in apposition to the clause, and corresponding to the Article (originally, demonstrative pronoun) in Greek. Occasionally such pronoun is not the object, but dependent on a preposition.

*Sentiri hæc putat, ut calere ignem, nivem esse album, mel dulce.*

(C. Fin. I. 9.)

*Fore me quidem in discrimine video.* (C. Att. 14. 13.)

*Illud a Milonis inimicis dicitur, cædem, in qua P. Clodius occisus est, senatum judicasse contra rempublicam esse factam.*

(C. Mil. 5.)

*Suspicio te eisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum, interdum gravius commoveri.* (C. Sen. 1.)

*Ex nostris ducibus Q. Maximum accepimus facile celare, tacere, dissimulare, insidiari, præripere hostium consilia.*

(C. Off. I. 30.)

*Id ei justum exsilium esse scivit plebs.* (L. 26. 3.)

*Admonemus cives nos eorum esse, et, si non easdem opes habere, eandem tamen patriam incolere.* (L. 4. 3.)

*Memini Catonem anno ante, quam est mortuus, mecum et cum Scipione disserere.* (C. Læl. 3.)

*Vocari Crispinum jussit.* (L. 25. 18.)

*Non hunc in vincula duci, non ad mortem rapi imperabis?*

(C. Cat. I. 11.)

*In his libris volt efficere animos esse mortales.* (C. T. D. I. 31.)

*Sapientem civem me et esse et numerari volo.* (C. Fam. I. 9, § 18.)

*Tibi favemus, te tua virtute frui cupimus.* (C. Brut. 97.)

*Nullos honores mihi nisi verborum decerni sino.* (C. Att. 5. 21.)

*Ipsè conficior venisse tempus, cum jam nec fortiter nec prudenter quicquam facere possim.* (C. Att. 10. 15.)

*Incredibili sum dolore adfectus, tale ingenium in tam misera fortuna versari.* (C. Att. 11. 17.)

*Auctores sumus, tutam ibi majestatem Romani nominis fore.*

(L. 2. 48.)

*Opinio sublata est Crassum non doctissimum, Antonium plane indoctum fuisse.* (C. Or. 2. 2.)

Magna me spes tenet hunc locum portum ac perfugium futurum.

(C. Clu. 3.)

Narrabat Posidonium graviter et copiose de hoc ipso, nihil esse bonum, nisi quod esset honestum, cubantem disputavisse.

(C. T. D. 2. 25.)

Quid censes hunc ipsum S. Roscium, quo studio et qua intelligentia esse in rusticis rebus? (C. Rosc. Am. 17.)

*This use of the infinitive is extensively applied in reporting speeches or thoughts, frequently without dicebat, existimabat, &c. being expressed. (See Chap. XXIV.)*

### 3. As direct (secondary) predicate.

1433

(a) *When the finite verb, which has an oblique sentence for object, is put in its passive voice and the subject of the infinitive becomes the subject of this passive verb, the infinitive and other oblique predicates become direct (secondary) predicates.*

(The personal (e.g. *dicor esse*) instead of the impersonal passive (e.g. *dicitur me esse*, cf. § 1356) is usual with *videor* and verbs of saying, thinking, commanding, especially in the uncompounded tenses, and occasionally used with verbs like *audior*, *intelligor*, *scribor*, &c.)

Videntur enim esse hæc paulo faciliora. (C. Att. 10. 17.)

Luna solis lumine conlustrari putatur. (C. Deo. 2. 43.)

Ex hoc di beati esse intelliguntur. (C. N. D. 1. 38.)

Lectitavisse Platonem studiose, audivisse etiam, Demosthenes dicitur. (C. Brax. 31.)

Tarquinius, cum restitui in regnum armis non potuisset, Cumas contulisse se dicitur. (C. T. D. 3. 12.)

Quantum jam annum regnante Tarquinio Superbo, in Italiam Pythagoras venisse reperitur. (C. R. P. 2. 15.)

In lautumias Syracusanas, si qui publice custodiendi sunt, etiam ex ceteris oppidis Siciliæ deduci imperantur. (C. Ferr. 3. 27.)

Jussus es renuntiari consul. (C. Phil. 2. 32.)

L. Papius Crassus primum Papius est vocari desitus.

(C. Fam. 9. 21.)

Neque cogi pugnare poterat rex. (L. 45. 41.)

(b) *With another infinitive or pronoun for subject.*

1434

Quid est agrum bene colere? bene arare. (Cato, R. R. 61.)

Ostentare hoc est, Romani, non gerere bellum. (L. 3. 2.)

Loquor enim de docto homine et erudito, cui vivere est cogitare.

(C. T. D. 5. 38.)



4. As subject of a sentence or in apposition to the subject; either (a) absolutely, or (b) with its own subject in the accusative case.

*The predicate of such a sentence is usually either est with a secondary predicate, or a verb denoting a quality; often an impersonal verb.*

(a) *Absolutely.*

Carere igitur hoc significat, egere eo quod habere velis; inest enim velle in carendo. (C. T. D. 1. 36.)

Facinus est vincere civem Romanum, scelus verberare, prope parri-  
cidium necare: quid dicam in crucem tollere? (C. Verr. 5. 66.)

Cadit igitur in sapientem et misereri et invidere. (C. T. D. 3. 10.)

Certum est deliberatumque omnia audacter libereque dicere.

(C. Rosc. Am. 11.)

Habet respublica tantum, quantum numquam mihi in mentem venit optare. (C. Fam. 12. 1.)

Quid est aliud quam relegationem pati. (L. 4. 4.)

Licet enim lascivire, dum nihil metuas. (C. R. P. 1. 40.)

Mos erat civitatis prædam dividere. (L. 5. 28.)

Nec vobis operæ est audire singula quæ passi sumus. (L. 29. 17.)

Hæc enim ipsa sunt honorabilia, salutari, adpeti, decedi, adsurgere,  
deduci, reduci, consuli. (C. Sen. 18.)

Quibusdā totum hoc displicet philosophari. (C. Fin. 1. 1.)

Armis disceptari cœptum est de jure publico. (C. Fam. 4. 4.)

Quod tibi cognosse in multis erit utile rebus nec sinet errantem  
dubitare. (Lucr. 1. 331.)

Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores. (Ov. Pont. 2. 9. 47.)

(b) *With its own subject in accusative case.*

Ipsū consulem Romæ manere optimum visum est. (L. 3. 4.)

Decet cariorem nobis esse patriam quam nosmet ipsos.

(C. Fin. 3. 19.)

Te hilari animo esse et prompto ad jocandum valde me juvat.

(C. Q. Fr. 2. 11.)

Est inusitatum regem reum capitis esse. (C. Dejot. 1. 1.)

Necesse est igitur legem haberi in rebus optimis. (C. Leg. 2. 5.)

Jugurthæ omnia Romæ venum ire in animo hæserat. (Sall. J. 28.)

Quos ferro trucidari oportebat, eos nondum voce volnero.

(C. Cat. 1. 4.)

Vereor ne aut celatum me illis ipsis non honestum, aut invitatum  
refugisse mihi sit turpissimum. (C. Phil. 2. 13.)

Volo Chrysippi uti similitudine de pilæ lusu, quam cadere non est  
dubium aut mittendis vitio aut excipientis. (Sen. Ben. 2. 17.)

Hoc fieri et oportet et opus est. (C. Att. 13. 25.)  
 Hæc benignitas etiam reipublicæ utilis est, redimi e servitute captos, locupletari tenviores. (C. Off. 2. 18.)  
 Eam gentem traditur fama agros ab Etruscis ante cultos possedis-  
 (L. 5. 33.)  
 Mihi nuntiabatur Parthos transisse Euphratem. (C. Fam. 15. 1.)  
 Quid hoc tota Sicilia est clarius, quam omnis Segestæ matronas et virgines convenisse? (C. Verr. 4. 35.)

(c) *With its own subject omitted, but with secondary oblique* 1357 *predicate expressed.*

*The secondary predicate is usually in the accusative; but if the person (or thing) which is the subject of the infinitive is expressed in the dative with the principal verb, the predicate conforms<sup>1</sup>.*

Non esse cupidum pecunia est: non esse emacem vectigal est.  
 (C. Par. 6. 3.)

Licet opera prodesse multis, beneficia petentem, commendantem iudicibus, magistratibus, vigilantem pro re alterius.  
 (C. Off. 2. 19.)

Frugi hominem dici non multum habet laudis in rege: fortem, justum, severum, gravem, magnanimum, largum, beneficum, liberalem—hæ sunt regiæ laudes, illa privata est. (C. Deiot. 9.)

Hoc doctoris intelligentis est, natura duce utentem, sic instituere ut Isocrates fecisse dicitur. (C. Brut. 56.)

In republica mihi neglegenti esse non licet. (C. Att. 1. 17.)

Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse. (L. 21. 44.)

Quo tibi, Tulli, sumere depositum clavum fierique tribuno?  
 (Hor. S. 1. 6. 25.)

In mediocribus esse poetis non homines, non di, non concessere columnæ, (Hor. A. P. 572,) *esse is object.*

5. In exclamations; *object or subject of verb understood.* 1358  
*Cf. § 1128. Used both with and without subject. Rare except in comic poets and Cicero.*

Tibi recte facere, quando quod facias perit! (Pl. Aul. 336.)

Adeon homines inmutarier ex amore, ut non cognoscas eundem esse? (Ter. Eun. 225.)

Ergo me potius in Hispania fuisse tum quam Formiis, quum tu profectus es ad Pompeium! (Cælius ap. Cic. Fam. 8. 17.)

At te Romæ non fore! (Cic. Att. 5. 20, § 7.)

<sup>1</sup> Exceptions are rare. Ter. Haut. 388. Cic. Balb. 12. Cæs. Civ. 3. 1. Ov. Her. 14. 4. Cf. Quint. IV. 4. 6; VII. 1. 19, ed. Halm.

Hoc non videre, cujus generis onus navis vehat, id ad gubernatoris artem nihil pertinere! (C. *Fin.* 4. 27.)

Huncine hominem delectatum esse nugis? (Cic. *Div.* 2. 13.)

Mene incepto desistere victam, nec posse Italia Teucrorum avertere regem? (Verg. *A.* 1. 37.)

Hæc ludibria religionum non pudere in lucem proferre, et vix pueris dignas ambages senes ac consulares fallendæ fidei exquirere!  
(L. 9. 11.)

(B) As primary predicate to a subject in the nominative case; to express the occurrence of actions without marking the order of time. Sometimes, where no limitation to particular persons is intended, no subject is expressed. This infinitive is frequent in animated language describing a scene. (*Historic infinitive*.)

*This usage is exactly analogous to the predication of one noun of another without expressing est, &c. (see § 1009 b).*

*The present infinitive only (also *odisse*, *meminisse*) is so used.*

Clamare omnes ex conventu neminem unquam in Sicilia fuisse Verrucium; ego instare, ut mihi responderet quis esset.  
(C. *Verr.* 2. 77.)

Circumspectare tum patriciorum vultus plebeii et inde libertatis captare auram, unde servitutem timuerant. Primores patrum odisse decemviros, odisse plebem; nec probare, quæ fierent, et credere, haud indignis accidere. (L. 3. 37.)

Tum spectaculum horribile in campis patentibus: sequi, fugere, occidi, capi; equi atque viri adflucti ac multi volneribus acceptis neque fugere posse neque quietem pati, niti modo ac statim concidere. (Sall. *J.* 101.)

Jamque dies consumptus erat, cum tamen barbari nihil remittere, atque, uti reges præceperant, acrius instare. (Ib. 98.)

Quia non potuerat eripere argentum ipse, a Diodoro erepta sibi vasa optime facta dicebat; minitari absenti; vociferari palam; lacrimas interdum vix tenere. (C. *Verr.* 4. 18.)

Jubet illos discedere et candelabrum relinquere. Rex primo nihil metuere, nihil suspicari; dies unus, alter, plures: non referri.  
(C. *Verr.* 4. 28.)

Risu omnes qui aderant emoriri; denique metuebant omnes jam me.  
(Ter. *Eun.* 432.)

Largitiones inde prædæque: et dulcedine privati commodi sensus malorum publicorum adimi. (L. 1. 54.)

(C) As genitive, or ablative, or adverbial accusative (*epexegetic infinitive*). The gerund (or gerundive) or supine is used in ordinary prose.

(1) *Dependent on substantives.*

This is found only in a few expressions, except after verbal substantives, or phrases equivalent to a verb (§ 1345).

Numquid modi futurum est eum querere? (Pl. Men. 233.)

Velut numine aliquo defensa castra oppugnare iterum religio fuit.

(L. 2. 61.)

Suadebant amici Cæsennæ nullam esse rationem amittere ejusmodi occasionem. (C. Cic. 5.)

Nullum est periculum, quod sciam, stipularier. (Pl. Ps. 10-6.)

Tempus est jam majorem conari. (L. 6. 14.)

Tempus est, nos de illa perpetua jam, non de hac exigua vita, cogitare. (C. Att. 10. 4.)

(2) *Dependent on adjectives.*

Only in poetry and post-Augustan prose, in imitation of the Greek.

Blandus amicitia fidibus canoris ducere querens. (Hor. Od. 1. 12. 15.)

Piger scribendi ferre laborem. (Hor. S. 1. 4. 11.)

Soli cantare periti Arcades. (Verg. B. 10. 33.)

Dignus erat, alter eligi, alter eligere. (Plin. Pan. 7.)

Omnibus amicis morbum tu incunies gravem, ut te videre audireque aegroti sent. (Pl. Trin. 75.)

(3) *Dependent on verbs.*

In early Latin and in Augustan poets an infinitive is sometimes used to express the purpose after a verb of motion (rarely after *stare, ire, currere, venire, mittere*). See also § 1315. 4.

Ecquis currit pollicentem arcessere? (Pl. Aul. 310.)

Filius tum introit videre quid agat. (Ter. Heu. 347.)

Non nos aut ferro Libyicos populare Penates venimus aut raptas ad litora visere praedas. (Verg. A. 1. 507.)

Occasionally other expressions, in imitation of Greek, occur.

Loricam donat habere viro. (Verg. A. 5. 261.)

Nos numerus sumus et fruges consumere nati. (Hor. Ep. 1. 1. 1-1.)

Fingit equum teneri docilem curvice magister ire viam, qui monstrat eques. (Ib. 44.)

(4) *Dependent on prepositions (very rare).*

Inter optime valere et gravissime agrotare nihil prorsus dicunt interesse. (C. Fin. 2. 13.)

## CHAPTER XIII.

## TENSES OF INFINITIVE.

THE Infinitive is put in the present, past, or future, tense, according as the action denoted by it is contemporaneous with, or antecedent, or subsequent to that of the verb on which it depends.

(A) Infinitive as object, secondary predicate or subject.

Cupio	} <i>videre, videri,</i>	<i>I long</i>	} <i>to see, be seen.</i>
Cupiam		<i>I shall long</i>	
Cupiero	} <i>vidisse, visus esse,</i>	<i>I shall have longed</i>	} <i>to have seen, have been seen.</i>
Cuplebam		<i>I was longing</i>	
Cupivi	} <i>visurus esse,</i>	<i>I longed</i>	} <i>to be about to see.</i>
Cupieram		<i>I had longed</i>	

*Dicor fugere, fugisse, fugiturus esse, I am said to be flying, to have fled, to be on the point of flying.*

*So possum dicere, I can say; potero dicere, I shall be able to say; licet mihi videri, I may seem; licebit mihi videri, I shall be allowed to seem; &c.*

But when the past tenses of some verbs, corresponding to the English auxiliaries, are followed by the present infinitive, the English idiom uses the past tense of the infinitive: *e.g. potui dicere, I might have said (= I was able to say); debebat sentire, He ought then to have felt (= It was his duty to be feeling); oportuit te mori, You should have died. Compare potuit optare, She may have wished it; non potest non optasse (Ov. M. 3. 298), She cannot revoke the wish.*

The perfect infinitive in Latin is, however, sometimes used with little if any difference in meaning from the present. See § 1371.

(B) Infinitive as oblique predicate.

(a) In sentences dependent on principal tenses.

Dico	} <i>te scribere,</i>	<i>I say</i>	} <i>that you are writing.</i>
Dicam		<i>I shall say</i>	
Dixero		<i>I shall have said</i>	
Dixi (perf.)		<i>I have said</i>	
.....	<i>te scripsisse</i>	.....	<i>that you have written (or wrote).</i>



..... te scripturum esse, .....	that you will write. or are going to write.
..... te scripturum fuisse, .....	that you were going to write, or would have written.
..... illud scribi, .....	that that is being written.
..... illud scriptum esse, .....	that that was written.
..... illud scriptum fuisse, .....	that that was (for some time) written, or had been written.
..... illud scriptum iri, .....	that that will be writ- ten, or is going to be written.

(b) In sentences dependent on secondary tenses.

154

Dicebam	} te scribere,	I was saying	} that you were writing.
Dixi (aor.)		I said	
Dixeram		I had said	
..... te scripsisse, .....			that you had written.
..... te scripturum esse, .....			that you would write, or were going to write.
..... te scripturum fuisse, .....			that you had been go- ing to write, or would have written.
..... illud scribi, .....			that that was being written.
..... illud scriptum esse, .....			that that was already written.
..... illud scriptum fuisse, .....			that that was (for some time) written, or had been written.
..... illud scriptum iri, .....			that would be written, or was going to be written.

The infinitives *esse, fuisse*, as used with participles, are often omitted. See §§ 1347, 1371 d.

## (C) Special usages.

1. *For the future infinitive both active and passive, a periphrasis with fore or futurum esse is often made use of.* 136

Dico fore ut amem, amer, *I say that I shall love, shall be loved.*

Dixi fore ut amarem, amarer, *I said that I should love, should be loved.*

**Fore** with the past participle both in deponent and passive verbs, corresponds to the completed future: Dico (dixi) me adeptum fore, 'that I shall have gained;' missum fore, 'shall have been sent.'

2. *The perfect infinitive is used to represent the imperfect indicative of an action frequently done; e. g.* 137

Dixisse eum narrant cum vidisset. (Dicebat cum viderat.)

3. *It is also used to describe an action completed and ready, in certain expressions corresponding to the perfect, or the completed future, of the indicative, where often in English the present is used. Thus* 137

(a) *after volo in prohibitions: and this was imitated and extended by the poets and Livy.*

Ne quid vilicus emisse velit insciente domino, ne quid dominum celavisse velit. (Cato R. R. 5.)

Caleni edixerunt ne quis in balneis lavisse vellet, quom magistratus Romanus ibi esset. (C. Grac. ap. Gell. 10. 3.)

Consules edixerunt, ne quis quid fugæ causa vendidisse neve emisse vellet. (L. 39. 17.)

Haud equidem ullius civis fortunæ invideo, nec premendo alium me extulisse velim. (L. 22. 59, § 10.)

Commisisse cavet, quod mox mutare labore. (Hor. A. P. 168.)

Fratres tendentes opaco Pelion imposuisse Olympha.

(Hor. Od. 3. 4. 52.)

(b) *After possum:*

Bacchatur vates, magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum.

(Verg. A. 6. 78.)

Bellum possumus, si ex hoc impetu rerum nihil prolatando remittitur, ante hiemem diis volentibus perfecisse. (L. 37. 19.)

Tunicarum vincla relaxat, ut posset vastas exeruisse manus.

(Ov. F. 2. 322.)

(c) *Of an action made the subject of a judgment:*

Proinde quiesse erit melius. (L. 3. 48.)

Illud non pænitebit curasse. (Quint. 1. 1. 34.)

Hic locus est, quem, si verbis audacia detur, haud timeam magni dixisse Palatia cæli. (Ov. *M.* 1. 176.)

Quid tibi nunc molles prodest coluisse capillos, sarpeque mutatas disposuisse comas? quid faco splendente genas ornare, quid unguis artificis docta subsequisse manu? (Tib. 1. 3. 9.)

Pueri pudor ora aetavit: sed et erubuisse decebat. (Ov. *M.* 4. 330.)

Tunc decuit fesse quam adempti sunt nobis arma. (L. 30. 44.)

Atque id bono viro satis est, docuisse quod scierit.

(Quint. 12. 11. 3.)

Esto: causam proferre non potes: statim vicisse debeo.

(C. *Rosc. Am.* 27.)

Neque ego vos Quirites hortor, ut malis civis vestros perperam quam recte fecisse, sed ne ignoscendo malis bonos perditum eatis. (Sall. *J.* 31. § 27.)

(d) *So especially the past participle, sometimes without esse:*

Adulescenti morem gestum oportuit. (Ter. *Ad.* 211.)

Quo ex senatus consulto confestim te interfectum esse, Catilina, convenit... Hoc jam pridem factum esse oportuit. (C. *Cat.* 1. 2.)

Tamen eos defendes qui se ab omnibus desertos potius quam abs te defensos esse mallent? (C. *Cicil.* 5.)

Statim milites cenatos esse in castris, ignis quam creberrimos fieri, dein prima vigilia silentio egredi jubet. (Sall. *J.* 100. *Compare* L. 13. 14. § 7.)

Corinthum patres vestri, totius Græciæ lumen, extinctum esse voluerunt. (C. *Min.* 5.)

### Similarly

Quis est ex illa provincia, qui te nolit perisse? (C. *Verr.* 3. 77.)

4. **Memini** is used with the present (and sometimes the perfect) infinitive of events, of which the subject himself was witness, with the perfect infinitive of events of which the subject was not witness.

Ego L. Metellum memini puer ita bonis esse viribus extremo tempore etatis, ut adolescentiam non requireret. (C. *Sen.* 9.)

But also Meministi me ita distribuisse initio causam.

(C. *Rosc. Am.* 41.)

Memineram C. Mariam cum vi prope justorum armorum profugisset, senile corpus paludibus occultasse. (C. *Sen.* 22.)

## CHAPTER XIV.

## USE OF VERBAL NOUNS, especially the GERUND and GERUNDIVE.

BESIDES the infinitive other verbal nouns are found with the verbal characteristic (when formed from transitive verbs) of having a direct object in the accusative case. These are some adjectives, and some substantives.

The adjectives are the present and future participles of all transitive verbs, and the past participle also of deponent verbs. *Examples will be found in § 1073 and passim.*

A few instances are found of gerundival forms with stems in **-bundo**, being used similarly to present participles active.

The substantives are the gerund, the accusative of substantives with stems in **-tu** (active supine), and the nominative of substantives with stems in **-iōn**.

The gerundive in all cases, the stems in **-tu** in the dative and ablative (passive supine), and sometimes the past participle, are found in certain usages parallel and complementary to those of the infinitive and gerund.

The gerund and gerundive are nouns with **-o** stems, the gerund being in form a neuter substantive, the gerundive an adjective. They are used in all cases.

The gerund, like the infinitive, shews its verbal nature in having its object in the accusative or dative (not the genitive) cases, and in being qualified by adverbs, not adjectives; it shews its substantival nature in its own construction. As compared with the gerundive, it is chiefly found when the verb from which it is formed is intransitive, or, though transitive, used without a specified object.

The gerundive is confined to transitive verbs, and is usually substituted for the gerund of such verbs, when the object is expressed. The object is attracted into the case of the gerund, and the gerund, receiving adjectival inflexions, is made to agree with it in number and gender. But the gerundive is not used where indistinctness would arise from the change of the object's case.

(The gerundive is used from **utor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior** (§ 1223), all of these verbs being transitive in early Latin. In the nominative the gerund of these verbs is more frequent than the gerundive.)

The use of the gerund is limited by (1) the fact that it is a verbal substantive denoting *action*, and, as such, is not suited to express *place, time, measure*, &c.; (2) by the existence of the infinitive, which freely and adequately expresses the object after a verb, the subject in a certain class of sentences, and a secondary predicate (*e.g.* *cupit ille mori, mori turpe est, not moriendum cupit or moriendum turpe est*); (3) by the existence of ordinary verbal substantives, which expressing an action apart from the agent, an action imagined as an independent being, are better capable of becoming the subject or object, &c. of verbs of concrete meaning (*e.g.* *mors terret, mortem videt, not moriendum terret or moriendum videt*); (4) by the existence of the gerundive, which has rendered it often unnecessary for the gerund to be used with a direct object dependent on it. The gerund is, however, so used in the ablative (without a preposition) and in the genitive; rarely in any other case. In the older writers it is used so in the nominative also.

A comparison of the usages spoken of in this chapter with the general classification of case-meanings gives the following result:

*Accusative.* Of the three chief classes of accusative, the first (*compare or extent*) is not represented by any of these forms, except with prepositions: the second (*place towards which*) is filled by the so-called supine in *-um*: the third (*direct object*) is represented by the infinitive. With prepositions, chiefly *ad*, the gerund and gerundive are common.

*Dative.* The indirect object is represented by the gerund and gerundive, as well as by the stems in *-tu*, especially in the meaning of *work contemplated*. The predicative dative is represented by the stems in *-tu*, but scarcely in any different way from other stems.

*Ablative.* The instrumental ablative is represented by the gerund and gerundive in the meaning of *means, manner, circumstances*, and by the so-called supine in *-u* in the meaning of *part concerned*. The locative meanings are only found in the gerund and gerundive with the prepositions *in* and (rarely) *pro*.

The second class of ablatives (*place whence*) is represented principally by the gerund and gerundive, sometimes by the supine in *-u*, with prepositions (*ab, de, ex*); rarely by either without prepositions.

*Genitive.* The gerund and gerundive only are found in this case, and in the first only of the two classes, viz. as *dependent on nouns*.

*Nominative.* The nominative of the gerund and of the stem in *-tū* (with the verbal power) is used only as subject to *est*: the gerundive only as secondary predicate. They thus acquire a peculiar



meaning of *obligation*, whereas in the oblique cases both gerund and gerundive have the same simple meaning of action, which the infinitive has; and, in fact, are used where the infinitive, if it had had case-inflexions, would have been used.

In oblique language the accusative can be used in the same sense as the nominative in direct language.

The oblique cases (A) will be treated first: then (B) the nominative and (in oblique language) the accusative: lastly (C) the further uses of the gerundive, and some parallel uses of the past participles.

### (A) Verbal nouns in oblique cases.

#### Accusative.

1. *The accusative gerund (except as the substitute for the nominative in infinitive sentences, for which see § 1397) is used only after prepositions, usually ad, sometimes inter, 'whilst,' ob; rarely any others. Instead of the gerund with a direct object dependent on it, the gerundival construction is always used.*

Dies hic mihi ut satis sit vereor ad agendum: ne vacuum esse me nunc ad narrandum credas. (Ter. Andr. 706.)

Breve tempus ætatis satis longum est ad bene honesteque vivendum. (C. Sen. 19.)

Qui citus et suavissimus est et idem facillimus ad concoquendum. (C. Fin. 2. 20.)

In aliquo insigni ad inridendum vitio reperiuntur. (C. Or. 2. 60.)

Alii omne officium referent aut ad voluptatem aut ad non dolendum. (C. Fin. 5. 7.)

Ad pingendum, ad fingendum, ad scalpendum, ad nervorum eliciendos sonos ac tiliarum apta manus est admotione digitorum. (C. N. D. 2. 60.)

Videmus multitudinem pecudum, partim ad vescendum, partim ad cultus agrorum, partim ad vehendum, partim ad corpora vestienda. (C. T. D. 1. 28.)

Missus est a senatu ad animos regum perspiciendos, maximeque ut nepotem regis Antiochi classis habere, elefantos alere prohiberet. (C. Phil. 9. 2.)

Non bellum sed vanam imaginem belli ad avertendos ab legis cura plebis animos Capitolium insedissee contendebant. (L. 3. 16.)

Profecta deinde cohors ad sepeliendos qui ceciderant. (L. 3. 43.)

Consul, qua ferocia animi usus erat in Liguribus, eandem ad non parendum senatui habuit. (L. 42. 9.)

Nec fossa valloque ab ignavissimo ad opera ac muniendum hoste clausi erant. (L. 9. 4.)

Plebs ad alia, ut specie minora, sic laboris aliquanto majoris, traducebantur, foros in circo faciendos cloacamque maximam, receptaculum omnium purgamentorum urbis, sub terra agendam. (L. 1. 56.)

T. Herminius, inter spoliandum corpus hostis veruto percussus, inter primam curationem expiravit. (L. 2. 20.)

Cæsar comitali morbo bis inter res agendas correptus est. (Suet. *Jul.* 45.)

Si illud est jam flagitiosum ob rem judicandam pecuniam accipere, quante illud flagitiosius eum, a quo pecuniam ob absolvendum acceperis, condemnare! (C. *Verr.* 2. 32.)

Dubitatis quin hoc tantum boni in rempublicam conservandam atque amplificandam conferatis? (C. *Man.* 16.)

Non solum oratoris est docere, sed plus eloquentia circa movendum valet. (Quint. 4. 5, § 6.)

Corpus crescere jam domitis sinito: namque ante domandum ingentis tollunt animos. (Verg. *G.* 3. 206.)

Quæ ante conditam condendamve urbem traduntur, ea nec affirmare nec refellere in animo est. (L. 1. præf.)

2. *The accusative of the verbal substantive with stem in -tu* <sup>1379</sup>  
(i.e. supine in -um, § 1114) *often has a direct, more rarely an indirect object.*

In mea vita tu tibi laudem is quæsitum, scelus? (Ter. *Haut.* 315.)

Deos atque amicos it salutatum ad forum. (Pl. *Bac.* 347.)

Non tu me argento dedisti, opinor, nuptum, set viro. (Pl. *Stich.* 136.)

Sicine oportet ire amicos homini amanti operam datum? (Pl. *Pæn.* 3. 1. 9.)

Quamprimum hæc risum veni. (Cæc. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 14.)

Proficiscitur in loca sola obsessum turrim regiam. (Sall. *J.* 103.)

Marius cum Ligure promissa ejus cognitum ex præsentibus misit. (Ib. 93.)

Sub lucem pabulatum lignatumque et prædatum quidam dilapsi fuerant. (L. 25. 39.)

Legati in castra Æquorum venerunt questum injurias et ex fœdere res repetitum. (L. 3. 25.)

Non ego Graiis servitum matribus ibo. (Verg. *A.* 2. 786.)

Hic sponsum vocat, hic auditum scripta, relictis omnibus officiis. (Hor. *Ep.* 2. 2. 67.)

*This supine, with iri used impersonally, supplies a form for the passive future infinitive.*

Audierat non datum iri filio uxorem suo. (Ter. Andr. 177.)

Pompeius adfirmat se prius occisum iri ab eo, quam me violatum iri. (C. Att. 2. 20.)

Docendum est, si ipsa separatim ex se verba considerentur, omnia aut pleraque ambigua visum iri. (C. Inv. 2. 40.)

In eam spem erecta civitas erat in Africa, eo anno bellatum iri finemque bello Punico adesse. (L. 29. 14.)

Arbitrantur se beneficos in suos amicos visum iri. (C. Off. 1. 14.)

*The origin of the phrase appears to have been sometimes (very rarely) forgotten; e.g.*

Reus parricidii, quod fratrem occidisset, damnatum iri videbatur. (Quint. 9. 2. 88.)

*(A preposition is not prefixed to the verbal in -um used in this sense; e.g.*

*In Pl. Merc. 7: Pater ad mercatum hinc me meus misit Rhodum, Mercatum is 'fair' or 'market,' not 'trading.'*

*In Varr. R. R. 3. 16, § 28, non omnis tempestas ad pastum prodire longius patitur, and C. N. D. 2. 47, serpendo ad pastum accedunt, pastum is 'food,' not 'feeding.'*

### Dative.

1. *The gerund expresses the indirect object, especially 'work contemplated' (§ 1156). It is dependent on (a) verbs, adjectives, and adverbs: (b) on substantives and predicatively on esse. In this last usage it may be translated 'suited to,' 'capable of.' The gerundive is substituted for the gerund<sup>1</sup>, where otherwise a direct object would be dependent on it.*

(a) Armamentis complicandis componendis studuimus.

(Pl. Merc. 192.)

Neque jam mihi licet neque est integrum, ut meum laborem hominum periculis sublevandis non impertiam. (C. Mur. 4.)

Credebant Voleronem vexandis prioris anni consulibus permissurum tribunatum. (L. 2. 56.)

<sup>1</sup> *Except perhaps in L. 21. 54, equites tegendo. Madvig on this passage remarks, 'Nullum novi prosæ orationis certum exemplum, ubi dativus gerundii accusativum regat.'*

Consul placandis Romæ dis habendoque dilectu dat operam.

(L. 22. 2.)

Hi scribendo affuerunt. (Sen. Cos. ap. C. Fam. 9. 8.)

Hæc (i. e. perfidia, ambitio, &c.) ubi aderunt, rebus servandis centuplex murus parumst. (Pl. Pers. 560.)

His audiendis credendisque opportuna multitudo major in dies Syracusas consuebat. (L. 24. 24.)

Sunt etiam nonnulli acuendis puerorum ingenii non inutiles lusus.

(Quint. 1. 3. 8.)

Camillo comitiis jurare parato in verba excusandæ valetudini solita consensus populi restiterat. (L. 6. 22.)

Rubens ferrum non est habile tundendo. (Plin. 34. § 149.)

(b) Tres viri agris dandis assignandis.

A. Atilius consul comitia consulibus rogandis edixit. (L. 43. 11.)

Galli locum oppido condendo ceperunt. (L. 39. 22.)

Jusjurandum rei servandæ, non perdandæ conditumst.

(Pl. Rud. 1374.)

Placuit averruncandæ deam iræ victimas cædi. (L. 8. 6.)

Ea modo quæ restringendo igni forent portantes. (L. 30. 6.)

Aliud emplastrum quod puri quoque movendo est. (Cels. 5. 19. 13.)

Multæ civitates non sunt solvendo. (C. Fam. 3. 8. § 2.)

Experienda res in uno aut altero est, sitne aliqui plebeius ferendo magno honori. (L. 4. 35.)

2. The verbal with stem in -tu is used (a) rarely with adjectives; (b) also with substantives in certain expressions and with the verb esse. These are referable partly to 'work contemplated,' partly to predicative dative. (Cf. §§ 1156—1162.)

(a) Istæ lepida sunt memoratui. (Plaut. Bæc. 62.)

Ipse quæ dubia nisi videbantur potissimum temptabat. (Sall. J. 94.)

Alter collis usui opportunus, quia præceps paucæ munimenta quærebatur. (Ib. 98.)

Ex arboribus aqua exprimitur, e nigris amara, ex candidioribus potui jucunda. (Plin. 4. § 203.)

Compare Arbutus fructum fert difficilem concoctioni (Plin. 15. § 151) and sunt recentes nuces difficiles concoctu (Ib. § 127).

(b) Penus est, inquit Q. Scævola, quod esculentum aut potulentum est. Servius Sulpicius in reprehensio Scævolæ capitibus scripsit, Cato Alio placuisse non quæ esui et potui forent, sed tus quoque et cereos in penu esse. (Gell. 4. 1. §§ 17, 20.)

Indutui alterum quod subtus, alterum quod supra. Amictui dictum, quod ambiectum est, id est circumjectum. A quo etiam, quo vestitas se involvunt, circumjectui appellant. (Varr. *L. L.* 5. 131.)

At ita meæ volsellæ pecten speculum calamistrum meum bene me amassint meaue axicia linteumque extersui, ut, &c.

(Plaut. *Curc.* 578.)

Absentium bona juxta atque interemptorum divisui fuere.

(L. 1. 54.)

Ea quæ sunt usui ad armandas naves ex Hispania apportari jubet.

(Cæs. *G.* 5. 1.)

Eadem in vino decocta dysintericis potui dantur. (Plin. 23, § 162.)

### Ablative. i. Locative and Instrumental.

1. *The gerund without a preposition is used chiefly in the sense of 'means,' rarely in that of 'the thing in point of which a term is predicated.'* In Livy, and occasionally in other writers, it denotes the 'manner' or 'circumstances.' Where the gerund would have had a direct object, the gerundive is substituted for the gerund, unless some obscurity (e.g. such as arises from the neuter and masculine being alike in the ablative case) would result from the change.

#### (a) Without prepositions.

'*Thing in point of which,*' &c. Mendicum malim mendicando vincere. (Plaut. *Bac.* 514.)

Et latine loquendo cuius erat par et omnis sale facetiisque superabat. (C. *Brut.* 34.)

'*Means.*' Homines ad deos nulla re propius accedunt quam salutem hominibus dando. (C. *Lig.* 12.)

Herdonius, si nihil aliud, hostem se fatendo prope denunciavit, ut arma caperetur: hic, negando bella esse, arma vobis ademit.

(L. 3. 19.)

Alitur vitium vivitque tegendo. (Verg. *G.* 4. 454.)

Cæsar dando sublevando ignoscendo, Cato nihil largiendo, gloriam adeptus est. (Sall. *C.* 54.)

Etiam opera, consilio, domum veniendo, conveniendis meis, nullum onus officii cuiquam reliquum fecisti. (C. *Fam.* 3. 13.)

Ego vapulando, ille verberando usque, ambo defessi sumus.

(Ter. *Ad.* 213.)

Reliquum diei expediendis armis et curatione corporum consumptum. (L. 25. 38.)



Tertium genus studiorum voluntarium agendis gratis, significanda erga alios pari voluntate, adducenda amicitia in spem familiaritatis et consuetudinis confirmari oportebit.

(Q. Cic. *de pet. Cons.* 6.)

Hodie stat Asia Luculli institutis servandis et quasi vestigiis persequendis. (C. *At.* 2. 1.)

• *Cause.* Harumce rerum ergo fundi terre agrique mei lustrandi lustrique faciendi ergo, sicuti dixi, macte hisce suovitiuribus lactentibus immolands esto. (Cato. *R. R.* 141.)

• *Manner, circumstances, &c.* Equidem pro patria qui letum oppetissent, sæpe fando audivi. (L. 15. 26.)

Satis superque humili est qui iure æquo in civitate vivit, nec inferendo injuriam nec patiendo. (L. 3. 33.)

L. Corneiius complexus Appium, non cui simulabat consulendo, diremit certamen. (L. 3. 41.)

Gladiatores videmus nihil nec vitando facere cuncte nec petendo vehementer, in quo non motus hic habent palestram quandam. (C. *Or.* 68.)

Incendium plana primum, deinde in edita assurgens, et rursus inferiora populando, antehit remedia velocitate nulli. (Tac. *A.* 15. 38.)

Tarde inde ad Maleam, trahendis pierumque remalco navibus, quæ cum commentu sequebantur, pervenit. (L. 30. 16.)

Per omne hibernorum tempus exercitum in Hælide continuit, partim sociis ferendo opera, partim quos in societatem perficere non poterat depopulandis. (L. 37. 23.)

Partibus dividendis ipsi regis evenit ab Arathusa fonte usque ad ostium magai portus. (L. 25. 30.)

Drusus reus est factus a Laetio iudicibus rejiciendis a. d. v. Non. Quinct. (C. *Att.* 4. 24. § 5.)

(b) *With prepositions*: in, rarely pro; very rarely super.

160

The gerund is never used with a direct object, unless it be a neuter pronoun.

Contrivi in querendo vitam atque ætatem meam. (Ter. *Ad.* 869.)

Altero (facietiarum genere) utitur in narrando aliquid venuste, altero in jaciendo mittendoque ridiculo. (C. *Or.* 10.)

Si te mecum dicendo ac diluendis criminibus in hac causa contendere putarem, ego quoque in accusando atque in explicandis criminibus operam consumerem. (C. *Ferr. Att.* I. 11.)

Conveniet autem cum in dando munificum esse, tum in exigendo non acerbum, in omnique re contrahenda, vendundo emendo, conducendo locando, vicinitatibus et confiniis, æquum ac facilem. (C. Off. 2. 18.)

Pro vapulando hercle ego abs te mercedem petam. (Plaut. Aul. 453.)

Pro ope ferenda sociis pergit ire ipse ad urbem, deditam nuper in fidem Romanorum, oppugnandam. (L. 23. 28.)

Diva, patrum prosperes decreta super jugandis feminis prolisque novæ feraci lege marita. (Hor. C. Sæc. 19.)

2. The verbal stem ending in *-tu* is used in the ablative (called *supine* in *-u*<sup>1</sup>) frequently to qualify adjectives in a way which is referable to the head of 'part concerned.' In other senses its use is similar to that of other verbal substantives.

(a) Without prepositions.

With *dignus*. Nihil usquam dictu dignum ausi. (L. 9. 43.)

Adnotatu dignum illud quoque omen. (Val. M. 1. 5. 9.)

Compare Quis contra studia naturæ tam vehementer obduruit, ut a rebus cognitione dignis abhorreat. (C. Fin. 3. 11.)

'Thing in point of which,' &c. with *fas*, *nefas* or adjectives.

138

(It is possible that the case is really the dative in some instances, compare § 1383.)

Herbas edunt formidulosas dictu, non essu modo. (Plaut. Ps. 824.)

Horum opera hæc mihi facilia factu facta sunt, quæ volui effici.

(Pl. Pers. 761.)

Terribiles visu formæ letumque labosque. (Verg. A. 6. 277.)

Id dictu quam re, ut pleraque, facilius erat. (L. 31. 38. Cf. 40. 35.)

Palpebræ mollissimæ tactu, ne læderent aciem. (C. N. D. 2. 57.)

Aliæ vites forenses vocantur, celeres proventu, vendibiles aspectu, portatu faciles. (Plin. 14, § 42.)

Pudet dictu. (Tac. Agr. 32.)

<sup>1</sup> Of supines in *-u* only *auditu*, *dictu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *memoratu*, *natu*, *visu* occur frequently; in Cicero also *adspectu*, *cognitu*, *motu*, *intellectu*, *inventu*, *responsu*, *scitu*, *tactu*. On the whole Cicero has about 24 of these supines, the occurrences being at least 80; Livy uses supines in *-u* about 50 times; Cæsar has only two, *factu*, *natu*; Sallust has six; Nepos three, Suetonius one (*natu*), Quintilian five, Tacitus at least 16; Pliny the elder and Seneca have a great many. Lucretius has only *motu*, *tactu*, *visu*; Vergil *dictu*, *factu*, *relatu*, *victu*, *visu*; Horace *adspectu*, *factu*, *petitu*, *tactu*, *visu*, *vitatu*; Ovid *cultu*, *dictu*, *natu*, *relatu*, *visu*. GOSSRAU, § 443.

‘*Means.*’ Efficimus etiam domitu nostro quadrupedum vectiones. 1389  
(C. N. D. 2. 60.)

Quzeretur, num quid aliquo sensu perceptum sit, aspectu, auditu, tactu, odore, gustatu. (Corn. 2. 6.)

Possunt in parentis animam inscū incurrere et ferro morsuve violare.  
(Sen. Ep. 108. § 19.)

Satis commode mihi videor eorum consuetudinem usu tractandoque cognosse. (C. Ferr. 2. 73.)

Sed ita dictu opus est, si me vis salvum esse. (Ter. Haut. 941.)

‘*Manner,*’ *without attribute.* Strictis gladiis cursu in hostem feruntur. (L. 9. 13.)

Non venit idem usu mihi, quod tu tibi scribis. (C. Att. 7. 26.)

‘*Circumstances,*’ &c. Omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium.  
(Cæs. G. 7. 4.)

Negavit id iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse sed coactu civitatis.  
(Ib. 5. 27.)

Balbus ad me venit missu Cæsaris. (C. Att. 8. 9.)

Factione respectuque rerum privatarum, quæ semper officere officientque publicis consiliis, Appius vicit. (L. 2. 30.)

(b) *With prepositions.*

1390

Sed pertinet ad omnem officiū quæstionem in promptu habere, quantum natura hominis pecudibus antecedit. (C. Off. 1. 30.)

Dixit Sulla id in promptu esse, quoniam copiam Jugurthæ haberet.  
(Sall. J. 111.)

Res ipsa non recipiebatur a nobis nec in usu erat. (Sen. Ep. 111. 1.)

Omnia volvuntur semper et in transitu sunt. (Sen. Dial. 12. 6.)

*Similarly* Cave fuas mi in quæstione. (Pl. Pers. 51.)

Quod iudicium nunc in expectatione est, etiam in bona spe.  
(Cæc. ap. C. Fam. 8. 14.)

II. Ablative expressing place whence.

1391

1. *Gerund and gerundive.*

(a) *Without prepositions.* Both gerund and gerundive are rare.

‘*Thing from which separation takes place.*’ Nec ante continuando abstinit magistratu, quam obruerent eum male gesta. (L. 9. 34.)

Tardio et desperatione tandem fessum absistere sequendo coegit.  
(L. 29. 33.)

‘*Standard of comparison.*’ Nullum officium referenda gratia magis necessarium est. (C. Off. 1. 15.)

(b) *With prepositions, ab, de, ex; (never sine).*

13

*The gerund is rarely used with a direct object dependent on it. The gerundive is used instead.*

Jam et consul ab revocando ad incitandos hortandosque versus milites. (L. 25. 14.)

Pisoni nullum tempus unquam vacabat aut a forensi dictione aut a commentatione domestica aut a scribendo aut a cogitando.  
(C. Brut. 78.)

Aristotelem in philosophia non deterruit a scribendo amplitudo Platonis. (C. Or. 11.)

Legem illi Græco putant nomine a suum cuique tribuendo appellatam, ego nostro a legendo. (C. Leg. 1. 6.)

Nomen invidiæ ductum est a nimis intuendo fortunam alterius.  
(C. T. D. 3. 9.)

Cincinnati et Capitolini sententiæ abhorrebant a cæde violandisque quos fœdere icto cum plebe sacrosantos accepissent. (L. 4. 6.)

Videmusne ut pueri ne verberibus quidem a contemplandis rebus perquirendisque deterreantur? (C. Fin. 5. 18.)

Levissime quidem Curio quia de intercalando non obtinuerat transfugit ad populum. (Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 6.)

Primus liber Tusculanarum disputationum est de contemnenda morte. (C. Div. 2. 1.)

Hæc virtus ex providendo est appellata prudentia. (C. Leg. 2. 23.)

Cum maximis curis et laboribus compensant eam quam ex discendo capiunt voluptatem. (C. Fin. 5. 18.)

## 2. *Verbal substantive in -tu.*

135

(a) *Without prepositions. Rarely, if ever, found in any specially verbal use.*

Nunc obsonatu redeo. (Pl. Men. 288.) See also Cato R.R. in § 1262.

Nimis ægre risu me continui. (Pl. Asin. 583.)

(b) *With prepositions.*

Consul est impositus is nobis, quem nemo præter nos philosophos aspicere sine suspiritu posset. (C. Att. 1. 18, § 3.)

Quid enim pedibus opus est sine ingressu? quid manibus, si nihil comprehendendum est? (C. N. D. 1. 33.)

Compare Cave sis tibi, ne bubuli in te cottabi crebri crepent, si aberis ab eri quæstione. (Pl. Trin. 1012.)

### Genitive.

1. *The gerund is always dependent on a noun, never on a verb* <sup>1204</sup>  
(except as secondary predicate). Its uses are referable to class A  
(§ 1278), and especially to the 'thing possessing,' the 'kind or contents,'  
and the 'object.'

*The gerund and gerundive are used indifferently, except where the  
one form or the other affords less ambiguity.*

(a) '*Thing possessing.*' Mens hominis semper aliquid aut acquirit aut  
agit, videndique et audiendi delectatione ducitur. (C. Off. 1. 30.)

Ita nati factique sumus, ut et agendi aliquid et diligendi aliquos  
et referendæ gratiæ principia in nobis contineremus.

(C. Fin. 3. 15.)

Hæc frequentia totius Italiæ convenit comitiorum, ludorum censen-  
dique causæ. (C. Ferr. Ant. 1. 18.)

Per speciem alienæ fungendæ vicis suas opes firmavit. (L. 1. 41.)

Hæc, quum fines suprascandit, hæc, forum ingressus, paucis verbis  
carnum concipiendique iurijurandi mutatis peragit. (L. 1. 32.)

Deliberandi sibi unum diem postulavit. (C. N. D. 1. 22.)

Omnia retinendæ dominationis honesta æstimat. (Sall. Or. Leg. § 8.)

Dixit decemviros vicissitudinem imperitandi, quod unum exæquandæ  
sit libertatis, sustulisse. (L. 3. 39. Comp. ib. 4. 5. § 3.)

Spectatus et Sacrovir intacto capite pugnam pro Romanis ciens,  
ostendendæ, ut ferebat, virtutis. (Tac. A. 3. 41.) See § 1288.

(b) '*Definition.*' Mez totius orationis tres sunt rationes, una concili-  
andorum hominum, altera docendorum, tertia concitandorum.

(C. Or. 2. 29.)

Ipsam bonum crescendi accessionem nullam habet. (C. Fin. 3. 14.)

(c) '*Sort.*' Commorandi natura deversorium nobis, non habitandi,  
dedit. (C. Sen. 23.)

Suppeditant et campus noster et studia venandi honesta exempla  
ludendi. (C. Off. 1. 29 fin.)

(d) '*Object.*' Equidem sum cupidus te in illa longiore ac perpetua  
disputatione audiendi. (C. Or. 2. 4.)

Me auctorem fuisse Cæsaris interficiendi criminatur. (C. Fam. 12. 2.)

Neque cognoscendi quid fieret neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem  
relinquant. (Cæs. G. 3. 6.)

Neque immemor ejus quod initio consulatus intebat, reconciliandi  
animos plebis, saucios milites curandos dividit patribus.

(L. 2. 47.)



Tanta universæ Galliæ consensio fuit libertatis vindicandæ et pristinæ belli laudis recuperandæ. (Cæs. G. 7. 76.)

Inita sunt in hac civitate consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandum, nominis Romani exstinguendi. (C. Mur. 37.)

Date di, quæso, conveniundi mi ejus celerem copiam.

(Pl. Merc. 850.)

Non hercle otiumst mi auscultandi. (Ter. Ad. 420.)

Ludendi etiam est quidam modus retinendus. (C. Off. 1. 29.)

*Rarely the object is attracted into the genitive though the gerund remains unchanged, perhaps partly from a desire to avoid the long inflexion of the genitive plural.*

Nominandi istorum tibi erit magis quam edundi copia. (Pl. Capt. 852.)

Ex majore copia nobis quam illi fuit exemplorum eligendi potestas.

(C. Inv. 2. 2.)

Agitur utrum M. Antonio facultas detur opprimendæ reipublicæ, cædis faciendæ bonorum, urbis dividundæ, agrorum suis latronibus condonandi, populum Romanum servitute opprimendi, an horum ei facere nihil liceat. (C. Phil. 5. 3.)

2. *The use of the verbal in -tu does not differ in the genitive from that of ordinary substantives.*

## (B) Verbal nouns in Nominative, and, in oblique language, the Accusative.

1. *The gerund is used in the nominative as subject to the verb est, erat, &c. predicating existence, with a dative of the agent, the whole expression thus conveying the idea of obligation.*

*In oblique language the accusative with esse, &c. is used.*

*The gerund is very rarely used in this way with a direct object dependent upon it, except in Lucretius und Varro. Cicero has it twice: Plautus, Catullus, Vergil, Quintilian once each.*

*Instead of this, what would have been the direct object after the gerund becomes the subject, and the gerundive is used as a secondary predicate. Hence it may often be translated by the passive voice.*

Apud illas ædis sistendæ mihi sunt sycophantiæ. Fores pultabo. 139

CH. Ad nostras ædis hic quidem habet rectam viam. Hercle, opinor, mi advenienti hac noctu agitandumst vigilias.

(Pl. Trin. 869.)

Æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendumst. (Lucr. 1. 112.)

Quare monendum te est mihi, bone Egnati. (Catul. 39. 9.)

Boves arandi causa rudis neque minoris trimos neque majoris quadrimos parandum. (Varr. R. R. 1. 20.)

Si transferendæ sunt alvi in alium locum, id facere diligenter oportet, et tempora, quibus id potissimum facias, animadvertendum, et loca, quo transferas, idonea providendum. (Varr. R. R. 3. 16.)

Volumus sane, nisi molestum est, Cato, tamquam longam aliquam viam confeceris, quam nobis quoque ingrediendum sit, istuc, quo pervenisti, videre quale sit. (C. Sen. 2.)

Adeundus mi illic est homo. (Plaut. Rud. 1298.)

1399

Meditata mihi sunt omnia mea incommoda, erus si resciverit: molendumst in pistrino, vapulandum, habendæ compedes, opus ruri faciendum. (Ter. Ph. 249.)

Discessi ab eo bello in quo aut in acie cadendum fuit, aut in aliquas insidias incidendum, aut deveniendum in victoris manus, aut ad Jubam confugiendum, aut capiendus tamquam exsilio locus, aut consciscenda mors voluntaria. (C. Fam. 7. 3, § 3.)

Sed vale; nam, ut tibi ambulandum, ungendum, sic mihi dormiendum. (C. Att. 9. 7 fin.)

Hac tempestate serviundum aut imperitandum, habendus metus est aut faciendus, Quirites. (Sall. Or. Lep. § 10.)

Quid ergo est, inquis, tui consilii? Dandus est locus fortunæ, cedendum ex Italia, migrandum Rhodum aut aliquo terrarum, arbitror. (D. Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 1.)

Suo cuique iudicio utendum est. (C. N. D. 3. 1.)

Gerendus est tibi mos adulescentibus, Crasse. (C. Or. 1. 23.)

Hoc decretum Athenienses quum retulissent, eundum in Ætoliæ Quinctio visum est. (L. 35. 33.)

Credo ego istoc exemplo tibi esse pereundum extra portam.

(Pl. Mil. 359.)

Aliquando isti principes et sibi et ceteris populi Romani universi auctoritati parendum esse fateantur. (C. Marc. 22.)

Audendum atque agendum, non consultandum, ait in tanto malo esse. (L. 22. 53.)

Ego amplius deliberandum censeo. (Ter. Ph. 457.)

Etiam futuri temporis imagine iudices movet quæ maneat eos, qui de vi et injuria questi sunt, nisi vindicentur: fugiendum de civitate, cedendum bonis, aut omnia, quæcunque inimicus fecerit, perferenda. (Quint. 6. 1, § 19.)

2. *Verbal substantives with stems in -iōn are used, similarly to the gerund, but sometimes with tua for tibi, &c. Only Plautus uses them with a direct object.*

I puere præ: cruminam ne quisquam pertundat, cautiost.  
(Pl. *Pseud.* 170.)

Quid huc tibi reditiost? quid vestis mutatiost? (Ter. *Eun.* 671.)

Quid mihi scelesto tibi erat auscultatio? quidve hinc abitio? quidve in navem incensio? (Pl. *Rud.* 502.)

Quid tibi hunc receptio ad test meum virum? (Pl. *Asin.* 919.)

Quid tibi huc ventios? quid tibi hanc aditiost? quid tibi hanc notios, inquam, amicam meam? (Pl. *Truc.* 61.)

Nulla tibi, Pamphile, hic jam consultatiost. (Ter. *Hec.* 650.)

Indica, fac pretium. DOR. Tua merx est: tua indicatiost.  
(Pl. *Pers.* 586.)

Utrum e republica sit necne id quod ad vos fertur, vestra existimatio est. (L. 34. 2.)

*Compare also the use of opus and usus (§ 1226).*

### (C) Further uses of gerundive and passive participle.

*The gerundive is used (similarly to its nominative case) as oblique predicate to the direct object of certain transitive verbs to express an action purposed to be done on such object. If the verb is put in the passive the gerundive becomes a direct predicate. (This usage has also an analogy to the ordinary use of the gerundive in oblique cases.)*

Ego quidem meos oculos habeo, nec rogo utendos foris.  
(Pl. *Mil.* 347.)

Ibi agrum de nostro patre colendum habebat. (Ter. *Ph.* 364.)

Non habet sapiens mittendos trans maria legatos, nec metanda in ripis hostilibus castra, non opportunis castellis disponenda præsidia. (Sen. *Ben.* 7. 3.) *Comp.* dicere habui, § 1345.

Sapienter fecit filius, quom diviti homini id aurum servandum dedit.  
(Pl. *Bac.* 338.)

Demus nos philosophiæ excolendos, patiamurque nos sanari.  
(C. *T. D.* 4. 38.)

Vellem suscepisses juvenem regendum. (C. *Att.* 10. 6.)

Cæsar pontem in Arare faciendum curat. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 13.)

Eos omnes Vennsini per familias benigne accipiendos curandosque dividerunt. (L. 22. 54.)

Opera deinde faciendâ ex decreta in eam rem pecunia, lacus sternendos lapide, detergendasque, qua opus esset, cloacas in Aventino et in aliis partibus, qua nondum erant, faciendas locaverunt. (L. 39. 44.)

Nec cælestes modo ceremonias, sed justa quoque funebria, placandosque manes idem pontifex edocebat. (L. 1. 20.)

Simulacrum Dianæ tollendum locatur. (C. Verr. 4. 34.)

Equorum ad quattuor milia domanda equitibus divisa. (L. 24. 20.)

Omnis cetera præda diripiendâ data est. (L. 22. 52.)

*Similarly* Dixerunt nudatum tectum patere imbribus putrefaciendum. (L. 42. 3.)

*With this usage may be compared the use of the passive participle used as oblique predicate with habeo, do, reddo, curo, facio, volo, cupio.*

Quæ nos nostramque adolescentiam habent despiciant. (Ter. Eun. 93.)

Illud exploratum habeto, nihil fieri potuisse sine causa. (C. Div. 2. 28.)

Multis jam rebus perfidiam Hæduorum perspectam habebat. (Cæs. G. 7. 54.)

Inde, ubi prima fides pelago, placataque venti dant maria, deducunt socii navis. (Verg. A. 3. 69.)

Sic stratas legiones Latinorum dabo, quemadmodum legatum jacentem vidistis. (L. 8. 6.)

Tam excoctam (eam) reddam atque atram, quam carbost. (Ter. Ad. 349.)

Jam, ubi ubi erit, inventum tibi curabo et mecum adductum tuum Pamphilum. (Ter. Andr. 684.)

Missos facio mathematicos, grammaticos, musicos. (C. Or. 1. 10.)

Quis vocat? quis nominat me? PH. Qui te conventum cupit. (Pl. Curc. 304.)

Qua re domestica cura te levatum volo. (C. Q. F. 3. 9.)

*Compare* Liberis consultum volumus. (C. Fin. 3. 1.)

Totam rem Lucullo integram servatam oportuit. (C. Ac. 2. 4.)

*Also* § 1371 d; and the expressions with opus, §§ 1250, 1256.

The gerundive came to be used as a mere attribute with the meaning of (a) obligation or destiny or desert; and this (b) (in negative and quasi-negative sentences) approaches the meaning of possibility. 1403

In some passages it is contrasted with the past participle, so as to assume the appearance of a passive participle, either present (see in § 1408) or future (e.g. L. 21. 21; 9. 5, below).

(a) Adduxit forma expetenda liberalem mulierem. (Pl. Pers. 521.)  
O facinus animadvortendum. (Ter. Andr. 767.)

Cognoscite aliud genus imperatoris sane diligenter retinendum et conservandum. (C. Verr. 5. 10.)

Legimus omnes Crantoris de luctu: est enim non magnus, verum aureolus et, ut Tuberoni Panætius præcipit, ad verbum ediscendus libellus. (C. Ac. 2. 44.)

Eis otium divitiæ, optanda alias, oneri miserixque fuere.

(Sall. G. 10.)

Illud in his rebus miserandum magnopere unum ærumnabile erat.

(Lucr. 6. 1230.)

Visere dicet sacra bonis maribus non adeunda deæ. (Tib. 1. 6. 22.)

Manis adiit regemque tremendum. (Verg. G. 4. 469.)

Roma horrenda late nomen in ultimas extendat oras.

(Hor. Od. 3. 3. 45.)

Quies inter labores aut jam exhaustos aut mox exhauriendos renovavit corpora animosque ad omnia de integro patienda.

(L. 21. 21.)

Alii alios intueri, contemplari arma mox tradenda, et inermes futuras dexteras. (L. 9. 5.)

Ubi ad ima perventum est, rursum specus alter aperitur ob alia dicendus. (Mela 1. 73.)

Equidem beatos puto, quibus deorum munere datum est aut facere scribenda aut scribere legenda. (Plin. Ep. 6. 16.)

(b) Sic enim majores nostri labores non fugiendos, tristissimo tamen verbo, aerumnas etiam in deo nominaverunt. (C. Fin. 2. 35.) 1404

Metuit fata puellæ, vota que pro domina vix numeranda facit.

(Tib. 4. 4. 12.)

Infandum regina jubes renovare dolorem. (Verg. A. 2. 3.)

Hannibali, vix per se ipsi tolerando Italiæ hosti, (verebantur ne) Hasdrubal jungeretur. (L. 23. 28.)

Dixit domi militiæque sub haud pænitando magistro, ipso Anco rege, Romana se jura, Romanos ritus, didicisse. (L. 1. 35.)



*The gerundive in -bundo- is used as a present participle: in the nominative case it has in the historians (rarely) a direct object.* 1405

Populabundus agros ad oppidum pervenit. (Sisenna ap. Gell. 11. 15.)

Alii corpora huc et illuc, quasi vitabundi aut jacientes tela, agitant.  
(Sall. J. 60.)

Hæc prope contionabundus circumibat homines. (L. 3. 47.)

Hanno ex Brutiis profectus cum exercitu, vitabundus castra hostium consulesque, loco edito castra posuit. (L. 25. 13.)

*The passive participle is, chiefly in Livy and other historians, used, similarly to the gerundive, with a substantive, so as to express, not so much a thing or person acted on, as the action itself. But the action is regarded as completed. Both nominative and oblique cases are so used.* 1406

*In the neuter singular the participle is so used without a substantive, but rarely in oblique cases (except ablative, §§ 1254, 1256).*

*Accusative: with prepositions.*

Regnatum Romæ ab condita urbe ad liberatam annos ducentos quadraginta quattuor. (L. 1. 60.) 1407

Hoc nemo ibit infitias, Thebas et ante Epaminondam natum et post ejusdem interitum perpetuo alieno paruisse imperio.  
(Nep. 15. 10.)

Milem prætorianum ob subreptum e viridiario pavonem capite puniit. (Suet. Tib. 60.)

Decemviri libros inspicere jussi propter territos vulgo homines novis prodigiis. (L. 22. 36.)

Consul post fusos circa Litanam silvam Boios quietam provinciam habuit. (L. 34. 42.)

Acer Romanus hosti ante expectatum positus stat in agmine castris.  
(Verg. G. 3. 348.)

Inventum est carmen in libris Sibyllinis propter crebrius eo anno de cælo lapidatum. (L. 29. 10.)

*Ablative: (a) without prepositions. (Other instances in § 1250 sqq.)* 1408

Partis honoribus eosdem in foro gessi labores, quos petendis.

(C. Phil. 6. 6.)

Fessos milites, quippe qui capienda urbe tantum laboris periculique adissent, et capta cum iis, qui in arcem confugerant, iniquo etiam loco pugnassent, curare corpora jussit. (L. 26. 48.)

*(b) With prepositions.*

Narrabant queri eum de Milone per vim expulso. (C. Att. 9. 14.)

Major itaque ex civibus amissis dolor, quam lætitia fuis hostibus, fuit. (L. 4. 17.)

*Genitive.*

1409

Barbarus eum quidam palam ob iram interfecti ab eo domini obtruncat. (L. 21. 2.)

Tantus simul mæror patres, misericordiaque sociorum peremptorum indigne, et pudor non lati auxilii, cepit. (L. 21. 16.)

Tum Danai gemitu atque ereptæ virginis ira undique collecti invadunt. (Verg. *A.* 2. 413.)

Sibi quisque cæsi regis expetebat decus. (Curt. 4. 15, § 25.)

Fama dediti benigneque excepti Segestis vulgata, ut quibusque bellum invitis aut cupientibus erat, spe vel dolore excipitur.

(Tac. *A.* 1. 59.)

*Nominative.*

1410

Tua scelera di immortales in nostros milites expiaverunt: dubitabat nemo quin violati hospites, legati necati, fana vexata, hanc tantam efficerent vastitatem. (C. *Pis.* 35.)

Catilinæ nuntiavit, ne eum Lentulus et Cethegus aliique ex conjuratione deprehensi terrerent. (Sall. *C.* 48.)

M. Valerius domestica etiam gloria accensus, ut, cujus familiæ decus ejecti reges erant, ejusdem interfecti forent. (L. 2. 20.)

Non dictatorem humerus vulneratus, non Fabium prope affixum equo femur, non brachium abscisum consulem, ex tam ancipiti prælio summovit. (L. 4. 28.)

Prusiam suspectum Romanis et receptus post fugam Antiochi Hannibal et bellum adversus Eumenem motum faciebat. (L. 39. 51.)

Consulatus Ciceronis non mediocre adjecit decus natus eo anno divus Augustus. (Vell. 2. 36.)

Ipsi viderant diem illum, cum occisus dictator Cæsar, aliis pessimum, aliis pulcherrimum facinus videretur. (Tac. *A.* 1. 8.)

Hæc proprie attingunt eos ipsos qui arguuntur, ut telum, ut vestigium, ut cruor, ut deprehensum aliquid quod ablatum ereptumve videatur, ut responsum inconstanter, ut hæsitatum, ut titubatum, ut cum aliquo visus ex quo suspitio oriatur.

1411

(C. *Part. Or.* 33.)

Duri magno sed amore dolores polluto, notumque, furens quid femina possit, triste per augurium Teucrorum pectora ducunt.

(Verg. *A.* 5. 6.)

Arte belli æquasset superiores reges, ni degeneratum in aliis huic quoque decori offecisset. (L. 1. 53.)

Diu non perlitatum tenuerat dictatorem. (L. 7. 8.)

Equidem, sicubi loco cessum, si terga data hosti, si signa fœde amissa obici nobis possent, tamen, &c. (Ib. 13.)

Tentatum domi per dictatorem, ut ambo patricii consules crearentur, rem ad interregnum perduxit. (Ib. 21.)

## CHAPTER XV.

## USE OF VERB INFLEXIONS. INFLEXIONS OF VOICE.

VERBS with active inflexions are of two classes, transitive <sup>1412</sup> and intransitive. Some verbs belong to both.

Transitive verbs express an action conceived in connection <sup>1413</sup> with an object upon which it is exercised; e.g. *amo*, *I love*; *moneo*, *I warn*; *audio*, *I hear*; *edo*, *I eat*; *pello*, *I push*; *rego*, *I guide*; *tolero*, *I bear*; *uro*, *I burn*; *lædo*, *I wound*.

But it is not necessary that the object should be actually expressed: e.g. *edo*, *I eat*, does not cease to be a transitive verb because no food is specified.

Some verbs being specially applicable to, or frequently used with, a particular object are not unfrequently found in this special sense without the object being expressed (cf. § 1065); e.g.

*appellere* (Hor. S. 1. 5. 12), sc. *navem*, *put in to shore*; *conturbare* (C. Att. 4. 7), sc. *rationes*, *become bankrupt*; *facere*, sc. *sacra*, *sacrifice*; *facere mecum* (C. Cæcin. fin.), sc. *rem*, *make with me, on my side*; *habere* (Pl. Men. 69), sc. *domum*, *dwell* (hence *habitare*); *inhibere* (C. Att. 13. 21), sc. *navem*, *back water*; *mittere* (C. Att. 13. 11), sc. *nuntium*, *send a message*; *obire*, sc. *mortem*, *die*; *tendere* (Cæs. G. 6. 37), sc. *pelles*, *pitch tents*.

Intransitive (or neuter) verbs express a state of being, or an <sup>1414</sup> action not conceived in connection with any object, as thereby affected; e.g. *curro*, *I run*; *horreo*, *I shiver*; *gaudeo*, *I rejoice*; *præsum*, *I am at the head*; *ardeo*, *I am on fire*; *noceo*, *I am hurtful*.

Such a state or action may affect other persons or things indirectly, and this indirect object may be expressed in an oblique case, just as a similarly indirect object may be expressed with a transitive verb.

Verbs with passive inflexions are of two classes; viz. verbs <sup>1415</sup> which have also an active voice, and verbs which have no (corresponding) active voice. The latter are called deponents. (See list in § 734).

In verbs which have also an active voice, passive inflexions are <sup>1416</sup> used principally to bring into prominence either the object of the action by making it the subject of the sentence, or the occurrence of the action, without specifying the agent.

If the object of the action be a person or thing, i.e. if the verb be transitive, the passive may be used in both numbers and all three persons. Thus, *lædo*, *I wound*, may have for object *me*, *te*, *eum* (*eam*, *id*), *nos*, *vos*, *eos* (*eas*, *ea*). Consequently in the passive we may have (*ego*) *lædor*, (*tu*) *læderis*, (*is*, *ea*, *id*) *læditur*, (*nos*) *lædimur*, (*vos*) *lædimini*, (*ii*, *eae*, *ea*) *læduntur*, *I am (being) wounded*, *thou art wounded*, &c.

If the verb be intransitive, and therefore express merely the existence or occurrence of an action, the passive is used in the third person singular only (as if the action itself were the real object of such a verb). Thus *noceo*, *I am hurtful*, *I do hurt*; *nocetur*, *hurtfulness exists*, *hurt is (being) done*; *eo*, *I go*; *itur*, *going takes place*, *is (being) done*; *suadeo*, *I give advice*; *suadetur*, *advice is given*.

Beside the more usual case, in which the subject is acted on by <sup>1417</sup> others, passive inflexions are sometimes used in speaking: (1) of an action done by the subject to himself; and more frequently (2) of an action experienced without any specified external agency; e.g.

(1) *adducor* (Ov. M. 3. 598), *bring myself to*; *cingor*, *accingor*, *gird myself*; *commendor* (C. Fin. 3. 5), *set myself off*; *concillor* (ib.), *unite myself*; *condor* (Verg. A. 2. 401), *put myself away*; *dedor* (L. 26. 7), *give myself up*; *erigor* (Hor. S. 2. 8. 58), *raise myself*; *exerceor*, *exercise myself*; *exuor*, *take off myself*; *feror*, *bear myself*; *frigor* (Hor. Od. 3. 6. 22), *train myself*; *frigor*, *rub myself*; *induor*, *put on myself*; *jactor*, *boast myself*; *jungor* (Ov. M. 14. 762), *join myself*; *liberor* (C. Att. 3. 20), *free myself*; *perluor* (Ov. M. 3. 173), *wash myself over*; *ponor* (C. Fam. 9. 15), *place myself*; *præcipitor*, *throw myself headlong*; *purgor* (Hor. A. P. 302), *purge myself*; *recreor*, *refresh myself*; *reprimor* (Pl. Mil. 1368), *restrain myself*; *retineor* (Pl. Trin. 641), *hold myself back*; *sinuor* (Ov.), *bend myself*; *sternor*, *throw myself on the ground*; *tegor* (L. 4. 37), *cover myself*; *tergor*, *wipe myself*; *vector* (and compounds), *turn myself*; *ungor*, *anoint myself*; *volvor* (and compounds), *roll myself*; and others. So Lucilius 7. 12, ed. Müller, *rador*, *subvellor*, *desquamor*, *pumicor*, *ornor*, *expolior*, *pingor*.

(2) Corresponding in English to verbs used intransitively: *alor*, feed; *circumagor*, move round; *congregor*, herd with, *congregamur*, we collect; *contineor* (Cæs. G. 7. 80), keep; *contrahor*, contract; *corrumpor*, spoil; *delector*, delight; *extinguor* (of a light), go out; *findor*, split; *fundor*, pour; *diffundor*, spread; *lavor*, bathe; *mergor*, plunge; *moveor*, move; *mutor*, change; *ornor* (Pl. Mil. 251), dress; *pascor*, feed; *rumpor*, burst; *tondeor* (L. 27. 34), shave; *devortor*, turn aside to lodge; and many others, where it is difficult to say that there is any precise notion of action either by oneself or by others.

Sometimes also (3) the action is one which the subject gets done or lets be done to him: e.g. *cogor*, I find myself compelled; *non defatigabor* (C. Or. 3. 36), I will not permit myself to be tired out, &c.

The simple import of the passive inflexions is the same in all these cases, viz. that the subject is also the object of the action.

Deponents have passive inflexions, but the meaning and construction of verbs with active inflexions. Some deponents are transitive, e.g. *fateor*, I confess; some intransitive, e.g. *epulor*, I banquet. 1418

In a few verbs this deponent use of the passive inflexions coexists with a properly passive one. The past participle is not unfrequently subject to vacillation. (See Book II. chap. XXIX.)

The precise import of the passive inflexions in the case of each deponent is not easy to tell, because we do not know the precise conception attached originally to the verbal stem. The ordinary meaning which we attach to the verb in its deponent form is that original meaning as modified by the effect of the passive inflexions.

The following appear to be some of the shades of meaning which suggested the use of the passive (originally reflexive) inflexions. 1419

1. Action upon oneself, e.g. *fungor*, I free myself; *proficiscor*, I set myself forward (i.e. travel); *potior*, I make myself master; *apiscor*, I fasten to myself; *amplector*, I fold myself round (i.e. embrace); *nitor*, I make myself kneel (§ 129).

2. Action within oneself, e.g. *morior*, I die; *patior*, I suffer; *irascor*, I get angry; *reor*, I think; *spatior*, I walk about.



3. Action for oneself: e.g. **obliviscor**, *I blot out for myself*; **mereor**, *I earn for myself* (**mereo**, simply *I earn*); **epulor**, *I make a feast for myself*; **piscor**, *I provide myself with fish*. So **metior**, **partior**, **sortior**, all convey the idea of the subject's share in the result.

4. Becoming (e.g. playing a part): e.g. **blandior**, *I play the coxer*; **furor**, *I play the thief*, hence *steal*; **dominor**, *I act the lord*; **interpretor**, *I act interpreter*.

5. Engagement in a mutual action. The effect is seen chiefly in plural number; e.g. **osculamur**, *we kiss*; **prællor**, *I wage war*; **comitor**, *I accompany* (or *make myself an attendant?*); **rixor**, *I wrangle*.

In the construction of passive verbs several points require notice. 1420

1. If a transitive verb be changed from the active to the passive voice, the following additional changes are required, if the sentence is to express the same fact, as it did.

- (a) The object of the active verb becomes subject to the passive verb.
- (b) A secondary predicate of the object changes from the accusative to the nominative.
- (c) The agent (subject of the active verb) is put in the ablative with the prep. **ab**. (See §§ 1146, 1147.)

e.g. Lucius Marcum	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{laedit} \\ \text{Druso adiutorem dedit} \\ \text{consulem esse dicit} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{wounds Marcus.} \\ \text{gave Marcus to Drusus} \\ \text{as a helper.} \\ \text{says Marcus is consul.} \end{array} \right.$
Marcus a Lucio	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{laeditur} \\ \text{Druso adiutor datus est} \\ \text{consul esse dicitur} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is being wounded by} \\ \text{Lucius.} \\ \text{was given to Drusus as} \\ \text{a helper.} \\ \text{is being said by Lucius} \\ \text{to be consul.} \end{array} \right.$

2. *Verbs, properly intransitive, sometimes, by a stretch of the conception, receive passive inflexions, as if they were transitive* <sup>1421</sup>  
(cf. § 1123).

Citharædus ridetur, chorda qui semper oberrat eadem.

(Hor. *A. P.* 356.)

Neque enim hic, ut gentibus quæ regnantur, certa dominorum domus et ceteri servi. (Tac. *G.* 23.)

At certe credemur ait, si verba sequetur exitus. (Ov. *F.* 3. 351.)

Animus auditoris persuasus esse videtur. (Corn. *I.* 6.)

Tota mihi dormitur hiems. (Mart. 13. 59.)

3. *An intransitive verb is not used in the passive except impersonally, and no further change is required, except usually the omission of the agent. (If expressed, it will be usually in the ablative with ab as above.)* <sup>1422</sup>

(*An indirect object to an intransitive (passive) verb in Latin will sometimes appear in English translation as the subject of a transitive (passive) verb.*)

Persuasumst homini; factumst; ventumst; vincimur; duxit.

(Ter. *Ph.* 135.)

Ne illam ecastor fænerato mi abstulisti. Sic datur. PE. Sic datur.

Properato absente me comesse prandium. (Pl. *Men.* 626.)

Itur ad te, Pseudole. SI. Salve. Quid agitur? PS. Statur hic ad hunc modum. (Pl. *Ps.* 457.)

Sed jam, si placet, de provinciis decedatur, in urbemque redeatur.

(C. *Leg.* 3. 8.)

Invidetur commodis hominum ipsorum, studiis autem eorum ceteris commodandi favetur. (C. *Or.* 2. 51.)

Sed tamen satis fiet a nobis, neque parceretur labori. (C. *Att.* 2. 14.)

Ait nullam umquam gentem promptiorem veniæ dandæ fuisse; quoties rebellionem etiam majorum suorum ignotum!

(L. 25. 16, § 12.)

Vult sibi quisque credi. (L. 22. 22.)

Quid ergo? ista condicio est testium, ut, quibus creditum non sit negantibus, isdem credatur aientibus? (C. *Rab. P.* 12.)

Tandem quum iræ resedissent, ordine consuli cœpit. (L. 2. 29.)

Nunc vero nactus occasionem, postea quam navigari cœptum est, cupidissime et quam creberrime potero scribam ad te.

(Pollio ap. C. *Fam.* 10. 31.)

Conclamatum 'ad arma,' concursusque in muros atque portas est.  
(L. 6. 28.)

A Gotta primisque ordinibus acriter resistebatur. (Caes. G. 5. 30.)

Mihi quidem persuaderi numquam potuit animos emori.  
(C. Sen. 22.)

Dixit totam plebem ære alieno demersam esse, nec sisti posse, ni  
omnibus consulatur. (L. 2. 29.)

In eam spem erecta civitas erat, in Africa eo anno bellatum iri,  
finemque bello Punico adesse. (L. 29. 14.)

4. *A neuter pronoun in the singular number (which is in the 1423 accusative as denoting the extent of an action after an active verb) is found with the passive construction.*

(It may be considered as an accusative still, or perhaps as a nominative qualifying the impersonal subject.)

Hoc a Lucio { Marcus læditur, Marcus receives this wound from Lucius.  
Marco nocetur, This hurt is being done Marcus by Lucius.

Mihi quidem ipsi nihil ab istis jam noceri potest. (C. Cat. 3. 12.)

Hoc solum pugnatur. (C. Rosc. Am. 3.)

*So the cognate accusative is occasionally found converted into the 1424 subject of an (intransitive) verb in the passive.*

Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est. (Nep. 23. 5.)

Tertia jam vivitur aetas. (Ov. Met. 12. 188.)

## CHAPTER XVI.

### USE OF VERBAL INFLEXIONS OF PERSON AND NUMBER.

#### I. Subject and predicate contained in the verb.

*The finite verb contains both subject and predicate in itself, the personal inflexions expressing the subject, and the stem the predicate.*

*Hence, wherever in English an unemphatic pronoun is sufficient to denote the subject without risk of ambiguity, the finite verb in Latin requires no addition for this purpose. This is the case the verb*

##### 1. *in the first or second person.*

*Thus curro, currimus, refer to the person or persons speaking, curris, curritis, curat, curatis, to the person or persons spoken to.*

*But the pronouns may be added for the sake of emphasis or contrast.*

Quod ego fui ad Trasimenum, ad Cannas, id tu hodie es.

(L. 10. 30.)

Dominus est: vincit hic ter: vince tu tuum animum. (CORN. 4. 72.)

Negat cuncta Italia, negat senatus, negatis vos. (C. PELL. 4. 1.)

Ego reges eieci, vos tyrannos introducis: ego Libertatem, quam non eras, peperisti, vos patriam servare non voluisti. (CORN. 4. 11.)

2. *in the third person, when it is the same as the subject of the verb. Last personal verb of the same number and person, and which is finite in the sense. (Tery frequent.)*

Venit Verres in eadem Castoris: considerat templum: versat se, quaerit, quid agat. (C. TERT. 2. 10.)

3. *omnesque (s) in the third person plural, when the subject is not person or persons.*

Deorum immortalium judicia solent in scholis preferre de morte.

(C. T. D. 1. 4.)

Sic ut sunt Danae, quinquaginta sint filii, nec dices magnam quaerunt pecuniam. (C. PELL. 6. 1.)

Casino salutarium veniebat, Aquino, Interamna, admissus est domo.

(C. PELL. 2. 11.)

Velut ex oppidis publice gravabantur Pompeji. (C. T. D. 2. 11.)

Hujus atrocitas facinoris novam velut flammam regis invidiæ adjecit, ut vulgo ipsum liberosque exsecrarentur. (L. 40. 5.)

Conjugibus liberisque et senioribus super sexaginta annos in propinquam Epirum missis, ab quindecim ad sexaginta annos conjurant, nisi victores se non redituros. (L. 26. 25.)

Adice, quod genus ultionis est eripere ei, qui fecit, factæ contumeliæ voluptatem. Solent dicere, 'o miserum me: puto, non intellexit.' (Sen. Dial. 2. 17.)

Hence we find sentences in which **partim**, 'partly,' appears to perform the functions of a subject, as if it were **pars** or **alii**. (Comp. vulgo above.)

Partim e nobis ita timidi sunt, ut omnem populi Romani beneficiorum memoriam abjecerint, partim ita a republica aversi ut se hosti favere præ se ferant. (C. Phil. 8. 11.)

More correctly Amici partim deseruerunt me, partim etiam prodiderunt. (C. Q. F. 1. 3. 5.)

(b) in the third person singular, when an indefinite subject has been implied in a preceding clause.

Neque mihi præstabilius quicquam videtur, quam posse dicendo voluntates impellere quo velit, unde autem velit, deducere. (C. Or. 1. 8.)

Idem, si puer parvus occidit, æquo animo ferendum putant, si vero in cunis, ne querendum quidem. Atqui ab hoc acerbius exegit natura quod dederat. Nondum gustaverat, inquit, vitæ suavitatem. (C. T. D. 1. 39.)

Negabat ullam vocem inimiciorem amicitiae potuisse reperiri quam ejus, qui dixisset ita amare oportere, ut si aliquando esset osurus. (C. Læl. 16.)

4. in certain verbs in the 3rd person singular, where the fact of the action, state, or feeling is the prominent point and the doer is left indefinite. Such verbs are called *impersonals*, and may be classified as follows:

(a) The verbs **miseret**, **piget**, **pudet**, **paenitet**, **taedet**.

Ipsius facti pudet. (Ter. Haut. 576.) Miseret me aliorum.

(Other examples in § 1328. Many other verbs, e.g. **decet**, **oportet**, **accidit**, &c. are called *impersonals*: but these have always a neuter pronoun, or infinitive, or sentence for subject.)

(b) Expressions concerning the weather or sky.

Fulminat; tonat; pluit; gelat (Plin. 14, § 39); advesperascit.

Instat superstitio, si fulserit, si tonuerit, si tactum aliquid erit de cælo. (C. Div. 2. 72.)



Cum æstate vehementius tonuit quam fulsit, ventos ex ea parte denuntiat, contra si minus tonuit, imbrem. Cum sereno cælo fulgetræ erunt et tonitrua, hiemabit, atrocissime autem, cum ex omnibus quattuor partibus cæli fulgurabit; cum ab aquilone tantum, in posterum diem aquam portendet. (Plin. 18, § 354.)

Reate imbri lapidavit. (L. 43. 13.)

Quom caletur, cocleæ in occulto latent. (Pl. *Capt.* 78.)

Hoc quidem edepol hau multo post luce lucebit. (Pl. *Curc.* 182.)

Luciscit hoc jam. (Ter. *Haut.* 410.) For hoc, comp. § 1423.

Nondum legere poteramus; nam et lumina dimiseramus, nec satis lucebat. (C. *Att.* 16. 13 a.)

(c) *Intransitive verbs are sometimes so used, generally in the passive voice (see § 1422).*

Dicto paretur. (L. 9. 32.) Cui parci potuit? (L. 21. 14.)

Uter igitur est divitior—cui deest an cui superat? (C. *Par.* 6. 3.)

Mihi benest et tibi malest: dignissimumst. (Pl. *Most.* 52.)

Lites severe æstimatæ: cui placet, obliviscitur: cui dolet, meminit. (C. *Mur.* 20.)

5. *If two relative clauses refer to the same antecedent but require the relatives to be in different cases, the relative is sometimes omitted in the second clause, if it be the subject<sup>1</sup>, and if no ambiguity is likely to arise. (Sometimes the demonstrative is used for the second relative.)* 1432

Qui pauperes sunt homines, miseri vivont, præsertim quibus nec quæstus est nec artem didicere ullam. (Pl. *Rud.* 291.)

Quid ille fecerit (rogo), quem neque pudet quicquam, nec metuit quemquam. (Ter. *Ad.* 84.)

Sunt quibus ne hæc quidem certamina exponere satis fuerit, adjecterint et Appii criminationes de Fabio absente ad populum et pertinaciam adversus præsentem consulem prætoris. (L. 9. 26.)

See also Sall. *J.* 101 in § 1437.

6. *Sometimes the subject is to be supplied from an oblique case in a subsequent relative clause. Not uncommon in Lucretius.*

Ita capta lepore te sequitur cupide, quo quamque inducere pergis.  
(Lucr. 1. 15, where see Munro, ed. 3.)

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes also if it be the object, and the preceding relative is in some case other than the masc. or fem. nominative, e.g. 'quæ non inerunt et quæres.' (Varr. *R. R.* 1. 7.) 'Quod magis ad nos pertinet et nescire malumst, agitur.' (Hor. *S.* 2. 6. 72.) See Madvig on Cic. *Fin.* 5, § 26.

## ii. Subject expressed by a separate word or words.

*As the finite verb always contains its own subject in its personal inflexions, the separate word, usually called its subject, is, strictly speaking, in apposition to these inflexions for the purpose of closer definition.*

1. *When the subject is expressed by a separate word, the finite verb is in the same number and person as its subject.*

Quid enim ego laboravi, aut in quo evigilarunt curæ et cogitationes meae? (C. Par. 2.)

Te ærumnæ premunt omnes, qui te florentem putas; te lubidines torquent; tu dies noctesque cruciaris, cui non sat est, quod est. (Ib.)

Sunt hic etiam sua præmia laudi: sunt lacrimæ rerum et mentem mortalia tangunt. (Verg. A. 1. 461.)

Eum tu hominem terreto, si quem eris nactus. (C. Par. 2.)

Nos igitur divitiores, qui plura habemus? (C. Par. 6. 3.)

Omnes enim patres familiæ falce et aratro relictis intra murum correpsimus. (Col. 1. præf. § 15.)

*Exceptions:*

1434

(a) *If the subject be a substantive in the singular number, but denotes more than one person, the verb is sometimes in the plural.*

(Rare in Cæsar and Sallust, hardly at all in Cicero.)

Juventus delecta, ubi plurimum periculi ac timoris ostendebatur, ibi vi majore obsistebant. (L. 21. 7.)

Cetera classis, prætoria nave amissa, quantum quæque remis valuit, fugerunt. (L. 25. 26.)

Diffugiunt alii ad naves; pars scandunt rursus equum.

(Verg. A. 2. 400.)

Uterque eorum ex castris stativis a flumine Apso exercitum educunt.

(Cæs. G. 3. 30.)

Aperite aliquis actutum ostium. (Ter. Ad. 634.)

Multitudo pars procurrat in vias, pars in vestibulis stat, pars ex tectis fenestrisque prospectant et quid rei sit rogitant. (L. 24. 21.)

*So in loose language, Uter eratis, tun' an ille, major?*

(Pl. Men. 1119.)

(b) *The verb, if it closely follow a secondary predicate, sometimes conforms to it in number. (This is rare, except where it is indifferent which substantive be considered the subject.)* 1435

Amantium iræ amoris integratio est. (Ter. Andr. 555.)

Contentum rebus suis esse maximæ sunt certissimæque divitiæ.

(C. Par. 6. 3.)

Quas geritis vestes sordida lana fuit. (Ov. A. A. 3. 222.)

2. *When the subject is composed of two or more substantives, denoting different persons or things, but regarded as in connection with each other, the verb is put in the plural: in the first person plural, if the subjects contain the first person; and in the second person plural, if the subject contain the second person and not the first.* 1436

Paulus et Marcellus privato consilio prætereuntur. (Cæs. C. 1. 6.)

Si tu et Tullia, lux nostra, valetis, ego et suavissimus Cicero valemus. (C. Fam. 14. 5.)

Errastis, Rulle, vehementer et tu et nonnulli collegæ tui, qui sperastis vos populares existimari. (C. Agr. 1. 7.)

Primus Tarentinus dicitur sinus, in eoque sunt Tarentus, Metapontum, Heraclea, Croto, Thurium: secundus Scyllaceus, in quo est Petelia, Carcinus, Scyllaceum, Mystiæ. (Mela 2, § 68.)

Ego et vos scimus inurbanum lepido seponere dicto.

(Hor. A. P. 272.)

*Occasionally the plural is found when a singular substantive has another joined to it by the preposition cum; rarely when the connexion is by a disjunctive.* 1437

Bocchus cum peditibus, quos Volux filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna, in itinere morati, adfuerant, postremam Romanorum aciem invadunt. (Sall. J. 101.)

Ipsæ dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur. (L. 21. 6c.)

Hæc neque ego neque tu fecimus. (Ter. Ad. 103.)

*If the two or more substantives composing the subject really form but one notion, the verb is frequently put in the singular.* 1438

Senatus populusque Romanus intelligit. (C. Fam. 3. 8.)

Religio et fides anteponatur amicitia. (C. Off. 3. 10.)

Cum tempus necessitasque postulat, decernendum manu est.

(Ib. 1. 23.)

Hora momentumque temporis evertendis imperiis sufficit.

(Sen. Ep. 91, § 6.)

## iii. Omission of the verbal predicate.

1. *When two or more subjects require the same predicate, but joint action &c. is not to be expressed, the predicate is usually expressed only once (unless emphasis be sought), and is put in the number and person required by the subject nearest to it in the sentence.*

Hoc mihi et Peripatetici et vetus Academia concedit. (C. *Ac.* 2. 35.)

In hominibus juvandis aut mores spectari aut fortuna solet.

(C. *Off.* 2. 20.)

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. (C. *Fam.* 2. 6.)

Vir bonus et sapiens dici delector ego ac tu. (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 16. 32.)

Dionysium abs te et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit. (C. *Att.* 4. 17.)

Et tu et omnes homines sciunt. (C. *Fam.* 13. 8.)

Tenet ima lacunæ lenta salix ulvæque leves juncique palustres.

(Ov. *M.* 8. 335.)

In qua sententia Democritus, Heraclitus, Empedocles, Aristoteles fuit. (C. *Fat.* 17.)

Legiones ipse dictator, magister equitum suos equites ducit.

(L. 3. 27.)

Quæsturam nos, consulatum Cotta, ædilitatem petebat Hortensius.

(C. *Brut.* 92.)

Nunc mihi nihil libri, nihil litteræ, nihil doctrina prodest.

(C. *Att.* 9. 10.)

Me non tantum litteræ, quantum longinquitas temporis mitigavit.

(C. *Fam.* 6. 4.)

Quis illum consulem, nisi latrones putant? (C. *Phil.* 4. 4.)

Hoc si minus verbis, re cogitur confiteri. (C. *Fat.* 10.)

Nec, si nullius alterius nos, ne civium quidem horum pudet?

(L. 22. 14.)

Sed ei cariora semper omnia, quam decus atque pudicitia fuit.

(Sall. *G.* 25.)

*Eut* Dixit juratus P. Titius tutor pupilli Junii; dixit M. Junius tutor et patruus: Mustius dixisset si viveret; dixit L. Domitius.

(C. *Verr.* 1. 53.)

2. *When a plural subject is distributed by an apposition of allus, quisque, pars, &c., either the general plural predicate is omitted, or more usually the special singular predicate.*

Ambo exercitus, Vejens Tarquiniensisque, suas quisque abeunt domos. (L. 2. 7.)

Quisque suos patimur manis. (Verg. *A.* 6. 743.)

Decemviri perturbati, alius in aliam partem castrorum, discurrunt.  
(L. 3. 50.)

Inertia et mollitia animi, alius alium expectantes, cunctamini.  
(Sall. C. 52, § 28.)

Pictores et poetæ, suum quisque opus a vulgo considerari vult.  
(C. Off. 1. 41.)

Palatium Romulus, Remus Aventinum ad inaugurandum templum capiunt. (L. 1. 6.)

His oratoribus duæ res maximæ, altera alteri defuit. (C. Brut. 55.)

Consules ejus anni, alter morbo, alter ferro perierat. (L. 41. 18.)

3. *The verb is sometimes omitted when it can be readily supplied by consideration of the context. So especially dico and facio; and in answers, the verb used in the question &c.*

Quid tu, inquit, tam mane, Tubero? Tum ille. (C. R. P. 1. 9.)

Crassus verbum nullum contra gratiam. (C. Att. 1. 18.)

Heus tu, manum de tabula. (C. Fam. 5. 23.) Cicero Attico salutem.

Sed 'bene Messallam' sua quisque ad pocula dicat. (Tib. 2. 1. 31.)

Sapienter hæc reliquisti, si consilio; feliciter, si casu. (C. Fam. 7. 28.)

Restat ut in castra Sexti, aut, si forte, Bruti nos conferamus.

(C. Att. 14. 13.)

Venter in medio quietus nihil aliud, quam datis voluptatibus fruitur.

(L. 2. 32.)

Galli per biduum nihil aliud, quam steterunt parati. (L. 34. 46.)

Nam quod aiunt, 'minima de malis' id est, ut turpiter potius quam calamitose. (C. Off. 3. 29.)

Ecquem tu hominem infeliciorem? (C. Att. 10. 18.)

A me C. Cæsar pecuniam? Cur potius, quam ego ab illo?

(C. Phil. 2. 29.)

Ne tum quidem sequeris. Tam bonus gladiator rudem tam cito?

(Ib.)

Magis ac magis anxia Agrippina, quod nemo a filio. (Tac. A. 14. 8.)

Ibi usque ad necem operiere loris. SA. Loris liber? (Ter. Ad. 1. 82.)

Obsecro, num ludis tu me? MI. Ego te? quamobrem? (Ib. 697.)

Num igitur peccamus? minime vos quidem. (C. Att. 8. 9.)

Quo mihi fortunam, si non conceditur uti? (Hor. Epist. 1. 5. 12.)

Quid, si hoc muto? (Cæcin. ap. C. Fam. 6. 7.)

Quid, quod sic loqui vetant? (C. Or. 47.) Quid multa?

Sed hoc nihil ad me. (C. Or. 2. 32.) Quorsum hæc?



4. *A predication is rarely made by two nouns only, or a noun<sup>1442</sup> and attributive (§ 1009), except where the finite verb, if expressed, would be some tense of the indicative mood of sum. (In good prose, rarely in relative or dependent interrogative sentences.) In Plautus, a finite verb is even in this case almost always expressed, except in a few phrases.*

Sed hæc vetera: illud vero recens, Cæsarem meo consilio interfectum. (*C. Phil.* 2. 11.)

Omnes ergo in culpa. (*Ib.* 12.) Quietum inde iter. (*Tac. A.* 1. 51.)

Suave, mari magno turbantibus æquora ventis, e terra magnum alterius spectare laborem. (*Lucr.* 2. 1.)

Quid hoc? Bene hercle factum. Num quid aliud? Itane? (*Plaut.*)

Mirum ni hic me quasi murænam exossare cogitat. (*Pl. Amph.* 319.)

Si quidem hercle possis, nil prius neque fortius. (*Ter. Eun.* 50.)

Potest incidere sæpe contentio et comparatio de duobus honestis, utrum honestius. (*C. Off.* 1. 43.)

Cadit statim similtas ab altera parte deserta: Nisi paria, non pugnant. (*Sen. Ir.* 2. 34.)

Sequar te, ut, si qua ex hoc invidia, non tantum tua.

(*Plin. Ep.* 7. 33, § 6.)

*This predication without est, &c. (besides its occurrence where the<sup>1443</sup> est is expressed in an adjoining clause) is common (a) in descriptions of a scene or the like (comp. § 1359); and (b) with past participle.*

(a) Redeunti interea ex ipsa re mi incidit suspitio, 'hem paululum obsoni: ipse tristis: de improviso nuptiæ: non cohærent...Ego me continuo ad Chremem: quom illo advenio, solitudo ante ostium. (*Ter. And.* 359 seqq.)

Age nunc iter expediti latronis cum Milonis impedimentis compare. Semper ille antea cum uxore, tum sine ea: numquam nisi in ræda, tum in equo; comites Græculi, quocunque ibat, tum nugarum in comitatu nihil. (*C. Mil.* 21.)

Ante diem tertium Idus Novembris, cum sacra via descenderem, insecutus est me cum suis: clamor, lapides, fustes, gladii, hæc improvisa omnia. (*C. Att.* 4. 3, § 3; cf. seqq.)

Videamus nunc de beato: sine virtute certe nullo modo: virtus autem actiuosa; et deus vester nihil agens, expers virtutis igitur; ita ne beatus quidem. Quæ ergo vita? (*C. N. D.* 1. 40.)

Mare sævom, inportuosum, ager frugum fertilis, bonus pecori, arbori infecundus; cælo terraque penuria aquarum. (*Sall. J.* 17.)

(b) Interea cum meis omnibus copiis vexavi Amaniensis, hostis sempiternos: multi occisi, capti: reliqui dissipati: castella munita inproviso adventu capta et incensa. (C. Fam. 2. 10.)

Et Eumeni absenti et præsenti Attalo gratiæ actæ, et ædes liberæ locus lautia decreta, et munera data. (L. 35. 23.)

*Rarely as* Arma, quibus lætatus, habe tua. (Verg. A. 10. 827.)

*Similarly the infinitive esse is usually omitted with the future participle, and frequently with the past participle, esp. after volo, oportet, &c.): sometimes in other cases. Occasionally fuisse is omitted.*

Respondit se id neminem facturum putasse. (C. Rosc. A. 25.)

(Dixit) neminem se plebeium contempturum, ubi contemni desissent. (L. 4. 35.)

Senatus censuit frequens coloniam Lavicos deducendam. (L. 4. 47.)

Quid dubitatis? jam sublimem raptum oportuit. (Pl. Men. 995.)

Quid refert utrum voluerim fieri an gaudeam factum?

(C. Phil. 2. 12.)

Præfatus est sibi defectionis ab Romanis consilium placiturum nullo modo (*sc. fuisse*), nisi necessarium fuisset. (L. 23. 2.)

## CHAPTER XVII.

### Of the INDICATIVE and IMPERATIVE MOODS and THEIR TENSES.

#### (A) TENSES OF INDICATIVE MOOD.

1445

The Indicative mood is the primary and ordinary form of the finite verb, and is therefore used wherever there is no special reason for employing the imperative or subjunctive. Not only facts but suppositions and commands can be put in the indicative mood, but only when the writer or speaker relies on the tenor of the context, or turn of the rhetoric, to guard against misapprehension, and does not care to mark the supposition or command by the form of the expression.

The tenses of the Latin verb in the indicative mood may be divided either (i) according to the time to which they relate, or (ii) according to the completeness or incompleteness of the action spoken of. 1446

i. *Time to which the tenses relate.*

According to the time to which they relate, the tenses are either <sup>1447</sup> primary or secondary.

The *primary* tenses denote time contemporaneous with, antecedent, or subsequent to the time *at* which we are speaking, or to some time at which we feign ourselves to be present and watching events.

The *secondary* tenses denote time contemporaneous with, antecedent, or subsequent to some other time *of* which we are speaking, and which we affirm to be past.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

1448

## PRIMARY.

## SECONDARY.

Contemporary.	Present; <b>dico</b> , <i>I am saying.</i>	Imperfect; <b>dicebam</b> , <i>I was saying.</i>
Subsequent.	Future; <b>dicam</b> , <i>I shall (you, he will) say.</i>	Aorist; <b>dixi</b> , <i>I said</i> (i.e. after something had happened <sup>1</sup> ).
Subsequent to present time but antecedent to some future event.	Completed Future; <b>dixero</b> , <i>I shall (you, he will) have said.</i>	
Antecedent.	Perfect; <b>dixi</b> , <i>I have said.</i>	Pluperfect; <b>dixeram</b> , <i>I had said.</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE.

1449

## PRIMARY.

## SECONDARY.

Contemporary.	Pres. { <b>amor</b> , <i>I am being loved.</i>	Impf. { <b>amabar</b> , <i>I was being loved.</i>
Subsequent.	Fut. { <b>amabor</b> , <i>I shall (you, he will) be loved.</i>	Aor. { <b>amatus sum</b> , <i>I was loved.</i>
Subsequent to present time but antecedent to some future event.	Completed Future; <b>amatus ero</b> (or <b>fiero</b> ), <i>I shall (you, he will) have been loved.</i>	
Antecedent.	Perf. { <b>amatus sum</b> , <i>I am (or have been) loved.</i>	Plup. { <b>amatus eram</b> (or <b>fueram</b> ), <i>I had been loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> This arrangement is suggested by Burnouf (quoted by Donaldson, *New Crat.* § 372).

ii. *Completeness or incompleteness of the action.*

1450

The present, future, and imperfect tenses express incomplete action, and hence are sometimes called respectively present imperfect, future imperfect, past imperfect.

e.g. *lædo, lædor, I am wounding, am being wounded: lædam, lædar, I shall wound, shall be wounded; lædebam, lædebar, I was wounding, was being wounded.*

The perfect, completed future, and pluperfect express completed action, and hence are sometimes called respectively present perfect, future perfect, past perfect.

e.g. *læsi, læsus sum, I have wounded, have been wounded; læsero, læsus ero, I shall have wounded, shall have been wounded; læseram, læsus eram, I had wounded, had been wounded.*

The shade of meaning, which the incomplete or complete tenses imply, varies somewhat with the meaning of the verb itself (as denoting an act, or as denoting a state), and is more clearly seen in some tenses or uses than in others. A periphrasis is often the only mode of expressing in English the meaning implied, but, it must be remembered, such a periphrasis often errs on the other side by giving too hard and precise an expression.

Especially noticeable is the correspondence of a single tense, the perfect, in Latin to two tenses (aorist and perfect) in Greek, and two so-called tenses in English: e.g. *fecit* expresses *I made*, *ἐποίησεν*, and *I have made*, *παραποίησεν*; *factus sum*, *I was made*, *ἐγένετο*, and *I have been made*, *παραγένετο*. In the active voice the Latin form primarily denotes the past act, *I made*, and secondarily the result of that act, *I have made*. In the passive voice it denotes primarily the resulting state, *I am a made person*, and secondarily the act which produced it, *I was made* or *I became*.

In the passive voice, since all the tenses in English, but only the completed tenses in Latin, are compounded of a past participle and the verb of *being*, there is a want of exact correspondence between the two languages.

Thus *amatus sum* is (1) *I am loved* (present of the state); (2) *I have been loved* (perfect of the state); (3) *I was loved* (aorist of the act). *Amor* is *I am loved*, i.e. *I am being loved* (present of the act). *Amatus ero*, *I shall be loved* (future of the state). *Amatus fuero*, *I shall have been loved* (completed future of the state). But both are used without much or any distinction for futures of the state, or completed futures of the act. *Amabor*, *I shall be loved*, is the future of the act.

*Amatus eram*, (1) *I was (at the time) loved*, i.e. *a loved person* (a contemporary state in past time); (2) *I had been loved* (an

antecedent act in past time). *Amabar*, *I was loved*, i.e. *I was being loved* (a contemporary act in past time).

*Amatus fui*, *I was* (at one time, or for some time) *loved*; i.e. *a loved person* (aorist of the state). It is not used of the perfect of the state (*I have been loved*, *amatus sum*), nor of a contemporaneous state in past time (*amatus eram*)<sup>1</sup>.

*Amatus fueram*, (1) *I had been loved*, i.e. *at one time*, or *for some time*, (an antecedent state in past time); (2) *I had been loved* (an antecedent act in past time), synonymous with *amatus eram*.

The principal contrasts which may be implied by the use of a tense of incomplete action rather than of complete action, or *vice versa*, are as follows:

1. Continuance of an action contrasted with its conclusion: e.g. *Troja est*, *Troy still exists*; *Troja fuit*, *Troy is no more*; *dico*, *I am speaking*, *dixi*, *I have done my speech*; *pereo*, *I am going to ruin*, *perii*, *it is all over with me*; *habeo*, *I have*, *habui*, *I had once*.

2. Continuance of an action contrasted with a single act. So especially the imperfect compared with the perfect (i.e. aorist); e.g. *videbam*, *I was looking at*, *vidi*, *I caught sight of*; *putabam*, *I was of opinion*, *putavi*, *I formed the opinion*, or, *the thought once occurred to me*, *non putaram*, *it had never occurred to me*; *sciebam*, *I knew*, *scivi*, *I learnt*; *discebam*, *I used to learn*, *didici*, *I (once) learnt*; *si volet*, *if he shall be willing*, *si voluerit*, *if he shall choose*; *poteram*, *I had it in my power*, *potui*, *I proved able, succeeded in doing it*.

3. Purpose or attempt contrasted with actual performance, or the actual fact: e.g. *servabam*, *I tried to save*, *servavi*, *I actually saved*, *servaveram*, *I had actually saved*; *capiam*, *I shall proceed to take*, *cepero*, *I shall succeed in taking*; *illucescit*, *the day is breaking*, *illuxit*, *it is day*; *dormiebat*, *he tried to sleep*, *dormivit*, *he fell asleep*; *dabat*, *he offered*, *dedit*, *he gave*.

4. The action itself contrasted with the resulting condition: e.g. *venio*, *I am on my road*, *veni*, *I am here*; *deficiebant*, *they were deserting*, *defecerant*, *they were deserters*; *nosco*, *I am getting knowledge of*, *novi*, *I know*; *vincam*, *I shall win*, *vicero*, *I shall be the winner*; *peribo*, *I shall die*; *periero*, *I shall be dead*; *occalesco*, *I grow callous*; *occalui*, *I have become callous*; *reminiscor*, *I call to mind*, *memini*, *I remember, bear in mind*.

<sup>1</sup> In Plautus it appears to be occasionally used of the aorist of the act; e.g. '*Achilleum orabo, ut aurum mihi det, Hector qui expensus fuit*' (*Merc.* 488). Cf. *ib.* 481; *Most.* 694; *Aul.* 454; *Amph.* 186; 457.



The principal usages of the tenses of the indicative mood are as follows. More examples will be given in the chapters which treat of the moods.

### Present.

The present time is strictly the transitory moment between <sup>1455</sup> past and future. Hence the senses numbered below (1) and (2). As actions are often spread over a longer period, the present is used (3) of actions not wholly past, and (4) of actions not wholly future, the former ending, so far as the account is given, with the present, the latter commencing with the present. Lastly (5) the present is used of what holds good now, although it may hold good also of the past and future.

Thus the Present tense expresses

1. *An action at the time of speaking.*

1456

Hic ego Servium exspecto. (C. Art. 10. 10.)

Mitto cetera intolerabilia: etenim fletu impediior. (C. Art. 3. 10.)

Nunc quum vos intueor, Romanos esse video. (L. 34. 31.)

Bellum tam integrum habemus, quam habuimus qua die Hannibal in Italiam est transgressus. (L. 23. 13.)

2. *An action in past time, but rhetorically assumed to be present.* <sup>1457</sup>  
*This is frequent in vivid narrations. (Historic present.)*

Disputatur in consilio: plerique censebant, ut noctu iter facerent: alii, quod pridie noctu conclamatum esset in Cæsaris castris, argumenti sumebant loco, non posse clam exiri. Horum sententia vincit in consilio. (Cæs. C. 1. 67.)

Archagatho negotium dedit, ut argentum ad mare deportaretur. Ascendit in oppidum Archagathus: jubet omnis proferre quod haberent. Metus erat summus. (C. Ferr. 4. 23.)

Perfugæ, postquam murum arietibus feriri vident, aurum atque argentum domum regiam comportant. (Sail. J. 76.)

Quot eras annos natus, quom pater a patria te avehit?

(Pl. Men. 1115.)

Consul faucibus, quas fuga hostium aperuerat, in regionem Epiri transgressus, etsi probe scit cui parti Epirotæ favissent, tamen ex præsentis eos potius quam ex præterito æstimat habitu.

(L. 32. 14.)

*So regularly with dum, 'whilst,' occasionally with quom, of* <sup>1458</sup> *actions taking place at the same time as other actions whether in past, present, or future time.*

Dum obsequor adolescentibus, me senem esse oblitus sum.

(C. Or. 2. 4.)

Ergo, dum nullum fastiditur genus, in quo eniteret virtus, crevit imperium Romanum. (L. 4. 3.)

Dum ea Romani parant consultantque, jam Saguntum summa vi oppugnabatur. (L. 21. 2.)

Dum elephanti trajiciuntur, interim Hannibal quingentos equites ad castra Romana miserat speculatum. (L. 21. 29.)

Dum hæc dicit, abiit hora. Rogo, numquid velit. 'Recte,' inquit: abeo. Quom huc respicio ad virginem, illa sese interea commodum huc advorterat in hanc nostram plateam.

(Ter. Eun. 341. Cf. also 345.)

Jam infici debet puer iis artibus, quas si, dum est tener, combiberit, ad majora veniet paratior. (C. Fin. 3. 2.)

Cum occiditur Sex. Roscius, ibidem fuerunt. (C. Rosc. A. 41.)

*Hence the adverbial use of dumtaxat, e. g.*

1459

Nos animo dum taxat vigemus etiam magis quam quum florebamur; re familiari comminuti sumus. (C. Att. 4. 3, § 6.)

Quattuor milia peditum et sexcentos equites dumtaxat scribere in animo est. (L. 10. 25.)

3. *An action extending over some time, including the time of* <sup>1460</sup> *speaking.*

Cupio equidem et jampridem cupio Alexandream visere.

(C. Att. 2. 5.)

Ceterum mihi in dies magis animus accenditur, cum considero, quæ condicio vitæ futura sit, nisi nosmet ipsi vindicamus in libertatem. (Sall. C. 20.)

Inter tot veterrimos populos tam diu bella geritis, quum interea, ne singulas loquar urbes, non conjuncti cum Æquis Volsci, non universa Etruria, bello vobis par est. (L. 5. 54.)

Quid? tibi' umquam quicquam, postquam tuus sum, verborum dedi? (Pl. Most. 925.)

Olim ipse me damno, qui illos imitor, dum accuso, et verba apertæ rei inpendo. (Sen. Ep. 117, § 18.)

4. *An action about to be commenced.*

1461

Quid est? Crasse, imusne sessum? (C. Or. 3. 5.)

Eon' voco huc hominem? (Pl. Most. 774.)

Carnifex dicat: agon? quod fieri solet victumis.

(Sen. Rhet. Contr. 2. 11. 19.)

Tuemini castra et defendite diligenter, si quid durius acciderit: ego  
relicuas portas circumeo et castrorum præsidia confirmo.

(Cæs. C. 3. 94.)

Nunc ad inceptum redeo. (Sall. J. 4.)

Itaque, ni propere fit quod impero, vinciri vos jam jubebo.

(L. 36. 28.)

*So especially with antequam, priusquam, and, where waiting is  
spoken of, cum dum.*Ante quam de accusatione ipsa dico, de accusatorum spe pauca  
dicam. (C. Deiot. 2.)Sine, prius quam amplexum accipio, sciam ad hostem an ad filium  
venerim. (L. 2. 40.)

Tu hic nos, dum eximus, interea opperire. (Ter. Haut. 833.)

5. *An action, without reference to any particular time; (espe-  
cially in stating abstract truths).*

Quod semper movetur æternum est. (C. T. D. 1. 23.)

Vinum ægotis, quia prodest raro, nocet sæpissime, melius est non  
adhibere omnino. (C. N. D. 3. 27.)In illo libro, qui inscribitur Menon, pusionem quendam Socrates  
interrogat quædam geometrica. (C. T. D. 1. 24.)

Tua res agitur, paries cum proximus ardet. (Hor. Ep. 1. 12. 81.)

## Future.

The Future denotes an action taking place, or (in verbs signify-  
ing a state) a state existing, in future time. The following usages  
claim notice:(a) *Subordinate sentences, qualifying a principal future sentence  
(whether such future sentence was expressed in indicative or impera-  
tive, or subjunctive of command, &c.), and referring to the same  
time. Verbs regularly and usually the future. (In English the present  
is generally found.)*

Naturam si sequemur ducem, nunquam aberrabimus. (C. Off. 1. 28.)

Hoc, dum erimus in terris, erit illi caelesti vitæ simile.

(C. T. D. 1. 31.)

Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ fungatur officiis.

(C. Off. 2. 12.)

Ea velim, cum poteris, invisas. (C. Att. 4. 10.)

Qui aër frigidior et macrior erit, ibi oleam Licinianam seri oportet  
...Qui locus crassus erit aut nebulosior, ibi Apicium serito.

(Cato R. R. 6.)

Prima quæque, ut absolveris, mittito, immo etiam antequam absolvas, sicut erunt, recentia et media et adhuc similia nascentibus.

(Plin. Ep. 8. 4.)

(b) *It is used to express a logical consequence; or an event, the knowledge or declaration of which, though not the fact itself, is future.* 1465

Sin autem caderet in sapientem ægritudo, caderet etiam iracundia: qua quoniam vacat, ægritudine etiam vacabit.

(C. T. D. 3. 9.)

Si ista lex ideo lata esset, ut finiret libidinem muliebrem, verendum foret, ne abrogata incitaret; cur sit autem lata, ipsum indicabit tempus. Hannibal in Italia erat. (L. 34. 6.)

Hæc erit bono genere nata: nil scit nisi verum loqui.

(Pl. Pers. 645.)

Cognatam comperi esse nobis. DE. Quid? deliras. CH. Sic erit: non temere dico. (Ter. Ph. 801.)

Gloria umbra virtutis est: etiam invitam comitabitur.

(Sen. Ep. 79, § 13.)

(c) *As a kind of imperative.*

1466

De aqua si curæ est, si quid Philippus aget, animadvertes.

(C. Att. 5. 13.)

(Other examples in Chap. XXI.)

### Imperfect.

The Imperfect tense expresses (see § 1454)

1467

1. *A continuous action contemporaneous with past action or time referred to.*

Postremam Romanorum aciem invadunt. Tum Marius apud primos agebat, quod ibi Jugurtha cum plurimis erat. (Sall. J. 101.)

Jam consules erant C. Plautius iterum, L. Æmilius Mamercinus, quum Setini Romam venerunt. (L. 8. 1.)

Archias erat temporibus illis jucundus Metello illi Numidico, audiebatur a M. Æmilio, vivebat cum Q. Catulo et patre et filio, a L. Crasso colebatur. (C. Arch. 3.)

2. *In letters, especially Cicero's, it often denotes an action at the time of writing, as being past when the correspondent receives the letter.* 1463

*This usage occurs where the writer has specially in mind the particular time of his writing, and is describing the feelings and occurrences of the moment; and so most frequently at the beginning or end of letters. But it is not always adopted where it might be, and is not uncommonly in close connexion with the present tense.*

Ante diem viii. Kal. haec ego scribebam hora noctis nona. Milo campum jam tenebat: Marcellus candidatus ita stertebat, ut ego vicinus audirem. (C. Att. 4. 3. 25.)

Nihil habebam quod scriberem; neque enim novi quicquam audieram et ad tuas omnis rescripseram pridie; sed cum me ægritudo non solum somno privaret, &c. (C. Att. 10. 1.)

Pridie Idus Febr. hæc scripsi ante lucem; eo die apud Pomponium in ejus nuptiis eram cenaturus. (C. Q. F. 2. 3, § 7.)

Ipse ut spero diebus octo, quibus has litteras dabam, cum Lepidi copiis me conjungam. (Planc. ap. C. Fam. 10. 18.)

Vos quid ageretis in republica, cum has litteras dabam, non sciebam: audiebam quædam turbulenta, quæ scilicet cupio esse falsa, ut aliquando otiosa libertate fruamur. (Trebatius ap. C. Fam. 12. 16.)

In his eram curis, cum scriberem ad te; quas si deus aliquis in gaudium verterit, de metu non querar. (Plin. Ep. 7. 19.)

*This usage is sometimes found in messages:*

Thais maxumo te orabat opere ut cras redires. (Ter. Eun. 532.)

3. *Habitual or repeated action in past time.* 1469

In Græcia musici floruerunt, discebantque id omnes. (C. T. D. 1. 2.)

Commentabar declamitans cotidie. (C. Brut. 90.)

4. *An action commenced, or attempted, or proposed in past time.* 1470

Risu omnes, qui aderant, emoriri: denique metuebant omnes jam me. (Ter. Eun. 433.)

Consistit utrumque agmen, et ad prælium sese expediebant.

(L. 21. 46.)

Consules incerti, quod malum repentinum urbem invasisset, sedabant tumultus, sedando interdum movebant. (L. 3. 15.)

Ut in re trepida, senatu extemplo vocato, P. Cornelius omnes duces exercitusque ex tota Italia ad urbis præsidium revocabat.

(L. 26. 8.)



*So with postquam, of the state having commenced:*

Post quam nihil usquam hostile cernebatur, Galli, viam ingressi, ad urbem Romam perveniunt. (L. 5. 39.)

Quæ ubi Romam sunt relata, primum dictatorem dici placebat; deinde postquam quietæ res ex Volscis afferebantur, et apparuit nescire eos victoria et tempore uti, revocati inde exercitus.

(L. 6. 30.)

Postquam instructi utrinque stabant, in medium duces procedunt.

(L. 1. 23.)

### Perfect.

The Perfect tense expresses an action done in past time. As contrasted with the imperfect, it resembles the Greek aorist, and denotes a single act, not a continued state; a fact, not a description. As contrasted with the present, it resembles the Greek perfect, and denotes that the action is then already completed<sup>1</sup>. See § 1452.

1. *Aorist or Historical Perfect.* An action which took place in past time, either singly or in succession to other actions. So usually in a continued narrative.

(a) Postremo Catilina in senatum venit. Tum M. Tullius consul orationem habuit luculentam atque utilem reipublicæ, quam postea scriptam edidit. (Sall. C. 31.)

Veni, vidi, vici. (Cæs. ap. Suet. Jul. 37.)

L. Lucullus per multos annos Asiæ provinciæ præfuit. (C. Ac. 2. 1.)

Per quos dies ad Pellam stativa fuerunt, legationes frequentes, quæ ad gratulandum convenerant, auditæ sunt. (L. 44. 46.)

Socrates tum locutus ita est, ut non ad mortem trudi, verum in cælum videretur escendere. Ita enim censebat, itaque disseruit duas esse vias, &c. (C. T. D. 1. 29.)

Recordamini legum multitudinem, cum earum, quæ latæ sunt, tum vero quæ promulgatæ fuerunt. (C. Sest. 25.) Cf. § 1453.

Literni monumentum monumentoque statua superimposita fuit, quam tempestate dejectam nuper vidimus ipsi. (L. 38. 56.)

(b) *So with pæne, prope, where in English we use the pluperfect.*

Prope oblitus sum, quod maxime fuit scribendum.

(Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 14.)

Brutum non minus amo quam tu, pæne dixi, quam te.

(C. Att. 5. 20, § 6.)

<sup>1</sup> In the division of the Latin perfect the clue given by the English translation has been chiefly followed; e.g. *scripsi*, *I wrote* (aor.), *I have written* (perf.). But the Latin form is really but one tense, denoting *past* time. Compare *perii* with *habui* in § 1454, and the tense of dependent subjunctives in § 1476.

(c) *Frequen.* in this sense in temporal sentences, with *postquam*, 1475  
*antequam*, *priusquam*, &c. (In English the pluperfect is frequent.)

Post quam Cn. Pompeius ad bellum maritimum missus est, paucorum potentia crevit. (Sall. C. 39.)

Hispala non ante adolescentem dimisit, quam fidem dedit ab his sacris se temperaturum. (L. 39. 10.)

2. (*Perfect or Present Perfect*). An action already completed 1476  
 before present time, so that the result, rather than the action itself, is present to the mind.

(a) Membris utimur prius, quam didicimus, cujus ea utilitatis causa habeamus. (C. Fin. 5. 20.)

Ob debilitatem animi multi parentes, multi amicos prodiderunt.  
 (C. Fin. 1. 15.)

Nemo unquam est oratorem, quod Latine loqueretur, admiratus: si est aliter, inrident, neque eum oratorem tantummodo sed hominem non putant: nemo extulit eum verbis, qui ita dixisset, ut, qui adessent, intellegerent quid diceret, sed contempsit eum, qui minus id facere potuisset. (C. Or. 5. 14.)

Tandem aliquando, Quirites, L. Catilinam ex urbe vel eiecimus vel emisimus vel ipsum egredientem verbis persecuti sumus. Abiit, excessit, evasis, erupit. Nulla jam perniciēs mœnibus ipsis intra mœnia comparabitur. (C. Cat. 2. init.)

Victoria in manu vobis est, viget ætas, animus valet; contra illis annis atque divitiis omnia consenuerunt. (Sall. C. 20.)

Adventus Philotimi exanimavit omnis, qui mecum erant. Nam ipse obdurai. (C. Adv. 10. 9.)

Jampridem conticuerunt tuz litteræ. (C. Brvt. 5.)

(b) *Sometimes with emphasis;*

Fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium et ingens gloria Teucrorum.

(Verg. A. 2. 525.)

Vixi, et quem dederat cursum fortuna, peregi. (Ib. 4. 653.)

Filium unicum adolescentulum habeo. a. quid dixi habere me? immo habui, Chremes. Nunc habeam necne, incertumst.

(Ter. Hæc. 94.)

*So of an action quickly completed:*

Terra tremit: fugere feræ, et mortalia corda per gentis humilis stravit pavon. (Verg. G. 1. 530.)

(c) *In subordinate sentences, in speaking of repeated actions, when the principal verb is in the present tense.* 147

Cum fortuna reflavit, adfligimur. (C. Off. 2. 6.)

*See other examples in Chap. XXII.*

(d) *Similarly in principal sentences, but only in Augustan poets and later writers.*

Rege incolumi, mens omnibus una est: amisso, rupere fidem constructaque mella diripuerunt ipsæ. (Verg. G. 4. 213.)

Cervus mille fugit refugitque vias: at vividus UMBER hæret hians, jam jamque tenet, similisque tenenti increpuit malis morsuque elusus inani est. (Verg. A. 12. 755.)

Omne tulit punctum, qui miscuit utile dulci. (Hor. A. P. 343.)

Non domus et fundus, non æris acervus et auri ægroto domini deduxit corpore febres. (Hor. Ep. 1. 2. 47.)

Massa per se nec calida nec frigida est: in fornacem conjecta concaluit: in aquam demissa refrixit. (Sen. Ep. 82. 14.)

### Completed Future<sup>1</sup>.

The Completed future denotes an action in future time completed at some point in future time. Like the other perfect tenses, sometimes it *suggests*, not so much the act itself, as the future resulting state. 148

1. *An action already completed at a given future time.* 148

(In a subordinate sentence, the present or perfect is generally used in English; e.g. Cum (si) venero, 'When (if) I come or have come.')

Cum tu hæc leges, ego illum fortasse convenero. (C. Att. 9. 15.)

Eum cum videro, Arpinum pergam. (Ib.)

Quid facient, cum dederint Apronio quod poposcerit?

(C. Verr. 3. 11.)

Nunc si hoc omitto ac tum agam, ubi illinc rediero, nihil est; refrixerit res. (Ter. Ad. 232.)

Actio recta non erit, nisi recta fuerit voluntas. (Sen. Ep. 95. 57.)

*With emphasis:*

Brevis hic est fructus homullis: jam fuerit, neque post unquam revocare licebit. (Lucr. 3. 915.)

<sup>1</sup> See Madvig, *Opusc.* ii. 82 sqq.

2. *An action completed simultaneously to another action in future time.*

Qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit. (C. Fam. 10. 19.)

An ille non vicerit, si quacunq[ue] condicione in hanc urbem cum suis venerit? (C. Phil. 12. 6.)

3. *Of a definite act contrasted with a previous state. So especially si potuero, voluero, libuerit, placuerit.*

Plato, si modo interpretari potuero, his fere verbis utitur.

(C. Leg. 2. 18.)

Malevolentiae hominum in me, si poteris, occurrēs: si non potueris, hoc te consolabere, quod &c. (Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 11.)

Lege judiciaria neque legetur, quisquis voluerit, nec, quisquis noluerit, non legetur: iudices judicabunt ei, quos lex ipsa non quos hominum libido delegerit. (C. Pl. 39.)

Quæ scribis K. Junius Antonium de provinciis relaturum, licebitne decerni libere? Si licuerit, libertatem esse recuperatam letabor: si non licuerit, quid mihi attulerit ista domini mutatio?

(C. Att. 14. 14.)

4. *Future result of an action now past. Comp. § 1465.*

2464

Sin plane occidimus, ego omnibus meis exitio fuero. (C. Q. F. 1. 4.)

Unus homo tantas strages impune per urbem ediderit? juvenum primos tot miserit orco? (Verg. A. 9. 785.)

Impune ergo mihi recitaverit ille togatas, hic elegos? impune diem consumpserit ingens Telephus? (Juv. 1. 3.)

5. *Often in comic poets, and occasionally in later writers, it is used, in principal or simple sentences, with but little if any difference of meaning from the simple future: especially (a) of a predicted result, (b) of an action during something else: (c) of an action performed at once (the completion being as it were anticipated), (d) of an action postponed (the future element being predominant). The last is in post-Comic writers almost confined to videro.*

(a) Crede, inquam, mihi: aut consolando aut consiliis aut re juvero.

(Ter. Haut. 85.)

Erum in opsidione linquet, inimicum animos auxerit. (Pl. As. 280.)

Multumque ad ea quæ quærimus explicatio tua ista profecerit.

(C. Fin. 3. 4.)

Succumbam oneri, neque aggrediar narrare quæ edissertando minora vero fecero. (L. 22. 54.)

- (b) Huc concessero, dum mihi senatum consili in cor convoco.  
(Pl. *Most.* 688.)  
Tu invita mulieres: ego accivero pueros. (C. *Att.* 5. 1.)
- (c) Molestus si sum, reddite argentum: abiero. (Pl. *Most.* 590.)  
Dictum ac factum, invenerit aliquam causam, quamobrem eiciat opido. (Ter. *Andr.* 381.)  
Nusquam facilius hanc miserrimam vitam vel sustentabo vel, quod multo est melius, abiecero. (C. *Att.* 3. 19.)
- (d) Ad fratrem, quo ire dixeram, mox ivero. (Pl. *Pseud.* 193.)  
Sed videro quid efficiat: tantisper hoc ipsum magni æstimo, quod pollicetur. (C. *T. D.* 5. 7.)  
Neque recte an perperam, interpretor: fuerit ista ejus deliberatio, qui bellum suscepit: me Albano bello gerendo ducem creavere.  
(L. 1. 23.)

### Future in -so.

The future in -so (e.g. *faxo*, *levasso*, &c. § 619 sqq.) is used as <sup>1486</sup> a completed future in subordinate relative sentences, or with adverbs of time or condition. *Faxo* only<sup>1</sup>, and in the first person sing. only, is also used as a simple future (§ 1375), affording the only certain instances of this form being used in simple or principal sentences (in the indicative).

Si situlam cepero, nunquam edepol tu mihi divini creduis post hunc diem, ni ego illi puteo, si ocepso, animam omnem intraxero. (Pl. *Amph.* 672.)

Nam neque Duellona mi umquam neque Mars creduat, ni illum exanimalem faxo, si convenero, nive exheredem fecero vitæ suæ. (Pl. *Bacch.* 847.)

Paterfamilias uti super familia pecuniaque sua legassit, ita jus esto.  
(XII. Tab. apud C. *Inv.* 2. 50.)

Agedum Stiche: uter demutassit, poculo multabitur. (Pl. *St.* 723.)

Si ita faxitis, Romani, vestrae res meliores facilioresque erunt.  
(apud L. 23. 11.)

### Pluperfect.

The Pluperfect denotes an action in past time, done before <sup>1487</sup> another past action. Like the other perfect tenses sometimes it suggests the resulting state rather than the precedent act<sup>2</sup>. This indeed is the proper meaning of the ordinary passive pluperfect.

<sup>1</sup> See Madvig, *Opusc.* II. 76, who however adds *indicasso*, Pl. *Pan.* IV. 2. 66. See also Neue, II. 421—430.

<sup>2</sup> See E. Hoffmann, *Die Construction der latein. Zeitpartikeln*, p. 10 sqq.



(a) *An action before another action in past time.*

1488

Prius omnia pati decrevit quam bellum sumere, quia motatum antea secus cesserat. (Sall. J. 20.)

Hanno cum eis, qui postremi jam profligato prælio advenerant, vivus capitur. (L. 28. 2.)

Latrocinii magis quam justo bello in Brutiis gerebatur res. Ab Romanis egressi quidam urbem Locrenses circumventi Regium-que abstracti fuerant. (L. 29. 6.)

Quartum jam diem eodem loco quietem militi dederat, cum litteras Nabarzanis, qui Dareum cum Besso interceperat, accipit, quarum sententia hæc erat. (Curt. 6. 4, § 8.)

*The standard of time is sometimes not given till a subsequent separate sentence.* 1489

Postera die indigna res Macedonibus videbatur, Perdiccam ad mortis periculum adductum, et Meleagri temeritatem armis ultum ire decreverant: atque ille, seditione provisa, interrogat. (Curt. 10. 8, § 5.)

Comitiis habitis consules declarantur M. Tullius et C. Antonius. Quod factum primo popularis conjurationis concusserat: neque tamen Catilinæ furor minuebatur. (Sall. C. 24.)

(b) *In letters and sometimes in other writings, and in speeches, it denotes an action prior to the time of writing, &c. (cf. § 1468).* 1490

Nunc iter conficiebamus æstuosa et pulverulenta via. Dederam (sc. litteras) Epheso pridie; has dedi Trallibus. (C. Att. 5. 14.)

Tamen, quod ante de istius abstinencia dixeram, sigillis avulsis reliquum argentum reddidit. (C. Verr. 4. 48.)

Consulibus designatis (inde namque deverteram) in provincias profecti sunt. (L. 35. 40.)

(c) *A past action which produced a still continuing effect. Pluperfect of act = imperfect of resulting state.* 1491

Centum viginti lictores forum impleverant, et cum fascibus secures illigatas præferabant. (L. 3. 36.)

Arma, quæ fixa in parietibus fuerant, ea sunt humi inventa. (C. Div. 1. 34.)

Frumenta non solum a tanta multitudine jumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant. (Cæs. G. 6. 43.)

Eodem tempore Romani scalas ad stantia mœnia inferebant, et, dum in unam partem oculos animosque hostium certamen averterat, pluribus locis scalis capitur murus, armatique in urbem transcenderunt. (L. 32. 24.)

*So with post (postea) quam, ubi, ut, &c.*

P. Africanus, posteaquam bis consul et censor fuerat, L. Cottam in iudicium vocabat. (C. Cæcil. 21.)

Deinde, postquam nuntii instabant, et jam juga montium detexerat nebula, et in conspectu erant Macedones, Athenagoram mittit. (L. 33. 7.)

(d) *Occasionally, of an action immediately consequent upon another and therefore regarded as included in it; e.g.*

Camillus addidit minas, si pergerent, sacramento omnes juniores adacturum. Terrorem ingentem incusserat plebi: ducibus plebi accendit magis certamine animos quam minuit. (L. 6. 38.)

L. Scipio nihil accepit: quæ necessaria ad cultum erant, redempta ei a proximis cognatis sunt, verteratque Scipionum invidia in prætorem et consilium ejus et accusatores. (L. 38. fin.)

(e) *Of repeated actions, with principal verbs in imperfect.*

Hostes, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, impeditos adoriebantur. (Cæs. G. 4. 26.)

(See other examples in Chap. XXII.).

### Future participle active with the verb *sum*.

In order to denote what a person purposes, or is destined to do in future time, especially if regarded from a point in the past or future, the future participle active is used with the different tenses of the verb *sum*: thus,

#### PRIMARY.

Contemporary.	dicturus sum, <i>I am about to (or mean to or am to) say.</i>
Subsequent.	dicturus ero, <i>I shall be about to say.</i>
Antecedent.	

#### SECONDARY.

dicturus eram (or, in the poets, fueram), <i>I was at the time about to (or I meant or was to) say.</i>
dicturus fui, <i>I was (once) about to say.</i>
dicturus fueram, <i>I had meant to say.</i>

Facite quod vobis libet; daturus non sum amplius. (C. Ferr. 2. 19.)  
Hoc anno nec diem dici cuiquam nec in vincula duci quemquam  
sum passurus. (L. 3. 59.)

Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea, si veri amici futuri sumus.  
(C. Fam. 2. 26.)

Hac, qua me progressum videritis, agite, qui visuri domos, pa-  
rentes, conjuges, liberos, estis, ite mecum. (L. 4. 28.)

Vos cum Mandonio et Indibili consilia communicastis et arma con-  
sociaturi fuistis. (L. 28. 28.)

Quod crediturus tibi fui, omne credidi. (Pl. Mast. 437.)

Orator eorum, apud quos aliquid ager aut acturus erit, mentes sen-  
susque degustet oportet. (C. Or. 1. 52.)

Taleas oleaginas, quas in scrobe saturus eris, tripedaneas decidito.  
(Cato R. R. 45.)

Conclave illud, ubi rex mansurus erat si ire perrexisset, proxima  
nocte conruit. (C. Div. 1. 15.)

Emilius Paulus Delphis inchoatas in vestibulo columnas, quibus  
inposituri statuas regis Persei fuerant, suis statuis victor desti-  
navit. (L. 43. 27.)

*The same form is resorted to for the subjunctive future; e.g. dila-  
turus sim, &c. (Cf. §§ 1507, 1523.)*

## (B) TENSES OF IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The imperative mood is used to express a command or request. 1495  
On its form see §§ 581, 584, and its difference from the subjunc-  
tive, § 1493.

*The present is used of the present time, or without any implied  
reference to a defined future time.*

*The future is used with express reference to the time following,  
or to some particular case that may occur, and therefore is frequent in  
legal forms.*

Cura ut valeas. (C. Fam. 16. 7.)

Cum hæc confessus eris, negato tum sane, si voles, te pecuniam  
accepisse. (C. Ferr. 2. 32.)

*(See other examples in §§ 1557, 1571, 1597—1603, and the treaty  
with Antiochus in L. 38. 38 throughout.)*

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## Of the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD and ITS TENSES.

## i. Of the Mood.

THE Subjunctive mood, as distinguished from the indicative, <sup>1496</sup> expresses an action or event, as thought or supposed, rather than as done or narrated. This general distinction is somewhat variously modified in different kinds of sentences.

These different kinds appear reducible to eight main classes, which may again be conveniently combined into four.

1. Hypothetical (A) and conditional (B) sentences (Chap. <sup>1497</sup> xx.), the former term being given to the apodosis only, the latter to the protasis only of what are often called, as a whole, conditional sentences. As here used therefore the hypothesis is the action treated as contingent on another, the condition is that other action, on which the first is contingent.

In these sentences, which readily admit of either the indicative or subjunctive mood, the subjunctive implies that the action spoken of is *not a fact*. Nothing is implied as to knowledge or want of knowledge, doubt or assurance, probability or improbability, possibility or impossibility, so far as the mood is concerned; but a non-real *past* action is of course impossible, a non-real *future* action is (apart from intrinsic impossibilities) possible.

2. Sentences expressing a *wish*, or *command* (C), or *purpose* <sup>1498</sup> (D) (Chap. XXI.). In these the subjective character of the subjunctive is unmistakeable. The imperative mood, which is really an abrupt form of the indicative, speaks of an action commanded, as if it were an assertion of fact. In theory and origin the imperative is the language of an absolute master, the subjunctive is a suggestion to an equal or superior.

A peculiar use of a command is found in *concessive* sentences, where a person rhetorically commands, or supposes, a change of what he knows or believes to be the fact.

These sentences (C, D) are almost all characterised by the use, if a negative is required, of **ne** instead of **non**. Exceptions are comparatively few (see however § 161c), and are chiefly due to the negation being intimately connected with some one word, not with the whole predicate.

3. Sentences expressing the *consequence* or *natural result* (E), or *1429 attendant circumstances* (F) of an action (Chap. XXII.). In these sentences the subjunctive does not in any way imply the non-reality of the action or event: indeed, the action is, or is assumed to be, a fact. But the subjunctive is still due to the accompanying thought as distinguished from the bare fact; viz. to the *causal connexion* which the sentence is intended to express, but which the particles (**ut**, **cum**) used in such sentences do not contain. They properly mean *in which way*, *at what time*, respectively, and gain the notion of result (*so that*), or modifying circumstances (*since*, *whereas*, *notwithstanding*), only by union with the subjunctive mood.

4. The next division (Chap. XXIV.) contains sentences expressing 1500 of definitions, reasons, questions (G), which are *given not as the speaker's own* but as some one's else.

With these may be classed (H) all sentences which are dependent on infinitive or subjunctive moods, and are regarded only as part of the action expressed substantively by the infinitive, or as a thought by the subjunctive. In all these the subjunctive simply prevents the speaker being supposed to be responsible for the statements, &c. reported, or to be giving them as independent assertions.

In only two (A, C) of these eight classes is the subjunctive 1501 found in simple or principal sentences. In all the rest it is in subordinate sentences. And these subordinate sentences are mainly such as are introduced by the relative adjective **qui**, or the relative adverbs **si**, **ut**, **cum**, or by **dum**. As all of these relatives are also repeatedly found introducing subordinate clauses, which have the indicative mood, it is clear that the use of the subjunctive mood is not due to those relatives.

There are some cautions which should be borne in mind in discussing why the subjunctive mood has or has not been used in any particular sentence.



1. A writer may frequently (especially in relative sentences), <sup>150</sup> if he chooses, express what is really a thought or supposition, as if it were a fact, and therefore use the indicative mood; or, on the other hand, express a fact, as if it were only a thought or supposition, and therefore use the subjunctive mood. If however he *means* to imply *by the form of expression* that it is for him at the moment a supposition or conception (though it may be also a fact), he uses the subjunctive; if he wishes to imply that it is a fact, or to state it simply without any implication, he uses the indicative. Whether the same introductory particle or same turn of sentence can be used, must be determined according to the particular circumstances.

2. As a subjunctive may be used on several different grounds, <sup>150</sup> it is necessary to consider how far any particular occurrence of the subjunctive may be due to the general frame of the sentence or to some collateral motive. The following classes of subjunctives are frequently occurring where the general frame of the sentence is suitable to an indicative: commands (§ 1575), modest assertions expressed as an hypothesis (§ 1575), actions of an indefinite subject in the 2nd person singular (§ 1546). On the other hand, in one whole class (H) of subjunctives, viz. those which are dependent on infinitives and subjunctives, the mood is due rather to the frame of the sentence than to the particular meaning.

3. The nature of the verb itself is often an important element. <sup>150</sup> Auxiliary verbs, e.g. *possum*, *volo*, &c. or *sum* with the future participle or gerundive, are often put in the indicative where other verbs would be in the subjunctive, not from any real inconsistency, but because possibilities, volitions, expectations, duties, are often much more positive than the particular actions to which they relate. It requires consideration therefore whether the writer means to speak of the act only, or of the power, &c., itself, as a supposition or thought; e.g. *potest solvere si velit*, implies that a man has the money, but does not choose to pay; *possit solvere si velit*, that he could get the money to pay with if he chose.

4. It often appears probable that the choice of the subjunctive <sup>150</sup> mood is due rather to a desire to avoid using the indicative, and *vice versa*, than to the independent strength of its claim. This occurs chiefly where certain particles or phrases or even tenses are so frequently used with the indicative or subjunctive, that the writer fears if he use the habitual mood he should be supposed to intend the habitual meaning. Of course this consideration can come into play only where neither the indicative nor subjunctive is, independently considered, incompatible with the meaning.

## ii. Of the Tenses.

The tenses of the subjunctive mood preserve in the main the same character as the tenses called by the same names in the indicative mood, the present and imperfect denoting contemporaneous states or incomplete acts, the perfect and pluperfect denoting completed acts or states; and again, the present and perfect referring in the main to the time of speaking, the imperfect and pluperfect to some past time spoken of.

But there are some special ambiguities, chiefly due to the future tenses of the indicative not having any separate correspondent forms in the subjunctive mood.

Thus (1) the present subjunctive corresponds in most cases to the present and to the simple future of the indicative, but, when it is important to distinguish the future from the present, the future participle (with *sim* or *essem*) is resorted to.

(2) The perfect subjunctive corresponds both to the perfect (i.e. both aorist and perfect proper) and to the completed future of the indicative.

(3) The present and imperfect, covering together the whole course of time, may both in some sentences be used of the present moment, the one or the other being used according as the action is to be regarded as possible and therefore belonging to the future, or impossible and therefore belonging to the past.

### i. In independent sentences (A, C)

The present relates to present or future time, without any distinct determination of either.

The perfect usually relates to some point in the immediate present or future, but in concessive sentences usually, and sometimes in others (cf. § 1532 *b*), it relates to the past.

The imperfect relates to any time not future, and therefore usually may include the present moment.

The pluperfect relates to some point in the past.

ii. In *dependent sentences* (B, D, E, F, G, H)

1. The present and perfect are used in sentences dependent on primary tenses.

(a) The present subjunctive may represent the future as well as the present of the indicative.

(b) The perfect subjunctive may represent

in consecutive sentences (E), in reported sentences (G), and in such dependent sentences as are classed under H, the perfect (and aorist) and completed future of the indicative; and in a dependent interrogative it may also represent the imperfect; e.g. *quid dicebas* would become *quæro quid dixeris*;

in conditional and most final sentences (B, D) the completed future of the indicative; in some final sentences (e.g. *timeo ne venierit*) either the completed future or the perfect (and aorist);

in sentences with *cum* (F) the perfect (and aorist) of the indicative.

2. The imperfect and pluperfect are used in sentences dependent on secondary tenses (including frequently the perfect as well as the aorist indicative, cf. p. 194 *note*), even though the statement is applicable to the present as well as to the past time, or generally to all times alike.

(a) The imperfect subjunctive represents both the imperfect and perfect of the indicative.

(b) The pluperfect subjunctive represents the pluperfect of the indicative.

3. But in some cases the particular sense or context requires or allows a different tense from what these rules should give. Thus

(a) *The historical present is, in its effect on the verbs directly or indirectly dependent on it, sometimes regarded as a primary, sometimes as a secondary tense.*

Rogat Rubrium ut quos ei commodum sit invitet: locum sibi soli, si videatur, relinquat. (C. Verr. I. 26.)

Simul servis suis Rubrius ut januam clauderent et ipsi ad foris assisterent imperat. (Ib.)

*When the dependent sentence precedes the principal sentence, which has an historical present, the verb of the dependent sentence is usually secondary.*

Navarchos ad se vocari jubet : qui nihil metuerent, nihil suspicarentur, statim adcurrunt. (C. Ferr. 3. 41.)

Cum fraus hostilis apparuisset, presidium etiam in summo salto conspicitur...Ad consules mistos, ne advocantes quidem in consilium, quando nec consilio nec auxilio locus esset, sua sponte legati ac tribuni conveniunt. (L. 9. 2.))

*But the primary tenses are also used : e.g.*

Educit ex urna tris : eis ut absentem Heraculum condemnent imperat. (C. Ferr. 2. 17.)

Jam magna Tarquinii auctoritas inter Latinorum proceres erat, cum in diem certum ut ad locum Ferentinæ conveniant indicit : esse quæ agere de rebus communibus velit. (L. 1. 30.)

*Similarly when the dependent sentence has another dependent on it, the former is frequently in the present tense : e.g.*

Adversarii postulant ut in eam rem iudices dentur ex eis civitatibus, quæ in id forum convenirent : electi, qui Verri viderentur. (C. Ferr. 2. 15.)

Mago nuntios Carthaginem ad senatum mittit, qui, defectionem sociorum in majus verbis extollescentes, hortentur, ut auxilia mitterent, quibus traditum a patribus imperium Hispaniæ repeti posset. (L. 14. 31.)

(b) *In consecutive sentences, though dependent on a secondary tense, the present is used of such actions as belong to the present time only.*

Siciliam per triennium ita vexavit ac perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo possit, vix autem per multos annos aliqua ex parte aliquando recreari posse videatur. (C. Ferr. Act. 1. 4.)

*And the perfect is used of a result completed at the present time only (corresponding to perfect Latin) : and also of an event in past time simply regarded as such, without reference to its being contemporaneous or prior to other past events.*

Emilius Paullus tantum in ætadium pecunie invenit, ut unus imperatoris præda finem antulerit tributorum. (C. Off. 2. 22.)

Tantum opes creverant, ut ne morte quidem Enneæ movere animæ Etrusci aut ulli aliæ accotæ nisi sine. (L. 1. 3.)

(c) *The secondary tenses are rarely found in sentences dependent on a present tense, and when so found admit of a special explanation from the writer's having more than the present time in mind.* 1517

Video igitur causas esse permultas, quæ istum impellerent.

(C. R. Am. 33.)

Laudantur oratores veteres, quod copiose reorum causas defendere solerent. (C. Verr. 2. 78.)

Chrysippus disputat æthera esse eum quem homines Jovem appellarent, quique aer per maria manaret eum esse Neptunum, terramque eam esse quæ Ceres diceretur. (C. N. D. I. 15.)

‘Ut me omnes,’ inquit, ‘pater tuo sanguine ortum vere ferrent, provocatus equestria hæc spolia capta ex hoste cæso porto.’

(L. 8. 7.)

## CHAPTER XIX.

### TYPICAL EXAMPLES OF SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD AND ITS TENSES.

THE following examples show the typical uses of the subjunctive mood and its tenses, with their proper English translations. 1518

(A) Hypothetical sentences, *i.e.* apodosis to a conditional sentence. (For translation of protasis see next section.)

1. <b>Faciam,</b>	(si jubeas, or jusseris,)	<i>I should do, or be doing.</i>
<b>Fecerim,</b>	(si jubeas, or jusseris,)	<i>I should be found to have, or I should have, done (the fact, or the knowledge of the fact, being in future time).</i>
<b>Facerem,</b>	(si juberet, or jussisset,)	<i>I should have been doing, or should have done, or I had been doing, or I had done.</i>
<b>Fecissem,</b>	(si juberet, or jussisset,)	<i>I should have done, or I had done (in past time).</i>



For the second and third persons *would* must be substituted for *should*; e.g.

<b>Facias,</b>	( <b>si jubeas,</b> or	<b>You</b>	} <i>would do or be doing.</i>
<b>Faciat,</b>	<b>jusseris,)</b>	<b>He</b>	

## 2. With condition suppressed.

**Vellem,** *I could wish.* **Vellem,** *I could have wished.*

<b>Quis dicat?</b>	} <i>Who can or could say?</i>
<b>Quis dixerit?</b>	

**Ego censuerim.** *I am inclined to think.*

**Ubi invenias?** *Where does or can one find?*

**Crederes,** *One would have believed.*

(B) Conditional sentences, i.e. protasis to a conditional sentence. (For translation of apodosis see the preceding section.)

<b>1. Si jubeas,</b>	} ( <b>faciam,</b> or <b>fecerim,)</b>	<i>If you should bid, or be bidding.</i>
<b>Si jusseris,</b>		<i>If you should have bidden, or should bid.</i>
<b>Si juberet,</b>	} ( <b>facerem,</b> or <b>fecissem,)</b>	<i>If you had been bidding, or had bidden.</i>
<b>Si jussisses,</b>		<i>If you had bidden.</i>

Sometimes the conditional particle is not expressed. (In the following sentences the ordinary translation of the apodosis as well as of the protasis is given):

<b>Roges,</b>	} <b>dicam,</b>	<i>Should you ask, or were you to ask,</i>	} <i>I should say.</i>
<b>Rogaveris,</b>		<i>Should you have asked, or were you to have asked,</i>	
.....	<b>dixerim,</b>	.....	<i>I should have, or be found to have, said.</i>
<b>Rogares,</b>	} <b>dicerem,</b>	<i>Should you, or were you to, have been asking, or had you been asking,</i>	} <i>I should have, or I had, been saying.</i>
<b>Rogasses,</b>		<i>Had you asked,</i>	
.....	<b>dixissem,</b>	.....	<i>I should have, or I had, said.</i>

2. Conditional sentences in the subjunctive often have for an apodosis either a future participle or gerundive with the indicative mood of **sum**, or an infinitive with the indicative mood of **possum**, &c.

Si adsis,	facturus sum,	<i>I mean to do</i>	if you should be there,
	facturus ero,	<i>I shall intend to do</i>	
	faciendum mihi est,	<i>I have to do</i>	
	faciendum mihi erit,	<i>I shall have to do</i>	
Si jusseris,	facere possum,	<i>I can do</i>	if you bid.
	facere licet,	<i>I may do</i>	
	facere debeo,	<i>I ought to do</i>	
	facere potero,	<i>I shall be able to do</i>	
	facere licebit,	<i>I shall be allowed to do</i>	
	facere debebo,	<i>It will be my duty to do</i>	

Si adesses,	facturus fui,	<i>I meant to do</i>	if you were, or had been, there.
	facturus eram,	<i>I was intending (had (sometimes fueram) intended) to do</i>	
	faciendum mihi fuit,	<i>I had to do, or ought to have done</i>	
	faciendum mihi erat,	<i>I had to do, or ought to have done at the time</i>	
Si jussisses,	facere poteram,	<i>I could have been doing (now or formerly)</i>	if you bade, or had bidden.
	facere licebat,	<i>I might have been doing (now or formerly)</i>	
	facere debebam,	<i>I ought to have been doing (now or formerly)</i>	
	facere potui,	<i>I could have done</i>	
	facere licuit,	<i>I might have done</i>	
	facere debui,	<i>I ought to have done</i>	

The difference in meaning is scarcely perceptible, whether the apodosis to **si jussisses** be constituted by **fecissem** or **facturus fui**. And practically **faciendum mihi fuit**, or **facere potui**, might come to much the same. Hence the usages mentioned in the next section (1521).

If the apodosis to a conditional sentence of past time is in a dependent interrogative or consecutive sentence, or dependent on *cum*, so that the subjunctive mood would be required on account of the dependency, a periphrasis by means of the future participle with *fuero* is usually resorted to, instead of the simple pluperfect<sup>1</sup> active.

Ostendis, (ostendes,) quomodo,	}	hoc si jussissem, facturum fuero,
Non dubium est, (erit,) quin,		
Eo fit, (fiet,) ut;		
Talis es, (eris,) qui,		

You show, (will show,) how,	}	if I had commanded (been commanding), you would have done it.
'There is, (will be,) no doubt that,		
So it results, (will result,) that,		

You are, (were,) the sort of person to have done it, if I had commanded (been commanding).

If the hypothetical sentence depends on a secondary tense, *fuero* is still used generally, but in interrogative sentences (except such as *non fuit dubium quin*) *fuisses* is used instead; *e.g.*

Ostendisti, quomodo	}	hoc, si jussissem, facturum fuisses.
Non dubium fuit quin		
Eo factum est ut		
Talis fuisti qui	}	..... fuero.

For the pluperfect passive a periphrasis (esp. with the gerundive or *possum*) is resorted to; *e.g.*

Non dubium est, quin	}	hoc si jussissem, { oppidum capi potuerit.
Eo fit ut		
Non dubium fuit quin	}	..... potuerit
Nihil jussi, cum		

If not dependent, *poterat* or *potuit* would have been used in each.

See examples in §§ 1568, 1572.

<sup>1</sup> An hypothetical imperfect (*e.g.* *facerem*) is also occasionally found (*C. Prov. Cons.* 4 *haberent*; *Fin.* 2. 15 *esset*; &c.); a pluperfect very rarely (*L.* 2. 33 *cessisset*). The subjunctive in *facturus fuero*, &c. is due to the dependency of the sentence: the corresponding independent expression would be in the indicative, the hypothesis being expressed by the future participle. (See *Madv. Opusc.* II. 227.)

## (C) 1. Optative sentences.

152

*Moriar, may I die! Morerer, were I but dying!*

Utinam	{	moriar, morerer,	O that	{	<i>I may die!</i>
					<i>I were (now) dying! or had been dying!</i>
	{	mortuus sim, mortuus essem,		{	<i>I may be dead, or may have died!</i>
					<i>I were (now) dead, or had died!</i>

## 2. Jussive sentences.

(a) *Faciat, Let him do, he shall do, he must do.*  
*Ne faciat, Let him not do, he shall not do, he must not do.*

(b) *Ne feceris, Do not do, you shall not do, you must not do.*  
*Faceres, You were* } *to do, you (be) should have been doing, or*  
*Faceret, He was* } *have done.*  
*Fecisses, You were* } *to have done, you (be) should have done,*  
*Fecisset, He was* } *or ought to have done.*

3. *Dic faciat, Tell him to do, bid him do.*  
*Censeo (Volo) facias, I recommend you to do.*  
*Postulat, } ducant, He requires them to, says they are to } lead.*  
*Permittit, } He permits them to, says they may } lead.*  
*Postulavit, } ducerent, He required, said they were to } lead.*  
*Permisit, } He permitted them to, said they might } lead.*  
*Cave facias, Beware of doing, don't do.*  
*Nolo facias, I don't wish you to do.*

4. *Quid agam? What am I to do? What must I do?*  
*Quid agerem? What was I to do? What should I have done?*

## 5. Concessive sentences.

*Dicat, suppose him to say, let him say.*  
*Dixerit, suppose him to have said, let him have said (in past or future time).*  
*Dixisset, suppose that he had said.*

*Quam vis* { *sit malus, be he as bad as you please, however bad he be.*  
*fuerit malus, however bad he was, or may have been.*  
*esset malus, were he as bad as you please, however bad he were.*  
*fuisset malus, had he been as bad as you please, however bad he had been.*

(D) 1. Final sentences (i.e. expressing purpose).

(1) Mitto Mittam Misero Misi (perf.)	} qui dicat,	<i>I am sending, or send</i>	} one to say, or one who is to say.
		<i>I shall send</i>	
		<i>I shall have sent</i>	
		<i>I have sent</i>	
(2) .....	eum ut dicat,	.....	} him to say, or that he may say.
(1) Mittebam Misi (cf. § 1510) Miseram	} qui diceret,	<i>I was sending, or sent</i>	} one to say, or one who was to say.
		<i>I sent (have sent)</i>	
		<i>I had sent</i>	
(2) .....	eum ut diceret,	.....	} him to say, or that he might say.

2. Prohibeo, &c.	ne quominus	dicat,	<i>I prevent his saying.</i>
Prohibebam, &c.	.....	diceret,	<i>I was preventing his say- ing.</i>
Non recuso, &c.	quominus quin	dicat,	<i>I do not object to his say- ing.</i>
Non recusabam, &c.	.....	diceret,	<i>I did not object to his saying.</i>
Timeo, &c.	ne	veniat,	<i>I fear his coming.</i>
.....	...	venerit,	<i>I fear his having come, or I fear he came.</i>
Timebam, &c.	...	veniret,	<i>I was in fear of his coming.</i>
.....	...	venisset,	<i>I was in fear he had come.</i>
Timeo, &c.	ut	veniat, &c.	<i>I fear his not coming.</i>
Non timeo, &c.	ne non	veniat, &c.	<i>I do not fear his not coming.</i>

3. Expecto, &c.	dum dicat,	<i>I am waiting, ) for him to say, or or wait</i>	} until he can say.
Expectabam, &c.	dum diceret,	<i>I was waiting, ) or waited</i>	} for him to say, or until he could have said.
Abeo, &c.	priusquam dicat,	<i>I am off, before he can say.</i>	
Abibam, &c.	priusquam diceret,	<i>I was going off, before he could say.</i>	



(E) Consecutive sentences, *i.e.* expressing a consequence. 1524

1. Is sum, &c. qui nihil timeam,	<i>I am one who fears nothing.</i>
..... timuerim,	..... feared, or has feared, nothing.
Is eram, &c. .... timerem,	<i>I was one who feared nothing.</i>
..... timuissem,	..... had feared nothing.
Quis est, &c. quin cernat?	<i>Who is there but sees?</i>
Quis erat, &c. quin cerneret?	<i>Who was there but saw?</i>

2. (1) Eo fit	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ut milites} \\ \text{animos} \\ \text{demittant,} \\ \text{demiserint,} \end{array} \right\}$	The result is	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{that the sol-} \\ \text{diers lose} \\ \text{(or are} \\ \text{losing)} \\ \text{beart.} \end{array} \right\}$
Eo fiet		The result will be	
Eo factum erit		The result will have been	
Eo factum est (perf.)		The result has been	
..... demiserint,		..... have (rarely will have) lost beart.	
..... demissuri sint,		..... will be likely to lose beart.	
Eo fiebat	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ut milites} \\ \text{animos} \\ \text{demitterent,} \end{array} \right\}$	The result was coming	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{that the sol-} \\ \text{diers lost (or} \\ \text{were losing)} \\ \text{beart.} \end{array} \right\}$
Eo factum est		The result was	
Eo factum erat		The result had been	

(Sometimes *demiserint* (§ 1516), the action being regarded as a distinct historical fact, not as a continuous state, or as contemporary with the principal action (*imperfect*)).

..... demississent,	..... had (rarely would have) lost beart.
..... demissuri essent,	..... were likely to lose beart.

(2) Parum abest, quin Cato moriatur,	<i>Cato all but dies.</i>
..... aful, ..... moreretur,	..... died.

(3)	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{U} \\ \text{t} \end{array} \right\}$	dicas,	suppose you to say, although you should say, or were to say.
		dixeris,	suppose you to have said, although you should have said.
		diceres,	suppose, or although, you had been saying.
		dixisses,	suppose, or although, you had said.

(F) Sentences expressing attendant circumstances. 1525

1. (a) *Marcus, cui res placeat, abiit, &c.* *Marcus, liking (since he likes) the matter, goes away.*  
*ut cui placuerit,.....* *... since he has liked...*  
*..... placeret, abibat, ... since he liked (at*  
*&c. the time) ...*  
*..... placuisset, .....* *... since he had liked...*

(b) In Livy and later historians:

- Quod cum ubi faceret, dicebat, Whenever he was doing this, he used to say.*  
*..... fecisset, ..... Whenever he had done this, he used to say.*

[In Cicero and Cæsar the indicative is used; e.g.

- Quod cum ubi fecerat, dicebat, Whenever he had done this, he used to say.*

So also

- Quod cum ubi fecit, dicit, Whenever he has done this, he says.*  
*..... fecerit, dicet, ..... be will say.]*

2. (1) *Cum navis adveniret, When, or as, the ship was approaching,*  
*..... advenisset, ..... had approached, or*  
*on the ship having approached.*

- (2) *Cum hæc sint, Whereas, since, although, these things are so,*  
*..... essent, ..... were so,*  
*or These things being so, or Under these circumstances.*

- (3) *Simulat se audire, cum interea aliud agat, He pretends to hear,*  
*&c. while all the time he is at something else.*

- Simulabat ..... ageret, He pretended to hear,*  
*&c. while all the time he was at something else.*

- (4) *Audiui cum diceret, I heard him saying.*  
*Vidi cum veniret, I saw him coming.*

(G) Sentences containing reported definition, reason, condition, question. 1526

1. 2. Laudat	} te, qui hoc facias	He praises	} you for doing this.
Laudabit		He will praise	
Laudaverit		He will have praised	
Laudavit		He has praised	
(perf.)			
.....	feceris	.....	you for having done this.
.....	facturus sis	.....	for purposing to do this.
Laudabat	} te, qui hoc faceres	He was praising	} you for doing this.
Laudavit		He praised (has praised)	
Laudaverat		He had praised	
.....	fecisses	.....	for having done this.
.....	facturus esses	.....	for purposing to do this.

These are often translated like the indicative (e.g. *I praise you because you do this*), but a distinction may be made by inserting *as he said, as is thought, &c.*

3. Minatur, &c. ni eant,	He threatens them, if they do not go.
Minabatur, &c. ni irent,	He threatened them, if they did not go.
Minatur, &c. ni liverint,	He threatens them, if they should not have gone.
Minabatur, &c. ni issent,	He threatened them, if they should not have gone.

#### 4. Reported (often called Dependent) question.

Video, &c.	} quid facias,	I see, &c.	} what you are doing.
.....		quid feceris, .....	
.....	quid facturus sis, .....	.....	what you will do.
Videbam, &c.	} quid faceres,	I was seeing, &c.	} what you were doing.
.....		quid fecisses, .....	
.....	quid facturus esses, .....	.....	what you were about to do.

Non est dubium, quin id fiat,	There is no doubt it is being done.
..... quin futurum sit, ut id fiat,	..... it will be done.
Non erat dubium, quin id fieret,	There was no doubt it was being done.
..... quin futurum esset, ut id fieret,	... it would be done.

(H) Sentences with verb in subjunctive because dependent 1527  
on infinitive or subjunctive.

1. Dependent on infinitive.

Dicit	} se ire (iturum), cum	He says	} that he goes
Dicet		He will say	
Dixerit		He will have said	
Dixit (perf.)		He has said	

..... postulaverit, ..... when the time requires or  
shall have required.

..... postulaturum sit, ..... when the time shall be  
about to require.

Dicebat	} se ire (iturum), cum	He was saying	} that he was going
Dixit		He said, (has said)	
Dixerat		He had said	

..... postulasset, ..... when the time required or  
should have required.

..... postulaturum esset, ..... when the time should be  
about to require.

So videor, videbor, visus ero, &c. ire (iturus esse), cum tempus  
postulet, postulaverit, postulaturum sit:

videbar, visus sum, visus eram. ire (iturus esse), cum tempus  
postularet, postulasset, postulaturum esset.

After the past infinitive the tenses are secondary, e. g.

dicat, &c. dicebat, &c. se ivisse,	} cum tempus postularet, &c.
videor, &c. videbar, &c. ivisse,	

2. Dependent on subjunctive.

The other tenses and translations given under (1) will hold  
good, if we substitute as follows:

Si eat, if he were to go,	for dicat or dicet se ire.
eat, he would go,	
Si ierit, if he should (or shall) have gone,	for dixit (perf.) or dix- erit se ire.
ierit, he would (or will) have gone,	
Si iret, if he had been going,	for dicebat se ire.
iret, he would have been going,	
Si isset, if he had gone,	for dixit (aor.) or dix- erat se ire.
isset, he would have gone,	

*From here to end of Chap. XXIII. the right-hand pages are not continuous with the left-hand pages, but form a parallel exposition. All the sections on the left-hand pages have even numbers, all those on the right-hand have odd numbers.*

## CHAPTER XX.

### USE OF THE MOODS IN HYPOTHETICAL (A) AND CONDITIONAL (B) CLAUSES.

#### (A) Hypothetical subjunctive.

1528

SUCH a subjunctive as appears in the principal clause (*i.e.* the apodosis) of a conditional sentence may be called a *hypothetical subjunctive*.

The hypothetical subjunctive is sometimes (i) accompanied by a formal clause stating the condition, on the assumption of which the hypothetical statement is made. But (ii) the same kind of subjunctive is also found without any separate and regular conditional clause. In this case there may be (1) a phrase or word implying the condition. Often also (2) it is used without any condition precisely conceived, and expresses either an opinion about an abstract or merely imaginary case, or gives a hesitating or polite tone to the assertion. A special use of this is found (3) with the verb in the second person singular, the subjunctive implying that the person thus addressed is a creation of the imagination. The following are typical instances:

- i. With condition expressed in separate sentence.

**Faciam, si sciam, in all tenses.**

- ii. With condition not expressed in separate sentence.

1. **Faciam, hac re cognita.**

2. (a) **Velim, vellem.**

- (b) **Quis dubitet? Nihil dixerit.**

- (c) **Citius dixerim.**

- (d) **Dicat aliquis (rare).**

3. **Crederes victos.**

*Continued on p. 220.*



The following instances (Chapp. XX.—XXIII.) of the indicative and imperative moods are selected, partly for introducing certain idiomatic usages, but chiefly to illustrate, by contrast with these, the effect due to the subjunctive mood. Compared with the sentences on the left-hand pages they all belong to one of two classes; they either express a different meaning in similar sentences (or in sentences introduced by like conjunctions), or express a similar meaning in differently turned sentences. The arrangement of the matter in these chapters is mainly such, as is necessary to show the connexion with one another of the uses of the subjunctive; and the uses of the indicative are grouped as connectedly as the primary object of contrast or comparison with the subjunctive allows.

The use of the indicative (1) in a principal sentence, with a subordinate conditional sentence, is very common in all tenses except the pluperfect.

With the so-called potential use of the subjunctive may be contrasted (2) the use of the auxiliaries, *possum*, *licet*, &c. These are used in the indicative because they express, not hypothetically but absolutely, the existence of power, or will, or duty, or the convenience or lawfulness of an action. Of course if this very lawfulness or power, &c. is itself only conditional, then *possum*, *licet*, &c. must be put in the subjunctive like any other verb.

Many instances of the indicative (3), especially in the future tenses, occur which are similar to those containing loose hypothetical subjunctives. The following are typical instances:

1. With condition expressed in separate sentence:

*Facio, si scio*, in all tenses.

2. Unconditional statement of power, duty, &c.:

*Possum facere; licet facere; longum est facere.*

3. Uses of indicative contrasting with those of subjunctive on opposite page:

(a) *Volo facere.*

(b) *Quis negat?*

(c) *Libenter concessero.*

(d) *Dicet, dixerit aliquis.*

*Fortasse, Cæcili, dices.*

An hypothetical subjunctive expresses an action<sup>1</sup> which, while its non-occurrence is implied, is yet supposed to occur, if some other action occur.

*The following rules for the tense apply to the subjunctive in both clauses.*

(a) *The present tense is used of an imaginary action in the immediate present or the future, and therefore still possible, but marked (by the use of the subjunctive) as merely imaginary.*

(b) *The perfect, of an action similarly marked as merely imaginary, but assumed to be already completed, or to be completed before an action still possible in the present or future.*

(c) *The imperfect, of an action supposed, contrary to the fact, to be already occurring in the present time, or of a continuous state supposed, contrary to the fact, to have existed in past time.*

(d) *The pluperfect, of an action supposed, contrary to the fact, to have occurred in past time; or at least to be already completed at the present time.*

i. *Hypothetical subjunctive, with condition expressed in a separate clause.*

**Si** is used of a positive, **si non** of a negative condition, **nisi**, **ni**, **nisi si** of an exception, (which often has the same effect as a negative condition).

(a) *Present.* Ego si Scipionis desiderio me moveri negem, mentiar.  
(C. *Lael.* 3.)

Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias. (Ter. *And.* 310.)  
Sed deos non curare opinor, quid agat humanum genus; nam si curent, bene bonis sit, male malis; quod nunc abest.  
(Enn. ap. C. *Div.* 2. 50; *N.D.* 3. 32.)

Nisi ames, non habeam tibi fidem tantam. (Pl. *Bacc.* 636.)

Thucydidis orationes laudare soleo: imitari neque possim, si velim, nec velim fortasse, si possim. (C. *Brut.* 83.)

Quid, si pater fana expilet, cuniculos agat ad ærarium? indicetne id magistratibus filius? Nefas id quidem est: quin etiam defendat patrem, si arguatur. (C. *Off.* 3. 23<sup>2</sup>.)

<sup>1</sup> *Action* is used throughout as the general term for what a verb denotes.

<sup>2</sup> In this chapter of Cicero several points of casuistry are put, and the present subj. and future indic. appear to be used indiscriminately: not that they carry the same meaning, but that either is applicable to such matters. One instance of the future indicative is given on the opposite page.

*Continued on p. 222.*

The INDICATIVE makes a statement without implying <sup>1531</sup> that the action does not occur, or (necessarily) that it does occur.

(N.B. The verb of being with the future participle is always in the indicative as the apodosis of a conditional sentence, except for some collateral reason. See instances in §§ 1494, 1570.

So also usually verbs expressing power. See instances in § 1566, and compare § 1535.)

1. Regular conditional sentences with *si*, *si non*, *nisi*, *ni*; *si modo*, <sup>1533</sup> *si quidem*.

(a) *Present*. *Si id facis, hodie postremum me vides.* (Ter. And. 322.)  
*Quis ego sum igitur, si quidem is non sum, qui sum?* (Pl. Trin. 978.)  
*Sic agam: si quid venale habuit Heius, si id, quanti aestimabat, tanti vendidit, desino quærere cur emeris.* (C. Verr. 4. 5.)

*Et si jam nostro sentit de corpore postquam distractast animi natura animæque potestas, nil tamen est ad nos qui computu conjugioque corporis atque animæ consistimus uniter apti.* (Lucr. 3. 845.)

*Hoc mortuo, aut si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut si sunt plures pares, suffragio Druidum de principatu contendunt.* (Cæs. G. 6. 12.)

*Tute scis, si modo meministi, me tibi tum dixisse.* (C. Att. 12. 18.)

*Nos vero, si quidem in voluptate sunt omnia, longe multumque superamur a bestiis.* (C. Fin. 2. 34.)

*Proinde si quid ad ea, in quæ tum pax conventura videbatur, adicitur, est quod referam ad consilium: sin illa quoque gravia videntur, bellum parate, quoniam pacem pati non potuistis.* (L. 30. 31.)

*Denique si deus es, tribuere mortalibus beneficia debes, non sua eripere; sin autem homo es, id, quod es, semper esse te cogita.* (Curt. 7. 8, § 26.)

(aa) *Future*. *Si damnatus eris, atque adeo cum damnatus eris, (nam dubitatio damnationis, illis recuperatoribus, quæ poterat esse?) virgis te ad necem cædi necesse erit.* (C. Verr. 3. 29.)

*Facilius autem quod est propositum consequar, si nostram rem publicam vobis nascentem ostendero, quam si mihi aliquam ipse finxero.* (C. R.P. 2. 1.)

*Quid? si tyrannidem occupare, si patriam prodere conabitur pater, silebitne filius? Immo vero obsecrabit patrem, ne id faciat: si nihil proficiet, accusabit.* (C. Off. 3. 23.)

*Si ulli rei sapiens adsentietur unquam, aliquando etiam opinabitur; nunquam autem opinabitur: nulli igitur rei adsentietur.* (C. Ac. 2. 21.)

*Aut futurum est aut non: si futurum est, fiet, etiamsi vota non suscipis: si non est futurum, etiamsi non susceperis vota, non fiet.*

(Sen. N.Q. 2. 37.)

Continued on p. 223.

Si existat hodie ab inferis Lycurgus, gaudeat murorum Spartæ ruinis, et nunc se patriam et Spartam antiquam agnoscere dicat. (L. 39. 37.)

Si gladium quis apud te sana mente deposuerit, repetat insaniens, reddere peccatum sit, officium non reddere. (C. Off. 3. 25.)

Quid ita vero? debeam, credo, isti quicquam furcifero, si id fecerim, præsertim cum se servom fateatur tuom. (Ter. Eun. 861.)

(b) *Perfect (rare).* Tum vero ego nequiquam hac dextra Capitolium arcemque servaverim, si civem in vincula duci videam. (L. 6. 14.)

Injussu tuo, imperator, extra ordinem nunquam pugnaverim, non si certam victoriam videam. (L. 7. 10.)

Nonne igitur sapiens, si fame ipse conficiatur, abstulerit cibum alteri, homini ad nullam rem utili?

(C. Off. 3. 6, where are other instances.)

Remora si sit, qui malam rem mihi det, merito fecerit.

(Pl. Pæn. 4. 2. 106.)

Denique hercle aufugerim potius quam redeam, si eo mihi redeundum sciam. (Ter. Hec. 425.)

Quos, ni mea cura resistat, jam flammæ tulerint, inimicus et hauserit ensis. (Verg. A. 2. 600.)

Si pudica mulier dapes inemptas apparet, ... non me Lucrina juverint conchylia magisve rhombus, quam lecta de pinguissimis oliva ramis arborum. (Hor. Epod. 2. 49.)

Non tantum ad id, quod data pace jam habere potes, si prælio vincas, gloriæ adjeceris, quantum ademeris, si quid adversi eveniat.

(L. 30. 30, § 21.)

(c) *Imperfect.* Hæc tibi ridicula videntur, non enim ades: quæ si videres, lacrimas non teneres. (C. Fam. 7. 30.)

Si aut collegam, id quod mallet, tui similem, L. Aemili, haberes, aut tu collegæ tui esses similis, supervacanea esset oratio mea. Nunc &c. (L. 22. 39.)

Hannibal peto pacem, qui non peterem, nisi utilem crederem.

(L. 30. 30.)

Quod si jam esset, ut esse non potest, tamen de nostra majestate, nihil de illorum, caveretur. (C. Balb. 16.)

Moriar, si magis gauderem, si id mihi accidisset. (C. Att. 8. 6.)

Num igitur Opimium, si tum esses, temerarium civem aut crudelem putares? (C. Phil. 8. 4.)

Cur igitur et Camillus doleret, si hæc (sc. civile bellum) post trecentos et quinquaginta fere annos eventura putaret et, ego doleam, si ad decem milia annorum gentem aliquam urbe nostra potituram putem? (C. T. D. 1. 37.)

Continued on p. 224.

Non si Opimium defendisti, Carbo, ideo te isti bonum civem putabunt. (C. Or. 2. 40.)

Perficietur bellum, si urgemus obcessos, si non ante abscedimus, quam spei nostræ finem captis Veis imposuerimus. (L. 5. 4.)

Si tot exempla virtutis non movent, nihil unquam movebit; si tanta ciades vilem vitam non fecit, nulla faciet. (L. 22. 60.)

Ego si bonam famam mihi servasso, sat ero dives. (Pl. Most. 223.)

(b) *Perfect*. Nisi res manifesta erit ita adlata, ut responderi nihil possit, vicinus. (C. Ferr. 3. 62.)

Peristi, si intrassis intra limen. (Pl. Men. 416.)

Si veneno te inter cenam tollere volui, quid minus aptum fuit quam iratum te efficere? (L. 40. 13.)

Si enim rationem hominibus di dederunt, malitiam dederunt: est enim malitia versuta et fallax ratio nocendi. (C. N. D. 3. 30.)

Dixi me pigrum proficiscenti tibi: quid tum profeci, mecum facientia jura si tamen attemptas? (Hor. Ep. 2. 2. 20.)

Epicurus quamvis comis in amicis tuendis fuerit, tamen si hæc vera sunt, nihil enim adfirmo, non satis acutus fuit. (C. Fin. 2. 25.)

Dicite, di, si vos impune fefellerat illa, alterius meriti cur ego damna tuli? (Ov. Am. 3. 3. 16.)

(bb) *Completed Future*. Si tu argentum attuleris, cum illo perdidero fidem. (Pl. Ps. 376.)

Pergratum mihi feceris, spero etiam Scævola, si de amicitia disputaris. (C. Læli. 4.)

(c) *Imperfect*. Si nullum jam ante consilium de morte Sex. Roscii inieras, hic nuntius ad te minime omnium pertinebat.

(C. Rosc. Am. 34.)

Metellum si parum pudor ipsius defendebat, debebat familiæ nostræ dignitas satis sublevare. (Metell. ap. C. Fam. 5. 1.)

Qui igitur P. Serrillum Geminum videbat, si Quintum se videre putabat, incidet in ejusmodi visum, quod percipi non posset.

(C. Ac. 2. 26.)

Si Athenienses quibusdam temporibus sublato Areopago nihil nisi populi scriis ac decretis agebant, quoniam distinctos dignitatis gradus non habebat, non tenebat ornatum suum civitas.

(C. R. P. 1. 27.)

Ac mihi, seu longum post tempus venerat hospes, sive operam vacuo gratus conviva per imbrem vicinus, bene erat pullo atque hædo.

(Hor. S. 2. 2. 118.)

Ad Hellespontum obsistendum erat, ne in Asiam trajiceremus, si pacem tanquam ab sollicitis de belli eventu petaturi eratis.

(L. 37. 36.)

*Continued on p. 225.*



Nunc quemadmodum audiar sentio, at tum si dicerem non audirer.  
(C. *Clu.* 29.)

Hæc si non essent, vererer, credo, ne turpiter facerem, si hoc splendore et hac dignitate hominem defenderem. (C. *Planc.* 30.)

Cantus et e curru Lunam deducere temptat, et faceret, si non æra repulsa sonent. (Tib. 1. 8. 22.)

(d) *Pluperfect.* Si Metelli fidei diffisus essem, judicem eum non retinuissem. (C. *Verr.* Act 1. 10.)

A te infelicem, inquit vilico Archytas, quem necassem jam verberibus, nisi iratus essem. (Cic. *R. P.* 1. 38.)

Res neque nunc difficili loco mihi videtur esse, et fuisset facillimo, si culpa a quibusdam afuisset. (C. *Fam.* 12. 28.)

Causam inaugurari coacti flaminis libens reticuissem, ni ex mala fama in bonam vertisset. (L. 27. 8.)

Nihil est tam fallax quam vita humana, nihil tam insidiosum: non mehercules quisquam illam accepisset, nisi daretur inscientibus.  
(Sen. *Dial.* 6. 22. 3.)

Ergo ego nisi peperissem, Roma non oppugnaretur; nisi filium haberem, libera in libera patria mortua essem. (L. 2. 40.)

ii. *With the condition not formally expressed.* (This is sometimes called the potential mood.) 1534

1. *The condition is sometimes contained in a phrase in the sentence, or implied by the context.*

Uno prælio victus Alexander bello victus esset; Romanum, quem Caudium, quem Cannæ non fregerunt, quæ fregisset acies?  
(L. 9. 19.)

An ego in hac urbe esse possim, his pulsus, qui me hujus urbis compotem fecerunt? (C. *Sest.* 69.)

Numquam naturam mos vinceret, est enim ea semper invicta; sed nos opinionibus maloque more delentum animum mollivimus.  
(C. *T. D.* 5. 27.)

Quæ legentem fefellissent, transferentem fugere non possent.  
(Plin. *Ep.* 7. 9.)

Quod ad vos attinet, tribuni plebis, minasque vestras, ne ego libenter experirer, quam non plus in iis juris quam in vobis animi esset; sed nefas est tendere adversus auctoritatem senatus. (L. 5. 9.)

Illius impulsu cum turribus ardua celsis mœnia mota forent: serpens sine vulnere mansit. (Ov. *M.* 3. 61.)

*Continued on p. 226.*

Ut quicquid ego apprehenderam, statim accusator extorquebat ex manibus: si quæssiveram, quæ inimicitiae Scamandro cum Havito, fatebatur nullas fuisse; sin autem illud egeram, nullum ad Scamandram morte Haviti venturum emolumentum fuisse, concedebat. (C. Clu. 19.)

Tum enim magistratum non gerebat is qui ceperat, si patres auctores non erant facti. (C. Planc. 3.)

(d) *Pluperfect.* Cesseram, si alienam a me plebem fuisse vultis, quæ non fuit, invidiæ; si vis suberat, armis; si periculum civium, rei publicæ. (C. Sest. 30.)

Si illud jure rogatum dicere ausi sunt, quod nullo exemplo fieri potuit, nulla lege licuit, quia nemo de cælo servarat, oblitine erant tum, cum ille qui id egerat plebeius est lege curiata factus, dici de cælo esse servatum? (C. Prov. Cons. 19.)

*The pluperfect (in the apodosis to a conditional sentence) is usual only in rhetorical expressions, such as those in § 1574, (4).*

2. The indicative (of certain verbs) is used to express positively the existence of power, possibility, duty, convenience, &c. in contrast to particular acts.

(a) *The Present and Future are used (though the future is not frequent), when the possible, obligatory, &c. action is spoken of as still possible.*

(b) *The Perfect, of past time generally.*

(c) *The Imperfect, of present time, or of a continuous state in past time, the action being regarded as no longer possible.*

(d) *The Pluperfect, of an action no longer possible in past time.*

(a) *Present.* Possum persequi multa oblectamenta rerum rusticarum, sed ea ipsa, quæ dixi, sentio fuisse longiora. (C. Sen. 16.)

M. Quid? si te rogavero aliquid, nonne respondebis? A. Superbum id quidem est: sed, nisi quid necesse erit, malo non roges.

(C. T. D. 1. 8.)

Longum est ea dicere: sed hoc breve dicam. (C. Sest. 5.)

(Dicet) 'emi. pecuniam solvi.' Credo, etiam tabulæ proferentur: est tanti: cedo tabulas. (C. Ferr. 4. 20.)

*Future.* Nihil est quod verearis, ne sit hoc illi molestum, cui orbem terrarum circumire non erit longum mea causa. (Plin. Ep. 7. 16.)

*Continued on p. 227.*

Melius sequerere volentem: dignus eras ultro, poteras certeque, rogari. (Ib. 14. 29.)

O vitæ philosophia dux, quid non modo nos, sed omnino vita hominum sine te esse potuisset? (C. T. D. 5. 2.)

‘Vellem quidem liceret: hoc dixissem.’ Dicas licet. ‘Hoc fecissem.’ Facias licet: nemo prohibet. ‘Hoc decrevissem.’ De- cerne, modo recte: omnes approbabunt. (C. Rosc. Am. 48.)

Nulla profecto alia gens tanta mole cladis non obruta esset.

(L. 22. 54.)

Hoc spatio plura facinora in se victi ediderunt quam infesti edidis- sent victores. (L. 31. 18.)

Omnia nostra, dum nascuntur, placent: alioqui nec scriberentur.

(Quint. 10. 3. 7.)

Tacuissem hodie, patres conscripti, ne quid in communi omnium gaudio, minus lætum quod esset vobis, loquerer: nunc interro- ganti senatori si reticeam, aut superbus aut obnoxius videar.

(L. 23. 12.)

Meæ populique Romani disciplinæ causa facerem, ne quid, quod sanctum usquam esset, apud nos violaretur: nunc, ut id curem impensius, vestra quoque virtus dignitasque facit. (L. 26. 49.)

Vir antiquus et gravis Pompei partes laudaret magis, prudens sequeretur Cæsar, et illa gloriosa, hæc terribiliora duceret.

(Vell. 2. 49.)

2. Often the suppressed condition is ‘if occasion arose,’ ‘if a trial were made,’ and the like. This is most common with the present and imperfect of *volo* and its compounds; or the perfect (with sense of present) tense of some verbs of mental action (*thinking, saying, &c.*). In English we use the auxiliaries ‘can,’ ‘could,’ ‘should,’ ‘would,’ ‘may,’ ‘might.’

(a) So *velim, vellem, &c.*

Id velim mihi ignoscas, quod invita socru tua fecerim.

(C. Fam. 12. 7.)

Nolim enim, ne si Latine quidem possit dici, ‘specierum’ et ‘speciebus’ dicere: et sæpe eis casibus utendum est; at ‘formis’ et ‘formarum’ velim. (C. Top. 7.)

Rogatus in hæc verba populus: ‘Velitis jubeatisne hæc sic fieri?’

(L. 22. 10.)

Majores nostri Karthaginem et Numantiam funditus sustulerant: nollem Corinthum. (C. Off. 1. 11.)

Jam mallet Cerberum metueres, quam ista tam inconsiderate diceres. (C. T. D. 1. 6.)

*Continued on p. 228.*

(b) *Perfect.* Aut non suscipi bellum oportuit, aut geri pro dignitate populi Romani oportuit. (L. 5. 4.)

Prohiberi melius fuit impediriq[ue] ne Cinnus tot summos viros interficeret, quam ipsum aliquando prius dare. (C. N. D. 3. 33.)

Fuit tanti, mihi crede: haberes quod defenderes. (C. Verr. 4. 12.)

(c) *Imperfect.* Perturbatissimos animorum poteram motus appellare; sed non conveniret ad eum. (C. Fin. 3. 10.)

Itaque Plao eos ne ad rempublicam quidem accessuros prius nisi ceteris: equis autem eris si voluisse fieri. (C. Of. 1. 9.)

Propter hoc est hodie master Pompeius: cui vixit facienda gratia est habenda: esse enim quam vixit imperis poterat. (C. Fin. 1. 14.)

Optime mihi et magis etiam totum, si plus te crassi mihi debuerim, hic assenti in Crassissimo aut in Syrenii patella putatissim. (C. Fin. 29.)

(d) *Pluperfect.* Quanto melius fuerat, in hoc promissum prius non esse servatum. (C. Of. 3. 35.)

Cumque scripti e sententia triumphales gratias, quae omnino vixit illius erant non oportuerat. (C. Mur. 31.)

"Quid mihi" clamatum "prodest tyrannise Sabinus, si mea non vires sed bellum imperis fecit?" Cuius fuerat non habuisse vires. (C. F. 2. 431.)

Philoponem, etiamis principibus et ceteris libris, quibus habentis Alexandro fuerat, societatem Alexandrum Lucodemone adunat. (L. 34. 37.)

### *Similarity*

Non illos leviter sic vixit Verris ut... ut memineret prius prius prius et postea prius prius: sed vixit sine ceteris prius prius prius, cum non essent, memineret prius. (C. Verr. 3. 41.)

3. The indicative is found in some instances similarly formed to the subjunctive, as, e.g., *quod* and *quodammodo*.

(a) Duxit vero hodie uxorem. (Ter. Andr. 385.)

At vixit prius prius, quam vixit hodie. (Pl. Ps. 209.)

Nobis ores. Ca. Nequaquam prius. (Pl. Most. 117.)

Vixit interitus abque ex hactenus hactenus adprehendit, vixit apud hactenus diligenter hactenus. (Pam. 2. 7. 8.)

Mixt melioribus id quod in defendis hactenus priusque hactenus, quam id quod ego memineret prius. (C. Verr. 3. 39.)

For other instances see § 156.

Continued in p. 229.

Camillus quanquam exercitum assuetum imperio, qui in Volscis erat, mallet, nihil recusavit. (L. 6. 9.)

Cuperem voltum videre tuum cum hæc legeres.

(C. Att. 14. 17, § 4 = 16, § 7.)

Cupissem itaque primis temporibus ad istam curationem accedere.

(Sen. Dial. 6. 1.)

(b) *With a simple negative, or with interrogatives, especially quis, implying a negative. (The imperfect is used of past time only.)*

Quis hunc non putet confiteri sibi quæsito opus esse? cui quæsito autem opus sit, quis umquam hunc vere dixerit divitem?

(C. Par. 6. 2.)

Ductus vero aquarum, quos isti Nilos et Euripos vocant, quis non, cum hæc videat, intriserit? (C. Legg. 2. 1.)

Quis dubitet, quin in virtute divitiæ sint? (C. Par. 6. 2.)

Poterat Sextilius impune negare: quis enim redargueret?

(C. Fin. 2. 17.)

Hoc tantum bellum quis umquam arbitraretur uno anno confici posse? (C. Man. 11.)

Quis enim hunc hominem dixerit, qui, cum certos cæli motus viderit, neget in his ullam inesse rationem? (C. N. D. 2. 38.)

Cur Syracusas prætorem quotannis cum imperio mittitis? Nihil aliud profecto dicatis, quam armis superatis vos iis has leges imposuisse. (L. 35. 16.)

Ipse, quod minime quis crederet, cum hostis propius esset, tertiam partem militum frumentatum dimisit. (L. 22. 24.)

Nec vero reprehenderim 'scripsere alii rem:' 'scripserunt' esse verius sentio. (C. Or. 17.)

Themistocles nihil dixerit, in quo Areopagum adjuverit.

(C. Off. 1. 22.)

Ubi (Sarmatæ) per turmas advenere, vix ulla acies obstiterit.

(Tac. H. 1. 79.)

(c) *With the adverbs merito, facile, lubenter, citius, and the like, with or without a negative. The perfect is also sometimes found, especially in first pers. sing., without such adverb or negative.*

Sed neque verbis aptiorem cito alium dixerim neque sententiis crebriorem. (C. Brut. 76.)

L. Torquatum tu non tam cito rhetorem dixisses, etsi non deerat oratio, quam, ut Græci dicunt, πολιτικόν. (Ib.)

Libenter omnibus omnis opes concesserim, ut mihi liceat vi nulla interpellante isto modo vivere. (C. Fam. 9. 6.)

Continued on p. 230.



(b) Nam quis hoc non intelligit, isum, absolutum his hominibusque invitis, tamen ex manifestis populi Romani eripi nullo modo posse? Quis hoc non perspiciat? &c. (Ib. l. 4.)

Sunt eni quidem magnæ: quis negat? sed magnis exstantur penuriae, ac memoria hominum temporaria. (C. *Arch. Post.* 15.)

Quis hoc physionis dixit unquam? haruspices dicunt: his igitur quam physionis credendum potius existimas? (C. *Leg.* 2. 14.)

Quid enim aliud esse cunctum crederemus, cur compressis, quod nimis, manibus sedens? (L. 7. 1A.)

Pu di immortales! Opprobrium quisquam his rebus cognitis circumventum esse dicit? (C. *Cin.* 14.)

Quis non studiosè respublikæ subveniat?, hæc tamen præclara legis voce luminata? (C. *Legg.* 3. 19.)

Quod hinc collatum, quæ hinc, quod deus erit tunc, quod illigenti even debere corporis velit, qui debere summum malum esse persuaserit? Quam potro quæ ignominiam, quam turpitudinem non pertulerit? ut effugiat deborem, si illi summum malum esse dicerem? (C. *N. D.* 1. 4.)

Me nulla dies tam formidinis ausis dissimularem arguerit? (Verg. *A.* 9. 392.)

Sans superque me benignitas non dimittit: hæc paravero quod non avarus an Chremes terra premam, dissimulas hoc peritum nepos. (Rac. *Epist.* 1. 32.)

(c) De triumpho tibi memento, quem quidem tuum facile et libenter ego abjicere. (C. *Am.* 4. 7. 43.)

Quid est quod expenas amplius? Lucius hanc mentem eripere vis, in qua cum maxime cunctam ac debere retineamus? libenter reddideris, utemur quominus facillime erumamus. (C. *Sall.* 11.)

Libenter tibi, Lucii, ut de eo disseras, equidem concessero. (C. *R. P.* 1. 12.)

: Classified by Madvig also as indicative. *Opusc.* II. pp. 96, 96b.

Ciceronem cuicumque Græcorum fortiter opposuerim.

(Quint. 10. 1, § 105.)

In quo, quantum ceteris profuturi simus, non facile dixerim.

(C. T. D. 5. fin.)

Tu vero Platonem nec nimis valde umquam nec nimis sæpe laudaveris. (C. Legg. 3. 1.)

Calamitas virtutis occasio est. Illos merito quis dixerit miseros, qui nimia felicitate torpescunt. (Sen. Dial. 1. 4, § 6.)

Publicatæ enim pudicitiae nulla venia. Non forma, non ætate, non opibus maritum invenerit. (Tac. G. 19.)

Citius hercule is, qui duorum scalmorum naviculam in portu everterit, in Euxino ponto Argonautarum navem gubernarit.

(C. Or. 1. 38.)

Macte virtute! Ego enim ipse cum eodem isto non invitus erraverim. (C. T. D. 1. 17.)

Ne illi quidem se nobis merito prætulerint gloriatique sint.

(L. 22. 59.)

Sic ego istis censuerim novam istam orationem fugiendam.

(C. Brut. 78.)

Non illi se quisquam impune tulisset obvius armato, seu cum pedes iret in hostem seu spumantis equi foderet calcaribus armos.

(Verg. A. 6. 879.)

Hoc quidem adscensu vel tres armati quamlibet multitudinem arcuerint. (L. 9. 24.)

Neque pol servandum tibi quicquam dare ausim neque te servare.

(Ter. Eun. 904.)

PIL. Cedo cerussam, malas qui oblinam. SC. Una opera ebur atramento candefacere postules. (Pl. Most. 249.)

(d) *Rarely with indefinite pronoun in statement of objections.*

1542

‘Quid ergo postulas?’ dicat aliquis. (L. 37. 53.)

(See the preface.)

3. *The subjunctive is used where the subject is impliedly indefinite, the verb being in the 2nd pers. singular (i.e. you=one).*

1544

(The condition understood is the reality of the subject). N.B. The subject *tu* is rarely expressed.

Inepta hæc esse nos quæ facimus sentio. Verum quid facias? ut homost, ita morem geras. (Ter. Ad. 430.)

*Continued on p. 232.*

Omnia ego istæ, quæ tu dixisti, scio, vel exsignavero. (Pl. Trin. 655.)

Desilite, milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicæ atque imperatori officium præstitero. (Cæs. G. 4. 25.)

Mediocribus et quis ignoscas vitis teneor; fortassis et istinc largiter abstulerit longa ætas. (Hor. S. 1. 4. 130.)

Nos citius caruerimus patriciis magistratibus, quam illi plebeiis. (L. 3. 52.)

Nunc quid dicis? 'Cave ignoscas.' Hæc nec hominis nec ad hominem vox est: qua qui apud te, C. Cæsar, utitur, suam citius abiciet humanitatem quam extorquebit tuam. (C. Lig. 5.)

Narrandum ego istuc militi censebo. (Pl. Mil. 395.)

Quam scit uterque, libens censebo, exerceat artem.

(Hor. Ep. 1. 14. 44.)

(See some other examples of completed future in §§ 1485, 1545.)

(d) The indicative is (except for some collateral reason) used with a definite, or expressedly indefinite subject; especially the future and completed future of dico, quæro, &c. in introducing possible objections. 1543

1. With an expressedly indefinite subject:

1545

Dicet aliquis: 'noli isto modo cum Verre agere.' Sic agam: si quid, &c. (C. Verr. 4. 5.)

'Ergo,' inquiet aliquis, 'donavit populo Syracusano illam hereditatem.' Primum, si id confiteri velim, tamen istum condemnatis necesse est. (C. Verr. 2. 18.)

Quæret fortassis quispiam, displiceatne mihi legum præsidio capitis periculum propulsare. Mihi vero, iudices, non displicet.

(C. Clu. 52.)

Dicet aliquis, 'quid igitur censes? vindicandum in eos qui hosti prodidere rempublicam?' Non manu, non vi, &c. (Sail. J. 31. 18.)

Continued on p. 233.

Quem neque gloria neque pericula excitant, nequiquam hortere. . .  
(Sall. *C.* 58.)

Mirari magis adeo discrepare apud auctores, quam quid veri sit discernere, queas. (L. 22. 61.)

Demptum tenet arbore pomum: Hesperidas donasse putes.  
(Ov. *Met.* II. 114.)

Posteaquam in Siciliam venerunt, mirandum in modum—canis venaticos dices—ita odorabantur omnia et pervestigabant, ut ubi quidque esset aliqua ratione invenirent. (C. *Verr.* 4. 13.)

Injussu signa referunt, mæstique, (crederes victos,) redeunt in castra. (L. 2. 43.)

Neminem totis mox castris quietum videres. (L. 44. 34.)

Putasses ejus luctus aliquem finem esse debere. (Sen. *Dial.* 6. 13.)

Vicinum citius adjuveris in fructibus percipiendis quam aut fratrem aut familiarem. (C. *Off.* 1. 18.)

Postquam vero nationes in familiis habemus, quibus diversi ritus, externa sacra aut nulla sunt, colluviem istam non nisi metu coercueris. (Tac. *A.* 14. 44.)

*Such a subjunctive may occur in a conditional or other subordinate clause; e.g.* 1546

Mens quoque et animus, nisi tanquam lumini oleum instilles, extinguuntur senectute. (C. *Sen.* 11.)

Per silentium noctis sonus ferri, et, si attenderes acrius, strepitus vinculorum longius primo, deinde e proximo, reddebatur.  
(Plin. *Ep.* 7. 27.)

Nec calidæ citius decedunt corpore febres, textilibus si in picturis ostroque rubenti jacteris, quam si in plebeia veste cubandumst.  
(Lucr. 2. 36.)

Amici ejus virtutis ac venerationis erant, ut singulos reges putares.  
(Just. 13. 1.)

Proinde ubi se videas hominem indignarier ipsum, ...scire licet non sincerum sonere. (Lucr. 3. 869.)

Bonus tantummodo segnior fit, ubi negligas, at malus improbiior.  
(Sall. *J.* 51.)

Erat autem amentis, cum aciem videres, pacem cogitare.  
(C. *Lig.* 9.)

Tu igitur ipse de te? dixerit? quispiam. Equidem invitus, sed injuriæ dolor facit me præter consuetudinem gloriosum. (C. Phil. 14. 5.)

'Quid censes igitur?' aliquis vestrum subjecerit. Primum omnium omittendum morem hunc, quem agitis, impigre linguæ, animi ignavi. (Sall. Or. Macr. § 14.)

Insignia videtis potestatis, nondum ipsam potestatem. Dixerit enim fortasse quispiam, 'quid me ista ledunt?' (C. Agr. 2. 13.)

Verum ut aliquando ad causas deducamus illam quem instituimus, (riserit fortasse aliquis hoc præceptum, hoc ei primum præcipimus, quascumque causas erit tractaturus, ut eas diligenter cognoscat. (C. Or. 2. 24.)

Putat aliquis esse voluptatem bonum, alius autem pecuniam; tamen et ille ab intemperantia, et hic ab avaritia avocari potest. (C. T. D. 4. 8.)

Hoc aliquis inter illa numerat, quæ videmur inopinata omnibus dicere, et ait, 'Nemo ergo scit præter sapientem referre gratiam?' (Sen. Ep. 81, § 11.)

Quid referam Baias?...Hinc aliquis vulnus referens in pectore dixit, 'Non hæc, ut fama est, unda salubris erat.' (Ov. A. A. 1. 257.)

## 2. *With a definite subject:*

2549

Quæres, quanti id æstimem. Si unquam licuerit vivere in otio, experieris. (Pellæ ap. C. Fam. 10. 31, § 6.)

Rursus jam me, Q. Fufi. irasci fortasse dices. (C. Phil. 8. 6.)

'Rides' inquires 'in talionis rebus?' Quid faciam? plorando fessus sum. (C. Att. 15. 9.)

Respondetis fortasse Diogenes sic: 'aliud est celare, aliud tacere.' (C. Off. 3. 12.)

Dices oportere me tuis rebus ut meis uti: etiam: sed perinde illis ut meis pareo. (Plin. Ep. 6. 29.)

'Qui tibi istuc,' inquis, 'in mentem venit, homini non inepto?' (Cæc. ap. C. Fam. 9. 3.)

Nympho condemnatur. 'Quanti' fortasse queritis. (C. Verr. 3. 21.)

Uti eos inveniemus, qui honores amicitie non anteponant? (A few words after comes 'Ubi enim istam invenias, qui honorem amici anteponat suo?') (C. Læd. 17.)

Bonus segnior sit, ubi negligitur.

<sup>1</sup> *Subjunctives* according to grammarians generally. See the preface.



## (B) Conditional subjunctive.

Conditional subjunctives are used in subordinate sentences which 1548 qualify not positive or absolute assertions, but thoughts, actions in the abstract, qualities; *i.e.* they are used in sentences qualifying subjunctives, infinitives, gerundives, and future participles.

A conditional clause, qualifying a principal clause (1) which has the subjunctive, is sometimes (*a*) without any particle, the verb, however, being put first in the clause; sometimes (*b*) has a relative pronoun; sometimes (*c*) has *si*, *nisi*, which may be further strengthened; *e.g.* *etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi*. (For ordinary conditional sentences with *si*, *nisi*, see the former part of this chapter (§ 1532).)

A conditional clause with *si* frequently qualifies or appears to qualify a principal sentence which has the indicative. These cases are referable to two classes. The first of these is (2) when the indicative verb in the principal clause is an auxiliary verb; *e.g.* *possum*, *licet*, *est*, *fuit*; and the conditional clause really qualifies not the auxiliary but the infinitive or gerundive, which is connected with it. The other class is (3) when the principal sentence does not state the proper hypothetical assertion to which the conditional clause properly corresponds, but substitutes for it a statement of similar content but of a positive character. Sometimes the verb of the apodosis (principal clause) is omitted altogether.

The following are typical instances:

## 1. With apodosis in subjunctive.

(*a. 1*) *Roges me, respondeam.*

(2) *Absque te esset, viverem.*

(*b*) *Qui roget, miretur.*

(*c. 1*) *Si roges, respondeam.* (Ordinary conditional sentences.)

(2) *Etiamsi roges, taceam.*

(3) *Si roges, respondeam, si non roges, taceam* (rare).

## 2. With apodosis in some part of infinite verb.

(*a*) *Poteras respondere, si rogassem.*

(*b*) *Respondendum fuit,* }

(*c*) *Responsurus fuit,* } *si rogassem.*

## 3. With proper apodosis exchanged or omitted.

(*a*) *Si roges, respondebo. Si rogasses, responderam.*

(*b*) *Suaves numeros, si audissem.*

(*c*) *Quid si rogem?*

(*d*) *Ita respondit, quasi accusaret.*

(*e*) *O si rogaret!*

*Continued on p. 236.*

## Indicative in Conditional clauses.

Conditional clauses with the verb in the indicative usually qualify principal clauses which contain an indicative or imperative. This rule, plainly observable in tenses which proclaim their indicative character by their form, furnishes a rule for the allotment of those words (*e. g.* 1st pers. sing. fut. of some verbs, and all but the 1st pers. sing. of the completed future) which are ambiguous.

The instances are here arranged according as the condition qualifies an (1) indicative, or (2) imperative, or (3) apparently qualifies a subjunctive.

Verbs in the indicative are used without, as well as with, conditional particles to convey a condition; and so also are verbs in the imperative; the mind being left to supply the relation between the two neighbouring clauses with this help only, (apart from the meaning,) that the conditional clause is put before that which contains the consequent assertion.

Especially noticeable among conditional clauses, introduced by a conditional particle, are the use of *etsi* ('although') when the condition is a fact, the use of *si*, *sin*, and *sive*, *sive*, in which the indicative is the prevalent form, and of *nisi* introducing afterthoughts.

The instances of an indicative in the conditional clause, when the principal clause has the subjunctive, are either where the principal clause, properly correspondent, has been suppressed; or where the subjunctive form is due not to its conditional function, but to a wholly independent reason, *e. g.* to its denoting a wish or command, &c.

The following are typical instances:

## 1. With apodosis in indicative.

- (a) *Rogo, responde.*
- (ac) *Roga, respondebo.*
- (b) *Qui rogat, audit.*
- (c. 1) *Si rogas, respondeo.* (Ordinary conditional sentences.)
- (2) *Etsi rogas, or si maxime rogas, taceo.*
- (3) *Si rogas, respondeo. sin nihil rogas, taceo.*
- Sen rogas, sen nihil rogas, taceo.*
- (4) *Nihil dico; nisi forte rogas.*

## 2. With apodosis in imperative.

*Responde, si rogo.*

## 3. With apparent apodosis in subjunctive.

- (a) *Vellem Romae esses, si forte non es.*
- (b) *Si placeat, hoc agamus.*
- (c) *Si unquam visus sum, certe tum viderer.*

*Aliud, ac rogatus est, respondit.*

Continued on p. 237.

A conditional subjunctive expresses an action, whose non-occurrence is implied, but which is supposed to occur as the condition of another supposed action. 1550

1. *Conditional clause with apodosis in subjunctive.*

(a. 1) *The protasis may be without relative or connective adverb (the verb being generally put first in the clause). Compare the sentences in § 1622.* 1552

Roges me, qualem naturam deorum esse ducam, nihil fortasse respondeam; quæras, putemne talem esse, qualis modo a te sit exposita, nihil dicam mihi videri minus.

(C. N. D. 1. 21: see also 22.)

Clamet amica, pater, uxor, 'hic fossa est ingens, hic rupes maxima; serva;' non magis audierit, quam Fufius ebrius olim, cum Ilionam edormit. (Hor. S. 2. 3. 57.)

At dares hanc vim M. Crasso, ut digitorum percussione heres posset scriptus esse, cui re vera non esset heres, in foro, mihi crede, saltaret. (C. Off. 3. 19.)

Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes. (Verg. A. 6. 31.)

Negaret hac æstimatione se usum, vos id credidissetis.

(C. Verr. 3. 97.)

Dixerit hoc idem Epicurus, semper beatum esse sapientem, non pugnem cum homine, illud urgeam, non intelligere eum, quid sibi dicendum sit, cum dolorem summum malum esse dixerit.

(C. Fin. 5. 27.)

Dedisses huic animo par corpus, fecisset quod optabat.

(Plin. Ep. 1. 12.)

[So with indicative apodosis, as in § 1574.

1554

Decies centena dedisses huic parco, paucis contento: quinque diebus, nil erat in loculis. (Hor. S. 1. 3. 15.)

Huic aliquis juvenum dixisset amantia verba; reddebat tales protinus illa sonos. (Ov. F. 6. 113.)]

(a. 2) *In the comic poets such a protasis has sometimes the preposition absque with its case, and esset or foret.* 1556

Nam absque te esset, hodie numquam ad solem occasum viverem.

(Plaut. Merc. 1022.)

So with indicative apodosis, as in § 1574.

Quam fortunatus ceteris sum rebus, absque una hac foret.

(Ter. Hec. 601.)

Continued on p. 238.

In the indicative or imperative mood, a condition is put simply without its being implied that it does, or does not, occur.

### 1. Conditional clause with apodosis in indicative.

(a) *Protasis, without relative or connective adverb, in indication; especially the present and completed future.* (Cf. § 151, b.)

Quicquid dicunt laudo: id rursum si negant, laudo id quoque. Negat quis; nego: aut. atque. (Ter. Eun. 251.)

Intravimus mandum, in quo his legibus vivitur. Placet, pare: non placet; quacunq; vis, exi. (Sen. Ep. 91, § 15.)

An ille mihi liber, cui mulier imperat, qui nihil imperanti negare audeat? Poscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum; cinit, abeundum: minatur, extimescendum. (C. Parr. 5. 1.)

Clarissimo viro decrevit imperium, privato tamen: in quo maximum nobis onus imposuit. Adensus ero: ambitionem inducere in curiam: negare: videbor suffragio meo honorem homini amicissimo denegavisse. (C. Phil. 11. 8.)

Age, restituro Peripateticis: sustinero Epicureos: Diodoto quid faciam? (C. Ac. 2. 36.)

Sic vester sapiens, magno aliquo emolumento commotus, cum amico si opus erit, dimicabit. Occultum facinus esse poteris: gaudes: deprehensus, omnem poenam contemnet. (C. Fin. 3. 17. Malv. q.)

Milia frumenti tua triveris area centum: non tunc hoc capiet venter plus ac mens. (Hor. S. 1. 1. 45.)

Tu rem perire et ipsum (illum) non poteris pati. Dare denegaribus ad illud illico, quo maxime apud te se valere sentiet.

(Ter. Hant. 487.)

Rides; majore cachinno concutitur: flet, si lacrymas conspexit amari.

(Juv. 3. 100.)

*The protasis may also be taken interrogatively.*

238

Excogitavit aliquid? eodem diei quæ Stotici. Pœnituit illi sensisse? cur non se transtulit ad alios? (C. Ac. 2. 22.)

(aa) *Protasis in imperative.*

239

Attendite: jam intellegetis. (C. Verr. 2. 23.)

Recordare igitur illum, M. Antoni, diem, quo dicaturum sustulisti: pone ante oculos levitiam senatus popularique Boniani: conser tam hac immani mutatione tua morumque: tam intelleges quantum inter horum et laudem intersit. (C. Phil. 2. 45.)

Quem voles a conventu Syracusano virum bonum nominato: producam. (C. Verr. 4. 25.)

Dic quibus in terris, et eris mihi magnus Apollo, tris patas cœli spatium non amplius ulmas. (Verg. B. 3. 104.)

*Continued on p. 239.*

(b) *Protasis introduced by relative adjective (qui = si quis).*

1558

Hæc et innumerabilia ex eodem genere qui videat, nonne cogatur confiteri deos esse? (C. N. D. 2. 4.)

Qui videret equum Trojanum introductum, urbem captam diceret. (C. Verr. 4. 23.)

Qui vinum fugiens vendat sciens, debeatne dicere? (C. Off. 3. 23.)

Miraretur, qui tum Massilienses cerneret, quæ res eos tutaretur. (L. 34. 9.)

Denique levissime qui suspicaretur, putaret me idcirco discedere, quod, &c. (C. Fam. 9. 2.)

Qua opera credam tibi, una opera adligem canem fugitivam agninis lactibus. (Pl. Ps. 319.)

Equidem, quæcunque vos causa huc attulisset, lætarer, cum apud me viderem homines mihi carissimos et amicissimos. (C. Or. 2. 4.)

Qui ipsi sibi bellum indixissent, cruciari dies, noctes torqueri velent, nec vero se ipsi accusarent ob eam causam, quod se male suis rebus consuluisse dicerent; eorum enim est hæc querela, qui sibi cari sunt seseque diligunt. (C. Fin. 5. 10.)

(c. 1) *For ordinary conditional sentences with si see §§ 1530, 1532.*

(c. 2) *With si, si maxime (followed by tamen), tametsi, etiamsi (quamvis, § 1624), of a supposition contrary to the fact. (Concessive sentences.)* 1560

Si hæc non gesta audiretis, sed picta videretis, tamen appareret uter esset insidiator. (C. Mil. 20.)

Eadem opinor omnia convenire, neque enim, si maxime statuæ dejectæ essent, eas ego vobis possem jacentis ostendere. (C. Verr. 2. 68.)

Cæsar mihi, quascunque res gereret, tuendus esset; nunc in tanta felicitate tantisque victoriis, etiamsi in nos non is esset, qui est, tamen ornandus videretur. (C. Fam. 1. 9, § 18.)

Etiamsi mors oppetenda esset, domi atque in patria mallet quam in externis atque alienis locis. (C. Fam. 4. 7.)

Sed tametsi jam ita constituisses, ut abesse perpetuo mallet quam ea, quæ nolles, videre, tamen id cogitare deberes, ubicunque esses, te fore in ejus ipsius quem fugeres potestate. (1b.)

*Continued on p. 240.*



Quod male fers, adsuesce, feras bene. (Ov. *A. A.* 2. 647.)

Quod petis est nusquam: quod amas, avertere, perdes.

(Ov. *Met.* 3. 433.)

Ostendite modo bellum, pacem habebitis: videant vos paratos ad vim;  
jus ipsi remittent. (L. 6. 18.)

Crede huic tutelam: suam rem melius gesserit. (Pl. *Trin.* 139.)

Tolle hanc opinionem: luctum sustuleris. (C. *T. D.* 1. 13.)

Imperti etiam populo potestatis aliquid: non satiaris eum libertate,  
sed incenderis cupiditate libertatis, cum tantummodo potestatem  
gustandi feceris. (C. *R. P.* 2. 28.)

(b) *Protasis introduced by relative adjective.*

1559

Nihil est enim virtute amabilius, quam qui adeptus erit, ubicunque  
erit gentium, a nobis diligetur. (C. *N. D.* 1. 44.)

Hæc et quæ sunt ejus generis facile videbit, qui volet laudare.

(C. *Or.* 2. 11.)

*For other examples see § 1681.*

(c. 1) *For ordinary conditional sentences with si see §§ 1531, 1533.*

(c. 2) *With si, si maxime (followed by tamen, at), etsi, tametsi, 155x  
etiamsi (quamquam, § 1697), of a simple supposition, especially where  
the supposition is known to be the fact.*

In Deciis Magiis si moderatio illa, quæ in nostris solet-esse consulibus,  
non fuit, at fuit pompa, fuit species. (C. *Pis.* 11.)

Verum si cognatast maxime, non fuit necesse habere: sed id quod lex  
jubet, dotem daretis; quæreret alium virum. (Ter. *Ph.* 295.)

Missa hæc faciamus. Non te dignum, Chærea, fecisti; nam si ego  
digna hac contumelia sum maxime, at tu indignus, qui faceres  
tamen. (Ter. *Eun.* 864.)

Cæsar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen ex eo, quod ob-  
sides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur.

(Cæs. *G.* 4. 31.)

Viri boni multa ob eam causam faciunt, quia honestum est, etsi nul-  
lum consecuturum emolumentum vident. (C. *Fin.* 2. 14.)

Tametsi statim vicisse debeo, tamen de meo jure decedam.

(C. *Rosc. Am.* 27.)

Quod crebro quis videt, non miratur, etiamsi cur fiat nescit.

(C. *Div.* 2. 22.)

*Continued on p. 241.*

(c. 3) *The subjunctive appears to be rarely used with **si**ve or **sin**, except in reported narrative or dependent sentence; probably because the writer declines to mark as imaginary any of the possibilities among which he declines to decide.* 1562

Et tamen ego a philosopho, si adferat eloquentiam, non asperner, si non habeat, non admodum flagitem. (C. *Fin.* 1. 5.)

Mihi crede, si pro patris hujus hospitii et gratia vellent omnes hujus hospites adesse et auderent libere defendere, satis copiose defenderetur: sin autem pro magnitudine injuriæ hæc omnes vindicarent, consistere mehercule vobis isto in loco non liceret. (C. *Rosc. Am.* 51.)

Spectatores vos quoque ad cenam vocem, ni daturus nil sim neque sit quicquam pollucti domi, nive adeo vocatos credam vos esse ad cenam foras. (Pl. *Rud.* 1420.)

2. With apodosis in some part of infinite verb, i.e. 1564  
*infinitive, future participle, or gerundive.*

*The verb on which the infinitive depends, or the auxiliary verb with the gerundive or participle, is usually put in the indicative (except for some collateral reason), and conveys a positive expression of duty, possibility, right, &c.*

(a) *A condition qualifying an infinitive.*

1566

Omnibus eum contumeliis onerasti, quem patris loco, si ulla in te pietas esset, colere debebas<sup>1</sup>. (C. *Phil.* 2. 38).

Debuisti, Vatini, etiamsi falso venisses in suspicionem P. Sestio, tamen mihi ignoscere. (C. *Vat.* 1.)

Deleri totus exercitus potuit<sup>1</sup>, si fugientes persecuti victores essent. (L. 32. 12.)

Si mihi nec stipendia omnia emerita essent, necdum ætas vacationem daret, tamen aecum erat me dimitti. (L. 42. 34.)

Pompeius munitiones Cæsaris prohibere non poterat, nisi prælio decertare vellet. (Cæs. *C.* 3. 44.)

Si ita Milo putasset, optabilius ei fuit dare jugulum P. Clodio, quam jugulari a vobis. (C. *Mil.* 11.)

Neque tu hoc dicere audebis, nec, si cupias, licebit. (C. *Verr.* 2. 69.)

Nec vero ipsam amicitiam tueri possumus, nisi æque amicos et nosmet ipsos diligamus. (C. *Fin.* 1. 20.)

<sup>1</sup> This corresponds to the origin of the English idiom, *should, could, might, &c.*

(c. 3) When several conflicting possibilities are stated, either the first is expressed by *si*, and the second by *si*, *sin*, *si vero*, &c. positively, by *si non*, *sin* minus negatively; or the first by *si non*, the second by *si etiam*; or each is expressed by *sive*. In the comic poets *si...sive* (not *sive...sive*) are used. (Sin is also used occasionally where no express statement of condition has preceded.) 1563

*Si feceris id quod ostendis, magnam habebō gratiam; si non feceris, ignoscā.* (C. Fam. 5. 19.) 1565

*Si mihi veniam, quam peto, dederit, utar illius condicione; si minus, impetrabo aliquid a me ipso.* (C. Att. 9. 15.)

*Inde utrum consistere uspiam velit, an mare transire, nescitur; si manet, vereor ne exercitum firmum habere non possit; sin discedit, quo aut qua aut quid nobis agendum sit, nescio.* (C. Att. 7. 12.)

*Luxuria cum omni ætati turpis, tum senectuti fœdissima est: sin autem etiam libidinum intemperantia accessit, duplex malum est.* (C. Off. 1. 34.)

*Utrum cetera nomina in codicem accepti et expensi digesta habes an non? si non, quomodo tabulas conficis? si etiam, quamobrem hoc nomen triennio amplius in adversariis relinquebas?* (C. Rosc. Com. 3.)

*Tun' capite cano amas, homo nequissime? DE. Si canum, sei istuc rutilum, sive atrumst, amo.* (Pl. Merc. 304.) 1567

*Si ex æternitate verum hoc fuit 'Ex isto morbo convalesces,' sive adhibueris medicum sive non adhibueris, convalesces; itemque si ex æternitate falsum hoc fuit, 'Ex isto morbo convalesces,' sive adhibueris medicum sive non adhibueris, non convalesces.* (C. Fat. 13.)

*Sive enim ad sapientiam perveniri potest, non paranda nobis solum ea, sed fruenda etiam est: sive hoc difficile est, tamen nullus est modus investigandi veri, nisi inveneris.* (C. Fin. 1. 1.)

*Itaque sive Sulla, sive Marius, sive uterque, sive qui alius bellum civile optavit, eum detestabilem civem reipublicæ natum judico.* (C. Phil. 13. 1.)

*Pacem cum Scipione Sulla sive faciebat sive simulabat, non erat desperandum, si convenisset, fore aliquem tolerabilem statum civitatis.* (Ib.)

*Platonis illud, seu quis dixit alius, perelegans esse videtur.* (C. R. P. 1. 18.)

*But the apodosis has (1) sometimes an hypothetical subjunctive;*

1568

Hæc si diceret, tamen ignosci non oporteret. (C. Verr. 1. 27.)

Cluentio ignoscere debebitis, quod hæc a me dici patiat; mihi ignoscere non deberetis, si tacerem. (C. Clu. 6.)

(2) *sometimes a subjunctive for collateral reason, esp. potuerit, rarely potuisset (comp. § 1521).*

Ventum quidem erat eo, ut, si hostem similem antiquis Macedonum regibus habuisset consul, magna clades accipi potuerit.

(L. 44. 4.)

Tantum in tempore fuit momenti, ut, cum precantibus opem militibus succurri, si maturatum esset, potuisset, ad id venerit exercitus subsidio missus, ut, &c. (L. 4. 58.) Cf. C. Sull. 15.

Philippus, si satis diei superesset, non dubius quin Athamanes quoque exui castris potuissent, sub tumulo consedit. (L. 31. 42.)

(b) *A condition qualifying the future participle, or the gerundive*<sup>1</sup>. 1570

Si tribuni me triumphare prohiberent, Furium et Aemilium testes citaturus fui rerum a me gestarum. (L. 38. 47.)

Illi ipsi aratores, qui remanserant, relicturi agros omnis erant, nisi ad eos Metellus Roma litteras misisset. (C. Verr. 3. 52.)

Peditum acies videbatur, si justa ac directa pugna esset, haudquam impar futura. (L. 22. 28.)

Quid, si hostes ad urbem veniant, facturi estis? (L. 3. 52.)

Hoc Turrinus sequitur, ad summa evasurus juvenis, nisi modicis contentus esset. (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 10. præf. § 16.)

Dedit mihi quantum maximum potuit, daturus amplius, si potuisset. (Plin. Ep. 3. 21.)

Si Romæ Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat deligendus. (C. Man. 17.)

Hos nisi manumisisset, tormentis etiam dedendi fuerunt.

(C. Mil. 22.)

Sic flendus Peleus, si moreretur, erat. (Ov. F. 408.)

Hoc, etiamsi senex non essem, fuerat sentiendum, nunc vero multo magis. (Sen. Ep. 77. 3.)

Si unum diem morati essetis, moriendum omnibus fuit. (L. 2. 38.)

Quid faceret? si vivere vellet, Sejanus rogandus erat.

(Sen. Dial. 6. 22, § 6.)

<sup>1</sup> A sentence with a condition not marked as imaginary, and therefore in the indicative, is given in § 1533 c.

(c. 4) An exception (in the indicative) is often appended by way of afterthought: nisi, nisi forte, nisi vero ironical, nisi tamen. Sometimes nisi = 'only that,' 'only,' 'but.'

Nemo fere saltat sobrius, nisi forte insanit. (C. Mur. 6.)

Quid miramur L. Sullam, cum solus rempublicam regeret orbemque terrarum gubernaret, aliqua animadvertere non potuisse? nisi hoc mirum est, quod vis divina adsequi non possit, si id mens humana adepta non sit. (C. Rosc. Am. 45.)

An est quisquam qui hoc ignoret, cum de homine occiso queratur, aut negari solere omnino esse factum, aut recte et jure factum esse defendi? nisi vero existimatis dementem P. Africanum fuisse, qui, &c. (C. Mil. 3.)

Ridiculum caput, quasi necesse sit, si huic non dat, te illam uxorem ducere: nisi vides, nisi senis amicos oras, ambis.  
(Ter. Andr. 373.)

De re non possum judicare, nisi illud mihi persuadeo, te talem virum nihil temere fecisse. (C. Fam. 13. 73.)

Plura de Jugurtha scribere debortatur me fortuna mea. Etiam antea expertus sum parum tibi miseris esse. Nisi tamen intellego illum supra, quam ego sum, petere. (Sall. J. 24.)

Quid egerint inter se, nondum etiam scio: nisi sane curasti, quorsum eventurum hoc siet. (Ter. Hec. 192.)

Sperabam jam defuisse aulescentiam: gaudetam: ecce autem de integro: nisi, quicquid est, volo scire. (Ter. Ad. 152.)

## 2. Indicative conditional clause with apodosis in imperative.

The conditional clause may (a) have, or (b) not have si.

(a) Bibe, tibicen, bibe, si bibis: bibendum hercle hoc est, ne nega. Age, si quid agis. (Pl. Stich. 713.)

Si id capso, geritote amicis vestris aurum corbibus. (Pl. Bac. 712.)

Quamobrem si me amas tantum, quantum profecto amas, si dormis, expergiscere; si stas, ingredi; si ingrederis, curte; si curris, advola. (U. Att. 2. 23.)

Continued on p. 245.



*The auxiliary verb in the apodosis may be in the subjunctive for 1572 a collateral reason; e.g. if the apodosis is a dependent question, &c.*

Ostendis qualis tu, si ita forte accidisset, fueris illo tempore consul futurus: stipendio, mehercule, et frumento Catilinam esse putasses juvandum. (C. Pis. 7.)

Tumulus erat inter castra, quem qui occupasset haud dubie iniquiorem erat hosti locum factururus. (L. 22. 28.)

Subibat cogitatio animum, quonam modo tolerabilis futura Etruria fuisset, si quid in Samnio adversi evenisset. (L. 10. 45.)

Neque ambigitur quin Brutus idem, qui tantum gloriæ Superbo exacto rege meruit, pessimo publico id factururus fuerit, si libertatis immaturæ cupidine priorum regum alicui regnum extorrisset. (L. 2. 1.)

Nec dubium erat, quin, si tam pauci simul obire omnia (loca) posset, terga daturi hostes fuerint. (L. 4. 38.)

Virgines eo cursu se ex sacrario proripuerunt, ut, si effugium parvisset in publicum, impleturæ urbem tumultu fuerint. (L. 24. 26.)

Adeo æquis viribus gesta res est, ut, si affuissent Etrusci aut in acie aut in castris, quocunque se inclinassent accipienda clades fuerit. (L. 10. 27.)

Quæ res sua sponte tam scelerata et nefaria est, ut, etiamsi lex non esset, magnopere vitanda fuerit. (C. Verr. 1. 42.)

### 3. With suppression or contraction of the proper 1574 hypothetical apodosis.

(a) *An allied fact is sometimes substituted for the proper hypothetical statement. This allied fact is usually either (1. Present) a general truth (instead of a particular occurrence); or (2. Future) an unconditional prophecy; or (3. Perfect with pæne, prope, or Imperfect) an incomplete action or tendency (instead of the completed result); or (4. Pluperfect) a wilful exaggeration. Comp. § 1535, d.*

(1) Multa me dehortantur a vobis, Quirites, ni studium reipublicæ superet. (Sall. J. 31.)

Cur Siculi te defensorem habere nolint, etiamsi taceant, satis dicunt; verum non tacent. (C. Caecil. 6.)

Memini numeros, si verba tenerem. (Verg. B. 9. 45.)

Quæ audivistis modo, nunc si eadem hic iterem, inscitiast.

(Pl. Pæn. 4. 2. 99.)

Par mulieribus, mihi crede, vigor; par ad honesta, libeat, facultas est. (Sen. Dial. 6. 16.)

*Continued on p. 246.*

Ubi nos laverimus, si volas, lavato. (Ter. Eun. 594.)

Verum parvitas dignitati Lentuli, si ipse famae suae peperit: ignoscite Cethegi adolescentiae, nisi iterum patriae bellum fecit. (Sall. C. 52.)

Sic ignovisse putato me tibi, si cenas hodie mecum. (Hor. Ep. l. 7. 69.)

Verum tamen, Criso, si me adsequi poteris aut si tibi manctus eris, ut tibi videbitur, sepebis. (C. I. D. l. 43.)

Si paret Autum apud Negidum mensam argenteam deposuisse, eamque dolo malo Negidii Aulo redditam non esse, quanti ea res erit, tantam pecuniam, iudex, Negidiam Aulo condemnato: si non paret, abscribo. (Farrula apud Gai. Inst. 4. 47.)

(5) Arguet, arguto: quicquid procos illa, procos: quod dicit, dicas; quod negat illa, neges. Riseris, mride: si fecit, fere memento. (Ov. A. A. 2. 191.)

Occurras aliquo, tibi dixerit: omnia differ, curra, nec ineptum turba moeretur iter. Rare eris es inest venas—amor oia inest—si roma defuerit, tu pede carpe viam. (Ov. A. A. 2. 235—236.)

### 3. With apparent apodosis in subjunctive.

246

(a) Sometimes it is not the particular action expressed—this may be in infinitive or subjunctive according to circumstances—but the mention of the action, which is qualified by the conditional clause expressed.

Quam vellem Romae esses, si forte non es. (C. Att. 5. 13.)

Tua nos virtus ita conciliavit tibi, ut, te salvo atque incolumi amico, ne leos quidem iratos, si his est diu, timeremus. (L. 24. 42.)

Tu tamen vellem orationem legas, nisi forte jam legisti. (C. Att. 15. 16.)

‘At sunt molossi et aridi et irruendi et difficiles senes:’ si querimus, etiam avari: sed haec merum vitia sunt, non senectutis. (C. Sen. 13.)

Cum Philippo hoste nostro non societatem solum, sed, si illis placeat, affinitatem etiam pepigisti. (L. 34. 32.)

Quod ni ita sit, quid veneramur deos? (C. N. D. i. 44.)

Quamquam si quædam etiam suaviora nasturcio natura desideret, quam multa ex terra arboribusque gignuntur cum copia facili, tum suavitate præstanti. (C. T. D. 5. 34.)

(2) At si me jubeas domitos Jovis igne Gigantas dicere, conantem debilitabit onus. (Ov. *Trist.* 2. 333.)

Si fractus illabatur orbis, inpavidum ferient ruinæ. (Hor. *Od.* 3. 3. 7.)

Si quis omnia alia habeat, valitudinem, divitias, imagines multas, frequens atrium, sed malus ex confesso sit; improbabis illum.  
(Sen. *Ep.* 76. 12.)

Si, quantum de quaque re dici potest, persequamur, finis operis non reperietur. (Quint. i. proem. 25.)

(3) Pons sublicius iter pæne hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset.  
(L. 2. 10.)

Inde certamine orto nisi in tribunal legatorum perfugisset, haud multum afuit, quin ab exulibus fautoribusque eorum interficeretur. (L. 42. 44.)

Si, me dius fidius, ad hoc bellum nihil pertineret, ad disciplinam certe militiæ plurimum intererat, insuescere militem nostrum pati tædium. (L. 5. 6.)

Vincebat auxilio loci paucitas, ni jugo circummissus Veiens in verticem collis evasisset. (L. 2. 50.)

Quin labebar longius, nisi me retinuissem. (C. *Leg.* i. 19.)

Si per L. Metellum licitum esset, matres illorum miserorum sororesque veniebant. (C. *Verr.* 5. 49.)

Omnino supervacua erat doctrina, si natura sufficeret.  
(Quint. 2. 8. 8.)

(4) Præclare viceramus, nisi spoliatum, inermem, fugientem Lepidus recepisset Antonium. (C. *Fam.* 12. 10.)

Si gladium in Asia non strinxissem, si hostem non vidissem, tamen proconsul triumphum in Thracia duobus præliis merueram.  
(L. 38. 49.)

Nisi Latini sua sponte arma sumpsissent, capti et deleti eramus.  
(L. 3. 19.)

Me truncus illapsus cerebro sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum dextra levasset. (Hor. *Od.* 2. 17.)

Perierat alter filius, si carnifici conviva non placuisset.  
(Sen. *Ir.* 2. 33.)

Si nihil aliud quæreremus, nisi ut deos pie coleremus, satis erat dictum. (C. N. D. i. 17.)

*Continued on p. 248.*

(5) Or the apodasis may express a wish or command or consequence, or modest assertion, &c. and on that account have its verb in the subjunctive, without the mood of the protasis being affected.

Etenim si nox non adimit vitam beatam, cur dies nocti similis adimat? (C. T. D. 5. 38.)

Di me faciant quod volunt, ni ob istam orationem te liberasso et ni Scapham enicasso. (Pl. Most. 222.)

Peream, ni piscem putavi esse. (ap. Varr. R. R. 3. 3.)

Peream male, si non optimum erat. (Hor. S. 2. l. 6.)

Si stare non possunt, congruant. (C. Cat. 2. 10.)

Quod si meis incommodis letabantur, urbis tamen periculo commoverentur. (C. Sest. 24.)

Si amabas, invenires matrem: ad danistam devenires, adderes fenusculum, subruperes patri. (Pl. Ps. 286.)

Si volebas tibi omnia licere, ne convertisses in te ora omnia.  
(Sen. Dial. 11. 6, § 3.)

Fratrem mecum et te si habebo, per me isti pedibus trahantur.  
(C. Att. 4. 13 [16].)

Primo, si placet, Stoicorum more agamus. (C. T. D. 3. 6.)

Ne tamen territus fueris, si duæ legiones in hoc concussi orbis motu nondum quiescunt. (Tac. H. 1. 16.)

Non intellego, quam ob rem, si vivere honesta non possunt, perire turpiter veint. (C. Cat. 2. 10.)

Sin erit ille gemitus elementabilis, si inbecillus, si abjectus, si debilis, ei qui se dederit, vix eum virum dixerim. (C. T. D. 2. 24.)

Nec vitium duxerim, si Cicero a Demosthene paulum in hac parte descivit. (Quint. 9. 4, § 14.)

(b) *An epithet, &c. forms the apodosis, instead of a statement of the epithet's being applicable.* 1576

Carmen in Junonem reginam canentes ibant; illa tempestate forsitan laudabile rudibus ingeniis, nunc abhorrens, si referatur.

(L. 27. 37.)

Hunc exitum habuit vir, nisi in libera civitate natus esset, memorabilis. (L. 6. 20, § 14.)

Huic igitur legi paruit Cassius, cum est Syriam profectus, alienam provinciam, si homines legibus scriptis uterentur, eis vero oppressis, suam lege naturæ. (C. Phil. 11. 12.)

Itaque præclarum a majoribus accepimus morem rogandi iudicis, si eum teneremus, 'quæ salva fide facere possit.' (C. Off. 3. 10.)

Vidimus et merulas poni, suavis res, si non causas narraret earum et naturas dominus. (Hor. S. 2. 8. 92.)

Amisit uxorem singularis exempli, etiam si olim fuisset.

(Plin. Ep. 8. 5.)

(c) *In conversational questions the verb of the apodosis is omitted, perhaps not even distinctly conceived.* 1578

Quid ais? quid, si adeam nunc insanum? TY. Nugas; ludificabitur. (Plaut. Capt. 602.)

Quid, si hunc comprehendi jusserim? TY. Sapias magis.

(Plaut. Capt. 596.)

Nemo naturæ sanus irascitur. Quid enim, si mirari velit non in silvestribus dumis poma pendere? Quid, si miretur spineta sentesque non utili aliqua fruge conpleri? (Sen. Ir. 2. 10.)

(d) *In sentences of comparison; with quasi, velut si, ac si, tamquam si, sicuti, ceu, &c., the verb of the apodosis (being an hypothetical repetition of the verb of the principal sentence) is often omitted.* 1580

*With tamquam and velut the si also is sometimes omitted.*

Verum homines corrupti superbia ita ætatem agunt, quasi vestros honores contemnant; ita hos petunt, quasi honeste vixerint.

(Sall. J. 85, § 19.)

Ita præcipito mulieri ut simulet se tuam esse uxorem; quasque hunc anulum suæ favæ dederit, ea porro mihi, militi ut darem; quasque ei ego rei sim interpres. (Pl. Mil. 797.)

Tamquam si claudus sim, cum fusti st ambulandum. (Pl. Asin. 427.)

Parvi primo ortu sic jacent, tamquam omnino sine animo sint.

(C. Fin. 5. 15.)

At accusat C. Cornelii filius, et id æque valere debet, ac si pater indicaret. (C. Sull. 18.)

*Continued on p. 250.*



(c.) Or the apodosis may contain an hypothetical statement contingent, not on the condition expressed, but on another which is not formally expressed.

Si unquam tibi visus sum in republica fortis, certe me in illa causa admiratus esses (sc. si affuisses). (C. Att. 1. 16.)

Quod si in hoc mundo fieri sine deo non potest, ne in sphaera quidem eodem motus Archimedes sine divino ingenio (= nisi divinam ingenium haberet) potuisset imitari. (C. T. D. 1. 25.)

Deiotarum ex itinere aquila revocavit: qui nisi revertisset, in eo concidavi et tantum fuisset, quod proxima nocte corruit; ruina igitur oppressus esset. At id neque si fatum fuerat, effugisset (sc. si revertisset), nec, si non fuerat, in eum casum incidisset (sc. si non revertisset). (C. Div. 2. 8.)

Quod si Caesaris causa in provinciam veniebatis, ad eum profecto, exilisi provincia, venissetis: venistis ad Pompeium (= si Caesaris causae faveretis, cum in prov. veniebatis). (C. Lig. 8.)

4. In conversational questions the verb of the apodosis is sometimes omitted.

Quid, si hic manebo potius ad meridiem? (Plaut. Most. 582.)

'Quid, si' inquit alius 'C. Caesar et consul esse et exercitum habere vult?' At ille (Pompeius) quam elementer: 'quid si filius meus fustem mi impingere vult?' (Cael. ap. C. Fam. 8. 8, § 9.)

Ta. Agedum, tange utrumvis digitulo minime modo. La. Quid, si attingero? Ta. Exemplo hercule ego te follem pugilatorum faciam. (Plaut. Rud. 720.)

The indicative is used in sentences of comparison (cf. § 1635 sqq.) where the occurrence adduced in comparison is a fact; chiefly with ac, tamquam.

Aliter atque ostenderam facio. (C. Fam. 2. 3.)

Longe alia nobis ac tu scripseras narrantur. (C. Att. 11. 10.)

Philosophia quidem, tantam adest, ut proinde, ac de hominum vita merita est, laudetur, ut a plerisque neglecta, a multis etiam vituperetur. (C. T. D. 5. 2.)

Tibi sum oblitus hodie ac volui dicere. (Ter. And. 841.)

Date operam ne simili utamur fortuna, atque uti sumus, quem per tumultum noster grex loco movit. (Ter. Phorm. 32.)

Nam et visast eadem et animus te erga diem ac finis. (Ter. Hrut. 265.)

Iusserant simulacrum Jovis facere majus et in excelso conlocare et contra, atque antea fuerat, ad orientem convertere. (C. Cat. 3. 8.)

Continued on p. 251.

Samnitium exercitus, velut haud ulla mora pugnae futura esset, aciem instruit. (L. 7. 37.)

Illi qui mœnia defensabant, sicuti audiri a suis aut cerni possent, monere alii, alii hortari, aut manu significare, aut niti corporibus. (Sall. J. 60.)

Hic vero ingentem pugnam, ceu cetera nusquam bella forent, nulli tota morerentur in urbe, cernimus. (Verg. A. 2. 438.)

Neque moris causa tantum aut legis, sed quanta, si hostis ad portas esset, et servabant vigilias et circumibant cura. (L. 34. 9.)

Qua de re, quoniam tu nihil ad me scribis, proinde habebō, ac si scripsisses nihil esse. (C. Att. 3. 13.)

Nulla major res mihi occurrebat cogitanti, quam si optimarum artium vias traderem meis civibus. (C. Div. 2. 1.)

Ita digreditur Demetrius cum infestioribus, quam si solus iret, praesidiis. (L. 40. 21.)

Epicurus dixerit sane idem in Phalaridis tauro, quod, si esset in lectulo: ego tantam vim non tribuo sapientiae contra dolorem. (C. T. D. 2. 7.)

Quasi vero mihi difficile sit quam vis multos nominatim proferre. (C. Rosc. Am. 16.)

Profers triumphos T. Didii et C. Marii, et quæris quid sit simile in Plancio: quasi vero isti, quos commemoras, propterea magistratus ceperint, quod triumpharant, et non, &c. (C. Planc. 25.)

(e) *In wishes,*

1582

O si angulus ille proximus accedat, qui nunc deformat agellum. (Hor. S. 2. 6. 8.)

Si nunc se nobis ille aureus arbore ramus ostendat nemore in tanto. (Verg. A. 2. 438.)

Quanquam o si solitae quicquam virtutis adesset! (Ib. 11. 415.)

Illud te hortor, ut, tamquam poetæ boni solent, sic tu in extrema parte  
muneris tui diligentissimus sis. (C. Q. P. l. l. sub fin.)

Sunt naturæ corporum, tamquam hic homo est, hic equus.  
(Sen. Ep. 117, § 13.)

Di miris exemplis somnia in somnis dantur; velut ego nocte hæc in  
somnia ego somis et fui homo exercitus. (Pl. Merc. 217.)

Fuit olim, quasi nunc ego sum, senex: ei tunc iuue erant, quasi nunc  
meæ sunt: eis erant ducibus nuptæ turribus, quasi nunc meæ  
sunt vobis, &c. (Pl. Stich. 539 et seq.)

If the verb of the subordinate sentence is the same whether re-  
quiring the same or a different mood as that of the principal sentence,  
it is usually omitted, and the verb thus appears to qualify a word  
only. (Cf. § 1622, and examples in §§ 1626, 1641.)

Negat Epicurus esse corpus deorum, sed tamquam corpus, nec sangui-  
nem, sed tamquam sanguinem... Corpus quid sit, sanguis quid sit,  
intellego: quasi corpus et quasi sanguis quid sit, nullo prorsus  
modo intellego. (C. N. D. l. 26.)

Mirari soleo, cum video aliquos tempus petentes et eos, qui rogantur,  
facillimos: quasi nihil petitur, quasi nihil datur res omnium  
pretiosissima: inditur. (Sen. Deat. 2, §.)

De Fabiano Severus Cassius, antequam ab illo reus ageretur, dixerat:  
'quasi dissertas es, quasi formosus es, quasi dives es: unum  
tantum es non quasi, vappa.' (Sen. Rhet. Cont. 2, 12, § 11.)

Apud eum sic Ephesi fui, quotiescumque fui, tamquam domi meæ.  
(C. Fam. 13, 69.)

M. Porcium, sicut omni vita, tum prensantem premebat nobilitas.  
(L. 39, 41.)

Cn. Plancii salutem non secus ac meum videri debeo. (C. Planc. l.)

## CHAPTER XXI.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD TO EXPRESS  
DESIRE, with contrasted use of indicative and imperative.

## (C) Optative and jussive subjunctive.

This use, with the hypothetical subjunctive, exhausts the cases <sup>158</sup> in which the subjunctive stands in a simple sentence, or in an independent principal clause of a compound sentence.

There are five principal subdivisions of this use. The first (1) contains wishes, either without or with an introductory particle; e.g. *ut, utinam*. The second (2) contains commands and prohibitions. The third (3) contains wishes, commands, &c., which are supported by a verb expressive of the wish or command. The fourth (4) contains questions not (ordinarily) about facts, but whether this or that conceivable action was advisable or not. The fifth (5) contains what are often called concessive sentences, in which an action is directed to be taken for granted, in order that discussion may be concentrated on the consequences.

In all these cases, except (4), if the subjunctive verb requires a negative, *ne* is used instead of *non*. *Cave* and *nolim, nollem* are also used in (3) as equivalent to *ne*.

The following are typical instances:

1. (a) *Valeant cives. Moriar, ni hoc puto.*  
       (b) *Venia sit dicto. Pace horum dixerim.*  
       (c) *Utinam valeas.*
2. (a) *Dicat Claudius. Ne dixeris.*  
       (b) *Dixisses. Ne dixisses.*
3. (a) *Censeo venias. Sine veniam. Cave venias.*  
       (b) *Volo scribas. Vellem (nollem) scripsisset.*
4. (a) *Quid faciam? Quid facerem?*  
       (b) *Non constat, quid faciam.*  
       (c) *Quidni faciam?*  
       (d) *Tace. Ego taceam?*
5. (a) *Fecerit: nunc non facit.*  
       (b) *Quamvis ille fecerit, nunc non facit.*  
       (c) *Nihil dico, modo faciat.*

*Continued on p. 254.*

## Indicative and Imperative.

The uses of the indicative mood in this chapter have not all a close connexion with one another. They have been selected as contrasting, or at least being in some way comparable, with the quoted usages of the subjunctive.

A wish or command may of course be expressed directly by a verb of wishing or command. A command is sometimes expressed by the future indicative, and regularly by the imperative. Certain uses of *videro* and *faxo* are specially noticeable.

Several classes of questions referring to future action, or expressing surprise, or exhortation, are found in the indicative. Hence several uses of *quin*.

Concessions like wishes may be expressed directly and positively, especially with *quamvis* or *licet*, and the imperative is so used with *modo*.

The following are typical instances :

1. (a) *Cupio te valere.*  
      (b) *Valebis, mi Tiro, meaque negotia videbis.*  
      (c) *Sed de hoc mox videro. Viderit ille.*
2. (a) *Dic, Claudii. Ne lacruma (in poetry).*  
      (b) *Dicito. Ne dicito.*
3. (a) *Faxo, venies. Quæso, veni.*
4. (a) *Quid ago? Advolc-ne an maneo?*  
      (b) *Satin' abiit? Etiam rides?*  
      (c) *Imusne sessum? Quin abis?*  
          *Quin hoc attendite. Quin evolare cupio.*  
      (d) *Times. Egon' timeo?*
5. (a) *Esto, jampridem fecit.*  
      (b) *At enim hoc dicit. Et quidem errat.*  
      (c) *Fecerit licebit: nunc non facit.*  
      (d) *Quamvis fecit olim, nunc non facit (post-Ciceronian).*  
      (e) *Fac modo: nihil dicam.*

*Continued on p. 255.*



The optative or jussive subjunctive expresses an action <sup>1586</sup> supposed and either wished, or deprecated, or commanded, or forbidden.

1. Wish. (*See also* § 1608.)

(a) *Without connective adverb; (in negative sentences with ne).* <sup>1588</sup>

Valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati.

(C. Mil. 34.)

Id quidem, inquis, di approbent. Ita velim. (C. Att. 6. 6.)

Legati pro contione: Quod bonum felix faustumque sit vobis rei publicae, redite in patriam. (L. 3. 54.)

Excessurum se ex Italia dixit, si, quod di omen averterint, rem publicam oppressisset Antonius. (C. Phil. 12. 6.)

Si sciens fallo, tum me, Juppiter optime maxime, pessimo leto afficias. (L. 22. 53.)

Di facerent sine patre forem. (Ov. Met. 8. 72.)

Ac venerata Ceres, ita culmo surgeret alto, explicuit vino contractæ seria frontis. (Hor. S. 2. 2. 124.)

Rex secunda vigilia, quod bene verteret, ingredi jubet.

(Curt. 7. 11, § 14.)

Omnes per mortes animam sontem ipse dedissem. (Verg. A. 10. 854.)

Phœbe, gravis Trojæ semper miserate labores, hac Trojana tenus fuerit Fortuna secuta. (Verg. A. 6. 62.)

Moriar, ni, quæ tua gloria est, puto te malle a Cæsare consuli quam inaurari. (C. Fam. 7. 13.)

Di te perduint, fugitive! ita fatuus et amens es. (C. Deiot. 7.)

Seu tu Culendru's seu Caliendrus, perieris. (Pl. Men. 295.)

Sollicitat, ita vivam, me tua, mi Tiro, valetudo. (C. Fam. 16. 20.)

Ne sim salvus, si aliter scribo ac sentio. (C. Att. 16. 13.)

Ita di deæque faxint, si in rem est Bacchidis. (Ter. Hec. 102.)

Ne istuc Juppiter optimus maximus sirit. (L. 28. 28.)

*So in certain apologetic phrases; (present and perfect).*

Obsecro vos, putate me ex media contione unum civem succlamare: <sup>1590</sup>

“Bona venia vestra liceat ex his rogationibus legere, quas salubres nobis censemus esse, antiquare alias.” (L. 6. 40.)

Usque adhuc certe neminem ex iis quos eduxeram mecum (venia sit dicto) ibi amisi. (Plin. Ep. 5. 6. fin.)

Hoc ego adjuncto (absit verbo invidia), qui dubitare de eventu possim? (L. 36. 7.)

*Continued on p. 256.*

1. A similar meaning to that of this class of subjunctive may be expressed by the indicative.

(a) *A direct expression of a wish is made by the use of the verbs volo, cupio, &c. (Other instances in § 1537.)*

Amicus sum: eveniant volo tibi quæ optas. (Pl. Pers. 296.)

Cupio non obtundere te, si non delectare nostro studio; cupio deterere, ne permaneas in incepto. (Lucr. ap. C. Fam. 5. 14.)

Neque ficto in pejus vultu proponi cereus usquam, nec prave factis decorari versibus opto. (Hor. Ep. 2. 1. 264.)

Te ipsum, Nævi, volo audire; volo inauditum facinus ipsius, qui id commisit, voce convinci. Dic, Nævi, diem. (C. Quint. 25.)

Spero enim, quæ tua prudentia et temperantia est, et hercule, ut me jubet Acastus, confido te jam, ut volumus, valere. (C. Att. 6. 9.)

(b) *The second person of the future indicative, by telling a person what he will do, may imply that he shall do it.*

Interea dedite profanos nos: dedetis deinde et istos sacrosanctos, quum primum magistrata abierint. (L. 9. 9.)

Rationes alias repescite: nunc auctoritate veteris imperatoris contentus eris. (L. 44. 36.)

Si quid acciderit novi, facies ut sciam. (C. Fam. 14. 8.)

Antequam aliquo loco consedero, neque longas a me, neque semper mea manu, litteras expectabis. (C. Att. 5. 14.)

Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis, meque dis juvantibus ante brumam expectabis. (C. Fam. 7. 20.)

Valebis, mea Agrippina, et dabis operam ut valens pervenias ad Germanicum tuum. (Aug. ap. Suet. Cal. 8.)

Cum surgit, surges, donec sedet illa, sedebis; arbitrio dominæ tempora perde tuæ. (Ov. 4. 4. 1. 503.)

Tu nihil invita dices faciesve Minerva. (Hor. 4. P. 385.)

Cum te audirem, accidebat, ut moleste ferrem tantum ingenium—bona venia me audies—in tam ineptas sententias incidisse.

(C. N. D. 1. 21.)

### Compare

Sic me di amabunt, ut me tuarum miseritامت fortunarum.

(Ter. Haut. 463.)

At qui legitimum cupiet fecisse poema, luxuriantia compescet, nimis aspera sano levabit cultu, &c. (Hor. Ep. 2. 2. 109 sqq.)

Continued on p. 257.

Tu, et meo iudicio et omnium, vix ullam ceteris oratoribus, pace horum dixerim, laudem reliquisti. (C. Or. I. 17.)

Auspicia nunc a Romanis auguribus ignorantur, bona hoc tua venia dixerim. (C. Div. I. 15.)

(b) *With utinam, sometimes with modo; or (in poetry) ut.* 159  
*In negative sentences usually with ne. In execrations qui is used by the comic poets.*

Aspecta, rideo. DE. Utinam, male qui mihi volunt, sic rideant.  
 (Pl. Asin. 841.)

Utinam ipse Varro incumbat in causam. (C. Att. 3. 15.)

Utinam ego tertius vobis amicus adscriberer. (C. T. D. 5. 22.)

Illud utinam ne vere scriberem. (C. Fam. 5. 17.)

Utinam populus Romanus unam cervicem haberet.  
 (Calig. ap. Suet. Cal. 30.)

Quis in hanc rem fuit arbiter? Utinam is quidem Romæ esset! Romæ est. Utinam adesset in iudicio! Adest. Utinam sedeat in consilio C. Pisonis! Ipse C. Piso est. (C. Rosc. Com. 4.)

Juppiter omnipotens, utinam ne tempore primo Gnosia Cecropiæ tetigissent litora puppes. (Catull. 64. 171.)

Modo valeres! Scripseras enim te quodam valetudinis genere temp- 159  
 tari. (C. Att. II. 23.)

GE. Hæc fient. AN. Ut modo fiant! GE. Fient: me vide.  
 (Ter. Ph. 711.)

O pater et rex Juppiter, ut pereat positum robigine telum neu quisquam noceat cupido mihi pacis! (Hor. S. 2. 1. 42.)

Quod ut o potius formidine falsa ludar, et in melius tua, qui potes, orsa reflectas. (Verg. A. 10. 631.)

Qui illum di omnes perduint, qui primus commentust contionem habere. (Pl. Men. 451.)

*A wish is sometimes expressed by a conditional sentence, with the apodosis omitted; see § 1582.*

2. Simple command. (In prohibitions **ne, nemo, nihil,** 159  
*rarely non: sometimes (for et ne, vel ne) neve, neu; nec.*)

(a) *In present and, in prohibitions, perfect tenses.*

*The use of the subjunctive of the second person, present tense, is rare, excepting when the subject is indefinite (§ 1600; cf. 1544).*

Mihi quidem in vita servanda videtur illa lex, quæ in Græcorum 159  
 conviviis obtinetur: 'aut bibat,' inquit, 'aut abeat.'

(C. T. D. 5, 41.)

*Continued on p. 258.*

(a) The use of all persons of *videre* see § 155 c; so put *videre* in the consideration of a question, is not infrequent.

Quæ fuerit causa, non *videre*: interea hoc tenebo. C. Fin. 1. 13.

Proveo ad populum. *Videte*, resurreximus prope ad huc, cum rex Romanus Tullius Hostilius cecidit. L. 1. 39. 23.

Sei de te tu *videris*: ego de me ipso prodicebor. C. Fam. 2. 26.

Legi Bruti epistolam, sanè non prudenter rescriptam id ea quæ sequerentur. Sei ipse *videtur*. C. Att. 12. 21.

Nunc merere: ut de me dixerim pater atque hominem regis diceret.

C. Leg. 1. 13. 742.

Ipsam iracundiâ ferocissimâ quasi eorum esse dixerunt: recte sententiae, nam *videmus*. C. Att. 9. 44.

\*Vos, inquit (Lucretia), *videtis* quid illi doluerint, cum nos, qui peccato absque, supplicio non habemus? C. 1. 34.

Quæ quam sit facilis, illi *videbimus*, qui quæ erit amplexoria, quasi difficillima sit, isti sublimi ambulant. Quamquam et hoc *videbitis*. C. 1. 34.

In the first pers. plur. the simple future appears to be more usual.

Quæram omnium quæ ex parte vis et natura sit, non *videbimus*, hoc autem loco tantum explicemus. C. C. Fin. 3. 37.

Sei de hoc *videbimus*: eneamus modo. C. Att. 13. 7.

So also

Quid sit forti et sapiente homine dignum tu *videbis*.

C. Fam. 4. 12. 4.

De nomine tu *videbis* cum Cispio. C. Att. 13. 32.

2. The imperative mood is used in commands and exhortations, generally from the nature of the meaning in the second person.

The third person is only found in the future tense, and is used almost confined to legal or quasi-legal phraseology.

In prohibitions, with ne, the present is used only in the present tense also in Ling. 4. 3; the future only in legal phraseology. A periphrasis by means of *ne* or *cave* is more common.

(a) Present. Patres conscripi, subvenite mihi mihi, the obrium injuria, nolite pati regnum Numidiae amittere. C. 1. 14.

Continued on p. 259.

Ergo detur aliquid ætati: sit adulescentia liberior: non omnia voluptatibus denegentur: non semper superet vera illa et directa ratio. (C. *Cael.* 18.) *Here non belongs to omnia, semper.*

Quamobrem hic nobis sit exceptus. (C. *Or.* 1. 38.)

Amemus patriam, pareamus senatui, consulamus bonis, præsentis fructus neglegamus, posteritatis gloriæ serviamus; speremus quæ volumus, sed quod acciderit feramus. (C. *Sest.* 68.)

Reliqua magna sunt ac multa, sed posita omnia in vobis: quamquam primum quidque explicemus. (C. *Fam.* 12. 1.)

Meminerimus etiam adversus infimos justitiam esse servandam.

(C. *Off.* 1. 13.)

Injurias fortunæ, quas ferre nequeas, defugiendo relinquo.

1600

(C. *T. D.* 5. 41.)

Isto bono utare, dum adsit: quum absit, ne requiras<sup>1</sup>. (C. *Sen.* 10.)

Quid bellicosus Cantaber, Hirpine Quinti, cogitet, remittas quærere nec trepides in usum poscentis ævi pauca. (Hor. *Od.* 2. 11. 1.)

Molestus ne sis: hæc sunt sicut prædico. (Pl. *Most.* 771.)

Ne attigas puerum istac causa. (Pl. *Bac.* 415.)

Ne transieris Iberum: ne quid rei tibi sit cum Saguntinis; nusquam te vestigio moveris. (L. 21. 44.)

1602

Nihil ignoveris; nihil omnino gratiæ concesseris; misericordia commotus ne sis; in sententia permaneto. (C. *Mur.* 31.)

Ne vos quidem, iudices ii, qui me absolvistis, mortem timueritis.

(C. *T. D.* 1. 41.)

Neve tibi ad solem vergant vineta cadentem, neve inter vitis corylum sere, neve flagella summa pete, &c. (Verg. *G.* 2. 298.)

Quare neque tu me peregrinum posthac dixeris, ne gravius refutere, neque regem, ne deridere. (C. *Sull.* 8.)

Tam moveor quam tu, Luculle, nec me minus hominem quam te putaveris. (C. *Ac.* 2. 46.)

Clausos omnes in Curia accipite, solos, inermes. Nec quicquam raptum aut forte temere egeritis. (L. 23. 3.)

Numquam istuc dixis neque animum induxis tuum. (Pl. *Capt.* 149.)

Non splendeat toga, ne sordeat quidem: non habeamus argentum, sed non putemus frugalitatis indicium argento caruisse.

(Sen. *Ep.* 5, § 3.)

<sup>1</sup> In prohibitions to a definite person the present subjunctive active is found occasionally in comic poets: once in Horace (*S.* 2. 3. 88): once only in Cicero, in an old proverb (*Att.* 9. 18. 'Tu, malum, inquires, actum ne agas'). The present deponent once in Cicero (*Att.* 14. 1). (Malvig. *Opusc.* ii. 105 sqq.)



Sed nunc agite uterque ; id quod rogabo dicite. M. Ubi iubet, regna.  
(Pl. Men. 1105.)

Tibi habet sane istam laudationem Mamertinorum. (C. Verr. 4. 46.)

Dii, regum ultores, adeste. (L. 2. 6.)

Centurio in comitio exclamavit: Signifer, satne signum: hic manebimus optime. (L. 5. 55.)

Suscipe paulisper meas parvas et cum te esse dico, qui sum ego: si facile inveneris, quid dicas, noli ignorare locutioni meae.  
(C. Fam. 3. 12.)

Date frenos impotenti navis et in domito animali, et age hoc ipse modum licentie facuras. (L. 34. 2, § 13.)

Recordamini, aristeum, quoties sacra instaurentur, quia aliquid ex patrio ritu negligentia casuque pretermisum est. (L. 5. 52.)

Tu ne cede malis, sed contra audenter ito. (Verg. A. 6. 35.)

Adi, ne jura: satis credo. (Pl. Pers. 400.)

Ne clama: petito illasce minas) a me facem. (Ter. Ph. 664.)

Ne lacrima atque ista, quid quid est, fac me ut sciam: ne retice, ne verere, crede, inquam, mihi. (Ter. Haut. 84.)

Lx. Vide modo. Ee. Me vide. Lx. Sat habeo: sed quaso etiam vide. (Pl. Merc. 1013.)

Salve. Vale. Have.

(b) *Fuerit.* Quum valesulini tua diligentissime consulueris, tum mi Tiro, consulto navigationi. (C. Fam. 16. 4.)

Illud quidem sic habeto, nisi sanatus animus sit, finem miseriarum nullam fore. (C. T. D. 3. 6.)

Quae si vobis non probabuntur, vestram iniquitatem accusatote, qui ex me ea quaesieritis, quae ego nescirem; meam facilitatem lascivitate, cum vobis, non gravate respondere. (C. Or. 1. 48.)

Quod iubeto, scribito istis. Nam propterea te volo scribere, ut pater cognoscat litteras, quando legas. Scribe. (Pl. Iur. 729.)

Age nunc vincente me, auscultato filio. (Id. 855.)

Si te forte meae gravis uret sarcina chartae, abiecto potius, quam quo perferre iuberis, ciliollas ferus impingas. (Hor. Ep. 1. 13. 6.)

Jam vero quid opus est circumfusione et anfractu, ut sis attendam interpretibus somniorum potius, quam directo dens, supplem nobis consulat. 'haec facito,' 'haec ne feceris,' diceret, idque vitam vigilianti potius quam dormienti daret? (C. Top. 2. 61.)

(b) *In imperfect and pluperfect tenses, of advice applicable to circumstances no longer existing.* 1604

Non ego illi argentum redderem? ME. Non redderes, neque de illo quicquam neque emereres neque venderes, nec qui deterior esset faceres copiam. (Pl. Trin. 134.)

Voconia lex te videlicet delectabat. Imitatus esses ipsum Voco-  
nium, qui lege sua hereditatem ademit nulli. (C. Verr. 1. 42.)

Civem Romanum in crucem egisti. Asservasses hominem, clausum habuisses, dum Panhormo Ræcius veniret: cognosceret hominem, aliquid de summo supplicio remitteres; si ignoraret, tum, &c. (Ib. 5. 65.)

Non triumphum impedire debuit, quem senatus justum esse judicaverat, sed postero die, quam triumphatum esset, nomen deferret et legibus interrogaret. (L. 45. 37.)

Quid facere debuisti? si ut plerique faciunt, frumentum ne emisses, sumpsisses id nummorum. (C. Verr. 3. 84.)

Aut ne poposcisses; ego enim tibi me non offerebam. (C. Att. 2. 1.)

### 3. In quasi-dependence on another verb.

1606

*Primary tenses are used when the principal verb is primary, and secondary, when that is secondary.*

Censeo ad nos Luceriam venias. (Pompeius ap. C. Att. 8. 11 A.)

Abi, nuntia publice patribus, urbem Romanam muniant. (L. 22. 49.)

Sine timidum pro cauto, imbellem pro perito belli vocent.

(L. 22. 39.)

In hæc verba, L. Cæcili, jures postulo. (L. 22. 53.)

Jugurtha oppidanos hortatur, mœnia defendant. (Sall. J. 56.)

Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit: cum vellet, congredederetur.

(Cæsar. G. 1. 36.)

Tusculanis negotium datum, adverterent animos ne quid novi tumultus Lavicis oriretur. (L. 4. 45.)

Audendum atque agendum, non consultandum, ait, in tanto malo esse. Irent secum extemplo armati, qui rempublicam salvam vellent. (L. 22. 53.)

Hesternæ tibi nocte dixeramus cenares hodie, Procille, mecum.

(Mart. 1. 27.)

Omnia fecerit oportet, quæ interdicta et denunciata sunt, priusquam aliquid postulet. (C. Phil. 7. 9.)

Huic vitæ tot tantisque gaudiis refertæ fortuna ipsa cedat necesse est. (C. T. D. 5. 25.)

Fremant omnes licet: dicam quod sentio. (C. Or. 1. 44.)

*Continued on p. 262.*

Tu quidem maeste virtute diligentique esto. (L. 19. 49, § 11.)

Heres Titius esto cernitque in centum diebus proxumis, quibus scies poterisque. Quod si non creveris, ciheres esto.

(*In a will. Gai. 2. 165.*)

Mustum si voles totum annum habere, in amphoram mustum indico, et corbiam oppono: defaultito in pœniam: post xxx diem extincto. Totum annum mustum eris. (Macr. R. R. 129.)

Dorea dante ne arato, frugum ne seriso, sennu ne pascio.

(*Pinn. H. N. 13. § 334.*)

Quoi minor annos xxx natus est eris, nei quis eorum post k. Januaz. secundas in municipio colonia prefectura ii vicinium tui vicinij neve quem aliam machinationem pœnia neve capto neve perito... Quoi adversus ea fecerit, is HS 100 pœnia dare damnus esto, ejusque pecunie quei voles pœnia esto. (Lex Jul. Marc. 23.)

Compare the indicative in § 1545.

9. In *Plautus and Terence faze* (§ 1560) is frequently used with *esse* as an indicative future logically, not grammatically, dependent.

Helleborum potabis faze aliquos viginti dies. (Pl. Men. 959.)

Abi machinam hic efer. Sc. Jam faze hic eris. (Pl. Ml. 403.)

Pr. Nequeo mirari satis, quo ille abire ignavos possit longius, nisi si domum forte ad nos rediit. Pr. Vise, amabo, nam sc. Pr. Jam faze scies. (Ter. Eux. 661.)

Faze haec tantillum dederis verborum mihi. (Pl. Trin. 60.)

Ego faze et operam et vinum perdiderit simul. (Pl. Aut. 570.)

The indicative or imperative is used in some other similar expressions *themselves* in parenthetically. (Compare § 1761.)

Certumst, antiqua recolam et servibo mihi. (Pl. Merc. 540.)

Crede, impetrabo ut aliquos saltem nuptiis prodas dies: interea fiet aliquid, spero. (Ter. Andr. 313.)

Quæso, æquo animo patier. (Pl. Asin. 373.)

Cur non hunc Regem jugulas? Operum hoc, mihi crede, tuarum.

(*Her. S. 1. 7. 25.*)

'Ipse deus simul atque velam me solvet.' Opinor, hoc sentis, 'morier.'

(*Her. Ep. 1. 16. 79.*)

Di boni, quid turbast? ades nostræ viri captans, sena. (Ter. Hæc. 254.)

Ita est: nihil perpetuum, paucæ distantia sunt. (Sen. Dial. 11. 1.)

Continued on p. 262.

Quin etiam Graecis verbis licebit utare, cum voles, si te Latina forte deficient. (C. *Ac.* 1. 7.)

Hæc curata sint fac sis. (Pl. *Amph.* 981.)

Vin te faciam fortunatum? (Pl. *Capt.* 858.)

Dum ille dormit, volo tu prior occupes. (Pl. *Ps.* 921.)

De Menedemo vellem verum fuisset, de regina velim verum sit.

(C. *Att.* 15. 4.)

Nimis velim improbissimo homini malas edentaverint. (Pl. *Ru.* 662.)

Quam mallem vinctos mihi traderet. (L. 22. 49.)

Negas quod oculis video? GR. At ne videas velim. (Pl. *Ru.* 1067.)

Nolo me in tempore hoc videat senex. (Ter. *And.* 819.)

1658

Eculeos aufert. Imprudens huc incidi, judices; emit enim, non abstulit: nollem dixissem. (C. *Verr.* 4. 20.)

Cave putes quicquam homines magis unquam esse miratos. See § 1584. (C. *Att.* 5. 21.)

Mane: cave quoquam ex istoc excessis loco. (Ter. *Andr.* 760.)

#### 4. In interrogative sentences.

1610

Usually a negative answer is expected. In a negative question **non** is used. (These are sometimes called *dubitative questions*.)

##### (a) In principal sentences.

Quid hoc homine faciatis, aut ad quam spem tam importunum animal reservetis? (C. *Verr.* 2. 16.)

Quid enumerem artium multitudinem? (C. *Off.* 2. 4.)

Sed quid ego vetera conquiram, cum mihi liceat uti præsentibus exemplis atque viris? (C. *Or.* 3. 8.)

Mirer, inquit, si vana vestra auctoritas ad plebem est? (L. 3. 21.)

Quid ego facerem? CH. Quid tu faceres, men' rogas? requæreres, rogitares quis esset aut unde esset, qua prosapia.

(Pl. *Merc.* 633.)

Hæc cum viderem, quid agerem, judices? Contenderem contra tribunum plebis privatus armis? Forsitan non nemo dixerit; 'Restitisses, repugnasses, mortem pugnans oppetisses.'

(C. *Sest.* 19. 20.)

Quid tandem me facere decuit, cum Abrupolis fines mei regni usque ad Amphipolim pervastasset? Quiescerem et paterer donec in regiam meam armatus pervenisset? (L. 42. 41.)

Unus furiosus gladiator contra patriam gerit bellum. Huic cedamus? hujus condiciones audiamus? cum hoc pacem fieri posse credamus? (C. *Phil.* 13. 7.)

Continued on p. 264.

4. In the indicative mood a question relates only to a fact. The following classes of questions may be here noted:

(a) Relating to the speaker's present or prospective action; in present tense.

Sed quid ego tam vehementer inveher? Verbo uno repellar. Eni' inquit. (C. Ferr. 4. 4.)

Sed quid ea commemoro, quæ tam, quam agebantur, in ealam laudibus efferebantur? (C. Flac. 51.)

Quid loquor de nobis qui ad laudem et ad decus nati, suscepti, instituti sumus? (C. Fin. 5. 22.)

Etsi quid mi auctor es? Altolone an maneo? Equidem et in libris hæreo, et illum hic excipere nolo. (C. Art. 13. 40.)

Meæ nutriceæ gnatæ video. Quid ago? Adeo, maneo, dum hæc quæ loquitur magis cognosco? (Ter. Ph. 736.)

Stantes plaudabant in re ficta; quid arbitramur in vera factures fuisse? (C. Læl. 7.)

(b) Expressing surprise or indignation; especially, in comic poets, with *satin* (ironical), etiam.

An, dum bestię loquantur, expectamus, hominum consentiente auctoritate contenti non sumus? (C. Dir. 1. 30.)

Sed ego cesso ad Thaidem hanc deducere? (Ter. Eun. 265.)

Verresne habebit domi suæ candelabrum Jovis, e geminis aureque perfectum? (C. Ferr. 4. 32.)

Dedemus ergo Hannibalem? dicet aliquis. (L. 21. 10.)

Satin' abiit, neque quod dixi flocci existumat? (Pl. Most. 76.)

Satin', quicquid est, si quam rem ego agere coæpi, proprium mihi nequit evenire id quod cupio? (Pl. Men. 337.)

Quid nunc? etiam consulis? LE. Quid istie? quando ista res, di bene vortant, spondeo. (Pl. Trin. 572.)

Etiam rides? Itan' lepidum tibi visumst, scelus, nos irridere? (Ter. Eun. 1017.)



Apud exercitum mihi fueris tot annos; forum non attigeris; afueris tam diu; et, cum longo intervallo veneris, cum his, qui in foro habitarent, de dignitate contendas? (C. *Mur.* 9.)

Tu non definias, quo colonias, in quæ loca, quo numero colonorum deduci velis? tu occupes locum, quem idoneum ad vim tuam judicaris? (C. *Rull.* 2. 27.)

An mihi cantando victus non redderet ille caprum?

(Verg. *B.* 3. 21.)

(b) *So also in a dependent sentence.*

1612

Quin tu, quid faciam, impera. (Ter. *Phorm.* 223.)

Cogito, sæviter blanditerne adloquar. (Pl. *Ps.* 1290.)

Non satis Bruto vel tribunis militum constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. (Cæsar. *G.* 3. 14.)

Vos hoc tempore eam potestatem habetis, ut statuatis, utrum nos semper miseri lugeamus, an aliquando per vestram virtutem sapientiamque recreemur. (C. *Mil.* 2.)

Ubi consistamus, non habemus, præter Sex. Pompeium.

(D. Brutus ap. C. *Fam.* 11. 1.)

Extemplo agitabatur quemadmodum ultro inferendo bello avertent ab Italia hostem. (L. 23. 38.)

De pueris quid agam, non habeo. (C. *Att.* 7. 19.)

(c) *The subjunctive with quidni, 'why not?' has a similar meaning, and the whole expression is tantamount to a confident affirmative. 'How can I help, &c.?' i.e. 'of course I, &c.'* 1614

Haben' hominem, amabo? PII. Quid ni habeam? (Ter. *Eun.* 674.)

Et me despexe ad te per impluvium tuum fateor. PE. Quidni fatearis, ego quod viderim? (Pl. *Mil.* 553.)

Cum Maximus Tarentum recepisset, rogavit eum Salinator, ut meminisset opera sua se Tarentum recepisse; 'quidni,' inquit, 'meminerim? numquam enim recepissem, nisi tu perdidisses.'

(C. *Or.* 2. 67.)

Quosdam vero etiam, quos totos imitari oporteat, et fuisse nuper et nunc esse, quidni libenter non modo concesserim, verum etiam contenderim? (Quint. 2. 5. 25.)

[*So frequently with the verb omitted. 'Of course.' Also quippini.* 1616

DE. Hanc igitur mittimus? CH. Quidni? DE. Illa maneat?  
DE. Sic. (Ter. *Ph.* 813.)

MED. Scin' quid facias optumumst; ad me face uti deferatur.  
SE. Itane censes? MED. Quippini? Ibi meo arbitrato potero curare hominem. (Pl. *Men.* 948.)

*Continued on p. 266.*

(c) *Implying an exhortation; especially with etiam, quin (= qui 1613 ne, 'how not?'); e.g. etiam taces? 'will you be silent?' non taces? 'wont you be silent?' quin urges? 'why not press?' in present tense.*

Quid est, Crasse, inquit Julius, imusne sessum? etsi admonitum venimus te, non flagitatum. (C. Or. 3. 5.)

Viden' ut expalluit! datin' isti sellam, ubi assidat, cito et aequalem cum aqua? properatin' ocius? (Pl. Curc. 311.)

Quid edemus nosmet postea? LE. Etiam tu taces? Tibi egon' rationem reddam? (Pl. Trin. 515.)

Nunc quando vis eamus intro. ER. Etiam parasitum manes? ME. Neque ego illum maneo, neque si venerit eum volo intromitti. (Pl. Men. 422.)

Credo, non credet pater. AC. Non taces, stultissime? Credet hercle. (Pl. Merc. 211.)

Quin tu expedis, quid siet quod me per urbem currens quarebas modo? (Ib. 174.)

Quin prius me ad plaris penetravi? (Pl. Trin. 291.)

Quin tu urges occasionem istam et facultatem, qua melior numquam reperietur? (C. Fam. 7. 8.)

Quin, si vigor juventæ inest, conscendimus equos, invisimusque præsentibus nostrarum ingenia? (L. 1. 57.)

Denique quid reliqui habemus præter miseram animam? Quin igitur expergiscimini? (Sall. C. 20.)

'Quidnam tu, hospes, paras?' inquit, 'inceste sacrificium Dianæ facere? Quin tu ante vivo perfunderis flumine? infima valle præfuit Tiberis.' (L. 1. 45.)

[Hence the use of quin (1) with imperative.

16.7

Quin vos mihi fœnus date. Quid hic nugamini? (Pl. Most. 584.)

Sed hoc mihi molestumst. Quin tu uno verbo dic, quid est quod me velis. (Ter. Andr. 45.)

Quin sic attendite, iudices. (C. Mil. 29.)

(2) with indicative, of a startling statement; (so Engl. 'why').

Lubet audire nisi molestumst. SX. Quin discupio dicere. (Pl. Trin. 932.)

Ego vero jam te nec hortor nec rogo ut domum redeas; quin hinc ipse evolare cupio. (C. Fam. 7. 30.)

Nihil ea res animum militaris viri et multos experti casus imminuit; quin contra breve id tyranno gaudium se effecturam affirmabat. (L. 35. 26.)

Legiones novum ducem, novam quærebant rempublicam: quin etiam ausi sunt minari daturos senatui, daturos principi leges. (Vell. 2. 125.)]

Continued on p. 267.

(d) *A question of this class is used in a reply taking up indignantly a speaker's words, especially an exhortation.* (Cf. § 1770.) 1618

Tamen, Simo, audi. ST. Ego audiam? quid audiam, Chremes?  
(Ter. *Andr.* 894.)

PII. Nausistrata, inquam. CII. Non taces? PH. Taceam?  
(Ter. *Pb.* 987.)

Quid ais, Myrrina? heus tibi dico. MY. Mihine, mi vir? PH.  
Vir ego tuos sim? (Ter. *Hec.* 523.)

Tum tu me sine illam vendere. SA. Tun' illam vendas?  
(Pl. *Pers.* 134.)

*Similarly* Ego rus abituram hinc cum tuo me certo decrevi patre.  
PA. Quæso quid istuc consilist? Illius stultitia victa, ex urbe  
tu rus habitatum migres? (Ter. *Hec.* 589.)

5. Rhetorical commands, i.e. *an action supposed and assumed, on, or notwithstanding, which assumption another statement is made.* (Concessive sentences. Compare § 1552.) 1620

*In negative sentences the particle is ne, not non.*

(a) *Frequently with particles, sane, fortasse.* 1622

Vendat ædis vir bonus: pestilentes sint et habeantur salubres; sed  
hoc præter dominum nemo sciat: quæro, si hæc emptoribus  
venditor non dixerit, num injuste fecerit. (C. *Off.* 3. 13.)

Hæc si vobis non probamus, sint falsa sane: invidiosa certe non  
sunt. (C. *Acad.* 2. 32.)

Ne sint in senectute vires: ne postulantur quidem vires a senectute.  
(C. *Sen.* 11.)

Vocate in concilium Græciæ civitates, per quas iter feci; queratur  
unus quilibet militis mei injuriam; non recusabo quin simulato  
sacrificio aliud petisse videar. (L. 42. 42.)

Sed ierit ad bellum, dissenserit non a te solum, verum etiam a  
fratribus: hi te orant tui. (C. *Lig.* 12.)

Emerserit ex peculatus etiam iudicio: ex majestatis quoque iudicio  
evaserit: confringat iste sane vi sua consilia senatoria, evolet  
ex vestra severitate: mihi credite, artioribus apud populum  
Romanum laqueis tenebitur. (C. *Verr.* 1. 5.)

'Malus civis, improbus consul, seditiosus homo Cn. Carbo fuit.'  
Fuerit aliis: tibi quando esse cæpit? (C. *Verr.* 1. 13.)

Nemo is, inquires, unquam fuit. Ne fuerit: ego enim quid desiderem,  
non quid viderim, disputo. (C. *Or.* 29.)

Esto: fecerit, si ita vis, Torquatus propter suas utilitates. Num  
etiam ejus collega, P. Decius, cum in Latinos irruebat, aliquid  
de voluptatibus suis cogitabat? (C. *Fin.* 2. 19.)

*Continued on p. 268.*

(d) *Taking up a speaker's words and questioning the fact.*

1619

(Compare §§ 1691, 1771.)

Non dico (nomen); quasi non nesses, temptatum advenis. Dz. Ego autem tempo? (Ter. Pæ. 388.)

Non pol temerest, quod tu tam times. Ch. Epon' timeo? (It. 990.)

Sed obsecro hercle, salta sic cum palla postea. Mz. Ego saltabo? sanus hercle non es. (Pl. Men. 197.)

Faciam ut verus hodie reperiare Tyndarus. Quid mi abntas? Tr. Tibi ego abnto? (Pl. Capt. 696.)

'Mori' inquit 'filium vis.' Ego te mori volo? immo furor tuus. (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 11. 1.)

5. *The indicative or imperative makes a concession positively clear and expressly; the sentence however need not be a fact, but may be made ironically or for argument's sake (a) with particles sane, quidem, omnino, fortasse.*

Est istuc quidem honestum, verum hoc expedit. (C. Off. 3. 13.)

Sed fac, ut isti volent, animos non remanere post mortem: video nos, si ita sit, privari spe beatoris vite; nihil vero quid affert ista sententia? (C. T. D. 1. 34.)

Dic te, Caesar, de facto Ligarii iudicem esse: taceo, ne hæc quidem conligo, quæ fortasse valerent etiam apud iudicem. (C. Lig. 10.)

Putā ita esse: pro me est. (Sen. N. Q. 2. 55.)

Finge iustum te intulisse bellum: cum feminis ergo agere debueras. (Curt. 4. 10, § 29.)

Oppressus est C. Antonius: esto; habuit quandam ille infamiam suam. (C. Flac. 38.)

Omnino plura me scribere non ita necesse arbitrabar: sed tamen sententiam meam tibi ignotam esse volebam. (C. Fam. 10. 25.)

Id nos fortasse non perfecimus, conati quidem sapissime sumus. (C. Or. 62.)

Speravit, credo, difficilis tibi Alexandria fore exitus propter regionis naturam et fluminis. At eo tempore ipso pecuniam dedit, exercitum aluit, tibi victori ad aciem præsto fuit. (C. Deiot. 9.)

(b) *In the statement of an opponent's objection: frequently introduced by at, et enim, at vero, at fortasse. (The particle, partly concessive, frequently has et quidem, quidem, 'true but,' 'aye but,')*

Cæsar nunquam nisi honorificentissime Pompeium appellat. 'At in ejus persona multa fecit asperine.' Armerum ista et victorie sunt facta, non Cæsaris. (C. Fam. 6. 6.)

At enim eadem Stoici præcipue dicunt, quæ bona isti. Dicunt illi quidem, sed illis vitam beatam compleri negant. (C. T. D. 5. 16.)

At vero Cn. Pompeii voluntatem a me alienabas oratio mea. An ille quemquam plus dilexit? (C. Phil. 2. 15.)

Continued on p. 269.

Verum anceps pugnæ fuerat fortuna. Fuisset: quem metui moritura? Faces in castra tulissem. (Verg. *A.* 4. 603.)

Ex hac nostra paucitate quarta pars militum præsidio impedimentis relictæ erat. Sed fuerimus omnes: parvum hoc tandem esse credimus, quod, &c.? (L. 44. 38.)

Ne æquaveritis Hannibali Philippum nec Carthaginiensibus Macedonas: Pyrrho certe æquabitis. (L. 31. 7.)

Ipse cum tribunus essem, erraverim fortasse, qui me aliquid putavi, sed tamquam essem, abstinui causis agendis. (Plin. *Ep.* 1. 23.)

(b) *With relative clause*<sup>1</sup> like **quam vis, quam volet, &c.**

1624

Quod turpe est, id, quam vis occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest. (C. *Off.* 2. 19.)

Nihil agis, dolor: quam vis sis molestus, nunquam te esse confitebor malum. (C. *T. D.* 2. 25.)

Quam volent, faceti dicaces disertæ sint, alia fori vis est, alia triclinii. (C. *Cæl.* 28.)

Cuicumque particulæ cæli officeretur, quamvis esset procul, mutari lumina putabat. (C. *Or.* 1. 39.)

Gaius vero Gracchus multis dixit sibi in somnis quæsturam petenti Tiberium fratrem visum esse dicere, Quam vellet cunctaretur, tamen eodem sibi leto, quo ipse interisset, esse pereundum. (C. *Div.* 26.)

Quamvis scelerati illi fuissent, sicuti fuerunt pestiferi cives supplicioque digni, tamen &c. (C. *Or.* 1. 53.)

(c) *With modo.*

Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria. (C. *Sen.* 7.)

Brutum apud me fuisse gaudeo, modo et libenter fuerit et sat diu. (C. *Att.* 15. 4.)

Ad vos nunc refero, quem sequar; modo ne quis illud tam ineruditum absurdumque respondeat: 'quem lubet, modo aliquem.' (C. *Ac.* 2. 43.)

Aenent ad bonas artes juventutem adolescentibus quoque, digni sint modo, tanta præmia constituta. (Plin. *Ep.* 2. 7, § 5.)

<sup>1</sup> For the use of the moods with **quamquam**, which is not of itself a relative clause, see § 1697.



At Phalaris, at Apollodorus pœnas sustulit. Multis quidem ante cruciatis et necatis. (C. N. D. 3. 33.)

Aliud esse censet gaudere, aliud non dolere. Et quidem, inquit, vehementer errat. (C. Fin. 2. 3.)

Difficili in loco versor; est enim vis tanta naturæ ut homo nemo velit nisi hominis similis esse. Et quidem formica formicæ.

(C. N. D. 1. 28.)

(c) *The indicatives, licet, licebit, often introduce a concession (the verb dependent being in subjunctive by §§ 1606, 1608).*

Proinde isti licet faciant quos volent consules, tribunos pl.; videbis brevi tempore magnum illum ipsum qui peccavit Catonem.

(C. Att. 2. 9.)

Hanc si qui partem putabit esse orationis, (Hermagoram) sequatur licebit: nobis non placuit. (C. Inv. 1. 51.)

Quam vis licet insectemur istos, metuo ne soli philosophi sint.

(C. T. D. 4. 24.)

(d) *In Lucretius and post-Ciceronian writers (rarely in Livy) quamvis is found with indicative.*

At manet in vita, cui mens animusque remansit: quamvis est circum cæsis lacer undique membris truncus, vivit. (Lucr. 3. 403.)

Non tibi, quamvis infesto animo et minaci perveneras, ingredienti fines ira cecidit? (L. 2. 40.)

Erat inter eos dignitate regia, quamvis carebat nomine. (Nep. 2. 2.)

Quamvis est enim omnis hyperbole ultra fidem, non tamen esse debet ultra modum. (Quint. 8. 6. 73.)

Quamvis intercidit alter, pro se proque Remo, qui mihi restat, erit.

(Ov. F. 2. 485.)

Pollio amat nostram, quam vis est rustica, musam. (Verg. B. 3. 84.)

[In some sentences quamvis clearly qualifies the adjective only, e.g.

Nec auctor quamvis audaci facinori deerat. (L. 2. 54.)

Quamvis ridiculus est, ubi uxor non adest. (Pl. Men. 317.)

Quod commodum est, expectate facinus, quam voltis improbum; vincam tamen expectationem omnium. (C. Verr. 5. 5.)]

(e) *The imperative is used with modo in concessions.*

Modo sis veni huc: invenies infortunium. (Pl. Amph. 286.)

Patiar: sine modo adveniat senex: sine modo venire salvom quem absentem comes. (Pl. Most. 11.)

Quem quidem ego actutum, modo vos absistite, cogam fateri.

(Ov. M. 3. 557.)

Continued on p. 271.

## (D) Final subjunctive.

1628

The subjunctive of purpose is the same as the subjunctive of command, only that it is dependent on relative adjectives and adverbs. The first subdivision (1) contains adjectival sentences: the second (2) sentences introduced by *ut*, '*in order that*,' *ne*, *quo*, *quominus*, *quin*. Such sentences with *ut* or *ne* are very frequent, and sometimes stand in place of a subject or object; sometimes again introduce a special restriction of what is said, or a justification of the mode of saying it. The third subdivision (3) contains sentences of time or condition with *dum*, *dummodo*, *donec*, *priusquam*, *potius quam*, &c.

The sentences classed under this head, like those classed under (C), are distinguished by the use, if a negative is required, of *ne*, not *non*. Some sentences might almost be classed, as far as meaning goes, under the head of consequence (E). Indeed the consecutive subjunctive has arisen from the final subjunctive.

The following are typical instances.

1. Mitto qui dicat.  
Nihil est quod scribam.  
Dignus est qui vincat.
2. (a) Ede ut vivas. Hoc dico, ne fallaris.  
Vide ut hoc statim fiat.  
Non impedio, quominus vivas.  
Nihil obstat, quin vivas.  
(b) Rogo ut edas. Proximum est ut doceam.  
(c) Ita rogo, ut ne properes.  
(d) Timeo ne abeas; timeo ut adsis.  
Vide, ne hoc non sit.  
(e) Hoc nunquam erit, nedum nunc sit.  
(f) Ne longior sim, vale.
3. (a) Exspecta dum veniam.  
(b) Dum recens terror sit, milites mittit.  
(c) Oderint, dum metuant.  
(d) Pugnatum est, donec prælium nox dirimeret.  
(e. 1) Pugnatum est, priusquam ille veniret.  
(e. 2) Depugna potius quam servias.

*Continued on p. 272.*

Indicative, especially in Comparative sentences, and with *dum*.

Some adjectival sentences with the indicative are given merely to contrast with final adjectival sentences.

The most prominent use of *ut* with the indicative is in sentences of comparison (though it is also used as an interrogative, § 1759). Sentences of comparison may be introduced either by adjectives *tantus...quantus*, &c., or by adverbs *tam...quam*, *sic...ut*, *eo...quo*, &c. In many such sentences however the demonstrative correlative is omitted. This is the case in sentences with adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree, and in some colloquial phrases; e.g. *mire quam, sat in ut*, &c.

Sentences with *ne...quidem*, *non modo...sed etiam*, *non dico*, in stating a climax are to be contrasted with certain subjunctival sentences with *ne, nedum*, &c.

The indicative mood with *dum, quamdiu, quoad* is used when the event is regarded as merely, or at least primarily, contemporaneous to, or limiting the time of the event in the principal sentence.

The following are typical instances.

*Mitto eum: qui dicit.*

---

Comparative sentences.

1. *Tantus est, quantus potest esse.*  
*Tam est amicus, quam qui maxime.*
2. *Eo minus hoc feci, quo minus illud audiui.*  
*Plus feci quam ille (fecit).*
3. (a) *Id mirum quantum profuit.*  
(b) *Nimis quam formidabam.*  
(c) *At pol qui dixi melius.*
4. *Satin' ut oblitus fuit?*  
*Vide, ut palpatur.*

---

*Ne nunc quidem hoc est.*  
*Adeo hoc non nunc est.*  
*Hoc, non dico, aliquando fuit, sed nunc est.*

- 
1. (a) *Opperior, dum cognosco.*  
(b) *Dum metuit, fortunas perdidit.*
  2. *Dum lego, ita mihi videtur.*
  3. *Lego donec ille venit.*
  4. *Lego priusquam venit.*

*Continued on p. 273.*

The final subjunctive expresses an action stated, as <sup>1630</sup> a purpose to be carried into effect.

*Present, and (rarely) perfect, tense in sentences dependent on primary tenses. Imperfect, and (rarely) pluperfect, in sentences dependent on secondary tenses.*

*The perfect and pluperfect are used in relation to the results of past actions; i.e. as completed futures subjunctive.*

1. *With relative adjective: (qui = ut is, 'who is to,' 'was to').* <sup>1632</sup> *Such sentences are not commonly negative: in provisoes the negative is ne.*

Misi pro amicitia qui hoc Antonio diceret. (C. Phil. 1. 5.)

Homini natura rationem dedit, qua regerentur animi appetitus.

(C. N. D. 2. 12.)

Ea qui conficeret, Trebonium legatum relinquit. (Cæs. G. 7. 11.)

Quæritur consul, qui dicendo non numquam comprimat tribunicios furores, qui concitatum populum flectat. (C. Mur. 11.)

Non est diu cunctatus Cæsar Augustus, neque enim quærendus erat, quem legeret, sed legendus qui eminebat. (Vell. 2. 103.)

Hæc habui de amicitia quæ dicerem. (C. Læl. 27.)

Scribebat Ælius orationes, quas alii dicerent. (C. Brut. 56.)

Erat autem nihil novi, quod aut scriberem aut ex te quærerem.

(C. Att. 15. 1 b.)

Quid est igitur quod laborem? (Ib. 6. 3.)

Hei mihi, quom nihil est, qui illic homini diminuiam caput.

(Pl. Men. 304.)

Sic adeo digna res est, ubi tu nervos intendas tuos.

(Ter. Eun. 312.)

Plerique rem idoneam, de qua quærat, et homines dignos, quibus cum disseratur, putant. (C. Ac. 2. 6.)

Veniendo huc exercitum egregium populo Romano servastis; erumpendo hinc vosmet ipsos servate: digni estis, qui pauci pluribus opem tuleritis, ipsi nullius auxilio egueritis. (L. 7. 35.)

Nulla videbatur aptior persona, quæ de senectute loqueretur quam Catonis. (C. Læl. 1.)

In eo vidisti multum, quod præfinisti quo ne pluris emerem.

(C. Fam. 7. 2.)

Cautum erat, quo ne plus auri et argenti facti, quo ne plus signati argenti et æris domi haberemus. (L. 34. 6.)

*Continued on p. 274.*

The indicative expresses a fact or simple definition, &c. <sup>1033</sup> without any signification of purpose.

[Such a signification of purpose may be conveyed by the future participle with the indicative (or any other) mood of *sum*. See § 1494.]

Ille in morbum continuo incidit, ex quo non convalescit.

(C. Fam. 13. 29.)

Misi quendam pro amicis: qui hoc Antonio dixit.

Homini natura rationem dedit; qua reguntur animi appetitus.

Panicum bellum, quo nullum majus Romani gessere. (L. 38. 53.)

Unum id bonum est, quo melior animus efficietur. (Sen. Ep. 76. § 17.)

Divinas quidem tibi tunc fortuna deponet, quam tui unde sine querela reddendis receptura est? (Sen. Dial. 7. 21.)

Expressæ sunt ex unius cujusque damno, dolore, incommodo, calamitate, injuria publicæ a prætoris formula, ad quas privata lis accommodatur. (C. Rocc. C. 8.)

Habebo, Q. Fabi, parem, quem das, Hannibalem. (L. 28. 44.)

Scribebat Elius orationes, quas alii dicebant.

Quid est, quod tu me nunc optuere, fureifer? (Pl. Most. 69.)

Liciti sunt usque adeo, quo ad se efficere posse arbitrabantur: supra adjectis Eschris. (C. Ferr. 3. 23.)



2. *With a connective adverb: ut, uti, 'that,' 'in order that,' quo* 1636  
*(usually with a comparative); in negative sentences, ut ne, ne,*  
*and after expressions of hindrance, opposition, &c. quominus and*  
*quin<sup>1</sup>, the latter being used when the principal sentence also is nega-*  
*tive or quasi-negative.*

(a) *General usage.* 1638

Esse oportet, ut vivas; non vivere, ut edas. (Cornif. 4. 28.)

Legibus idcirco omnes servimus, ut liberi esse possimus. (C. Clu. 53.)

'Homines,' inquit, 'emisti, coegisti, parasti.' Quid uti faceret? senatum obsideret? civis indemnatos expelleret? bona diriperet? ædes incenderet? (C. Sest. 39.)

Sine ulla sede vagi dimicassetus: ut quo victores nos reciperemus?  
 (L. 44. 39.)

Utroque tempore ita me gessi, ne tibi pudori, ne regno tuo, ne genti Macedonum essem. (L. 40. 15.)

Accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est, ut metu contineatur audacia: verum tamen hoc ita est utile, ut ne plane inludamur ab accusatoribus. (C. Rosc. Am. 20.)

Danda opera est, ut etiam singulis consulatur, sed ita ut ea res aut prosit, aut certe ne obsit rei publicæ. (C. Off. 2. 21.)

Vide ut istic tibi sit acutus culter probe. (Pl. Mil. 1397.) 1640

Videndum est primum, ne obsit benignitas; deinde ne major benignitas sit quam facultates; tum ut pro dignitate cuique tribuatur. (C. Off. 1. 14.)

Tantum vide ne hoc tempore isti obesse aliquid possit.

(C. Att. 11. 7.)

Ego pol te pro istis factis et dictis, scelus, ulciscar, ut ne impune in nos inluseris. (Ter. Eun. 942.) 1642

(Amator) ne dederit gratis quæ dedit, usque dabit. Sic ne perdidit, non cessat perdere lusor. (Ov. A. A. 1. 454, 452.)

Adnitar, ne frustra vos hanc spem de me conceperitis. (L. 44. 22.)

<sup>1</sup> **Quin**, like **ut**, is also used in consecutive (§§ 1680, 1688) and dependent interrogative (§ 1768) sentences. The following is a summary of the general usage of certain verbs:

Verbs of *forbidding, hindering, opposing*, with or without a negative or its equivalent, may be followed by **ne** or **quominus**, or an infinitive (with or without an accus.);

verbs of *opposing, refraining, neglecting, doubting, abest*, &c. may, if negative or quasi-negative, be followed by **quin**;

**non dubito**, &c. also by an acc. and infinitive;

**dubito** is followed by a dependent interrogative **an**, **an non**.

(Madvig.) *Lat. Gr.* § 375.)

*Continued on p. 276.*

*Comparative sentences may here be noticed: they are introduced by correlative adjectives or adverbs; e.g. tantus...quantus, tam...quam, sic...ut; sometimes the demonstrative is omitted; sometimes the verb of the clause. (Other comparative sentences with ut in § 1707.)* 1635

1. *With adjective or adverb in positive or superlative degree.* 1637

Tanta est apud eos, quanta maxima potest esse, morum studiorumque distantia. (C. *Lael.* 20.)

Emit hortos homo cupidus et locuples tanti quanti Pythius voluit. (C. *Off.* 3. 14.)

Locorum nuda nomina et quanta dabitur brevitate ponentur. (Plin. *H. N.* 3. init.)

Jugurtha quam maximas potest copias armat. (Sall. *J.* 13.)

Quod volebant, non, quam maturato opus erat, naviter expediebant. (L. 24. 23.)

Quam maxime huic vana hæc suspitio erit, tam facillime patris pacem in leges conficiet suas. (Ter. *Haut.* 997.)

Officium esse meum putavi exercitum habere quam proxime hostem (sc. exercitum habere potui). (C. *Att.* 6. 5.)

Dare volt uxorem filio quantum potest. (Pl. *Most.* 758.) 1639

Nemo enim orator tam multa ne in Græco quidem otio scripsit, quam multa sunt nostra. (C. *Or.* 30.)

Verba quam potes ambiguus callidus abde notis. (Ov. *A. A.* 1. 490.)

Tenuit locum tam diu quam ferre potuit laborem. (C. *Brut.* 67.)

Exibit quam sæpe, time. (Tib. 1. 6. 21.)

Satin' istuc mihi exquisitumst fuisse hunc servom in Alide? An. Tam satis est, quam numquam hoc invenies secus. (Pl. *Capt.* 639.)

Non hercle verbis, Parmeno, dici potest tantum, quam re ipsa navigare incommodumst. (Ter. *Hec.* 416.)

Tam enim sum amicus reipublicæ quam qui maxime. (C. *Fam.* 5. 2.) 1641

Præda inde majore quam quanta belli fama fuerat revecta, ludos fecit. (L. 1. 35.)

Non tam ista me sapientiæ fama delectat, quam quod amicitiae nostræ memoriam spero sempiternam fore. (C. *Lael.* 4.)

Grata ea res, ut quæ maxime senatui unquam fuit. (L. 5. 25.)

Domus celebratur ut cum maxime. (C. *Q. Fr.* 2. 4 [6].)

*Compare also*

Omnia, quæ capte urbes patiuntur, passi sumus et cum maxime patimur (i. e. et tum patimur, quum maxime patimur.) (L. 29. 17.)

*Continued on p. 277.*

Verum est quod dicitur, multos modios salis simul edendos esse, ut amicitiae munus expletum sit. (C. *Lael.* 19.)

Quæ omnia huc tendunt, ut audias Isæum vel ideo tantum ut audieris. (Plin. *Ep.* 2. 3, fin.)

Scriptum erat, ut ad ludos omnia pararet neve committeret ut frustra ipse properasset. (C. *Att.* 13. 45.)

Neve hoc impune fuisset, Gorgoneum crinem turpes mutavit in hydros. (Ov. *M.* 4. 798.)

Hic opsistam, ne imprudenti huc ea se subrepsit mihi. (Pl. *Mil.* 333.)

Potin' ut molestus ne sis? (Pl. *Merc.* 779.)

Hoc eo sæpius testificor, ut auctoribus laudandis ineptiarum crimen effugiam. (C. *Or.* 3. 49.)

Sublata etiam erat celebritas virorum ac mulierum, quo lamentatio 1644 minueretur. (C. *Leg.* 2. 26.)

Obducuntur libro aut cortice trunci, quo sint a frigoribus et calioribus tutiores. (C. *N. D.* 2. 47.)

Cæsar cognovit per Afranium stare, quo minus proelio dimicaretur. (Cæs. *C.* 1. 41.)

Neque impedio quominus susceptum negotium gerere possis. (C. *Fam.* 13. 5.)

Non recusabo, quominus omnes mea scripta legant. (C. *Fin.* 1. 3.)

Hanc ego causam, quominus novom consilium capiamus, in primis magnam puto. (Sall. *Cat.* 51.)

Non enim possum quin revortar, quin loquar, quin edisserterem, 1646 cramque ex mærore eximam. (Plaut. *Stich.* 302.)

Non videor mihi sarcire posse ædis meas, quin totæ perpetuæ ruant, cum fundamento perierint, nec quisquam esse auxilio queat. (Pl. *Most.* 146.)

Nil verbi, pereas quin fortiter, addam. (Hor. *S.* 2. 3. 42.)

Vix milites temperavere animis, quin extemplo impetum facerent. (L. 5. 45.)

Romanis non humana ulla neque divina obstant, quin socios, amicos, procul juxta sitos, inopes potentisque trahant, excindant, omniaque non serva et maxume regna hostilia ducant. (Sall. *Mith.* § 17.)

(b) *The subordinate clause is often in place of object or subject to the principal verb.* 164

Verres rogat et orat Dolabellam, ut ad Neronem proficiscatur. (C. *Verr.* 1. 29.)

*Continued on p. 278.*

2. *With adjective or adverb in comparative degree, eo...quod, eo... quo, 'in proportion...as,' quam, 'than.'* (For *priusquam*, see § 1671, *sqq.*)

Hæc eo facilius magnam partem æstatis faciebant, quod nostræ naves tempestatibus detinebantur. (Cæs. G. 3. 12.)

Quo erant suaviores litteræ, eo majorem dolorem ille casus adferebat. (C. Q. F. 3. 1, § 17.)

Quo quisque est sollertior et ingeniosior, hoc docet iracundius et laboriosius. (C. Rosc. Com. 11.)

Quo minus ingenio possum, subsidium mihi diligentiam comparavi. (C. Quint. 1.)

Agricultura eas res, in quibus versatur, nominibus notavit notis: quo magis hoc philosopho faciendum est. (C. Fin. 3. 2.)

Nec dextris magis gladiisque gerebatur res, quam scutis corporibusque ipsis obnixi urgebant. (L. 34. 46.)

Querenti tibi superbius tacuissemus quam vera respondimus. (L. 42. 40.)

Nec nunc quidem viris desidero adolescentis; non plus quam adulescens tauri aut elephantum desiderabam. (C. Sen. 9.)

Antonio, quam est, volo pejor esse. (C. Att. 15. 3.)

Quæ nos pro salute patriæ gessimus, tanto consilio gesta esse cognoscas, ut tibi, multo majori quam Africanus fuit, me, non multo minorem quam Lælium, facile et in re publica et in amicitia adjunctum esse patiari. (C. Fam. 5. 7.)

Tres fratres consortes ex agris profugerunt, quod eis plus frumenti imperabatur, quam quantum exararent. (C. Ferr. 3. 23.)

Longum est, quod pluribus verbis aut sententiis ultra quam satis est producit. (C. Inv. 1. 8.)

T. Livius in contionibus supra quam enarrari potest eloquens. (Quint. 10. 1. 101.)

*Similarly præ quam (Plaut.), 'compared with how;' pro quam, 'in proportion as.'*

Nihil hoc quidemst triginta minæ, præquam alios dapsilis sumptus facit. (Pl. Most. 982.)

Igitur parvissima corpora, pro quam et levissima sunt, ita mobilitate fruuntur. (Lucr. 3. 199.)

(For *perquam*, see § 1649.)

*Continued on p. 279.*

Hoc postulatum de statu is ridiculum videtur; postulant enim non uti ne cogantur statuere. Quid igitur? ut ipsis ne liceat. (Ib. 2. 60.)

Ut mihi ædis aliquas conducat volo, ubi habitet istæc mulier.  
(Pl. *Merc.* 560.)

Servis imperat, ut se ipsum neglegant, filiam defendant.  
(C. *Verr.* 1. 26.)

Decrevit senatus, ut L. Opimius videret, nequid respublica detrimenti caperet. (C. *Cat.* 1. 2.)

Ne quid ferretur ad populum patres tenuere: plebes vicit ut quintum eosdem tribunos crearent. (L. 3. 29.)

De Tirone cura, quæso, quod facis, ut sciam, quid is agat.  
(C. *Att.* 10. 4.)

Altera est res, ut res geras magnas et arduas plenasque periculorum.  
(C. *Off.* 1. 20.)

Justitiæ primum munus est, ut ne cui quis noceat, nisi lacessitus injuria. (Ib. 1. 7.)

Proximum est, ut doceam deorum providentia mundum administrari. (C. *N. D.* 2. 29.)

Magna mehercules causa absolutionis cum ceteris causis hæc est, ne qua insignis huic imperio macula atque ignominia suscipiatur.  
(C. *Font.* 16 [12].)

(c) *In sentences restrictive of a preceding statement.*

ita...ut, cum eo ut, 'with the precaution that...must,' 'provided that;' ita ne, ita ut ne. Compare § 1704.

1650

Accepimus (Cæsar) condiciones sed ita ut removeat præsidia ex iis locis quæ occupavit. (C. *Fam.* 16. 12.)

Scio te omnia facturum, ut nobiscum quam primum sis: sed tamen ita velim ut ne quid properes. (C. *Fam.* 16. 9.)

Ita tamen æquum est me vestra meis armis tutari, ne mea interim nudentur prædiis. (L. 31. 25.)

Atque ita mentitur, sic veris falsa remiscet, primo ne medium, medio ne discrepet imum. (Hor. *A. P.* 151.)

Lanuvini civitas data sacraque sua reddita cum eo ut ædes lucusque Sospitæ Junonis communis Lanuvini municipibus cum populo Romano esset. (L. 8. 14.)

*Somewhat similarly:* Sed quoniam de extis et de fulgoribus satis est disputatum, ostenta restant, ut tota haruspicina sit pertractata. (C. *Div.* 2. 22.)

*Continued on p. 280.*



3. *Some colloquial phrases may perhaps belong to the class of comparative sentences.*

(a) *With quantum, which is either relative or perhaps interrogative; e.g. mirum quantum, § 1760.*

Huic generi orationis adspargentur etiam sales, qui in dicendo nimium quantum valent. (C. Or. 26.)

Vino et lucernis Medus acinaces immane quantum discrepat. (Hor. Od. 1. 27. 5.)

A Pyrenæi promunturio Hispania incipit, angustior non Gallia modo, verum etiam semetipsa, ut diximus, immensum quantum hinc Oceano illinc Hiberico mari complimentibus. (Plin. 4. 20. 34.)

Id mirum quantum profuit ad concordiam civitatis. (L. 2. 1.)

Mirum quam inimicus ibat, ut ego objurgarem. (C. Att. 13. 40.)

O Phædria, incredibilest quantum erum anteo sapientia. (Ter. Ph. 247.)

(b) *With quam qualified by an adverb prefixed. (This usage, e.g. mire quam, is probably the result of attraction for mirum quam: the whole expression being adverbial, each member is made adverbial<sup>1</sup>.) Here perhaps belongs perquam. (For præquam, proquam, see § 1645.)*

Nimis quam formido, ne manifesto hic me opprimat. (Pl. Most. 511.)

Ex amore hic admodum quam sævos est. (Pl. Amph. 541.)

Mire quam illius loci non modo usus, sed etiam cogitatio delectat. (C. Att. 1. 11.)

Nam quod de Pompeio Caninius agit, sane quam refrixit. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 4, § 5.)

Sueclamatum est ei frequenter a militibus Ventidianis, nam suos valde quam paucos habet, sibi aut in Italia pereundum esse aut vincendum. (D. Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 13.)

Haud facile fuit ea quæ objicerentur memoria complecti, pleraque enim oppido quam parva erant. (L. 39. 47.)

Scelestus sacerdotem anum præcipes reppulit propulit perquam indignis modis. (Pl. Rud. 672.)

Sic in illa omni defensione, quod esse in arte positum videbatur, per quam breviter perstrinxi. (C. Or. 2. 49.)

(c) *So in Plautus qui (adv.) is used after pol, edepol, hercle.* 1651

Hercle qui, ut tu prædicas, cavendumst mi aps te irato. (Pl. Ps. 473.)

At pol qui dixti rectius. (Pl. Asin. 823.)

Edepol qui te de isto multi cupiunt nunc mentirier. (Pl. Mil. 779.)

<sup>1</sup> Comp. μετὰ ἰσχυρῶτος θαυμαστοῦ ὄσου, θαυμαστῶς ὡς χαλῶ, &c.

(d) *A thing, about which fear is felt, is expressed by a sentence* <sup>1652</sup>  
*with ut, if it is wished; with ne, if it is dreaded. (In English 'that not' corresponds to ut, 'lest' or 'that' to ne.) Ne non is also used for ut, especially when the principal sentence is negative.*

O puer, ut sis vitalis, metuo, et majorum ne quis amicus frigore te feriat. (Hor. S. 2. 1. 60.)

Rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere se dicebant. (Cæs. G. 1. 39.)

Vereor ne Romam, sic cunctantibus nobis, Hannibali ac Pœnis toties servaverint majores nostri. (L. 22. 14.)

Timeo, ne non impetrem. (C. Att. 9. 6.)

Mi frater, mi frater, tune id veritus es ne te videre noluerim? ego te videre noluerim? immo vero me a te videri nolui.

(C. Q. Fr. 3. 1. § 1.)

Id vero periculum erat ne majestatem nominis Alexandri sustinere non potuerit populus Romanus, et adversus eum nemo ex tot proceribus Romanis vocem liberam missurus fuerit. (L. 9. 18.)

Vidit periculum esse, ne exutum impedimentis exercitum nequicquam incolumem traduxisset. (L. 21. 33.)

Mihi cavitiosus ne nucifrangibula excussit ex malis meis.

(Pl. Bac. 598.)

*Occasionally the expression of fear is omitted:*

<sup>1654</sup>

At enim ne quid captioni mihi sit, si dederim tibi. (Pl. Most. 922.)

Sed ne, dum huic obsequor, vobis molestus sim. (C. Fin. 5. 3.)

*Similarly vide ne non sit, vide ut sit 'Perhaps it is not,' vide ne sit, 'Perhaps it is.' (For another meaning of these expressions see § 1640.)* <sup>1656</sup>

Vide sis ne forte ad merendam quopiam devorteris, atque ibi ne plus quam satis fuerit biberis. (Pl. Most. 966.)

Multa istius modi dicuntur in scholis, sed credere omnia vide ne non sit necesse. (C. Div. 2. 13.)

Erat, si cujusquam, certe tuum nihil præter virtutem in bonis dicere. 'Vide ne magis,' inquam, 'tuum fuerit, cum re idem tibi quod mihi videretur.' (C. Fin. 3. 3.)

Si non sunt Romæ vestri similes feminæ, videndum est ut honeste vos esse possitis. (C. Fam. 14. 14.)

Qua re videant ne hoc sit periniquum et non ferendum.

(C. Man. 22.)

*Continued on p. 282.*

4. *Similar (to the abovenamed uses of quantum, quam, ut 1653 1647—1651) is the use, in the early language, of ut in phrases which may be either relative or interrogative. (Comp. §§ 1763, 1765.)*

(a) *Satin' ut, 'tolerably.'*

*Satin', ut oblitus fui tibi me narravisse? (Pl. Merc. 480.)*

*Satin' ut meminit libertatis? (Pl. Pers. 658.)*

(b) *Vide ut is used to express surprise. It is preceded by hoc 1655 or illud.*

*Hoc sis vide, ut palpatur: nullust, quando occipit, blandior.*  
(Pl. Merc. 167.)

*O illud vide, os ut sibi distorsit carnufex. (Ter. Eun. 670.)*

(For *ut* after *vide* in a reported question, see § 1762.)

(e) *With ne, nedum, 'much less.'*

(This usage arises from the prevention of the occurrence of the greater event being rhetorically regarded as the purpose of the occurrence of the less event.)

Vix in ipsis tectis frigus infirma valetudine vitatur: nedum in mari sit facile abesse ab injuria temporis. (C. Fam. 16. 8.)

Optimis hercule temporibus clarissimi viri vim tribuniciam sustinere non potuerunt: nedum his temporibus sine vestra sapientia salvi esse possimus. (C. Clu. 35.)

Querebantur consules bellicosos ambo viros, qui vel in pace tranquilla bellum excitare possent, nedum in bello respirare civitatem forent passuri. (L. 26. 26.)

Novam inexpertamque tribuniciam potestatem eripuerunt patribus nostris, ne nunc dulcedine semel capti ferant desiderium. (L. 3. 52.)

Quippe secundæ res sapientium animos fatigant, ne illi corruptis moribus victoriæ temperarent. (Sall. Cat. 11.)

Erat enim multo domicilium hujus urbis, cum quidem hæc urbs fuit, aptius humanitati et suavitati tuæ, quam tota Peloponnesus, nedum Patræ. (sc. essent. C. Fam. 7. 28, Wesenberg.)

(f) *Purpose not of the principal action itself, but of the mention of the action; especially, with ne dicam, in suggesting, while declining to make, a stronger statement. The perfect subjunctive is rare till after the Augustan age.* 1660

Ne longior sim, vale. (C. Fam. 15. 19.)

Quando quidem est apud te virtuti honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me, quod minis nequisti, trecenti conjuravimus principes juventutis Romanæ, ut in te hac via grassaremur. (L. 2. 12.)

'Ne nihil actum,' inquit, 'hac legatione censeatis, expiatum est quicquid ex fœdere rupto irarum in nos cœlestium fuit.'

(L. 9. 1.)

Crudelem Castorem, ne dicam sceleratum et impium. (C. Deiot. 1.)

Satis inconsiderati fuit, ne dicam audacis, rem ullam ex illis attingere. (C. Phil. 13. 5.)

Ut frontem ferias, sunt qui etiam Cæsonium putent competitorem fore. (C. Att. 1. 1.)

Ergo ut ad primum illud revertar, sit orator nobis is, qui adcommode ad persuadendum possit dicere. (C. Or. 1. 61.)

Vetera majestas quædam, et, ut sic dixerim, religio commendat.

(Quint. 1. 6. § 1.)

Continued on p. 284.

A *climac* or *anticlimac* may be expressed directly in the indication; viz. *expressedly* by *ne...quidem*, *non modo...sed etiam*, &c., and in *post-Augustan* writers also *quidem* *non*, "so much less".

*Lepido quidem nunquam placeat ex Italia exire; Tullio multo minus.* (C. *Am.* 6. 9.)

*Si igitur non sunt, nihil possunt esse: ita ne miseri quidem sunt.* (C. *F. D.* 1. 7.)

*Hæc igitur optimus quisque non suscipiet rei publicæ causa: ne res publica quidem pro se suscipi velit.* (C. *Cyf.* 1. 45.)

*Pellio omnibus negotiis non interfui solum, sed profui.* (C. *Fam.* 1. 4.)

*Dies autem non modo non leviter lectum hunc, sed etiam vixit.* (C. *Am.* 4. 15, § 2.)

*Recordor hæc me tunc vidisse, cum secundis etiam res nostras, non modo adversas pertinerecedam.* (C. *Fam.* 4. 14.)

*Apothia curam nunquam ne medicari quidem curam, non modo prudenter probam sum.* (C. *Dom.* 2. 55.)

*Hæc totius temporis fortunam nec dedere quidem quidquam satis digne potuit, adeo non est infans spiritus ad irascendum opus.* (C. *Quint.* 12. 11, § 14.)

*Quælibet enim ex his artibus, quarum haberi mentionem in primis libris contrahi solet: adeo non est infans spiritus ad irascendum opus.* (C. *Quint.* 12. 11, § 14.)

*So with non dico, non dicam, of a weaker statement, which the dis- speaker rejects in favour of a stronger one.*

*Incredibile ac simile portendi est, quoniam modo illa tunc multa quam parva, non dico membris sed libris, cinderis.* (C. *Phil.* 2. 27.)

*Nihil est in ea urbe curare hanc rem publicam non dico factum, sed nihil omnino exegitum.* (C. *Am.* 2. 33.)

*An id exploratum cuiquam potest esse, quo modo se hoc habiturum sit corpus, non dico ad annum sed ad vesperum.* (C. *Fam.* 2. 38.)



*Such a sentence with ne is not unfrequently appended to a previous statement. ' (This I say), lest.'*

Senectus est natura loquacior, ne ab omnibus eam vitiis videar vindicare. (C. Sen. 16.)

Mihi quidem eæ veræ videntur opiniones, quæ honestæ, quæ laudabiles, quæ gloriosæ, quæ in senatu, quæ apud populum, quæ in omni cœtu concilioque profitendæ sint, ne id non pudeat sentire, quod pudeat dicere. (C. Fin. 2. 24.)

Scuta si quando conquiruntur a privatis in bello ac tumultu, tamen homines inviti dant, etsi ad salutem communem dari sentiunt; ne quem putetis sine maximo dolore argentum cælatum domo, quod alter eriperet, protulisse. (C. Verr. 4. 23.)

### 3. An event expected and purposed.

1664

(a) *With dum 'until,' rarely donec, quoad; in present and imperfect tenses only. (In English the subjunctive is best expressed by using 'shall,' 'should,' 'can,' 'could;' or by a periphrasis; e.g. dum veniat, veniret, 'to allow of his coming,' 'to enable him to come.)*

Exspectate, dum consul aut dictator fiat, quem privatum viribus et audacia regnantem videtis. (L. 3. 11.)

Exspecta, amabo te, dum Atticum conveniam. (C. Att. 7. 1, § 4.)

Hoc idem aput nos rectius poteris agere, atque ibi sedens, dum is veniat, opperibere. (Plaut. Bac. 47.)

Iratis aut subtrahendi sunt ei, in quos impetum conantur facere, dum se ipsi conligant, aut rogandi orandique sunt, ut, si quam habent ulciscendi vim, differant in tempus aliud, dum defervescat ira. (C. T. D. 4. 36.)

Dum relicuæ naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. (Cæs. G. 4. 23.)

Die insequenti quievire, dum præfectus juventutem Apolloniatium, armaque et urbis vires inspiceret. (L. 24. 40.)

Verginius, dum collegam consuleret, moratus, permittente eo, nocte dictatorem dixit. (L. 4. 21.)

Itaque dum locus comminus pugnandi daretur, æquo animo singulas binis navibus obiciebant et retenta utraque nave diversi pugnabant. (Cæs. Civ. 1. 58.)

Multa bello passus, dum conderet urbem inferretque deos Latio. (Verg. A. 1. 6.)

Non medius fidius mediocri dolore adficiebar, sed usque mihi temperavi, dum perducerem eo rem, ut dignum aliquid vestra expectatione efficerem. (Plancus ap. C. Fam. 10. 7.)

*Continued on p. 286.*

The indicative mood is used with *quam diu*, 'so long as,' *dum*, *donec*<sup>1</sup>, *quo ad*, 'until,' 'whilst,' 'so long as,' of a simple expression of fact. The pluperfect appears not to be used in these sentences (except in § 1491). For *cum*, see § 1717 sqq.

1. 'While,' i. e. 'in the time that;' *dum* with present tense (though qualifying past actions), rarely with other tenses. (The indicative present is usually retained even in clauses dependent on infinitives and subjunctives.)

(a) Of time only. (An event expected is sometimes treated as if it occupied the period of waiting.)

*Dum veniunt amici, solus, filio procul stante, multa secum animo volutans, inambula-vis.* (L. 49. 3.)

*Ego hic tantisper, dum exis, te opperiar foris.* (Pl. *Mos.* 663.)

*Ego in Arcano opperiar, dum ista cognosco.* (C. *Att.* 10. 3.)

*Titire, dum redeo, brevis est via, pasce capellas, et potum pastas age.* (Verg. *B.* 9. 23.)

*Scitis quomodo, dum ex urbe praesidia opperiar, in Galliam proficisci nequiverim.* (Sall. *C.* 58.)

Nullis evidentibus causis obiere, dum calciantur matutino, duo Caesares, praetor et praetura perfunctus dictatoris Caesaris pater: Q. *Emilius Lepidus* jam egrediens, incusso pollice limini cubiculi: C. *Antonius* agressus, cum in senatum iret, offenso pede in comitio: On. *Brutius* *Tamphilus*, cum a puero quaesisset horas: C. *Servilius* *Pansa*, cum staret in foro ad tabernam hora diei secunda in P. fratrem innixus: *Brutius* *Judez*, dum *Valimonium* differri jubet: super omnes C. *Julius* *medicus*, dum inanguis, speculum per oculum trahens: A. *Manlius* *Torquatus*, cum in cena placentam adigeret: L. *Inceius* *medicus*, dum *maisi* potionem hauris: *Appius* *Saufeius*, e balneo reversus, cum *maistum* bibisset ovumque sorberet: &c.

(Plin. *N. H.* 7. §§ 181—183, somewhat abridged.)

*Dum haec Veis agbantur, interim arx Romae Capitoliumque in ingenti periculo fuit.* (L. 5. 47.)

Other instances of present in § 1455.

<sup>1</sup> *Donec* is said never to be used by Caesar or Sallust, and only thrice by Cicero.

Continued on p. 287.

Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum justa muri altitudo expleatur. (Cæs. G. 7. 23.)

Actia pugna te duce per pueros hostili more refertur, donec alterutrum velox victoria fronde coronet. (Hor. Ep. 1. 18. 61.)

Epaminondas exercebatur plurimum currendo et luctando ad eum finem, quoad stans complecti posset atque contendere.

(Nep. 15. 2.)

(b) *Sometimes the subjunctive implies not strictly that an action is purposed, but that it is expected and counted on.* (dum, 'while') 1666

Nihil deinde moratus, rex quattuor millia armatorum, dum recens terror esset, Scotussam misit. (L. 36. 9.)

Interim Romæ principes plebis, jam diu nequicquam imminentes spei majoris honoris, dum foris otium esset, cœtus indicere in domos tribunorum plebis. (L. 4. 25, *where Madvig reads est*¹.)

Illa quidem dum te fugeret per flumina præceps, immanem ante pedes hydum moritura puella servantem ripas alta non vidit in herba. (Verg. G. 4. 457.)

(c) 'So long as' = 'provided that,' 'if only,' dum, dum modo 1668  
(in negative sentences dum ne, dummodo ne), with present or imperfect tenses.

Dum res maneant, verba fingant arbitrato suo. (C. Fin. 5. 29.)

Vox illa dira et abominanda, 'Oderint dum metuant.' Sullano scias sæculo scriptam. Oderint? quid? dum pareant? non. dum probent? non. quid ergo? dum timeant. Sic nec amari quidem vellem. (Sen. Ir. 1. 20.)

Itaque ingeniosi vocentur, ut libet, dum tamen constet contumeliose sic laudari disertum. (Quint. 2. 12. 7.)

Dum ille ne sis, quem ego esse nolo, sis mea causa qui lubet.

(Plaut. Trin. 979.)

Multi omnia recta et honesta neglegunt, dummodo potentiam consequantur. (C. Off. 3. 21.)

Omnia postposui, dummodo præceptis patris parerem.

(Cic. fil. apud C. Fam. 16. 21.)

Hanc levitatem ac jactationem animi neque mirabantur in juvene furioso neque arguebant, dummodo averterent eum ab Romanis. (L. 24. 6.)

¹ The imperfect is found (in the MSS.) in the same sense in L. 1. 40, 'dum averteret'; 2. 47, 'dum...tererent'; 10. 18, 'dum...gererentur'; in all which places Madvig (after Gronovius) reads 'quum'; also in 21. 34, 'dum...cunctaretur,' where he reads 'cunctatur.'

(b) 'While' = 'in consequence of.'

1665

In hac cladis incidimus, dum metui quam cari esse et diligere maluimus.  
(C. Off. 2. 8.)

Ita mulier, dum pauca mancipia retinere vult, fortunas omnes perdidit. (C. Cæcil. 17.)

Vide ne, dum pudet te parum optimatem esse, parum diligenter, quid optimum sit, eligas. (Cæc. ap. C. Fam. 8. 16.)

Verum ego liberius altiusque processi, dum me civitatis morum piget tædetque. (Sall. J. 4.)

Nec arduum videbatur excindere coloniam nullis munimentis septam; quod ducibus nostris parum provisum erat, dum amœnitati prius quam usui consulitur. (Tac. A. 14. 31.)

Arminius canitur adhuc barbaras apud gentes, Romanis haud perinde celebris, dum vetera extollimus recentium incuriosi. (Ib. 2. 88.)

Dum Aristo et Pyrrho in una virtute sic omnia esse voluerunt ut eam rerum selectione expoliarent, virtutem ipsam sustulerunt.  
(C. Fin. 2. 13.)

L. Murena, dum ex honoribus continuis familiæ majorumque suorum unum ascendere gradum dignitatis conatus est, venit in periculum. (C. Mur. 27.)

2. 'While' = 'so long as,' 'all the time that;' dum, donec, quamdiu, quoad. The tense in both clauses is usually the same.

Neque enim, dum eram vobiscum, animum meum videbatis.  
(C. Sen. 22.)

Neque dum vestris viribus restitistis, neque dum auxilia ab Romanis sperastis, pacis unquam apud vos mentionem feci. (L. 21. 13.)

Hoc feci, dum licuit; intermisi, quoad non licuit. (C. Phil. 3. 13.)

Dum Latinæ loquentur litteræ, quercus huic loco non deerit.  
(C. Leg. 1. 1.)

Ut ægroto, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur, sic ego, quoad Pompeius in Italia fuit, sperare non destiti. (C. Att. 9. 10.)

Tuas epistolas cum lego, minus mihi turpis videor, sed tam diu, dum lego. (Ib. 9. 6, § 5.)

Donec armati confertique abibant, peditum labor in persequendo fuit: postquam jactari arma passim fugaque per agros spargi aciem hostium animadversum est, tum equitum turmæ emissæ.  
(L. 6. 13.)

Donec gratus eram tibi, Persarum vigui rege beatior. Donec non alia magis arsisisti, Romana vigui clarior Ilia. (Hor. Od. 3. 9. 1.)

Bibulus se oppido munitissimo tam diu tenuit quamdiu in provincia Parthi fuerunt. (C. Fam. 12. 19.)

Quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives. (C. Cat. 1. 2.)

Continued on p. 289.

Celeriter tibi veniendum censeo, dummodo ne quid hæc festinatio imminuat ejus gloriæ, quam consecuti sumus. (C. Fam. 10. 25.)

Imitami, patres conscripti, turbam inconsultam, dum ego ne imiter tribunos. (L. 3. 21.)

(d) Sometimes (chiefly in Livy and later historians) with donec, 1670 'so long as,' 'until,' the subjunctive is used of facts; where the indicative would have been used in earlier writers. Only in present and imperfect and (rarely) pluperfect tenses. (Comp. §§ 1674, 1716.)

Nihil sane trepidabant elephantī, donec continenti velut ponte agerentur; primus erat pavor, quum, soluta ab ceteris rate, in altum raperentur. Ibi urgentes inter se, cedentibus extremis ab aqua, trepidationis aliquantum edebant, donec quietem ipse timor circumspectantibus aquam fecisset. (L. 21. 28.)

Fontis aqua, media nocte fervida exæstuat, quoque nox propius vergit ad lucem, multum ex nocturno calore decrescit, donec sub ipsum diē ortum adueto tepore languescat. (Curt. 4. 7.)

Trunci quoque et debiles quidam arma non omittebant, donec multo sanguine effuso exanimati procumberent. (Curt. 4. 16. § 17.)

Pugnatum longo agmine et incerto Marte, donec prælium nox dirimeret. (Tac. H. 4. 35.)

Chaucorum gens quamquam incipiat a Frisiis ac partem litoris occupet, omnium quas exposui gentium lateribus optenditur, donec in Chattos usque sinuetur. (Tac. Germ. 35.)

(e) An event expected and its occurrence, or prior occurrence, prevented; with quam (quam non) after (1.) prius, ante, (2.) potius, and the like. When the principal sentence is negative, the occurrence or prior occurrence of the event is not prevented, but secured (rarely, if ever, in perfect tense). 1672

(1.) Hærens in tergo Romanus prius, quam fores portarum objicerentur, velut agmine uno irrumpit. (L. 1. 14.)

Qui homines nefarii antequam de meo adventu audire potuissent, quum tamen abessent aliquot dierum viam, in Macedoniam perrexī. (C. Planc. 41.)

Numidæ prius, quam ex castris subveniretur, sicuti jussi erant, in proximos collis discedunt. (Sall. Jug. 54.)

Sic omne opus prius est perfectum, quam intellexeretur ab Afranio castra muniri. (Cæs. Civ. 1. 41.)

Græci tragœdi cotidie, antequam pronuntient, vocem cubantes sensim excitant. (C. Or. 1. 59.)

Is videlicet antequam veniat in Pontum, litteras ad Cn. Pompeium mittet. (C. Agr. 2. 20.)

Continued on p. 290.



Ipsæ me, quoad quisquam, qui exercitus scribit, idoneum militem iudicabit, nunquam sum excusaturus. (L. 42. 34.)

Hostes populi Romani primum fuimus per nos ipsi, quoad nostræ arma nos tutari poterant. (L. 23. 42.)

3. 'Until': *donec* (*donecum*), *quoad*; *and sometimes* *dum*.

166g

De comitiis, *donec* rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. (L. 23. 31.)

PR. 'Actum,' aiunt 'ne agas.' PR. Non agam? immo haud desinam, *donec* perfecero hoc. (Ter. PR. 419.)

Si resperis, *donecum* ego te jussero, continuo hercle ego te dedam discipulam cruci. (Plaut. Aul. 17.)

Usque eo timui, *donec* ad rejiciendos iudices venimus. (C. Ferr. 1. 6.)

Milo in senatu fuit eo die, quoad senatus dimissus est. (C. Mil. 10.)

Tamen non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nobis nuntiatum erit te id fecisse. (C. Ast. 16. 16. 16.)

Mansit in conditione atque pacto usque ad eum finem, dum iudices rejecti sunt. (C. Ferr. Ast. 1. 6.)

Mihi quidem usque curæ erit, quid agas, dum, quid egeris, sciero.  
(O. Fam. 13. 19.)

4. *With* *quam* *after* *prius*, *ante*, *citius*, &c.: (a) *of a single statement of the subsequent occurrence of one event to another, as a fact.*

Antequam pro L. Murena dicere instituo, pro me ipso pauca dicam.  
(C. Mur. 1.)

Quare, antequam discedis, Othonem, si Romæ est, convenias pervelim.  
(C. Ast. 12. 37.)

Hæc bona, is, qui testamentum fecerat, Heracleio, ante aliquanto quam est mortuus, omnia utenda ac possidenda tradiderat.  
(C. Ferr. 2. 13.)

Neque prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. (Cæs. G. 1. 53.)

Petiliini non ante, quam vires ad standum in muris ferendæque arma deerant, expugnati sunt. (L. 23. 30.)

Non defatigabor ante, quam illorum ancipitis vias rationesque et pro omnibus et contra omnia disputandi percepero. (C. Or. 3. 36.)

Membris utimur prius, quam didicimus, cujus ea causa utilitatis habeamus. (C. Fia. 3. 20.)

*Continued on p. 291.*

Non prius Vindovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum arma uti capiant. (Cæs. G. 3. 18.)

Ad fratrem amicosque ejus non prius destitit mittere, quam pacem cum iis confirmaret. (L. 45. 11.)

Inde ante discessit Antonius, quam illum venisse audisset.

(C. Att. 14. 20.)

[Sometimes (in Livy, &c.) without any accessory notion of purpose. 1674]

Paucis ante diebus, quam Syracusæ caperentur, Otacilius in Africam transmisit. (L. 25. 31.)

Nec ante continuando abstinit Appius magistratu, quam obruerent eum male parta, male gesta, male retenta imperia. (L. 9. 34.)

Aristides interfuit pugnae navali apud Salamina, quæ facta est prius quam poena liberaretur. (Nep. 3. 2.)

Multa mehercule fecit Antonius pridie quam tu illum relinqueres.

(Vell. 2. 83.)]

Labruscæ folia, priusquam decidant, sanguineo colore mutantur.

(Plin. 14, § 37.)

(2.) Zeno Eleates perpersus est omnia potius, quam conscios delendæ tyrannidis indicaret. (C. T. D. 2. 22.) 1676

Hannibalem ego potius traham, quam ille me retineat. (L. 28. 44.)

‘Depugna’ inquis ‘potius quam servias.’ (C. Att. 7. 7.)

Duo nobis opera pro uno relinquunt, ut alia sumamus, alia expetamus, potius quam uno fine utrumque concluderent.

(C. Fin. 4. 14.)

Et si hunc videbo non dare argentum tibi quod dixit, potius quam id non fiat, ego dabo. (Plaut. Pseud. 554.)

Eripiet quivis oculos citius mihi quam te contemptum cassa nuce pauperet. (Hor. S. 2. 5. 35.)

Libentius omnes meas, si modo sunt aliquæ meæ, laudes ad te transfuderim quam aliquam partem exhauserim ex tuis.

(C. Att. 14. 17. A.)

*So with ut also:*

Multi ex plebe, spe amissa, potius quam ut cruciarentur trahendo animam, capitibus obvolutis se in Tiberim præcipitaverunt.

(L. 4. 12.)

Tum ille nihil sibi longius fuisse, quam ut me videret.

(C. Fam. 11. 27.)

*Continued on p. 292.*

Citius vitam veniamque Cæsar promisit, quam illis, ut ea precarentur, persuasum est. (Vell. 2. 85.)

Inde ante profectus est Antonius, quam ego eum venisse cognovi.  
(C. Att. 15. 1.)

Compare *Intra triduum, quam oppugnare cœperat, receptam (urbem)* 1673  
ex hostibus, colonis restituit. (L. 41. 16.)

*Compare also § 1645. For postquam, &c. see §§ 1471, 1475, 1491.*

(b) *Occasionally the indicative is found, even though the occurrence denoted is a matter to be prevented.* 1675

Omnia experiri certumst, priusquam pereo. (Ter. Andr. 311.)

Sed, me dius fidius, multo citius meam salutem pro te abjecero, quam  
Cn. Plancii salutem tradidero contentioni tuæ. (C. Planc. 33.)

Infelicem linguam bonorum exercete convicio, hiscite, commordete:  
citius multo frangetis dentes quam inprimetis. (Sen. Dial. 7. 20.)

Antequam opprimit lux majoraque hostium agmina obsæpiunt iter,  
per hos, qui inordinati obstrepunt portis, erumpamus. (L. 22. 50.)

(c) *The same simple connection of like expressions is found in the infinitive, participle, &c.* 1677

Addit Pompeius se prius occisum iri a Clodio quam me violatum iri.  
(C. Att. 2. 20.)

Doleo te sapientia præditum prope singulari non tuis bonis delectari  
potius quam alienis malis laborare. (C. Fam. 4. 3.)

Dicit debere eos Italiæ totius auctoritatem sequi potius quam unius  
hominis voluntati obtemperare. (Cæs. C. 1. 35.)

Nonne tibi adfirmavi quidvis me potius perpessurum quam ex Italia  
ad bellum civile exiturum. (C. Fam. 2. 16, § 3.)

Constituunt illo potius utendum consilio quam aut deditiois aut pacis  
subeundam condicionem. (Cæs. G. 7. 73.)

## CHAPTER XXII.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD TO EXPRESS  
*CAUSATION*: with contrasted use of Indicative.

## (E) Consecutive subjunctive.

Sentences expressing a consequence greatly resemble those expressing a purpose. *Consecutive* sentences are introduced, as *final* sentences are, by *qui*, *ut*, *quin*. But if a negative is required *non*, not *ne*, is used. The subjunctive in these sentences in no way implies the non-existence of the action, but simply that the principal and subordinate clauses are related as cause (real or possible) and effect.

The first subdivision contains adjectival sentences, and in some of these *quin* is found, as if for *qui non*, and *cum* for *quo tempore*.

The second division contains what are properly adverbial sentences, but which sometimes supply the place of a subject or object to the principal verb; sometimes imply a special restriction of the principal sentence; sometimes are employed in making a concession.

The following are typical instances.

1. (a) *Is sum, qui illud faciam.*

(b) *Nemo est, qui non cernat.*

(c) *Dicit quod intellegam.*

(d) *Unus, quod sciam, hoc dicit.*

2. (a) *Non is sum, ut me periculum deterreat.*

*Nunquam scripsi litteras, quin ad te scripserim.*

(b) *Eo fit, ut litteras scripserim.*

(c) *Ita laudo eum, ut non pertimescam.*

(d) *Ut eum laudaverim, non pertimui.*

(e) *Ego ut istum pertimescam?*

*Continued on p. 294.*

Indicative with relatives; also with *quod, ut.*

The usages of the indicative here contrasted with the *consecutio adverbii* subjunctive are (1 a, b, c) simple manner adverb relative sentences; and others (d, e) which are used to express a circumstance upon the principal sentence. These have not unfrequently double relatives, *e.g.* *quisquis* or *quicumque*; where the indicative is especially noticeable, because in English we use the so-called subjunctive.

(2) A consequence is sometimes expressed in the indicative, though the fact that it is a consequence is not marked by the mood.

(3) In contrast to the sentences with *ut*, forming the subject or object of the principal verb, are phrased sentences occupying a similar position but introduced by *quod*, and expressing mere facts. Sometimes also they are in apposition to oblique cases.

(4) Facts are also frequently stated in the indicative with *ut*.

The following are typical instances:

1. (a) *Ego sum qui illud feci.*  
 (b) *Multi sunt qui cernunt.*  
 (c) *Dixit quod intellego.*  
 (d) *Quod ad me attinet, nihil non bene facisti.*  
 (e) *Quicquid id est, timeo Danaos.*
2. *Ita cum non laudo, etiam vitupero.*
3. *Quod cum nunquam vidi, mihi pergratum est.*
4. (a) *Ut dixisti, ita feci.*  
 (b) *Prout res postulat, litteras expecto.*  
 (c) *Ut eum laudavi, ita non persequor.*  
 (d) *Sit Eamius sane, ut est, perfectior.*  
 (e) *Sicut eram, fugio sine vestibus.*  
 (f) *Ita vivam, ut hominem odi.*

*Continued on p. 295.*



The consecutive subjunctive expresses an action viewed as characteristic of persons or things, or as the natural result of other actions or of qualities.

*For the distinctive use of tenses, see § 1524.*

1. *With relative adjective*, e.g. *qui*=*ut is*, 'so that he,' 1680  
'such that he,' 'the kind of person to,' 'such persons as:' in negative sentences *qui non*; or, if the principal sentence is negative, or quasi-negative, *quin* (or *qui non*<sup>1</sup>). Also *cum*=*quo tempore*.

*Especially frequent* (a) after demonstratives (*is*, *talis*, *tantus*, &c.) or adjectives of quality; (b) after assertions of existence or non-existence (*est qui*, *est cum*, *est quod*, &c.); (c) occasionally without any such introduction.

(a) *Innocentia est adfectio talis animi, quæ noceat nemini.* 1682  
(*C. T. D. 3. 8.*)

*Quicquid ejusmodi est, in quo non possint plures excellere, in eo fit plerumque tanta contentio, ut difficillimum sit servare sanctam societatem.* (*C. Off. 1. 8.*)

*Ego is sum, qui nihil unquam mea potius quam meorum civium causa fecerim.* (*C. Fam. 5. 21.*)

*Campani majora in defectione deliquerant, quam quibus ignosci posset.* (*L. 26. 12.*)

*Hæc est una contentio, quæ adhuc permanserit.* (*C. Ac. 2. 24.*)

*Solus es, C. Cæsar, cujus in victoria ceciderit nemo nisi armatus.*  
(*C. Deiot. 12.*)

*Præceps amentia ferebare, qui te existimares avaritiæ volnera crudelitatis remediis posse sanare.* (*C. Verr. 5. 46.*)

*O fortunate adulescens, qui tuæ virtutis Homerum præconem inveneris.* (*C. Arch. 10.*)

*Me miserum, qui non adfuerim.* (*C. Fam. 3. 10.*)

*Erit illud profecto tempus, cum tu fortissimi viri magnitudinem 1684  
animi desideres.* (*C. Mil. 26.*)

*In id sæculum Romuli cecidit ætas, cum jam plena Græcia poetarum et musicorum esset.* (*C. R. P. 2. 10.*)

*Profectus est id temporis cum jam Clodius, si quidem eo die Romam venturus erat, redire potuisset.* (*C. Mil. 10.*)

<sup>1</sup> *Quin* is used for *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*...*non*, nom. case, rarely for any other case. In other cases either *quin*...*eum*, or *quem*...*non* is used.

The indicative is used for simple definitions of existing persons or things or classes (qui, 'who,' 'whoever,' cum, 'at which time').

After such expressions as sunt qui, the indicative is unusual (except in the earlier writers and poets), unless an adjective of number or definition be added, as multi sunt qui.

Sp. Thorius satis valuit in populari genere dicendi, is, qui agrum publicum vitiosa et inutili lege vectigali levavit. (C. Brut. 36.)

Epicurus non satis politus est iis artibus, quas qui tenent, eruditi appellantur. (C. Fin. 1. 27.)

Etenim si is qui non defendit injuriam neque propulsat, cum potest, injuste facit, ut in primo libro disserui, qualis habendus est is, qui non modo non repellit sed etiam adjuvat injuriam?  
(C. Off. 3. 18.)

Virtus est una altissimis defixa radicibus, quæ nunquam vi ulla labefactari potest. (Ib. 4. 5.)

Verum ego seditiosus, uti Sulla ait, qui præmia turbaram queror, et bellum cupiens, qui jura pacis repeto. (Sall. Lep. 16.)

Fortunatus illius exitus, qui ea non vidit, quum fierent, quæ prævidit futura. (C. Brut. 96.)

Nunquam, inquit Cornelia, non felicem me dicam, quæ Gracchos peperit. (Sen. Dial. 6. 16, § 3.)

Longum illud tempus cum non ero, magis me movet, quam hoc exitum. (C. Att. 12. 18.)

Sententiam meam tu facillime perspicere potuisti jam ab illo tempore, cum in Cumanum mihi obviam venisti. (C. Fam. 2. 16.)

Quid autem agebatur, nisi ne deleri et everti rempublicam funditus velles, cum te neque principes civitatis rogando, neque frequens senatus agendo, de vendita atque addicta sententia movere potuit.  
(C. Phil. 2. 21.)

Continued on p. 297.

- (b) Inventus est scriba quidam, qui cornicum oculos confixerit. 1686  
(C. *Mur.* 11.)
- Tu enim repertu's Philocratem qui superes veriverbio. AR. Pol,  
ego ut rem video, tu inventu's vera vanitudine qui convincas.  
(Pl. *Capt.* 568.)
- Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem.  
(C. *T. D.* 1. 9.)
- Est quatenus amicitiae dari venia possit. (C. *Lael.* 17.)
- Fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent.  
(Cæsar. *G.* 6. 24.)
- Quid istuc est, mi vir, negoti, quod tu tam subito domo abeas?  
AMPH. Edepol haut quod tui me neque domi distædeat.  
(Pl. *Amph.* 502.)
- Tu si animum vicisti potius quam animus te, est quod gaudeas.  
(Pl. *Trin.* 310.)
- Quid Hannibal fecit hostiliter, quod hic non aut fecerit, aut faciat,  
aut moliatur et cogitet? (C. *Phil.* 5. 9.)
- Nihil est quod ceterorum res minus commode gestas proferas.  
(C. *Verr.* 5. 50.)
- Injussu populi nego quicquam sanciri posse, quod populum teneat.  
(L. 9. 9.)
- Quotus igitur est quisque qui somniis pareat, qui intellegat, qui  
meminerit? (C. *Div.* 2. 60.)
- Nec quisquam rex Persarum potest esse, qui non ante Magorum  
disciplinam scientiamque perceperit. (C. *Div.* 1. 41.)
- Nego in Sicilia tota ullum argenteum vas fuisse, quin \* Verres conqui- 1688  
sierit, inspexerit, quod placitum sit, abstulerit. (C. *Verr.* 4. 1.)
- In castello nemo fuit omnium militum, quin vulneraretur.  
(Cæsar. *G.* 3. 53.)
- Quis tam fuit illo tempore ferreus, qui non illorum ætate nobilitate  
miseria commoveretur? ecquis fuit quin lacrymaret?  
(C. *Verr.* 5. 46.)
- Nemo Lilybæi fuit quin viderit, nemo in Sicilia quin audierit.  
(Ib. 5. 53.)
- Nullust Ephesi, quin sciat. (Pl. *Bac.* 336.)
- Quis est, quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus? (C. *Ac.* 2. 7.)

Sunt multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiantur. (C. Off. 1. 14.) 1687

Sunt (trans deserta Africæ populi) quibus ante adventum Eudoxi adeo ignotus ignis fuit, ut amplecti etiam flammæ et ardentia sinu abdere, donec noceret, maxime libuerit. (Mela 3, § 92.)

Tempus erit, quo vos speculum vidisse pigebit. (Ov. Med. form. 47.)

Multi anni sunt, cum M. Attius in meo ære est, et a me diligitur propter summam suam humanitatem. (C. Fam. 15. 14.)

Sed incidunt sæpe tempora, cum ea, quæ maxime videntur digna esse justo homine, commutantur fiuntque contraria. (C. Off. 1. 10.)

Est cum exornatio prætermittenda est. (Corn. 2. 19.)

Fuit cum hoc dici poterat: 'Patricius enim eras et a liberatoribus patriæ ortus:' nunc consulatus non generis, ut ante, sed virtutis præmium. (L. 7. 32.)

Memini, cum mihi desipere videbare, quod cum istis potius viveres quam nobiscum. (C. Fam. 7. 28.)

Nam est quod me transire ad forum jam oportet. (Ter. Hec. 273.)

Quicquam bonum est, quod non eum, qui id possidet, meliorem facit? 1689  
(C. Par. 1. 3.)

Quis est qui moram mi occupato molestam optulit? (Pl. Ps. 246.)

Mihi liber esse non videtur, qui non aliquando nihil agit. (C. Or. 2. 6.)

[\* For quin with subjunctive in final clauses see §§ 1636 (and note), 1646; in dependent questions, § 1768.

For quin with indicative in direct questions see § 1615, with indicative in statements and with imperative, § 1617.]

(c) Legati qui repente aliquo mitterentur, singula jumenta per op- 1690  
pida, iter qua faciundum erat, imperabant. (L. 42. 1.)

Octo hominum millia tenebat Hannibal, non quos in acie cepisset,  
aut qui periculo mortis diffugissent, sed qui relictī in castris  
fuissent a Paulo et a Varrone consulibus. (C. Off. 3. 32.)

Iste philosophus et complectitur verbis quod volt, et dicit plane  
quod intellegam. (C. Fin. 1. 5.)

At ille nescio qui, qui in scholis nominari solet, mille et octoginta  
stadia quod abesset videbat. (C. Ac. 2. 25.)

L. Pinarius erat vir acer et qui plus in eo, ne posset decipi, quam in  
fide Siculorum reponeret. (L. 24. 37.)

Et quidem sæpe quærimus verbum Latinum, par Græco, et quod  
idem valeat: hic nihil fuit quod quæreremus. (C. Fin. 2. 4.)

In enodandis nominibus, vos Stoici, quod miserandum sit, laboratis.  
(C. N. D. 3. 24.)

(d) *In relative sentences, restricting (e.g. by way of proviso) 1692*  
*a general assertion; especially with qui quidem, qui modo.*

Ex antiquissimis philosophis Xenophanes unus, qui deos esse diceret,  
divinationem funditus sustulit. (C. Div. 1. 3.)

Refertæ sunt orationes amplius centum quinquaginta, quas quidem  
adhuc invenerim et legerim, et verbis et rebus illustribus.  
(C. Brut. 17.)

Omnium quidem oratorum, quos quidem ego cognoverim, acutis-  
simum judico Q. Sertorium. (Ib. 48.)

Servus est nemo, qui modo tolerabili condicione sit servitutis, qui  
non audaciam civium perhorrescat. (C. Cat. 4. 8.)

Primi, qua modo præirent duces, per præaltas fluvii voragines,  
hausti pæne limo, tamen signa sequebantur. (L. 22. 2.)

Castris, nisi quantum usus necessarii cogerent, tenebatur miles. 1694  
(L. 22. 12.)

Epicurus se unus, quod sciam, sapientem profiteri est ausus.  
(C. Fin. 2. 3.)

Peto igitur abs te, ut omnibus rebus, quod sine molestia tua facere  
possis, ei commodas. (C. Fam. 13. 35.)

Tu, quod tuo commodo fiat, quam primum velim venias. (Ib. 4. 2.)

Quod litteris exstet, Pherecydes Syrius primus hanc sententiam  
dixit. (C. T. D. 1. 16.)



Necesse est multos timeat, quem multi timent.

1691

(Laber. ap. Sen. Ir. 2. 11.)

Quem per arbitrum circumvenire non posses, ejus de ea re proprium non erat judicium, hunc per judicem condemnabis, ejus de ea re nullum est arbitrium? (C. Rosc. C. 9.)

Si alia sentit, alia loquitur, numquam intellegam quid sentiat, sed plane dicit, quod intellegit. (C. Fin. 2. 7. Madv.)

Quid ego deliqui? ΠΗ. Rogas? Quine arrabonem a me accepisti ob mulierem et eam hinc avexti? (Plaut. Rud. 860.)

Illud mihi argentum rursum jube rescribi, Phormio? ΠΗ. Quodne ego discipuli porro illis, quibus debui? (Ter. Ph. 922.)

Ne quo nomine quidem appellare vos debeam, scio. Cives? qui a patria vestra descistis. An milites? qui imperium auspiciumque abnuistis, sacramenti religionem rupistis. (L. 28. 27.)

Est igitur hæc, judices, non scripta sed nata lex, quam non didicimus, accepimus, legimus, verum ex natura ipsa adripuimus, hausimus, expressimus, ad quam non docti, sed facti, non instituti, sed imbuti sumus. (C. Mil. 4.)

*In the indicative a limitation of the principal sentence by a relative clause is stated without assumption, as a description of existing persons, facts, &c.* 1633

(a) *With simple relative; sometimes with quidem, modo added.*

Catonem vero quis nostrorum oratorum, qui quidem nunc sunt, legit? (C. Brut. 17.)

Non igitur adhuc, quantum quidem in te est, Balbe, intellego deos esse; quos equidem credo esse, sed nihil docent Stoici. (C. N. D. 3. 7.)

Tum jam non unus manipulus, sed pro se quisque miles, qui modo assequi agmen fugientium elephantorum poterat, pila conjicere. (L. 27. 14.)

Quis ignorat, qui modo umquam mediocriter res istas scire curavit, quin tria Græcorum genera sint. (C. Flac. 27.)

Erus, quantum audio, uxore excidit. (Ter. Andr. 423.)

1695

Alio loco, ut se tota res habeat, quod ad eam civitatem attinet, demonstrabitur. (C. Verr. 2. 5.)

Quia me meamque rem, quod in te uno fuit, delaceravisti.

(Pl. Capt. 666.)

Quæ tibi mandavi, velim, ut scribis, cures, quod sine tua molestia facere poteris. (C. Att. 1. 5. *So also in 1. 4, but usually subjunctive.*)

Censores causas stipendiis missorum cognoscebant, et ejus nondum justa missio visa esset, ita jusjurandum adigebant: 'Ex tui animi sententia, tu ex edicto C. Claudii, T. Semproni censorum in provinciam Macedoniam redibis, quod sine dolo malo facere poteris.' (L. 43. 16.)

*Continued on p. 501.*

2. *With a connective adverb: ut (also in Plaut. and Lucr., 1696 but rarely, ut qui adv.); in negative sentences ut non, 'so that...is not;' or, if the principal sentence is negative, or quasi-negative, quin.*

(a) Non is es, Catilina, ut te pudor umquam a turpitudine revocaret. (C. Cat. 1. 9.)

Reliquos ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. (Cæs. G. 4. 12.)

Hanc orationem habuit tanta constantia vocis atque vultus, ut non ex vita sed ex domo in domum videretur migrare. (Nep. 25. 21.)

Multis gravibusque vulneribus confectus, ut jam se sustinere non posset. (Caes. G. 2. 25.)

Tantus terror pavorque omnes occupavit, ut non modo alius quisquam arma caperet aut castris pellere hostem conaretur, sed etiam ipse rex...ad flumen navesque perfugerit. (L. 24. 40.)

Adeo turbati erant dextræ alæ pedites equitesque, ut quosdam consul manu ipse repperderit et aversos in hostem verterit.

(L. 34. 14.)

Tormentis quoque quum laceraretur, eo fuit habitu oris, ut superante lætitia dolores ridentis etiam speciem præbuerit.

(L. 21. 2.)

Ea est causa, ut veteres cloacæ nunc privata passim subeant tecta.

(L. 5. 55.)

Id quidem sic susceptum est mihi, ut nihil sim habiturus antiquius.

(C. Att. 15. 2.)

Ita magnæ utrimque copię, ita paratæ ad depugnandum esse dicuntur, ut, utercumque vicerit, non sit mirum futurum.

(C. Fam. 6. 4.)

Ain', verbero, eum morbum mi esse, ut qui med opus sit insputarier? (Pl. Capt. 550.)

Nullast tam facilis res, quin difficilis siet, quam invitus facias.

1698

(Ter. Haut. 805.)

Numquam tam male est Siculis, quin aliquid facete et commode dicant. (C. Verr. 4. 43.)

Litteras ad te numquam habui cui darem, quin dederim.

(C. Fam. 12. 19.)

Nunquam unum intermittit diem, quin semper veniat.

(Ter. Ad. 293.)

Treviri totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent. (Cæs. G. 5. 55.)

*Continued on p. 302.*

(b) *With doubled forms of relative, and those with cunque attached, e. g. quisquis, utut, quamquam, quicunque; also uter.* 1697

Sed quoquo modo illud se habet, hæc querella vestra nihil valet.

(C. Lig. 7.)

Stet hæc urbs præclara mihiq; patria carissima, quoquo modo erit merita de me. (C. Mil. 34.)

Bello Punico, quicquid potuit Capua, potuit ipsa per se. (C. Agr. 1. 7.)

Quidquid id est, timeo Danaos et dona ferentis. (Verg. A. 2. 49.)

Hostem qui feriet, mihi erit Karthaginiensis, quisquis erit.

(Enn. ap. C. Balb. 22.)

Hoc quidem præceptum, cujuscumque est, ad tollendam amicitiam valet. (C. Læl. 16.)

Deiotari copias, quantæcunque sunt, nostras esse duco.

(C. Fam. 15. 1.)

Potest omnino hoc esse falsum, potest verum, sed, utrum est, non est mirabile. (C. Div. 2. 68.)

Utrum ostendere potest, vincat necesse est. (C. Tull. 11.)

Nam, utut erant alia, illi certe, quæ nunc tibi domist, consuleres.

(Ter. Ph. 468.)

Utcunque ferent ea facta minores, vincet amor patriæ.

(Verg. A. 6. 823.)

Romani, quamquam itinere et prælio fessi erant, tamen Metello instructi intentique obviam procedunt. (Sall. J. 53.)

Quamquam in utroque vestrum summum esse ingenium studiumque perspexi, tamen hæc, quæ sunt in specie posita, in te, Sulpici, divina sunt. (C. Or. 1. 29.)

[But quamquam in post-Ciceronian writers is often found with subjunctive: e. g.

Nec præteribo, quamquam nonnullis leve visum iri putem, cum in primis lautus esset eques Romanus, non amplius quam terna milia peræque in singulos menses ex ephemeride eum expensum sumptui ferre solitum. (Nep. 25. 13.)

Quamquam fortuna vel industria plerique pecuniosam ad senectam pervenirent, mansit tamen prior animus. (Tac. A. 3. 55.)]

*Instead of a consecutive sentence with ut, the consequence is sometimes stated absolutely in the indicative.* 1699

Ita tigna umide hæc putent, non videor mihi sarcire posse ædis meas. (Pl. Most. 146.)

Hæc in vita tantum abest ut voluptates consecantur, etiam curas sollicitudines vigilias perferunt. (C. Fin. 5. 20.)

Tantum abfuit ut inflammares nostros animos: somnum isto loco vix tenebamus. (C. Brut. 80.)

(b) *The subordinate clause is often in place of subject or object to the principal sentence.* 1700

Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut usque eo difficiles ac morosissimi, ut nobis non satis faciat ipse Demosthenes. (C. Or. 29.)

Mos est hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere.  
(C. Brut. 21.)

Sæpe fit, ut ii, qui debent, non respondeant ad tempus.  
(C. Att. 16. 2.)

Casu accidit, ut id, quod Romæ audierat, primus nuntiaret.  
(C. Rosc. Am. 34.)

Nihil est in dicendo, Catule, majus, quam ut faveat oratori is qui audiet. (C. Or. 2. 42.)

Fuit hoc in M. Crasso, ut existimari vellet nostrorum hominum in omni genere prudentiam Græcis anteferre. (C. Or. 2. 1.)

Catilinæ in magnis catervis amicorum si fuit etiam Cælius, magis est ut ipse moleste ferat errasse se, quam ut istius amicitiae crimen reformidet. (C. Cæl. 6.)

Titiones et alia ligna cocta ne fumum faciant, utrum ligno an carboni an suo generi adnumerabimus? et magis est ut proprium genus habeatur. (Ulp. Dig. 32. 55, § 7.)

Ex quo efficitur, non ut voluptas ne sit voluptas, sed ut voluptas non sit summum bonum. (C. Fin. 2. 8.)

Ne deus quidem potest facere, ut qui vixit non<sup>1</sup> vixerit, qui honores gessit non gesserit, ut bis dena viginti non sint.  
(Plin. H. N. 2. 7, § 27.)

Fieri potest, ut recte quis sentiat, et id, quod sentit, polite eloqui non possit. (C. T. D. 1. 3.)

Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accedebat etiam ut cæcus esset.  
(C. Sen. 6.)

Huc accedit ut qui debeat ad nilum jam rerum summa reverti.  
(Lucr. 1. 755.)

Ubi Varus restitit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quæsit, Fabius humerum apertum gladio appetit, paulumque afuit, quin Varum interficeret. (Cæs. G. 2. 35.) 1702

Libertatis inimicos tantum abest ut ornem, ut effici non possit, quin eos tam oderim quam rempublicam diligo.  
(C. Phil. 11. 14.)

Facere non possum, quin cotidie litteras ad te mittam, ut tuas accipiam. (C. Att. 12. 27.)

<sup>1</sup> Ne...admiretur, efficit (Sen. Dial. 6. 13).

*Subordinate sentences denoting a fact, and themselves forming, or placed in apposition to, the subject or object of a verb (except a verb of feeling or saying, cf. § 1351) are often put in the indicative mood with quod. (For other sentences with quod see §§ 1745, 1749.)*

Hæc res mihi curæst, quidnam hoc sit negoti, quod filia repente expetit me, ad se ut irem. (Pl. Men. 762.)

Accidit perincommode, quod eum nusquam vidisti. (C. Att. 1. 17.)

Nunc me una consolatio sustentat, quod tibi, T. Anni, nullum a me amoris, nullam pietatis officium deficit. (C. Mil. 36.)

Te nec quod dies exit censuræ, nec quod colloca magistratu abiit, nec lex, nec pudor, coercet. (L. 9. 34.)

Eumeni inter Macedonas viventi multum detraxit, quod alienæ erat civitatis. (Nep. 18. 1.)

Nec vero hæc solum admirabilia, sed nihil majus, quam quod ita stabilis est mundus atque ita coheret ad permanendum, ut nihil ne excogitari quidem possit aptius. (C. N. D. 2. 45.)

Prætereo quod illam sibi domum sedemque delegit. (C. Clu. 66.)

Misto quod Pallanti servo præteria ornamenta offeruntur: quippe offeruntur a servis. (Plin. Ep. 8. 6. § 3.)

Fecit humaniter Licinius, quod ad me misso senatu vesperi venit. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 1.)

Super belli Latini metum id quoque accesserat, quod triginta jam jurasse populos satis constabat. (L. 2. 18.)

*Often also such sentences are in apposition to an oblique case:* 1703

Hoc uno præstamus vel maxime feris, quod exprimere dicendo sensa possumus. (C. Or. 1. 8.)

Ad id, quod sua sponte satis collectum animorum erat, indignitate etiam Romani accendebantur. (L. 3. 62.)

Sin autem, pro magnitudine injuriæ, proque eo quod summa respública in hujus periculo temptatur, hæc omnes vindicarent, consistere mehercule vobis isto in loco non liceret. (C. Rosc. A. 51.)

Non esse autem leniores in exigendis vectigalibus Græcos quam nostros publicanos, hinc intelligi potest, quod Canni nuper ad senatum confugerunt. (C. Q. Fr. 1. 1. § 33.)

*Tantum quod, 'only just,' is often used elliptically (for tantum verum est quod):* 1705

Tantum quod hominem non nominat, causam quidem totam perscribit. (C. Ferr. 1. 45.)

Tantum quod ex Arpinati veneram, cum mihi a te litteræ redditæ sunt. (C. Fam. 7. 26, init.)



(c) *In sentences restrictive of a preceding statement: ut faciam* 1704 = 'whilst yet doing,' *ut non faciam*, &c. 'without doing,' &c. *The principal sentence often has ita.* (Compare § 1650.)

Cujus ego ingenium ita laudo ut non pertimescam, ita probo ut me ab eo delectari facilius quam decipi putem posse. (C. *Cæcil.* 14.)

Aristoteles et Xenocrates ita non sola virtute finem bonorum contineri putant, ut rebus tamen omnibus virtutem anteponant.  
(C. *Fin.* 4. 18.)

Non ita pridem spondeos stabiles in jura paterna recepit commodus et patiens, non ut de sede secunda cederet aut quarta socialiter.  
(Hor. *A. P.* 257.)

Quis est qui velit, ut neque diligat quemquam, nec ipse ab ullo diligatur, in omnium rerum abundantia vivere? (C. *Lael.* 15.)

(Sapiens iste) certe malet existimari vir bonus, ut non sit, quam esse, ut non putetur. (C. *Fin.* 2. 22.)

Quinctius dictitabat non ita civitatem ægram esse ut consuetis remediis sisti posset; dictatore opus esse reipublicæ.  
(L. 3. 20.)

Quomodo extorqueant, non quomodo petant honores, quærunt; et ita maxima sunt adepturi, ut nihil ne pro minimis quidem debeant. (L. 6. 41.)

Hasta interdium plus duas horas arsisse, ita ut nihil ejus ambureret ignis, dicebatur. (L. 43. 13.)

(d) *In concessive sentences: ut (ut non), 'supposing that,' 'even* 1706 *if.'* *The subordinate clause is put usually first.* (Compare §§ 1620 — 1626.)

Ut fueris dignior quam Plancius, (de quo ipso tecum ita contendam paulo post, ut conservem dignitatem tuam,) non competitor, sed populus in culpa est. (C. *Planc.* 4.)

Quotus quisque juris peritus est, ut eos numeres, qui volunt esse?  
(C. *Planc.* 25.)

Ut non conferam vitam tuam cum illius, (neque enim est conferenda,) hoc ipsum conferam, quo tu te superiorem fingis.  
(C. *Verr.* 4. 20.)

*Continued on p. 306.*

*Facts explaining or defining a statement are often expressed by the indicative with ut, 'as.' Thus a sentence with ut is found—*

(a) *Defining the order or degree: ut='as,' 'according as,' 'just as.'* The principal sentence often has ita, sic, perinde, pro.

Omnia, ut quidque actumst, memoravit. (Pl. Bac. 1097.)

His, sicut erant nuntiata, expositis, consul de religione patres consulit. (L. 22. 2.)

Ut sementem feceris, ita metes. (C. Or. 2. 65.)

Hæc ut brevissime dici potuerunt, ita a me dicta sunt. (Ib. 2. 41.)

Tum ut quisque gradu proximus erat, ita ignominiae objectus. (L. 9. 6.)

Deus, uti tu me hic habueris, proinde illum illic curaverit. (Pl. Capt. 311.)

Sed hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur. Actio, inquam, in dicendo una dominatur. (C. Or. 3. 56.)

Ceterum iter multo, quam in adscensu fuerat (ut pleraque Alpium ab Italia, sicut breviora, ita arrectiora sunt), difficilior fuit. (L. 21. 35.)

Donum Jovi optimo coronam auream in Capitolium tulere parvi ponderis, prout res haud opulentæ erant, colebanturque religiones pie magis quam magnifice. (L. 3. 57.)

Id. prout cujusque ingenium erat, interpretabantur. (L. 38. 59.)

(b) *Adducing a fact to be allowed for; ut, prout, pro eo ut, 'in proportion to what,' 'allowing for what.'* In early language also præut, 'compared with.'

At hi quidem, ut populi Romani ætas est, senes; ut Atheniensium sæcla numerantur, adolescentes debent videri. (C. Brut. 10.)

Sed mehercule, ut quidem nunc se causa habet, etsi hesterno sermone labefactata est, mihi tamen videtur esse verissima. (C. Ac. 2. 4.)

Compararat Sthenius argenti bene facti, prout Thermitani hominis facultates ferebant, satis. (C. Verr. 2. 34.)

Summa vi data est a me opera, ut aratores qui reliqui erant quam plurimum sererent: tamen pro eo ut temporis difficultas aratorumque penuria tulit. (Edictum ap. C. Verr. 3. 53, 54.)

Ludum jocumque dieet fuisse illum alterum (amorem), præut hujus rabies quæ dabit. (Ter. Eun. 300.)

*So with the verb omitted: Ne tu, Cato, ista exposuisti, ut tam multa, memoriter, ut tam obscura, dilucide.* (C. Fil. 4. 1.)

*Continued on p. 307.*

In quibus ut erraverim, legentes tamen non decepi, indicata et diversa opinione. (Quint. 5. 3, § 112.)

In quo, ut jam sit in iis culpa, qui me non defenderunt, non minor est in iis qui reliquerunt. (C. Fam. 1. 9. 13.)

Verum ut hoc non sit, tamen præclarum spectaculum mihi propono, modo te consessore spectare liceat. (C. Att. 2. 15.)

Quo modo quidem res nunc se habet, modo ut hæc nobis loca tenere liceat, bellissime mecum esse poteritis. (C. Fam. 14. 14.)

Ut enim rationem Plato nullam adferret, (vide quid homini tribuam,) ipsa auctoritate me frangeret. (C. T. D. 1. 21.)

Ut enim cetera paria Tuberoni cum Varo fuissent, quæ nequaquam fuerunt, hoc certe præcipuum Tuberonis, quod justo cum imperio in provinciam suam venerat. (C. Lig. 9.)

Equidem, ut verum esset sua voluntate sapientem descendere ad rationes civitatis non solere, tamen arbitrarer hanc rerum civilium minime neglegendam scientiam sapienti. (C. R. P. 1. 6.)

*So of an impossible supposition put interrogatively.*

1708

Virgo hæc liberast. TH. Meane ancilla libera ut sit, quam ego numquam emisi manu? (Pl. Curc. 616.)

Hicine ut a nobis hoc tantum argenti auferat tam aperte irridens? emori hercle satius est. (Ter. Ph. 955.)

Judicio ut arator decumanum persequatur? (C. Verr. 3. 10.)

Egone ut te interpellem? ne hoc quidem vellem. (C. T. D. 2. 18.)

Quanquam quid loquor? te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut unquam te corrigas? tu ut ullam fugam meditere? utinam tibi istam mentem di immortales duint. (C. Cat. 1. 9.)

(c) *Making a concession: ut...ita, 'although'... 'yet.'* (For quamquam, utcumque, &c. see § 1697: for etsi, etiamsi, § 1561.)

Verum ut errare, mi Planci, potuisti, (quis enim id effugerit?) sic decipi te non potuisse quis non videt? (C. Fam. 10. 20.)

Saguntini, ut a præliis quietem habuerant, ita non nocte, non die, unquam cessaverant ab opere. (L. 21. 11.)

(d) *Admitting the truth of what is put only as a concession or thought; ut, sicut, 'as, in fact.'*

Sit Ennius sane, ut est certe, perfectior; qui si Catonem, ut simulat, contemneret, non omnia bella persequens primum illud Panicum acerrimum bellum reliquisset. (C. Brut. 19.)

Terrendi magis hostes erant quam fallendi, sicut territi sunt. (L. 25. 24.)

Illam quamvis ridicula essent, sicut erant, mihi tamen risum non moverunt. (C. Fam. 7. 32.)

Hoc si explicavisset, non tam hæsitaret; aut enim eam voluptatem tueretur quam Aristippus, aut hoc non dolere solum voluptatis nomine appellaret, aut, si utrumque probaret, ut probat, conjungeret doloris vacuitatem cum voluptate. (C. Fin. 2. 6.)

(e) *Explaining by reference to a permanent habit, or to a state; ut, sicut. Ut is immediately followed by est, sunt, &c.*

Venetorum auctoritate finitimi adducti, ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia, eadem de causa Trebium retinent. (Cæs. G. 3. 8.)

Permulta alia conligit Chrysippus, ut est in omni historia curiosus. (C. T. D. 1. 45.)

Nam nunc et operam ludos facit et retia, ut est tempestas nunc atque ut noctu fuit. (Pl. Rud. 901.)

Aiunt hominem, ut erat furiosus, respondisse. (C. Rosc. A. 12.)

Spurinæ (dicit) suppliciter, ut est, cum timet, abjectissimus. (Plin. Ep. 1. 5, § 8.)

Sicut eram, fugio sine vestibus. (Ov. Met. 601.)

(f) *In asseverations:*

Ita mihi meam voluntatem spemque reliquæ vitæ vestra populique Romani existimatio comprobet, ut ego, quos adhuc mini magistratus populus Romanus mandavit, sic eos accepi, ut me omnium officiorum obstringi religione arbitrarer. (C. Verr. 5. 14.)

Ita vivam, ut maximos sumptus facio. (C. Att. 5. 15.)

## (F) Subjunctive of attendant circumstances.

The subjunctive with **cum** is in some of its uses very peculiar, but appears to be referable, like the preceding class, to the fact or event being presented to the mind not as a mere definition of the time of the principal action, but as a cause or a possible cause of its occurrence, at least in the form in which it actually occurred.

1. The first division contains adjectival sentences of similar import to those introduced by **cum**. 2. The second division contains the use in Livy, &c. of **quicumque**, **cum**, **ubi**, &c. in relating events of frequent occurrence. 3. The third contains sentences with **cum**, first (*a*) those in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses expressing the order of events in an historical narrative; then (*b*, *c*) those expressing more distinctly an event, in consequence, or in spite of, which another event has taken place.

The sentence with **cum** (**cum præsertim**, **cum interea**) sometimes gains additional emphasis by being appended, instead of being prefixed, to the principal sentence.

(*d*) A contrast of a general mode of action with a particular act, or of an earlier with a later action, is often expressed by **cum** with the former action.

The following are typical instances:

1. Peccasse videor, qui illud fecerim.  
Abiit consul, ut quem nemo metueret.
2. Peccabant, qui (cum, ubi) illud fecissent.
3. (*a*) Cum ibi venissem, Caium conveni.  
Cotidie me criminabatur, cum diceret.  
Audi vi cum diceret.
- (*b*) Quæ cum ita sint, hoc dico.  
Cur hæc narro, cum nihil audias? (also indic.)
- (*c*) Cum aliis bene fecerit, tum Caium multum promovit.  
Quomodo me accusas, cum idem Milonem defendas?  
(also indic.)
- (*d*) Quod cum videat, tamen hoc dicit.

*Continued on p. 310.*



## Indicative in relative and temporal sentences.

2709

1. Relative sentences in the indicative (*a*) often express a fact, which is a cause, but is not marked as such. A peculiar class of these is formed of sentences (*b*), where we should translate *qui* by 'such.'

2. The earlier writers, *e.g.* Cicero, Cæsar, &c., use 'with *quicumque*, *cum*, &c.) the indicative regularly of actions frequently occurring.

3. Adverbs of time other than *cum* are used with the indicative to denote the order of events in an historical narrative.

4. Sentences with *cum* in the indicative mood are very frequent, but *a*, *b* they denote the bare time when a thing occurred, without grammatically implying any sort of connexion between the principal event and that which marks the date of its occurrence. The comic poets and Cicero, in certain sentences *c*, use *cum* for 'since,' where later writers and Cicero, as a general rule, use *quoniam*, or resort to the subjunctive. *ad* The coincidence in time, especially when combined with an identity of person and tense, is often used to express an identity of actions.

(*e*) Sometimes the coincidence of events is marked more forcibly by making the action marking the time into the principal sentence, and appending the important event with *cum*, *cum interim*, &c.

(*f*) A contrast of actions is expressed sometimes by the indicative with *cum*, more usually by the subjunctive.

The following are typical instances :

1. (*a*) *Peccasse videor, qui illud feci.*
- (*b*) *Qua eram prudentia, nihil dixi.*
2. *Quoscunque audivi, placavi.*  
    *Cum ad villam veni, delectat me nihil agere.*
3. *Quod ubi (simul ac) vidi, hoc dixi.*
4. (*a*) *Scripti ad te, cum primum audivi.*
- (*b*) *Jam diut, cum ille hic venit.*
- (*c*) *Laudo te, cum huc venisti.*
- (*d*) *Cum tacent, probant.*
- (*e*) *Dies jam deficiebat, cum subito advenere Galli.*
- (*f*) *Cum aliis bene fecit, tum Caium malum promovit.*

Continued on p. 311.

(F) The subjunctive expresses a real action, viewed as <sup>1712</sup> the attendant cause or circumstance, under, or notwithstanding, which other actions or events take place.

1. *With relative adjective:* **qui**, 'inasmuch as he,' 'although he,' <sup>1714</sup> (**qui præsertim**, 'and that though he'); often with **ut**, **ut pote**, **quippe**, prefixed. So also **ut ubi**, &c.

Peccasse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim. (C. Fam. 16. 1.)

Me cæcum, qui hæc ante non viderim! (C. Att. 10. 10.)

At iste, qui senatu non egeret, discessu nostro lætatus est.

(C. Phil. 2. 42.)

Egomet qui sero ac leviter Græcas litteras attigissem, tamen, quum pro consule in Ciciliam proficiscens venissem Athenas, compluris tum ibi dies sum commoratus. (C. Or. 1. 18.)

Nosmet ipsi, qui Lycurgei a principio fuissetus, quotidie demitigamur. (C. Att. 1. 13.)

Religione tactus hospes, qui omnia cuperet rite facta, extemplo descendit ad Tiberim. (L. 1. 45.)

Hic, qui Romam pervenisset satisque feliciter anni jam adverso tempore navigasset, rem ad amicos detulit. (C. Verr. 2. 38.)

Nec consul, ut qui id ipsum oppugnatione comminanda quæsisset, moram certamini fecit. (L. 42. 7.)

Nec vallum modo tutantur Pœni, sed, ut quibus locus æquior esset, deturbant nitentes per ardua hostes. (L. 25. 13.)

Castra repetunt pavoris et tumultus jam plena, ut ubi feminæ puerique et alia imbellis turba permixta esset. (L. 38. 21.)

Lucius quidem frater ejus, utpote qui peregre depugnarit, familiam ducit. (C. Phil. 5. 11.)

Solis candor inlustrior est quam ullius ignis, quippe qui inmenso mundo tam longe lateque conluceat. (C. N. D. 2. 15.)

Istam voluptatem Epicurus interdum nimis etiam novit, quippe qui testificetur, ne intellegere quidem se posse, ubi sit aut quod ullum præter illud bonum. (C. Fin. 2. 3.)

Non florentibus se venditavit Atticus, sed adflctis semper succurrit; qui quidem Serviliam Bruti matrem non minus post mortem ejus quam florentem coluerit. (Nep. 25. 11.)

Tribuno plebis quæstor non parvisti, cui tuus præsertim collega pareret. (C. Fam. 15. 21.)

*Continued on p. 312.*

*The indicative expresses merely the fact, without implying any connexion between this and that event, although such connexion may exist.*

1. (a) *With relative adjective*: qui = 'for he,' 'and yet he.' Sometimes (in *Plautus, Sallust, and Livy*) quippe qui.

Quom egomet mecum cogito, stulte feci qui hunc amisi.

(Pl. Mil. 1376.)

Tu dies noctesque cruciaris, cui nec sat es, quod est, et id ipsum ne non diuturnum sit futurum, times. (C. Par. 2.)

O fidam dextram Antoni, qua ille plurimos cives trucidavit.

(C. Phil. 13. 2.)

Habeo senectuti magnam gratiam, quæ mihi sermonis aviditatem auxit, potionis et cibi sustulit. (C. Sen. 14.)

Dic Flavius cum Fannio de Panurgo decidisse, qui nihil transegit: dic HS coccinno dedisse, qui assem nullum dedit. (C. Rosc. C. 16.)

At Jugurtha contra spem nuntio accepto, quippe cui Romæ omnia venum ire in animo hæserat, ad senatum legatos mittit.

(Sall. J. 28.)

Iræ vestræ magis ignoscendum quam indulgendum est, quippe qui crudelitatis odio in crudelitatem ruitis. (L. 3. 53.)

Plurimum terroris Romam celeritas hostium tulit, quippe quibus velut tumultuario exercitu raptim ducto agere ad undecimam lapidem occursum est. (L. 5. 37.)

*Also in the comic poets quippe qui (adv.).*

1713

Horum tibi istic nihil eveniet, quippe qui, ubi quod subrupias nihil est. (Pl. Aul. 346.)

Eho quæso laudas qui eros fallunt? CH. In loco ego vero laudo. SY. Recte sane. CH. Quippe qui magnarum sæpe id remedium agritudinumst. (Ter. Haut. 538.)

(b) *So especially where the quality displayed by the principal action, is the antecedent to the relative.* (qui = 'such'.)

Si mihi negotium permisisses, qui meus amor in te est, confecissem.

(C. Fam. 7. 2.)

Qua enim prudentia es, nihil te fagiet, si meas literas diligenter legeris. (Brut. ap. Cic. Fam. 11. 13.)

Consurgitur in consilium, cum sententias Oppianicus, quæ tunc erat potestas, palam fieri velle dixisset. (C. Clu. 27.)

Nam illis, quantum importunitatis habent, parum est impune male fecisse, nisi deinde faciendi licentia eripitur. (Sall. J. 31.)

*Continued on p. 313.*

2. *With relative adjectives and adverbs: of cases frequently occurring; with quicumque, cum, ubi, seu, &c. in Livy and later writers (rarely, if ever, in Cicero, Cæsar, or Sallust) and only in pluperfect and (sometimes) imperfect tenses. Cum = whenever.* 1716

(For other cases in which the later writers use the subjunctive contrary to the practice of the earlier writers, see §§ 1670, 1674.)

Cum in jus duci debitorem vidissent, undique convolabant.

(L. 2. 27.)

Neque hereditatem cujusquam adiit, nisi cum amicitia meruisset.

(Tac. A. 2. 48.)

Id fetialis ubi dixisset, hastam in fines eorum emittebat. (L. 1. 32.)

Philopœmen ubi iter quopiam faceret et ad difficilem transitu sal-  
tum venisset, contemplatus ab omni parte loci naturam, cum  
solus iret, secum ipse agitabat animo, quum comites haberet, ab  
iis quærebat, si hostis eo loco apparuisset quid capiendum con-  
siliū foret. (L. 35. 28.)

Tunc urbis custodiis præpositus C. Mæcenās, vir, ubi res vigiliam  
exigeret, sane exsomnia, providens, atque agendi sciens, simul  
vero aliquid ex negotio remitti posset, otio ac mollitiis pæne  
ultra feminam fluens. (Vell. 2. 88.)

Vescebatur et ante cenam, quocumque tempore et loco stomachus  
desiderasset. (Suet. Oct. 76.)

Quocumque se intulisset, victoriam secum haud dubiam trahebat.

(L. 6. 8.)

Cohortes Batavorum, ut cujusque legionis tentoria accessissent,  
superbe agebant, ablatam Neroni Italiam jactantes.

(Tac. H. 2. 27.)

Inde montani concursabant modo in primum, modo in novissimum  
agmen, utcunque aut locus opportunitatem daret, aut progressi  
morative aliquam occasionem fecissent. (L. 21. 35.)

Quotiens super tali negotio consultaret, edita domus parte ac liberti  
unius conscientia utebatur. (Tac. A. 6. 21.)

His numquam candente dies adparuit ortu, seu supra terras Phœ-  
bus seu curreret infra. (Tib. 4. 1. 66; cf. 74, 75.)

In agmine nonnunquam equo, sæpius pedibus, anteibat capite de-  
tecto seu sol seu imber esset. (Suet. Jul. 57.)

Nec consul Romanus tentandis urbibus, sicunde spes aliqua osten-  
disset, deerat. (L. 26. 38.)

2. With relative adjectives and adverbs: of cases frequently occurring, or occurring not more at one time than at another; with *quicumque*, *cum*, *ubi*, *quoties*, *simul ac*, *si*, *ut quisque*, &c., especially the perfect, pluperfect, and completed future tenses, in subordination respectively to the present, imperfect, and future in principal clause. *Cum* = 'whenever.'

*Hoc Herculi fortasse potuit contingere, nobis non item, qui imitamur quoscumque visum est.* (C. Orf. 1. 32.)

*Cum ad villam veni, hoc ipsum nihil agere et plane cessare me delectat.* (C. Or. 2. 6.)

*Cum paterfamilias illustriore loco natus decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt.* (Cæs. G. 6. 19.)

*Quocumque aspexisti, ut furis, sic tuis tibi occurrunt injuriis.* (C. Par. 2.)

*Ubi per socordiam vires tempus ingenium diffluxere, naturae infirmitas accusatur.* (Sall. J. 1.)

*Sed vincit utilitas plerumque, cum subest ille timor, ea neglecta ne dignitatem quidem posse retineri.* (C. Or. 2. 82.)

*Quoscumque de te queri audivi, quacumque potui ratione, placavi.* (C. Q. Fr. 1. 2.)

*Ubi res prolatae sunt, quom rus nomines eunt, simul prolatae res sunt nostris dentibus.* (Pl. Capt. 78.)

*Quisquis erat qui aliquam partem in meo lactu sceleris Clodiani attigisset, quocumque venerat, quod judicium cumque subierat, damnabatur.* (C. Sest. 31.)

*Cum rosam viderat, tum incipere ver arbitrabatur.* (C. Ferr. 5. 10.)

*Plerumque milites stativis castris habebat, nisi cum odos aut pabuli egestas locum mutare subegerat.* (Sall. J. 44.)

*Ego, cum a nostro Catone laudabar, vel reprehendi me a ceteris facile patiebar.* (C. Or. 13.)

*Si ab persequendo hostis detertere nequiverant, disiectos ab tergo circumveniebant.* (Sall. J. 50.)

*Aliud est dolere, aliud laborare. Cum varices secabantur C. Mario, dolebat; cum aestu magno ducebat agmen, laborabat.* (C. T. D. 2. 15.)

*Ut ejusque sors exciderat, alacer arma raptim capiebat.* (L. 21. 42.)

*Nec hic puer, quotiescunque me viderit, ingemescet ac pestem patris sui se dicet videre.* (C. Sest. 69.)

*Proximo bello, nonne et cum pecunia opus fuit, viduarum pecuniae adjuverunt aerarium, et cum dii quoque novi ad opem ferendam dubiis rebus accerserentur, matronae universae ad mare profectae sunt ad matrem Idaeam accipiendam?* (L. 34. 5.)

Continued on p. 315.



3. *With (quom) cum, the subjunctive implies that the event, 1718*  
*action, &c. exercises, or might exercise, an influence on the event,*  
*action, &c. named in the principal sentence. (This use is rare in*  
*Plautus.)*

*The clause with cum usually precedes (the whole or at least the*  
*verb of) the principal sentence, but sometimes is placed after it by way*  
*of explanation or contrast, see §§ 1722, 1728, 1732.*

*The subjunctive is used as follows:*

(a) *Of actions, events, &c. recounted not as mere marks of 1720*  
*time, but as essential parts of the historical narrative; in imperfect*  
*and pluperfect tenses<sup>1</sup>.*

*Though 'when' often serves to translate cum into English, the*  
*effect in such sentences is best given thus; e.g. cum rediret, 'returning,'*  
*'as he returned; cum redisset, 'having returned, 'on his return.'*

*Cum portæ appropinquaret, editus ex composito ignis ab Hanni-*  
*bale est...Nota vox Philomeni et familiare jam signum quum*  
*excitasset vigilem, portula aperitur. (L. 25. 9.)*

*Phocion cum ad mortem duceretur, obuius ei fuit Euphiletus...Is*  
*cum lacrimans dixisset 'O quam indigna perpeteris, Phocion!'*  
*huic ille 'at non inopinata' inquit. (Nep. 19, fin.)*

*Meridie cum Cæsar pabulandi causa tres legiones misisset, repente*  
*hostes ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt.*

*(Cæs. G. 5. 17.)*

*Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit.*

*(Ib. 2. 2.)*

*Zenonem, cum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter.*

*(C. N. D. 1. 21.)*

*Spartæ pueri ad aram verberibus accipiuntur, nonnunquam etiam,*  
*ut, cum ibi essem, videbam, ad necem. (C. T. D. 2. 14.)*

*Cum civitas in opere ac labore assiduo reficiendæ urbis teneretur,*  
*interim Q. Fabio, simul primum magistratu abiit, ab Cn.*  
*Marcio, tribuno plebis, dicta dies est. (L. 6. 1.)*

*Cum intempesta nox esset, mansissemque in villa P. Valerii, pos-*  
*tridieque apud eundem ventum exspectans manerem, municipes*  
*Regini plurimi ad me venerunt. (C. Phil. 1. 3.)*

*Ego cum Athenis decem ipsos dies fuissem, multumque mecum*  
*Gallus noster Caninius, proficiscebar inde pridie Nonas Quinc-*  
*tilis, cum hoc ad te litterarum dedi. (C. Fam. 2. 8.)*

<sup>1</sup> In Pliny, *H. N.* 7, §§ 181—183, numerous examples are found  
of **cum** with imperfect subjunctive and  **dum** with (historical) present in-  
dicative in same meaning. (See part of the passage, *supra*, § 1663.)

3. With conjunctions of time, other than *cum*, e.g. *ut*, *ubi*, *postea*-<sup>1719</sup> *quam* (*postquam*), *simul ac*, *and*, in *Plautus* occasionally, *quoniam*, the indicative is used in expressing the event on, or sometimes since, the occurrence of which something else takes place. (For *dum*, &c. see § 1661 sqq., for *priusquam*, § 1671).

*Pompeius*, *ut equitatum suum pulsum vidit, acie excessit.*

(*Cæs. C. 3. 94.*)

*Quæ ubi spreta sententia est, iterumque eodem remeante nuntio consulebatur, censuit ad unum omnes interficiendos.* (*L. 9. 3.*)

*Alia subinde spes, postquam hæc vana evaserat, excepit.* (*L. 25. 23.*)

*Posteaquam victoria constituta est ab armisque recessimus, cum proscriberentur homines, erat Roscius Romæ frequens.* (*C. Ro. Am. 6.*)

*Post diem quintum quam iterum barbari male pugnaverant, legati a Boccho veniunt.* (*Sall. J. 102.*)

*Quem simul ac Juturna soror crebescere vidit sermonem, in medias dat sese acies.* (*Verg. A. 12. 222.*)

*Simul ac primum ei occasio visa est, aversa pecunia publica quæstor consulem deseruit.* (*C. Verr. 1. 13.*)

*Ubi contra aspexit me, oculis mihi signum dedit, ne se appellarem: deinde postquam occasiost, conqueritur mecum mulier fortunas suas...Ego quoniam inspexi mulieris sententiam, cepi tabellas, &c.* (*Pl. Mil. 123 sqq.*)

*Ubi portu eximus, homines remigio sequi. Quoniam sentio quæ res gereretur, navem extemplo statuimus. Quoniam vident nos stare, oceperunt ratem servare in portu.* (*Pl. Bac. 289 sqq.*)

*Nam viri nostri domo ut abierunt, hic tertius annus.* (*Pl. Stich. 29.*)

4. With (*quom*) *cum*, the indicative mood is used in the following meanings and uses (besides those in §§ 1685, 1687, 1717).

(a) *Coincidence in point of time.* *Cum* = 'when,' 'at the time when.'

*The event put in the indicative with cum is regarded as one which would not have been mentioned at all, except for the purpose of defining the time.*

*Nunc demum a me insipienter factum esse arbitror, quom rem cognosco.* (*Pl. Mil. 562.*)

*Cum hæc leges, habebimus consules.* (*C. Att. 5. 12.*)

*Exeruciabit me erus, domum si venerit, quom hæc facta scibit, quia ego sibi non dixerim.* (*Pl. Mil. 859.*)

*Sin cum potuero, non venero, tum erit inimicus.* (*C. Att. 9. 2.*)

*Cum vero causam justam deus ipse dederit, ne ille, me dius fidius, vir sapiens lætus ex his tenebris in lucem illam exierit.*

(*C. T. D. 1. 30.*)

*Continued on p. 317.*

Est huic finitimum dissimulationi, cum honesto verbo vitiosa res appellatur; ut, cum Africanus censor tribu movebat eum centurionem qui in Pauli pugna non adfuerat, cum ille se custodiæ causa diceret in castris remansisse quæreretque cur ab eo notaretur, 'non amo' inquit 'nimium diligentis.'

(*C. Or.* 2. 67.)

Noctu demum, cum obscuritas conspectum oculorum ademisset, ad curandum corpus rex recessit. (*Curt.* 7. 11, § 20.)

*The following are instances of the clause with cum being subsequent:* 1722

Attrahitur a Veneriis Lollius commodum, cum Apronius e palæstra redisset et in triclinio recubisset. (*C. Verr.* 3. 25.)

Illud scripsit disertissimus poeta pro me, egit fortissimus actor de me, cum omnis ordines demonstraret, senatum, equites Romanos, universum populum Romanum accusaret, 'Exulare sinistis, sistis pelli, pulsum patimini.' (*C. Sest.* 57.)

Ingressus urbem est quo comitatu vel potius agmine! cum dextra sinistra, gemente populo Romano, minaretur dominis, notaret domos, divisurum se urbem palam suis polliceretur.

(*C. Phil.* 13. 9.)

*So especially cum diceret, 'saying, as he did' = 'on the ground that, as he said.'* (*Compare quod diceret*, § 1746.)

Cotidie meam potentiam invidiose criminabatur, cum diceret senatum, non quod sentiret, sed quod ego vellem decernere.

(*C. Mil.* 5.)

Hortensius ductus odio properavit rem deducere in iudicium, cum illum plumbeo gladio jugulatum iri tamen diceret.

(*C. Att.* 1. 16, § 2. *So also Cic. N. D.* 3. 34.)

*The clause with cum is sometimes tantamount to a secondary (often oblique) predicate of a thing seen, heard, &c. (Imperfect tense.) With this use of the subjunctive comp. Fuit cum diceret, &c. § 1684.* 1724

Equidem e Cn. Aufidio prætorio, erudito homine, oculis capto sæpe audiebam, cum se lucis magis quam utilitatis desiderio moveri diceret. (*C. Fin.* 5. 19.)

Sæpe e socero meo audiui, cum is diceret socerum suum Lælium semper fere cum Scipione solitum rusticari. (*C. Or.* 2. 6.)

Adulescentium greges Lacedæmone vidimus ipsi incredibili contentione certantis, cum exanimarentur prius quam victos se fateantur. (*C. T. D.* 5. 27.)

Cum cotidie gladiatores spectaret, numquam est conspectus cum veniret. Emergebat subito, cum sub tabulas subreperat.

(*C. Sest.* 59.)

*Continued on p. 318.*

Equidem a principio cum Etruriam conjurare, proscriptos accersi, largitionibus rempublicam lacerari viderem, maturandum putabam et Catuli consilia cum paucis secutus sum. (Sall. *Or. Phil.* 6.)

Cum hæc Romæ agebantur, Chalcide Antiochus sollicitabat civitatum animos. (L. 36. 5.)

Eum heredem fecit, quom ipse obiit diem. (Pl. *Men.* 62.)

Cum primum Romam veni, nihil prius faciendum putavi, quam ut tibi absenti de reditu nostro gratularer. (C. *Att.* 4. 1.)

Reliquum est, ut ante, quam proficiscare, scribas ad me omnia, cum profectus eris, cures ut sciam. (Ib. 5. 1. 5.)

De nomine tyranni hoc respondere possum, me, qualiscumque sum, eundem esse, qui fui cum tu ipse mecum societatem pepigisti.

(L. 34. 31.)

Etiam si dudum fuerat ambiguum hoc mihi, nunc non est, cum eam sequitur alienus puer. (Ter. *Hec.* 649.)

Sulla, cum Damasippum et alios ejusmodi, qui malo reipublicæ creverant, jugulari jussit, quis non factum ejus laudabat?

(Sall. *C.* 51. 232.)

Cum Placentiam consul venit, jam ex stativis moverat Hannibal.

(L. 21. 39.)

In isto genere faimus ipsi, cum ambitionis nostræ tempora postulabant. (C. *Piano.* 18.)

Quæ nemora sunt qui vos saltus habuere, puellæ Naidæ, indigno cum Gallus amore peribat? (Verg. *B.* 10. 9.)

Expectationem nobis non parvam attuleras, cum scripseras Varro-nem id tibi confirmasse. (C. *Att.* 3. 18.)

Tum cum in Asia res magnas permulti amiserant, scimus Romæ solu-tione impedita fidem concidisse. (C. *Mæn.* 7.)

Quatuor milia hominum erant, mixti ex omni colluvione exsules, obsecrati, capitalia ausi pierique, cum in civitatibus suis ac sub legibus vixerant. (L. 26. 49.)

Eo cum venio, prætor quiescebat; fratres illi Cilyratæ inambulabant.

(C. *Verr.* 4. 14.)

(b) So in reckoning the length of time: cum = 'to the time that.' 17-3

Triginta dies erant ipsi, cum has dabam litteras, per quos nullas a vobis acceperam. (C. *Att.* 3. 21.)

Nondum centum et decem anni sunt, cum de pecuniis repetundis a L. Pisone lata lex est, nulla antea cum fuisset. (C. *Off.* 2. 21.)

Agite pugni: jam diuisti, quem ventri victum non datis.

(Pl. *Ampk.* 302.)

Jube dari vinum: jam dudum factumst, quem primum bibi.

(Pl. *Asin.* 890.)

Compare also § 1687; (and for ut in this sense, § 1719).

Continued on p. 319.

(b) *Of the grounds or reason of an action, &c. cum = 'since,' 1726*  
*'whereas.'*

Quæ cum ita sint, Catilina, perge quo cœpisti. (C. *Cat.* i. 5.)

Atqui necesse est, cum sint di, si modo sunt, ut profecto sunt, animantis esse. (C. *N. D.* 2. 31.)

Dionysius, cum in communibus suggestis consistere non auderet, contionari ex turri alta solebat. (C. *T. D.* 5. 20.)

Ad Athenas cum tamquam ad mercaturam bonarum artium sis profectus, inanem redire turpissimum est. (C. *Off.* 3. 2.)

Quod bellum cum alii laudent, reprehendere ne Lacedæmonii quidem possint, dii quoque ipsi comprobaverint, qui nobis victoriam dederunt, quonam modo ea, quæ belli jure acta sunt, in disceptationem veniunt? (L. 39. 36.)

Nunc cum omnes me causæ ad misericordiam vocent, quanto tandem studio debeo naturæ meæ consuetudinique servire?

(C. *Mur.* 3.)

*The following are instances of the clause with cum being subsequent: 1728*

Venit ad nos Cicero tuus ad cenam, cum Pomponia foras cenaret.

(C. *Q. Fr.* 3. i, § 19.)

Nam puerum injussu, credo, non tollent meo, præsertim in ea re quom sit mi adjutrix socrus. (Ter. *Hec.* 705.)

Hoc scribere, præsertim cum de philosophia scriberem, non aude-  
 rem, nisi idem placeret Panætio. (C. *Off.* 2. 14.)

Quid facient crines, cum ferro talia cedant? (Cat. 66. 47.)

Quid faciat custos, cum sint tot in urbe theatra, quoque sui comites ire vetentur, eat? (Ov. *A. A.* 3. 633 sqq.)

(c) *Of events, actions, &c. notwithstanding which other 1730*  
*events, &c. take place. Cum = 'although.'*

Ain' tu? dubium habebis etiam, sancte quom ego jurem tibi?

(Pl. *Capt.* 889.)

Appius noster, cum me adventare videret, profectus est Tarsum usque Laodicea: ibi forum agit, cum ego sim in provincia.

(C. *Att.* 5. 17.)

Druentia flumen, cum aquæ vim vehat ingentem, non tamen navium patiens est. (L. 21. 31.)

Pylades cum sis, dices te esse Oresten, ut moriari pro amico?

(C. *Fin.* 2. 24.)

Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat. (Cæs. *G.* 5. 40.)

*Continued on p. 320.*



(c) *Reason; in early writers: in Cicero only where the verb in the principal sentence is laudo, gratulor, &c. Not after Cicero. (Quoniam (i.e. quom jam) and quando exhibit this usage, see § 1747.) Quom = 'because.'* 1725

Di tibi omnes omnia optata offerant, quom me tanto honore honestas, quomque ex vinclis eximis. (Pl. *Capt.* 353.)

Quom te di amant, voluptatist mihi. (Pl. *Rud.* 1183.)

Præsertim quom is me dignum, quoi concederet, habuit, me habere honorem ejus ingenio decet. (Pl. *As.* 81.)

Edepol te, mea Antiphila, laudo et fortunatam judico, id quom studuisti, isti formæ ut mores consimiles forent. (Ter. *Haut.* 381.)

Gratulor tibi, cum tantum vales apud Dolabellam. (C. *Fam.* 14. 17 A.)

Illum prodire pudet in conspectum tuum, propter ea quæ fecit, quom te scire scit. (Pl. *Most.* 1156.)

Scio pol te amare, quom istæc præmonstras mihi. (Pl. *Merc.* 577.)

*In the following sentences, though similar otherwise to some in § 1728, coincidence in time only is marked. (Compare also § 1731.)* 1727

Quid domini faciant, audent cum talia fures? (Verg. *B.* 3. 16.)

Quid sapiens faciet, stultus cum munere gaudet? (Ov. *A. A.* 3. 655.)

Nam quid possit ibi flatus, manifesta docet res hic, ubi lenior est in terra, cum tamen alta arbusta evolvens radicibus haurit ab imis. (Lucr. 6. 140.)

(d) *Identity of action. (Present and perfect tenses.) Usually the tense and person of the verb in both sentences are the same. Cum = 'when,' 'in that.'* 1729

Quæso edepol, num tu quoque etiam insanis, quom id me interrogas? (Pl. *Amph.* 753.)

Qui, cum hunc accusant, Nævium Plautum Ennium accusant. (Ter. *Andr.* 17.)

De te autem, Catilina, cum quiescunt, probant; cum patiuntur, decernunt; cum tacent, clamant. (Cic. *Cat.* 1. 8.)

Concedo tibi, ut ea prætereas, quæ, cum taces, nihil esse concedis. (C. *Rosc. Am.* 19.)

Sed cum mundo negas quicquam esse melius, quid dicis melius? Si pulchrius, adsentior. (C. *N. D.* 3. 9.)

Magnum hoc quoque signumst dominam esse extra noxiam, cum ejus tam necleguntur internuntii. (Ter. *Haut.* 298.)

De luxuria purgavit Erucius, cum dixit, hunc ne in convivio quidem ullo fere interfuisse. (C. *Rosc. Am.* 14.)

Epicurus ex animis hominum extraxit radicibus religionem, cum in dis immortalibus opem et gratiam sustulit. (C. *N. D.* 1. 43.)

*Continued on p. 321.*

Cum primi ordines hostium transfixi pilis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant. (Cæs. G. 7. 62.)

Nunc cum ejus alienum esse animum a te sentiam, quamobrem reducam? (Ter. Hec. 659.)

Verum cum videam miserum hunc tam excruciarier ejus abitu, celem tam insperatum gaudium, cum illi pericli nihil ex indicio sit? (Ter. Haut. 413.)

Hoc ipso tempore, cum omnia gymnasia philosophi teneant, tamen eorum auditores discum audire quam philosophum malunt. (C. Or. 2. 5.)

*The following are instances of the clause with cum being subsequent: 1732*

**Cum** = 'and yet,' 'while all the time,' (§ 1726), **cum præsertim**, 'and that too though.'

Quomodo igitur hoc in genere accusas Sestium, cum idem laudes Milonem? (C. Sest. 42.)

Simulat se eorum praesidio confidere, cum interea aliud quiddam jam diu machinetur. (C. Verr. 1. 6.)

Ignari veritatis Diis imputant sævitiam maris, immodicos imbres, pertinaciam hiemis, cum interim nihil horum, quæ nobis nocent prosuntque, ad nos proprie dirigatur. (Sen. Ir. 2. 27.)

Statuitur, ut dico, eques Romanus, annos prope xc natus, in Afranii convivio, cum interea Afranius caput atque os suum unguento confricaret. (C. Verr. 3. 25.)

Fadium abstractum defodit in ludo et vivum conbussit; cum quidem pransus, nudis pedibus, tunica soluta, manibus ad tergum rejectis inambularet, et illi misero quiritanti, responderet, Abi nunc, populi fidem implora. (Asin. Poll. ap. C. Fam. 10. 32.)

Thucydides nunquam est numeratus orator; nec vero, si historiam non scripsisset, nomen exstaret, cum præsertim fuisset honoratus et nobilis. (C. Or. 9.)

(d) *Of an action or event, &c. rhetorically contrasted with a later or particular action, &c. of the same sort; especially where the time of the two actions is different.* 1734

Sisennæ historia cum facile omnis vincat superiores, tum indicat tamen, quantum absit a summo. (C. Brut. 64.)

Cum te a pueritia tua unice dilexerim, tum hoc vel tuo facto vel populi Romani de te judicio multo acrius diligo. (C. Fam. 15. 9.)

Sex. Roscius cum omni tempore nobilitatis fautor fuisset, tum hoc tumultu proximo præter ceteros in ea vicinitate eam partem causamque defendit. (C. Rosc. A. 6.)

*Continued on p. 322.*

In some sentences (from *Plautus* and *Terence*) similar to some on the opposite page, § 1730, the coincidence in time serves to set off strongly the unreasonableness of the action. (Compare § 1727.) *Quomodo* = 'although.'

Crede, si beni quid ad te nuntiem, inopes deriver, qui nunc, quom malum audiundumst, flagitas me ut eloquar. (Pl. *Mos*. 174.)

Quid igitur faciam? non eam? ne nunc quidem, cum adverser alios? (Ter. *Eur*. 46.)

Nunc cum sine magno intertrimento non potest haberi, quilibet dare capis. (Ter. *Haut*. 448.)

Hei mihi, insanire me aiunt ultro quom isti insaniant. (Pl. *Mos*. 391.)

De illo jam finem faciam dicendi mihi, perorandi quom ipse de se finem non facit? (Ter. *Ph*. 13.)

(e) The coincidence in time is sometimes vividly expressed by an inversion; what would otherwise have been the temporal clause being put first as an independent sentence (after which *namque*, and what would have been the principal sentence being subjoined with *cum*, often *cum repente*, *cum interim*, &c. *Cum* = *et tum*.)

Primo actu placeo, quom interea rursus venit datum isti gladiatores: populus convolat. (Ter. *Hec*. 39.)

Milites, postquam in castra irrupere, diversi regem querere, strepitum et tumultum omnia miscere, cum interim Hiempsal reperitur, occiditans se tugurio mulieris ancillis. (Sall. *J*. 12.)

Castra in hostio incurrisse posita, cum subito advenere Samnitiū legiones. (L. 8. 38.)

Hannibal subibat muros, cum repente in eum, nihil minus quam tale quicquam timentem, patefacta porta erumpunt Romani. (L. 29. 7.)

Jamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matres familie repente in publicum procurrerunt. (Cass. *G*. 7. 26.)

Dies nondum decem intercesserant, cum ille alter filius infans necatur. (C. *Clu*. 9.)

So also the historical infinitive: e.g. *Romanus* promissa consulis fideique senatus expectabat, quom Appian, quam asperissime poterat, jus de creditis pecuniis dicere. (L. 2. 27.)

(f) In comparing two actions: (subjunctive more usual, and with the imperfect, invariable). *Cum* = *whilst*, *both* *tum* = *and*.

Cum ipsam cognitionem juris angustis consequi cupio, tum meliorentis tuis incredibiliter studiis erga me muneribusque defensor.

(C. *Fam*. 3. 9.)

Cum te semper maxime dilexi, tum fratrum tuorum singularis pietas nullum me patitur officii erga te minus praefermittere. (Ib. 6. 14.)

Sed cum multis in rebus negligentia plectimur, tum maxime in amicis et diligendis et colendis. (C. *Lat*. 22.)

Continued on p. 323.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD TO EXPRESS ALIEN OR CONTINGENT ASSERTIONS, &c. with contrasted use of Indicative.

## (G) Subjunctive of reported statements.

The subjunctive in all the sentences classed here serves to distinguish what is reported from what is uttered at first hand. These sentences are not like those in the next head, dependent on infinitive or subjunctive moods, but (except for some collateral reason) on the indicative. Such sentences may be (1) definitions introduced by the relative adjective *qui*, or (2) reasons, or (3) conditions, or (4) temporal clauses, or (5) questions. Such indirect questions are very common, and here properly belong sentences with *forsitan*, and some with *quin*.

The following are typical instances :

1. *Præmia proposuit, qui primus venisset.*
2. *Laudat Panætium, quod fuerit abstinens.*  
*Laudat eum, non quod futurus sit, sed quod fuit abstinens.*  
*Rediit, quod oblitum se aliquid diceret.*
3. (a) *Timebat iram Cai, ni venisset.*  
(b) *Da pignus, ni hostes abeant.*  
(c) *Quæsivit, ) si hostes abirent.*  
*Tentavit, )*
4. *Dum vires suppeterent, deditionem censebat.*
5. (a) *Scripti, quid agatur.*  
*Doleam necne doleam, nihil interest.*  
(b) *Forsitan aliquis dicat.*  
*Non est dubium, quin ille venerit.*  
(c) *(Quid narras?) Quid ego narrem?*

*Continued on p. 324.*

## Indicative: in contrasted usages.

The instances of the indicative here placed are, besides (1) ordinary relative sentences, principally (2) the regular use of **quod** and other adverbs of cause, when the reason alleged is given on the speaker's own authority: (3) some conditional sentences, directly expressed, especially the colloquial **ni mirum** and **mirum ni**; and (4) questions in colloquial language accompanied by expressions on which they are logically but not grammatically dependent.

(5) Relative sentences often differ little from interrogative in meaning or look, but have the indicative where the dependent interrogative would have the subjunctive.

(6) Some expressions, e.g. **forsitan** and **nescioquis**, originally introduced dependent questions, but after a time passed in popular conception, the one into a mere adverb, the other into an indefinite pronoun, and were consequently used with the indicative mood.

The following are typical instances:

1. **Ei, qui primus venerat, præmia dedit.**
2. **Laudat Panætium, quod fuit abstinens.**  
**Quod M. Cicero verba fecit, ita censeo.**
3. **Si hoc dictitasti, spondesne mihi xxv nummos dare?**  
**Visam, si ablit.**  
**Mirum ni hoc est verum.**  
**Nimirum hoc est verum.**
4. **Ut valet?**  
**Dic mihi, } quid agitur?**  
**Scire volo, }**
5. **Viden' quod agitur?**
6. **Forsitan aliquis dicet (post-Ciceronian).**  
**Nescio quis hic loquitur.**
7. **(Attuli hunc.) Quid? attulisti?**

*Continued on p. 325.*



The subjunctive expresses a definition or reason or condition or question reported, but not as the speaker's or writer's own at the time of speaking or writing: *in a subordinate sentence.*

*For the distinctive use of tenses, see § 1526 sqq.*

1. *Reported definition or reason: with relative adjective.* 174

Recte Socrates execrari eum solebat, qui primus utilitatem a jure sejunxisset. (C. Legg. 1. 12.)

Pætus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donavit. (C. Att. 2. 1.)

Edit nomina eorum, quibus conventis opus esset. (L. 34. 61.)

Marti, cum prælio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quæ bello ceperint, plerumque devovent. (Cæs. G. 6. 17.)

Hanc primum ad litora classem conspexi venientem: huic me, quæcunque fuisset, addixi. (Verg. A. 3. 652.)

Eis, qui primi murum ascendissent, præmia proposuit. (Cæs. G. 7. 27.)

Magna proponit iis, qui regem occiderint, præmia. (Cæs. G. 5. 58.)

Interim cotidie Cæsar Hæduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. (Cæs. G. 1. 16.)

Hæc omnia occurrebant, colles campique et Tiberis et hoc cælum, sub quo natus educatusque essem. (L. 5. 54.)

*A carelessness of expression occurs with the relative, as with quod, § 1746.* 174

At etiam litteras, quas me sibi misisse diceret, recitavit. (C. Phil. 2. 4.)

Nominat iste servum, quem magistrum pecoris esse diceret; eum dicit conjurasse et familias concitasse. (C. Verr. 5. 7.)

2. *Reported or assumed reason: with adverb, quod, quia; non quod, non quia, non quo, non quin.* 174

Laudat Panætius Africanum, quod fuerit abstinens. (C. Off. 2. 22.)

An pænitet vos quod salvum exercitum traduxerim? quod classem hostium primo impetu adveniens profligaverim? quod bis per biduum equestri prælio superaverim? &c. (Cæs. C. 2. 32.)

Obicite Platoni quod petierit pecuniam, Aristoteli quod acceperit, Democrito quod neglexerit, Epicuro quod consumpserit.

(Sen. Dial. 7. 27.)

*Continued on p. 326.*

*The indicative expresses a fact: or a direct statement of fact; or opinion of the writer or speaker.*

1. *With relative adjective.*

Pactus omnes libros, quos frater ejus reliquerat, mihi donavit.

Verres mittit rogatum vasa ea, quae pulcherrima apud eum viderat.

(C. Verr. 4. 27.)

Hortatus sum, ut illam landationem, quam se vi ac metu coactos paucis illis diebus decresse dicebant, tollerent. (Ib. 63.)

Negavit se iudices ex lege Rupilia sortiturum: quinque iudices, quos commodum ipsi fuit, dedit. (Ib. 2. 16.)

Me quidem etiam illa res consolatur, quod ego is sum, cui vel maxime concedant omnes, ut vel ea defendam, quae Pompeius velit, vel taceam, vel etiam id quod mihi maxime libet, ad nostra me studia referam litterarum: quod profecto faciam, si mihi per ejusdem amicitiam licebit. (C. Fam. 1. 8.)

*A compactness of expression sometimes occurs, by which the relative is used instead of quod with the demonstrative (§ 1743).*

Nam quos ab hominibus pervenisse dicis ad deos, tu reddes rationem, quem ad modum fieri potuerit aut cur fieri desideris.

(C. N. D. 3. 16, where quos = quod aliquos.)

2. *With causal conjunctions, quod, quia, quoniam, quando, si, quidem, quatenus, 'inasmuch as.'* (For quod see also § 1761.)

Quod animadvertum est in eos, qui contra omni ratione pugnant, non desce reprehendere; quod viris fortibus honos habuit est, laudo. (C. Rosc. Am. 47.)

Neque vero, quid mihi irascere, intellegere possum. Si, quod eum defendo, quem tu accusas, cur tibi ego non succenseo, quod accusas eum, quem ego defendo? (C. Sull. 17.)

Item Caius iratus fuit Herennio Macro, quod illum Caium salutaverat. Nec impune cessit primum, quod Caligulam dixerat.

(Sen. Dial. 2. 19.)

*Continued in p. 327.*

Est autem impudens luctus mærore se conficientis, quod imperare non liceat liberis. (C. T. D. 3. 12.)

Hæc tibi dictabam post fanum putre Vacunæ, excepto quod non simul esses, cetera lætus. (Hor. Ep. 1. 10. 49, *where the writer's own reason is reported.*)

Cæsar sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissima missa. (Cæs. G. 1. 43.)

Romani, quia consules, ubi summa rerum esset, ad id locorum prospere rem gererent, minus his cladibus commovebantur. (L. 25. 22.)

Bene majores accubitionem epularem amicorum, quia vitæ conjunctionem haberet, convivium nominaverunt. (C. Sen. 13.)

Non sum eodem modo defensurus, Romani, quod Dolopas armis coercuerim: quia, etsi non merito eorum, jure feci meo, cum mei regni, meæ dicionis essent. (L. 42. 41.)

Pugiles in jactandis cæstibus ingemescunt, non quod doleant animo succumbant, sed quia profundenda voce omne corpus intenditur venitque plaga vehementior. (C. T. D. 2. 23.)

Mihi quidem laudabiliora videntur, quæ sine venditatione et sine populo teste fiunt, non quo fugiendus sit, (omnia enim bene facta in luce se conlocari volunt,) sed tamen nullum theatrum virtuti conscientia majus est. (Ib. 2. 26.)

Non tam ut prosim causis elaborare solco, quam ut ne quid obisim: non quin enitendum sit in utroque, sed tamen multo est turpius oratori nocuisse videri causæ, quam non profuisse. (C. Or. 2. 72.)

Jactatum in condicionibus nequiquam de Tarquiniis in regnum restituendis, magis quia id negare Porsinna nequiverat Tarquiniis, quam quod negatum iri sibi ab Romanis ignoraret. (L. 2. 13.)

*By a carelessness of expression the verb of 'saying' or 'thinking' is sometimes put in the subjunctive instead of the thing said. So especially diceret, dicerent. (Compare §§ 1742, 1722.)*

Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romanis bellum gesturos dicerent. (Cæs. G. 7. 75.)

Cum enim Hannibalis permissu, exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quid diceret. (C. Off. 1. 13.)

Qui istinc veniunt, superbiam tuam accusant, quod negent te percontantibus respondere. (C. Fam. 7. 16.)

*Continued on p. 328.*

Ita fit ut adsint propterea, quod officium sequuntur, taceant autem idcirco, quia periculum vitant. (C. *Rosc. Am.* 1. 1.)

Vitio mihi dant, quod mortem hominis necessarij graviter fero, atque eum quem dilexi perisse indignor; aiunt enim patriam amicitiae præponendam esse. (Marius ap. C. *Fam.* 11. 28.)

Quod spiratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hominum habetis, indignantur. (L. 4. 3.)

Tusculanum et Pompejanum valde me delectant, nisi quod me ære alieno obruerunt. (C. *Att.* 2. 1.)

Prætor Achæorum Arcas fuit mediterraneus, externorum etiam omnium, nisi quod in Creta præfectus auxiliorum militaverat, ignarus. (L. 35. 26.)

Ut lubet, quod tibi lubet, fac, quoniam pugnis plus vales. 1747  
(Pl. *Amp.* 396.)

Principio externa corpus de parte necessumst, aeriis quoniam vicinum tangitur auris, tundier. (Lucr. 4. 933.)

Vos, Quirites, quoniam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite.  
(C. *Cat.* 3, fin.)

Abibo hinc, præsens quando promoveo parum. (Ter. *Hec.* 703.)

Quando igitur virtus est adfectio animi, laudabiles efficiens eos, in quibus est, ex ea proficiscuntur honestæ voluntates.  
(C. *T. D.* 4. 15.)

Æstatis insanabili perniciæ quando nec causa nec finis inveniebatur, libri Sibyllini ex senatus consulto aditi sunt. (L. 5. 13.)

Summa utilitas est in iis qui militari laude antecellunt, siquidem eorum consilio et periculo cum republica tum etiam nostris rebus perfrui possumus. (C. *Mur.* 11.)

Quandoquidem apud te nec auctoritas senatus nec ætas mea valet, tribunos plebis appello. (L. 8. 33.)

Cur enim non usquequaque Homericis versibus agam tecum? quatenus tu me tuis agere non pateris. (Plin. *Ep.* 1. 7.)

Et lædere quatenus illum non poterat, nec vellet amans, irascitur illi quæ sibi prælatast. (Ov. *M.* 14. 42.)

Quo quidem etiam magis sum exercitus, non quia multis debeo, sed quia sæpe concurrunt aliquorum de me meritorum inter ipsos contentiones. (C. *Planc.* 32.)

*The clause with quod sometimes simply introduces a matter for remark. If this is stated as a supposition only, the subjunctive is used.*

Quod quispiam ignem quærat, extinguī volo, ne causæ quid sit quod te quispiam quæritet. (Pl. *Aul.* 91.)

Miles, edico tibi, si te in platea offendero hac post umquam, quod dicas mihi, 'aliū quærebam, iter hac habui,' periisti.  
(Ter. *Eun.* 1064.)

Quod enim te liberatum jam existimationis metu, perfunctum honoribus, designatum consulem cogites, mihi crede, ornamenta ista et beneficia populi Romani non minore negotio retinentur quam comparantur. (C. *Verr.* 5. 68.)

3. *Reported condition: the apodosis not being set out separately, but absorbed into the principal sentence.*

(a) Prætor ædem Divoi vovit, si eo die hostes fudisset. (L. 31. 21.)

'Victor' inquit 'M. Fabi, revertar ex acie;' si fallat, Jovem patrem Gradivumque Martem aliosque iratos invocat deos. (L. 2. 45.)

Metellus evocat ad se magistratus; nisi restituissent statuas, vehementer minatur<sup>1</sup>. (C. *Verr.* 2. 67.)

Jugurtha timebat iram senatus, nī paruisset legatis<sup>2</sup>. (Sall. *J.* 25.)

Nec illos periculum, si animus hosti redisset, cogere potuit gradum accelerare. (L. 2. 43.)

Hernici pudore etiam, non misericordia solum, moti, si nec obstitissent<sup>3</sup> communibus hostibus, nec opem ullam obsessis sociis ferrent, Romam pergunt. (L. 3. 7.)

Cur M. Brutus, referente te, legibus est solutus, si ab urbe plus quam decem dies afuisset<sup>4</sup>? (C. *Phil.* 2. 13.)

Bucar præmiorum ingentium spe oneratus, si caput Masinissæ retulisset, aut vivum (id vero inæstimabile gaudium fore), cepisset. (L. 29. 32.)

Ubiis auxilium suum pollicitus est, si ab Suebis premerentur.  
(Cæs. *G.* 4. 19.)

Dumnacus desperata salute, si tempore eodem coactus esset et externum sustinere hostem et respicere oppidanos, cum copiis recedit. (Hirt. *B. G.* (8.) 27.)

Tumultuose decurrerat multitudo ad prohibendos si in terram egredierentur. (L. 24. 27.)

*Continued on p. 330.*



*Quod with indicative often expresses a fact, which is not so much the cause of the action of the principal verb, as the cause of the statement, a matter for remark.* 1749

Verum, quod tu dicis, mea uxor, non te mihi irasci decet.

(Pl. *Amph.* 522.)

Quod scribis, te si velim ad me venturam, ego vero istic esse volo.

(C. *Fam.* 14. 3.)

Quod Silius te cum Clodio loqui vult, potes id mea voluntate facere.

(C. *Att.* 12. 30.)

Quæ cum ita sint, quod C. Pansa consul verba fecit de litteris, quæ a Q. Cæpione adlatæ sunt, de ea re ita censeo. (C. *Phil.* 10. 11.)

*Similarly* Itaque quoniam discerni placet quid publico consilio, quid sua sponte imperatores faciant: nobis vobiscum fœdus est a C. Lutatio consule ictum, in quo, &c. (L. 21. 18.)

*The following are instances of a vow in direct language.*

1751

At tu pater deum hominumque hinc saltem arce hostes: deme terrorem Romanis fuganque fœdam siste. Hic ego tibi templum Statori Jovi voveo. (L. 1. 12.)

Si duellum, quod cum rege Antiocho sumi populus jussit, id ex sententia senatus populi que Romani confectum erit, tum tibi, Jupiter, populus Romanus ludos magnos dies decem continuos faciet. (ap. L. 36. 2.)

<sup>1</sup> *i.e.* minatur, nisi restituissent statuas, se iis malum daturum.

<sup>2</sup> *i.e.* timebat, nisi paruisset legatis, ne senatus irasceretur.

<sup>3</sup> *i.e.* Hernici hæc secum reputabant: Pudebit nos, si nec obstitimus, &c.; or pudere se, si nec obstitissent, &c.

<sup>4</sup> *i.e.* Referente M. Antonio, senatui placuit ut M. Brutus, si... afuisset, legibus solveretur.

(b) *So especially in legal forms; si, ni, uti, quicquid.*

175

Rubrius Apronium sponsione lacesivit, ni<sup>1</sup> Apronius dictitaret te sibi in decumis esse socium. (C. Verr. 3. 57.)

Jubet P. Quinctium sponsionem cum Sex. Nævio facere, si bona sua ex edicto P. Burrieni prætoris dies xxx. possessa non essent. (C. Quinct. 8.)

Affirmabant qui una meruerant, secum Cæsonem tum, frequentemque ad signa sine ullo commeatu fuisse. Nisi ita esset, multi privatim ferebant Volsco judicem. (L. 3. 24.)

Vel da pignus, ni ea sit filia. (Plaut. Epid. 5. 2. 34.)

Buculeius cum æd's L. Fufio venderet, in mancipio lumina, uti tum essent, ita recepit. (C. Or. 1. 39.)

Arbitrum illum adegit, quicquid sibi dare facere oporteret ex fide bona. (C. Off. 3. 16.)

Nec prætor, postulante Pausania, quo ea pecunia pervenisset recipere voluit. (Cæd. ap. C. Fam. 8. 8, § 2. Cf. C. Rab. Post. 4.)

(c) *Sometimes the apodosis is omitted altogether, perhaps not even distinctly conceived (comp. § 1582). The principal sentence states the action taken or feelings excited in contemplation of a particular event, the conditional sentence states the condition on which the event would take place; this contemplated event itself, which is the real apodosis, is not stated. The conditional sentence appears like a dependent question. Si = 'whether.' (Possim, possem, &c. are frequently found in the conditional clause.)*

Quæsit iterum, si cum Romanis militare liceret. (L. 40. 49.)

Primum ab iis quæsit, si aquam hominibus jumentisque in totidem dies, quot frumentum, imposuissent. (L. 29. 25.)

Jamdudum, si des, porrexī manum. (Pl. Ps. 1148.)

Hanc paludem si nostri transirent, hostes expectabant.

(Cæs. G. 2. 9.)

Mirabar, hoc si sic abiret, et eri semper lenitas verebar quorsum evaderet. (Ter. Andr. 175.)

Tentata res est, si primo impetu capi Ardea posset. (L. 1. 57.)

Hannibal irritat de industria Fabium, si forte accensum tot cladibus sociorum detrahare ad æquum certamen possit. (L. 22. 13.)

Nunc comminus agamus experiamurque, si possimus cornua commovere disputationis tuæ. (C. Div. 2. 10.)

Ad Gonnum castra movet, si potiri oppido posset. (L. 42. 67.)

Omnibus deinceps diebus Cæsar exercitum in aciem produxit, si Pompeius prælio decertare vellet. (Cæs. C. 3. 56.)

*Continued on p. 332.*

3. The wagers would be in some such terms as these: Rabrius (or Quinctius) would say:

Si<sup>1</sup> dicistasti te mihi in decumis esse socium (Si bona mea ex edicto P. Burrieni praetoris dies xix. possessa non sunt). Aproni. Navi mihi xlv. nummos dare sperasne? To which Apronius (or Navius) would answer Spondeo.

The issues to be tried would then be generally stated as follows, being in the form of *discretions from the praetor to the judge*:

Titius iudex esto. Quod Rabrius (Quinctius) ab Apronio (Navius) xlv. nummos stipulatus est, si Apronius dicistasset se Rabrio in decumis esse socium (si Quinctii bona ex edicto P. Burrieni praetoris dies xix. possessa non essent), si paret Apronium Rabrio (Navium Quinctio) xlv. dare oportere, Titi, Apronium Rabrio (Navium Quinctio) xlv. nummos condemnare: si non paret, absolve.

Cf. Gai. 4. 93 sq. and 39—50.

A thing to be ascertained is sometimes expressed as the condition, <sup>1755</sup> instead of being expressed as the object, of the seeing or knowing.

Ibo visam, si domist. (Ter. Haut. 170.)

Nunc redeo: si forte frater redierit, viso. (Ter. Ad. 549.)

Jam sciam, si quid timbatumst, reliquias tibi videro. (Pl. Men. 142.)

Vide, si hoc utile maris atque in rem deputas. (Pl. Trin. 748.)

Vide, amabo, si non, cum aspicias, os impudens videtur.

(Ter. Eun. 838.)

Compare also the colloquial phrases, mirum ni, nimirum, &c. <sup>1757</sup>

Mira sunt, ni illic honest aut dormitator aut sector senarius.

(Pl. Trin. 862.)

Mirum ni hic me quasi matrem exossare cogitas. (Pl. Amph. 319.)

Tu nisi mirum es, leno, plane perdidisti mulierem. (Pl. Ps. 1213.)

Ni mirum, dabit haec Thais mihi magnam malum. (Ter. Eun. 508.)

Sic se gerendis minime est mirandum, si et vita ejus fuit secunda et mors acerba. (Nep. J. fin.)

Miror illa superbia et importunitate si (Tarquinius) quemquam amicam habere potuit. (C. Lel. 15.)

<sup>1</sup> The substitution of *ni* in affirmative wagers, for the *si* which is used in the formula, is probably due to the risk which the plaintiff runs, and the condition which involves this risk, being chiefly regarded. (The wager in the passage from Cic. Quinct. is negative, and therefore by the same rule *si* is used.)

4. *Other clauses, e.g. temporal clauses, similarly reported, 175 are sometimes found.*

Pars deditionem, pars, dum vires suppetarent, eruptionem censebat.  
(Cæs. G. 7. 77.)

M. Lepidus interficiendi, simul in urbem revertisset, Cæsaris consilia inierat. (Vell. 2. 88.)

5. *Reported question. (Dependent interrogative.)*

175

(N.B. *A rhetorical question in the first or third person, not dependent on a verb of asking, but being part of a continuous report of a speech, is put in the infinitive: see § 1781.*)

(a) Quid ab hac metuis? Pl. Quid ego metuam, rogitas?  
(Pl. Bac. 65.)

Obsecro, mea nutrix, quid nunc fiet? CA. Quid fiat, rogas?  
(Ter. Ad. 283.)

Qui sermo fuerit, et quid actum sit, scribam ad te, quum certum sciam. (C. Att. 7. 13.)

Eccos video incedere mei patrem sodalis et magistrum. Ausculto quid agant. (Pl. Bac. 404.)

Homo quidamst qui scit, quod quæris ubi sit. (Pl. Mil. 1012.)

Sum circumvectus: ita ubi nunc sim nescio. (Pl. Most. 996.)

Docui cunctarum exordia rerum qualia sint et quam variis distantia formis sponte sua volitent. (Lucr. 3. 31.)

Nunc nostræ timeo parti, quid hic respondeat. (Ter. Andr. 419.)

Nunc has expectationes habemus duas, unam, quid Cæsar acturus sit, alteram, quid Pompeius agat. (C. Att. 7. 16.)

Lesbonicum hic adolescentem quæro, in his regionibus ubi habitet.  
(Pl. Trin. 873.)

Cum de re agitur aut quid factum sit in dubium venit, aut quid fiat, aut quid sit futurum. (Quint. 7. 2. 2.)

Rogitant me ut valeam, quid agam, quid rerum geram.  
(Pl. Aul. 117.)

A senatu quanti fiam, minime me pænitet. (C. Att. 1. 20.)

1760

Nosces tu illum actutum, qualis sit. (Pl. Bac. 786.)

Earum, si placet, causarum quanta quamque sit justa unaquæque, videamus. (C. Sen. 5.)

*Continued on p. 334.*

4. *A direct question (or exclamation) is put in the indicative mood (unless it concerns what some one is to do, not what he is or was doing: see § 1610).* 1759

Quam mox licet te compellare, Dæmones? (Pl. Rud. 1227.)

Ut valet? ut meminit nostri? (Hor. Ep. 1. 3. 12.)

Quid tergiversamur, Epicure? sunt hæc tua verba, necne?

(C. T. D. 3. 18.)

Atticus. "Qui sermo fuit? quid actum est?" Cicero. "Scribam ad te, quum certum sciam."

Hæc honesta quæ dico, suapte natura per se sunt expetenda. Indicant pueri, in quibus ut in speculis natura cernitur. Quanta studia decertantium sunt! ut illi efferuntur lætitia, cum vicerunt! ut pudet victos! ut se accusari nolunt! quam cupiunt laudari!

(C. Fin. 5. 22.)

*In conversational or animated language a question is often put, logically though not grammatically dependent on another verb or sentence, e. g. on such expletives as dic mihi, loquere, cedo, responde, expedi, narra, vide; rogo, volo scire, fac sciam; viden, audin, sein; &c. So frequently in Plautus and Terence, even where later writers would make the question dependent and use the subjunctive. (Compare English 'Tell me, where are you?' 'Tell me where you are.')* Cf. §§ 1605, 1607. 1761

Dic, ubi ea nunc est, obsecro? (Pl. Bac. 208.)

Cedo, quorum puerum hic adposisti? dic mihi. (Ter. Andr. 763.)

Dic, quæso, num te illa terrent, triceps apud inferos Cerberus, Cocyti fremitus, trajectio Acherontis? (C. T. D. 1. 5.)

Quid illi esse morbi dixeras, narra, senex? Num laruatust aut cerrius, fac sciam? (Pl. Men. 889.)

Habe modo bonum animum. Ba. Quæso, qui possum, doce, bonum animum habere, qui te ad me adducam domum? (Pl. Ps. 866.)

Nimis velim, certum qui id faciat mihi, ubi Ballio hic leno habitat?

(Pl. Pseud. 599.)

Scire volo, quoi reddidisti? (Pl. Curc. 543.)

Quis ego sum saltem, si non sum Sosia? te interrogo.

(Pl. Amph. 282.)

Rogo vos, iudices, num si iste disertus est, ideo me damnari oportet?

(Vatin. ap. Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7. 4, § 6.)

*Continued on p. 335*



Expecto quam mox recipiat sese Geta. (Ter. Ph. 606.)

Mirum quantum illi viro nuntianti hæc fidei fuerit. (L. I. 16.)

Incredibile est quam ego ista non curem. (C. Att. 13. 23.)

Illa quidem piget dicere, his armis quindecim quam ludibrio fueritis  
superbiæ paucorum, quam fœde quamque inulti perierint  
vostri defensores. (Sall. J. 31, § 2.)

Vide quam iniquos sis præ studio. (Ter. And. 825.)

1762

‘In dispositione argumentorum tu mihi semper deus videri soles.’

‘Vide quam sim’ inquit ‘deus in isto genere, Catule.’

(C. Or. 2. 42.)

Hic vide quam me sis usurus æquo. (C. Verr. 5. 59.)

Videte, ut hoc iste correxerit. (C. Verr. 1. 45.)

Quid fuit causæ, cur in Africam Cæsarem non sequerere, cum præ-  
sertim belli pars tanta restaret? (C. Phil. 2. 29.)

In curiam compelluntur incerti, quatenus Volero exerceret victoriam.  
(L. 2. 55.)

Legatos speculari jusserunt, num sollicitati animi sociorum ab rege  
Perseo essent. (L. 42. 19.)

‘Læter’ ait ‘doleamne geri lacrimabile bellum, in dubio est.’

1764

(Ov. M. 8. 44.)

Hoc doce, doleam, necne doleam, nihil interesse. (C. T. D. 2. 12.)

Tantum id interest, veneritne eo itinere ad urbem, an ab urbe in  
Campaniam redierit. (L. 26. 11.)

Quid quaeris? Perisse omnia aiebat, quod haud scio an ita sit.

(C. Att. 14. 1.)

Qui scis an tibi istuc prius eveniat quam mihi? (Pl. Most. 58.)

Di me perdant, si te flocci facio, an periisses prius. (Pl. Trin. 150.)

(b) *Sentences with forsitan (fors sit an), and some with quin, fall strictly under the head of dependent questions.* 1766

Forsitan aliquis dicat aut Veis sacra nos facturos aut huc inde  
missuros sacerdotes nostros qui faciant. (L. 5. 52.)

Concedo: forsitan aliquis aliquando ejusmodi quippiam fecerit.

(C. Verr. 2. 32.)

Quid? illa quæ forsitan ne sentiamus quidem, quanta sunt!

(C. Verr. 2. 3.)

*Continued on p. 336.*

Quid mihi dicent aut quam causam reperiant? deminor.

(Ter. Ph. 264.)

Vide, num ejus color pudoris signum nequam indicat? (Ter. And. 979.)

At enim scis, quid mi in mentem venit? (Pl. Fr. 538.)

Videm, egestas quid negoti hac homini misero male? (Pl. Trin. 341.)

Ergo metastor pulcher est: vide, anseres quam decet! (Pl. Mil. 64.)

Videm, limulis, obscuro, ut contentus? (Pl. Bos. 1139.)

Cer dolet, quem scio, ut nunc cum auge ut fui? (Pl. Most. 149.)

Circumspicendum, namque est sermonem nostrum qui augetur?

(Pl. Mus. 472.)

Optas scies, rapin' te oporteo collo mavis an trahi? Urruptis opus,  
dum licet. (Pl. Rud. 364.)

5. *Relative definitions are liable to be confused with dependent questions.* Scis quid queris. 'I know your question.' Scis quod queris. 'I know the answer to your question.' Scis quantum tu scis. 'I know as much as you.' Scis quantum tu scias. 'I know how much you know.' Illico quod sentis. 'I say what I mean' = 'I mean what I say.' Idem quid sentiam. 'I give you my opinion.' Utrum placeat, roga. 'Put whichever question you like.' Utrum placeat, roga. 'Ask which is approved.'

Sentes omnia que curant meminere, validissima constituta, qui effo,  
qui ipso debent. (C. Sen. 7.)

Ausulta paratis, es, quid te ego velim et tu quod queris, scies.

(Ter. Andr. 536.)

Quid concupiscas, tu videris: quod concupiveris, certe habebis.

(Antonius ap. Cl. Phil. 5. 12.)

Such as the following may be taken as relative: §§ 1659, 1660: 225

Audin, que loquitur? (Pl. Mil. 1099.)

Metro ne percontatus, animum ubi est absconditum. (Pl. Ad. 63.)

Insidium parumper: nam concupiscit totum: videamus qui hinc  
egredietur. (Pl. Mos. 342.)

Mirum si facinus, quomodo hinc hinc hinc transire potuit.

(Pl. Mil. 377.)

Nunc quam rem oriturum hoc veni, primum probequar. (Pl. Amph. 50.)

Sed, hinc qua gratia te accersi jussi, ausulta. (Ter. Eua. 99.)

6. *Forstian is wholly in the past and later writers sometimes apply it with indicative, as if it were the same as factitive.*

Sed his forstian demit cum federum raptore dnoe et populo deos  
ipso committere bellum. (L. 11. 49.)

Forstian hinc aliquis, nam sunt quoque, parva videret. (Ov. Rem. 419.)

Forstian, infelix, vensos undasque tenebas. (Ov. Fast. 2. 97.)

Continued on p. 337.

Quid est causæ quin coloniam in Janiculum possint deducere? 1768  
(C. Agr. 2. 27.)

Alterum dici non potest, quin ii qui nihil metuant, nihil angantur,  
nihil concupiscant, beati sint. (C. T. D. 5. 7.)

Non est dubium, quin, si quis animadverterit, quid sit, qua re alii  
melius, quam alii, dicant, id possit notare. (C. Or. 2. 8.)

Neque Cæsarem fefellit quin ab iis cohortibus, quæ contra equita-  
tum in quarta acie collocatæ essent, initium victoriæ oriretur.  
(Cæs. G. 3. 94.)

Orgetorix mortuus est: neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitran-  
tur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit. (Cæs. G. 1. 4.)

Id tibi suscensui, quia te negabas credere argentum mihi. DOR.  
Mirum quin tibi ego crederem. (Pl. Pers. 433.)

(c) *A question simply repeated in astonishment, &c. by the bearer* 1770  
*is similarly put in the subjunctive, if dependent on an interrogative*  
*pronoun.* (Comp. § 1618.)

Quid nunc faciundum censes? TR. Ego quid censeam? cape, ob-  
secro hercle, una cum eo iudicem. (Pl. Most. 556.)

Quid ergo narras? AN. Quid ego narrem? opera tua ad restim  
mihi quidem res redit planissime. (Ter. Ph. 685.)

Dixin' hoc fore? Quid fecit? DE. Quid ille fecerit? quem neque  
pudet quicquam nec metuit quemquam. (Ter. Ad. 83.)

Ehem, Demea, haud aspexeram te: quid agitur? DE. Quid agatur?  
vostram nequeo mirari satis rationem. (Ter. Ad. 374.)

*In some expressions, especially with nescio quis, &c. the fact of the action is asserted in the indicative, and the verb belonging to the dependent question is omitted. (Nescio quis = 'some one or other.') Comp. mirum quantum, §§ 1647, 1760.*

Venit cecum Callicorus: ducit nescioquem secum simul. (Pl. Ps. 993.)

Nescio quaja vox ad auris mi advolaui. (Pl. Merc. 564.)

Scis meam fortunam nescio quo modo facile obsecratores invenire, non meo quidem meritis merito; sed quanti id refert, si tamen fato nescio quo accidit? (Varr. ap. C. Fam. 5. 9.)

Minime assentior iis, qui istam nescio quam insolentiam magno opere laudant, quæ nec potest ulla esse, nec debet. (C. T. D. 3. 4.)

Acute crebrique sententia ponentur, et nescio unde ex abditis erant. (C. Or. 24.)

7. A reply often puts interrogatively or adverbially some of the words of the other speaker. The mood is not changed except under § 1618 or § 1770. But the person or pronoun is changed if necessary. Frequently autem accompanies the reply.

Ca. Astuli hunc. Ps. Quid? astulisti? Ca. Adhuc, velui dicere. (Pl. Pseud. 711.)

Ac. Tuus pater— Ch. Quid meus pater? Ac. Tuam amicum. Ca. Quid eam? Ac. Vidit. Ch. Vidit? vix misero mihi. (Pl. Merc. 150.)

Quæso adepsi te, exsurge: pater advenit. Ca. Tuus venit pater? Jube eum abire rurem. (Pl. Moss. 376.)

Eademst mihi lex: metas credere. Ps. Credere autem? (Pl. Pseud. 364.)

Numquam credidi fore, ut ille hac viva posset animum inducere unguem habere. Ps. Habere autem? Ph. Eho tu, an non habes? (Ter. Hec. 100.)

## (H) Subjunctive because dependent on another subjunctive or infinitive.

Subordinate sentences are often found with the verb in the subjunctive, not because of any special meaning (*e.g.* a non-real condition, a command, purpose, concession, &c.) which the verb has to express, but because they are stated not as a fact but as part of a thought. The principal sentence which they qualify has its verb in the infinitive or subjunctive. (If the subordinate sentence would in any case have had the subjunctive, even though the principal sentence had the indicative or imperative, it is not referred to this head, but to the head suitable to the special meaning.)

The following are typical instances:

1. *Dicit eos qui boni sint beatos esse.*
2. *Petit, ut iis qui adfuerint credamus.*  
*Malim, quæ non desideres audias.*

The subjunctive expresses an action qualifying another supposed, or abstractly conceived, action, *i.e.* in sentences forming an essential part of an infinitive or subjunctive sentence, and neither expressing an independent declaration of facts, nor simply definitive of existing persons or things or classes.

N.B. To this head belongs the substitution of the subjunctive for the indicative, when a speech or thoughts are reported.

These sentences are chiefly relative, or introduced by *si*, *cum*, *dum*, or *quod*.

1. *Subjunctive, because dependent on infinitive.*

For the distinctive use of tenses, see § 1527.

*Jam mihi videor navasse operam, quod huc venerim.* (C. Or. 2. 7.)

*Sapiens non dubitat, si ita melius sit, migrare de vita.* (C. Fin. 1. 19.)

*Se quisque hostem ferire, murum ascendere, conspici, dum tale facinus faceret, properabat.* (Sall. C. 7.)

*Hoc video, dum breviter voluerim dicere, dictum esse a me paullo obscurius.* (C. Or. 1. 41.)

*Continued on p. 340.*



## Indicative although dependent on a subjunctive or infinitive.

The use of the subjunctive mood in sentences subordinate to a principal clause which has the subjunctive or infinitive is carefully restricted, so as not to throw an air of uncertainty about what is intended to be stated as fact. There are indeed many sentences in which it matters not whether the subordinate clause retain the indicative, and thus state a thing as it appears to all, or whether the subjunctive be used so as to state the same fact as part of the thought of the speaker or some one else. But there are other sentences where what is a fact is to be stated as such, and then the indicative must be used. Especially frequent in this way is the indicative with *ut*, "*as*," and *dum* when simply meaning '*while*.' Obviously in these cases a subjunctive might suggest a wrong meaning, *e. g.* a purpose or consequence or proviso.

The following are typical instances:

1. Dicit quosdam. qui revera mali sunt, bonos esse.
2. Petit ut quibusdam. qui nunquam adhaerunt, credamus.  
*Malim, id quod non desideras, hæc audias.*

*The indicative is regularly found where the sentence, grammatically dependent on a subjunctive or infinitive sentence, contains an independent declaration of fact, and frequently in other sentences, which express simple definitions or qualifications.*

1. Indicative, although dependent on infinitive.

Apud Hypanim marium, qui ab Europæ parte in Pontum induit, Aristoteles ait bestias quasdam nasci, que unum diem vivant.

(C. T. D. I. 39.)

Eloquendi vis efficit, ut et ea, quæ ignoramus, discere, et ea, quæ scimus, alios docere possimus. (C. N. D. 2. 59)

Putasne posse facere, ut, quæ Verres nefarie fecerit, ea eoque acerba et infama videantur esse his, qui audient, atque illis visa sunt, qui senserunt? (C. Cæcil. 12.)

*Continued on p. 341.*

Dolum malum Aquillius tum teneri putat, cum aliud sit simulatum, aliud actum. (C. N. D. 3. 30.)

Nos quidem hoc sentimus: si exploratum tibi sit, posse te illius regni potiri, non esse cunctandum; si dubium sit, non esse conandum. (C. Fam. 1. 7, § 7.)

Philosophos ego existimo, etiam si qui ipsi rem publicam non gesserint, tamen, quoniam de republica multa quæsierint et scripserint, functos esse aliquo reipublicæ munere. (C. R. P. 1. 7.)

Negant intueri lucem esse fas ei, qui a se hominem occisum esse fateatur. (C. Mil. 3.)

Non enim is sum, qui, quicquid videtur, tale dicam esse, quale videatur. (C. Ac. 2. 7.)

2. *Subjunctive, because dependent on subjunctive; (usually on one which expresses an hypothesis, condition, purpose, result, or reported speech.)* 1778

Si luce quoque canes latrent, quum deos salutatum aliqui venerint, crura, opinor, eis suffringantur, quod acres sint etiam tum, quum suspitio nulla sit. (C. Rosc. Am. 20.)

Rex mittit: si videatur, ut Verres reddat. (C. Verr. 4. 29.)

Fraus fidem in parvis sibi præstruit, ut, quum operæ pretium sit, cum mercede magna fallat. (L. 28. 42.)

In Hortensio memoria fuit tanta, quantam in nullo cognovisse me arbitror, ut, quæ secum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, quibus cogitavisset. (C. Brut. 88.)

Sic perpressio ceterorum facit, ut ea, quæ acciderint, multa minora, quam quanta sint existimata, videantur. (C. T. D. 3. 24.)

Sic enim mihi perspicere videor, ita natos esse nos, ut inter omnes esset societas quædam, major autem, ut quisque proxime accederet. (C. Læl. 5.)

Non committam, ut dum vereare tu ne sis ineptus, me esse judices. (C. Or. 2. 4.)

Erant multi, qui quamquam non ita se rem habere arbitrarentur, tamen libenter id, quod dixi, de illis oratoribus prædicarent. (C. Or. 2.)

Facturusne operæ pretium sim, si a primordio urbis res populi Romani perscripserim nec satis scio, nec, si sciam, dicere ausim. (L. præf.)

Ita mihi salvam rempublicam sistere liceat. ut moriens feram mecum spem, mansura in vestigio suo fundamenta reipublicæ quæ jecero. (Augustus apud Suet. *Aug.* 28.)

Hæc fieri, ut memoro, facile hinc cognoscere possis. (Lucr. 4. 749.)

Id ut ne fiat. uno modo arbitror caveri posse, si effectum eris. ne possis rebellare. (L. 34. 17.)

Quicquid his annis libidine, quicquid fraude, quicquid scelere peccatum est, ex illo uno sacrario sentote ortum esse. (L. 39. 16.)

Vos quoque æquum est, quæ vestra mania sunt, quæ quisque loco positus eris, quod imperabitur, impigre prestare. (Id.)

2. *Indicative, although dependent on subjunctive.*

1775

Mors si timeretur, non L. Brutus arcens eam reditu tyrannum, quem ipse expulerat, in proelio concidisset. (C. T. D. 1. 37.)

Si hæc contra ac dico essent omnia, tamen, &c. (C. Verr. 4. 8.)

Ego omnibus, unde petitur, hoc consilli dederim. (C. Fam. 7. 11.)

Illud quidem statim curatur, ut quicquid cælati argenti fuit in illius bonis, ad istam deferatur. (C. Verr. 2. 12.)

Orator surripiat oportet imitationem, ut is, qui audiet, cogitet plura quam videat. (C. Or. 2. 39.)

Eum, qui palam est adversarius, facile cavendo vitare possis. (C. Verr. 1. 15.)

‘Ne nihil remissum dicatis, remitto,’ inquit Papirius, ‘ne utique dorsum demulceatis, quum ex equis descendetis.’ (L. 9. 16, § 16.)

Vos hortor, ut quodcumque militum contrahere poteritis, contrahatis et eodem veniantis quam primum. Arma quæ ad me missuri eratis, his censeo armetis milites, quos vobiscum habetis. (Cn. Pompeius ap. C. Att. 3. 121.)

Quotus enim quisque philosophorum invenitur, qui sit ita moratus, ut ratio postulat? (C. T. D. 2. 4.)

Servus est nemo, qui non, quantum audet et quantum potest, conferat ad salutem voluntatis. (C. Cat. 4. 8.)

Existet autem hoc loco quædam questio subdilectis, nam quando amici novi, digni amicitia, veteribus sint anteponendi, ut equis vetulis teneres anteponeere solemus. (C. Lael. 18.)

Cur paupertas aliarum sub hac legis specie latet, ut, quod habere non possunt, habituræ, si liceret, fuisse videantur? (L. 34. 4, § 14.)

Sub idem tempus consules, cum quoad viam colles obliqui dederunt descendissent, dextere iter, &c. (L. 38. 22.)

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## OF REPORTED SPEECH.

THE use of the infinitive and subjunctive in reports of speeches and thoughts deserves collective notice. 178

When a statement is directly made, a question directly put, or a supposition directly expressed, the *language* is said to be *direct* (*oratio recta*). So also in a report which preserves the independent form in which the speech, &c. was delivered as, *Cæsar said: I am about to march*, &c.

When a statement, question, or supposition is reported in a form which makes it dependent in construction on some such words as *said*, the language is said to be *oblique* or *indirect* (*oratio obliqua*); thus, *Cæsar said that he was about to march*.

(A) The moods used in the *oratio obliqua* are the infinitive and subjunctive, never (unless by an irregularity) the indicative. 178

1. All statements in principal sentences in the indicative mood in the *oratio recta* become infinitives in the *oratio obliqua* (§§ 1351, 1352). Those relative sentences in which *qui*=*et is* or *nam is*, *quum*=*et tum*, &c. (being not really subordinate sentences) are put in the infinitive (§ 1794).

2. Questions in the indicative mood in *oratio recta*, are, if closely dependent on a verb of asking, put in the subjunctive, being in fact ordinary indirect questions (§ 1758); but if they are part of the continuous report of a speech, they are put in the infinitive, if of the first or third person<sup>1</sup>; in the subjunctive, if of the second person<sup>2</sup>. 178

e.g. *Quid facio?* becomes *quid (se) facere?*

*Quid facis?* becomes *quid (ille) faceret?*

*Quid facit?* becomes *quid (illum) facere?*

(But *rogavit, quid (ipse, ille, &c.) faceret* for all alike.)

3. All subordinate sentences (§ 1736), as also all sentences in the subjunctive and imperative moods in *oratio recta*, are put in the subjunctive (comp. § 1606), with few exceptions, viz.: 178

<sup>1</sup> Exceptions are rare, and are chiefly due to the sentence being conceived as a dependent interrogative. Liv. 7. 15, 'sequeretur'; 5. 2, 'facturi essent'; Cæs. C. 1. 32, 'passus esset'; Tac. A. 11. 19, 'conciat'; 13. 42, 'paravisset'; 4. 4, 'loqueretur'; II. 4. 69, 'peteretur.'

<sup>2</sup> But except Liv. 45. 19, 'petiturum'; 6. 39, 'astimatueros.'

(a) *The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in the apodosis to a conditional sentence, are (in oratio obliqua) expressed in the active voice by the future participle with fuisse: in the passive, by the periphrasis futurum fuisse ut (§ 1790). The future participle with esse is used also for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) active: and fore or futurum esse ut for the present (and sometimes for the imperfect) passive.*

(b) *Occasionally short relative clauses are attracted into the infinitive: (compare §§ 1269. 1677).*

Scribebant, ut feras quasdam mitescere arte, sic immitem et implacabilem ejus viri animum esse. (L. 33. 43.)

Admonemus cives nos eorum esse et, si non easdem opes habere, eandem tamen patriam incolere. (L. 4. 3. § 3.)

Affirmavi quidvis me potius perpessurum, quam ex Italia ad bellum ante exiturum. (C. Fam. 2. 16.)

Rex supra Coclites Muciosque dicere id facinus esse, et præ se ferre, quemadmodum, si non dedatur Clælia obses, pro rupto fœdus se habiturum, sic deditam intactam inviolatamque ad suos remissurum. (L. 2. 13.)

(c) *Sentences with dum sometimes (in poets, &c.) retain the indicative.*

Dic hospes Spartæ nos te hic vidisse jacentes dum sanctis patriæ legibus obsequimur. (ap. C. T. D. 1. 42.)

Id se narrat solerti furtim, dum traditur, astu supposita cepisse manu. (Ov. M. 4. 775.)

(B) 1. The tenses of the infinitive are present, or perfect, or future according as the time would have been present, past, or future in the *oratio recta*.

2. The tenses of the subjunctive are usually secondary, viz. imperfect and pluperfect, especially in commands or questions; but the present and perfect are sometimes used, especially if the verb on which the whole *oratio obliqua* depends be in the present.

(C) In ordinary historical accounts no other person than the third can in general be used. Thus

1. Instead of pronouns of the 1st or 2nd persons, the pronouns *se, suus, ipse, is, ille*, in the requisite cases are used.

The pronouns *hic, this near me*, and *iste, that near you*, are rarely found in *oratio obliqua*.

(Nos and noster are sometimes used by Cæsar of the Roman people or Roman army generally.)

2. All finite verbs are put in the third person.



The following tabular statement of the above may be useful:

1787

(A) *Mood: Principal sentences.*

	<i>Oratio Recta.</i>	<i>Oratio Obliqua.</i>
<i>Statements</i>	Indicative	Infinitive
	Subjunctive (hypothesis)	In active, future part. with <b>fuisse</b> , or sometimes (for present or imperfect) <b>esse</b> . In passive <b>futurum fuisse, ut, &amp;c.</b> , or sometimes (for present or imperfect) <b>fore</b> or <b>futurum esse, ut, &amp;c.</b>
<i>Questions</i>	{ Indicative { 1st & 3rd pers. { 2nd pers.	Infinitive
	{ Subjunctive	Subjunctive
<i>Commands or Prohibitions</i>	Imperative }	Subjunctive
	Subjunctive }	

*Subordinate sentences.*

Indicative }	Subjunctive
Subjunctive }	

(B) *Tense.*

	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
Present }	Imperfect, sometimes
Future }	Present
Completed Future }	Pluperfect, sometimes
Perfect }	Perfect
Imperfect	Imperfect
Pluperfect { ordinary	Pluperfect
{ hypothetical	Future participle with <b>fuerim</b>

	<i>Infinitive.</i>
Present	Present
Future	Fut. part. with <b>esse</b>
Completed Future }	
Perfect }	Perfect
Imperfect }	
Pluperfect }	

(C) *Person.*

ego, meus, tu, tuus, iste,  
is, ille

hic, nunc,

often by

se, ipse, suus, (usually)  
of the subject of the  
sentence: is, ille, of  
what is not the sub-  
ject

ille, tum, tunc

The above rules will be best illustrated by the following extracts: 1788

## ORATIO RECTA.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii ubi tu eos constitueris atque esse volueris: sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscitor et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus es, cum ii qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non poterant, ne ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribueris aut nos despexeris. Nos ita a patribus majoribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtute, quam dolo contendamus aut insidiis nitamur. Quare ne commiseris ut hic locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate populi Romani et internecone exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat.

Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur quod eas res quas vos (legati Helvetii) commemoravistis memoria teneo: atque eo gravius fero quo minus merito populi Rom. acciderunt; qui si alicujus injuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere: sed eo deceptus

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(Is ita cum Cæsare egit): Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Cæsar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improvise unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut sua magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani et internecone exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

(His Cæsar ita respondit:) Eo 1789 sibi minus dubitationis dari quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoria teneret atque eo gravius fero quo minus merito populi Rom. accidissent: qui si alicujus injuriæ sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod

## ORATIO RECTA.

*est*, quod neque commissum a se intelligebat quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci *volo*, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *me* invito iter per provinciam per vim temptastis, quod Hæduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexastis memoriam deponere possum? Quod *vestra* victoria tam insolenter gloriâmini quodque tam diu *vos* impune injurias tulisse admirâmini eodem pertinet. Consuerunt enim *dii* immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiore interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum *hæc* ita sint, tamen si obsides a *vobis* *mibi* dabuntur, uti ea quæ pollicemini facturos intelligam, et si Hæduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciatis, *vobiscum* pacem faciam.

*Rem male egit*

*natura*, quod cervis et cornicibus vitam diuturnam, quorum id nihil interest, hominibus, quorum maxime interfuit, tam exiguum vitam dedit: quorum si ætas potuisset esse longinquior, omnibus perfectis artibus, omni doctrina, hominum vita erudita esset.

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

neque commissum a se intelligeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliæ oblivisci *vellet*, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *eo* invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Hæduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent memoriam deponere *posse*? Quod *sua* victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu *se* impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim *deos* immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiore interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum *ea* ita sint, tamen si obsides ab *iis* *sibi* dentur, uti ea quæ polliceantur facturos intelligat, et si Hæduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, *sese* cum *iis* pacem esse facturum.

Cæs. G. I. 13, 14.

Theophrastus moriens *accusasse naturam* dicitur, quod cervis et cornicibus vitam diuturnam, quorum id nihil interesset, hominibus, quorum maxime interfuisse, tam exiguum vitam dedisset: quorum si ætas potuisset esse longinquior, *futurum fuisse* ut omnibus perfectis artibus, omni doctrina, hominum vita erudiretur.

Cic. T. D. III. 28, § 69.

## ORATIO RECTA.

Quid  
est levius aut turpius quam  
auctore hoste de summis rebus  
capere consilium?

Deorum immortalium benigni-  
tate, *meis* consiliis, patientia mi-  
litum Veis jam *erant* in potestate  
populi Romani: quid de praeda  
faciendum *arbitris*?

Quod vero ad amicitiam po-  
puli Romani adulerant, id eis  
eripi quis pati possit?

Ata est in vestibulo templi  
Lacinae Junonis, cujus cinis  
nullo unquam moveretur vento.

Regitur mundus numine deo-  
rum: est quasi communis urbs  
et civitas hominum et deorum...  
ex quo illud natura consequitur  
ut, &c.

Jacent tamdiu irritae actiones  
quae de *novis* commodis feruntur,  
cum interim de sanguine  
ac supplicio suo litam legem con-  
festum exercetur. (*Comp.* §§ 1174,  
1471.)

See also Czs. Gall. I. 17, 23, 26, 31, 33, 36, 40, 44, 45. Czs.  
I. 9. Cic. Mth. 33. Lael. 10. Liv. I. 30, 33; IV. 3; V. 20. Tacit.  
Ann. XIII. 43; XIV. 1.

## ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(Tribuni militum nihil temere  
agendum existimabant.) Quid  
esse levius aut turpius quam  
auctore hoste de summis rebus  
capere consilium?

Czs. G. v. 23.

(Litteras ad senatum misit.) Deo-  
rum immortalium benignitate,  
*meis* consiliis, patientia militum  
Veis jam *fore* in potestate po-  
puli Romani: quid de praeda  
faciendum *arbitris*?

Liv. 3. 20.

(Dixit)...Quod vero ad ami-  
citiam populi Rom. adulerant,  
id eis eripi quis pati possit?

Czs. G. I. 43.

(Fama est) iram esse in ves-  
tibulo templi Lacinae Junonis,  
cujus (=et ejus) cinerem nullo  
unquam moveri vento.

Liv. 24. 3.

Mundum censent regi numine  
deorum *omneque* esse quasi com-  
munem urbem et civitatem homi-  
num et deorum...ex quo illud  
natura consequi ut, &c.

Cic. Fin. 12.

(Egerrime id plebs ferebat.) Jacent  
tam diu irritae actiones  
quae de *novis* commodis feruntur  
cum interim de sanguine ac  
supplicio suo litam legem con-  
festum exerceri. Liv. 4. 31.

*When an indicative mood is found in the midst of oratio obliqua, 1797 it expresses an assertion of the narrator, not of the person whose speech is being reported; as*

Cæsar per exploratores certior factus est, ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse. (Cæs. G. 3. 2.)

*(The clause quam Gallis concesserat is Cæsar's explanation for the benefit of his readers: the scouts would describe it to him by the local relations.)*

Interim Cæsari nuntiatur Sulmonenses, quod oppidum a Corfinio VII. milium intervallo abest, cupere ea facere quæ vellet, sed a Q. Lucretio senatore et Attio Peligno prohiberi, qui id oppidum VII. cohortium præsidio tenebant. (Cæs. G. 1. 18.)

Diogenes quidem Cynicus dicere solebat Harpalum, qui temporibus illis prædo felix habebatur, contra deos testimonium dicere, quod in illa fortuna tam diu viveret. (C. N. D. 3. 34.)

Premebat reum, quod M. Volscius testis exstiterat, se haud multo post quam pestilentia in urbe fuerat, in juventutem grassantem in Subura incidisse. (L. 3. 13.)

Dixit se a conspectu suorum ablatum ex strepitu tamen et clamore sensisse usque ad noctem extractum certamen; nec ad tumulum, quem ipse tenuerat, præ multitudine hostium credere perrumpi potuisse. (L. 4. 41.)

*But this principle is sometimes neglected, and the indicative put 1798 where the subjunctive ought to stand.*

C. Mario magna atque mirabilia portendi haruspex dixerat: proinde, quæ animo agitabat, fretus dis ageret. (Sall. J. 63.)

Hortatur ad cetera quæ levia sunt, parem animum gerant. (Sall. J. 54.)

*(In the speech of Mithridates professedly quoted as in oblique lan- 1799 guage by Justin from Trogus Pompeius (Just. 38. 4—7), relative clauses are (in Jeep's text) sometimes put in subjunctive, sometimes in indicative, and ipse numeret occurs (4, § 9) for se numerare or sibi numerandum; obruantur (§ 16) for fore ut obruantur; exspectat Asia and incussit (7, § 8) for exspectare Asiam, incussisse, while other principal verbs are correctly in the infinitive. But the text requires correction. And see now Madvig, Advers. II. 628.)*



## SUPPLEMENT TO SYNTAX.

- I. *Prepositions and quasi-prepositional Adverbs.*
- II. *Conjunctions.*
- III. *Negative particles.*
- IV. *Interrogative particles.*
- V. *Pronouns.*



## I. PREPOSITIONS AND QUASI-PREPOSITIONAL ADVERBS.

THE following pages contain instances of the use of all Latin words which have a prepositional or quasi-prepositional use. All are indeclinable words, and are used in connexion with substantives in a certain case or in certain cases. But there is considerable difference in this respect among them. Some are never used except in such a connexion; others are frequently used independently without any substantive dependent on them; one (*versus*) appears to be scarcely entitled to a place in the list at all, as the accusative case, with which it is sometimes found in connexion, is explicable as an ordinary accusative of the *place towards which*; and almost the same may be said for *usque*. Some are used both with an accusative and ablative, others with one of these cases exclusively; two are used with the genitive, three with the dative, so far as a dative can be considered to belong to a particular word (see § 1131). Again, some of these prepositions are frequently compounded with verbs; others are frequently used with verbs, but the connexion is so loose that it is hardly to be called composition at all. Again, most prepositions are prefixed to the substantive; a few are always postponed; others are occasionally but rarely postponed in prose.

A few particles used only in composition, viz. *amb-*; *an-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *red-*, *-secus*; and a few adverbs closely akin to prepositions, e.g. *contra*, *intro*, *retro*, *simul*, *simultra*, are also noticed.

i. (a) Prepositions proper; i.e. which are never used except with a substantive in an oblique case (or in composition).

*ab*, *ad*, *apud*, *cis*, *cum*, *de* (except in phrase *deque usque*), *ex*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per* (but cf. § 646), *pro* (except in phrase *pro ut*), *sed* (also conjunction), *sine*, *sub*, *ultra*. To these may be added the otherwise peculiar *erga*, *penes*, *tenus*.

(b) Words which have both an adverbial and a prepositional use i.e. are used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in an oblique case:

*adversus*, *ante*, *circa*, *circiter*, *circum*, *citra*, *clam*, *clamculum*, *contra*, *coram*, *ergo*, *extra*, *infra*, *intra*, *intus*, *juxta*, *palam*, *pone*, *post*, *præ*, *præter*, *procul*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *simul*, *subter*, *super*, *supra*, *ultra*.

ii. (a) Used with accusative and ablative; **in**, **sub**, **super**; and possibly **clam**, **intus**. 1802

(b) Used with accusative only;

**ad**, **adversus**, **ante**, **apud**, **circum**, **circa**, **circiter**, **cis**, **citra**, **clam** (?), **clanculum**, **contra**, **erga**, **extra**, **infra**, **inter**, **intra**, **ob**, **penes**, **per**, **pone**, **post**, **præter**, **prope**, **propter**, **secundum**, **supra**, **uls**, **ultra**.

Of these however some are apparently used with ablatives in certain adverbial expressions: viz.

**adhuc**, **adeo**, **quoad**; **quocirca**.

**antehac** (**antidhac** Plaut.), **antea**; **posthac**, **postea** (**postidea** old), **postilla**, **interea**; **præterea**; **propterea**, **quapropter**:

Compare also **postibi** (Plaut.), **interibi** (Plaut.), **inibi**; **interim**, **deim**, **exim**, **proin**; **abhinc**.

(c) With ablative only; **ab**, **coram**, **cum**, **de**, **ex**, **intus** (?), **palam**, **præ**, **pro**, **procul**, **sed**, **simul**, **sine**.

(d) With accusative and dative; **advorsum**, **contra**, **juxta**.

(e) With genitive and ablative; **tenus**.

(f) With genitive only; **ergo**.

iii. (1) Prepositions used in composition (as well as with oblique cases); 1803

**ab**, **ad**, **apud**, **cum**, **de**, **ex**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **præ**, **pro**, **sed**, **sub**.

(2) Used with verbs, but without clear mark of composition; **ante**, **contra**, **intra**; **post**, **præter**, **subter**, **super**.

Occasionally the preposition is separated from its case by other words. This is usual with **per** in oaths and adjurations: but otherwise is almost confined to poetry. 1804

**Ergo** and **versus** are always subjoined to the substantive; **tenus** to the substantive or its epithet. **Cum** is always subjoined to a personal pronoun, and often to a relative pronoun. Besides these:— 1805

Cicero subjoins **propter** occasionally to personal and relative pronouns, **de**, **contra**, and, once each, **ante**, **circa**, **circum** to relatives.

Vergil occasionally subjoins **circum**, **contra**, **inter**, **juxta**, **penes**, **propter**, **sine**, **subter**, **supra**; and, when an attribute follows, **ab**, **ad**, **ex**, **in**, **per**, **sub**, **ultra**. Lucretius subjoins several times **ex**, **per** and once **ad**, **apud**, besides other instances where an attribute follows; Tacitus sometimes subjoins **apud**, **coram**, **inter**, **intra**, **juxta**, **penes**, **propter**, **simul**, **super**, **ultra**. Other writers have occasional instances, Livy not infrequently; especially after relatives.

**Abs, ab, a, also in a few inscriptions af;** (In Cicero's orations *abs* is frequently found, but before *te* only).

Used only as preposition with ablative case only. Compare, however, *abhinc* (§ 532).

'From,' of the starting-place.

1. 'From,' of place; in matters of movement and distance, literally and metaphorically.

Si qui mihi præsto fuerit cum armatis hominibus extra meum fundum et me introire prohibuerit, non ex eo sed ab eo loco me dejecerit. (C. Cæcin. 30.)

Cadum modo hinc a me huc cum vino transferam. (Pl. Stich. 647.)

Sed foris concrepuit hinc a vicino sene. (Pl. Mil. 154.)

Diogenes, Alexandro rogitante ut diceret si quid opus esset, 'nunc quidem paululum,' inquit, 'a sole.' (C. T. D. 5. 32.)

Primum, irridere ex muro quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur. (Cæs. G. 2. 30.)

Suma af Capua Regium milia CCCXXI.

(C. I. R. 551, given in this Grammar, Vol. I. p. 425.)

Ex intestinis autem secretus a reliquo cibo sucus is, quo alimur, permanat ad jecur per quasdam a medio intestino usque ad portas jecoris (sic enim appellantur) ductas et directas vias.

(C. N. D. 2. 55.)

Hæc Janus summus ab imo prodocet. (Hor. Ep. 1. 1. 54.)

Istæ nationes a ceterarum gentium more ac natura dissentiant.

(C. Fam. 13.)

Non ab re sit quærendi aquas junxisse rationem. (Plin. 31. § 43.)

2. 'From,' of the starting-point in time and reckoning.

Ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnatum est.

(Cæs. G. 3. 14.)

Rem omnem a principio audies. (Ter. And. 48.)

Scipio confestim a prælio expugnatis hostium castris ad naves rediit.

(L. 30. 36.)

Surgit ab his solio ('after these words.' Ov. Met. 3. 273.)

Eodem die tuas litteras vesperi acceperam in Pompeiano, sane celeriter, tertio abs te die. (C. Att. 14. 18.)

His artibus a pueris dediti fuimus. (C. Or. 1. 1.)

Lex a quinquagesimo anno militem non legit, a sexagesimo senatorem non citat. (Sen. Dial. 10. 20.)



## 3. 'From;' of the thing left or shunned.

1809

Aversi a vento parumper consedere. (L. 21. 58.)

Hæc duobus æstatibus gesta conjunxi, quo requiesceret animus a domesticis malis. (Tac. A. 6. 44.)

Neque insidiæ consuli procedebant, et ab incendio intellegebat urbem vigiliis munitam. (Sall. C. 32.)

Elephanti tutum ab hostibus, quacunque incederent, agmen præbebant. (L. 21. 35.)

Neque sustinere se a lapsu potuerunt. (Ib.)

Si ab persequendo hostis deterrere nequiverant, disjectos ab tergo aut lateribus circumveniebant. (Sall. J. 50.)

## 4. 'From,' sometimes 'in consequence of:' of the source.

1810

Illæ in bellis gerendis ab dis immortalibus pacem ac veniam petunt. (C. Font. 13.)

Idque eo fuit mirabilis, quod ab eo laus imperatoria non admodum expectabatur. (C. Acad. 2. 1.)

A quo quidem genere judices ego numquam timui. (C. Sull. 20.)

Quicquid ab hostibus cladis ignominiaque aut jam acceptum esset aut immineret, culpam penes Mænium fore testati sunt.

(L. 4. 53.)

Hermippi fide pecuniam sumpsit mutuam a Fufiis: a discipulis suis dicebat Fufiis persoluturum. (C. Flac. 20.)

Uxori testamento legat grandem pecuniam a filio, si qui natus esset: ab secundo herede nihil legat. (C. Clu. 12.)

Recte prætor a liberis initium fecit ab intestato successionis, ut, sicuti contra tabulas ipsis defert, ita et ab intestato ipsos vocet. (Ulp. ap. Dig. 38. 6. 1, § 5.)

Id a re, quod nunc quoque tenet nomen, interregnum appellatum. (L. 1. 17.)

Porsinna discedens ab Janiculo castra opulenta Romanis dono dedit, inopi tum urbe ab longinqua obsidione. (L. 2. 14.)

T. Manlium stolide lætum et linguam ab irrisu exserentem producant. (L. 7. 10.)

Horum nomina non me a nimio favore sed a certo posuisse iudicio scietis, cum sententias eorum retulero.

(Sen. Rhet. Contr. 10, Præf. § 16.)

## 5. 'By,' 'from;' of the agent, especially with verbs in passive voice.

1811

Damippus, missus ab Syracusis ad Philippum regem, captus ab Romanis navibus erat. (L. 25. 23.)

Trebonium meum a te amari teque ab illo persequendo.

(C. Q. F. 3. 1. § 1.)

Animum nostrum indocimus ita, ut ei ante arbitrabamur, et vobis peccatum non esse. (Epist. ad Tiburt. C. I. R. 101.)

Altero uti voluit, ut virtus audaciam vinceret; altero minus necessario est, ne virtus ab audacia vinceretur. (C. Sen. 41.)

Anima calescit ipso ab spiritu. (C. M. D. 2. 33.)

Camp. Est hominis ingenui et liberaliter educati velle bene audire a parentibus, a propinquis, a bonis etiam viris. (C. Fin. 3. 17.)

6. "From," "on the side of," "of the side or department concerned." 304

Picus et cornix ab leva, corvus parva ab dextera consistunt.

(Pl. Av. 160.)

Jam phalanx a fronte, a lateribus, ab tergo, cuncta est. (L. 11. 41.)

Mazium ab jugulo ita, ut per costas ferrum emineret, terra munita. (L. 1. 7.)

Renuntiaverunt non eadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita. (Czs. G. 3. 37.)

Gallia attingit ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum.

(Czs. G. 1. 1.)

Omnia ego istuc facile parior, dum hic hinc a me sentiam. Tu, Atqui nunc a te sum, verum hinc abis testimonium.

(Pl. Rud. 1100.)

Nemo contra civium perditionem popularem turbulentisque dimentionem a senatu et a bonorum causa stetit constans.

(C. Brut. 79.)

Multi sunt praeterea ingrobi, quos quidem a se primum numerare possunt qui huc loquantur. (C. Paul. 7. 1.)

Antonius ab equitatu firmus esse dicebatur. (C. Fam. 10. 17.)

Militem neque a moribus neque a forma probatur sed tantum a viribus. (Suet. Jul. 67.)

So especially if the war is assigned to a slave or officer.

304

Pollicem servum a pedibus meum Romam misi. (C. Ann. 1. 3.)

Libertorum principis suspecti Polybium ab studiis, qui saepe inter duos consules ambulant; sed ante omnia Marcellum ab epistulis et Pallantem a rationibus. (Suet. Claud. 11.)

Lucius Menandro liberto suo Claudium tradidit ut a cognitionibus esset. (Sen. Luc. de M. Claud. fin.)

In composition: (See also §§ 986, 990).

181

**Abs** before **c, q, t**; **as** before **p**, except **aperire**; **ab** before **d, l, n, r, s, j, h** and vowels; **au** before **f** (but see Vol. I. p. 32 n.), except in **afui, afore**, and perhaps **affligere**; **a** before **m, v**. See § 78.

1. *Separation*: **abscedere**, go away; **abscidere**, cut off; **abscin-** 181  
**dere**, tear off; **abscondere**, hide away; **abdicare**, cry off, renounce;  
**abdicere**, assign away; **abdere**, remove, put away, hide; **abducere**,  
lead away; **aberrare**, wander off; **abesse**, be away; **auferre**, bear  
away; **aufugere**, flee away; **abhorrere**, shrink from; **ablcere**, throw  
aside (also 4); **abigere**, drive away; **abire**, go away; **abjudicare**,  
take away by judgment; **abjurare**, swear off, abjure; **ablégare**, send  
away; **ablocare**, let off = sublet; **abluere**, wash off or away; **aman-**  
**dare**, remove; **amittere**, send away, lose; **amoliri**, remove; **amovere**,  
remove; **abnuere**, reject by nod; **abominari**, put from one as ominous,  
detest, deprecate; **aspellere**, drive away; **asportare**, carry off; **abra-**  
**dere**, scrape off; **abripere**, drag off; **abrodere**, gnaw off; **abrogare**,  
remove by asking the people's consent, i.e. repeal; **abrumperre**, break  
off; **absillire**, leap away; **absistere**, stand aloof; **absolvere**, loose  
from, hence, take from the loom, i.e. finish; **abstergere**, wipe away,  
cleanse by wiping; **absterrere**, frighten off; **abstinere**, keep off, keep  
from; **abstrahere**, drag away; **abstrudere**, push away, thrust off;  
**aperire**, get off = uncover; **avehere**, carry off; **avellere**, tear away;  
**averruncare**, avert; **aversari**, turn oneself away, shun; **avertere**,  
turn away (hence **aversus**, at the back); **avocare**, call away; **avo-**  
**lare**, fly off.

With words of negative meaning **ab** merely strengthens: **abalien-**  
**nare**, alienate; **abnegare**, refuse; **aspernari**, spurn away, scorn.

2. *Consumption*: **abligurrire**, lick up; **absorbere**, swallow up;  
**absumere**, consume; **abuti**, use up.

3. *Reversal*: **abjungere**, unyoke; **abolere** trans., **abolescere**,  
intrans., stop growth; **aboriri**, to sink down, fail.

4. *Down*: **ablcere**, cast down (also § 1). Perhaps here belong  
(so Key, Lat. Gr. § 1304) **affligere**, throw down; **apponere**, put  
down; which however are usually regarded as, in all their uses,  
compounds of **ad**.

5. *Wrongly*: **abortus**, an untimely birth. (**Abuti** seems never to  
require this meaning; see above 2.)

6. **Abundare**, abound, from **abunde**, in abundance; if ultimately  
from **unda**, means washing over?

*Absque; with ablative only, 'without.' Not in Cicero or in any Augustan writers.*

1. *In Plautus and Terence, only in conditional clauses containing an impersonal esset or foret (§ 1536). The noun in the ablative is usually a person (me, te, &c.).*

*Nam absque foret te, sat scio in alto distraxissent disque tulissent satellites tui miserum fude. (Pl. Truc. 831.)*

2. *In post-Augustan writers (rare).*

*Post hæc intuendum videtur...an, etiamsi nulla ratione Milo ductus est, impetu raptus sit et absque sententia, nam vulgo dicitur scelera non habere consilium. (Quintil. 7. 44.)*

*Ad; used only as preposition with accusative case. 'To, (but not into)'*

1. (a) *'To,' of a place, person, or thing, as the goal of motion literally and metaphorically.*

*Cum Fabio maximo quartum consule adolescentulus miles ad Capuam profectus sum, quintoque anno post ad Tarentum. (C. Sen. 4.)*

*Ubi ad Dianæ veneris, ito ad dextram. (Ter. Ad. 581.)*

*Itaque optimum visum est ad Hannibalem mitti legatos. (L. 24. 2.)*

*Velim domum ad te scribas, ut mihi tui libri pateant. (C. Att. 4. 14.)*

*Has litteras sibi a Lentulo ad Catilinam datas esse dicebat.*

*(C. Cat. 3. 5.)*

*Eo die invitatus est ad consulem Perseus. (L. 45. 8.)*

*Dubitabat ille, quod ad fratrem promiserat. (C. Or. 2. 7.)*

*Penes principes erat tota respublica, non provocatione ad populum contra necem et verbera relicta. (C. R. P. 2. 37.)*

*Collis in frontem leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planiciem redibat.*

*(Cæs. G. 2. 8.)*

*Inde verso repente in iram luctu, discurrunt ad arma. (L. 25. 37.)*

*Veniri ad se confestim existimantes, 'ad arma' conclamant.*

*(Cæs. G. 7. 70.)*

*Quæ vita maxime est ad naturam, ad eam me refero, ad litteras et studia mea. (C. Att. 4. 18.)*

*Discedentibus mandat, ut omnes ad bellum cogant. (Cæs. G. 2. 8.)*

*I, licitor, deliga ad palum. (L. 3. -)*

Nonne videtis rem ad seditionem spectare. (L. 25. 3.)

Profundat perdat pereat, nil ad me attinet. (Ter. *Ad.* 134.)

*Usque is rarely interposed between ad and its case.* 1819

Via pejor ad usque Bari mœnia piscosi. (Hor. *S.* 1. 5. 97.)

(Before the preposition or after its case *usque* is common.)

(b) 'At,' 'near;' of presence after motion. 1820

Supplicatio juventutis ad ædem Herculis indicta. (L. 21. 62.)

Plebes prope ripam Anienis ad tertium miliarium consedit.

(C. *Brut.* 14.)

Obsistens ad prima signa concitatam repressit aciem. (L. 25. 37.)

Ita solet narrare Scævola conchas eos et umbilicos ad Caietam et ad Laurentum legere consuesse. (C. *Or.* 2. 6.)

Licinium servum sibi ille habuit ad manum. (C. *Or.* 3. 60.)

Nonnumquam etiam ad vinum diserti sint. (C. *Cæ.* 28.)

Non solum ad Aristophanis lucernam sed etiam ad Cleanthis lucubravi. (Varr. *L.* 5, § 8.)

Est in Originibus solitos esse in epulis canere ad tibicinem de clarorum hominum virtutibus. (C. *T. D.* 1. 2.)

*So of proceedings before an officer or judge.* 1821

Demetrium iterum ad patrem accusavit Perseus. (L. 40. 24.)

Nomina dabant ad C. Postumium tribunum militum. (L. 45. 6.)

2. (a) 'To;' of the time, number, or place in a series, up to which one tends. (Compare the adverbs (originally ablatives?) *adhuc*, *adeo*, *quoad*. Some instances in §§ 1657, 1667, 1633.) 1822

Ab hora octava ad vesperum secreto collocuti sumus. (C. *Att.* 7. 8.)

Id ipsum scire cupio, quod ad tempus recte ad te scribere possim, id est, quamdiu Romæ futurus sis. (C. *Att.* 5. 5.)

Fere ad quattuor menses a mamma non dijunguntur agni.

(Varr. *R.R.* 2. 1. 20.)

Rem integram ad reditum suum jussit esse. (C. *Off.* 2. 23.)

Hospes, volo ego hanc percontari. SAC. A terra ad cælum quidlubet. (Pl. *Pers.* 604.)

Virgis te ad necem cædi necesse erit. (C. *Verr.* 3. 29.)

De amicitia omnes ad unum idem sentiunt. (C. *Læ.* 22.)

Ab quindecim ad sexaginta annos conjurant, nisi victores se non redituros. (L. 26. 25.)

Sane frequentes fuimus; omnino ad cc. (C. *Q. Fr.* 1. 1.)

Eorum, qui circa quæstorium oppressi, perire ad septingentos triginta. (L. 10. 33.)



*In these expressions of number ad sometimes lost its effect on the case, the whole phrase being treated as declinable.*

Ad mille et septingenti cæsi non plus centum Romanorum sociorumque occisis. (L. 22. 40.)

Occisis ad hominum millibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 33.)

(b) 'At,' 'on occurrence of.'

Semina concurrunt calidi fulgoris ad ictum. (Lucr. 6. 316.)

En hic est ille terrarum victor in machina pendens et ad periculum suum plaudens. (Plin. 36. § 118.)

Ad famam obsidionis dilectus haberi coeptus erat. (L. 9. 7.)

Ad hiemem me ex Cilicia recepi. (C. Fam. 3. 7.)

Ingenti ad postremum edito gemitu fidum e servis vocat. (L. 30. 15.)

Ad hæc tot tam necopinata primo omnium incerti stupentesque referunt pedem. (L. 25. 37.)

3. 'In addition to.'

His opinionibus inflato animo, ad hoc vitio quoque ingenii vehemens et impotens. (L. 6. 11.)

Si ad cetera volnera hanc quoque plagam infixisses auguratus tui.

(C. Var. 8.)

4. 'Looking at;' hence (a) 'in accordance with.'

Ad cursus Lunæ in duodecim menses describit annum. (L. 1. 19.)

Quæ omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 5.)

Numquam ego dicam, quos sapientis nostri majores indicabant, ad istorum normam fuisse sapientis. (C. Lel. 3.)

Fabellæ Latinæ ad verbum e Græcis expressæ. (C. Fin. 1. 2.)

Ad hunc modum institutus est. (C. T. D. 2. 3.)

Carmen reprehendite, quod non præsectum decies non castigavit ad unguem. (Hor. A. P. 294.)

(b) 'In reference to.'

Invicti ad laborem corporis fuit. (L. 9. 16.)

Elephanto beluarum nulla prudentior: ad figuram quis vastior?

(C. N. D. 1. 35.)

Addit etiam illud, equites non optimos misisse. Credo, Cæsar, nihil ad tuum equitatum, sed misit ex eis, quos habuit electos.

(C. Dejot. 8.)

Multo igitur mortem minus ad nos esse putandumst. (Lucr. 3. 926.)

Quinetiam, cibo quo utare, interesse aliquid ad mentis aciem putant.

(C. N. D. 2. 16.)

Cum mihi hoc responderis, tum memoriter respondeto ad ea quæ de te ipso rogaro. (C. *Vat.* 4.)

Ad mandata claudus, cæcus, mutus, mancus, debilis. (Pl. *Merc.* 630.)

Ad summam, DIC, M. TVLLI. Adsentior Cn. Pompeio. (C. *At.* 7. 7.)

Nonne ad senem aliquam fabricam fingit? (Ter. *Haut.* 545.)

Tecti esse ad alienos possumus: intimi multa apertiora videant necesse est. (C. *Ro. Am.* 40.)

5. 'To,' 'for,' 'for the purpose of.'

1828

Quibus enim nihil est in ipsis opis ad bene beateque vivendum, eis omnis ætas gravis est. (C. *Sen.* 2.)

Nondum ad petendum legitima ætas erat. (L. 24. 2.)

Ad colloquium vatem elicuit. (L. 5. 15.)

Ad ludibrium regem eum consalutari jussit. (L. 36. 14.)

Inde Romam ad scribendum novum exercitum redit. (L. 5. 19.)

Iis rebus indigebant quæ ad oppugnationem castrorum erant usui. (Cæs. *C.* 2. 35.)

Neque in omnibus satis est stipulatio aut solutio numorum ad mutationem domini. (Varr. *R. R.* 2. 1. 15.)

Paucis ad speciem tabernaculis relictis. (Cæs. *C.* 2. 35.)

Quantam fenestram ad nequitiam patefeceris. (Ter. *Haut.* 481.)

Ille ad omnes ictus expositus non ægre tamen exceptum poplitibus corpus tuebatur. (Curt. 9. 5. 9.)

Comparasti ad lecticam homines. (Catull. 10. 16.)

Servos ad remum, numero ex censu constituto, cum stipendio nostro dabamus. (L. 34. 6, § 13.)

In composition: (See also §§ 985, 986, 990).

1829

**Ad** is usually assimilated to **c** and (written **o**) to **q**, and the **d** omitted before **gn**. But it is often assimilated also to **p**, **f**, **g**, **t**, **n**, **l**, **r**, and the **d** omitted before **s**. For **ar-** see § 160, 10.

1. Local: 'to' or 'at.' (In English *up* is often used in the general sense of *approach*.)

**accēdere**, *approach*; **accidere**<sup>1</sup>, *cut down*; **accidere**, *fall to, happen*; **accingere**, *gird on*; **acclinare**, *lean on*; **accolere**, *dwell by*; **accrescere**,

<sup>1</sup> The meaning *down*, as suggested by Key (see above p. 356, 4), suits these verbs (also **adsidēre**) in some passages exceedingly well; e.g. Ter. *Haut.* 99, **adpone rastros**, but perhaps they belong to 5.

grow on or to; *accubare*, *accumbere*, lie at = sit at table; *accurrere*, run up; *addere* (throw on), add; *adducere*, lead to; *adequitare*, ride up; *aderrare*, wander to; *adesse*, be at, be present; *adferre*, bring to; *adfigere*, fix to; *adflare*, blow on; *adfigere*<sup>1</sup>, dash to the ground, strike against; *adfluere*, flow up; *adfrangere* (Stat.), break on; *adfricare* (post-Aug.), rub on; *adfulgere*, shine on; *adfunderere*, pour on; *adgerere*, bring to, heap up; *adglomerare*, wind on; *adglutinare*, glue on; *adgredi*, step up to, assail; *adhærere*, cling to; *adhibere* (bold to), apply; *adjacere*, lie near; *adicere*, throw in, add; *adigere*, drive in or to; *adire*, approach; *adjungere*, join to; *adlabi*, slip or glide to; *adlevare*, lift up (or to 5?); *adlidere*, dash against; *adligare*, bind to; *adlinere*, besmear (or to 5?): *adlucere*, shine on; *adluere*, wash against; *admittere*, let in; *admovere*, move towards; *adnare*, swim up; *adnavigare* (Plin.), sail towards; *adnectere*, tie to; *adniti*, lean on (also to 4 or 5); *adnotare*, note down, i.e. against a name or entry; *adoriri*, approach, attack; *appellare*, accost; *adpellere*, push on, of boats: put in to land; *adplicare*, put to; *adponere*<sup>1</sup>, place near; *adportare*, carry to; *adprimere* (Plin.), press to; *adpugnare* (Tac.), fight against; *acquiescere*, rest in; *adrepere*, creep up; *adrigere*, set up, erect; *adscendere*, climb up; *adsequi*, overtake; *adserere*, sow, plant near; *adsidere*, sit near; *adsilire*, leap up; *adstare*, stand near; *adspargere*, sprinkle on; *adspicere*, look at; *adspirare*, breathe on; *adstringere*, bind close; *adstruere*, build to; *adsurgere*, rise up; *adtentare*, stretch towards; *adterere*, rub against; *adtollere*, lift up; *adtorquere*, swing up; *adtrahere*, draw to; *advehere*, carry to; *advenire*, come to; *advertere*, turn to (hence *adversus*, in the front); *advocare*, summon to; *advolare*, fly towards; *advolvere*<sup>1</sup>, roll to.

2. 'To' or 'at,' in a more general sense of reference:

1831

*acclamare*, cry or shout at; *addicere*, adjudge; *adfari*, speak to; *adficere*, affect; *affremere* (Val. Fl.), roar at; *adgemere*, groan in response; *adhinnire*, neigh to; *adjudicare*, adjudge; *adlaborare* (Hor.), labour at; *adlacrime* (Verg.), sweep at; *adlatrare*, bark at; *alligare*, despatch; *adloqui*, speak to; *adludiare* (Plaut.), jest at; *adludere*, play upon; *admetiri*, measure out; *admirari*, wonder at; *admoenire* (Plaut.), fortify against; *admugire*, low to; *admurmurare*, murmur at; *adnuere*, nod assent; *adorare*, address; *adornare*, prepare; *adparare*, prepare; *adparere*, appear; *adplaudere*, clap at; *adplorare*, weep at; *adprecari* (Hor.), pray to; *adridere*, smile on; *adsentiri*, assent; *adservare*, preserve (for); *adsignare*, assign; *adsonare*, sound to; *advescere*, accustom (or to 5); *adstrepere*, sound at; *adstupere*, be amazed at; *adtemperare*, adjust; *adtestari*, bear witness to; *adtinere*, belong (see also 5); *adtonare*, thunder at; *adtremerere*, tremble at; *adtribuere*, assign; *adulari*, fawn upon (for *adululari*?).

3. 'To oneself.' *accipere*, take up, receive; *accire*, call to one as an associate; *agnoscere*, recognize; *adimere*, take away; *adlĕgere*, choose into one's own body; *adlicĕre*, entice; *adoptare*, adopt; *adprehendere*, lay hold of; *adripere*, seize; *adrogare*, appropriate by bill = adopt; *adscĭre*, *adsciscere*, take to oneself by decree; *adserere* (join to oneself), claim freedom of; *adsugere* (Lucr.), suck; *adsumere*, take, take up.

4. 'In addition.' *accensere*, reckon among; *accŭdere*, stamp in addition; *addiscere*, learn besides; *addocere*, teach besides; *adesurire*, be additionally hungry?; *adfigere*, invent in addition; *adfodere* (Plin.), dig in; *agnasce*, be born into a family; *adgravare*, make heavier; *admiscere*, mix in; *admonere*, remind (or to 5?); *adnumerare*, count in; *adpendere*, add in weighing; *adposcere*, ask in addition; *adpromittere* (Cic.), promise in addition; *acquirere*, get in addition; *adscribere*, enrol; *adsuĕre* (Hor.), sew in; *adtexere*, weave in; *advivere* (Scæv.), live on (i.e. continue to live).

5. Pleonastic or (originally) intensive. *adæquare*, make level (but cf. § 990); *adaggerare*, heap up; *adaperire*, throw open; *adaugere*, increase; *adbibere*, drink; *accelĕrare*, hasten; *accendere*, kindle; *accredere*, yield belief to; *accumulare*, pile up (or from *ad cumulum*, § 990); *accurare*, bestow care on; *addecere*, befit; *addensere*, close up; *adēdere*, eat up; *adfirmare*, affirm; *adhortari*, incite; *adimplere*, fill up; *adipisci*, attain to; *adjurare*, swear, adjure (or from *ad jus*, § 990); *adjuvare*, help; *adlaudare* (Plaut.), praise; *adlubescere* (Plaut.), begin to please; *administrare*, serve, manage; *admoderari* (Plaut.), moderate (or from *ad modum*, § 990); *admordere*, bite at; *admutilare* (Plaut.), clip; *annuntiare* (Plaut.), announce; *adolere*, pile up?; *adolescere*, grow up; *adoperire*, cover up; *adpetere*, rush at; *adprobare*, approve; *adproperare*, hasten on; *adradere*, scrape at; *adrodere*, gnaw at; *adsectari*, attend; *adsevĕrare*, assert strongly; *adsiccare* (post-Aug.), dry up; *adsidĕre*, settle; *adsimulare*, pretend; *adsociare* (Stat.), associate; *assolere*, be accustomed; *adtentare*, strive after; *adtenuare*, thin (or from *ad tenue*, § 990; see also 2); *adtondere*, clip; *adtrectare*, handle; *advĕlare* (Verg.), veil over; *adverberare* (Stat.), beat; *advigilare*, watch; *adurere*, burn; *agnoscere*, recognize.

6. In the following *ad* is often considered to denote *commencement*; but they may not improperly be referred to the last head:

*adamare*, fall in love (chiefly found in tenses from perfect stem and participle; cf. § 1244); *addubitare*, come to doubt; *adopinari*, come to think; *advesperascere*, draw towards evening.



**Adversum, adversus;** *used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in the dative and accusative cases. 'Towards,' 'against.'* Plautus and Terence are said always to use the form in **-um**. 1836

1. 'Turned towards,' 'facing.' **Exadversum, exadversus** also 1837  
*are used in this sense.*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Præquam ad portum venias, apud ipsum lacum est pistrilla et exadversum fabrica. (Ter. *Ad.* 583.)

Medicus neque in tenebris neque a capite ægri debet residere, sed illustri loco adversus. (Cels. 3. 6.)

(b) *With dative case.*

Tum facito ante solem occasum ut venias adversum mihi. 1838  
(Pl. *Men.* 437.)

Solus nunc eo adversum ero ex plurimis. (Pl. *Most.* 880.)

Ferre adversum homini occupemus osculum. (Pl. *Stich.* 89.)

Exadversum ei loco tonstrina erat quædam. (Ter. *Pb.* 89.)

(c) *With accusative case.* 1839

Regem introductum in tabernaculum adversus advocatos in consilium considerare jussit. (L. 45. 7.)

Gladiis dextris impetum adversus montem in cohortes faciunt. (Cæs. *C.* 1. 46.)

Me vestigia terrent, omnia te adversum spectantia, nulla retrorsum. (Hor. *Epist.* 1. 1. 75.)

Ara enim Aio Locutio exadversus eum locum consecrata est. (C. *Div.* 1. 45.)

Histria cognominata a flumine Histro in Hadriam effluente exadversum Padi fauces. (Plin. 3, § 127.)

Sed nunc peropus est aut hunc cum ipsa aut de illa me adversum hunc loqui. (Ter. *And.* 265.)

Egone ut te adversum mentiar, mater mea? (Pl. *Aul.* 682.)

2. 'In reply to,' 'in dealing with,' 'towards;' *with accusative case.* 1840

Adversus ea consul respondit. (L. 4. 10.)

Utendum etiam est excusatione adversus eos quos invitatus offendas. (C. *Off.* 2. 19.)



Cum hæc scribebam, censorem te esse sperabam; eo brevior est epistola, et, ut adversus magistrum morum, modestior.

(C. Fam. 3. 13.)

Cum justo et legitimo hoste res gerebatur, adversus quem et totum jus fetiale et multa sunt jura communia. (C. Off. 3. 29.)

In unica concordia inter ipsos summa adversus alios æquitas erat.

(L. 3. 33.)

3. 'Against;' (a) **advorsum quam** (*once only*), 'contrary to 1841  
*what*' (comp. **contraquam**, **præterquam**).

Utrum indicare me ei thensaurum æquom fuit, advorsum quam ejus me opsecravisset pater? (Pl. Trin. 175.)

(b) *With accusative case.*

1842

Potine ut ne licitere advorsum mei animi sententiam? (Pl. Merc. 441.)

Tu, M. Manli, adversus edictum nostrum extra ordinem in hostem pugnasti. (L. 8. 7.)

Adversus petentem exceptione doli mali defendi debet.

(Gai. 3, § 168.)

Advorsum divitias invictum animum gerebat. (Sall. J. 43.)

Dux repente lectus, in annum creatus, adversus veterem ac perpetuum imperatorem comparabitur. (L. 24. 8, 'matched against.')

Cecidit Critias, cum quidem exadversus Thrasybulum fortissime pugnaret. (Nep. Thras. 3.)

Quid autem esse duo prospera in tot sæculis bella Samnitium adversus tot decora populi Romani? (L. 7. 32.)

**Amb-, am-, an-;** in composition only; 'around,' 'on both sides' 1843  
(comp. ἀμφί, ἄμφω, ambo).

**ambēdēre** (Plaut.), *eat round*; **ancisus**, *cut around, or at both ends*; **amicire** (*am jacere?*) *throw round, clothe*; **ambigere** (*act in both ways*), *hesitate*; **ambire**, *go round*; **convass**; **amplecti**, *fold oneself round*; **amputare**, *lop around, cut off*; **anquirere**, *search round, inquire*; **amsanctus**, *awarded round*; **amburere**, *scorch round*.

**amfr-actus** *a circuit, bend*, perhaps shows another form of the prefix (**ambr-**, **ampr-** in Umbrian). Key, *Phil. Soc. Trans.* 1868-9, p. 304.

AN-<sup>1</sup> (comp. *an-*); in composition only: 'an' *anhelare*, *pant*.

1844

**Ante** (*antid. old*); used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in the accusative case. 'Before.'

1. Of space. 'Before,' 'in front.'

(a) Without a substantive dependent; 'in front' (rarely in sense of *prope*, 'forwards').

Fluvius ab tergo, ante circumque velut ripa præcepit oram ejus omnem cingebat. (L. 17. 18.)

Si aut manibus ingreditur quis, aut non ante, sed retro, fugere se ipse videatur. (C. Fin. 5. 12.)

(b) With accusative.

1846

Post me erat Egina, ante me Megara, dextra Piræus, sinistra Corinthus. (Sulp. 20. C. Fam. 4. 5.)

Ante se statuit funditores. (L. 42. 38.)

Postquam ante ostium me audivit stare, adproperat. (Ter. And. 474.)

Una cohors temere ante ceteras extra aciem procurrat.

(Cæs. C. 1. 55.)

Ingenū specimen est quoddam transilire ante pedes posita et alia longe repetita sumere. (C. Or. 3. 40.)

2. 'Before,' in time.

1847

(a) Without a substantive dependent on it. (For *antequam* see § 1672.)

Paucis ante diebus dederam Q. Mucio litteras ad te. (C. Fam. 4. 9.)

Vitia maritimarum urbium ante paulo breviter attigi. (C. R. P. 2. 5.)

Nonne oportuit præscisse me ante? (Ter. And. 239.)

Arcis præsidium ex ante præparato (frumento) sustentari poterat.

(L. 16. 20.)

<sup>1</sup> Key refers to this preposition many other verbs. "Frequently it has the consonant assimilated to that which follows, as in *accumula*-, *addormisc*-, *allela*-, *ammone*-, *apprehend*-, *acquiesc*-, *arrig*-, *assica*-, *atter*-. Sometimes the consonant is altogether lost, as in *agnosc*-, *ascend*-. more commonly it is attracted into the form of the familiar preposition *ad*, thus changing the dental liquid for a dental "mute as in *adarese*-, *addid*-, *adim*-, *adolese*-, *adur*-. Not less frequently it is attracted into the form of the familiar preposition *in*, by "an easy change of the vowel (so *in*- the negative prefix corresponds to "the primitive *ex*) as in *insip*- or *incip*-, *inhorre*-, *intumesc*-, *imbu*-, *ignosc*-. The significations assigned to *an* are as various as those of *ex*." (Key, Lat. Gr. § 1308, 1-4.)

(b) *With accusative.*

Factus est consul bis, primum ante tempus, iterum sibi suo tempore, reipublicæ pæne sero. (C. *Læl.* 3.)

Edixit ut adesset senatus frequens a. d.<sup>1</sup> VIII Kalendas Decembris. (C. *Phil.* 3. 7.)

Ibi eadem negligentia erat, quæ Chalcidem dies ante paucos prodiderat. (L. 31. 24.)

Diem statuo satis laxam, quam ante si solverint, dico me centesimas ducturum. (C. *Att.* 6. 1, § 16.)

Ante Jovem nulli subigebant arva coloni. (Verg. *G.* 1. 125.)

Non multo ante urbem captam exaudita vox est a luco Vestæ. (C. *Div.* 1. 45.)

Amat scripsisse ducentos ante cibum versus, totidem cenatus. (Hor. *S.* 1. 10. 60.)

(c) *Apparently with ablative, in antehac (also antidhac Plaut.), antea.*

Magis me benigne nunc salutas quam antidhac. (Pl. *Pæn.* 3. 5. 7.)

Antehac nefas depromere Cæcubum cellis avitis. (Hor. *Od.* 1. 37. 5.)

Non accusabimur posthac, neque hercule antea negligentes fuimus. (C. *Att.* 7. 3.)

3. 'Before,' in rank: *with accusative.*

Cognoveram facundia Græcos, gloria belli Gallos, ante Romanos fuisse. (Sall. *C.* 53.)

Ante alios miserandi magis, qui unquam obsessi sunt; quod interclusi a patria obsidebantur. (L. 5. 42.)

Me primum dulces ante omnia Musæ accipiant. (Verg. *G.* 2. 475.)

Brevis erit oratio ante omnia, si inde cœperimus rem exponere, unde ad judicem pertinet. (Quint. 4. 2, 40.)

In composition; (See also §§ 985, 990.)

**ante** is used both of place and time; and metaphorically. It is often difficult to say that there is any clear mark of composition.

**Antecapere**, obtain before; **antecedere**, come before; **antecellere** (project), excel; **antecurrere**, run before; **anteire**, go before; **anteferre** (bear before), prefer; **antegredi**, step before; **antehabere** (Tac.), prefer; **antemittere**, send on; **anteponere**, place before; **antestare**, stand before; **antestari** (for antetestari), call witnesses preliminarily; **antevenire**, come before.

**Ante dicere**, **ante occupare**, **ante perire**, &c. are not generally regarded as compounds.

<sup>1</sup> See App. D. Vol. I. p. 454.

*Apud; used only as preposition with accusative case, "At."*

1852

1. *Prefixed to names of persons.*

(a) *"At;" of a person's abode.*

Ubinamst quæso? Apud me domi. (Ter. Haut. 430.)

Fuisti igitur apud Læcam illa nocte. Catilina. (C. Cat. 1. 4. Just before we find. Dico te priore nocte venisse in M. Læcæ domum.)

Pompeius petiit ut secum et apud se essem cotidie. (C. Att. 5. 6.)

Bene vale: apud Orcum te videbo. (Pl. As. 606.)

(b) *"Before;" of a person's presence, esp. of a judge.*

1853

Hæc majorum hominum sunt, hæc apud majores factitata.

(C. Off. 2. 24.)

Cum in lecto Crassus esset et apud eum Sulpicius sederet.

(C. Or. 2. 3.)

Dictator consulibus in senatu et apud populum magnifice collaudatis dictatura se abdicavit. (L. 7. 11.)

Commodius fecissent tribuni plebis Quirites, si, quæ apud vos de me dererant, ea coram potius me præsentate dixissent. (C. Agr. 3. 1.)

Apud proconsules manumitti possunt tam liberi quam servi et adoptiones fieri. (Marcian. ap. Dig. 1. 162.)

*So in the jurists, of a creditor to whom a surety is presented.*

1854

Fidejussor obligari non potest ei, apud quem reus promittendi obligatus non est. (Julian. ap. Dig. 46, 1. 16, pr.)

(c) *Of an author's works.*

1855

Apud Xenophontem moriens Cyrus major hæc dicit. (C. Sen. 22.)

Apud Agathoclem scriptum in historia est. (C. Div. 1. 24.)

(d) *Of a person's opinion or feelings.*

1856

Melius apud bonos quam apud fortunatos beneficium collocari puto. (C. Off. 2. 20.)

Itan parvam mihi fidem esse apud te? (Ter. Ph. 310.)

Plus apud me antiquorum auctoritas valet. (C. Lxli 4.)

Apud prudentes vita ejus varie extollebatur arguebaturve.

(Tac. A. 1. 9.)

Non est simplicitatis meæ dissimulare apud bonitatem tuam, obiter te plurimum collaturum utilitatibus rei familiaris meæ.

(Plin. ad Traj. 8 (24).)

(e) *Of a person's composure or senses.*

Præ iracundia non sum apud me. (Ter. *Haut.* 921.)

Num tibi videtur esse apud sese? (Ter. *Hec.* 707.)

2. *Prefixed to names of places. 'Near,' about. (Rare except in post-Augustan writers.)*

Consules senatum consoluerunt n. Octob. apud ædem Duelonai.  
(S. C. de Bacc. 1.)

Quid illisce homines quærunt apud ædis meas? (Pl. *Most.* 935.)

Apud forum modo e Davo audiui. (Ter. *And.* 302.)

Ita victoria justa imperator appellatus apud Issum, abduxi exercitum. (C. *Fam.* 2. 10.)

Paulisper apud oppidum morati, ad castra Cæsaris contenderunt.  
(Cæs. *G.* 2. 7.)

Italiam utroque mari duæ classes Misenum apud et Ravennam præsidebant. (Tac. *A.* 4. 5.)

Titus in consecrando apud Memphim bove Apide diadema gestavit.  
(Suet. *Tit.* 5.)

**Circum, circā, circiter;** *used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in the accusative case. 'Round,' 'about.'*

1. *'Round,' about,' in space.*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent on it; circum, circa.*

Idoneus sub dio sumendus locus cocleariis, quem circum totum aqua claudas. (Varr. *R. R.* 3. 14.)

Interea Rutuli portis circum omnibus instant. (Verg. *A.* 10. 118.)

Una crebris ictibus eversa est turris, quodque circa muri erat.  
(L. 34. 29.)

Cœpi regiones circumcirca prospicere. (Sulpic. ap. C. *Fam.* 4. 5, § 4.)

Perseus ad Syconium stativa habebat, frumento undique circa ex agris convecto. (L. 42. 56.)

Anna, vides toto properari litore: circum undique convenere.  
(Verg. *A.* 4. 416.)

(b) *As indeclinable adjective, 'on each side.'*

Media porta robora legionum et Romanos equites, duabus circa portis novos milites ac sociorum equites statuit. (L. 23. 16.)



(c) *With accusative; circum, circa.*

1861

Ligures incolentes circa Ticinum amnem. (L. 5. 35.)

Urgeris turba circum te stante. (Hor. S. 1. 3. 135.)

Illi robur et æs triplex circa pectus erat. (Hor. Od. 1. 3. 10.)

Ex iis trecentos juvenes inermes circa se habebat. (L. 29. 1.)

Terra circum axem se summa celeritate convertit. (C. Ac. 2. 39.)

Varios hic flumina circum fundit humus flores. (Verg. B. 9. 40.)

## 2. 'To (or 'in') and about.'

1862

*With accusative; circum, circa as prepositions.*

Nævius pueros circum amicos dimittit. (C. Quint. 6.)

Scribis, si Cæsar circum istæc loca commoraretur, te ei resistere velle. (Cn. Pomp. ap. C. Att. 8. 12 B.)

Misit circum fora et basilicas nomenclatores ad invitandos juvenes senesque. (Suet. Cal. 41.)

Romulus legatos circa vicinas gentes misit. (L. 1. 9.)

Carcinoma fit maxime in superioribus partibus, circa faciem, nares, aures, labra. (Cels. 5. 28. 2.)

3. *Of time, 'about.'*

1863

(a) *Without a substantive dependent; circiter.*

Diebus circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit. (Cæs. G. 2. 2.)

Hæc in Arpinati a. d. VI. circiter Idus Maias non deflebimus.

(C. Att. 2. 17.)

Circiter hora decima noctis P. Postumius ad me venit.

(Servius ap. C. Fam. 4. 12.)

(b) *With accusative; circa (not before Livy), circiter.*

1864

Circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. (Cæs. G. 1. 50.)

Nos, si di adjuvabunt, circiter Idus Novembris in Italia speramus fore. (C. Fam. 14. 5.)

Ab officiis octavam circiter horam redit. (Hor. Ep. 1. 7. 47.)

Postero die circa eandem horam in eundem locum rex copias admovit. (L. 42. 57.)

Post Zeuxis atque Parrhasius, non multum ætate distantes, circa Peloponnesia ambo tempora, plurimum arti addiderunt.

(Quint. 12. 10. § 4.)

Adiciunt doctores artis sero et circa Tisiam et Coraca primum re-  
pertos. (Quint. 2. 17, § 7.)

4. *Of number, 'about.' Without a substantive dependent; circiter.*

1865

Ex omni copia circiter pars quarta erat militaribus armis instructa.

(Sall. C. 56.)

Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu mittit. (Cæs. G. 1. 49.)

*So apparently circa, but the instances are not decisive.*

1866

Circa D Romanorum sociorumque victores ceciderunt. (L. 27. 42.)

Legato etiam circa sestertii vices eum persecutus. (Suet. Claud. 6.)

Per insequentes dies circa singulas heminas emittendum. (Cels. 7. 18.)

5. *Metaphorically, 'about,' i.e. 'concerning,' 'in the case of;'* 1867  
with accusative. *Circa, frequent in post-Augustan.*

Tanta est circa verba dissensio. (Quint. 3. 11, § 5.)

Quippe sermo circa rura est agrestisque usus. (Plin. 18, § 5.)

Circa deos ac religiones negligentior. (Suet. Tib. 69.)

Circa consilium eligendi successoris in duas factiones scindebantur.

(Tac. H. 1. 13.)

Idem servandum et circa inquilinorum insulæ personas Proculus scribit. (Ulp. ap. Dig. 9. 2. 27, § 11.)

*A similar meaning occurs earlier in quocirca (abl.? or acc.? cf. 1868*  
§ 160. 11: quocirca is in C. I. R. No. 206, vv. 93. 104. 118: but  
quodcirca C. I. R. No. 198, v. 13) and idcirco (idcirco).

Quocirca bene apud majores nostros senatus decrevit &c.

(C. Div. 1. 41.)

Quo, bone, circa, dum licet, vive beatus. (Hor. S. 2. 6. 95.)

Suspicio est me idcirco hæc promittere. (Pl. Ps. 563.)

Idcirco nemo superiorum attigit, ut hic tolleret. (C. Verr. 4. 4.)

In composition: (see also § 990).

1869

**Circum**, *around*, is compounded, somewhat loosely, with many verbs, and, usually, simply adds to them the meaning '*around*.'

**-aggregare** (Col.), *pile up around*; **-agere**, *drive round*; **-arare** (Liv.); **-cidere**, *cut*; **-cingere** (post-Aug.), **-cludere**; **-colere**, *dwell around*; **-currere**; **-dare**, *surround*; **-ducere**; **-equivitare** (Liv.); **-farcire** (Plin.), **-ferre**; **-flectere** (Verg.); **-flare**; **-fluere**; **-fodere**; **-fremere** (Sen.); **-fricare** (Cato); **-fundere**; **-gemere** (Hor.); **-gestare**; **-gredi**; **-jacere**; **-icere** (Liv.); **-ire**; **-lambere** (Plin.); **-latrare** (Sen.); **-ligare**; **-linere**; **-luere**, *wash round*; **-mittere**; **-munire**; **-nectere** (Sen.); **-pendere** (Curt.); **-plaudere** (Ov.); **-plecti**, *embrace*; **-plicare** (Cic.);

-plumbare (Cato), *solder round*; -ponere; -radere; -retire, *enclose*; -rodere; -scindere (Liv.); -scribere, *inclose in a circular line, confine*; -secare; -sedere; -sistere; -serere (Plin.), *plant around*; -silire; -sistere, *stand round*; -sonare; -spectare; -spargere; -spicere; -stare; -strepere; -struere; -tegere; -terere; -tinnire (Varr.); -tonare; -vadere; -vallare; -vectari; -vehi; -velare (Ov.); -venire, *encircumpass*; -vertere; -vestire; -visere (Plaut.); -volitare; -volare; -volvere; and some others rarely used.

Three of these verbs, viz. circumducere, -scribere, -venire, have a secondary meaning, *to cheat*.

**Cis, citra**; used with accusative case: *citra* and *citro* without *ultra* a substantive dependent. 'On this side.' (*Cis* is usually opposed to *trans* (uls being almost antiquated): *citra, citro* to *ultra, ultro*.)

1. (a) *Without a substantive dependent*: *citra*, 'on this side'; *citro*, 'hitherwards'; both of place and relation.

Ad castra pratoris pergit. Paucis citra milibus lignatores ei cum praesidio occurrunt. (L. 9. 25.)

Inque petendo dextera dirigit nec citra mota nec ultra. (Ov. M. 5. 186.)

Saepe ultro citroque legati inter eos mittebantur. (Caes. G. 1. 42.)

Magna est illa communitas quae conficitur ex beneficiis ultro et citro datis acceptis. (C. Off. 1. 17.)

(b) *With accusative case*; *cis, citra*, 'on, or 'to, this side of.'

Podem porta, quoad hostis cis Euphratem fuit, non extulit. (C. Art. 7. 2.)

Paucos moratorum occiderunt citra flumen interceptos. (L. 21. 48.)

Erat cum suis navibus apud Haelem fluvium citra Veliam milia passuum III. (C. Art. 16. 7.)

Natura in omni verbo posuit acutam vocem, nec una plus, nec a postrema syllaba citra tertiam. (C. Or. 18.)

Ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, placide progrediebatur. (Caes. G. 6. 8.)

Tusci in utrumque mare vergentes incoluere urbibus duodenis terras, prius cis Appenninum ad inferum mare; postea trans Appenninum totidem, quot capita originis erant, coloniis missis, quae trans Padum omnia loca... usque ad Alpes tenuere. (L. 5. 33.)

2. *Of time, (rare) 'within;'* **cis, citra.** 18

Cis hercle paucas tempestates, augebis ruri numerum.

(Plaut. *Most.* 18.)

Forsitan et Pylius citra Trojana perisset tempora. (Ov. *M.* 8. 365.)

3. *Metaphorically, short, 'short of.'* 18(a) *Without a substantive dependent; citra.*

Tela hostium citra cadebant. (Tac. *H.* 3. 23.)

Cum a genere ducetur argumentum, non erit necesse id usque a capite arcessere; sæpe etiam citra licet, dum modo supra sit, quod sumitur, quam id, ad quod sumitur. (C. *Top.* 9.)

Cum res ipsa de qua loquendum est naturalem modum excessit, conceditur amplius dicere, quia dici quantum est non potest, meliusque ultra quam citra stat oratio. (Quint. 8, fin.)

*So citra quam, 'less than.'*

Culta quidem, fateor, citra quam debuit illa est.

(Ov. *Pont.* 1. 7. 55.)

(b) *With accusative case; citra.* 187

Exercitationis plerumque finis esse debet lassitudo, quæ citra fatigationem sit. (Cels. 1. 2.)

Nec virtus citra genus est. (Ov. *Met.* 10. 607.)

4. *'Without regard to,' 'setting aside,' with accusative; citra.* 187

Solebat etiam citra spectaculorum dies, siquando quid inusitatum dignumque cognitu advectum est, id extra ordinem quolibet loco publicare. (Suet. *Aug.* 43.)

Aliqua ex re ipsa citra personam argumenta ducuntur.

(Quint. 7. 2, § 13.)

Hac ingressos lacus accipit longe lateque diffusus, citra magnitudinem prope Ponti similis. (Mela 1. 19, § 113.)

5. *'Without.'* **Citra as preposition, only in post-Augustan prose.** 187

Animalia et ingredi citius et pasci et tranare aquas citra docentem natura ipsa sciunt. (Quint. 2. 16, § 13.)

Phidias in ebore longe citra æmulum. (Quint. 12. 10, § 9.)

Marcia princeps Romanorum icta gravida, partu exanimato, ipsa citra ullum aliud incommodum vixit. (Plin. 2, § 137.)

Nec id (*i.e.* suam vitam narrare) Rutilio et Scauro citra fidem aut obtrectationi fuit. (Tac. *Agr.* 1.)

**Clam, clanculum;** *used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in the accusative case. (See instances of clam with ablative appear to be of doubtful authority; but cf. Cæs. Civ. 2. 32. Clam vobis; B. Afr. 11. clam hostibus.)*

1. *Without a substantive dependent: "secretly."*

Hanc tu mihi vel vi vel clam vel precario fac tradas.

(Ter. And. 319.)

Abi ad thesaurum jam confestim clanculum. (Pl. Trin. 798.)

Multa palam domum suam auferibat, piura clam de medio removebat. (C. Ruc. Am. 3.)

Soli Ætoli decretum decem legatorum clam massantes carcebant.

(L. 33. 31.)

Nec id clam esse potuit. (L. 3. 36.)

Clam possidere eum dicimus, qui furtive ingressus est possessionem, ignorante eo, quem sibi controversum facturum suspicabatur et ne faceret timebat. (Ulpian ap. Dig. 41. 2. 3.)

2. *With accusative case, if name of person: "unlawfully so." Al- most confined to comic poets. Clanculum is found (as pronunciation) once only.*

Illius filiam concit in navem miles clam matrem suam. (Pl. Mch. 112.)

Emptast amica clam uxorem et clam filium. (Pl. Merc. 343.)

Neque adeo clam me est, quam esse eum graviter liturum credam, hoc si rescierit. (Ter. Hea. 101.)

Alii clanculum patres quæ faciunt, ea de me celet, consueverit filium.

(Ter. Ad. 51.)

**Com (nā), cum,** *only used with a substantive in ablative case. It is placed after the personal pronouns and the relative pronoun. It generally, however, stands before quibus.*

1. *"With," "in company with," "along with."*

Cum Pansa viri in Pompeiano. (C. Att. 14. 10.)

Cæsar cum quinque legionibus ad solis occasum naves solvit.

(Cæs. G. 3. 8.)

Abi cum immaturo amore ad sponsum. (L. 1. 16.)

Ego cum meis, si quicquam nunc cujusquam est, etiam in meis esse malui. (C. Fam. 7. 3.)



## 2. 'Containing,' 'wearing,' 'having,' &amp;c.

188

Ipse prætor in hac officina majorem partem diei cum tunica pulla sedere solebat et pallio. (C. Verr. 4. 24.)

Sinuessæ satis constabat cum elephanti capite puerum natum.

(L. 27. 11.)

Cognovi ex eo te Romam venisse cum febris. (C. Att. 6. 9.)

Terra dicta ab eo, ut Ælius scribit, quod teritur; itaque terra in Augurum libris scriptis cum R uno. (Varr. L. L. 5, § 21.)

Enim vero, Antipho, multimodis cum istoc animo es vituperandus. (Ter. Ph. 465.)

Erit tum consul Hortensius cum summo imperio et potestate, ego autem ædilis. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 13.)

Raro cum corpore tellus est. (Lucr. 6. 631.)

3. *Of coincidence in time.*

188

Ceterum cras cum filio cum primo luci ibo hinc. (Ter. Ad. 840.)

Cum prima luce Pomponii domum venisse dicitur. (C. Off. 3. 31.)

4. *Of accompanying circumstances.*

188

Ad flammam accessit imprudentius satis cum periculo.

(Ter. And. 131.)

Athenienses cum silentio auditi sunt. (L. 38. 10.)

Itaque classis bona cum pace accepta est. (L. 28. 37.)

Cum his nuntius Romam ad consulendum redit. (L. 1. 32.)

In jugero medimnum fere tritici seritur perpetua atque æquabili satione; ager efficit cum octavo, bene ut agatur; verum, ut omnes dii adjuvent, cum decumo. (C. Verr. 3. 47.)

Apud regem gratiam initam volebant cum eo ut caverent ne quid offenderent Romanos. (L. 36. 5.)

Nec fortuiti sermonis contextum mirabor unquam; cum eo quod, si calor ac spiritus tulit, frequenter accidit ut successum extemporalem consequi cura non possit. (Quint. 10. 7, § 13.)

5. *Of reciprocal action.*

188

Latini, cum quibus Tullo regnante ictum fœdus erat, sustulerant animos. (L. 1. 32.)

Tam eras excors, ut tota in oratione tua tecum ipse pugnares.

(C. Phil. 2. 8.)

Cum his mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant. (Cæs. G. 7. 77.)

Quid tute tecum loquere? (Pl. Most. 512.)

Egi atque oravi tecum uxorem ut duceres. (Ter. *Hec.* 686.)  
 Docte atque astute mihi captandumst cum illo. (Pl. *Most.* 1069.)  
 Vos id potestis cum animis vestris cogitare. (C. *Agr.* 2. 24.)  
 Habent agricolæ rationem cum terra, quæ numquam recusat imperium nec cuiquam sine usura reddit quod accepit, sed alias minore, plerumque majore cum fænore. (C. *Sen.* 15.)

In composition; (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

1885

**Com-** before **p, b, m**; **co-** before vowels; **con-** before **v, j**, dentals and linguals, except that **n** is often assimilated (in some mss. and edd.) before **l** and **r**.

1. *Together, i.e. collectively*, by converging action. In the singular number some compounds express sympathy or companionship only.

**coacervare**, heap together; **cogere**, collect, compel; **coalescere**, grow together; **coartare**, compress; **concelebrare**, join in celebrating; **concertare**, contend with; **concidere**, fall together; **concinere**, sing with; **concipere**, hold (like a basin); **conclamare**, shout together; **concludere**, shut up; **concreescere**, curdle; **concurrere**, run together; **concutere**, shake together; **condicere**, appoint by agreement; **condere**, store up; **conducere**, bring together, hire (i.e. take by agreement?); **be of use**; **coepisse** (fit together), take in hand; **coercere**, confine; **conferre**, stuff; **conferre**, bring together; **confiteri**, confess to another; **conflictare**, **confligere**, dash together; **conflare**, melt down (see also 2); **confluere**, flow together; **confringere**, break down; **confundere**, pour together; **confutare**, allay; **congelare**, freeze up; **congerere**, carry together; **conglobare**, make into a ball; **congregari**, meet with; **congruere**, agree; **cohærere**, stick together; **cohibere**, hold together; **cohorrescere**, shudder; **conicere**, throw together; **coire**, come together; **conjungere**, yoke together; **conjurare**, conspire; **collabi**, collapse; **collacrimare**, weep with others; **collidere**, clash; **colligare**, bind together; **colligere**, collect; **colloqui**, converse; **collocutari**, wrestle together; **comere** (put together), arrange; **commiscere**, mix up; **commiserari**, compassionate; **committere**, match, intrust; **commori**, die together; **commutare**, barter; **conectere**, tie together; **conivere**, wink; **compactisci**, make an agreement; **compellere**, drive together; **compensare**, balance; **compescere** (feed together?), restrain; **competere**, coincide, suit; **compingere**, frame; **complecti**, embrace; **complodere**, clap together; **complorare**, bewail in common; **componere**, put together; **comportare**, carry together; **comprehendere**, lay hold of on both sides; **comprimere**, squeeze together; **computare**, reckon up; **cooptare**, choose into one's own body; **conqueri**, complain; **conquirere**, search in

order to bring *together*; *corradere*, *scrape together*; *corrugare* (Hor.), *wrinkle up*; *corruiere*, *tumble down*; *consciscere*, *resolve with oneself*; *conscribere*, *write in a list*; *consenesce*, *grow old with another*, also simply, *grow old*; *consentire*, *agree in thoughts*; *consæpire*, *hedge in*; *conserere*, *join*; *considère*, *settle* (frequently of one person); *consociare*, *ally*; *consonare*, *sound along with*; *conspirare*, *accord*; *constare*, *agree, consist* (also 2); *constituere*, *put together, appoint*; *constringere*, *bind together*; *construere*, *heap up, build*; *consuere*, *stitch together*; *consvescere*, *accustom oneself*; *consummare*, *make up*; *consurgere*, *rise in a body*; *contendere*, *contend* (also to 2); *conterere*, *crumble, break up*; *contestari*, *join issue*; *contexere*, *weave together*; *continère*, *keep together*; *contrahere*, *draw together*; *contribuere*, *contribute*; *contrudere*, *thrust together*; *contundere*, *pound*; *conturbare*, *throw into confusion*; *convehere*, *carry together*; *convivere*, *assemble, suit*; *convivere* (Sen.), *live with*; *convocare*, *summon together*; *convolvere*, *roll up*; and many others.

2. *Completely, i.e.* by acting on all the parts; often apparently only pleonastic. In the plural number especially such verbs may sometimes belong to Class I. 1888

*coacescere*, *become sour*; *coarguere*, *convict*; *concalefacere*, *warm thoroughly*; *concedere*, *yield*; *concidere*, *cut up* (belongs to 1?); *concitare*, *rouse thoroughly*; *concoquere*, *digest*; *concremare*, *burn to ashes*; *concrepare*, *clash* (belongs to 1?); *conculcare*, *trample on*; *concupiscere*, *long for*; *condecere* (Plaut.), *befit*; *condemnare*, *condemn*; *condiscere*, *learn*; *condolescere*, *feel great pain*; *condonare*, *give up*; *coemere*, *buy up, buy*; *conficere*, *make up, do up* (= *exhaust*); *confidere*, *trust*; *confirmare*, *strengthen*; *conflare*, *blow up* = *produce by blowing* (also see 1); *confodere*, *dig round*; *conformare*, *fashion*; *confugere*, *flee for refuge*; *cogitare*, *ponder over*; *cognoscere*, *learn*; *congræcare*, *play the Greek thoroughly*; *cohortari*, *exhort*; *collaudare*, *praise*; *collinere*, *besmear*; *collocare*, *place*; *colluere*, *rinse*; *collustrare*, *put in a light*; *commaculare*, *pollute*; *commeminnisse*, *remember*; *commemorare*, *recount*; *commendare*, *commend*; *comminuere*, *crush*; *commorari*, *delay*; *commovere*, *move*; *communire*, *fortify*; *coniti*, *strive*; *cooperire*, *cover over*; *cooriri*, *arise*; *compārere*, *appear*; *comparare*, *prepare* (for *comparare*, *match*, see § 960); *comperire* (*put together?*), *ascertain*; *compilare*, *strip*; *complere*, *fill up*; *comprobare*, *approve of*; *compungere*, *prick*; *conquiescere*, *repose*; *corrigere*, *put straight* (*with something else?*); *corripere*, *catch up*; *corroborare*, *strengthen*; *corrotundare* (Sen.), *round off*; *corrumpere*, *spoil*; *consendere*, *mount, embark*; *consecrare*, *devote*; *consectari*, *follow persistently*; *consequi*, *follow, overtake*; *conserere*, *sow, plant*; *conservare*, *preserve*; *consignare*, *stamp* (*i.e.* as well as *write, &c.*); *consistere*, *stand still*; *consolari*, *console*; *consopire*, *put to sleep*; *conspicari*, *conspicere*, *describ*; *constare*, *be well ascertained* (also

to 1); consternare, *terrify*; consternere, *cover*; consumere, *consume*; contabulare, *plank over*; contegere, *cover up* (belongs to 1?); contemnere, *despise*; contendere, *stretch* (also to 1); conterrere, *frigiden*; conticescere, *become silent*; contingere, *touch*; contingere, *besprinkle*; contorquere, *swing, hurl*; contrectare, *handle*; contrucidare, *cut down* (belong to 1?); centuari, *look at*; convalescere, *recover strength*; convellere, *tear up*; convertere, *turn round*; convincere, *conquer*; and many others.

3. *conquare, put in a level with; commeare, go to and fro.*

**Contra**; used without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in dative and accusative cases; also in a quasi-adjectival use. 'Opposite to.' (Contro only in compound controversus.)

In Plautus and Terence it appears to be never used with a substantive in the accusative, except in Plaut. Pers. 13; Pseud. 155.

1. *Of place: 'opposite,' 'facing.'*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Ubi contra asperit me, oculis mihi signum dedit ne se appellarem. (Pl. Mi. 123.)

Stat contra starique jubet. (Juv. 3. 290.)

Jam omnia contra circaque hostium plena erant. (L. 5. 37.)

Propterea sit. uti. speciem quo vertimus. omnes res ibi eam contra feriant forma atque colore. (Lucr. 4. 245.)

Ne ut oculos quidem attollerent aut consolantes amicos contra in-tuerentur. efficere poterant. (L. 9. 6.)

(b) *With accusative case.*

Quis illic est. qui contra me astat? (Pl. Pers. 13.)

Insula natura triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam.

(Cæs. G. 5. 13.)

Fulvius unum castellum loco edito contra arcem objecit. (L. 38. 4.)

Diu quaesitus tandem in altissima turri repertus est, jacens contra solis exortum. (Suet. Aug. 94.)

2. *'On the other hand,' 'in return.'*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Si laudabit hæc illius formam, tu hujus contra. (Ter. Eun. 445.)

Jam non illud quæro, contra me ut diligat illa. (Catull. 76. 23.)  
 Ipsi modo eminus sauciabantur, neque contra feriundi aut conserundi  
 manum copia erat. (Sall. J. 50.)

(b) *With dative case; 'in return for.'*

Contra auro<sup>1</sup> alii hanc vendere potuit operam. (Pl. Mil. 1076.)  
 Di immortales, aurichalco<sup>1</sup> contra non carum fuit meum mendacium.  
 (Pl. Pseud. 688.)

Paulisper tace, dum consulo, quem dolum doloso contra conservo  
 parem. (Pl. Mil. 198.)

Immo si scias quod donum huic dono contra comparet, magis id  
 dicas. (Ter. Eun. 355.)

3. *'On the contrary.'*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent; contra, contra quam, contra ac.*

Qui arguat se, eum contra vincat jurejurando suo. (Pl. Mil. 188.)

Cui ego rei tantum abest ut impedimento sim, ut contra te adhorter,  
 liberes fenore plebem Romanam. (L. 6. 15.)

Ea generi sui, contra quam fas erat, amore capta. (C. Clu. 5.)

Si aliquid non contra ac liceret factum diceretur, sed contra atque  
 oporteret, tamen esset omnis ejusmodi reprehensio a vobis  
 repudianda. (C. Balb. 3.)

(b) *In predicativial use; contra.*

Ut ceteri alia certa, alia incerta esse dicunt, sic nos ab his dissen-  
 tientes alia probabilia, contra alia dicimus. (C. Off. 2. 2.)

Illorum villæ rusticæ majoris quam urbanæ, quæ nunc sunt pleræ-  
 que contra. (Varr. R. R. 1. 136.)

Marius suorum et hostium res pariter attendere, cognoscere quid  
 boni utrisque aut contra esset. (Sall. J. 88.)

Relinquitur ut, si vincimur in Hispania, quiescamus: id ego contra  
 puto. (C. Att. 10. 8, § 2.)

In stultitia contra est. (C. Clu. 31.)

*The following may belong here or to the next division (c).*

Hoc maxime officii est, ut quisque maxime opis indigeat, ita ei  
 potissimum opitulari; quod contra fit a plerisque.

(C. Off. 1. 15.)

Hi majorum fortia facta memorando clariores sese putant. Quod  
 contra est. (Sall. J. 85, § 21.)

<sup>1</sup> Key also takes this as dative (Lat. Gr. § 1320).



(c) *With accusative case; 'contrary to,' esp. contra ea, quod* 1897  
*contra. Comp. secundum ea, extra ea; also interea, præterea.*

*Omnia contra opinionem accidebant. (Cæs. G. 3. 9.)*

*Superbe ab Samnitibus legati prohibiti commercio sunt, contra ea benigne ab Siculorum tyrannis adjuti. (L. 4. 52.)*

*Scio ego, Quirites, plerosque non eisdem artibus imperium a vobis petere et, postquam adepti sunt, gerere; sed mihi contra ea videtur. (Sall. J. 85.)*

*Agamemno cum universa Græcia vix decem annis unam cepit urbem, ego contra ea una urbe nostra dieque una totam Græciam liberavi. (Nep. 15. 5.)*

*Vereor ne forte rearis impia te rationis inire elementa viamque ingredi sceleris: quod contra sæpius illa religio peperit scelerosa atque impia facta. (Lucr. 1. 82.)*

*Cujus a me corpus est crematum, quod contra<sup>1</sup> decuit ab illo meum. (C. Sen. 23.)*

#### 4. 'Against.'

1898

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

*Quantum juniores patrum plebi se magis insinuabant, eo acrius contra tribuni tendebant. (L. 3. 15.)*

(b) *With accusative case.*

1899

*Dixerunt neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra populum Romanum conjurasse. (Cæs. G. 2. 3.)*

*Qua re hoc non modo non pro me sed contra me est potius.*

*(C. Or. 3. 20.)*

*Non est committendum ut iis paream, quos contra me senatus, ne quid res publica detrimenti acciperet, armavit. (C. Att. 10. 8.)*

*Consequeris in plurimorum controversiis dijudicandis, ut eos ipsos, quos contra statuas, æquos placatosque dimittas. (C. Or. 10.)*

*Jam morbi tot atque medicinæ tot contra mala excogitatæ.*

*(Plin. 7. 1.)*

*Jussit Amor: contra quis ferat arma deos? (Tib. 1. 6. 30.)*

*In composition: contradicere, oppose: contraponere (Quint.), 1900 place opposite to. Also controversus, disputed.*

<sup>1</sup> Madvig (ad C. Fin. 5. 26) punctuates this *quod contra decuit, ab illo meum* and compares C. Læli. 24. *Quinti. 28*; *quod nunc* in Lucr. 1. 222; Varr. 3. 38; and *mihi vero ista valde probata sunt, quod item fratri puto* (C. Fin. l.c.). With this view may also be compared ὁ τοῖς ἀλλοῖς ἀμαθία μὲν θράσος, λογισμὸς δὲ ἔκνον φέρει (Thuc. 2. 40), and (see Munro in Lucr. 1. 82) *quod si, quod utinam, &c.*, in which phrases Ritschl supposes *quod* to be an old ablative.

**Coram**, used both without a substantive dependent on it, and with a substantive in ablative case. Occasionally, especially in Tacitus, put after its case. 1901

1. *Without a substantive dependent*: 'face to face,' 'before a person's eyes.'

Eadem fere, quæ ex nuntiis literisque cognoverat, coram perspicit. (Cæs. G. 5. 11.)

Quid ergo opus erat epistola? quid? cum coram sumus et garrimus quicquid in buccam? (C. Att. 12. 1.)

Erit igitur nobis coram odorandum et constituendum, tutone Romæ esse possimus. (C. Att. 15. 3.)

Absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerunt. (Cæs. G. 1. 32.)

Ut veni coram, singultim pauca locutus. (Hor. S. 1. 6. 56.)

Essedum argenteum sumptuose fabricatum ac venale ad sigillaria redimi concidique coram imperavit. (Suet. Claud. 16.)

2. *With ablative case*; 'in the presence of' 1902

Mihi vero ipsi coram genero meo quæ dicere ausus es? (C. Pis. 6.)

Ad ea Quinctius, coram quibus magis quam apud quos verba faceret, dicere Archidamum rationem habuisse. (L. 35. 49.)

Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator. (Juv. 10. 22.)

Isque prisco instituto propinquis coram de capite famaue conjugis cognovit. (Tac. A. 13. 32.)

**De**, used (except in one phrase) only as preposition with ablative case. 'From.' Compare also *dein* (for *deim*?). 1903

1. *Of place*: 'down.' 1904

(a) *Without a substantive*: only in old phrase, **susque deque**, 'up and down,' i.e. 'any how,' 'of no consequence.'

Quæ neque sunt facta neque ego in me admisi, arguit, atque id me susque deque esse habituram putat. (Pl. Am. 886.)

Verum hæc ludus ibi susque omnia deque fuerunt; susque hæc deque fuere, inquam, omnia ludus jocusque.

(Lucil. 3. 7, ed. Mull.)

Nam de Octavio susque deque. (C. Att. 14. 6.)

See also Gell. 16. 9, who quotes also *Luberius* and *Varro*.

(b) 'Down from,' 'from off.'

1905

Lucretius et Attius de muro se dejecerunt. (Cæs. G. 1. 18.)

De digito anulum detraho. (Ter. Haut. 650.)

Deque viri collo dulce pendit onus. (Ov. F. 2. 760.)

Eum ad se vocari et de tribunali citari jussit. (C. Verr. 5. 7.)

Anagninæ nuntiatum est murum portasque de cælo tactas.

(L. 26. 23.)

Proscripsit se per omnes dies comitiales de cælo servaturum.

(C. Att. 4. 3. 3.)

Quodcumque imperator vel cognoscens decrevit vel de plano interlocutus est, legem esse constat. (Ulpian ap. Dig. 1. 4. 1.)

2. Of the source or abode: 'from.'

1906

Coponem de via Latina subornatis. (C. Clu. 59.)

Non enim declamatorem aliquem de ludo aut rabulam de foro quaerimus. (C. Or. 15.)

Senatus consultum ita est perscriptum, ut a me de scripto dicta sententia est. (C. Fam. 10. 13.)

Equidem sæpe hoc audiui de patre et de socero meo. (C. Or. 333.)

Fundum Cymæum Romæ mercatus est de pupillo. (C. Flacc. 20.)

Cæsar optime eum de se meritum judicabat. (Cæs. G. 3. 99.)

Juris utilitas vel a peritis vel de libris depromi potest. (C. Or. 1. 59.)

Africanus de Numantinis triumpharat. (C. Phil. 11. 8.)

3. Of the basis or starting-point: 'from,' 'on.'

1907

Ne ut de gradu quidem libero ac stabili conarentur, spatium habebant. (L. 34. 39.)

Duo de concursu corpora lata si cita dissiliant, &c. (Lucr. 1. 384.)

Diem de die prospectabat, ecquod auxilium ab dictatore appareret.

(L. 5. 48.)

De consilii sententia Mamertinis se frumentum non imperare pronuntiat. (C. Verr. 5. 21.)

Si quid erit, quod illi placeat, de exemplo meo ipse ædificato.

(Pl. Most. 773.)

Primum disputabat de illa parte quam Marcellus dixerat: deinde dicebat contrariam partem. (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 4. Præf. 3.)

Id nisi gravi de causa non fecisset. (C. Att. 7. 7.)

In his sermonibus de industria id faciendum fuit. (C. Or. 44.)

Censores dicit de integro sibi creari placere. (C. Verr. 2. 56.)

Ut numerabatur forte argentum, intervenit homo de improvviso.

(Ter. Ad. 406.)

4. *Of the whole from which something is subtracted: 'from 1908 among;'* literally and metaphorically.

De capite deducite quod usuris pernumeratum est. (L. 6. 15.)

Duodeviginti. Undeoctoginta annos natus. (Hor. S. 2. 3. 117.)

Hominem certum misi de comitibus meis. (C. Att. 8. 1.)

Concedite pudori meo ut aliquam partem de istius impudentia retinere possim. (C. Verr. 1. 12.)

De lucro prope jam quadriennium vivimus, si aut hoc lucrum est aut hæc vita superstitem reipublicæ vivere. (C. Fam. 9. 17; i.e. as a piece of luck.)

5. *Of the material.*

1909

Illud vero tæterrimum de templo carcerem fieri. (C. Phil. 5. 7.)

Viridi in campo templum de marmore ponam. (Verg. G. 3. 13.)

Iis stipendium de publico statuit. (L. 1. 20.)

Sed aliquid atque adeo multa addunt et adferunt de suo.

(C. Fam. 4. 3.)

6. *Of time: (a) 'immediately after.'* (Compare § 1907.)

1910

Prandium uxor mihi perbonum dedit: nunc dormitum jubet me ire: minime...non bonust somnus de prandio: apage.

(Pl. Most. 697.)

De media nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur.

(Cæs. G. 7. 88.)

(b) *'During,' 'in the course of.'* (Compare § 1908.)

1911

Vigilas tu de nocte, ut tuis consultoribus respondeas: te gallorum cantus exsuscitat. (C. Mur. 9.)

In comitium Milo de nocte venit: Metellus cum prima luce furtim in campum currebat, adsequitur inter lucos hominem Milo.

(C. Att. 4. 3, § 4.)

Navem sopitis omnibus de tertia vigilia conscendunt. (L. 40. 4.)

Epulari cœperunt de die. (L. 23. 8.)

7. *'Of,' 'concerning,' 'in the matter of.'*

1912

Diffidens de numero dierum Cæsarem fidem servaturum, quod nulla de reditu ejus fama afferebatur. (Cæs. G. 6. 36.)

Neque tamen de nostra sed de omni republica disputo.

(C. Off. 2. 21.)

De rationibus referendis, non erat incommodum te nullam referre.

(C. Fam. 2. 17.)

Maxime firmatur similitudine ejus rei, qua de agitur, ad eam rem qua de judicatum est. (C. Inv. 1. 44.)

Nihil est de Scipionis provincia commutatum. (C. Phil. 11. 7.)

Claudius vix Apronio illi de familiaritate concedere videtur.

(C. Verr. 2. 44.)

De ducentis nummis primum intendam ballistam in senem.

(Pl. Bacch. 709.)

Actumst de me: jam morior, Simo. (Pl. Pseud. 1221.)

De fratre quid fiet? (Ter. Ad. 996.)

In composition: (see also §§ 986, 990):

1913

1. *Down, down off*: *decidere*, fall down or off; *decondere* (Sen.), bury; *deculcare* (Plin.), tread down; *decumbere*, lie down; *decurrere*, run down, neut. (also 2 and 5); *decutere*, shake off; *deferre*, bring down (also 2); *defigere*, fix down; *deflagrare*, burn down (also 6); *defluere*, flow down (see also 2); *defodere*, dig down, bury; *defricare*, rub down, rub hard; *defringere*, break down; *defundere*, pour down or out; *degrassari* (Stat.), rush upon; *degravare*, weigh down; *degredi*, step down; *dehiscere*, split down so as to gape; *deicere*, cast down; *delabi*, slip down; *deligare*, tie down; *demergere*, plunge; *demetere*, mow down; *demittere*, send down, let down; *demoliri*, demolish; *demulcere*, stroke down; *denatare* (Hor.), swim down; *deoccare* (Plin.), harrow in; *depangere*, drive down; *depectere*, comb down; *dependere*, hang down; *depluere*, rain down; *deponere*, lay down; *deprimere*, press down; *derepere*, creep down; *deripere*, pull down or away; *deruere*, throw down; *descendere*, descend; *deserpere* (Stat.), creep down; *desidere*, sink, settle down; *desilire*, leap down; *despicere*, look down, despise; *destillare*, trickle down; *destinare*, fix down (*stān-ere* = *statuere*); *detrudere*, thrust down; *deturbare*, knock down from; *devincire*, bind down; *devolare*, fly down; *devolvere*, roll down; *devorare*, gulp down.

2. With especial reference to the place or object reached. To, 1914 originally down to, away to: *decurrere*, have recourse (also 1); *deferre*, report, accuse (also 1); *denuntiare*, announce; *derigere*, keep straight; *desacrare*, consecrate; *devenire*, come to; *deversari*, go to lodge.

3. *Off, away, aside*: *decedere*, depart; *decerpere*, pluck off; *de-* 1915 *cidere*, cut off, determine; *declinare*, turn aside; *decondere*, hide away; *decurtare*, curtail; *deducere*, lead away, escort; *deerrare*, wander astray; *defendere*, ward off; *deficere* (make away), revolt, fail; *definire*, to mark off; *deflectere*, turn aside; *defluere*, flow away (see also 1); *defugere*, flee from, shun; *defungi*, acquit oneself of; *degerere* (Plaut.), carry off; *deglubere*, peel; *degere* (do away?);



*spend time; degustare, taste of; dehibere* (Plaut.), *debere* (*have from* 1916 *another? but comp. 7*), *owe; dehortari, dissuade; delectare* (*entice away*), *delight; delere, wash out, destroy; delibare, take a taste or drop of; deligere, pick out; deliquare, strain away* (hence *delicatus?*); *delitescere, lurk aside; demere, take away; demerere, deserve of a person; demetiri, measure off; demigrare, emigrate; deminuere, lessen; demordere, bite off; demori, die off; demorari, detain; demovere, move away; demutare, change from a former condition; depellere, drive away; deperire, be lost, die for love of; depingere, paint a copy of; deplantare, take off a shoot; deportare, convey away; deposcere, demand; deprehendere, lay hold (among others?), detect; depromere, draw forth; deputare* (Col.), *cut off* (also 4); *deradere, scrape off; derivare, draw off; derogare, repeal in part; desciscere, desert; describere, copy, mark off; desecare, cut off; designare, mark off; desinere, leave off; desistere, stand off, give up; despuere, spit away; destituere, set apart, abandon; desumere, pick out; desurgere, rise from; detergere, wipe off; determinare, mark off; deterere, wear away; deterrere, frighten off; detondere, clip off; detorquere, twist, turn aside; detrahere, take away; detruncare, lop off; devehere, carry away; devellere, pull away; devenerari* (Tib.), *deprecate* (see also 3); *deverti, turn aside; devocare, summon away.*

4. *From oneself: dedere, give up; dedicare* (see also 5), *dedi-* 1917 *cate; deferre, hand over from oneself; delegare, make over; demandare* (chiefly Suet.), *give in charge; dependere, pay away; or pay down? (cf. 1); deperdere, lose; deponere, resign* (see 1); *despondere, promise, esp. betroth; deprecari, pray against; devenerari* (Tib.), *deprecate; devovere, vow away.*

5. *Completely; sometimes formally or methodically: dealbare,* 1918 *whitewash; deambulare, promenade; deamare, be desperately in love with; deasciare* (Plaut.), *dress with the axe; deblaterare* (Plaut.), *prate away; declamare, declaim; declarare* (*make clear*), *declare; decurrere, run in procession* (also 1); *dedicare, declare* (Lucr., see also 4); *dedolare, be smooth; defingere, fashion; deflere, lament; deformare, form, depict* (see also § 990); *defraudare, defraud; degrunnire* (Phædr. 5. 5. 27), *grunt in his turn; dejurare, swear; delamentari* (Ov.), *lament; delenire, cajole; delibutus, besmeared; delingere, lick up; demirari, wonder at; demitigare* (Cic.), *mollify; demonstrare, point out; demurmurare* (Ov.), *mutter over; denarrare, recount; denegare, refuse; denigrare, blacken; denominare, specify by name; denotare, mark out; denubere, marry in set form; denu- dare, lay bare; deosculari, kiss; depacisci, bargain for; depeculari, pillage; deplangere* (Ov.), *be wail; deplorare, sweep bitterly, give up for lost; depolire* (Plaut., Plin.), *polish off; depopulari, lay waste; depravare, pervert; deprehendere, catch, detect; deproperare, hasten; depurgare, clean out; deputare, consider* (see also 3); *derelinquere,*

*abundant*; *derigescere*, become rigid; *deruncinare* (Plant.), plume away, i.e. shear; *desaltare* (Sect.), dance off, i.e. accompany music in dancing; *deservire*, be devoted to; *desiccare* (Plant.), dry up; *desiderare*, remain inactive; *desolare*, leave alone; *despoliare*, despoil; *desudare*, sweat; *detexere*, weave; *deviaturare*, lay waste; *devenerari* (Or.), worship (see also 1); *deverberare*, scourge; *devincere*, conquer completely; *devitiare*, avoid; *deurare*, burn up.

6. 'Till exhaustion' ('down to the dregs'):

386

*debacchari*, waste oneself out; *debellare*, bring a war to an end; *decantare*, sing out and over; *decernere* (not known), decide; *decertare*, fight a matter out; *decoquere*, boil down, become bankrupt; *decrepitus* (Plant.), one that has rustled itself out; *dedolere* (Or.), cease to grieve; *defatigare*, fire out; *defarvescere*, fall away; *defetisci*, get tired out; *deflagrare*, burn itself out (see also 1); *deflorescere*, cease flowering, fade; *delassare*, weary out; *dellinescere*, melt away; *delligare* (Hor.), send to exhaustion; *defuturi*, worthless is not; *depasscere*, feed a flock on; *depassci*, consume; *depudere*, cease to blush; *depugnare*, fight it out; *desavire*, rage to exhaustion; *despumare* (Sen.), cease foaming; *detonare*, thunder away, cease thundering.

7. 'Till regular':

387

*dearmare*, disarm; *deartuare* (Plant.), unlimb; *decorticare* (Plin.), unbarb; *decrescere* (from *decrevire*), decrease; *deditere*, be unbecoming; *dediticorare*, disgrace; *dedignari*, think unworthy; *dediscere*, unlearn; *deditere*, unlearn; *desse*, be wanting; *defecare*, cleanse & smelt; *deglamare* (Plin.), unglue; *dehonestare*, disgrace; *dejungere* (Plant.), unjoin; *dejuvare* (Plant. once), cease to help; *delapidare* (Cato), waste, i.e. shear of stones; *dellirare* (Col.), harp, trees; *denasare* (Plant.), unnose; *deonerare*, disburden; *depilare* (Mart.), deprive of hair; *deplere*, drain off, empty; *deserere* (Lavin), desert; *desipere*, be heedless, frolic; *desperare*, be hopeless; *despumare*, clear from foam (see also 1); *desquamare*, scale, i.e. clear from scales; *desvescere*, unweave; *detegere*, uncover; *detandere*, unstring, of taking down tents; *detractare*, decline.

8. In a bad sense: *decipere* 'catch up' comp. 1 & *decipere*; *decoquere*, waste untill comp. 1 and -; *deludere* 'make game of', comp. 1, *delude*; *deludare*, laugh to scorn (comp. 1); *detestari*, abominate (comp. 1).

9. Of uncertain origin: *delliberare* (from *liber*? 'abruptly' or 'weight'), *deberare*; *desiderare*, miss, regret.

**Dis-**, **di-** 'in twain'; in composition only: (see also § 986).

1923

**dis-** before sharp mutes and **s**; **dir-** before a vowel or **h**; **di-** before flat mutes, liquids, nasals, semi-vowels (but **disjungo**; and cf. § 144. 2), and **sp**, **sc**, **st**. Before **f**, **s** is assimilated.

I. 'Asunder,' 'in different directions:' **discedere**, *part asunder*, 1924 *depart*; **disceptare** (*pull apart?*), *decide, be judge*; **discernere**, *separate, distinguish*; **discerpere**, *tear in pieces*; **discindere**, *cleave asunder*; **discludere**, *keep apart*; **discoquere**, *boil to rags*; **discrepare**, *ring differently*; **discruciare**, *torture to pieces*; **discumbere**, *stretch oneself out at table*; **discurrere**, *run about*; **discutere**, *break up*; **didere**, *distribute*; **diducere**, *divide*; **diirectus** (Plaut.), *crucified*; **dirimere** (**dis emere**), *break off*; **diffamare**, *noise about*; **differre**, *carry different ways, put off, differ*; **diffindere**, *cleave asunder*; **diffingere** (Hor.), *alter*; **diffiare** (Plaut.), *blow apart*; **diffluere**, *flow different ways*; **diffringere**, *break in pieces*; **diffugere**, *flee asunder*; **diffundere**, *diffuse*; **digerere**, *distribute, digest*; **digladiari**, *fight on different sides*; **digredi**, *go aside*; **dilabi**, *melt away*; **dilacerare**, *tear in pieces*; **dilaniare**, *tear in pieces*; **dilapidare**, *throw away like stones*; **dilargiri**, *give away*; **dilatare**, *spread out*; **diluere**, *wash out, dissolve*; **dimanare**, *flow different ways*; **dimetiri**, *measure out*; **dimetari**, *lay out by measurement*; **dimicare**, *fight on different sides*; **diminuere** (Plaut., Ter.), *break to pieces*; **dimittere**, *send in different directions*; **dimovere**, *divide*; **diribere** (**dis habere**), *distribute voting-tickets*; **dissicere** (**dis jicere**), *scatter*; **dispalari** (Nep.), *wander about*; **dispalescere** (Plaut.), *be noised abroad (palam)*; **dispendere**, *stretch out*; **disparare**, *arrange in different divisions*; **dispellere**, *disperse*; **dispensare**, *pay out, dispense*; **disperdere**, *squander, ruin*; **dispergere**, *scatter*; **dispertire**, *distribute*; **dispescere** (Plin.), (*feed apart*), *separate*; **displodere**, *burst with a clap*; **disponere**, *arrange*; **dispungere** (*prick apart*), *in accounts, check off*; **disquirere**, *examine into in different directions*; **diripere**, *tear asunder*; **dirumpere**, *burst asunder*; **diruere**, *demolish*; **dissæpire**, *hedge apart*; **dissecare**, *cut up*; **disseminare**, *sow about*; **dissentire**, *think differently*; **disserere** (Lucr., Col.), *scatter seed*; **disserpere** (Lucr.), *creep about*; **dissidere** (*sit apart*), *differ*; **dissillire**, *jump apart*; **dissipare**, *disperse*; **dissolvere**, *unloose*; **dissultare**, *leap asunder*; **distabescere** (Cato), *melt away*; **distare**, *stand apart, be distant*; **distendere**, *distend*; **disterninare**, *separate*; **distinere**, *keep apart*; **distingvere** (*mark differently*), *distinguish*; **distrahere**, *pull apart*; **distribuere**, *distribute*; **distringere**, *bind apart, distract*; **disturbare**, *knock to pieces, disturb*; **divaricare**, *stretch asunder*; **divellere**, *rend asunder*; **divendere**, *sell piecemeal*; **diverberare**, *beat asunder*; **divertere**, *turn in different directions*; **divexare**, *pull asunder*; **dividere**, *part*; **divulgare**, *publish abroad*.

2. 'Un-': *discollocatus* (Suet.), *unboded*; *discingere*, *unbird*; *disconducere* (Plaut.), *be injurious*; *disconvenire* (Hor.), *disagree*; *discolulare* (Stat.), *unclasp*; *disfidere*, *distrust*; *diffiteri*, *disown*; *disjungere*, *disjoin*; *diloricare* (Cic.), *unordeal*; *displicere*, *displease*; *disserere* (Varro), *disown*; *dissimulare*, *make null, conceal*; *dis-sociare*, *disown*; *dissuadere*, *dissuade*; *dissuere*, *unweave*.

3. 'Exceedingly': *differtus*, *crammed*; *dilandare* (Cic.), *praise not warmly*; *discupere*, *eagerly desire*; *disperire*, *utterly perish*; *disputare* (Plaut., Ter.), *be greatly ashamed of*; *dissaviari* (Q. Cic.), *dis warmly*; *distedere*, *be quite weary of*.

4. 'Among,' 'through,' 'between': *dignoscere*, *distinguish*; *dirigere* (better *derigere*), *keep straight, direct*; *dijudicare*, *decide, distinguish*; *diligere*, *single out, love*; *dilucescere* (of dawn breaking through), *to become light*; *dispicere*, *see through*; *disserenare*, *of weather clearing up*.

5. *dinumerare*, *count up singly*; *disputare* (review over), *go not through the details, discuss*.

**Erga**; used only with a substantive in accusative case. In Plautus and Terence it is sometimes put after the substantive, if that be a personal pronoun.

1. Usually of (a) friendly or (b. more rarely) unfriendly feelings or action towards persons or personal interests.

(a) 'Towards.'

*Satis spectata erga te amicitias mea.* (Ter. And. 810.)

*Fidem erga imperatorem suum Cn. Pompeium conservare voluerunt.* (Cæs. C. 84.)

*In meis moribus erga meos necessarios declarandis mansuetissimus videbar.* (C. Or. 2. 49.)

*Merita Pompeii summa erga salutem meam.* (C. Att. 8. 3.)

*Magistratus Campani suprema erga memoriam Germanici munia fungebantur.* (Tac. A. 3. 2.)

(b) 'Towards' or 'against.'

*Sic absens amicitiam gerebat, ut non beneficiis mutuis, sed communi odio, quod erga regem susceperant, contineri viderentur.*

(Nep. 14. 10.)

Siquid med erga tu hodie falsum dixeris. (Pl. *Asin.* 20.)

Quibus iris impulsus nunc in illam iniquos sum? quæ nunquam quidquam erga me commeritast quod nollem, et sæpe meritam quod vellem scio. (Ter. *Hec.* 485—487.)

Res secundæ valent commutare naturam, et raro quisquam erga bona sua satis cautus est ('on his guard against his own advantages.' Curt. 10. 1, § 40).

3. 'In relation to:' only post-Augustan.

1932

Isque illi finis inicitæ erga domum suam fuit. Haud multo post flagitia uxoris noscere ac punire adactus. (Tac. *A.* 11. 25.)

At illis vix decumæ super portiones erant, isdem erga aliena sumptibus quibus sua prodegerant. (Tac. *H.* 1. 20.)

**Ergo:** used without a substantive dependent, and as a postposition with genitive case. 1933

1. 'In consequence,' 'therefore,' 'then.'

Ergo iste metus me macerat, quod ille fastidiosus, ne sententiam mutet. (Pl. *Mil.* 1233.)

Istuc ego satis scio. Si. Quid ergo, quod scis, me rogas? (Pl. *Ps.* 914.)

Ergo illi intellegunt quid Epicurus dicat, ego non intellego. (C. *Fin.* 2. 4.)

Itaque ergo perpaucis effugium patuit. (L. 9. 31. fin.)

Exitus ergo quis est? O gloria! vincitur idem nempe. (Juv. 10. 159.)

2. As postposition: 'in consequence,' 'for the sake of.' Rare, except in old language. 1934

Mulieres genas ne radunto neve lessum funeris ergo habento. (Lex XII Tab. ap. C. *Leg.* 2. 23.)

Porco piaculo facito. Sic verba concipito. Ejus rei ergo te hoc porco piaculo immolando bonas preces precor, uti sies volens propitius mihi. (Cato *R. R.* 139.)

Communis exempli et fidei ergo visum, ut te salvum velimus. (Letter of the consuls to Pyrrhus, ap. Gell. 3. 8.)

Hæc est origo ludorum Apollinarium, victoriæ non valetudinis ergo, ut plerique rentur, votorum factorumque. (L. 25. 12.)

Hostibus intulerant ignem formidinis ergo. (Lucr. 5. 1246.)



**Ex, e** (*sometimes ec in composition before f*), 'out of:' as preposition <sup>1935</sup>  
with ablative case only. Compare also **exim** (Ritschl, *Opusc.* II. 456),  
'from that,' **exinde**.

In some expressions the one or other form of the prepositions is  
exclusively, or almost exclusively, used: thus **e** *republica*, **e** *re nata*,  
**e** *regione*, **e** *vestigio*, **e** *medio*; otherwise usually **ex**, e.g. **ex** *senatus*  
*consulto*, **ex** *sententia*, **ex** *lege*, **ex** *tempore*, **ex** *facili*, **ex** *parte*, &c.

1. *Of place: 'out of,' 'from.'*

1936

Clanculum ex ædibus me dedi foras. (Pl. *Most.* 683.)

Quid mirum igitur ex spelunca saxum in crura ejus incidisse?

(C. *Fat.* 3.)

Collis ex planicie editus. (Cæs. *G.* 2. 8.)

Herennium negotiatorem ex Africa pro testimonio dixit securi esse  
percussum. (C. *Verr.* 1. 5.)

Pœnus mancipia Romana et ex ergastulo militem verbis obterebat.

(L. 24. 15.)

Non ex vita sed ex domo in domum visus est migrare. (Nep. 25. 22.)

Dormientis spectatores metuis ne ex somno excites? (Pl. *Merc.* 160.)

2. *'From off.'*

1937

T. Labienus ex loco superiore, quæ res in nostris castris gererentur,  
conspicatus. (Cæs. *G.* 2. 26.)

Judices aut e plano aut e quæstoris tribunali legum et religionis et  
noxæ de qua cognoscerent admonebat. (Suet. *Tib.* 33.)

Sæpe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus præliantur. (Cæs. *G.* 4. 2.)

In nostra acie Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt.

(C. *N. D.* 2. 2.)

Quorum magno numero interfecto Crassus ex itinere oppidum  
Sontiatum oppugnare cœpit ('without halting,' 'while on the  
march.' Cæs. *G.* 3. 21.)

So **e** *vestigio*, 'without delay' ('starting from the footprint'); **ex** <sup>1938</sup>  
*tempore*, 'on the spur of the moment.'

Medicos coegi, et e *vestigio* eo sum profectus prima luce.

(Sulp. ap. C. *Fam.* 4. 2.)

Sine hoc ipsa illa ex *tempore* dicendi facultas inanem modo loquaci-  
tatem dabit. (Quint. 10. 3. 28.)

3. *Of the source.*

193

Nolebam ex me morem progigni malum. (Pl. *Ps.* 492.)

Quæ gerantur, accipies ex Pollione. (C. *Fam.* 1. 6.)

Licuit mihi majores ex otio fructus capere. (C. *R. P.* 1. 4.)

De solibus istis duobus studeo ex te audire quid sentias. (Ib. 11.)

Sunt gradus officiorum, ex quibus, quid cuique præstet, intellegi possit. (C. *Off.* 1. 45.)

Ex hac nimia licentia ait ille, ut ex stirpe quadam, exsistere et quasi nasci tyrannum. (C. *R. P.* 1. 44.)

Quoniam igitur tum ex me doluisti, nunc ut duplicetur tuum ex me gaudium, præstabo. (C. *Fam.* 16. 21.)

Ex Transalpinis gentibus majores nostri triumphaverunt.

(C. *Phil.* 8. 6.)

Arcis præsidium etiam sine invecto (frumento), quia pauci erant, ex ante præparato sustineri potuit. (L. 26. 20.)

4. *Of the basis or standard: 'in accordance with.'*

194

Hoc nomine abs te sestertium miliens ex lege repeto. (C. *Cæcil.* 5.)

Initio scripsi totius facti tui iudicium non tam ex consilio tuo quam ex eventu homines esse facturos. (C. *Fam.* 1. 7. 5.)

Cum ita, uti mos erat, censor dixisset 'ut tu ex animi tui sententia uxorem habes?' 'Habeo equidem,' inquit, 'uxorem, sed non hercle ex animi mei sententia.' (Gell. 4. 20.)

Senatus existimat colonias provinciæ Galliæ recte atque ordine exque re publica fecisse et facere. (C. *Phil.* 3. 15.)

Veritus est ex anni tempore et inopia aquæ, ne siti conficeretur exercitus. (Sall. *J.* 50.)

Facit heredem ex deunce et semuncia Cæcinam, ex duabus sextulis M. Fulcinium. (C. *Cæsin.* 6.)

Ab seriis rebus ludicrum ex multo ante præparato, et in Asiæ civitates et ad reges missis qui denuntiarent, magno apparatu Amphipoli fecit. (L. 45. 32.)

Ex qua parte Panurgus erat Fannii non erat IIS IIII<sup>∞</sup>; ex qua parte erat Roscii amplius erat IIS CCCIDDD: nemo enim illum ex trunco corporis spectabat, sed ex artificio comico æstimabat.

(C. *Rosc. Com.* 10.)

Si omnia deorsum e regione ferrentur et ad lineam, nunquam foret ut atomus altera alteram posset attingere ('in accordance with a ruling,' i.e. 'in a straight line.' C. *Fin.* 1. 6.)

Erat e regione oppidi collis ('in the line of the town,' i.e. opposite to it. Cæs. *G.* 7. 36.)

So also in many adverbial phrases; e.g. *ex æquo*, *equally*; *ex bona fide*, *in good faith*; *ex contrario*, *on the contrary*; *ex composito* (L. 25. 9), *as agreed*; *ex confesso* (Quint. 3. 5. 3), *admittedly*; *ex commodo* (Sen. Ep. 46. 1), *at leisure*; *ex destinato* (Sen. Clem. 1. 7. 3), *of set purpose*; *ex diverso*, *on the contrary, in opposite directions*; *ex facili* (Ov. Am. 2. 2. 55), *easily*; *ex inopinato* (C. N. D. 2. 48), *on the sly*; *ex integro*, *afresh*; *ex merito* (Sall. J. 85. 37), *on the ground of desert*; *ex more*, *in accordance with custom*; *ex pari* (Sen. Ep. 59. 14), *on a level*; *ex parte aliqua*, *nulla, omni, magna ex parte*, *in some, no, every, a great degree*; *ex supervacuo* (L. 2. 37), *superfluously*; *ex re tua*, *to your interest*; *ex toto* (Plin. 11. 17. 17), *entirely*; *ex vano* (Liv. 33. 31), *without cause*; *ex vero* (Ov. Am. 3. 9. 4), *well-grounded*; *ex usu esse*, *to be serviceable*; &c.

In the jurists frequently, *ex empto, ex vendito, ex testamento agere, teneri* &c., *to sue (be liable) upon a purchase, a sale, a will, i.e. the action rises out of and is based on a purchase, &c.*

5. *Of the whole from which a part is taken: 'out of,' 'from among.'*

Vellem aliqui ex vobis robustioribus hunc male dicendi locum suscepisset. (C. Cæl. 3.)

Aliud nihil ex tanta præda domum suam deportaverat.

(C. R. P. 1. 14.)

Ex Afranianis interficiuntur T. Cæcilius et præter eum centuriones IIII. (Cæs. C. 1. 46.)

6. *Of the material or earlier condition:*

1243

Exponit multum argentum, non pauca etiam pocula ex auro.

(C. Verr. 4. 27.)

Non enim (ille sapiens) est e saxo sculptus aut e robore dolatus.

(C. Ac. 2. 31.)

Erat totus ex fraude et mendacio factus. (C. Clu. 26.)

Pæan aut e longa est et tribus brevibus, aut e totidem brevibus et longa. (C. Or. 64.)

Celeriter ex tertia acie singulas cohortes detraxit, atque ex his quartam instituit. (Cæs. C. 3. 89.)

Tua virtute nobis Romanos ex amicis amicissimos fecisti.

(Sall. J. 10.)

Set eccum, qui ex incerto faciet mihi, quod quæro, certius.

(Pl. Pseud. 965.)

In later imperial Latin we have frequently such expressions as *ex quaestore, ex consule*, &c.

1244

Puppienum et Clodium Balbinum Augustos appellavit ambos ex consulibus. (Lampr. Gord. 22.)

7. 'Mixed with,' 'in:' of the vehicle of medicines, &c.; also in 1945 the blending of colours and flavours (of the 'ground'?).

Resinam ex melle Ægyptiam vorato; salvom feceris. (Pl. Merc. 129.)

Ex jure hesterno panem atrum vorant. (Ter. Eun. 929.)

Malum miscetur cum sale et pipere atque ex his edendum est...

Rubi cacumina, in aqua decocta et ex oleo atque aceto assumpta, efficacia sunt. (Cels. 4. 26 = 19.)

Hic frutex est ramosus crassiore ac molliore quam laurus folio, baxis e nigro rufis ('blackish red.' Plin. 15. 30. 39).

Mellis sequens probatio ut sit odoratum et ex dulci acre ('sweetish sharp.' Plin. 11. 15, § 15).

8. *Of time: 'After.'*

1946

Ex ea die ad hunc diem quæ fecisti, in iudicium voco.

(C. Verr. 21. 12.)

Romæ vereor ne ex K. Jan. magni tumultus sint. (C. Verr. 16. 9.)

Cotta ex consulatu est profectus in Galliam. (C. Brut. 92.)

Diem ex die ducere Hædui. (Cæs. G. 1. 16.)

Cœpi egomet inter vias aliam rem ex alia cogitare. (Ter. Eun. 631.)

In composition (see also §§ 986, 990):

1947

**Ex** before vowels, **h**, and sharp consonants; **ef**, sometimes **eo**, before **f**; otherwise **e**. An initial **s** is frequently dropped after **ex**.

1. *Out, forth: exagitare, disturb; exardescere, flame out; exau-* 1948  
*dire, catch a sound, hear; ebullire, bubble out, utter boastfully; ex-*  
*candescere, give out a white heat; excedere, go out, go beyond; excel-*  
*lere, be eminent; excernere, sift out; excerpere, pick out; excidere, fall*  
*out, be lost; excidere, cut out; excire, excitare, rouse out; excipere, take*  
*out, except, catch (from), succeed in order; exclamare, cry out; exclu-*  
*dere, shut out, hatch; excrescere, grow out; excubare, lie out; esp.*  
*on guard; exculcare (Plaut.), trample out; excurrere, run out; ex-*  
*cutere, shake out; edicere, declare publicly; edisserere, edissertare, set*  
*forth in full; edere, give forth; educere, lead forth; exercere (drive*  
*out?), set to work, employ, exercise; effari, utter; eferre, bring forth,*  
*express (see also 5); efficere, produce effect; effingere, express; efflare,*  
*breathe out; efflorescere, blossom forth; effluere, flow out; effodere,*  
*dig out; effricare, rub off; effringere, burst open; effugere, flee away;*  
*effulcire, stuff out; effulgere, gleam out; effundere, pour forth; effu-*  
*tire, prate; egerere, carry forth; egredi, come forth, overstep; ex-*  
*halare, breathe out; exhaurire, draw out; exhibere, hold forth, pro-*

*duce*; *ejaculâri*, shoot forth; *elâcere*, cast out; *exigere*, drive forth, export, exact, test; *eximere*, take out; *exire*, go out; *ejurare*, resign or reject in oath; *elabi*, slip away; *elargiri*, expend in gifts; *elavare*, wash out; *elâcere*, entice out; *elidere*, knock out, crush; *eligere*, select; *eliquare*, strain out; *elocare*, let out on hire; *elocri*, utter; *elucere*, shine forth; *eluctari*, struggle out; *eludere*, wash out; *emanâre*, convey away legally, set free from the father's power; *emanare* (Stat.), stay away from; *emanare*, flow forth; *ementiri*, state falsely; *emergere*, rise up from; *emetere* (Hor.), reap off; *emicare*, spring out; *emigrare*, remove habitation; *eminere*, project; *emittere*, send or let out; *emovere*, move out; *emungere*, wipe the nose, cheat; *enasci*, issue forth; *enatare*, swim out; *enavigare*, sail forth (also); *enitere*, shine forth; *eniti*, bring forth children (see also); *enubere*, marry away (i.e. out of one's rank, country, &c.); *enucleare* (take out kernels), explain; *enunciare*, disclose, declare; *exoriri*, rise forth; *expandere*, spread out; *expedire*, expedite, procure, be useful; *expellere*, drive out; *expendere*, pay out; *expergisci*, begin to scratch myself out, awake; *experiri* (get out for oneself), try; *expilare* (press out), plunder; *expiscari*, fish out; *explodere*, blow off; *expiorare* (about out), spy out, search; *exponere*, set out, disembark; *exporrigere*, scratch out; *exportare*, carry out; *exprimere*, squeeze out (also under 1); *expromere*, draw forth; *expungere*, erase out; *reckon up* (comp. *dispingere*); *exquirere*, search out; *eradere*, scrape out; *erepere*, sweep out; *eripere*, snatch away; *erogare*, spend by public consent; *eructare*, belch out; *erumpere*, break out; *erueri*, dig out; *exscindere*, excise; *excreare*, cough up; *exserere*, urtic out, spy; *exsculpere*, scratch out; *exsecare*, cut out; *exserere*, thrust out; *exstillare*, drip off; *exsilire*, spring forth; *existere*, emerge, spring up; *exsolvere*, unloose; *expatiari*, wander out; *expectare*, look out, await; *expergere*, sprinkle out; *expirare*, breathe out; *exsplendescere*, shine forth; *exspuere*, spit out; *exstillare*, trickle out; *exsudare*, sweat out; *exsugere*, suck out; *exsuscitare*, rouse from sleep; *extendere*, stretch out; *exterere*, rub out; *extorquere*, wrench out; *extrahere*, drag out; *extrudere*, push out; *extrahere*, swell out; *extundere*, strike out; *exturbare*, turn out, drive away; *evadere*, go forth; of events, turn out; *evagari*, wander forth; *evanescere*, vanish away; *evahere*, carry out; *evellere*, pluck out; *evenire*, come out, issue; *evertere*, sweep out; *evidens* (looking forth), clear; *evigilare*, wake out of sleep? (see also 1); *evocare*, summon; *evolare*, fly out; *evolvere*, roll out, i.e. unroll; *evomere*, vomit forth; *evulgare*, publish forth; *exuberare*, come forth in abundance; *exulare*, swell out; *exundare*, well out; *exuere*, put off clothes.

2. *Throughout, to the end*: *exandare* (serve out? Cf. *ancilla*, 1149 and *Fest.* p. 14, v. *ancilla*), go through toils, &c.; *ebibere*, drink up; *exarnificare*, cut to pieces; *edormire*, sleep through; *exedere*, cut up; *effigere*, strike dead (so *efficiam*, *perduci*, to death);



*elugere*, mourn the full time for; *emerere*, serve out one's time; *emetiri*, traverse; *emolere* (Pers.), grind up, i.e. consume; *emulgere*, milk out, i.e. drain; *enarrare*, explain in detail; *enavigare* (Hor.), sail over; *enumerare*, count over; *exolescere* (grow out), pass away; *explere*, fill to the brim, glut; *epotare*, drain; *exsequi*, follow up, execute; *extinguere*, stamp out, extinguish; *exsudare*, toil through; *evanescere*, vanish away; *exungere* (Plaut.), ruin in unguents; *exurere*, burn up.

### 3. *Thoroughly*: often pleonastic:

1950

*exacerbare*, irritate; *exacuere*, sharpen; *exædificare*, build up; *exæquare*, equal (better referred to § 990); *exalbescere*, become white; *exarescere*, become dry; *exaugere*, increase; *exalfacere* (Plin.), beat; *excavare*, hollow out; *excolere*, improve; *excoquere*, boil away, melt, dry up; *excruciare*, torture; *ediscere*, learn, esp. by heart; *edocere*, teach, inform; *edomare*, tame; *effervescere*, boil up (neut.); *efflagitare*, demand vehemently; *exhilarare*, make glad; *exhorrescere*, shudder at; *exhortari*, encourage; *exinanire*, make empty; *existimare*, judge, think; *elaborare*, exert oneself; *elangvescere*, languish away; *elevare*, lighten, disparage; *elimare*, polish; *eludere*, make sport of (see also 4); *emaciare*, emaciate; *ematurescere*, grow riper or soft; *emerere*, earn (see also 2); *eminari* (Plaut.), threaten; *emirari* (Hor.), wonder at; *emollire*, soften; *emori*, die away; *emundare* (Col.), clean out; *emunire*, fortify; *emutare* (Quint.), change; *enarrare*, explain in detail; *enecare*, stifle (in Plaut. frequently = *plague*); *enōtescere* (post-Aug.), become known; *enōtare*, note down; *enumerare*, recount; *enutrire*, feed, bring up; *exoptare*, greatly wish; *exordiri*, begin a web; *exornare*, fit out; *exosculari*, kiss fondly; *expallescere*, grow pale; *expavescere*, become greatly frightened; *expetessere*, expetere, seek eagerly; *expiare*, atone for, purify; *expingere*, paint; *explanare*, make plain (or to § 960, *ex plano*); *expolire*, polish; *exposcere*, earnestly ask; *expostulare*, demand vehemently, quarrel; *exprobrare*, make a reproach of; *expurgare*, cleanse; *exputare*, prune, consider; *exsarcire*, repair; *exsatiare*, exsaturare, sate; *exsecrari*, execrate (but cf. § 990); *exsiccare*, dry up; *exsorbere*, suck up; *exspoliare*, spoil; *exsternare*, frighten; *exstimulare*, goad on; *exsuperare*, mount above; *exsurdare*, deafen; *extenuare*, make thin, lessen; *extergere*, wipe; *exterrere*, frighten; *extimescere*, be in a panic; *evacuare*, empty out; *evalescere*, become strong; *evastare* (Liv.), devastate; *everberare*, strike; *evilesce* (post-Aug.), become vile; *evincire*, bind round; *evincere*, vanquish; *evitare*, avoid; *exulcerare*, make sore.

4. 'Till success:' *eblandiri*, gain by coaxing; *excæcare*, make 1951  
blind; *excantare*, charm forth; *excogitare*, think out; *edolare*, beat out, i.e. make by beating; *elucubrare*, produce by lamplight toil; *elu-*

dere, win, frustrate (also 3); **emendicare** (Suet.), obtain by begging; **emercari**, prevail on by bribes; **exorare**, obtain by pleading; **expalpare** (Plaut.), coax out; **exprimere**, express, portray (also 1); **expugnare**, gain by fighting; **exterebrare**, get by boring; **evigilare**, effect by watching (also 1); **evincere** (Dig.), recover by eviction.

5. 'Up': **exæstuarē**, boil up; **exaggerare**, pile up; **exarare**, plough up, write; **efferre**, carry up (see also 1); **elēvare**, lift up (also under 3); **eradicare**, root up; **enīti**, climb up (see also 1); **erigere**, set up, raise; **exstirpare**, pull up by stalk, extirpate; **exstruere**, build up; **exsultare**, jump up; **exsurgere**, rise up; **extollere**, lift up; **evadere**, go up; **evertere**, turn up, overturn.

6. *un-*: (some may be formed from compound adjectives, and therefore not strictly belong here) **exanimare**, deprive of breath or life; **exaugurare**, unconsecrate; **excalceare**, unshoe; **excusare**, excuse; **edentare**, render toothless; **exdorsuare** (Plaut.), take out back; **effrenare**, unbridle; **exheredare** (from *exheres*?), disinherit; **emendare**, free from faults; **enervare**, enervate; **enodare**, unravel; **exoculare** (Plaut.), render eyeless; **exonerare**, disburden; **exossare**, bone, i.e. take out bones; **explicare**, unfold, make plain; **erudire** (cf. § 974), instruct; **erugare** (Plin.), take out wrinkles, smooth; **exsanare**, free from matter; **eviscerare**, disembowel.

**Extra** (*Extrad. S.C. de Bacc.*); used both without a substantive dependent and with a substantive in accusative case. 'Outside.'

1. Of place: 'outside.' (a) Without a substantive dependent.

Tota maceries opere tectorio levigatur extra intraque. (Col. 8. 15.)

Extra et intra hostem habebant. (Cæs. C. 3. 69.)

Et sensibus et animo ea quæ extra sunt percipimus atque comprehendimus. (C. N. D. 2. 59.)

Helleborum medetur extra corporis eruptionibus, pituitæ inlinitum. (Plin. 25, § 61.)

Argumenta extra petita, nisi ad aliquam præsentis disceptationis utilitatem ingenio adplicantur, nihil per se valent.

(Quint. 5. 11.)

(b) With accusative case.

Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi. (Cæs. G. 1. 10.)

Solane beata vita, quæso, relinquitur extra ostium limenque carceris? (C. T. D. 5. 5.)

Ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus est. (Cæs. G. 6. 36.)

2. *Of time: with accusative (rare).*

1956

In consulatu pedibus fere, extra consulatum sæpe adaperta sella per publicum incessit. (Suet. *Aug.* 53.)

3. *Metaphorically. (a) Without a substantive: 'not included.'* 1957

'Quædam' inquit 'pluris sunt quam venierunt, et ob hoc aliquid mihi extra pro illis, quamvis empta sint, debes.' (Sen. *Ben.* 6. 15.)

(b) *With accusative: 'not included in,' 'free from,' 'without.'* 1958

Fuere tamen extra conjurationem complures, qui ad Catilinam initio profecti sunt. (Sall. *C.* 39.)

Ab reo pecuniam, cum judex esset, clam atque extra ordinem accepit. (C. *Clu.* 31.)

Histrio, si paulum se movit extra numerum, exhibetur, exploditur. (C. *Par.* 3. 2. 26.)

Filius meus extra sortem urbi præerit (*i. e. without casting lots.* L. 4. 45).

Sed mehercules, extra jocum, homo bellus est. (C. *Fam.* 7. 16.)

Conclamavere privatos suo periculo peccaturos: rempublicam non extra noxam modo sed extra famam noxæ conservandam esse. (L. 34. 61.)

Cavendum est ne extra modum sumptu et magnificentia prodeas. (C. *Off.* 1. 39.)

Seponi et occultari possunt, ut extra ruinam sint eam quæ impendet. (C. *Att.* 11. 24.)

Pedius ait inæqualitatem maxillarum oculorum bracchiorum (servi), si nihil ex ministerio præstando subtrahit, extra redhibitionem esse. (Dig. 21. 1. 12.)

## 4. " 'Not including,' 'except.'

1959

(a) *Without a substantive: only in legal phrase, extraquam.*

Ego tamen habeo tectiorem exceptionem; 'Extraquam si ita negotium gestum est, ut eo stari non oporteat ex fide bona.' (C. *Att.* 6. 1.)

Ne navigato citra Calycadnum neu Sarpedonium promuntoria, extraquam si qua navis pecuniam in stipendium aut legatos aut obsides portabit. (Fœdus ap. L. 38. 38.)

(b) *With accusative case; 'besides.'*

1960

Offendi, extra ducem paucosque præterea, reliquos ita crudeles ut ipsam victoriam horrerem. (C. *Fam.* 7. 3.)

Ad hæc quæ interrogatus es, responde: at extra ea cave vocem mittas. (L. 8. 32.)

**In:** used both with accusative and with ablative cases.

1961

In old language the forms *endo*, *indu* occur. Ennius uses them in his epic poem, *endo* with the accus. *indu* with the abl. Lucretius has *indu manu* and *endo mari*, and *jacere indu* for *inicare*. (Munro, *Lucr.* I. 82.)

1. Place *wherein*, literally and metaphorically.

1962

(a) With accusative: 'into.'

Influxit enim non tenuis quidam e Græcia rivulus in hanc urbem.

(C. R. P. 2. 19.)

Quæ in castra Siculorum nuntiata sunt. (L. 25. 28.)

Cohortes v in Eburones misit. (C. G. 5. 24.)

Antemnatium exercitus in fines Romanos incursionem facit.

(L. 1. 11.)

Hoc facio semper, ut, quicumque calamus in manus meas venerit, eo sic utar tamquam bono. (C. Q. Fr. 2. 14.)

Querebantur Decemviri se in ordinem cogi. (L. 3. 51.)

Equitatu immisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat. (Cæs. G. 5. 51.)

Tum se in conspectum nautis paulisper dedit. (C. Verr. 5. 33.)

Abin hinc in malam rem cum suspitione istac, scelus.

(Ter. And. 317.)

Si constitueris cuiquam te advocatum in rem præsentem esse venturum. (C. Off. 1. 10.)

Si vim faciet, in jus ducito hominem. (Ter. Eun. 768.)

In dicionem<sup>1</sup> se suaque omnia Romanis permiserunt. (L. 40. 49.)

Implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent. (Cæs. G. 1. 51.)

Multo prius me conlocavi in arborem. (Pl. Aul. 698.)

Adulescenti aurum dabis, ubi erit locata virgo in matrimonium.

(Pl. Trin. 782.)

Omnia hæc tum intereunt, cum in naturam aliam convertuntur.

(C. N. D. 3. 12.)

(b) With ablative: 'in.' (The ablative, not the accusative is usual with verbs of 'placing'.)

1963

Vigebat in illa domo mos patrius et disciplina. (C. Sen. 11.)

<sup>1</sup> The accusative is often found in MSS. (see Böcking's fourth edit. of Gaius, p. 342) in expressions such as *in potestatem populi Romani esse* (Liv. 2. 14); *tenentur in adoptionem* (Gai. 2. 136); *esse in amicitiam* (C. Cæcil. 20); *in gratiam habere* (Sall. J. 111); *in mentem esse* (Ter. Haut. 986); &c. These seem to have arisen from a confusion of the accusative and ablative, which in these words differed little in pronunciation or in writing (e. g. *potestate*, *potestatem*). For, as Madvig remarks, we do not find *in vincla habere* for *in vinclis habere*.

Quod genus endo marist Aradi fons. (Lucr. 6. 890.)

Non illud jusjurandum per cæsos in Marathone ac Salamine propugnatores reipublicæ satis manifesto docet, præceptorem ejus Platonem fuisse? (Quint. 12. 10. 24.)

Cæsar is erat in barbaris nomen obscurius. (Cæs. C. 1. 61.)

Socrates in eo libro loquitur cum Critobulo. (C. Sen. 17.)

Aut suis finibus Germanos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. (Cæs. G. 1. 1.)

Attendere te volo quæ in manibus sunt. (Brut. ap. C. Fam. 11. 13.)

Plures in eo loco sine vulnere quam in prælio aut fuga intereunt. (Ib. 2. 35.)

In fuga salutem sperare dementia est. (Sall. C. 58.)

Monumentum sceleris audaciæque suæ voluit esse in conspectu Italiæ, vestibulo Siciliæ, prætervectione omnium qui ultro citroque navigarent. (C. Verr. 5. 66.)

Eodem anno inter populum Carthaginensem et regem Masinissam in re præsentī disceptatores Romani de agro fuerunt. (L. 40. 17.)

Ad populum aut in jure aut aput ædilem res est. (Plaut. Men. 587.)

Proficiscitur tentaturus urbes, quæ in ditione Ptolemæi essent. (L. 33. 19.)

In quam angusto domus meæ fortuna posita est! (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7. 18, § 3.)

Pecuniam dum volt in prædio ponere, non posuit sed abjecit. (C. Tull. 6.)

Curio te in matrimonio stabili et certo conlocavit. (C. Phil. 2. 18.)

(c) *With ibi, in phrase inibi 'therein.'*

1964

Marsuppiū habeat: inibi paulum præsidī. (Pl. Pers. 125.)

## 2. *Place anywhereon.*

1965

(a) *With accusative: 'on to.'*

Tum, lituo in lævam manum translato, dextra in caput Numæ imposita, precatus ita est. (L. 1. 18.)

Civem Romanum sublatum esse in crucem dixerunt. (C. Verr. 1. 5.)

Rejecit se in eum flens quam familiariter. (Ter. And. 136.)

Jam pluribus scalis in murum evadebant. (L. 25. 24.)

Ademptum tibi jam faxo omnem metum, in aurem utramvis otiose ut dormias. (Ter. Haut. 342.)



(b) *With ablative: 'on.'*

1966

Ipse coronam habebat unam in capite, alteram in collo.

(C. Verr. 5. 11.)

'Non hominem occidi.' Non pasces in cruce corvos.

(Hor. Ep. 1. 16. 48.)

In eo flumine pons erat. (Cæs. G. 2. 5.)

Cogitabat legiones ad urbem adducere et in cervicibus nostris collocare. (C. Fam. 12. 23.)

3. *Of time.*

1967

(a) *With accusative: 'to,' or 'for.'*

Romani ab sole orto in multum diei stetere in acie. (L. 27. 2.)

Ad cenam hominem in hortos invitavit in posterum diem.

(C. Off. 3. 14.)

Legati pacem fœdusque in triginta annos impetraverunt. (L. 9. 37.)

Dixit in noctem atque etiam nocte inlatis lucernis. (Plin. Ep. 4. 9.)

(Dicebant) antea subitariis gradibus et scæna in tempus structa ludos edi solitos. (Tac. A. 14. 20.)

Omnia ordine exposuit patribus, ingenti hominum et in præsens lætitia et in futurum spe. (L. 30. 17.)

(b) *With ablative: 'in the course of,' or 'at.'*

1968

Bruto curata hoc anno talenta circiter c: Pompeio in sex mensibus promissa cc. (C. Att. 6. 3.)

Nihil in vita vidit calamitatis A. Cluentius. (C. Clu. 6.)

Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones ab extremo contrarias facit.

(C. N. D. 2. 40.)

In tali tempore nulli novus magistratus videbatur mandandus.

(L. 22. 35.)

Cæsar satis habebat in præsentia hostem rapinis pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. (Cæs. G. 1. 15.)

Sed eccum ipsum video in tempore huc se recipere. (Ter. Ph. 464.)

Hoc ipso in itinere alteræ dum narrat, forte audiui. (Ter. Haut. 271.)

(c) *With ibi; inibi, 'on the point of being done.'*

1969

Quod speramus aut inibi esse aut jam esse confectum. (C. Phil. 14. 2.)

4. *In reckoning.*(a) *With accusative: of the unit of measure, 'against,' 'for.'*

1970

Quadragesena milia nummum in singulos judices distributa.

(C. Clu. 27.)

Quingenos denarios pretium in capita, quod redderetur dominis, statuerant. (L. 34. 50.)

Scaptius centesimis renovato in singulos annos fœnore contentus non fuit. (C. Att. 6. 3.)

Mihi scito in dies majori curæ esse dignitatem tuam. (C. Fa. 2. 18.)

Is se ternis nummis in pedem tecum transegisse dicebat.

(C. Q. Fr. 3. 1. 2.)

Compare: Hæc civitas mulieri in redimiculum præbeat, hæc in col- 1971  
lum, hæc in crinis. (C. Verr. 3. 33.)

(b) *With ablative: 'among.'*

In primo congressu circiter LXX ceciderunt, in his Q. Fulginius. 1972  
(Cæs. C. 1. 46.)

Peto ut eum complectare, diligas, in tuis habeas. (C. Fam. 13. 78.)

Erat certe tuum nihil præter virtutem in bonis ducere. (C. Fin. 3. 3.)

Partus ancillæ sitne in fructu habendus, disseretur inter principes civitatis. (C. Fin. 1. 4.)

### 5. *Of the position or circumstances.*

1973

(a) *With accusative, (1) of the direction, or line: 'along,' 'in accordance with.'*

Fossam et maceriam sex in altitudinem pedum præduxerat.

(Cæs. G. 7. 69.)

Intervallum justum arborum, si aretur solum, quadragenī pedes in terga frontemque, in latera vicini; si non aretur, hoc in omnis partes. (Plin. 17, § 202.)

Cives Romani servilem in modum cruciati. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 5.)

Hunc pellis aenis in plumam squamis auro conserta tegebat.

(Verg. A. 11. 770.)

Hoc in speciem varietatemque opus non deforme. (Cæs. G. 7. 23.)

Crescebat urbs munitionibus, cum in spem magis futuræ multitudinis, quam ad id quod tum hominum erat, munirent. (L. 1. 8.)

Loquendo plura scribendoque dedita opera, quæ in rem non essent, dies consumptus est. (L. 26. 17.)

Condiciones, in quas pax cum tyranno fieret, has conscripsit.

(L. 34. 35.)

Fatetur, iudicium quin acciperet in ea ipsa verba quæ Nævius edebat, non recusasse. (C. Quint. 20.)

Significatio fit per ambiguum, cum verbum potest in duas plurisve sententias accipi, sed accipitur in eam partem, quam volt is qui dixit. (Corn. 4. 53.)

Non nominatim qui Capuæ, sed in universum qui usquam coissent conjurassentve adversus rempublicam, quæri senatus jussit.

(L. 9. 26.)

Mari virtutem in majus celebrare. (Sall. J. 73.)

Priusquam id sors cerneret, in incertum, ne quid gratia momenti faceret, in utramque provinciam (*see* 6. 2) quod res desideraret supplementi, decerni placuit. (L. 43. 12.)

Inter duas acies Etrusci, cum in vicem his atque illis terga darent, occisione occisi. (L. 2. 51.)

Illi inter sese brachia tollunt in numerum. (Verg. G. 4. 175.)

Videlicet it in orbem ista tempestas et sine delecta vastat omnia.

(Sen. Dial. 6. 15.)

Bene credi tibi scio: itaque in antecessum dabo. (Sen. Ep. 118. 1.)

(2) *In post-Ciceronian writers, also of the effect intended.*

274

Semper et somno et cibo in vitam, non in voluptatem utebatur.

(Vell. 2. 41.)

An ille dolebit, qui audiet me, qui in hoc dicam, non dolentem?

(Quint. 6. 2. 27.)

(b) *With ablative: 'in,' used of the circumstances in which a person is involved.*

Cæteri reges aut bello victi in amicitiam a vobis recepti sunt, aut in suis dubiis rebus societatem vestram adpetiverunt.

(Sall. J. 14. § 5.)

Magno in ære alieno majores etiam possessiones habent.

(C. Cat. 2. 3.)

Tanta usus est Atticus moderatione, ut neque in sestertio vices parum se splendide gesserit, neque in sestertio centies affluentius vixerit quam instruerat. (Nep. 25. 14.)

Fulvium Vulturum tenuerat annis, rates ad trafficiendum exercitum in magna inopia materiz ægre comparantem. (L. 26. 9.)

Dicit Bellowacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Hæduæ fuisse. (Cæs. G. 2. 14.)

Ei servi apud Chrysegonum sunt in honore et pretio. (C. R. Am. 28.)

Consul percussis omnibus ipse satis, ut in re trepida, impavidus turbatos ordines instruit. (L. 21. 5.)

Compulsos in cavas valles, cum exitus haud in facili essent, circumveniunt. (L. 3. 3.)

De centurionibus tamen res est in integro. (C. Fam. 5. 20.)

In Æquis varie bellatum adeo, ut in incerto fuerit, vicissent victine essent. (L. 5. 18.)

*So also in many adjectival or adverbial phrases: in æquo (L. 39. 136 § 7), on an equality; in difficili (L. 3. 66), a manner of difficulty; in obscuro (L. præf.), obscure; in obvio (L. 37. 23), in the way to meet; in occulto (L. 25. 23), secretly; in primo (L. 25. 21), first, in front; in promiscuo (L. 7. 17), open promiscuously; in propinquo (L. 25. 27), near; in summo (L. 37. 28), at the top.*

6. *Of the object.*

(a) *With accusative:* 'towards,' 'against,' 'for,' used of the particular person or thing, *who or which is the object of feeling or action.*

Ita ad impietatem in deos, in homines adjunxit injuriam.

(C. N. D. 3. 34.)

Vos prius in me strinxeritis ferrum, quam in vos ego. (L. 7. 40.)

Hoc in bello sæpius vindicatum est in eos, qui contra imperium in hostem pugnaverant. (Sall. C. 9.)

Mihi quidem a pueritia quasi magistra fuit illa in legem Cæpionis oratio. (C. Brut. 44.)

Altera sententia est, ut nostra in amicos benevolentia illorum erga nos benevolentia pariter æqualiterque respondeat. (C. Lat. 16.)

Petunt Hædui ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur.

(Cæs. G. 2. 14.)

Rex scripsit nullam pecuniam Gabinio, nisi in rem militarem, datam.

(C. Rab. P. 12.)

Quoad in opus lapidis opus erit, pro lapide et manupretio dominus redemptori in pedes singulos septem dabit. (ap. Dig. 19. 2. 30.)

Pila manu sævosque gerunt in bella dolones. (Verg. A. 7. 664.)

Quis in hanc rem fuit arbiter? (C. Rosc. C. 4.)

Incurrit quæstio an venenum habere in mortem suam liceat.

(Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7. 18, § 7.)

Pomptinæ manubiæ, quæ perducendo ad culmen operi destinatæ erant, vix in fundamenta suppeditavere. (L. 1. 55.)

(b) *With ablative:* 'in,' 'in the case of:' used of the particular person or matter, *in dealing with whom or which an action or quality is exhibited.* 1978

Velitis jubeatis uti L. Valerius L. Titio jure legeque filius siet, utique ei vitæ necisque in eum potestas siet, uti patri endo filio est? (Formula adrogationis ap. Gell. 5. 19.)

Etiam L. Torquatus elegans in dicendo, in existimando admodum prudens, toto genere perurbanus. (C. Brut. 68.)

Ecquem autem Cæsare nostro acriorem in rebus gerundis, eodem in victoria temperatiorem aut legisti aut audisti?

(Cæl. ap. C. Fam. 8. 15.)

Vexatur ab omnibus, primum in eo libro quem scripsit de vita beata. (C. T. D. 5. 9.)

Atque hoc idem in parentis, in amici, re aut periculo fecerit.

(C. Off. 1. 43.)

Refugit animus eaque dicere reformidat, quæ L. Antonius in Parmensium liberis et conjugibus effecerit. (C. Phil. 14. 3.)

Non ille Achilles talis in hoste fuit Priamo. (Verg. A. 2. 541.)

In composition: (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

1979

(Key refers some of these compounds to a preposition **an** = *ava*; see above, p. 365.)

1. 'In,' 'into.' sometimes the compound is merely an equivalent for the simple verb and the preposition **in** with its case. 1980

**in**ædificare, *build in* (see also 2); **in**æstuarē (Hor.), *rage in*; **in**arare, *plough in* = *bury*; **in**buerē, *steep*; **in**ciderē, *cut in, engrave*; **in**cillare (Lucr. 3. 963), *reproach* (*cælare, ingrave?* comp. *ocillare*, Pl. *Am.* 183); **in**clinare, *bend in, stoop*; **in**cludere, *shut in*; **in**colere, *dwell in*; **in**coquere, *boil in, dye*; **in**cutere, *strike into*; **in**dere, *put in or on*; **in**ducere, *lead in* (see also 2); **in**ire, *go in*; **in**errare, *wander in*; **in**esse, *be in*; **in**farcire, *stuff in*; **in**ficere, *dip in*; **in**figere, *fix in*; **in**findere (Verg.), *cut in*; **in**fricare, *rub in*; **in**fulcire (post-Aug.), *cram in*; **in**fundere, *pour in*; **in**generare, *implant*; **in**gerere, *throw in*; **in**signere, *engender*; **in**gredi, *step in*; **in**habitare, *dwell in*; **in**hærere, *inhærescere, stick in*; **in**icere, *throw in* (see also 2); **in**igere (Varr.), *drive in*; **in**labi, *fall into*; **in**miare, *go in*; **in**mergere, *plunge in*; **in**migrare, *move into*; **in**miscere, *mix in*; **in**mordere, *bite into*; **in**mutare, *belong in*; **in**mulgere, *milk into*; **in**nasci, *be born in*; **in**nubere, *marry into*; **in**nutrire, *bring up in*; **in**occare (Col.), *barrow in*; **in**oculare (Col.), *inoculate*; **in**olescere, *grow in*; **in**pedire, *entangle*; **in**plectere, *entwine*; **in**plicare, *fold in, entwine, entangle*; **in**pluere, *rain into*; **in**portare, *carry in*; **in**primere, *dig in, impress*; **in**quirere, *search into*; **in**rêpere (irreptare, Stat.), *steal in*; **in**rumpere, *burst in*; **in**ruere, *force one's way in*; **in**scribere, *inscribe*; **in**sculpere, *carve in*; **in**serere, *plant in*; **in**serere, *insert*; **in**silire, *leap into*; **in**sinuare, *get in by windings*; **in**spicere, *look into*; **in**spirare, *breathe into*; **in**stillare, *trickle in*; **in**stituere, *set in, set up*; **in**struere, *build in, draw up*; **in**suere, *sew in*; **in**susurrare, *whisper into*; **in**terere, *rub in*; **in**texere, *weave in*; **in**urere, *burn in*; **in**vehere, *carry in*; **in**visere, *go into*; **in**vocare, *call in, invoke*; **in**volvere, *wrap up*.

2. 'On,' 'at,' 'over.' (This meaning is sometimes scarcely distinguishable from 1.)

**in**ædificare, *build up*, i.e. obstruct by building (see also 1); **in**aurare, *gild over*; **in**minere, *hang over*; **in**cantare, *sing charms over*; **in**cerare, *cover with wax*; **in**ciderē, *fall on*; **in**cingere, *gird round*; **in**crustare, *incrust*; **in**cubare, *hatch*; **in**cumbere, *lie over, apply oneself to*; **in**dormire, *go to sleep over*; **in**ducere, *cover over, cross out* (see also 1); **in**duere, *put on*; **in**friare, *crumble over*; **in**gerere, *heap on*; **in**icere, *throw over* (see also 1); **in**jungere, *attach to*; **in**lacrimare, *weep over*; **in**ligere, *tie on*; **in**linere, *smear over*; **in**cludere, *mock at*; **in**luminare, *light up* (perhaps belongs to § 990); **in**minere, *hang over*; **in**molere, *sprinkle with meal, sacrifice*; **in**mor-



*die over; immorari, linger over; immurmurare, murmur at; innatare, float on; innectere, tie on; inniti, lean on; innare, float on; inopacare (Col.), overshadow; impallescere, grow pale over; impendēre, hang over; imperare, put upon? enjoin; impingere, fasten on; imponere, place on; inquinare, befoul; inridere, laugh at; inscendere, mount on; insenescere, grow old over; insidēre, sit on; insidēre, settle on; insistere, stand over, persist in; inspergere, sprinkle on; inspuere, spit on; insternare, cover; instare, insist on; insurgere, rise on; integere, cover over; inumbrare, overshadow; inundare, overflow; inungere, anoint; invadere, rush into; invenire, come upon, find; investire, clothe over; invidere, look at with ill intent; invigilare, spend waking-time over.*

3. 'Against,' 'towards:' *incedere, march on, befall; incessere, attack; inclamare, invoke, abuse; increpitare, increpare, upbraid (see also 4); incurrere, run against; indicere, proclaim, appoint; inferre, bear against; ingruere, assail; inhiare, gape after; inlidere, dash against; inpellere, drive against; impendēre, spend on; implorare, call to entreat; imprecare, call down upon by prayer; impugnare, fight against; imputare, reckon against; inrogare, propose a fine upon a person; instigare, instigvere, goad on; insumere, employ upon; intendere, stretch towards, aim; intorquere, burl at; intueri, look at; invadere, go against (see also 1); involare, fly at.*

4. Almost pleonastic: it is especially frequent with inchoative forms.

*imbibere, drink in; inacescere, become sour; inæquare (Cæs.), make level; inamarescere (Hor.), taste bitter; inambulare, walk about; inardescere, glow; inarescere, dry up; inaudire (Indaudire, Plaut.), hear, esp. hear secretly; inaugurare, take auguries, consecrate; incalescere, grow hot; incalfacere, make hot; incandescere, glow; incanescere, become hoary; incendere, set fire to; incipere, take up, commence; incitare, urge on; increbescere, gain ground; increpare, make a noise (see also 3); increscere, grow; incudere, stamp; incusare, accuse (or from in causam? § 990); indicare, declare; indolescere, feel pain; indurescere, become hard; inescare, allure; infervescere, get hot; inflectere, bend in; infremere (Verg.), bellow; infrendere (Verg.), gnash the teeth; infrenare, rein in; infringere, break; infuscare, make dusky; ingeminare, redouble; ingemiscere, ingemere, groan; ingravare, weigh down; ingravescere, grow heavy; inhibere, hold in, restrain; of rowing, back water; inhorrescere, inhorrere, shudder; illicere, inveigle; inlucescere, dawn; immutare, change; innotescere, become known; innovare, renew; innuere, give a nod; inpartire, share, bestow; impetere, attack; impetrare, obtain; implere, fill; inradere, scrape; irrigare, water; inrorare, bedew; inrubescere (Stat.), grow red; insecare, cut up;*

*insequi*, follow up; *inservire*, be devoted to; *inservare* (Stat.), observe; *insibilare*, hiss; *insonare*, sound; *instrepere*, creak; *insuescere*, accustom; *intabescere*, pine away; *intendere*, stretch out (also 3); *intepere*, *intepescere*, become hot; *intonare*, thunder; *intremere*, tremble; *intumescere*, swell up; *inurgere* (Lucr.), push; *invalescere*, become strong; *invertere*, turn upside down; *investigare*, track out; *inveterare*, render old; *inveterascere*, become old.

5. Of reversal: *inconciliare* (Plaut.), unfelt, hence pull to pieces <sup>1934</sup> (*conciliare*, felt from cilia, hairs); *ignoscere*, unknow, i.e. forget, pardon; *insimulare*, unmask, charge with crime. (Key, *Essays*, pp. 15, 16. See above, under *an*, p. 365.) In *indecere* (Plin. *Ep.*), misbecome, the *in* is apparently negative; which meaning is common in adjectives, but in no other verbs. (*Inprobare*, &c. is from *inprobus*, &c.)

6. Of uncertain origin: *incohare*, begin; *inquam*, quoth I; *ir-<sup>1925</sup>* *ritare*, stir up; *instaurare*, repair; *invitare*, invite.

*Infra*: used both without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in accusative case. 'Below.'

1. In space: 'below.' (a) Without a substantive dependent; sometimes *infra quam*.

Tunc putes, cum in uno mundo ornatus hic tam sit mirabilis, innumerabilis supra infra, dextra sinistra, ante post, alios dissimilis, alios ejusdem modi, mundos esse? (C. *Ac.* 2. 40.)

Earum litterarum exemplum infra scripsi. (Pomp. ap. C. *Att.* 8. 6.)

Stomachi autem partes eæ, quæ sunt infra quam id quod devoratur, dilatantur, quæ autem supra contrahuntur. (C. *N. D.* 2. 54.)

(b) With an accusative.

1927

Infra autem hanc (Saturni stellam) propius a terra Jovis stella fertur. (C. *N. D.* 2. 20.)

Delata confestim materia omnis infra Veliam. (L. 2. 7.)

Accubueram apud Volumnium Eutrapelum et quidem supra me Atticus, infra Verrius, familiares tui. Infra Eutrapelum Cytheris accubuit. (C. *Fam.* 9. 26.)

2. Of time. (a) Without a substantive dependent: 'later.'

1933

Quid quod Ciceronis temporibus paulumque infra, fere quotiens S littera media vocalium longarum vel subjecta longis esset, geminabatur. (Quint. 1. 7, § 20.)

(b) *With an accusative: 'later than.'*

Homeri etsi incerta sunt tempora, tamen annis multis fuit ante Romulum; siquidem non infra Lycurgum fuit. (C. Brut. 10.)

3. *In number, size, or worth. (a) Without a substantive dependent.* 1989

Alter (crocodilus), illi similis, multum infra magnitudine, in terra tantum odoratissimisque floribus vivit. (Plin. 28, § 108.)

Piso vix Tiberio concedere, liberos ejus, ut multum infra, despectare. (Tac. A. 2. 43.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

In eum diem ternadena (ova gallinis) subicito æstate tota, hieme pauciora, non tamen infra novena. (Plin. 18, § 231.)

Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos. (Cæs. G. 6. 28.)

In poetis non Homero soli locus est aut Archilochus aut Sophocli aut Pindaro, sed horum vel secundis vel etiam infra secundos. (C. Or. 1.)

Neque Neroni infra servos ingenium. (Tac. A. 13. 2.)

**Inter:** *used with a substantive<sup>1</sup> in accusative case.*1. *Of space. 'Between,' 'among.'*

Paucos inter media præsidia hostium præmiserat. (L. 44. 3.)

Erat inter ceteram planitiem mons saxeus. (Sall. J. 92.)

Inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum non amplius quinque aut senis milibus passuum interfuit. (Cæs. G. 1. 15.)

Alius inter manus e convivio tamquam e prælio auferebatur. (C. Verr. 5. 11.)

Iidem porticum extra portam Trigeminam inter lignarios fecerunt. (L. 35. 41.)

Buten aversum cuspide fixit lorica galeamque inter. (Verg. A. 11. 692.)

2. *Of time: (a) 'in the course of;' (b) 'between.'*

(a) Germani exercitatisissimi in armis, qui inter annos quatuordecim tectum non subissent. (Cæs. G. 1. 36.)

Eos omnes præter Turpilium inter epulas obtruncant. (Sall. J. 66.)

Inter hæc jam præmissi Albam erant equites. (L. 1. 29.)

Inter simul complorationem feminarum puerorumque, simul nefandam cædem milites oppidum intrarunt. (L. 41. 11.)

<sup>1</sup> In Valer. Flac. 5. 637; 6. 220, &c., it is used adverbially.

So *interdius*, "in the day time" (§ 314).

Apparently with ablative in *interea*. *Camp. interitū* (Plaut.); was *interitū*, "meanwhile," in *Quintilian alba*, "someday."

*Interea miles*...in *Cariamst* profectus: te *interea* loci cognovi.

(Ter. Eun. 117.)

Abi et istuc cura. *Interitū* ego ad amicum meum volo puerum mittere. (Pl. Pers. 165.)

Hæc interim ad veniam valent, interim ad probationem criminis.

(Quint. 5. 11. 34.)

(Other ordinary examples of *interea*, *interim* in §§ 143, 147, 151, 153.)

(b) Hoc si Romæ fieri posset, certe aliqua ratione expugnasset iste, ut dies xxxv inter binos lados tollerentur, per quos solos iudicium fieri posset. (C. Terr. 2. 32.)

Ne quid inter cæsa et porrecta, ut aiunt, oneris mihi addatur aut temporis. (C. Att. 5. 13.)

3. *Metaphorically of position and relation.*

(a) "Included in," "among."

Inter multos sancios consul spe incerta viæ relatus. (L. 2. 17.)

Nupsit A. Melino adolescenti in primis, ut tum habebatur, inter suos et honesto et nobili. (C. Clu. 5.)

Florus in eloquentia Galliarum princeps, alioqui inter paucos disertus. (Quint. 10. 3. 13.)

Longo intervallo iudicium inter sicarios hoc primum committitur.

(C. Rosc. Am. 5.)

Tandem Ligures inter cetera etiam vigillis confecti terga dederunt.

(L. 36. 33.)

(b) "Between."

Qua de re inter Marcellos et Claudios patricios centumviri iudicaverunt. (C. Or. 2. 32.)

Alias revocabat eos, inter quos jam decreverat, decretumque mutabat, alias inter aliquos contrarium sine ulla religione decernebat ac proximis paulo ante decreverat. (C. Terr. 1. 16.)

Inter Siciliam cæterasque provincias in agrorum vectigalium ratione hoc interest, quod, &c. (Ib. 3. 6.)

(c) *Reciprocal relation*: "with," "from," "to" one another.

Di nulla re egentes et inter se diligunt et hominibus consulunt.

(C. N. D. 1. 44.)

Concede hinc domum, ne nos inter nos congruere sentiant.

(Ter. Hæst. 511.)

Furtim nonnumquam inter sese aspiciebant. (C. Cur. 3. 5.)

Ex eo quidem libro ego, quod inter nos licet dicere, millesimam partem vix intellego. (C. Att. 2. 4.)

In composition (*see also* § 990):

1. *Between, among*: *intercalare*, insert a day, month, &c.; *-cedere*, come between, interpose; *-ciperere*, intercept; *-currere*, be among; *-dicere*, forbid; *-equivitare* (Liv.), ride between; *-esse*, be a difference, be of importance; *-fluere*, flow between; *-fodere* (Lucr.), pierce; *-fari* (Liv.), interrupt by speaking; *-fulgere* (Liv.), shine between; *-fusus*, flowing between, spotted; *-jacere*, lie between; *-icere*, throw between; *-labi*, glide between; *intellegere* (pick among), perceive, understand; *interlinere*, smear between; *-loqui*, interrupt in speaking; *-lucare* (Plin.), let light through; *-lucere*, shine out, or through; *-luere*, wash between; *-meare* (Plin.), go between; *-micare* (Stat.), glitter among; *-miscere*, mix among; *-nasci*, grow between; *-nigrare* (Stat.), be interspersingly black; *-nitere*, shine among; *-noscere*, distinguish between; *-pellare*, interrupt by speaking, disturb; *-plicare*, interweave; *-ponere*, interpose; *-pungere*, interpunctuate; *-putare*, prune here and there; *-quiescere*, rest between whiles; *-radere* (Plin.), scrape here and there; *-rogare* (question among statements), cross-question; *-scribere* (Plin. Ep.), write between; *-serere*, plant between; *-serere* (Ov.), link in; *-sistere*, make a pause; *-sonare* (Stat.), sound among; *-stingere*, chequer; *-strepere* (Verg.), screech among; *-texere*, interweave; *-turbare* (Plaut.), cause a disturbance; *-vellere*, pluck out here and there; *-venire*, intervene; *-visere*, interpose with a visit, visit occasionally; *-volare* (Val. Fl.), fly between.

2. *Of breaking a continuity*: esp. of death, often = Engl. *off*. (Key Lat. Gr. § 1342. 1, *Essays* p. 47, sqq. refers the following and many of the preceding words to a preposition equivalent to Germ. *unter-* (when an inseparable prefix). This *inter* he considers to be a comparativel form, the *t* being parasitical (cf. § 48), of the preposition *in* = *ava*.)

*interarescere*, dry up; *-bibere* (Plaut.), drink up; *-bitere* (Plaut.), perish; *-cidere* (fall through), be lost; *-cidere*, cut through; *-cludere*, shut off, block up; *-ficere* (do away), destroy; *-fringere* (Cato), break off; *-imere*, take off, kill; *-ire*, die; *-minari* (Plaut., Ter.), forbid with threats; *-mittere*, leave off, drop; *-mori*, die away; *-necare* (Plaut.), kill off; *-rumpere*, break off; *-scindere*, cut through, cut off; *-sæpire*, hedge off; *-stingere*, stamp out; *-trahere* (Plaut.), draw off; *-vertere*, turn away, embezzle.

*interjungere* in Martial is once used for *unyoke*.

3. *Together*: *interjungere*, yoke together; *-nectere*, tie together; *-primere* (Plaut.), squeeze together; *-stringere*, (Plaut.), draw together, throttle; *-struere*, (Sil.), join together.



*Intra, intro, used without a substantive dependent; intra also used with a substantive in the accusative case.*

1. *Of space.*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: intra, 'within,' intro, 'within'.*

Primos ab oriente Germanos, post Anglos et ultimos ad occasum Atlanticos indidimus. Intra, si credere libet, vix jam homines, magisque semicivis. (Mela 1, § 23.)

Dum in quadrum pedes, quadraginta per ora, intra centum erant. (Quint. 1. 10. 43.)

Me sequimini intro huc ambus. (Ter. Her. 793.)

(b) *With a substantive dependent: intra, both of being and of moving into within either a space or a boundary line.* (Cf. Geil. III. 13.)

Capenses una modo atque ex intra oppidum iugi aqua, cetera pueria utebantur. (Sall. J. 90.)

Nulla jam perniciēs a monstro illo atque prodigio manibus ipsis intra mœnia comparabatur. (C. Cat. 2. 1.)

Alium intra sacra mensae iura percussit, alium intra leges celebris-que spectaculum fieri hincivis. (Sen. Ir. 1. 2.)

Beliz Teutonos Cimbrisque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerunt. (Cæs. G. 2. 1.)

Spectatores receperunt se intra urbem. (L. 7. 11.)

Moies intra tell. iactum erat. (Curt. 4. 3. 14.)

Sedentem ipsamque, quem pridit reciderat, liberum intra manus habentem deprehendimus. (Tac. Or. 3.)

2. *Of time; with an adjective: intra, 'within,' also intra, 'not more than'.*

Intra vicissimum diem, ingentibus rebus gestis, dictatura se abdicaverunt. (L. 4. 14.)

Omnes intra annum cum stirpe extincti. (L. 3. 30.)

Miles duorum legionum Romanarum intra dies LX. quam in provinciam venit, dimisit. (L. 4. 3.)

Quod dicimus intra dies centum bonorum possessionem peti posse, ita intelligendum est, ut et ipso die centesimo bonorum possessio peti possit, quemadmodum intra kalendas etiam ipse kalendæ sunt. (Ulp. 20. Dig. 3. 1. 1.)

3. *Metaphorically with an accusative: intra, 'not going beyond.'* 2004

In omni voce acuta (syllaba) intra numerum trium syllabarum continetur. (Quint. 1. 5.)

Modice hoc faciam aut etiam intra modum. (C. Fam. 4. 4.)

An omnes visuros peccata putem mea, tutus et intra spem veniæ cautus? (Hor. A. P. 266.)

Utinam Philotas quoque intra verba peccasset. (Curt. 7. 1. 3.)

Neque enim tam refert, qualia sint quæ intra nosmet ipsos composuimus, quam quo modo efferantur; nam ita quisque, ut audit, movetur. (Quint. 11. 3. 2.)

**Intro** is loosely compounded with the verbs -ducere, -ire, -ferre, 2005  
-gredi, -mittere, -rumpere, -spectare, -spicere, -vocare. Also **intror-**  
**sus, introrsum** = **introversus**, &c. Cf. § 512.

**Intus**, 'within,' usually without a substantive, but in a few pas- 2006  
sages as preposition with an ablative. (Lucilius ap. Char. p. 86,  
Putsch, says, Intro nos vocat ad se, tenet intus apud se. Quintilian  
(1. 5. 50), Eo intus et intro sum solæcismi sunt. But, as might be  
expected from this warning, some instances are found.)

1. *Without a substantive.* 2007

(a) 'From within' (frequent in Plautus).

Ostium pultabo atque intus evocabo aliquem foras. (Pl. Ps. 604.)

Abeamus intro hinc ad me. ST. Atque aliquanto lubentius, quam  
abs te sum egressus intus. (Pl. Epid. 3. 2. 44.)

(b) 'Within.'

Ne expectetis dum exeant huc: intus despondebitur; intus transige-  
tur si quid est quod restet. (Ter. Andr. 980.)

Nasica, cum ei ab ostio quærenti Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non  
esse, sensit illam domini jussu dixisse et illum intus esse.

(C. Or. 2. 68.)

(c) 'To within' = **intro**. 2009

Nam cibus atque umor membris adsumitur intus. (Lucr. 4. 1091  
and so frequently; see Munro on 6. 23.)

Jamque fores aperit, jam ducitur intus. (Ov. M. 10. 457.)

Metalla nunc ipsæque opes et rerum pretia dicentur, tellurem intus  
exquirente cura multiplici modo. (Plin. 33, § 1.)

1. *As preposition with adative.*

2080

Flagrabit stomacho, flamma ut fornacibus intus. (Lucr. 6. 1169.)

Tall intus templo divom patriaque Latinus sede sedens Teucros ad sese in tecta vocavit. (Verg. *A.* 7. 191.)

Romæ intus cella ædis Fortis Fortunæ de capite signum quod in corona erat in manum sponte sua prolapsum. (L. 1. 11. Cod. Put. *intus cella*, i.e. cellam; *Martius reads in cella*.)

*Juxta*; used *ônô* without a substantive (as also rarely *juxtim*) acc. and with a substantive in the dative and accusative cases.

1. *Of space: 'close to.'*(1) *Without a substantive.*

2082

Quin socios amicos, procul juxta sitos, inopes potentisque, trahant excindant. (Sall. *Ep. Mich.* 17.)

Ingens ara fuit juxtaque veterrima laurus. (Verg. *A.* 2. 513.)

Hinc procul ut vidit—neque enim est accedere juxta ausa.

(Ov. *M.* 3. 309.)

(*Quæ causa est.*) cur ea quæ fuerint juxtim quadrata, procul sint visa rotunda? (Lucr. 4. 501.)

(2) *With an accusative case.*

2083

Cæsar juxta murum castra posuit. (Cæs. *C.* 1. 16.)

Hæc Tiberius, non mari, ut olim, divisus neque per longinques nuntios, accipiebat, sed urbem juxta. (Tac. *A.* 6. 45.)

2. *Metaphorically.*

(1) *Without a substantive: 'alike,' 'as much,' often with acc. acc. si.*

Adjecti pœnæ ceteri juxta insontes. (L. 14. 5.)

Ita cuncti suæ hostiumque vitæ juxta pepercerant. (Sall. *C.* 61.)

Sulla litteris Græcis et Latinis juxta atque doctissime eruditus.

(Sall. *J.* 95.)

Ut scias juxta mecum mei consilia. (Plaut. *Mé.* 134.)

Inde ad populandum agrum ducti milites navalesque socii, juxta effusi, ac si in insulis cultorum egentibus prædarentur.

(L. 11. 31.)

(b) *With a dative.*

2015

Fabius omittendam rem parvam ac juxta magnis difficilem.

(L. 24. 19.)

Respondit vita se malle excedere quam in metu violentæ mortis  
amicos inimicis juxta ponere. (Val. M. 3. 8, Ext. 5.)

(c) *With accusative: 'next to,' 'close upon,' 'bordering on.'*

2016

Periculosiores sunt inimicitiae juxta libertatem. (Tac. G. 21.)

Ipsi deinde morbi moderationem desiderant, ut neque aliud quam  
expedit neque ejus ipsius nimium sumatur; neque enim conve-  
nit juxta inedium protinus satietatem esse. (Cels. 2. 16.)

Nam populi imperium juxta libertatem, paucorum dominatio regiae  
libidini propior est. (Tac. A. 48.)

Neque ego infitias eo tam sponsiones quam fœdera sancta esse apud  
eos homines, apud quos juxta divinas religiones fides humana  
colitur. (L. 9. 9.)

**Ob; used only as preposition with accusative case.**

2017

1. *Of place: 'upon,' i.e. 'before,' 'against.'*

Ob Romam noctu legiones ducere cœpit. (Enn. Ann. 295.)

In Cumanum mihi ob viam venisti. (C. Fam. 2. 16.)

Hicine est ille Telamon, cujus ob os Graii ora obvertebant sua.

(Poet. ap. C. T. D. 3. 18.)

Illic qui lanam ob oculum habebat, nauta non erat. (Pl. Mil. 1430.)

Non mihi mors, non exitium ob oculos versabatur. (C. Sest. 21.)

*Compare also obiter, 'on the way.'*

2. *Metaphorically: 'against,' 'in consideration for.'*

2018

Ager oppositust pignori decem ob minas. Ædiculae item sunt ob  
decem alias. (Ter. Ph. 661.)

Ego pretium ob stultitiam fero. (Ter. And. 610.)

Græcus tragædus gloriae sibi ducebat, talentum magnum ob unam  
fabulam datum esse...Isti nunc pretia maxima ob tacendum  
accipiunt. (C. Grac. ap. Gell. 11. 10.)

Obviam ire factionis potentiae animus subigit...Id frustra an ob  
rem faciam, in vostra manu situm est. (Sall. J. 31. 5.)

Amicum castigare ob meritam noxiam immune est facinus. Ego  
amicum hodie meum concastigabo pro commerita noxia.

(Pl. Trin. 23.)

3. 'In view of' = 'on account of': used both of facts and emotions. 2019

Romulus dicitur ab Amulio rege Albano ob labefactandi regni timorem ad Tiberim exponi jussus esse. (C. R. P. 2. 2.)

An tu ob peccatum hoc esse illum iratum putas? (Ter. Haut. 99c.)

Una nocte ignaris hostibus et ob id quietis aliquantum emensus est iter. (L. 25. 35.)

Nec meliores ob eam scientiam nec beatiores esse possumus.

(C. R. P. 1. 19.)

Quam ob rem utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris.

(C. Lel. 1.)

Nec existimaram Metellum fratrem ob dictum capite ac fortunis a te oppugnatum iri. (Metell. ap. C. Fam. 3. 1.)

*Rarely of a future event: 'with a view to.'*

2020

Monet hominem, accusatores inimicosque ejus habere in animo pecuniam prætori dare: prætorem tamen ob salutem malie accipere.

(C. Ferr. 2. 28.)

Dicit se non hostili animo, sed ob regnum tutandum arma cepisse.

(Sall. J. 102.)

P. Clodius ob expellendum urbe Ciceronem plebeio homini in adoptionem se dedit. (Suet. Tib. 2.)

Servus pecuniam ob libertatem pactus est. (Afr. ap. Dig. 40. 1. 6.)

**OBS, ob,** in composition (see also §§ 935, 936, 990):

2021

**Ob** is generally assimilated to **p, f, c, g**: often written (as pronounced, cf. Quint. 1. 7. 7), **op** before **s** and **t**: the **b** of **obs** is omitted in **ostendere**.

1. *Over against, against, over, before*, as an obstruction: **ob-** 2022  
**ambulare**, walk before or about; **obardescere** (Stat.), glow opposite;  
**obareare** (Liv.), plough over, i.e. so as to cover; **obacare**, make  
blind by covering; **obcallescere**, grow callous; **occedere**, go up to; **oc-**  
**centare**, sing at, serenade; **occinere**, sing against, i.e. inauspiciously;  
**occludere**, shut against; **occulere** (cover over!), conceal; **occupare**  
(cf. § 930), take so as to prevent, i.e. seize on; **occurrere**, go to  
meet; **obdere**, place against, shut; **obducere**, draw before or over;  
**obdurare**, hold out against; **obdurescere**, harden over; **obequivitare**,  
ride up to; **oberrare**, wander over; **obesse**, be against; **offendere**,  
strike against; **offerre**, bring before, offer; **officere**, get in the way,  
obstruct; **offigere**, fix before; **offirmare**, strengthen (against others);  
**obfringere**, cross-plough; **offulgere**, shine upon; **offundere**, pour over;  
**obgannire**, gelp at; **objacere**, lie in the way; **obicere**, throw in the  
way, expose; **obirasci** (Sen.), be angry at; **obire**, meet, go over or  
through (see also 3); **objurgare**, scold (perhaps from **ob jus agere**,



§ 990); *oblatrare*, bark at; *oblidere* (dash together so as to close), squeeze; *obligare* (bind so as to close), bind up; *oblimare*, slime over; *oblinere*, smear over; *oblitterare*, write over (or do something over letters? *ob litteras*, § 990); *oblivisci* (cover with black), forget; *obloqui*, speak against; *obluctari*, struggle against; *obmoliri*, construct as an obstruction; *obmurmurare*, murmur against; *obniti*, struggle against; *obnubere*, veil over; *obnuntiare*, announce an unfavourable omen; *obolere*, emit scent towards; *operire* (put over? cf. vol. i. p. 254), cover; *oppangere* (Plaut.), imprint (a kiss); *opperiri*, put oneself in the way, wait for; *oppetere*, go to meet; *oppicare* (Cato), pitch over; *oppignerare* (pledge against money), pawn; *oppilare*, stop up; *opplere*, stop up, fill; *opplorare*, cry against; *opponere*, place against; *oppugnare*, fight against; *obrepere*, steal upon; *obruere*, bury; *obsæpire*, block up; *obserare*, bolt up; *obserere*, sow over; *obsidère*, sit down before, frequent; *obsidère*, blockade; *obsignare*, seal up; *obsistere*, set myself against; *obstare*, stand in the way; *obstinare*, fix against; *obstrepere*, make a noise so as to drown; *obstringere*, bind so as to compress; *obstruere*, build against, block up; *obsuere*, sew up; *obsurdescere*, grow deaf to; *obtigere*, cover over; *ostendere*, hold forth, show; *ostendere* (post-Aug.), spread over; *obtestari* (call witnesses against), protest; *obtexere*, weave over; *obtinere*, hold firm (against); *obtorquere*, twist towards, esp. of seizing the throat; *obtrectare* (handle injuriously), disparage; *obstrudere*, thrust upon (see also 3); *obtueri*, look at; *obturare*, block up; *obumbrare*, overshadow; *obvagulare*, go towards (*vagari*?), wail to (*vagire*?); *obvallare*, fortify; *obvenire*, come in the way; *obversari*, move before; *obvertere*, turn towards; *obvigilare*, be watchful against; *obvolvere*, muffle up. Compare *Restitunt*, *occurrunt*, *obstant*, *obstringillant*, *obagitant* (Enn. Sat. 2, ap. Non. p. 147).

2. Towards, with the idea of favour or compliance: *obcœdire*, <sup>2023</sup> hearken to; *oblectare* (draw towards), delight, amuse; *oblenire*, soften; *obsecundare*, be compliant; *obsequi*, follow compliantly; *observare*, pay attention to (also watch against); *obtemperare*, restrain oneself in order to gratify; *obtingere* (touch so as to benefit), befall (rarely of unfavourable events).

3. Down (from the notion of down upon?): *occidere*, fall down, <sup>2024</sup> set (of the sun), die; *occidere*, cut down, kill, ruin; *occubare*, lie down, repose (of the dead); *occulcare*, tread down; *occumbere*, fall in death; *obducere* (take down), drink (see also 1); *offringere* (break down?), cross-plough (but see 1); *obire* go down, die (see also 1); *obligare*, bind down, oblige (but see also 1); *opprimere*, squeeze, crush; *obsorbere*, swallow down; *obstringere*, bind down (also under 1); *obterere*, crush, disparage; *obstrudere*, gulp down (see also 1); *obtruncare*, cut down; *obtundere*, beat down, blunt.

4. *Completely*: almost pleonastic: obarmare (Hor.), *arm*; obbrutescere (Lucr.), *grow brutish*; obcanere (Tac.), *sound trumpets*; occipere, *take up*; obdormire, *sleep*; obhærescere, *stick fast*; oblanguescere (Cic.), *languish*; omittere, *drop*; obmutescere, *become dumb*; oboriri, *rise up*; obrigescere, *grow stiff*; obrodere (Plaut.), *gnaw*; obsaturare (Ter.), *satiates*; obsolescere, *wear out*; obstupescere, *be stupefied*; obticescere, *become silent*; obtorpescere, *become numb*; obturbare, *disturb*; obturgescere, *swell*; obustus, *burnt*.

Obesus (*overeaten?*), *fat*.

**Palam**; used chiefly without a substantive dependent, sometimes (in post-Ciceronian writers) with an ablative case.

1. *Without a substantive dependent (a)*: 'openly.'

Auferimus aurum omne illis præsentibus palam atque aperte.

(Pl. Bac. 302.)

Jouranto apud quæstorem ad ærarium palam luci per Jovem deosque penateis. (Corp. I. R. 197. i.e. Tab. Bant. 24.)

Arma in templum Castoris luce palam comportabantur. (C. Pis. 10.)

Hæc in foro palam Syracusis, in ore atque in oculis provinciæ, gesta sunt. (C. Verr. 2. 2. 33.)

Verres præteriens, lectica paulisper deposita, non per præstigias, sed palam per potestatem, uno imperio ostiatim totum oppidum compilavit. (C. Verr. 4. 24.)

(b) *Used predicatively with esse, facere*, 'public,' 'well-known.'

Oppido ego interii: palamst res. (Pl. Aud. 711.)

Mitto domestica quæ negari possunt: hæc commemoro quæ sunt palam. (C. Pis. 5.)

Pisces quidem audituus nec membra habent nec foramina, audire tamen eos palam est. (Plin. 10, § 193.)

Nondum palam factò, vivi mortuique per omnes pæne domos promiscue complorabantur. (L. 22. 33.)

Hannibal ut palam faceret suis, quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium in scapha cum caduceo mittit. (Nep. 23. 11.)

2. *With ablative case*: 'in presence of.'

2003

Hæc severus te palam laudaveram. (Hor. Epod. 11. 19.)

Inde rem creditori palam populo solvit. (L. 6. 14.)

Venus Marte palam semel est Vulcanum imitata. (Ov. A. A. 2. 569.)

**Penes;** *used only with accusative case; and almost exclusively with names of persons.*

1. *'In the possession of,' 'with.'*

Poterat intellegere thesaurum tuum me penes esse.

(Plaut. *Trin.* 1145.)

Edicunt, penes quem quisque sit Cæsaris miles, ut producat.

(Cæs. *C.* 1. 76.)

Si argentum deposuero et is, penes quem depositum fuit, me invito contrectaverit, et depositi et furti actio mihi in eum competit.

(Paulus ap. *Dig.* 16. 3. 29.)

2. *Metaphorically.*

Quasi fundamentum oratoris vides locutionem emendatam et Latinam, cujus penes quos laus adhuc fuit, non fuit rationis et scientiæ sed quasi bonæ consuetudinis. (*C. Brut.* 74.)

Beneficia vestra penes optimos, non audacissimos forent.

(Sall. *J.* 31, § 16.)

Penes quos igitur sunt auspicia more majorum? Nempe penes patres. (*L.* 6. 41.)

Cadent, quæ nunc sunt in honore vocabula, si volet usus, quem penes arbitrium est et jus et norma loquendi. (*Hor. A. P.* 72.)

Quid? cum Picenis excerpens semina pomis gaudes, si cameram perculisti forte, penes te's? (*Hor. S.* 2. 3. 274.)

Plures ejus rei causas afferebat, potissimam penes incuriam virorum feminarumque. (*Tac. A.* 4. 16.)

**Per;** *used only with accusative case. Compare however its semi-adverbial use in combination with adjectives, e.g. per mihi mirum est, &c. § 986.*

1. *Of space.*

(a) *Of passing through, or along.*

Mihi quidem videtur Brutus noster jam vel coronam auream per forum ferre posse. (*C. Att.* 14. 16.)

Natura oculos membranis vestivit, quas perlucidas fecit, ut per eas cerni posset. (*C. N. D.* 2. 57.)

Elephanti per artas præcipites vias magna mora agebantur.

(*L.* 21. 35.)

Occursant per obliqua montani (*on the flanks?* L. 2 E. 31.).

Nobis cum urbe simul positæ traditæque per manus religiones sunt.  
(L. 5. 51.)

Subibant alii aliis in custodiam valli stationesque, donec per omnes  
suffragium iret. (L. 25. 37.)

(b) *Of occurrence in different parts: 'throughout.'*

2040

Amici tui per provinciam atque imperium tuum pecunias regi cre-  
diderant. (C. Fam. 1. 7. § 6.)

Animæ semina corporibus nostris inmixta per artus. (Lucr. 3. 393.)

Invitati hospitaliter per domos. (L. 1. 9.)

Præsidius inde dispositis per recepta oppida, Romam decessere.

(L. 8. 13.)

Rufus Egnatius per omnia gladiatori quam senatori propior.

(Veil. 2. 91.)

2. *Of time: 'in the course of.'*

2041

Nulla res per triennium, nisi ad nutum istius, judicata est.

(C. Verr. Act. 1. 5.)

Duo fuerunt per idem tempus dissimiles inter se, sed Attici tamen.

(C. Brut. 83.)

Experiri juvat, utrum alios repente Carthaginienses per viginti annos  
terra ediderit. (L. 21. 41.)

3. *Of that which helps or does not obstruct.*

2042

(a) *'Through,' 'by the agency of,' 'by the aid of.'*

Quæ domi gerenda sunt, ea per Cæciliam transiguntur.

(C. Rosc. Am. 51.)

Plura proferre possim detrimenta publicis rebus quam adjumenta  
per homines eloquentissimos importata. (C. Or. 1. 9.)

Lentulus, quoscumque moribus aut fortuna novis rebus idoneos  
credebat, aut per se aut per alios sollicitabat. (Sail. C. 39.)

Si poterit fieri ut ne pater per me stetisse credat, quominus hæc  
fierent nuptiæ, volo. (Ter. Andr. 699.)

Qui per tutelam aut societatem aut rem mandatam aut fiducie  
rationem fraudavit quempiam, in eo, quo delictum est majus, eo  
poena est tardior? (C. Cæcin. 3.)

Per aliquot dies, quum jam expirasset Tarquinius, celata morte, per  
speciem alienæ fungendæ vicis suas opes firmavit. (L. 1. 40.)

*Often in oaths and entreaties.*

Quid enim est, per deos, optabilius sapientia? (Uib. 1. 1.)

Intra paucas horas, jurantes per quicquid decrum est, fidem ob-  
stringimus. (L. 23. 9.)

Quod ego per hanc te dextram oro et genium tuum, per tuam fidem perque hujus solitudinem te obtestor, ne abs te hanc segreges neu deseras. (Ter. *And.* 289.)

(b) 'In,' 'by,' i.e. 'with nothing else than.'

Satis per te tibi consulis. (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 17. 1.)

Ille nihil aliud honestum intelligit nisi quod sit rectum ipsumque per se sua vi, sua sponte, sua natura laudabile. (C. *Fin.* 2. 15.)

Tantum dicam, paucos homines hoc adjutore Q. Opimium perludum et jocum fortunis omnibus evertisse. (C. *Verr.* 1. 60.)

(c) 'Without hindrance from.'

Ita judicia contempserat, ut eum nihil delectaret, quod aut per naturam fas esset aut per leges liceret. (C. *Mil.* 16.)

Sin hoc non licet per Cratippum, at illud certe dabis. (C. *Off.* 3. 7.)

Trahantur per me pedibus omnes rei. (C. *Fam.* 7. 32.)

Inveniebat Nervios mulieres, quique per ætatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, in eum locum conjecisse. (Cæs. *G.* 2. 16.)

Omnis consularis, qui per valetudinem exsequi cladem illam fugamque potuissent, expulsos memoriæ proditur. (C. *Phil.* 2. 22.)

Decreverunt ut consul ipse, si per commodum reipublicæ posset, ad opprimendum Gallicum tumultum proficisceretur. (L. 31. 11.)

In composition: (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

1. *Through, all over:* peragere, pierce through (also 2); perambulare, walk through; perarare, plough through, write; percensere, enumerate; percipere, feel through, understand (see also 2); percolare, filter through; percurrere, run through; perflare, blow through; perfluere, flow through; perfodere, dig through; perforare, pierce; perfricare, rub all over; perfringere, break through; perfundere, pour all over; perlegere, read through; perlustrare, wander through; permanare, flow through; permeare, pass through; permetiri, measure out; pernumerare, count over; perpluere, rain through; perrepere, crawl through; perrodere, gnaw through; perrogare, ask all in succession; perumpere, break through; persalutare, greet all in succession; perscindere, tear through; perscribere, write in full; perscrutare, search through; persecare, cut into; personare, sound through; perspergere, sprinkle all over; perspicere, look through; persultare, dance about; pertundere, make a hole through; perungere, anoint all over; pervadere, go through; pervagari, wander through; pervigilare, watch throughout; pervolitare, pervolare, flit, fly about.



2. *Thoroughly, to completion*: *peragitare*, bunt about, stir up; *peragere*, finish (also 1); *perbibere*, drink in; *percalefacere*, make hot; *percallescere*, become callous, get knowledge of; *perciere*, stir up; *percipere*, gather for oneself (see also 1); *percolare*, greatly honour; *percontari*, poke into, cross-question (from *conto*, a pole, Corss.); *percoquere*, cook thoroughly; *percrebescere*, become prevalent; *percupere*, greatly desire; *percurare*, heal thoroughly; *percutere*, strike, shock; *perdiscere*, learn thoroughly; *perdocere*, teach thoroughly; *perdomare*, thoroughly tame; *perducere*, lead; *peredere*, eat away; *perferre*, carry through, bear; *perficere*, achieve, complete; *perfrui*, enjoy; *perfungi*, go through a duty, discharge; *pergere*, proceed; *pergræcari*, be a very Greek; *perhorrescere*, shudder; *perlibere*, be very pleasing; *perlibrare*, poise exactly, burl; *perlitare*, sacrifice favourably; *perluere*, wash; *permanere*, last out; *permiscere*, mix up; *permittere*, let loose, surrender, allow; *permovere*, stir up; *permulcere*, stroke, soothe; *permutare*, exchange; *pernegare*, deny stoutly; *pernoscere*, get thorough knowledge of; *perodisse*, detest; *perorare*, speak throughout, wind up; *perpellere*, prevail upon; *perpendere*, weigh carefully; *perpeti*, endure; *perpetrare*, accomplish; *perplacere*, please much; *perpolire*, polish well; *perpopulari*, lay utterly waste; *perpotare*, continue drinking; *perpurgare*, cleanse thoroughly; *perquirere*, search diligently; *persanare*, cure completely; *persedere*, remain sitting; *persentire* (Verg.), feel deeply; *persequi*, follow up, persecute, discuss; *persidere* (Lucr.), settle down; *persistere* (Liv.), persist; *persolvere*, discharge in full; *perspectare* (Suet.), behold to the end; *perspeculari*, reconnoitre thoroughly; *perstare*, stand firm; *perstrepare*, ring with a noise; *persvadere*, talk over, persuade; *pertædere*, be wearied out; *pertendere*, proceed; *pertentare*, test well; *pertergere*, wipe; *perterrere*, frighten; *pertexere*, weave throughout; *pertimescere* (very frequent in Cic.), be greatly afraid; *pertinere*, extend, concern; *pertractare*, handle; *pertrahere*, drag along; *perturbare*, throw into confusion; *perurere*, burn; *pervastare*, lay waste; *pervehere*, carry to the end; *pervellere*, pluck hard; *pervenire*, reach; *pervestigare*, track out; *pervidere*, look carefully at; *pervincere*, conquer completely; *pervivere* (Plaut.), live on; *pervolvere*, roll over; *pervulgare*, make quite public; and many others used occasionally.

3. In a bad sense: *perbitere* (Plaut.), go to destruction; *percellere*, strike down; *percidere*, cut to pieces; *perdere*, destroy; *perimere*, destroy; *perire*, perish; *perfugere*, desert; *pejorare*, swear falsely (but comp. § 990); *pellicere*, entangle; *pervertere*, overturn, turn the wrong way.

4. *perhibere*, hold out, assert, name.

**Pone** (for **pos-ne**; cf. **post**, &c. § 535): used both without a substantive dependent and with an accusative case. 'Behind.' (Quintilian (8. 3. 25) speaks of **pone** as archaic.)

1. *Without a substantive dependent.*

Nostros pone versus hosteis esse ab dextra parte.

(Cato ap. Charis. p. 191.)

Ita totum animal movebatur et ante et pone et ad lævam et ad dextram et sursum et deorsum modo huc, modo illuc. (C. Tim. 13.)

Sequiturque patrem non passibus æquis. Pone subit conjux.

(Verg. A. 2. 727.)

2. *With accusative.*

Tute pone te latebis, facile ne inveniatur te honor. (Pl. Trin. 663.)

Pone castra utrique pabulatum et lignatum ibant. (L. 40. 30.)

Vinctæ pone tergum manus. (Tac. H. 3. 84.)

**Por-**, old form of **pro** (comp. **porro**, **πρόσω**, **πόρρω**): found only 204 in composition.

**Forth**: **pollere** (**por-valere?**), *be powerful*; **polliceri** (**por-liceri**), *bold forth an offer, promise*; **pollingere**, *lay out a corpse*; **pollucere** (**por + ?**), *offer in sacrifice*; **polluere** (*wash over?* comp. **pollubrum**), *defile*; **ponere** (**por-sino**, **posno**), *set forth, place*; **porcēre** (**porarcere?**), *keep off* (Enn., Lucil., &c.); **porricere** (**por-jacēre**: comp. **disicio**, § 144), *offer in sacrifice*; **porrigere** (**por**, **regere**), *offer*; **portendere** (*bold forth*), *portend*; **portare** (frequentative of a simple verb formed from the preposition **por-**? comp. **πορέω**), *forward, carry*; **possidere** (**por**, **sedere**, *occupy in advance?*), *possess* (of land originally).

**Post** (also apparently **pos**, and in Plautus **postid**, **poste**): used both 204 without a substantive dependent, and with a substantive in the accusative case.

1. *Of space: 'behind.'*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Illi partim cædere incipiunt ejus servos, qui post erant. (C. Mil. 10.)

(9) *With an accusative case.*

2044

Locavit porticum post navalia et ad fanum Herculis et post Spei a Tiberi ad ædem Apollinis medici. (L. 40. 51.)

Sed magnum metuens se post cratera tegebat. (Verg. *A.* 9. 346.)

Cohortes aliquot subductas e dextro cornu post aciem circumducit. (L. 27. 43.)

2. *Of time: 'after' (cf. postquam. §§ 1471, 1475).*

2045

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Deos salutabo modo: poste ad te continuo transeo. (Pl. *Sch.* 625.)

Pecunia recuperata est multis post annis. (C. *Flav.* 24.)

Arva Timavi nunc quoque post tanto videat. (Verg. *G.* 3. 475.)

Substringebat caput (jumentum) loro, deinde post verberibus coquebat exultare. (Nep. 18. 5.)

Quædam sunt in quibus res dubia est, sed ex post facto retro ducitur et apparet quid actum est. (Marc. ap. *Dis.* 34. 5. 14.)

*So with possessive genitive (cf. § 1296).*

Postid locorum tu mi amanti ignoscito. (Pl. *Pæn.* 1. 1. 16.)

(b) *With an accusative case.*

2046

Cuncta tuus sepelivit amor, nec semina post te ulla dedit collo dulcia vincia meo. (Prop. 4. 14. 9.)

Apu'd Salamina parvo numero navium maxima post hominum memoriam classis est devicta. (Nep. 2. 5.)

Ludos scenicos triduum post dedicationem templi Junonis, biduum post Dianæ et singulos dies fuit in circo. (L. 40. 52.)

(c) *Apparently with ablative, in phrases posthac, postea, postideâ = (old). postillâ: so also postibi (Plaut.): cf. § 509.*

Hunc tu in ædis cogitas recipere posthac? (Ter. *Eun.* 807.)

Hæc mihi Stertinnus, sapientum octavus, amico arma dedit, posthac ne compellerer inultus. (Hor. *S.* 2. 3. 297.)

P. Considius qui in exercitu L. Sullæ et postea in M. Crassi fuerat. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 21.)

Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit hostes tergi verterunt. (Cæs. *G.* 4. 38.)

Eum qui mihi illam vendidit, nunquam postillâ vidi.

(Plaut. *Cure.* 529.)

Nec sibi postillâ metuebant talia verba. (Catull. 34. 9.)

Postibi videtur ad me simia adgredirier. (Pl. *Rud.* 600.)

3. *Of worth. (a) Without a substantive dependent.*

2048

Ubi periculum advenit, invidia atque superbia post fuere.

(Sall. *C.* 23.)

Festivom caput, qui ignominias sibi post putavit esse præ meo com-  
modo. (Ter. *Ad.* 262.)

(b) *With an accusative case.*

Tantus erit ambitionis furor ut nemo tibi post te videatur, si aliquis  
ante te fuerit. (Sen. *Ep.* 104, § 9.)

4. *Of a logical consequence: postea.*

2049

Dices: 'quid postea, si Romæ adsiduus fui.' (C. *Rosc. Am.* 33.)

At enim nemo post reges exactos de plebe consul fuit. Quid  
postea? nullane res nova institui debet? (L. 4. 4.)

In composition: The following may be here noticed, though no  
clear mark of composition is to be found: 2050

1. *After, of time: ex post facto* (cf. § 2045), *made after-*  
*wards; postfuturus* (Sall., Plin.); *postgenitus* (Tac.), *of posterity;*  
*postscribere, write as a postscript; postvenire* (Plin.), *come after.*

2. *After, of worth: postferre, posthabere, postponere, post-*  
*putare, put second, esteem less.*

**Præ:** *used both without a substantive dependent, and with a sub-* 2051  
*stantive in the ablative case. 'In front.'*

1. *In space.*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent; with* **præ** *and compounds.*

Abi præ, Sosia: jam ego sequar. (Pl. *Amph.* 543.)

Eamus nunciam intro. So. I præ, sequor. (Ter. *And.* 171.)

(b) *With an ablative case; usually of persons: 'before.'*

2052

Ille qui stillantem præ se pugionem tulit, is a te honoris causa no-  
minatur. (C. *Phil.* 2. 12.)

Ubi paulo asperior ascensus erat, singulos præ se inermos mittere.

(Sall. *J.* 94.)

*Metaphorically:*

2053

Si huic aliquid paulum præ manu dederis unde utatur, reddet tibi cito. (Ter. *Ad.* 980.) *We say 'to his hand.'*

Petenti mutuam pecuniam creditori, cum præ manu debitor non haberet, species auri dedit, ut pignori poneret.

(Ulpian ap. *Dig.* 13. 7, § 27.)

Nec vero cum venit, præ se fert, aut quis sit aut unde veniat aut etiam quid velit. (C. *R. P.* 2. 3.)

Fortasse ceteri tectiores; ego semper me didicisse præ me tuli.

(C. *Or.* 42.)

2. *In comparison.*

2054

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: in phrases præut, præquam* (cf. §§ 1645, 1707. b).

Folia nunc cadunt præut si triduom hoc hic erimus; tum arbores in te cadent. (Plaut. *Men.* 376.)

Nihil hercle hoc quidemst præut alia dicam, tu quæ nunquam feceris. (Pl. *Mil.* 20.)

Satin' parva res est voluptatum in vita atque in ætate agunda, præquam quod molestum est. (Plaut. *Am.* 633.)

*Compare* Immo res omnis relictas habeo præ quod tu velis.

(Pl. *Stich.* 362.)

(b) *With ablative case: 'in comparison with.'*

2055

Plerumque hominibus Gallis præ magnitudine corporum suorum brevitatis nostra contemptui est. (Cæs. *G.* 2. 30.)

Nobis (videris) non tu quidem vacuus molestiis, sed præ nobis beatus. (C. *Fam.* 4. 4.)

3. *Of a hindrance; in the early writers also of other causes; 'for,' 'in consequence of.'*

Nec loqui præ mœrore potuit. (C. *Planc.* 41.)

Solem præ jaculorum magnitudine et sagittarum non videbitis.

(C. *T. D.* 1. 42.)

Nec divini humanive juris quicquam præ impotenti ira est servatum.

(L. 31. 24.)

Adversus tam obstinatam orationem tribunorum præ indignitate rerum stupor silentiumque inde cæteros patrum defixit.

(L. 6. 40.)

Ut præ lætitia lacrumæ prosiliunt mihi. (Plaut. *Stich.* 466.)

Murenæ in summa aqua præ pinguedine flutantur.

(Varr. ap. Macr. *Sat.* 3. 15. 8.)



In composition: (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

2058

1. Of place; *before, in front, at the end*: also metaphorically; **præhibere** (Plaut.), *hold forth, furnish*; **præbere**, *hold forth, furnish*; **præcedere**, *go before*; **præcelerare** (Stat.), *hasten in advance*; **præcidere**, *cut short*; **præcingere**, *gird in front, gird*; **præcludere**, *shut up, block up*; **præcurrere**, *run in advance*; **præcutere**, *brandish before*; **prædicare** (*publish in front*), *declare*; **præditus** (*advanced*), *endowed*; **præesse**, *be at the head of*; **præferre**, *bear before*; **præficere**, *put at the head*; **præfigere**, *fasten in front*; **præfluere**, *flow in front*; **præfocare** (*hold the throat in front?*), *throttle*; **præfodere**, *dig in front* (see also 2); **præfringere**, *break off at the end*; **præfulcire**, *hoop up in front*; **præfulgurare** (Stat., Fl.), *lighten in front*; **prægredi**, *go in front*; **præjacere**, *lie in front*; **præire**, *go before*; **prælabi**, *glide in front or along*; **præligare**, *bind in front*; **prælucere**, *light in front*; **præmordere**, *bite at the end, bite off*; **præmunire**, *fortify in front*; **prænatare**, *swim in front*; **prænavigare**, *sail in front or past*; **præpandere**, *spread before*; **præpedire** (*bind the fore feet?*), *shackle*; **præpendere**, *hang in front*; **præponere**, *set in front or at the head*; **præportare**, *carry in front*; **prærigescere**, *stiffen at the extremity*; **prærodere**, *gnaw at the end*; **præsæpire**, *block in front*; **præscribere**, *write at the top* (see also 2); **præsecare**, *cut at the end*; **præsidere**, *sit in front or at the head*; **præspargere**, *scatter abroad*; **præstare**, *vouch for* (see also 3); **præstringere**, *blunt the edge*; **præstruere**, *erect in front*; **præsuere**, *sew at the end*; **prætendere**, *spread before*; **præterere**, *wear away at the end*; **prætexere**, *edge*; **prætruncare**, *mutilate at the end*; **prætorquere**, *twist forward*; **prævaricari** (*straddle so as to prevent?*), *act collusively*; **prævehi**, *ride in front*; **prævolare**, *fly in front*; **præustus**, *burnt at end*.

2. Of time; *before, also too soon*: **præbibere**, *drink before*; **præ- 2059**  
**cavere**, *guard against beforehand*; **præcerpere**, *pluck beforehand*; **præcinere**, *sing before*; **præcipere**, *seize beforehand, admonish*; **præcogitare**, *ponder beforehand*; **præcognoscere**, *foreknow*; **præcolere**, *cultivate beforehand*; **præconsumere** (Ov.), *consume before*; **præcontrectare** (Ov.), *handle by anticipation*; **præcoquere**, *cook before*; **præcorrumpere** (Ov.), *bribe beforehand*; **prædamnare**, *pre-condemn*; **prædelassare** (Ov.), *weaken before*; **prædestinare** (Liv.), *predetermine*; **prædicere**, *foretell*; **prædiscere**, *learn beforehand*; **prædivinare**, *have a presentiment of*; **prædocere**, *forewarn*; **prædomare** (Sen.), *fore-tame*; **præfestinare**, *be over hasty*; **præfinire**, *mark out beforehand*; **præflorere** (Plin.), *flower early*; **præfodere**, *dig beforehand* (see also 1); **præfari**, *say before*; **præformidare**, *dread before*; **præformare**, *preform*; **prægerminare** (Plin.), *bud early*; **prægustare**, *taste beforehand*; **præire**, *go over first as a pattern*; **præjudicare**, *prejudge*; **prælambere**, *lick before*; **prælegare**, *bequeath before the heir takes*; **prælegere**, *read first, lecture on*; **prælibare**, *foretaste*; **præloqui**, *speak*

before; *præludere*, *prelude*; *præmandare*, *order beforehand*; *præmeditari*, *think over in advance*; *præmercari*, *forestall*; *præmetuere*, *fear in advance*; *præmigrare*, *move beforehand*; *præmittere*, *send on*; *præmoliri* (Liv.), *prepare beforehand*; *præmollire*, *soften beforehand*; *præmonere*, *forewarn*; *præmonstrare*, *point out before*; *præmori*, *die before*; *prænarrare*, *tell beforehand*; *prænoscere*, *foreknow*; *prænuntiare*, *foretell*; *præoccupare*, *pre-occupy*; *præparare*, *prepare beforehand*; *præripere*, *snatch beforehand*; *prærogare*, *ask first*; *præsagire*, *have a presentiment of*; *præsanare*, *heal prematurely*; *præscire*, *know beforehand*; *præsciscere*, *learn beforehand*; *præscribere*, *write before as a pattern, direct* (see also 1); *præsentire*, *feel beforehand*; *præsignare*, *mark beforehand*; *præsignificare*, *foreshow*; *præstinare* (*fix beforehand*, cf. *destinare*), *purchase beforehand*; *præstituere*, *settle before*; *præstolari*, *stand waiting for*; *præstruere*, *prepare beforehand*; *præsumere*, *take before*; *prætemptare*, *try before*; *prætelescere*, *grow swarm previously*; *prætimere*, *fear beforehand*; *prætingere*, *moisten beforehand*; *prævenire*, *outstrip*; *prævertere*, *anticipate*; *præverti*, *give first attention to*; *prævidere*, *foresee*; *prævitiare* (Ov.), *drug beforehand*.

3. Before others, in comparison, greatly: *præcellere*, *be distinguished*; *præeminere* (Tac.), *be prominent*; *præfulgere*, *glitter*; *præfurere* (Stat.), *rage violently*; *prægestire* (Cic.), *exult*; *prægravare*, *weigh down*; *prænitere*, *outshine*; *præoptare*, *prefer*; *præpollere*, *be superior in power*; *præponderare*, *turn the scale*; *præposse* (Tac.), *excel in power*; *præradiare* (Ov.), *gleam brighter*; *præstare*, *excel* (see also 1); *præstringere*, *tie tightly*? (see also 1); *prævertere*, *prevail*.

**Præter**: used both without a substantive dependent, and with accusative case. 2060

1. In space: with accusative case; 'past.'

Postridie ejus diei præter castra Cæsaris suas copias produxit.  
(Cæs. G. I. 48.)

Servi ejus præter oculos Lollii cenam ac pocula ferebant.  
(C. Ferr. 3. 25.)

[Perhaps here belongs the phrase *præter propter vitam vivitur* used by Ennius (in Gellius 19. 10), 'men live beside and near life, not in it.' But *vitam* may also be taken as a cognate accus. and *præter propter* used absolutely as it is in the earlier part of that chapter of Gellius.] 2061

2. *Besides: 'in addition.'*(a) *Without a substantive; præter, præterquam.*

Habent autem (insecta) oculos, præterque e sensibus tactum atque gustatum. (Plin. 11. 4. 3.)

Syracusarum oppugnatio ad finem venit, præterquam vi ac virtute du-  
cis exercitusque, intestina etiam prodicione adjuncta. (L. 25. 23.)

Cruciatus contumeliasque, quas parat hostis, effugere morte, præ-  
terquam honesta, etiam leni possum. (L. 26. 13, § 14.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

Præter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit.

(Cæs. G. 1. 43.)

(c) *Apparently with ablative in phrases præterhac (Plaut.), præterea.*

Præterhac si mihi tale post hunc diem faxis, faxo foris vidua visas  
patrem. (Pl. Men. 113.)

Multæ sunt causæ quamobrem cupiam abducere; primum, quod  
soror est dicta, præterea, ut suis restituam ac reddam.

(Ter. Eun. 146.)

Quod præterea navium longarum habebat legatis præfectisque dis-  
tribuit. (Cæs. G. 4. 22.)

3. *'Beyond,' 'beyond the bounds of.'*(a) *Without a substantive: only in phrase præterquam.*

Mihi videris præter ætatem tuam facere et præterquam res te ad-  
hortatur tua. (Ter. Haut. 59.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

Ut amplissimum nomen consequeremur, unus præter ceteros ad-  
juvisti. (C. Q. Fr. 1. 1, § 15.)

Lacus Albinus præter modum creverat. (C. Div. 1. 44.)

Morem geras, dum caveatur, præter æquom ne quid delinquat.

(Pl. Bac. 418.)

Id fecimus præter consuetudinem Græcorum. (Corn. 4. 1.)

Catilina, si hoc quod agit nunquam antea cogitasset, tamen, &c.

Nunc vero nihil adhuc præter ipsius voluntatem cogitationem-  
que accidit. (C. Cat. 2. 7.)

4. *'Except.'*(a) *Without a substantive: rare except in phrase præterquam.*

Ceteræ multitudini diem statuit, ante quam sine fraude liceret ab  
armis discedere, præter rerum capitalium condemnatis.

(Sall. C. 36.)

(Nero fuit) religionum usquequaque contemptor, præter unus Deus Syriz. (Suet. Ner. 36.)

Nullum ego a vobis monumentum laudis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam sempiternam. (C. Cat. 3. 11.)

Nullas adhuc acceperam (litteras), præter quas mihi hinc simul in Trebulano redditis sunt. (C. Att. 3. 3.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

2067

Omnibus sententiis præter unam condemnatus est. (C. Clu. 20.)

Neque vestitus præter pennis habent quicquam. (Cæs. G. 4. 1.)

Ne quis præter redemptorem post Idus Martias cotem ex insula Creta sodino neve eximito. (ap. Dig. 39. 4. 15.)

In composition. None of the words, except *prætergredi*, has any clear mark of composition.

*Part:* præter -bitere (Plaut.), *go past*; -ducere (Plaut.), -ire, -equivitare (Liv.), -ferri, -finire, -gredi, -labi, -meare (Lucret.), -mittere, *let go, overlook*; -navigare (Suet.) -vehi, -volare.

*Pro:* *used with ablative case, and not with accusative, except in phrase pro ut.* Compare *abso proin* (*for proin, 'in accordance with that'*). *proinde.*

1. *In space.*

2070

(a) *'Before,' 'in front of.'*

Castra Sabina pro moribus sociorum locata erant. (L. 2. 33.)

Cæsar pro castris suas copias produxit. (Cæs. G. 1. 48.)

Donatum ac laudatum magnifice pro contione Jugurtham in prætorium abduxit itaque secreto monuit. (Sall. J. 1.)

(b) *'On the front of.'*

2071

Ad hoc mulieres puerique pro tectis ædificiorum saxa et alia quæ locus præbebat certatim mittere. (Sall. J. 67.)

Id me arbitror Synnadis pro tribunali multis verbis disputavisse.

(C. Fam. 3. 8. § 3.)

Id agimus, non ut pro ripa Hiberi stantes arceamus transitu hostes, sed ut ultro transeamus transferamusque bellum. (L. 26. 41.)

2. 'In behalf of,' i.e. (a) 'on the side,' or 'interest of,' (b) 'in 207  
the name of,' (c) 'in virtue of.'

(a) Hæc cum contra legem proque lege dicta essent. (L. 34. 8.)  
Convenit dimicare pro legibus, pro libertatē, pro patria.

(C. T. D. 4. 19.)

Quæritur an pro Cæsare fuerit occidi Pompeium. (Quint. 3. 8. 56.)

(b) Tribuni secedunt proque collegio pronuntiant placere consules  
senatui dicto audientes esse. (L. 4. 26.)

(c) Jam pro imperio Valerius discedere a privato lictores jubebat.  
(L. 3. 49.)

3. 'Instead of,' 'as good as.'

2073

Libenter etiam copulando verba jungebant ut 'sodes' pro 'si  
audes,' 'sis' pro 'si vis.' (C. Or. 45.)

Nam Sertorianum bellum a senatu privato datum est, quia consules  
recusabant, cum L. Philippus pro consulibus eum se mittere  
dixit non pro consule. (C. Phil. 11. 8.)

P. Terentius operas in portu et scriptura Asiæ pro magistro dedit.  
(C. Att. 11. 10.)

Nuper postea quam est comperendinatus, cum jam pro damnato  
mortuoque esset. (C. Verr. 4. 15.)

Eduxi a parvulo, habui, amavi pro meo. (Ter. Ad. 48.)

Torti post paulo insontes, quum scirent ipsi nihil, opinione omnium  
pro indicio Zeuxippum et Pisistratum nominaverunt. (L. 33. 28.)

4. 'In return for,' 'in consideration of.'

2074

Par pari datum hostimentumst, opera pro pecunia. (Pl. Asin. 172.)

Signa, quæ nobis curasti, ea sunt ad Caietam exposita: misimus qui  
pro vectura solveret. (C. Att. 1. 3.)

Pro eo quod pluribus verbis vos quam vellem fatigavi, veniam a  
vobis petitam impetratamque velim. (L. 38. 49.)

Proque ministerio magni sibi ponderis aurum postulat.  
(Ov. M. 2. 750.)

See also Pl. Trin. 234, quoted in § 2018.

5. 'According to,' 'in proportion to.'

2075

Prælium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur. (L. 21. 29.)

Hæc cum omnes sentirent et cum in eam rationem pro suo quisque  
sensu ac dolore loqueretur, omnes ad eam domum profecti  
sunt. (C. Verr. 1. 27.)



Hæc qui pro virili parte defendunt, optimates sunt, cujuscumque sunt ordinis. (C. Sest. 66.)

Equidem pro eo, quanti te facio, quicquid feceris, adprobabo. (C. Fam. 3. 3.)

Quis potis est dignum pollenti pectore carmen condere pro rerum maiestate hisque repertis? (Lucr. 5. 1.)

Numquam in Sicilia frumentum publice est emptum, quin Mamertinis pro portione imperaretur. (C. Verr. 5. 21.)

Legatarius pro parte adquirere, pro parte repudiare legatum non potest. Si legatum nobis relictum constituerimus nolle ad nos pertinere, pro eo erit quasi nec legatum quidem sit. (Pompon. ap. Dig. 30. 38.)

Existimaram pro mutuo inter nos animo et pro reconciliata gratia nec absentem me ludibrio læsum iri, nec, &c. (Metell. ap. C. Fam. 5. 1.)

Si quis aliam rem pro alia (*supr.* 3) volenti solverit et evicta fuerit res, manet pristina obligatio. Etsi pro parte fuerit evicta, tamen pro solido obligatio durat; nam non accepisset re integra creditor, nisi pro solido ejus fieret. Sed et si duos fundos verbi gratia pro debito (*supr.* 4) dederit, evicto altero fundo remanet integra obligatio. Tunc ergo res pro re (*supr.* 4) soluta liberationem præstat, cum pro solido facta est suscipientis. (Marcian. ap. Dig. 46. 3. 46.)

In composition: (see also §§ 985, 986, 990).

2076

The *o* is usually long in verbs, except before *f*. The old form *prod* remains before vowels (§ 160. 8).

1. *Forth, forwards*: *prodambulare* (Ter.), *walk forth*; *procedere*, *proceed*; *procellere* (Plaut.), *throw forwards*; *procidere*, *fall forwards*; *proclamare*, *shout out*; *proclinare*, *bend forward*; *procrastinare*, *put off* (orig. *till the morrow*); *procrecere*, *progress*; *procubare* (Verg.), *lie forward*; *procudere*, *beat forward*, *beat flat*; *proculcare*, *trample flat*; *procumbere*, *fall prostrate*, *lean forwards*; *procurrere*, *run forwards*; *procurvare* (Stat.), *bend forwards*; *prodicere* (Liv.), *put off*; *prodere*, *produce*, *give up*, *protract*; *producere*, *lead forth*; *prodesse* (*be in advance*), *profit*; *profari*, *speak out* (see also 3); *profere*, *bring forth*, *extend*, *mention*; *proficere*, *advance*; *proficisci* (*put oneself forward*), *travel*; *profiteri*, *declare publicly*, *offer*; *proflare*, *breathe out*; *profligare*, *strike forwards*, *knock down*, *finish*; *profluere*, *flow forth*; *profugere*, *flee away*; *profundere*, *pour forth*; *progerere*, *carry forth*; *pregredi*, *advance*; *prohibere*, *keep forth*, *i. e.* away from, *prohibit*; *proicere*, *cast forth*, *throw*

away; **prodigere** drive away, waste away; **prodire** come forth; **prolabi**, slip forward, sink; **prolibare**, pour forth an offering; **prolicere**, entice forth; **proloqui**, utter; **proluere**, wash out; **prominere**, project; **promittere**, let grow long, hold out a promise; **promere**, produce; **promovere**, push on; **promulgare**, publish; **pronectere** (Stat.), spin out; **pronuntiare**, announce, recite; **pröpellere** (Lucr. has also **pröpell-**), drive forward; **propendere**, hang forward, incline; **propone**, set forth, propose; **propugnare**, sally to fight, fight in defence of; **prorepere**, creep forth; **proripere**, throw forth; **proritare** (post-Aug.), provoke (comp. irritare); **prorogare** (propose a law for postponement), postpone; **proruere**, throw to the ground; **prorumpere**, burst forth; **proscribere**, advertise, proscribe; **prosequi**, follow on, escort, pursue; **proserpere** (Plaut.), creep forth; **prosilire**, leap up or forth; **prospeculari**, explore in front; **prospicere**, look forward; **prostare**, be exposed for sale; **prosternere**, prostrate; **prostituere**, expose, prostitute; **prosubigere** (Verg.), dig up in front; **protegere**, cover by a projection; **protendere**, extend; **proterere**, trample under foot; **proterrere**, scare forth or away; **protollere** (Plaut.), lift forward; **protrahere**, drag forth, protract; **proturbare**, drive forth; **provehere**, carry on; **provenire**, come forth, turn out (of events); **provertere**, turn forwards; **providere**, look onwards or ahead; **provocare**, call out, summon, challenge; **provolvere**, roll along; **provomere**, (Lucr.), vomit forth.

2. Almost pleonastic: **procreare**, beget; **pröcurare** (also **pröcur-**), manage; **progenerare**, beget; **prognere**, beget; **promerere**, deserve; **pröpinare** (also **pröpin-**), drink a health (from *προπίνειν*); **proscindere**, cleave of the first ploughing; **prosecare**, cut off, esp. of the 'exta' in a sacrifice; **proserere**, produce by sowing; **prospargere** (Tac.), besprinkle.

3. Before of time (comp. *προ*): **pröfari**, foretell (see also 1); **proludere**, practise or skirmish beforehand.

**Procul**: used both without a substantive dependent, and with ablative case. 'At a distance, 'far.'

1. In space. (a) Without a substantive dependent.

Amabo quojā vox sonat procul? (Pl. Curc. 111.)

Procul o, procul este profani, conclamat vates. (Verg. *A.* 6. 258.)

Ambiorix pronuntiari jubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant. (Cæs. *G.* 5. 34.)

Non quæsit procul alicunde sed proximum, quem illam pecuniam diceret abstulisse. (C. *Verr.* 2. 20.)

Catilina in abditam partem ædium secessit, atque ibi, omnibus arbitris procul amotis, orationem habuit. (Sall. *C.* 20.)

(b) *With preposition ab, or adverb of place.*

2031

Repente te quasi quidam æstus ingenii tui procul a terra abripuit,  
atque in altum a conspectu pæne hominum abstraxit.

(C. Or. 3. 36.)

Quem cum istoc sermonem habueris, procul hinc stans accepi, uxor.

(Ter. Hec. 607.)

(c) *With ablative case.*

2032

Multi suam rem bene gessere et publicam patria procul.

(Enn. ap. C. Fam. 7. 6.)

Dein cum egressis ad tuendos fines haud procul mœnibus ipsorum  
depugnat. (L. 10. 37.)

Beatus ille, qui procul negotiis paterna rura bobus exercet suis.

(Hor. Epod. 2. 1.)

2. *In time: with preposition ab.*

2033

Omitto innumerabilis viros, quia sunt procul ab ætatis hujus me-  
moria. (C. R. P. 1. 1.)

3. *Metaphorically. (a) Without a substantive dependent.*

2034

In obsequio comitas adsit, adsentatio, vitiorum adjutrix, procul  
amoveatur. (C. Læl. 24.)

Homines superbissumi procul errant. (Sall. J. 85.)

(b) *With preposition ab.*

2035

Quæ est enim alia fortitudo nisi animi adfectio, cum in adeundo  
periculo et in labore ac dolore patiens, tum procul ab omni  
metu? (C. T. D. 5. 14.)

Quis tam inperitus, quis tam procul a litteris, quin sic incipiat?

(Quint. 7. 1. 46.)

(c) *With ablative case.*

2036

Jamque haud procul seditione res erat. (L. 6. 16.)

Adjutamur enim dubio procul atque alimur nos certis ab rebus.

(Lucr. 1. 812.)

Quid quod quædam, quæ singula procul dubio vitiosa sunt, juncta  
sine reprehensione dicuntur? (Quint. 1. 5. 14.)

Jam liber invidia, procul contentionibus famam in tuto collocavit.

(Quint. 12. 11, § 7.)

Alia haud procul fabulis vetera facunde executus. (Tac. A. 12. 58.)

**Prope:** *used chiefly without a substantive dependent or with a preposition; sometimes with an accusative case. 'Near.'* (On the accusative with **propior**, **proximus**, &c. see §§ 1106, 1107.) 2087

1. *In space.* (a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Quoja prope me hic vox sonat? AM. Pertimui; quis loquitur prope? (Plaut. *Rud.* 229.)

(b) *With a preposition* **ab**, **ad**. 2088

In illo ipso tempore apud socrum tuam prope a meis ædibus sedebas. (C. *Pis.* 11.)

Nec posse (ostendit), quum hostes prope ad portas essent, bello præverti quicquam. (L. 2. 24.)

(c) *With an accusative.* 2089

Ut non modo prope me, sed plane mecum habitare posses. (C. *Fam.* 7. 23.)  
Castris prope oppidum positis. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 36.)

2. *In time.* (a) *Without a substantive dependent.* 2090

Prope adest, quom alieno more vivendumst mihi: sine nunc meo me vivere interea modo. (Ter. *And.* 153.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

Multi aiunt, excruciatum doloribus nocte tota, defecisse prope lucem. (Suet. *Claud.* 44.)

3. *Metaphorically.* (a) *Without a substantive dependent.* 2091

Trinobantes prope firmissima earum regionum civitas. (Cæs. *G.* 5. 20.)

Quo ubi allatum est hostes adventare, prope est factum ut injussu prætoris signis convulsis in aciem exirent. (L. 25. 21.)

Ejus filiam ille amare cœpit perditæ, prope jam ut pro uxore haberet. (Ter. *Haut.* 97.)

Quia non tantum mulieri sed Titio quoque consultum videtur, prope est ut ipse legatarius intellegatur. (Papin. ap. *Dig.* 35. 1. 71.)

(b) *With a preposition.* 2092

Licinius Mucianus in secretum Asiæ sepositus, tam prope ab exule fuit quam postea a principe. (Tac. *H.* 1. 10.)

Res Romana, quæ prope exitium clade Cannensi venerat, in dies melior atque auctior fiebat, Hannibalis vis senescebat ac prope ad nihilum venerat. (L. 25. 16, § 11.)

(c) *With an accusative.*

Romani Horatium accipiunt eo majore cum gaudio, quo prope<sup>2093</sup>  
metum res fuerat. (L. 1. 25.)

**Propter** (*for propi-ter*): used both *with* a substantive, and<sup>2094</sup>  
*with* an accusative case. Compare also **propterea**, **quapropter**.

1. *In space: 'near.'* (a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Ibi angiportum propter est. (Ter. *Ad.* 576.)

Vites a canibus, si propter sati sint, ut a pestiferis et nocentibus  
refugere dicuntur. (C. N. D. 2. 47.)

Adolescentia, voluptates propter intraens, magis fortasse latur, sed  
delectatur etiam senectus, procul eas spectans, tantum quantum  
satis est. (C. Sen. 14.)

(b) *With an accusative case.*

2095

Nimium istoc abissi: hic propter hunc adsiste. (Ter. *Ad.* 160.)

Qui tenuit insulas propter Siciliam, quæ Volcaniz nominabantur.  
(C. N. D. 3. 22.)

Prostrati in gramine molli propter aquæ rivum jucunde corpora  
curant. (Lucret. 2. 30.)

2. *Of the cause: 'on account of.'* (a) *With an accusative case.* 2096

Propter frigora frumenta in agris matura non erant. (Cæs. G. 1. 16.)

Proficiscor magno equidem cum dolore, nec tam id propter me aut  
propter fratrem meum, quam propter pueros. (C. *Att.* 10. 4.)

Quis igitur vivit, ut vult, nisi qui ne legibus quidem propter metum  
paret? (C. *Par.* 4. 1.)

(b) *Apparently with an ablative case, in phrases propterea, quapropter.* 2097

Quia mihi natalis dies, propterea te vocari ad cenam volo.  
(Pl. *Capt.* 175.)

Num propterea nulla est reipublicæ gerendæ ratio atque prudentia,  
quia multa Cn. Pompeium fefellerunt? (C. *Div.* 1. 14.)

Qua me propter exanimatum citius eduxi foras. (Ter. *Her.* 364.)

Quapropter id vos factum suspicamini? (Pl. *Moss.* 483.)



**Red-, re-,** in composition only. (*See also* § 986.)

209

**Red-** before vowels and **h**; **re-** before consonants. But see also § 160. 7.

1. *Back, backwards*: **red-ambulare** (Plaut.), *walk back*; **rebi-tere** (Plaut.), *go back*; **recalcitrare** (Hor.), *kick back*; **recanere** (Plin.), *call back by song* (see also 7); **recedere**, *go back*; **recellere**, *spring back*; **recidere**, *recoil, sink*; **reclinare**, *lean back*; **recubare**, *lie back*; **recumbere**, *lie down, sink down*; **recurrere**, *run back* (see also 5); **recurvare**, *curve backwards*; **reducere**, *lead back*; **referre**, *bring back* (see also 2 and 5); **reflectere**, *bend back*; **reflare**, *blow back*; **refluere**, *flow back, overflow*; **reformidare**, *start back in fear, dread*; **refrenare**, *rein back, restrain*; **refringere**, *break back, break open* (see also 6); **refugere**, *flee back, shrink from*; **refundere**, *pour back, cause to overflow*; **refutare**, *repress, refute*; **regerere**, *throw back*; **regredi**, *step back, turn back*; **reicere**, *throw back, reject*; **red-igere**, *drive back* (see also 2 and 5); **redire**, *return* (see also 5); **relabi**, *slip back*; **religare**, *bind back, fasten up*; **remanare**, *flow back*; **remeare**, *go back*; **remigrare**, *journey back*; **remittere**, *send back, let go back, relax, yield*; **remoliri**, *move back*; **renavigare**, *sail back*; **renare** (Hor.), *float back*; **renuntiare**, *report*; **repectere** (Ov.), *comb back*; **repellere**, *drive back*; **repercutere**, *strike back*; **replicare**, *fold back, and thereby unfold*; **reportare**, *carry back*; **repræhendere**, *hold back, rebuke*; **reprimere**, *press back, curb*; **resilire**, *spring back*; **respergere**, *splash*; **respicere**, *look back, be mindful of*; **respirare** (Lucr.), *blow back* (see also 5); **restagnare**, *overflow*; **restringere**, *bind back, restrict*; **resupinare**, *bend back*; **retinere**, *hold back* (see also 4); **retorquere**, *twist or turn back*; **retrahere**, *draw back*; **retrudere**, *thrust back*; **retundere**, *beat back, blunt*; **revehere**, *carry back*; **revenire**, *come back*; **reverti**, *return*; **revincire**, *bind back*; **redundare**, *flow back, overflow*; **revocare**, *call back*; **revolare**, *fly back*; **revolvere**, *roll back, and thereby unroll*.

[In Lucr. 6. 568—574 there are in seven lines nine compounds of **re-**, all but one belonging to this head.]

2. *In response, or return*; and so of objects emitting scent or reflecting light, &c.: **red-amare** (Cic.), *love in return*; **red-arguere**, *refute*; **reboare**, *re-bellow*; **recandescere** (Ov.), *grow white, or glow in return*; **racantare** (Mart.), *recinere*, *re-echo* (see also 5); **recipere**, *receive* (as it were in return for an offer), *take upon oneself, guaranty* (see also 4, 5); **reclamare**, *resound* (see also 3); **recrepare**, *ring again* (i.e. in response); **reddere**, *give in return* (see also 1, 5); **referire**, *return a blow*; **referre**, *repay, retort* (see also 5); **refulgere**, *flash back*; **regemere**, *resound with groans*; **regerere**, *retort*; *enter in a*

book (see also 1); *red-halare* (Lucr.), *breathe back*; *red-igere*, *get in money* (see also 1, 3); *red-imere*, *take a contract* (see also 3); *relucere*, *relucescere*, *shine back*; *reludere*, *banter*; *remaledicere* (Vespas. ap. Suet.), *retort abuse*; *remetiri*, *measure out in payment*; *remugire*, *bellow back*; *remunerari*, *recompense*; *red-olère*, *smell of*; *rependère*, *pay back*; *repromittere*, *bind oneself in return*; *resalutare*, *greet in return*; *rescribere*, *write back*; *reséqui*, *follow in speaking*; *resipere*, *have a smack of*; *resonare*, *resound*; *resplendere*, *shine*; *respondere*, *answer*; *respuere*, *spit back*, *reject*; *restipulari*, *obtain a promise in return*; *reticere*, *keep silent* (when asked something); *retribuere*, *repay*; *revomere*, *vomit up again*.

3. *Against, counter*: *recinere*, *give deterring omens*; *reclamare*, *cry out against*; *recusare*, *refuse*; *refragari*, *gainsay*; *reluctari*, *struggle against*; *reniti*, *withstand*; *renuere*, *shake the head*, *decline*; *reprobare*, *disapprove*; *repugnare*, *resistere*, *restare*, *resist* (see also 4); *retardare*, *hinder*; *retractare*, *draw back* (see also 3); *revincere*, *repress, refute*.

4. *Behind, back*: *recalere*, *remain swarm*; *recipere*, *reserve* (see also 1, 3); *relinquere*, *leave behind*; *remanere*, *stay behind*, *endure*; *remorari*, *linger*, *detain*; *reservare*, *reserve*, *save up*; *residère*, *resistere*, *remain behind* (see also 3); *restare*, *remain, be left* (see also 3); *retinere*, *keep back*.

5. *Again*: especially of a *restoration* to a former or a supposed normal state: *red-auspicare* (Plaut.), *take the return auspices*; *rebellare*, *make war again, rebel*; *recalcare* (Col.), *tread again, retrace*; *recalfacere* (trans.), *recalescere* (intrans.), *swarm up again*; *recinere* (Hor.), *sing over and over* (see also 1, 3); *recipere*, *take back, recover*; *recogitare*, *think over*; *recognoscere*, *recognize*; *recolere*, *recultivate*; *recolligere*, *gather up*; *recommentari* (Plaut. Trin. 912), *recommisisci* (Plaut.), *recomponere*, *rearrange*; *reconciliare*, *reunite, reestablish*; *reconcinnare*, *repair*; *recondere*, *store away again*; *reconducere*, *hire again*; *recoquere*, *reboil, remould*; *recorrere* (Sen.), *amend*; *recrastinare* (post-Aug.), *put off again*; *recreare*, *reproduce, refresh*; *recrescere*, *grow again*; *recrudescere*, *of wounds, break open afresh*; *recuperare*, *recover*; *recurare*, *prepare a second time*; *recurrere*, *revert*; *red-dere*, *give back*; *redonare* (Hor.), *give back, yield up*; *redormire*, *sleep again*; *referre*, *restore* (see also 1, 2); *reficere*, *renew, refresh*; *refingere* (Verg.), *remake*; *reflagitare*, *demand back*; *reflare*, *breathe again* (see also 1); *reflorescere*, *re-blossom*; *refocillare* (post-Aug.), *revive*; *refodere* (Plin.), *dig up again*; *reformare*, *remould*; *refovere*, *swarm again*; *refricare*, *frst amow*; *refrigerare*, *cool again, cool off*; *refrigescere*, *grow cool, grow stale, flag*; *regenerare* (Plin.), *reproduce*; *regeminare* (Plin.), *sprout again*; *regnare* (Lucr.), *beget again*; *regustare*, *taste again*; *red-hibere* (of sold goods), *give or take back*; *red-igere*, *reduce* (see also

1, 2); *redimere*, repurchase, buy off (see also 2); *redintegrare*, restore; *redire*, return, e. g. into favour (see also 1); *relangvescere*, grow faint (again); *relaxare*, unloose, relax; *relucescere*, grow light again; *remancipare* (Gai.), reconvey; *remandere*, chew the cud; *remetiri*, remeasure (see also 2); *reminisci*, recall to mind; *remollescere*, become soft again; *remollire*, resoften; *remordere*, bite again; *remulcere*, resoothe; *renarrare*, tell over again; *renasci*, be born again, revive; *renovare*, renew; *reparare*, repair; *repastinare*, dig again; *reperire*, find again, discover; *repetere*, revisit, resume, recollect; *replere*, refill, fill up; *reponere*, replace (see also 6); *reposcere*, ask back; *repraesentare*, represent, discharge a debt in cash (see also 6); *repuerascere*, become a child again; *repullulare*, sprout forth again; *repungere*, prick again; *repurgare*, cleanse again; *reputare*, count over; *requiescere*, rest; *requirere*, seek to recover; *resavire*, rage again; *resarcire*, patch up; *rescindere*, cut loose, abolish; *resecrare* (Plaut.), implore again; *reseminare* (Ov.), resow; *reserere*, replant; *residère*, settle down; *resipiscere*, recover one's senses; *resolvere*, unloose, unnerve, cancel; *resorbere*, suck back; *respirare*, breathe again, recover breath (see also 2); *restaurare*, restore; *restituere*, set up again, restore; *resumere*, take back, resume; *resurgere*, rise again; *retentare*, reattempt; *retexere*, reweave (see also 7); *retractare*, rehandle; *revalescere*, regain strength; *reverrere* (Plaut.), scatter again; *revirescere*, grow green or young again; *revisere*, revisit; *reviviscere*, come to life again; *revolvere*, turn over and over (see also 1).

6. *Intensive action*: sometimes the preposition is *pleonastic* (as indeed is the case in other verbs already enumerated).

*Recensere*, review; *recidere*, cut up; *recitare*, read aloud; *recognoscere*, review; *recutere*, shake; *refercire*, stuff up; *refervescere*, boil up; *refringere*, break up (see also 1); *relégare*, banish; *relégere*, go over in thought; *remiscere*, mix up; *removere*, withdraw, take away; *reponere*, put away (see also 5); *repraesentare*, do or apply at once (see also 5); *resciscere*, ascertain; *resecare*, cut off, check; *restingvere*, stamp out, extinguish; *retorrescere* (Col.), dry up; *revellere*, pluck up by the roots; *revereri*, stand in awe of.

7. *Un-*: *recānere* (Plin.), disenchant (see also 1); *recantare* (Hor.), recant (see also 2); *re-Charmidare* (Plaut.), i. e. no longer pretend to be Charmides; *recingere*, ungird; *recludere*, open; *refellere*, undeceive, refute; *refigere*, unfix; *regelare* (post-Aug.), thaw; *reglutinare* (Catull.), unglue; *retinere*, take off the pitch, &c.; *renēre*, unspin; *renodare*, unknot; *red-ordiri* (Plin.), unweave; *replumbare* (post-Aug.), unsolder; *reserere*, unlock; *resignare*, unseal, cancel; *retegere*, uncover; *retendere*, unstretch; *retexere*, unweave; *revelare*, uncover; *revolvere* (see 1).

**Retro**, 'backwards' (so also *retrorsus*, cf. § 2175). Not used with a substantive dependent on it. 2105

1. *Of space: both of motion and rest.*

Quod ob scelus iter mihi necessarium retro ad Alpes versus incidit?  
(Cæsar ap. C. Fam. 8. 15.)

Præcepit ut pergeret protinus, quid retro atque a tergo fieret, ne laboraret. (C. Div. 1. 24.)

2. *Of time:*

Non tamen (Jupiter) irritum quodcunque retrost efficiet.  
(Hor. Od. 3. 29. 46.)

Proconsul debet ferias secundum mores et consuetudinem, quæ retro optinuit, dare. (Ulp. ap. Dig. 1. 16. 7.)

3. *Metaphorically* (a) 'back again,' (b) 'in the reverse direction,' (c) 'behind.' 2107

(a) Prout quidque contractum est, ita et solvi debet; veluti, cum mutuum dedimus, ut retro pecuniæ tantundem solvi debeat.  
(Pompon. ap. Dig. 46. 3. 80.)

(b) Est argumentorum locus ex consequentibus. 'Si malum perfidia, non est fallendum:' idem retro. (Quint. 5. 10. 74.)

(c) Uterque honestatem sic complectitur, ut omnia, quæ sine ea sint, longe retro ponenda censeat. (C. T. D. 5. 51.)

**Retro** is loosely compounded with *agere*, 'turn back,' 'reverse;' *gradi*, and *-ire*. 2108

**Sed, se**, found with ablative case in the old language, and also in composition: 'without.' The conjunction *sed* is probably the same word. 2109

Si plus minusve secuerunt se fraude esto.  
(Lex XII. Tab. ap. Gell. 10. 1. 49.)

(See also *Lex Repet.* cited below under *sine* § 2122.)

So once *seorsum* (cf. § 2175). Nequit ullam dispicere ipse oculus rem seorsum corpore toto. (Lucr. 3. 564.) 2110

In composition:

*Apart*: *secedere*, go aside, withdraw; *secernere*, sift away, separate; *secludere*, confine, under; *secubare*, lie apart; *seducere*, take apart; *segregare* (pasture apart), separate; *sejungere*, division, sever; *seligere*, pick out, select; *semigrare*, move away; *semovere*, move aside; *separare*, separate; *seponere*, put apart; *sevocare*, call apart. 2111

Comp. also *sed-itiō*, a secession, sedition.



**Secundum**: properly the neuter of the gerundive form from **sequor**; 2112  
used chiefly with an accusative case<sup>1</sup>.

1. In space: 'after,' 'behind.'

(a) Without a substantive dependent (rare).

Age i tu secundum. So. Sequor, subsequor te. (Plaut. *Am.* 551.)

(b) With an accusative.

Timeo nos secundum ferri nunc per urbem hæc omnia, nequis hoc 2113  
tibi vitio vortat. (Plaut. *Mil.* 1349.)

Duo volnera accepit, unum in stomacho, alterum in capite secundum  
aurem. (Sulpic. ap. C. *Fam.* 4. 12.)

2. In space: 'along,' with an accusative. 2114

Legiones Macedonicæ iter secundum mare superum faciunt.

(C. *Att.* 16. 8.)  
In aperto loco secundum flumen paucæ stationes equitum vide-  
bantur. (Cæs. *G.* 2. 19.)

3. In time or order: 'after,' 'next to,' with an accusative. 2115

Castra secundum prælium capta. (L. 8. 10.)

Hannibali secundum quietem visam esse Junonem Cælius scribit.  
(C. *Div.* 1. 24.)

Secundum ea quæro, servarisne in eo fidem. (C. *Vat.* 6.)

Ille mihi secundum te et liberos nostros ita est, ut sit pæne par.  
(C. *Q. Fr.* 3. 5.)

In hac nostra actione secundum vocem voltus valet. (C. *Or.* 3. 58.)

Passienus noster cum cœpit dicere, secundum principium fuga fit:  
ad epilogum omnes revertimur. (Sen. *Rhet. Contr.* 3, Pr. § 10.)

4. 'In accordance with,' 'in favor of;' with an accusative. 2116

Tigna bina sesquipedalia in flumen defixit prone ac fastigate, ut  
secundum naturam fluminis procumberent. (Cæs. *G.* 4. 17.)

Facilius esse oportebat secundum naturam quam contra eam vivere.  
(Quint. 12. 11, § 13.)

Suo quisque loco sententiam rogatus, multa secundum causam  
nostram disputavit. (C. *Att.* 4. 2.)

Si iudex pronuntiaverit contra testamentum nec fuerit provocatum,  
suus heres erit secundum quem iudicatum est.

(Ulp. ap. *Dig.* 5. 2. 8, § 16.)

<sup>1</sup> A form **secus** is mentioned as new and vulgar by Charisius, p. 61.  
(ed. Putsche). Andrews' *Lexicon* is apparently mistaken in supposing  
**secus** in this sense to be found in Cato *R. R.* 21 and Plin. 24, § 135.



**Secus**, 'from,' only in the words **altrinsecus** (Plaut.), **utrinque** <sup>2117</sup>  
**secus**, **extrinsecus**, **intrinsecus**, 'from the other, each (out-, in-) side.'  
 Also where we say 'on the...side,' cf. § 1813. (Probably same word  
 as **secus**, 'otherwise.')

Perge porro: ego adsistam hinc **altrinsecus**. (Pl. *Merc.* 977.)

Utrinque **secus** corpus vapulat. (Lucr. 4. 939.)

Quod habet extremum, id cernitur ex alio **extrinsecus**.

(C. *Dir.* 2. 30.)

Jecur a dextra parte sub præcordiis ab ipso septo orsum, **intrinsecus**  
 cavum, **extrinsecus** gibbum. (Cels. 4. 1.)

Jubebat vasa **intrinsecus** et exterius crasse picari. (Col. 12. 44, § 5.)

**Simul**, and in early language, **simitu**: frequent as adverbs with- <sup>2118</sup>  
 out any dependent substantive; **simul** is sometimes, in Augustan and later  
 poets and in Tacitus, used with an ablative.

1. *Without a substantive dependent*: **simul**, **simitu**, 'together.' <sup>2119</sup>

Vix elocutast hoc, foras **simul** omnes proruont se. (Ter. *Eun.* 599.)

Propter vicinitatem totos dies **simul** eramus. (C. *Att.* 5. 10.)

Vis hæc quidem hercelest et trahi et trudi **simul**. (Pl. *Capt.* 746.)

Ita tres res **simitu** agendæ sunt. (Pl. *Merc.* 117.)

Gratia habetur utrisque illis que tibi que **simitu**.

(Lucil. 30. 17, ed. Müller.)

*Frequently with cum.*

2120

I mecum opsecro una **simul**. (Pl. *Most.* 1037.)

An nobiscum **simul** moritura omnia arbitremur? (C. *Arch.* 12.)

Jussit rogare, mecum **simitu** ut ires ad sese domum. (Pl. *Stich.* 249.)

2. *With ablative case*: **simul**, 'together with.'

2121

Quippe **simul** nobis habitat discrimine nullo barbarus.

(Ov. *Tr.* 5. 10. 29.)

Acervatim ex eo Annius Pollio, Appius Silanus Scauro Mamercio  
**simul** ac Sabino Calvisio majestatis postulantiur.

(Tac. *A.* 6. 15=9.)

Avulsa est nam protinus hosti ore **simul** cervix. (Sil. 5. 417.)

**Sine:** *used only with the ablative case; 'without.'*

2122

Pol, si istuc faxis, haud sine pœna feceris. (Pl. *Capt.* 691.)

Quoi pecuniam ex hac lege, quod sine malo pequlatu fiat, prætor, quei ex hac lege quæret, darei solvi jusserit, id quæstor, quei ærarium provinciam optinebit, sed fraude sua extra ordinem dato solvitoque. (*Lex Repet.* 68, C. I. R. 198.)

Sex. Clodium vidistis hominem sine re, sine fide, sine spe, sine sede, sine fortunis. (C. *Cæl.* 32.)

Coloniæ et municipiorum sine ulla dubitatione hostis est.

(C. *Phil.* 14. 4.)

Videsne igitur minus quadringentorum annorum esse hanc urbem, ut sine regibus sit? (C. R. P. 1. 37.)

Restituebantur exsules, quasi lege, sine lege. (C. *Phil.* 5. 4.)

Fons dulci digne mero non sine floribus. (Hor. *Od.* 3. 13. 2.)

Præfecti classis id unius erat jus, ut agere de ea re sine rogatione ulla perlata posset. (L. 45. 25.)

Cum civitate mihi res est acerrima et conficientissima literarum, in qua nummus commoveri nullus potest sine quinque prætoribus, quæstoribus tribus, quattuor mensariis. (C. *Flac.* 19.)

Adeo infestus confertos hostes invasit, ut parci ei sine multorum perniciæ non posset. (L. 25. 16, § 23.)

**Sub, subter:** *used both with accusative and ablative cases; subter* 2123 *also used without a substantive dependent on it. Compare also subim in subinde (§ 522), susque deque (§ 1904), sursum (§ 2173).*

1. *In space: 'beneath,' 'under,' sub, subter.*

2124

(a) *Without a substantive dependent. (Subter only.)*

Omnia hæc, quæ supra et subter, una vi naturæ constricta esse dixerunt. (C. *Or.* 3. 5.)

(b) *With accusative case: 'to and under.'*

2125

Tota se luna sub orbem solis subjecerat. (C. R. P. 1. 16.)

Hic pagus L. Cassii consulis exercitum sub jugum miserat.

(Cæs. G. 1. 12.)

Non ego variis obsita frondibus sub divum rapiam.

(Hor. *Od.* 1. 18.)

Cupiditatem subter præcordia locavit. (C. T. D. 1. 10.)

(c) *With ablative case: 'under.'*

2026

Quid, si essent qui sub terra semper habitavissent, nec tamen exissent unquam supra terram? (C. N. D. 2. 37.)

Sub hoc jugo dictator Equos misit. (L. 3. 28.)

Vitam sub divo et trepidis agit in rebus. (Hor. Od. 3. 2. 3.)

Nunc tamen omnis ferre juvat supter densa testudine casus.

(Verg. A. 9. 514.)

2. *In space: 'at foot of.'*

2027

(a) *With accusative case: 'to the foot of,' 'close under.'*

In locum iniquum progrediuntur, et sub montem, in quo erat oppidum positum Herda, succedunt. (Czs. G. 1. 43.)

Ædis suas detulit sub Veliam. (C. R. P. 2. 31.)

Equo citato subter murum hostium ad cohortes avehitur.

(L. 34. 20.)

(b) *With ablative case: 'at foot of.'*

2028

Certior factus hostes sub monte consedissee. (Czs. G. 1. 21.)

Demonstrari digito pictum Gallum in Mariano scuto Cimbrico sub Novis distortum. (C. Or. 2. 66.)

3. *In time: sub infj.*

(a) *With accusative: 'just after.'*

2029

Sub eas (litteras) statim recitatae sunt tuæ. (C. Fam. 10. 16.)

Peccat, sub noctem qui puer uvam furtiva mutat strigili.

(Hor. Sat. 2. 7. 109.)

Sub galli cantum consultor ubi ostia pulsat. (Ib. 1. 1. 10.)

Sub vesperum Cæsar portas claudî militesque ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidanî ab militibus injuriam acciperent.

(Czs. G. 2. 33.)

(b) *With ablative (rare): 'at.'*

2030

Necesses fulmina sic uno fieri sub tempore multa. (Lucr. 6. 416.)

Pompeius, quo facilius impetum Cæsarî tardaret, ne sub ipsa protectione milites oppidum irrumperent, portas obstruit.

(Czs. C. 1. 27.)

Sub luce Hexapylo effracto Marcellus urbem ingressus. (L. 23. 24.)

Bacchi sub nomine Juno risit. (Ov. Met. 4. 322.)

4. *Metaphorically: 'under the reach of,' 'under,' sub.*

(a) *With accusative case: 'to and under.'*

Deinde, ut sub ictum venerunt, telorum primo omnis generis vis ingens effusa in eos est. (L. 27. 18.)

Non est beneficium, quod sub oculos venit, sed beneficii vestigium et nota. (Sen. Ben. 1. 5.)

Lepide hoc succedit sub manus negotium. (Plaut. Mil. 873.)

(b) *With ablative case: 'under,' sub.*

Appropinquare non ausæ naves, ne sub ictu superstantium rupibus piratarum essent. (L. 37. 27.)

Et jam luciscebant, omniaque sub oculis erant. Adjunxi hoc, in loco deligendo, Vocontii sub manu ut essent, per quorum loca fideliter mihi pateret iter. (Planc. ap. C. Fam. 10. 23.)

Impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiore animo adoriri cogitabant. (Cæs. G. 3. 24.)

Sese non recusaturos, quominus perpetuo sub Romanorum ditione atque imperio essent. (Ib. 1. 31.)

Quid enim sua sponte Hieronymum, puerum ac vixdum pubescentem facere potuisse? Tutores ac magistros ejus sub aliena invidia regnasse. (L. 24. 25.)

Affirmavit fremere Philippum, et ægre pati sub specie pacis leges servitutis sibi impositas. (L. 36. 7.)

Quæ modo vena fuit, sub eodem nomine mansit. (Ov. Met. 1. 410.)

Grammatici certant, et adhuc sub judice lis est. (Hor. Ep. 2. 3. 78.)

5. *Of an accompaniment: sub, with ablative.*

Reliquos urbe summovit sub pœna perpetuæ servitutis nisi obtemperassent. (Suet. Tib. 36.)

Latum clavum etiam libertini filio tribuit, sed sub conditione, si prius ab equite R. adoptatus esset. (Suet. Claud. 24.)

**Sub**, in composition: **b** is often assimilated to labials, **f**, **r**, and gutturals; **sus-** before **t** and sometimes **c** and **p**; **su** before **s** (usually).

1. *Under, from under, to under, down:*

**succedere**, go under (see also 2); **succendere**, set on fire from below; hence (from **succensus**) **succensere**, be angry; **succornere**, sift out below; **succidere**, fall under; **succidere**, cut under or below; **succollare**, put the neck under; **succumbere**, lie under, succumb; **succurrere** (Lucr.), run under (see also 4); **subdere**, place under (see

also 2); *subdomare*, *subdue*; *subducere*, *draw from under*, *withdraw* (see also 3); *subēdēre* (Ov.), *eat underneath*; *sufficere* (*put under*), *supply*, *be sufficient*; *suffodere*, *stab or dig under*; *suffricare*, *rub underneath*; *suffringere*, *break underneath*; *suffugere*, *slip from under* (see also 5); *suffulcire*, *underprop*; *suffumigare*, *fumigate from below*; *suffundere*, *pour underneath*; *suggerere*, *put under*, *supply*; *subjacēre*, *underlie*; *subicēre*, *throw under*, *subject*; *subigere*, *drive* (e.g. the plough) *under*, *subdue*; *subire*, *go under*, *enter*; *sublabi*, *slip down*; *subjungere*, *yoke*, *bring under*; *subligare*, *bind under*; *sublinere*, *smear on underneath* (see also 6); *subluere*, *wash underneath*; *submergere*, *plunge under*; *submittere*, *lower*, *let down* (see also 3, 6); *summovere*, *move away*; *subnatare* (Sil.), *swim under*; *subnectere*, *tie underneath*; *subnotare* (Plin. Ep.), *mark under*, *note down*; *subpingere*, *fasten underneath*; *supplantare* (*put foot under*), *trip up*, *overthrow*; *supplicare* (*fold under*, *kneel*), *supplicate*; *supplodere*, *stamp the foot*; *subponere*, *put under* (see also 2); *supprimere*, *keep under*, *suppress*; *suppurare*, *form matter*, *suppurate*; *supputare*, *prune below*; *subremigare* (Verg.), *row underneath*; *subruere*, *undermine*; *subscribere*, *write below*, *sign*; *subsecare*, *cut down*, *pare*; *subservire*, *be a slave under*; *subsidiere*, *settle down*; *subsignare*, *subscribe*; *substernere*, *lay under*; *substare*, *be under*; *substringere*, *bind down*; *substruere*, *build underneath*; *subesse*, *be underneath*; *subrubere* (Ov.), *be red underneath*; *subterere*, *wear away below*; *subtexere*, *weave or spread under*; *subtrahere*, *drag from under*, *withdraw*.

## 2. In substitution:

2136

*succedere*, *come into place of another* (see also 1); *succenturiare*, *put into a century in place of another*; *subdere*, *substitute*, *forge*; *sufficere*, *elect in the place*, &c. (see also 1); *sublēgere*, *elect*, &c. (see also 3); *submittere*, *send a successor* (see also 1); *subnasci*, *grow into place*, &c.; *subolescere* (Liv.), *grow up to supply a place*, &c.; *suboriri* (Lucr.), *rise up in places*; *supponere*, *substitute*, *counterfeit* (see also 1); *surrogare*, *substitute by law*; *subsortiri*, *choose by lot in substitution*; *substituere*, *substitute*.

## 3. Up, from under up:

2137

*succedere*, *mount*, *go on well* (see also 1); *succingere*, *gird up*; *suscipere*, *take up*, *recognize as one's child*, *undertake*; *suscitare*, *stir up*; *succrescere*, *grow up*; *succutere*, *toss up*; *subducere*, *draw up* (see also 1); *suberigere* (Sil.), *raise up*; *suffarcinare*, *cram up*; *sufferre*, *bear up*, *support*; *suffigere*, *fix up to*; *sufflare*, *inflate*; *subire*, *go up to* (see also 1); *sublegere*, *gather up* (see also 2); *sublevare*, *lift up*; *submittere*, *send up*, *produce*, *rear* (see also 1, 6); *sumere* (*sub-emere*), *take up*, *assume*, *employ* (time); *subnixus*, *resting on*



(or to 1?); **suspendere**, *hang up*; **supportare**, *carry up to*; **surgere**, *rise*; **suspectare**, **susplicere**, *look up at, respect* (see also 6); **suspirare**, *heave a sigh*; **subsillire**, *leap up*; **sustinere**, *hold up, check*; **sustollere**, *lift up*; **subvehere**, *convey up*; **subvertere**, *upset*; **subvolare**, *fly up*; **subvolvere** (Verg.), *roll up*.

#### 4. *In assistance:*

**succurrere**, *to succour* (see also 1); **subministrare**, *supply*; **subornare**, *equip*; **suppetere**, *be at hand*; **subvenire**, *come up to aid*.

#### 5. *Close to, just after:*

**subarare**, *plough at the foot of*; **succedere**, *follow after* (see also 3); **succinere**, *chime in, play in accompaniment*; **succlamare**, *shout in answer*; **subesse**, *be near* (see also 1); **suggeri** (Tac.), *approach*; **subnectere**, *tie on* (see also 1); **subsequi**, *follow after*; **suburgere**, *press close to*.

#### 6. *Secretly:*

**subauscultare**, *overhear*; **subducere**, *withdraw secretly* (see also 1); **suffugere** (Liv.), *slip off* (see also 1); **suffurari**, *filch*; **sublinere** (Plaut.), *secretly smear a man's face, bamboozle*; **summittere**, *send secretly* (see also 1, 3); **submonere**, *give a hint to*; **subornare**, *equip secretly, suborn*; **suppilare**, *pilfer*; **subrepere**, *creep softly on*; **subripere**, *snatch away secretly*; **suspectus**, *looked at slyly, suspected* (see also 3); **suspectare** (Tac.), *to suspect* (see also 3); **suspicari**, *suspect*.

#### 7. *Slightly:*

**subaccusare** (Cic.), *blame somewhat*; **subbibere** (Plaut., Suet.), *tipple*; **subblandiri**, *fondle somewhat*; **subdeficere** (Curt.), *fail somewhat*; **subdiffidere** (Cic.), *be somewhat distrustful*; **subdubitare** (Cic.), *have some hesitation*; **subinvidere** (Cic.), *be somewhat envious of*; **subinvitare** (Cic.), *half-invite*; **subirascl** (Cic.), *be a bit angry*; **sublucere**, *faintly gleam*; **subnegare** (Cic.), *half-deny*; **subolere**, *give out slight scent*; **suppalpari**, *coax*; **subpudere** (Cic.), *be somewhat ashamed*; **subridere**, *smile*; **suburere** (Suet.), *scorch*.

#### 8. *Pleonastic: subsistere, stop, remain.*

**Subter:** There is no clear mark of composition.

*Under, beneath:* **subteractus** (Cels.), *driven beneath*; **subterducere** (Plaut.), *withdraw*; **subterfugere**, *fly away*; **subterlabi**, *step from under*; **subterlinere**, *anoint underneath*; **subtervolare** (Stat.), *fly under*.

**Super:** *used without a substantive dependent, and with accusative and ablative case.* 2143

1. *In space: 'over,' 'upon;'* **super, insuper.**

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: so also desuper, 'from above.'*

Eo super tigna bipedalia iniciunt. (Cæs. C. 2. 10.)

Digiti fovendi aqua ex verbenis, imponendumque super medicamentum ita factum. (Cels. 6. 19.)

(b) *With accusative:*

2144

Super lateres coria inducuntur. (Cæs. C. 2. 10.)

Suos consanguineos aliena rogorum insuper extracta ingenti clamore locabunt. (Lucr. 6. 1283.)

(c) *With ablative:*

2145

Destrictus ensis cui super impia cervice pendet. (Hor. Od. 3. 1. 17.)

Hanc mecum poteras requiescere noctem fronde super viridi.

(Verg. B. 1. 80.)

Aliis aliæ nubes nimbiue rigantes insuper atque omni vulgo de parte feruntur. (Lucr. 6. 521.)

2. *In place and rank: super, 'above,' desuper, 'from above.'*

2146

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Hæc super e vallo prospectant Troes. (Verg. A. 9. 168.)

Collis plurimus urbi imminet, adversasque adspectat desuper arces.  
(Ib. 1. 420.)

(b) *With an accusative case: 'above,' 'higher,' 'beyond.'*

2147

Pars maxima super theatrum circaque, assueti et ante spectaculo contionum, consistunt. (L. 24. 39.)

Nomentanus erat super ipsum, Porcius infra. (Hor. S. 2. 8. 23.)

Super et Garamantas et Indos proferet imperium.

(Verg. A. 6. 794.)

3. *In time (rare).*

2148

(a) *With accusative case: 'over,' i.e. during a meal, &c.*

De hujus nequitia omnes super cenam loquebantur. (Plin. Ep. 4. 21.)

Pudebat amicos (Alexandri) super vinum et epulas socerum ex deditis esse delectum. (Curt. 8. 5. 30.)

(b) *With ablative case: 'on,' 'at.'*

2149

Pleno lupus insidiatus ovili fremit ad caulas nocte super media.

(Verg. *A.* 9. 61.)

Centaurea cum Lapithis rixa super mero debellata.

(Hor. *Od.* 1. 18. 8.)

4. *In number and quantity: 'over,' 'besides,' 'above,' 'left over.'* 2150

(a) *Without a substantive dependent: super, superquam; insuper, insuper quam.*

Satis superque esse sibi suarum cuique rerum. (C. *Lael.* 13.)

Cui neque aput Danaos usquam locus, et super ipsi Dardanidæ infensi pœnas cum sanguine poscunt. (Verg. *A.* 2. 71.)

Incedere inde agmen cœpit primoribus, superquam quod dissenserant ab consilio, territis etiam duplici prodigio. (L. 22. 3.)

Quid jam integri esset in corpore loci ad nova vulnera accipienda, quid super sanguinis, qui dari pro re publica posset, rogitabant. (L. 4. 58.)

Parumne hoc est malæ rei, quod amat Demipho, ni sumptuosus insuper etiam siet? (Pl. *Merc.* 692.)

Hæc pacta: illa insuper quam quæ pacta erant facinora Campani ediderunt. (L. 23. 7.)

(b) *With accusative case.*

2151

Sin suos ejus pœniteat, quippe qui alii super alios trucidentur, quid spei melioris Latinis portendi? (L. 1. 50.)

Convenit ut habitationes secundum defuncti voluntatem super premium libertis præstarentur. (Papin. ap. *Dig.* 18. 6. 19 [18]).

(c) *With ablative: insuper.*

2152

Præterea bis sex genitor lectissima matrum corpora captivosque dabit, suaque omnibus arma; insuper his, campi quod rex habet ipse Latinus. (Verg. *A.* 9. 274.)

5. *In worth: 'above,' with accusative case.*

2153

Vox quidem (erat Trachalo) non, ut Cicero desiderat, pæne tragædorum, sed super omnes, quos ego quidem audierim, tragædos. (Quint. 12. 5, § 5.)

Ætas et forma et super omnia Romanum nomen te ferociorem facit. (L. 31. 18.)

Super omnia erit populi sedere ausi furor tam infida instabilique sede. (Plin. 36, § 118.)

6. 'Upon,' 'concerning,' with ablative case. Infrequent in Cicero; 2154 not in Caesar.

Dixi tibi, mater, juxta rem mecum tenes super Euclyonis filia.

(Plaut. *Aul.* 674.)

Scribas ad me velim. quid agendum nobis sit super legatione votiva.

(C. *Att.* 14. 22.)

Mitte civilis super urbe curas. (Hor. *Od.* 3. 8. 17.)

**Super** in composition. Few words have any clear mark of com- 2155 position.

1. *Over, upon, of place:* **supercernere** (Plin.), *sift upon:* **-crescere** (Cels.), *grow upon:* **-dare** (Cels.), *throw over:* **-eminere**, *rise above:* **-emori** (Plin.), *die upon:* **-ferre**, *carry over:* **-fluere**, *flow over:* **-fugere** (Val. Fl.), *fly over:* **-fundere**, *pour over:* **-gredi**, *step over:* **-jacere**, *throw over:* **-illigare** (Plin.), *bind upon:* **-illinere**, *smear over:* **-imminere**, *hang over:* **-imponere**, *put upon:* **-incidere** (Cels.), *cut in above:* **-increscere** (Cels.), *grow over:* **-incumbere** (Ov.), *lie over:* **-inducere**, *draw over:* **-induere** (Suet.), *put on over:* **-infundere** (Cels.), *pour over:* **-ingerere**, *heap upon:* **-iniciere**, *cast on over:* **-insternere**, *lay on over:* **-inungere** (Cels.), *anoint over:* **-labi** (Sen.), *glide over:* **-linere** (Plin.), *smear over:* **-natere**, *swim on top:* **-obruere** (Prop.), *overwhelm:* **-ponere**, *place over:* **-scandere**, *climb over:* **-sedere**, *sit upon:* **-sternere**, *lay over:* **-stare**, *stand over:* **-struere**, *build over:* **-tegere**, *cover over:* **-vadere**, *climb over:* **-vehi**, *ride over:* **-venire**, *come over:* **-volare**, *fly over:* and some others little used.

2. *Metaphorically: over and above:* **superaddere**, *add over and above:* **-bibere** (Plin.), *drink besides:* **-esse**, *remain, survive, abound:* **-feri**, *be left:* **-sedere**, *be above, forbear.*

**Supra**, rarely **supera**: used both without a substantive dependent 2156 on it, and with an accusative case.

1. *In space.*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent:* 'on the top,' 'above,' 'higher up.'

Magno numero jumentorum in flumine supra atque infra constituto traducit exercitum. (Cæs. *C.* 1. 64.)

Cotem autem illam et novaculam defossam in comitio, supraque impositum puteal accepimus. (C. *Div.* 1. 17.)

(b) *With an accusative case: 'above,' 'higher up,' 'beyond.'* 215

Supera magnum mare venti nubila portant. (Lucr. 6. 505.)

De ea muliere versus plurimi supra tribunal et supra prætoris caput scribebantur. (C. Verr. 3. 33.)

Dux hostium cum exercitu supra caput est. (Sall. C. 52, § 24.)

Syene oppidum est supra Alexandriam quinque milibus stadiorum. (Plin. 2, § 183.)

2. *In time: 'above,' 'before,' only of things written or spoken.* 215

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Priusquam hujuscemodi rei initium expedio, pauca supra repetam. (Sall. J. 5.)

Atque hæc quidem, ut supra dixi, veteris sunt Græciæ.

(C. R. P. 2. 4.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

Paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, justis funeribus confectis, una cremabantur. (Cæs. G. 6. 19.)

3. *In number or quantity: 'more,' 'beyond.'* 215

(a) *Without a substantive dependent.*

Pisonis humanitas, virtus, amor in omnis nos tantus est, ut nihil supra possit. (C. Fam. 14. 1.)

Paulatim mercaris agrum fortasse trecentis aut etiam supra nummorum milibus emptum. (Hor. Ep. 2. 2. 165.)

Corpus patiens inediæ, alioris, vigiliæ supra quam cuiquam credibile est. (Sall. C. 5.)

Supra decem milia hostium occisa, supra septem milia capitum cum frumentatoribus Campanis capta sunt. (L. 25. 14.)

(b) *With an accusative case.* 216

Ternos ter cyathos attonitus petet vates: tris prohibet supra rixarum metuens tangere Gratia. (Hor. Od. 3. 18.)

Deinde in admirationem versus, supra Coclites Muciosque dicere id facinus esse. (L. 2. 13.)

Murus, ut in suspecto loco, supra ceteræ modum altitudinis emunitus erat. (L. 21. 7.)

Catones Scipionesque et alios, quos audire cum admiratione consuevimus, supra imitationem positos putamus. (Sen. Ep. 70, § 22.)



**Tenus**, 'as far as,' frequent in Augustan verse, is used both with the genitive and accusative cases. (Originally, probably, a substantive signifying 'stretch' in the adverbial accusative.) It is always put after the word dependent on it.

[The only passage in Plautus where the word occurs is *Bacch.* 793. Nunc ab transenna hic tardus lumbricum petit: pendeat hodie pulcre, ita intendi tenuis, where Nonius interprets it as 'a noose.' In *Pl. Men.* 859, *tenuis* is from Ritschl's conjecture.]

1. With genitive case (lit. 'the extent of').

2060

Extrema prope nocte et Cepheus conditur alte, lumborum tenuis a palma depulsus ad umbras. (*C. Arat.* 83.)

Rumores de comitiis Transpadanorum Cumarum tenuis caluerunt.

(*Cæd. ap. C. Fam.* 8. 1.)

Additum ut urbium, Corcyrae tenuis ab Ætolia incipienti, solum tectaque et muri cum agris Ætolorum, alia omnis præda populi Romani esset. (*ap. L.* 16. 24.)

Cui crurum tenuis a mento palearia pendent. (*Verg. G.* 3. 53.)

Quod (jumentum) per aquam, ferme genus tenuis altam, tres milites sequebantur. (*L.* 44. 40.)

2. With ablative case (lit. 'stretching from'). So especially *eatenuis*, *hactenus*, *quatenus*, *quadamtenuis*, *aliquatenus*.

(a) In space.

Lateri capulo tenuis abdedit ensen. (*Verg. A.* 2. 553.)

Destinarat etiam Ostia tenuis moenia promovere. (*Suet. Ner.* 16.)

(b) Metaphorically.

2061

Est quadam prodire tenuis, si non datur ultra. (*Hor. Ep.* 1. 1. 32.)

Sed hæc hactenus: nunc ad ostenta veniamus. (*C. Div.* 2. 24.)

Nos pro tuis injuriis continuis animo tenuis commoti inimiciter tecum bellare studemus. (*Lit. cos. ap. Gell.* 5. 8.)

Veteres verbo tenuis acute de re publica disserebant. (*C. Leg.* 3. 6.)

Tertium et quartum consulatum titulo tenuis gessit. (*Suet. Jul.* 76.)

Creditoris, cujus pignus subreptum est, non credito tenuis interest, sed omnimodo in solidum furti agere potest.

(*Paul. ap. Dig.* 47. 2. 15.)

[The ablative **fine**, or **fini**, was used in this sense (with either a genitive or ablative case, or with a relative adjective) in the older and probably the conversational language. It is similar in construction to **regione**, § 1173, **spatio**, § 1248, **diverticulo**, p. 103.

Qua fini = quatenus (Cato R. R. 21, § 3); postea operito terra radicibus fini (ib. 28); amphoras nolito implere nimium, ansarum infimarum fini (ib. 113); qua vendas fini dicito (ib. 149); ad summum, qua fini culleum capiet, perfundito (ib. 154); deinde voluptas est e succo fine palati (Lucr. 4. 627); fine inguinum (Sall. ap. Arus. p. 518); per mare umbilici fine ingressi (Bell. Afr. 857); fine genus vestem ritu succincta Dianæ (Ov. M. 10. 536); dabitur ei compensatio peculii fini, quod servus publicus habebit (Papin. ap. Dig. 16. 2. 19); and in three other places of Papinian. Also in Apuleius, Hyginus, and Gellius.]

3. With **pro**; **protenus** (**protinus**) lit. 'stretching on;' also in early Latin language **protinam**.

(a) In space 'forwards.'

En ipse capellas protinus æger ago; hanc etiam vix, Tityre, duco.  
(Verg. B. 1. 13.) See also C. Div. 1. 24, quoted in § 2105.

(b) In time 'right on'; 'forthwith.'

Nunc ad oppidum hoc ego vetus continuo legiones meas protinus adducam. (Pl. Ps. 586.)

Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt.  
(Cæs. G. 2. 9.)

Aliquid convasassem atque hinc me conicerem protinam in pedes.  
(Ter. Ph. 190.)

**Trans**, 'across,' with an accusative case only: always in strictly local meaning.

1. With verbs of motion.

Illam abstrahat, trans mare hinc venum asportet. (Pl. Merc. 354.)  
Postulavit, ne quam hominum multitudinem amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret. (Cæs. G. 1. 35.)

Vibius arreptum vexillum trans vallum hostium trajecit. (L. 25. 14.)

2. *With verbs of rest.*

2168

Cogito interdum trans Tiberim hortos aliquos parare.

(C. Att. 12. 19.)

Redemptor hostias constituit omnis in litore, ut, qui trans flumen essent, videre possent. (C. Inv. 2. 31.)

Trans in composition; often tra before j, d, l, m, n;

2169

1. *Across*: transadigere, thrust through; transcidere (Plaut.), cut across, beat; transcurrere, run across; traducere, lead across, parade, hence disgrace; transferre, bear across, transfer; transfigere, transfix; transfluere (Plin.), flow through; transfugere, flee across, desert; transgredi, step across, go beyond; transigere, drive through (see also 3); traicere, throw across, transport, pierce; transire, go over, pass by; translucere, shine through; transmeare, go across; transmigrare, migrate across; transmittere, send across, pass over; transmovere, remove; tranare, transnatare, swim across; transponere, put across; transportare, convey across; transcendere, climb over; transillire, leap over; transpicere (Lucr.), look through; transuere, stitch through; transumere (Stat.), transfer; transtinere (Plaut.), pass through; transvehere, carry over; transverberare, strike through; transvertere, turn across; transvolare, fly across.

2. *Of a change or transference*: tradere, hand over, surrender, 2170 hand down to posterity; transfigurare (post-Aug.), transform; transformare, transform; transfundere, decant, transfer; transmutare (Lucr.), transmute; transnominare (Suet.), change the name of; transcribere, copy out, consign over.

3. *Through to the end*: transigere, complete a business, settle 2171 a suit, spend time; translegere (Plaut.), read through; transloqui (Plaut.), recount; transnumerare (Corn.), count over.

**Versus, versum** (vorsus, vorsum; lit. 'turned'), 'towards:' used 2172 both with a preposition, a locative adverb, and an accusative case, which however rarely requires versus to justify its construction.

1. *With a preposition both (a) absolutely and (b) when attended* 2173 by a case. Hence adversus; which see, §§ 1836—1842.

(a) *Absolutely* (see § 512).

Palpebras quoque ejus, ne conivere posset, sursum ac deorsum diductas insuebant. (Tubero ap. Gell. 7 (6). 4.)

Non prorsus, verum transvorsus cedit, quasi cancer solet.

(Pl. Ps. 955.)

Nam me hodie senex seduxit solum sorsum ab ædibus.

(Pl. *As.* 362.)

Seorsus item sapor oris habet vim, seorsus odores nascuntur, sorsum sonitus. (Lucr. 4. 494.)

Ego cunas recessim rursum vorsum trahere et ducere.

(Pl. *Amph.* 1112.)

Naturis iis, ex quibus omnia constant, sursus deorsus, ultro citro commeantibus, mundi partium conjunctio continetur.

(C. *N. D.* 2. 33.)

Ea dissensio civium, quod seorsum eunt alii ad alios, seditio dicitur.

(C. *R. P.* 6. 1.)

Prorsus '*quite,*' rursus '*again,*' are more commonly used metaphorically.

(b) *With preposition, attended by a case.*

217

Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eas partes, quæ Messapios attingunt, proficisci jubet. (Cæs. *G.* 6. 33.)

Catilina per montes iter facere, modo ad urbem, modo in Galliam versus, castra movere. (Sall. *C.* 56.)

Convorso equo animadvortit fugam ad se vorsum fieri. (Sall. *J.* 58.)

2. *With a locative adverb (see also § 512); and even with compounds of itself.*

Hic te opperiar: eadem illi insidias dabo, quam mox horsum ad stabulum juvenix recipiat se a pabulo. (Pl. *Mil.* 304.)

Nescio hercle, neque unde eam, neque quorsum eam. (Ter. *Eun.* 305.)

Hic via Prænestina ad miliarium VI diverticulo sinistrorsus passuum DCCCCLXXX, proxime viam Collatiam accipit fontem.

(Frontin, *Aquæd.* 5.)

Abi sane istac, istorsum, quovis. (Ter. *Haut.* 588.)

Censeo senatui placere, circum eam statuam locum ludis gladiatoribusque liberos posterosque ejus quoquo versus pedes quinque habere. (C. *Phil.* 9. 7.)

Laqueis falces avertebant, quas, cum destinaverant tormentis, introrsus reducebant. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 22.)

Cum semel dictum sit directe, invertatur ordo, et idem quasi sursum versus retroque dicatur. (C. *Part. Or.* 7.)

Omnes numeri a duobus susum versus multitudinis sunt.

(Varr. *L. L.* 9, § 65.)

3. *With an accusative, (a) of the name of a town (§ 1108).* 2176

Initio belli civilis, cum Brundisium versus ires ad Cæsarem, venisti ad me in Formianum. (C. Fam. 11. 27.)

Hac (nave) adjuncta ad reliquas naves cursum Massiliam versus perficit. (Cæs. G. 2. 3.)

(b) *Of other names (rare).* 2177

Quem locum Ægyptum versus finem imperi habuere Carthaginenses. (Sall. J. 19.)

Ab his omnibus vastæ solitudines orientem versus usque ad Garamantas, verissima opinione Homeri, qui bipertitos tradit Æthiopas, ad orientem occasumque versos. (Plin. 5, § 43.)

**Ultra, ultro, 'beyond? used without a substantive dependent on them; uls, and ultra also, used with an accusative case.** 2178

1. *In space; literally and metaphorically*

(a) *Without a substantive dependent; ultro, 'to that side,' 'away.'*

Proin tu ab istoc procul apscedas. HE. Ultro istum a me.

(Plaut. Capt. 551.)

Detractis frenis bis ultro citroque cum magna strage hostium transcurrerunt. (L. 40. 40.)

(b) *With an accusative: uls (in older language), ultra, 'beyond.'* 2179

In eo (ponte) sacra et uls et cis Tiberim non mediocri ritu fiunt.

(Varr. L. L. 5. 15, 83.)

Adjutores triumviris quinqueviri uls cis Tiberim suæ quisque regionis ædificiis præessent. (ap. L. 39. 14.)

Post mutato consilio quibusdam de causis Cæsar paulo ultra eum locum castra transtulit. (Cæs. G. 1. 48.)

At ut manum alius ultra sinum proferre non audeat, alius, in quantum patet longitudo, protendat, aut ad tectum erigat, aut. repetito ultra lævum humerum gestu, in tergum flagellet, sæpe scio evenire. (Quint. 11. 3, § 118.)



2. *In time.*(a) *Without a substantive dependent: ultra, 'later.'*

Nec ultra bellum Latinum, gliscens jam per aliquot annos, dilatatum.  
(L. 2. 19.)

Semivocalis geminare diu non fuit usitatissimi moris, atque e contrario usque ad Accium et ultra porrectas syllabas geminis, ut dixi, vocalibus scripserunt. (Quint. 1. 7, § 14.)

(b) *With an accusative: ultra, 'later than.'*

Gorgias beneficio longissimæ ætatis,...et illorum, de quibus supra dixi, fuit æmulus, et ultra Socratem usque duravit.  
(Quint. 3. 1, § 8.)

Cujus disciplinæ usus a me nec ultra pueriles annos retinebitur nec in his ipsis diu. (Ib. 1. 11, § 19.)

Ex his (seminibus) quæ sunt fortissima, nullum ultra quadrimatum utile est, dumtaxat serendo, culinis et ultra tempestiva sunt.  
(Plin. 19, § 181.)

3. *In quantity, degree, &c.*(a) *Without a substantive dependent: ultra, 'beyond,' 'besides;'*  
*ultra quam.'*

Estne aliquid ultra, quo crudelitas progredi possit? (C. Verr. 5. 45.)

Possum equidem dicere mortem cuncta mortalium mala dissolvere, ultra neque curæ neque gaudio locum esse. (Sall. C. 51, § 20.)

Per dies aliquot nihil ultra motum, quam ut hæ duæ turmæ subducerentur. (L. 40. 30.)

Dicendi mutavimus genus et ultra nobis, quam oportebat, indulsimus. (Quint. 2. 5, § 24.)

(b) *Ultra, 'beyond:' with an accusative case.*

Adhibent modum quendam, quem ultra progredi non oporteat.  
(C. T. D. 4. 17.)

Sunt certi denique fines, quos ultra citraque nequit consistere rectum.  
(Hor. S. 1. 1. 106.)

Sunt quibus in satura videor nimis acer, et ultra legem tendere opus.  
(Hor. S. 2. 1. 1.)

Mæcenas, vir otio ac mollitiis pæne ultra feminam fluens.  
(Vell. 2. 88.)

(c) **Ultro**, 'further,' 'of one's own accord,' 'unasked,' 'unprovoked:' in colloquial English often = 'actually,' 'even.' 2184

Cavendo, ne metuant, homines metuendos ultro se efficiunt.

(L. 3. 65.)

Non debui tibi pecuniam: numquam me appellasti, usuram non accepisti, ultro a me mutuatus es. (Quint. 5. 10. § 107.)

Gn. Jam hæc tibi aderit supplicans ultro. THR. Credin? Gn. Immo certe: novi ingenium mulierum: nolunt, ubi velis: ubi nolis, cupiunt ultro. (Ter. Eun. 812.)

Cæsar eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur. (Cæs. G. 1. 42.)

Gratissimum mihi feceris, si ad eum ultro veneris. (C. Fam. 7. 21.)

Cum rex ab Attalo et Rhodiis ultro se bello lacesitum diceret. 'Num Abydeni quoque,' inquit, 'ultro tibi intulerunt arma?'

(L. 31. 18.)

Vectigalia summis pretiis, ultro tributa infimis locaverunt.

(ult. trib. 'voluntary expenditure,' i.e. public works. L. 39. 44.)

So, in legal language, of a right to bring an action, especially as opposed to a mere plea in defence: 2185

Contractum definit Labeo ultro citroque obligationem, veluti emptionem venditionem, locationem conductionem.

(ap. Dig. 50. 16. 19.)

Quæsitum est an maritus, si de tota dote conveniatur a filio, doli mali exceptione se tueri possit, et an ultro ex causa fideicommissi actio ei competat. (Scæv. ap. Dig. 32. 1. 37. § 4.)

**Usque**: often used independently and with prepositions; rarely used with an accusative case (except under § 1108): 'all the way,' 'right on,' 'continuously.' 2186

1. In space.

(a) Usually with prepositions or local adverbs.

2187

Perreptavi usque omne oppidum: ad portam, ad lacum, quo non?

(Ter. Ad. 715.)

A fundamento mi usque movisti mare. (Pl. Rud. 539.)

Portus usque in sinus oppidi et ad urbis crepidines infusi.

(C. R. P. 3. 31.)

Aut undique religionem tolle aut usque quaque conserva.

(C. Phil. 2. 43.)

(b) *With an accusative.*

Theatrum ita resonans, ut usque Romam significationes vocesque referantur. (C. Q. Fr. I. 14.)

Eratosthenes, inter ostium Oceani et Sardiniam quicquid est, Sardonum (mare appellat), inde ad Siciliam Tyrrhenum, ab hac Cretam usque Siculum, ab ea Creticum. (Plin. 3, § 75.)

Sed postea imperium usque extremos orientis terminos prolatum.

(Just. 7. 1.)

Modo nempe horrendus ab astris descendit vos usque fragor.

(Stat. Theb. II. 88.)

2. *In time and order; with prepositions, or local adverbs, or dum, donec, &c.*

A mani ad noctem usque in foro degi diem. (Pl. Most. 519.)

Id augures omnes usque ab Romulo decreverunt. (C. Vat. 8.)

Romæ rex erat deinceps retro usque ad Romulum. (C. R. P. I. 37.)

Adsenserunt consules designati, omnes etiam consulares usque ad Pompeium. (Plin. Ep. 2. 11, § 20.)

Bubulcum usque adeo verberari jussit, dum animam efflavit.

(C. Grac. ap. Gell. 10. 3.)

Quæ cum ita essent, tamen usque eo se tenuit, quoad a Cn. Pompeio ad eum legati litteræque venerunt. (C. Dejot. 4.)

‘Parentem’ hic utriusque sexus accipe; sed an in infinitum, quæritur. Quidam parentem usque ad tritavum appellari aiunt, superiores majores dici. (Ulp. ap. Dig. 2. 4. 4.)

*Occasionally put immediately after the preposition.*

Sic illa patriciorum nobilitas fundamentis urbis ab usque in hæc tempora constitit. (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 2. 9. 17.)

Ad usque supremum tempus, ne se penuria victus opprimeret, metuebat. (Hor. S. I. 1. 97.)

Cf. Stat. Theb. I. 440, in usque manus.

3. *In amount.* (a) *Absolutely.*

Cantantes licet usque, minus via lædit, camus. (Verg. B. 9. 64.)

Pœnas dedit usque superque, quam satis est. (Hor. S. I. 2. 65.)

(b) *With particles; e.g. eo, adeo.*

Ubi coctum erit, lacte addat paulatim usque adeo, donec cremor crassus erit factus. (Cato R. R. 86.)

Anco regi familiaris est factus usque eo, ut consiliorum omnium particeps putaretur. (C. R. P. 2. 20.)

## II. (CO-ORDINATING) CONJUNCTIONS.

(Mainly from Madvig.)

Co-ordinate sentences, regularly expressed, either have a conjunction with every member, or with all but the first. In the former case the writer shows that he has foreseen, and determines to mark, the distribution of his sentence into two or more co-ordinate clauses or parts; in the latter case the first clause expresses the original idea, the others are in the nature of after-thoughts.

## i. Copulative Conjunctions.

Copulative conjunctions are those which connect both the sentences and their meaning: **et**; **-que**, appended to (usually) the first word of a clause; **atque** (before consonants or vowels), **ac** (before consonants only).

1. **et** simply connects, whether words or sentences:

**que** marks the second member as an appendage or supplement to the first: and is often used in joining two words, which together make up one conception:

**ac**, or **atque**, lays a greater stress on the appended second member: e.g. *omnia honesta et inhonesta*: 'all things becoming and unbecoming.'

*omnia honesta inhonestaque*: 'all becoming things, and the unbecoming too.'

*omnia honesta atque inhonesta*: 'all becoming things, and no less the unbecoming also.'

These distinctions are not always clearly marked, and the selection is sometimes made rather to give variety to the sentence and avoid the confusion of principal with subordinate divisions.

*Quas res pro salute hujusce imperii et pro vita civium proque universa republica fecimus.* (C. *Ar. d.* 11.)

*Illā autem sapientia, quam principem dixi, rerum est divinarum et humanarum scientia.* (C. *Q. f.* 1. 43.)

*Est enim amicitia nihil aliud, nisi omnium divinarum humanarumque rerum cum benevolentia et caritate consensio.*

(C. *Lael.* 6.)

Est tamen quaedam philosophi discriptio, ut is, qui studeat omnium rerum divinarum atque humanarum vim naturam causasque nosse, et omnem bene vivendi rationem tenere et persequi, nomine hoc appelletur. (C. Or. i. 49.)

Molliabantur iræ, et ipsa deformitas Pleminii memoriaque absentis Scipionis favorem ad vulgum conciliabat. (L. 29. 22.)

Senatus populusque Romanus. Jus potestatemque habere.

2. *et, ac are sometimes used emphatically in commencing a reply, e.g.* 219

Curæ est mihi. MIC. Et mihi curæ est. (Ter. Ad. 129.)

To. Tace, stulte: hic ejus geminust frater. DO. Hicines? To. Ac geminissimus. (Pl. Pers. 830.)

E cælo? SY. Atque e medio quidem. (Pl. Trin. 941.)

*So et quidem 'aye and' § 1623.*

*et is also used for 'also,' chiefly in such expressions as, et ille, et ipse, et nunc, &c.* 219

Certum esse ratus omnia Romæ venalia esse, simul et illorum pollicitationibus accensus, quos &c., in regnum Adherbalis animum intendit. (Sall. J. 20.)

Principio deinde veris et ipsi ad bellum profecti sunt. (L. 28. 11.)

Sunt et mea contra fata mihi. (Verg. A. 9. 136.)

*For ac in comparisons see §§ 1275, 1580, 1581.* 219

*Plautus in a few places has atque in the apodosis to an adverbial clause, e.g.*

Forte ut adsedi in stega, atque ego lembum conspikor. (Bac. 278.)

3. *An affirmative sentence, following a negative sentence and expressing the same general meaning, is joined to it by et, ac, -que, not, as in English, by an adversative conjunction.* 220

Nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. (Cæs. G. 4. 35.)

Socrates nec patronum quæsit ad iudicium capitis, nec iudicibus supplex fuit, adhibuitque liberam contumaciam a magnitudine animi ductam. (C. T. D. i. 29.)

4. *When the distribution of a sentence or expression is foreseen and marked, the conjunctions are used as follows:* 220

*et...et connect either words or sentences. This is the regular mode.*

*que...et connect words only; (not in Cicero.)*



*que...que in prose are rare; but are used with a double relative.  
et...que only as a loose connection of two sentences.*

Et mittentibus et missis ea læta expeditio fuit; nam et illis, quod jam diu cupiebant, novandi res occasio data est: et hi, sentinam quandam urbis rati exhaustam, lætabantur. (L. 24. 29.)

De Scipione nusquam, nisi in senatu, actum, ubi omnes legatique et tribuni classem exercitum ducemque verbis extollescentes, fecerunt ut &c. (L. 29. 22.)

Omnes eam rogationem, quique Romæ quique in exercitu erant, æqui atque iniqui, præter ipsum dictatorem in contumeliam ejus latam acceperunt. (L. 22. 26.)

Namque urget ab alto arboribusque satisque notus pecorique sinister. (Verg. G. 1. 444.)

Quis est quin intellegat et eos qui fecerint, dignitatis splendore ductos, immemores fuisse utilitatum suarum, nosque, cum ea laudemus, nulla alia re nisi honestate duci? (C. Fin. 3. 22.)

5. (a) *In stating three or more perfectly co-ordinate words, 2002  
Either no conjunction is put, e.g. summa fide, constantia, justitia;  
or (b) each is connected with the preceding, e.g. summa fide (or et fide) et constantia et justitia;*

*or (c) the conjunction is omitted between the first members and que is annexed to the last, e.g. summa fide, constantia justitiæque.*

*A conjunction is usually put between two epithets, and either 2003  
omitted or inserted between three, e.g.*

*multæ et graves et diuturnæ causæ; or causæ multæ, graves, diuturnæ.*

*multæ et graves causæ (not multæ graves causæ; but multæ aliæ causæ is frequent).*

6. *Occasionally two co-ordinate words are put without any con- 2004  
junction. This is chiefly (a) in lively language; or (b) when the words are opposites completing one another; or (c) in old forms; or (d) for legal precision.*

(a) Ligur non aderat; L. frater ejus causam agebat: aderant amici, propinqui. (C. Ferr. 1. 48.)

In feris inesse fortitudinem sæpe dicimus, ut in equis, in leonibus. (C. Off. 1. 16.)

(b) Democritus luminibus amissis alba scilicet discernere et atra non poterat: at vero bona mala, æqua iniqua, honesta turpia, utilia inutilia, magna parva poterat. (C. T. D. 3. 39.)

Omnes te di homines, summi medii infimi, cives peregrini, viri mulieres, liberi servi oderunt. (C. Phil. 13. 20.)

- (c) Deus optimus maximus. Cn. Pompeio, M. Crasso consulibus. Velitis, jubeatis Quirites, &c.
- (d) Quosque quomque quæstores ex lege plebeive scito præcones legere sublegere oportebit, ei quæstores eo jure ea lege præcones IIII legunt sublegunt, quo jure qua lege quæstores qui nunc sunt præcones III legerunt sublegerunt. (Lex Corn. de xx. quæst. [C. I. R. I. No. 202] II. 10.)

Sarta tecta erigere. (C. Verr. I. 50.) Qui damnatus est, erit.

7. *Co-ordinate words and sentences are connected or introduced by other adverbs also, e.g. tum...tum 'at one time'... 'at another time'; (cum...tum 'as well'...as); modo...modo; nunc...nunc; more rarely in prose jam...jam; simul...simul; qua...qua; e.g.*

Disserens in utramque partem, tum Græce, tum Latine.  
(C. Att. 9. 4.)

Modo nebulonem, modo nugatorem appellat. (L. 38. 56.)

Tacita mæstitia ita defixit omnium animos, ut nunc in liminibus starent, nunc errabundi domos suas pervagarentur. (L. 1. 29.)

Qui jam contento, jam laxo fune laborat. (Hor. S. 2. 7. 20.)

Adeo simul spernebant, simul tantam in medio crescentem molem sibi ac posteris suis metuebant. (L. 1. 9.)

Intellego te distentissimum esse, qua de Buthrotiis, qua de Bruto.  
(C. Att. 15. 18.)

*Any word may however serve in rhetorical language in place of a co-ordinative conjunction.*

Quod si recte Cato judicavit, non recte frumentarius ille, non recte ædium pestilentium venditor tacuit. (C. Off. 3. 16.)

Nec tamen omnes possunt esse Scipiones aut Maximi, ut urbium expugnationes, ut pedestris navalisque pugnas, ut bella a se gesta, ut triumphos recordentur. (C. Sen. 5.)

Nihil enim habet præstantius, nihil quod magis expetat, quam honestatem, quam laudem, quam dignitatem, quam decus.  
(C. T. D. 2. 20.)

*A series of propositions are often marked by the use of, first primum, then deinde or tum, then (sometimes) porro, postea, or præterea, last denique or postremo.*

Primum Latine Apollo numquam locutus est: deinde ista sors inaudita Græcis est; præterea Phœbi temporibus jam Apollo versus facere desierat; postremo...hanc amphiboliam versus intellegere potuisset. (C. Div. 2. 56.)

## ii. Adversative Conjunctions.

Adversative conjunctions contrast the meaning, while they connect the sentences. Such are *sed, verum, ceterum, autem, vero, ast, at, atqui, quod*, and in some uses *quamquam, tamen, etsi, tametsi*. Of these *autem* and *vero* are placed not at the beginning of the sentence, but after one word, or sometimes two closely connected words: *tamen* is placed either at the beginning of the sentence or after an important word.

1. (a) *Sed*, 'but,' introduces a statement which alters or limits the assertion of the preceding sentence; or it expresses transition to another subject of discourse.

*Verum*, sometimes *verum enimvero*, is similar, but is used with a stronger effect.

*Ceterum* is similarly used: chiefly in Sallust and Livy.

(b) *Autem* 'however' introduces a different statement, in continuation of the preceding, without really altering or limiting it. Sometimes it is used to pick up, for special notice, a preceding word or statement.

*Ast* is similar but is almost confined<sup>1</sup> to old legal language, to Vergil, and post-Augustan poets.

*Vero* 'indeed' is similarly used, and gives special emphasis to the word preceding it: it is also often used after *nec* or *tum*.

(c) *At*, 'but,' introduces an emphatic remark different from and opposed to the preceding statement. Sometimes it appears in the apodosis of a conditional sentence. It is especially used in a lively retort or exclamation: *at enim* in the statement of an adversary's objection.

(d) *Atqui*, 'but,' sometimes introduces an objection, sometimes a fresh step in the reasoning.

(e) *Quod*, 'but', (cf. § 536) is used (chiefly before *si, nisi*, but also before *etsi, quia, quoniam*) to continue a statement.

(a) Video te, Scipio, testimoniis satis instructum, sed apud me argumenta plus quam testes valent. (C. R. P. i. 38.)

Jura, set ego jusjurandum dabo: jura per patris cineres, qui inconditi sunt. (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7, Præf. § 7.)

Sed jam ad id, unde digressi sumus, revertamur. (C. Brut. 87.)

In M. Catone quæ bona nonnumquam requirimus, ea sunt omnia non a natura, verum a magistro. (C. Mur. 29.)

<sup>1</sup> Baiter reads *ast* in C. Att. i. 16, 17; 15. 4 (ex Victorii conj.); 16. 6 § 1: but Wessenberg alters these passages.

Vidi ego multa sæpe picta, quæ Acherunti fierent cruciamenta: verum enimvero nulla adæque est Acheruns, atque ubi ego fui in lapidinis. (Pl. *Capt.* 1000.)

Nunc amitte, quæso, hunc: ceterum, posthac si quicquam, nihil precor. (Ter. *Pb.* 141.)

(b) Gyges, cum palam ejus anuli ad palmam converterat, a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat. (C. *Off.* 3. 9.)

Nunc quod agitur agamus: agitur autem, liberine vivamus an mortem obeamus. (C. *Phil.* 11. 10.)

Evoca aliquem huc intus ad te, Tranio. TR. Ecce autem perii. (Pl. *Most.* 676.)

Quid tu tibi vis? ego non teneam meam? CH. Tuam autem, furcifer? (Ter. *Eun.* 798.)

Num quis testis Postumium appellavit? testis autem? num accusator? (C. *Rab. P.* 5.)

Quæsi, viveretne ipse et Paulus pater et alii quos nos extinctos esse arbitraremur. Immo vero, inquit, ii vivunt, qui e corporum vinculis, tamquam e carcere, evolaverunt; vestra vero, quæ dicitur vita, mors est. (C. *R. P.* 6. 14.)

Scimus muscen nostris moribus abesse a principis persona, saltare vero etiam in vitiis poni. (Nep. 15. 1.)

Est igitur causa omnis in opinione, nec vero ægritudinis solum, sed etiam reliquarum omnium perturbationum. (C. *T. D.* 3. 11.)

Navita sed tristis nunc hos, nunc accipit illos; ast alios longe summos arcet harena. (Verg. *A.* 6. 315.)

(c) Igitur præclara facies, magnæ divitiæ, ad hoc vis corporis, et alia omnia hujusmodi brevi dilabuntur; at ingeni egregia facinora, sicuti anima, immortalia sunt. (Sall. *J.* 2.)

Quod si se ipsos nostri illi liberatores e conspectu nostro abstulerunt, at exemplum facti reliquerunt. (C. *Phil.* 2. 44.)

Non cognoscebantur gemini illi Servilii foris; at domi: non ab alienis; at a suis. (C. *Ac.* 2. 18.)

Horum omnium studium una mater oppugnat. At quæ mater? quam cæcam crudelitate et scelere ferri videmus, cujus &c. (C. *Glu.* 70.)

At quam sunt similes! at quam formosus uterque! (Ov. *F.* 2. 395.)

Vapulabis meo arbitrato et novorum ædilium. CH. At etiam maledicis? (Pl. *Trin.* 991.)

At enim, quid ita solus ego civium curam ago? Nihilo magis, quod respondeam, habeo, quam si quæras, quid ita solus capitolium arcemque servaverim. (L. 6. 15.)

- (d) Satis scite promittit tibi. *Sv.* Atqui tu hanc jocari credis? 2213  
(*Ter. Haut.* 729.)  
Tum ut me Cotta vidit 'peropportune,' inquit, 'venis'... 'Atqui mihi quoque videor,' inquam, 'venisse, ut dicis, opportune.'  
(*C. N. D.* 1. 7.)  
Quod si virtutes sunt pares inter se, paria esse etiam vitia necesse est: atqui pares esse virtutes facillime potest perspicui.  
(*C. Par.* 3. 1.)  
(e) Coluntur tyranni simulatione, dum taxat ad tempus: quod si forte, ut fit plerumque, ceciderunt, tum intelligitur quam fuerint inopes amicorum. (C. *Lael.* 15.) 2214  
Statuæ sunt istius dejectæ et eversæ ante ipsum Serapim, in primo aditu vestibuloque templi. Quod nisi Metellus hoc tam graviter egisset, atque illam rem imperio edictoque prohibuisset, vestigium statuarum istius in tota Sicilia nullum esset relictum. (*C. Ferr.* 2. 66.)  
Quod quia nullo modo sine amicitia firmam et perpetuam jucunditatem vitæ tenere possumus, idcirco amicitia cum voluptate connectitur. (*C. Fin.* 1. 20.)  
Quod absque hoc esset, qui mihi hoc fecit palam, usque offrenatum suis me ductarent dolis. (*Pl. Capt.* 754.)
2. The statement of a fact opposite to or corrective of previous statements, is often introduced by *quamquam*, *tamen*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, 'And yet.' (For *nisi* in this sense, see § 1569.) 2215
- Pater curabit clandestina ut celetur consuetio. *Quamquam*, ut jam dudum dixi, resciscet tamen Amphitruo rem omnem.  
(*Pl. Amph.* 491.)  
Non video quo pacto Hercules 'in domum æternam patris' pervenerit, quem tamen Homerus apud inferos conveniri facit ab Ulixæ. *Quamquam* quem potissimum Herculem colamus, scire sane velim. (*C. N. D.* 3. 16.)  
Hæc enim est tyrannorum vita, nimirum in qua omnia semper suspecta atque sollicita, nullus locus amicitiae. Coluntur tamen simulatione, dumtaxat ad tempus. (*C. Lael.* 15.)  
"Quid est? Crasse," inquit Julius, "imusne sessum? etsi admonitum te venimus te, non flagitatum. (*C. Or.* 3. 5.)  
Nec hoc dico, quia severiores sequi placet leges, pro patre, fratre, amico periclitantibus; tametsi non mediocris hæsitatio est, hinc justitiæ proposita imagine, inde pietatis.  
(*Quint.* 12. 1. 40.)

(The ordinary use of *etsi* and other concessive conjunctions is given in §§ 1560, 1561.; of *quamquam* in § 1697.)



## iii. Disjunctive Conjunctions.

Disjunctive conjunctions are those, which connect the sentences, but disconnect their meaning; viz. **aut**, **vel**, **-ve** (appended to first word of clause), **sive** or (before consonants only) **seu**. 2216

(a) **aut** is used where the difference between the conceptions or propositions is real or important; (b) **vel** (often **vel potius**, **vel dicam**, **vel etiam**), and **-ve**, where the difference is unimportant, or concerns the expression more than the substance. Both **aut** and **vel** are sometimes used in adding the consequence of denying a former proposition: 'or else,' 'otherwise.' (c) **Seu** (**sive**) is used chiefly to correct a previous assertion, and, when without a following **seu**, usually has **potius** with it.

(a) *Qua re vi aut clam agendum est.* (C. Att. 10. 12, § 5.) 2217

*Profecto cuncti, aut magna pars Siccensium, fidem mutavissent.*

(Sall. J. 56.)

*Potestne igitur quisquam dicere, inter eum qui doleat et inter eum qui in voluptate sit nihil interesse? aut, ita qui sentiat, non apertissime insaniat?* (C. Ac. 2. 7.)

*Quæcunque in hominum disceptationem cadere possunt, bene sunt ei dicenda, qui hoc se posse profitetur; aut eloquentiæ nomen relinquendum est.* (C. Or. 2. 2.)

(b) *Ejusmodi conjunctionem tectorum oppidum vel urbem appellerunt.* (C. R. P. 1. 26.) 2218

*Ubi Cæsarem magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicæ prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret.* (Cæs. G. 4. 16.)

*Post obitum vel potius excessum Romuli.* (C. R. P. 2. 30.)

*Unum illud extimescebam ne quid turpiter facerem, vel dicam, jam fecissem.* (C. Att. 9. 7.)

*Quod ipsum a se movetur, id nec nasci potest nec mori; vel concidat omne cælum, omnisque natura consistat necesse est.*

(C. T. D. 1. 23.)

*Post hanc habitam contionem duabus tribusve horis optatissimi nuntii et literæ venerunt.* (C. Phil. 14. 6.)

(c) *Quid perturbatius hoc ab urbe discessu sive potius turpissima fuga?* (C. Att. 8. 3.) 2219

*Ascanius urbem matri seu novercæ reliquit.* (L. 1. 3.)

2. Where the distribution is foreseen, the conjunctions are doubled, preserving their usual distinction from each other. 2220

(a) **aut...aut** are used of things mutually exclusive, especially where an alternative is put distinctly.

(b) **vel...vel** (in poetry also **ve...ve**) are used of things, both or all of which may co-exist ('partly'...'partly'), or where the choice is a matter of indifference to the speaker or concerns the expression only.

(c) **sive (seu)...sive (seu)** are used where it is uncertain or indifferent which conception should be taken. (When used with verbs, they are often conditional particles = **vel si**. Cf. §§ 1563—1567.)

(a) *Omne enuntiatum aut verum aut falsum est.* (C. *Fat.* 9.)

*Deserendi officii plures solent esse causæ; nam aut inimicitias aut laborem aut sumptus suscipere nolunt, aut etiam negligentia, pigritia, inertia, aut suis studiis quibusdam occupationibusve impediuntur.* (C. *Off.* 1. 9.)

(b) *Postea vero, vel quod tanta res erat, vel quod nondum audieramus Bibulum in Syriam venisse, vel quia administratio hujus belli mihi cum Bibulo pæne est communis, quæ ad me delata essent, scribenda ad vos putavi.* (C. *Fam.* 15. 1.)

*Hanc tu mihi vel vi vel clam vel precario fac tradas.*

(Ter. *Eun.* 391.)

*Quæro etiam, si velim scribere quid aut legere aut canere vel voce vel fidibus, aut geometricum quiddam aut physicum aut dialecticum explicare, somniumne expectandum sit an ars adhibenda?* (C. *Div.* 2. 59.)

*Corpora vertuntur: nec, quod fuimusve sumusve, cras erimus.*

(Ov. *M.* 15. 2 5.)

(c) *Homines nobiles seu recte seu perperam facere cœperunt, in utroque excellunt.* (C. *Quint.* 8.)

*Seu preces coloniarum seu difficultas operum sive superstitio valuit, ut in sententiam Cn. Pisonis concederetur, qui nil mutandum censuerat.* (Tac. *A.* 1. 79.)

3. *Vel is used, especially with a superlative, as an intensive particle ('even') to introduce what is regarded as the climax, the inferior stages being left to the imagination or implied in the context.* 2221

*Heus, te tribus verbis volo.* Sy. *Vel trecentis.* (Pl. *Trin.* 964.)

*Atqui ea condicio vel primariast.* (Pl. *Trin.* 746.)

*Hoc in genere nervorum vel minimum, suavitatis autem est vel plurimum.* (C. *Or.* 26.)

*So it introduces a special instance: 'why even,' 'for instance.'* 2222

*Nulla est tam facilis res, quin difficilis siet, quam invitus facias. Vel me hæc deambulatio, quam non laboriosa, ad languorem dedit.* (Ter. *Haut.* 806.)

*Raras tuas quidem, sed suaves accipio litteras. Vel quas proxime acceperam, quam prudentes! quam multi et officii et consilii!* (C. *Fam.* 2. 13.)

## III. NEGATIVE PARTICLES.

The negative particles are **nē**, **nē**, **ni**, **nec**, **neque**, **non**, **haud**.

**Nē** is found in composition, e.g. **nēque**, **nēqueo**, **nōlo** (**nēvis**), **nescio**, **nēfas**, **nēmo** (**ne hemo** old for **homo**), **nullus** (**ne ullus**), **nūtiquam** (**neutiquam**). It is identical with the enclitic interrogative **-ne**, and is found in **quīn** (see p. 297), and probably in **sin**.

**Nē** and **ni** were originally identical, and at one time (6th Cent. U.C.) often written **nei**. Hence **nihil** for **nē** (**nei**, **ni**) **hīlum**. **Nē** is used in the phrase **nē...quidem**; and sometimes by itself, sometimes following **quī** (adj. and adv.), **ut**, **dum**, in sentences with imperative, or subjunctive signifying wish, command, purpose &c. (Chap. xxi). **Ne** or **nec** is found, in composition with **quiquam** (abl?) or **quidquam** (acc.), in the words **nequiquam** or **nequicquam** 'in vain;' it is also found in **nequaquam**, 'by no means;' **nedum** (§ 1658). The enclitic disjunctive **-ve** is often appended, and makes **neve** or **neu**.

**Ni** is generally used as a negative conditional particle for **nisi** (originally **ne si**?), especially in reported conditions § 1752. Originally it was probably a simple negative, as in phrases, **nimirum**, (§ 1757), **quidni** (§ 1614), **quippini** (§ 1616), and became specially appropriated to conditional clauses, as **ne** did to final clauses. **-ve** is sometimes appended.

**Nec** is usually a co-ordinate conjunction, interchangeable with **neque**, of which it is regarded as an abbreviation. But it is also found as a simple negative in the phrases, **nec manifestum** (XII Tables), **res nec mancipi** (in legal language), **nec recte** Plautus and perhaps in other expressions: also in the compounds **nec-opinus**, **neglego**, **neg-otium**, and in the derivative **nego**. It is also used, with **-ne** appended, in the second member of a disjunctive question (**nec-ne** 'or not,' § 2255).

**Non**, originally **noenum** (for **ne unum** acc. cf. § 264) is the ordinary simple negative.

**Haud** (**haut**, **hau**) is a simple negative, used chiefly before adverbs (e.g. **haud quaquam**, **haud sane**, **haud procul**) and adjectives, not often before verbs, at least after Plautus, except in phrase **haud (hau) scio an**.

**In-** and **ve-** are used only in composition (§§ 986, 1984).

1. (a) **Non, haud, nec** (in the phrases referred to above) are <sup>2230</sup> used as simple negatives, as English 'not.' Both **non** and **nec** are occasionally (**nec** frequently in Ovid and Livy) found with an imperative or jussive subjunctive (instead of **nē**).

**Nihil** as adverbial accusative (§ 1094), and **nullus** as adjective, are sometimes used where we use, 'not at all.'

(b) **Ne** before a word and **quidem** after it are together equal to 'not even,' or 'not...either,' (when we use this latter expression as adverb without 'nor' following.) e.g. **ne hoc quidem**, 'not even this,' 'not this either.'

**Nec** is also sometimes used in the sense of **ne...quidem** in and after the Augustan age.

(c) **Ne** with the imperative or the subjunctive of wish or command is 'not,' but with a subjunctive of purpose (without **ut**) is 'lest' or 'that not.' So (in such sentences) **ne quis, ne quando, ne ullus, necubi, &c.** are used instead of **ut nemo, ut nunquam, ut nullus, ut nusquam, &c.** **Noli dicere, cave dicas** are equivalent simply to 'do not say.'

(d) **Minus**, especially after **si, sin** (§§ 1563, 1565), or **quo** (§ 1644), and **minime**, 'least of all,' are used as equivalent to 'not at all,' 'not.' **Vix** 'scarcely,' **parum** 'but little,' and sometimes **male**, have a character approaching to that of a negative.

(α) **Non, non sic futurumst: non potest.** (Ter. *Pb.* 303.) 2231

**Qui honeste aliquid facturum est, quicquid opponitur, id, etiamsi incommodum putat, malum non putet, velit, libens faciat.**

(Sen. *Ep.* 66, § 17.)

**Sedit, qui timuit, ne non succederet.** (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 17. 37.)

**Nec tibi turpe puta ingenua speculum sustinuisse manu.**

(Ov. *A. A.* 2. 215.)

**Quod dixi semel, hau mutabo.** (Pl. *Bac.* 1203.)

**Etiam bene dicere haud absurdumst.** (Sall. *C.* 3.)

**Nec recte si illi dixeris, jam ecastor vapulabis.** (Pl. *Most.* 240.)

**Consules in nec opinatam fraudem lapsos esse.** (L. 27. 33.)

**Thebani nihil moti sunt, quamquam nonnihil succensebant Romanis.** (L. 42. 46.)

**Scripsi Sextum adventare, non quo jam adesset, sed quia certe id ageret, ab armisque nullus discederet.** (C. *Att.* 15. 22.)

**Hæc bona in tabulas publicas nulla redierunt.** (C. *Rosc. A.* 44.)

(b) Postero die Curio milites productos in acie collocat. Ne Varus quidem dubitat copias producere. (Cæs. C. 2. 33.)

De vita beata nihil repugno, quam tu ne in deo quidem esse censes, nisi plane otio langueat. (C. N. D. 1. 24.)

Hæc non idcirco dico, quod inutilem horum locorum cognitionem putem; alioqui nec dixissem; sed ne &c. (Quint. 5. 10. 119.)

Tu voluptatem summum bonum putas: ego nec bonum.  
(Sen. Dial. 7. 10.)

Cum sis tam pauper, quam nec miserabilis Iros, tam juvenis, quam nec Parthenopæus erat, tam fortis, quam nec, cum vinceret, Artemidorus, quid te Cappadocum sex onus esse juvat?  
(Mart. 6. 77.)

(c) Facite fingite invenite efficite qui detur tibi; ego id agam, qui ne detur. (Ter. Andr. 335.)

Siste gradum, teque aspectu ne subtrahe nostro. (Verg. A. 6. 465.)

Lata lex est, ne auspicia valerent, ne quis obnuntiaret; ne quis legi intercederet, ut lex Aelia, lex Fufia ne valeret. (C. Sest. 15.)

(d) Egone ut, quod ad me adlatum esse alienum sciam, celem? minime istuc faciet noster Dæmones. (Pl. Rud. 1245.)

At nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt, minus eveniunt.  
(C. Div. 1. 14.)

Ille, qualiscumque est, conlegit ipse se vix, sed collegit tamen.  
(C. Pis. 12.)

Ego autem illum male sanum semper putavi. (C. Att. 9. 15.)

2. *A negative sentence, or member of a sentence, requiring to be joined to the preceding by a co-ordinate conjunction, is introduced by neque (nec); or if a purpose or command, &c. be implied, usually by neve (neu). So nec for et non, necdum for et nondum, nec quisquam for et nemo, neque ullus for et nullus, &c. Usually also the Romans said neque enim, neque vero, nec tamen, though sometimes non enim is found, and rarely non tamen.*

*Et (or ac) non, et nullus, &c., are found where the negative belongs to a special word in the sentence, or the new sentence is intended as a correction of the former. So also et (sometimes ac) ne...quidem.*

Non metuo mihi nec quoquam supplico. (Plaut. Bac. 225.)

Senatui pacis auctor fui, nec sumptis armis belli ullam partem attigi.  
(C. Att. 9. 11 A.)

Non Græca facundia neque urbanis munditiis sese exercuit.  
(Sall. J. 63.)

Magis adformido, ne is pereat neu corrumpatur. (Pl. Bac. 1078.)



Patior, judices, et non moleste fero. (C. Verr. I. I.)

2237

Eo simus animo, ut horribilem illum diem (moriendi) aliis, nobis faustum putemus, nihilque in malis ducamus quod sit vel a dis immortalibus vel a natura parente omnium constitutum.

(C. T. D. I. 49.)

Quasi nunc id agatur, quis ex tanta multitudine occiderit, ac non hoc quæretur, utrum &c. (C. Rasc. A. 33.)

C. Antonius, tamquam extruderetur a senatu in Macedoniam et non contra prohiberetur proficisci, ita cucurrit. (C. Phil. 10. 5.)

In Siciliam quoque eadem inclinatio animorum pervenit, et ne domus quidem Hieronis tota ab defectione abstinuit.

(L. 23. 30.)

*Sometimes neque (nec) is used, where the negative belongs only to a participial or other subordinate clause, but the principal verb or sentence has to be united with that preceding.*

Haud cunctanter Hiberum transgrediuntur; nec ullo viso hoste Saguntum pergunt ire (L. 22. 22) = et, nullo viso hoste, pergunt.

Deustos pluteos turrium videbant, nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertebant (Cæs. G. 7. 25) = et animadvertebant non facile, &c.

Tum demum ingemuit: 'Neque' ait 'sine numine vincis' (Ov. M. 11. 263) = aitque, Non sine, &c.

3. *Several negative sentences or clauses may in fact form one sentence, without the connexion being marked, or foreseen. Either (a) there is no conjunction used, or (b) the conjunction is used (§ 2202), only with the second or third members, not with the first.*

(a) Non gratia, non cognatione, non aliis recte factis, non denique aliquo mediocri vitio, tot tantaque ejus vitia sublevata esse videbuntur. (C. Verr. Act. I. 16.)

Nil oriturum alias, nil ortum tale fatentes. (Hor. Ep. 2. 1. 17.)

Nullum meum minimum dictum, non modo factum, intercessit.

(C. Fam. I. 9, § 21.)

(b) Justum et tenacem propositi virum non civium ardor prava jubentium, non voltus instantis tyranni mente quatit solida, neque auster, ... nec fulminantis magna manus Jovis.

(Hor. Od. 3. 3. 1.)

Cressa ne careat pulchra dies nota, neu promptæ modus amphoræ, neu morem in Salium sit requies pedum, neu, &c.

(Id. I. 36. 10.)

4. *When the distribution of the sentence or thought into two or more co-ordinate clauses or expressions is foreseen, it may be marked in several ways.*

*If all the clauses are negative, we have*

(a) *neque (nec)...neque (nec), 'neither...nor'..., except usually in commands, &c.*

(b) *neve (neu)...neve (neu), 'neither...nor,' where a prohibition or wish is intended: 'that neither...nor,' 'lest either...or,' where a purpose &c. is intended. (This is not frequent.)*

(c) *non modo<sup>1</sup> (solum) non...sed ne...quidem, 'not only not... but not even;' where the second member implies a stronger statement than the first.*

*If a predicate or other word is common to both clauses, but stands with the latter, the non after modo or solum is frequently omitted, and we have*

*non modo (solum)...sed ne...quidem.*

*(See also § 1657 and nedum, ne dicam, non dico, &c. §§ 1658—1660.)*

(a) *Virtus nec eripi nec subripi potest; neque naufragio neque incendio amittitur; nec tempestatum nec temporum turbatione mutatur. (C. Par. 6. 3.)*

*Ipsus neque amat nec tu creduas. (Pl. Bac. 476.)*

*Neve cibo prohibe, nec amari pocula suci porrige.*

*(Ov. A. A. 2. 335.)*

(b) *Peto a te, ut id a me neve in hoc reo neve in aliis requiras.*

*(C. Fam. 1. 9, § 19.)*

(c) *Non modo, ut sumptum faciat in militem, nemini vis adfertur, sed ne cupienti quidem cuiquam permittitur. (C. Man. 13.)*

*Obscenitas non solum non foro digna, sed vix convivio liberorum.*

*(C. Or. 2. 62.)*

*Hæc genera virtutum non solum in moribus nostris, sed vix in libris reperiuntur. (C. Pis. 17.)*

*Regnat Romæ advena, non modo vicinæ, sed ne Italicæ quidem stirpis. (L. 1. 40.)*

<sup>1</sup> *Non modo* is 'not exactly,' 'I do not say;' *non solum* 'not only,' *non tantum* 'not so much.' *Non modo* is more common, at least in Cicero, and is applicable in some cases, where the others are not: e.g. 'Quæ civitas est in Asia, quæ non modo imperatoris aut legati sed unius tribuni militum animos ac spiritus capere possit?' (C. Man. 22.)

If all the clauses are not negative, these clauses are introduced by 2242

(a) et...neque 'both...and not,' if the first be affirmative. If the negative belongs to a word only, et...et non may be used.

(b) neque...et 'neither...and,' if the second be affirmative. neque...que is more rare.

(c) non modo (solum, tantum) non, sed (verum) etiam, if the second be affirmative and a stronger statement than the first.

Patebat via et certa neque longa. (C. Phil. 11. 2.)

T. Manlius et semper me coluit diligentissimeque observavit, et a studiis nostris non abhorret. (C. Fam. 13. 22.)

Uta vestita pampinis, nec modico tepore caret et nimios solis defendit ardores. (C. Sen. 13.)

Illud profecto perficiam, ut neque bonus quisquam interest, paucorumque parva vos omnes salvi esse possitis. (C. Cat. 3. 13.)

Tu id non modo non prohibebas, verum etiam approbas.

(C. Att. 16. 7. § 3.)

Nec domi tantum indignationes continebant, sed congregabantur undique ad regem Sabinorum. (L. 1. 10.)

§. Sometimes a negative is prefixed, and the distribution is expressed by (a) neque...neque, or non modo (or solum) (non)...sed ne...quidem; (b) aut...aut; (c) rarely in prose by ac, et, -que, unless the distribution is rather in the expression than in the thought.

(a) See below (§ 2246).

(b) Equites palatos eodem recipit, nec aut colli aut flumini satis fidens castra vallo permunit. (L. 23. 16.)

Consciorum nemo aut latuit aut fugit. (L. 24. 3.)

(c) Nulla res tanta est ac tam difficilis, quam ille non et consilio regere et integritate tueri et virtute conficere possit. (C. Man. 20.)

[Sometimes a negative word (nego, nemo, &c.) prefixed belongs not to both members, but the negative to the first only, e.g.]

Negant Caisarem in conditione mansurum, postulataque hæc ab eo interposita esse, quominus, &c. (C. Att. 7. 15.)

b. One negative, applied to another, destroys its effect, and the result is equivalent to an affirmation. This is chiefly seen in the phrases non nemo, 'some one;' non nullus, 'some;' non nihil, 'something;' non nunquam, 'sometimes;' nemo non, nullus non, 'every one;' nihil non, 'everything;' nunquam non, 'always;' nusquam non, 'everywhere;' non possum non, 'I cannot help myself;' i.e. 'I must.'

*Necnon in the earlier prose is not used, as it is sometimes in verse and in later prose, as little more than an equivalent for etiam.*

Nec hoc ille non vidit, sed verborum magnificentia est et gloria delectatus. (C. Fin. 4. 22.)

Nec tiliæ leves aut torno rasile buxum non formam accipiunt ferroque cavantur acuto; nec non et torrentem undam levis innatat alnus, missa Pado; nec non et apes examina condunt.

(Verg. G. 2. 449.)

Gratissima est esca terrestris leguminis panicum et milium, necnon et hordeum. (Col. 8. 15, § 6.)

*The negatives are not applied to one another in such sentences as* 22.

At iste non dolendi status non vocatur voluptas. (C. Fin. 2. 9.)

*But negatives do not destroy one another, when the first negative is* 22.  
*general, and this is followed*

(a) *By ne...quidem or non modo emphasizing some particular word or phrase.*

(b) *By several subordinate members each with a negative.*

(c) *By another co-ordinate member joined by neque (nec).*

(a) Quid præterea sit bonum, negat Epicurus se posse ne suspicari quidem. (C. Fin. 2. 10.)

Se quoque dictatorem Romæ fuisse, nec a se quemquam, ne plebis quidem hominem, non centurionem, non militem violatum.

(L. 8. 33, § 12.)

Cave Catoni anteponas ne istum quidem ipsum, quem Apollo, ut ais, sapientissimum judicavit: hujus enim facta, illius dicta laudantur. (C. Læl. 2.)

Nihil erit quod oratorem effugere possit, non modo in forensibus disceptationibus, sed omnino in ullo genere dicendi.

(C. Or. 2. 41.)

(b) Nemo umquam neque poeta neque orator fuit, qui quemquam meliorem quam se arbitraretur. (C. Att. 14. 20.)

Quædam præclara cupiebant, eaque nesciebant nec ubi nec qualia essent. (C. T. D. 3. 2.)

Hanno, nequaquam satis valido non modo ad lacessendum hostem, sed ne ad tuendos quidem a populationibus agros, equitatu accepto, id primum egit, &c. (L. 29. 34.)

Quibus nihil non modo de fructu, sed ne de bonis quidem suis, reliqui fecit. (C. Verr. 3. 48.)

(c) *Itast amor, ballista ut jacitur: nil sic celerest neque volat.*  
(Pl. *Trin.* 668.)

*Nequeo satis mirari neque conicere.* (Ter. *Eun.* 547.)

*Magis opportunus, nec magis ex usu tuo nemost.* (Ter. *Eun.* 1077.)

[*The second co-ordinate member may of course also be appended by aut or ve.*

*Ut timet, ne quid plus minus ve, quam sit necesse, dicat!*  
(C. *Flac.* 5.)]

*Sometimes other cases occur, in which the negatives strengthen, not destroy, each other; especially neque...haud in Plautus.*

*Neque mi haud imperito eveniet tali ut in luto hæream.*  
(Pl. *Pers.* 535.)

*Inrides? nihil me fallis: sed dico tibi, ne temere facias; neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum: cave.* (Ter. *Andr.* 204.)

*Jura te nociturum non esse de hac re nemini.* (Pl. *Mil.* 1411.)

#### IV. INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.

Interrogative particles are used in those sentences in which a question is asked relating to the truth or falsehood of a particular statement, and a simple affirmative or negative answer is expected.

These questions are either simple or alternative.

Simple questions may be expressed without any interrogative pronoun or particle. An affirmative sentence then not infrequently expects a negative answer, and *vice versa*, the tone of voice or circumstances supplying the necessary warning. In alternative questions the first member is similarly left sometimes without any interrogative particle.

The particles which are used in introducing simple questions (when they have no interrogative pronoun) are

**-ne**, properly ‘*not*’, (appended to another word), **non-ne**, and **num**, properly ‘*now*’, (**numne**, **numnam**, **numquid**). **An** is also found in what appear at first to be simple questions.

The particles used in introducing alternative questions are **utrum** (neut. of **uter**) ‘*whether*’ **-ne**, and **an**.

For dependent questions, see §§ 1758—1764.



i. *In Simple Questions.*

-Ne puts a question without any implication as to the character of the answer: e.g. Sentisne? 'Do you feel?'

Nonne implies the expectation of an affirmative answer: e.g. Nonne sentis? 'Do you not feel?'

Num implies the expectation of a negative answer: e.g. Num sentis, 'You do not feel, do you?'

An affirmative answer is expressed by **etiam, ita, factum, vero, verum, sane, ita vero, ita est, sane quidem, &c.**; or with the proper pronoun, as, **ego vero**; or by the verb (or other words), repeated in the proper person, e.g. **sentio**. (Cf. 1021 c.)

A negative answer is expressed by **non minime, minime vero**; or with the pronoun, e.g. **minime ego quidem**; or with the verb &c. e.g. **Non sentio**. When the contrary is asserted by way of reply, we have **immo, immo vero**, 'No, on the other hand,' 'Nay rather.'

Quid hoc? Dasne, aut manere animos post mortem aut morte ipsa interire? Do vero. (C. T. D. I. 11.)

SI. Etiam tu hoc respondes, quid istic tibi negotist? DA. Mihin?

SI. Ita. DA. Mihin? SI. Tibi ergo. (Ter. And. 849.)

Tun te abisse hodie hinc negas? AM. Nego enimvero.

(Pl. Am. 758.)

PII. Satin tibist? CII. Mihin? immo vero pulchre discedo et probe et præter spem. (Ter. Ph. 1047.)

Estne? vici? et tibi sæpe, quod me negaras discedens curaturum, litteras mitto? Est; si quidem perferuntur, quas do.

(Cæ. ap. C. Fam. 8. 3.)

AP. Sed visne locum mutemus, et in insula, quæ est in Fibreno, sermoni reliquo demus operam sedentes? MA. Sane quidem. (C. Leg. 2. 1.)

Quid? Autronio nonne sodales, non collegæ sui, non veteres amici defuerunt? (C. Sull. 2.)

Quid? canis nonne similis lupo? (C. N. D. I. 35.)

AN. Num tu intelligis, hic quid narret? PII. Num tu? AN. Nil.

PII. Tantundem ego. (Ter. Ph. 846.)

Num igitur peccamus? Minime nos quidem. (C. Att. 8. 9.)

Numne si Coriolanus habuit amicos, ferre contra patriam arma illi cum Coriolano debuerunt? (C. Læ. 11.)

Quis hic loquitur? perii: numnam hæc audivit? (Ter. Haut. 517.)

Dicdum hoc rursum, Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? DO. 2253  
Factum. PH. Et eamst indutus? DO. Factum.

(Ter. Eun. 707.)

Huic ego 'studes?' inquam. Respondit 'etiam.' (Plin. Ep. 4. 13.)

Huc abiit Clitipho. CH. Solus? ME. Solus. (Ter. Ph. 905.)

AN. Jam ea præterit? DO. Non. (Ter. Ph. 525.)

Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima. (C. Att. 9. 7, § 4.)

Non dices hodie, quorsum hæc tam putida tendant, furcifer?

Ad te, inquam. (Hor. S. 2. 7. 21.)

Hunc tu morem ignorabas? numquam epulum videras? numquam  
puer aut adolescens inter cocos fueras? (C. Vāt. 13.)

Ego eum non tuear, quem omnes in republica principem esse  
concedunt? ego C. Cæsaris laudibus desim? (C. Planc. 39.)

## ii. In Alternative Questions.

*In alternative questions utrum or -ne are used in the first member 2254  
of the sentence, an (sometimes anne) in the second member. (In dependent  
questions -ne is frequent in the second member, especially if the  
first have no particle. -Ne...ne are found occasionally, chiefly in the  
poets.) 'Or not' is expressed by an non or nec-ne.*

Utrum nescis quam alte ascenderis, an pro nihilo id putas?

(C. Fam. 10. 26.)

Vosne vero L. Domitium an vos Domitius deseruit? (Cæs. G. 2. 32.)

Utrum voltis patri Flacco licuisse necne? (C. Flac. 25.)

Set isne est quem quæro an non? Ipsus est. (Ter. Ph. 852.)

Quid? vos duas habetis patrias? an est una illa patria communis?

(C. Leg. 2. 2.)

Nam quid ego de consulatu loquar, parto vis, anne gesto?

(C. Pis. 1.)

Non ignoscis? an non credis? (Sen. Rhet. Contr. 7. 16, § 1.)

*An is frequently used in a question apparently simple, but which 2255  
may be regarded as really the second member of an alternative question,  
the first being either not put in the form of a question or left to  
be inferred from the context. It introduces questions which imply the  
needlessness of the preceding remark, or meets an anticipated objection.*

TOR. Sed ad hæc, nisi molestum est, habeo quæ velim. TUL. An  
me, nisi te audire vellem, censes hæc dicturum fuisse? 'Do  
you then think?' (C. Fin. 1. 8.)

Pultando pæne confregi hasce ambas foris. TR. Eho, an tu tetigisti  
has ædis? 'Have you then touched, &c.?' (Pl. Most. 456.)

Quid ais? an venit Pamphilus? PAR. Venit. (Ter. Hec. 346.)

Quando ista vis autem evanuit? An postquam homines minus creduli esse cœperunt? 'Was it not after, &c.?' (C. Div. 2. 57.)

Modo introivi cum tuo gnato una. SI. Anne est intus Pamphilus? (Ter. Andr. 851.)

[An is often used dependent on **nescio** or **haud scio**. These expressions generally in Cicero express a modest affirmation, &c. 'I almost think:' in post-Augustan writers express mere ignorance or doubt.

Est id quidem magnum, atque haud scio an maximum.

(C. Fam. 9. 15.)

Eloquentia quidem nescio an habuisset parem neminem.

(C. Brut. 33.)

Nescio an noris hominem: quamquam nosse debes. (Plin. Ep. 6. 21.)]

From alternative questions must be distinguished such questions as have several subordinate parts, which are different from, but not alternatives to, one another. These are connected by **aut**.

An tu mei similem putas esse aut tui deum? Profecto non putas.

Quid ergo? solem dicam aut lunam aut cælum deum?

(C. N. D. 1. 30.)

Adeon' me ignavom putas? adeon' porro ingratum aut inhumanum aut ferum, ut neque me consuetudo neque amor neque pudor commoveat neque commoneat ut servem fidem?

(Ter. And. 277.)

Num igitur me fefellit? aut num diutius sui potuit dissimilis esse?

(C. Phil. 2. 36.)

## V. PRONOUNS.

**Hic, iste, ille, is.**

The demonstrative pronouns are **hic**, **iste** or **istic**, **ille** or **illic**. They denote respectively, **hic**, that which is near the speaker in place, time, or thought: **iste**, that which is near the person addressed; **ille**, that which is not (comparatively) near either. **Is** has no definite demonstrative meaning, but always refers to some person or thing named in the context. If more emphasis is required, **hic** or **ille** is used. The adverbs (Vol. I. p. 459) derived from these pronouns are used with the same relative signification.

Eam, ego hodie faciam, ut hic senex de proximo sibi uxorem poscat: id ea faciam gratia, quo ille eam facilius ducat. (Pl. Aul. 31.)

Hoc neque istic usust, et illi miseræ suppetias feret, si id dederit, qui suos parentes quærat. (Pl. Rud. 1083.)

Gripe accede huc: tu, puella, istinc procul dicito quid insit.  
(Ib. 1178.)

Ego is sum, qui te produxi pater. (Ib. 1173.)

Nosti jam in hac materia sonitus nostros: tanti fuerunt, ut ego eo brevior sim, quod eos usque istinc exauditos putem.  
(C. Att. 1. 14.)

Suspensi Eurypylum scitantes oracula Phœbi mittimus, isque adytis hæc tristitia dicta reportat. (Verg. A. 2. 115.)

*In time and thought hic and ille are opposed, hic referring to that which is near, ille to that which is remote. Ille is also used of a well known or famous person or thing. Iste is specially used of an opponent in a lawsuit, and hence of something despised or disliked. Is, with conjunction et or ac prefixed, is used to give additional emphasis to a new predicate or description; ille (like other pronouns), with quidem appended, is used in making concessions (where in English we use no pronoun). See also § 1182.*

Hanc urbem hoc biennio consul evertes. (C. R. P. 6. 11.) 2260  
Atat hoc illud est, hinc illæ lacrymæ, hæc illast misericordia.  
(Ter. And. 98.)

Scitum est enim illud Catonis, ut multa, melius de quibusdam acerbos inimicos mereri, quam eos amicos, qui dulces videantur: illos verum sæpe dicere, hos nunquam. (C. Lael. 24.)

Gratia te flecti non magis potuisse demonstras, quam Herculem Xenophontium illum a voluptate. (C. Fam. 5. 12, § 3.)

Nemo istuc Marco illi Catoni seni, cum plurimos haberet inimicos, nemo huic ipsi nostro C. Mario, cum ei multi inviderent, objecit umquam. (C. Sull. 7.)

Audivimus hoc jam diu, judices, socios istius fuisse decumanos. Nihil aliud arbitror falso in istum esse dictum ab eis, qui male de isto existimarunt, nisi hoc. (C. Verr. 3. 20.)

Hic et ille, ille et ille, 'this or that.'

Habet homo memoriam et eam infinitam rerum innumerabilium. 2261  
(C. T. D. 1. 24.)

Uno atque eo facili prælio cæsi ad Antium hostes. (L. 4. 57.)

Doctum igitur hominem cognovi et studiis optimis deditum, idque a puero. (C. Fam. 13. 16.)

P. Scipio non multum ille quidem nec sæpe dicebat, sed Latine loquendo cuivis erat par. (C. Brut. 34.)

Sed Oratorias exercitationes non tu quidem, ut spero, reliquisti, sed certe philosophiam illis anteposuisti. (C. Fat. 2.)

**Se, suus, ipse.**

**Se** and **ipse** are both used where we in English use 'self,' but they are also found where we do not use it. Thus **se** often corresponds to 'him,' 'her,' 'them;' **ipse** to the adjective 'very,' or other expressions of emphasis. **Se** is of the third person only; **ipse** is simply an adjective of emphasis, and can be used of any person, but when in an oblique case by itself, (without **me, te, nos, vos**), it is of the third person. **Se, suus** are distinguished from other pronouns of the third person, by being used always either of the subject or of some word in the sentence. If 'him,' 'her,' &c. requires emphasis, when not relating to the subject (or otherwise where **se** is suitable), **ipsum** is used, either with or without **eum**.

**Suus**, the possessive of **se**, relates also to the subject of discourse. When it is an attribute of the grammatical subject, it can of course only relate to some other subject of discourse, very commonly to the direct or indirect object.

1. **Se, suus** are used primarily in reference to the grammatical subject of the sentence. If the subject itself requires emphasis, **ipse** is used.

Eas **se** non negat personas transtulisse in Eunuchum suam ex Græca.  
(Ter. Eun. 31.)

Sese **ipse** dicit tuam vidisse filiam; ejus sibi complacitam formam.  
(Ter. Haut. 772.)

Athenæ urbs est ea vetustate, ut ipsa ex sese suos civis genuisse dicatur. (C. Flac. 26.)

Ad ea Crispinus nec sibi nec illi ait hostes deesse, in quibus virtutem ostendant, conversusque abibat. Tum Campanus increpare mollitiam ignaviamque, et se digna probra in insontem jacere, hospitalem hostem appellans, simulantemque parcere, cui sciat parem se non esse. (L. 25. 18.)

Alii accipiunt imperia disceduntque ad suas quisque officiorum partes. Alexander, Perdicca interrogante quando cælestes honores haberi sibi vellet, dixit tum velle, cum ipsi felices essent. (Curt. 10. 5, § 6.)

Illi relictæ, in rabiem desperatione versa, parem suo exitum, similesque ipsis amicos et contubernales precabantur. (Curt. 9. 10, § 16.)

Neque sane, quid **ipse** sentiret, sed quid ab illis diceretur, ostendit.  
(C. Or. 2. 10.)

Perseus, et suo maxime tempore adque alieno hostibus, incipere bellum poterat. (L. 42. 43.)

Tiberius identidem felicem Priamum vocabat, quod superstes omnium suorum exstisset. (Suet. Tib. 62.)



*In speaking of actions by the subject upon himself, ipse is very common and agrees normally with the emphasized word. But it is predicated of the subject, not merely when (a) what is emphasized is the subject, and not others, acting, but also sometimes (b) when it is the subject acting on, or by, himself, and not on others.*

(a) Non egeo medicina: me ipse consolor. (C. Læl. 3.)

Ut quisque quidque conditum gustaverit, ipsus sibi faciam ut digitos prærodât suos. (Pl. Ps. 884.)

Claudius a populo condemnatus est, Junius necem sibi ipse conscivit. (C. N. D. 2. 3.)

Quo quidem auctore nos ipsi (*opposed to tu*) ea gessimus, ut omnibus potius quam ipsis nobis consuluerimus. (C. Fin. 2. 19.)

Sunt qui Tarpeiam dicant, fraude visam agere, sua ipsam peremptam mercede. (L. 1. 11.)

Pompeianus miles fratrem suum, dein cognito facinore se ipsum interfecit. (Tac. H. 3. 51.)

Calpurnius jussu Muciani custodia militari cinctus, ad quadagesimum ab urbe lapidem Appia via extinguitur: Priscus se ipse interfecit, pudore magis quam necessitate. (Tac. H. 4. 11.)

(b) Iste repente ex alacri atque læto sic erat humilis atque demissus, ut non modo populo Romano sed etiam sibi ipse condemnatus videretur. (C. Verr. Act. 1. 6.)

Nec vero id satis est, neminem esse qui ipse se oderit, sed illud quoque intelligendum est, neminem esse qui, quo modo se habeat, nihil sua censeat interesse. (C. Fin. 5. 10. *See the whole chapter: partly quoted in § 1558.*)

Quos delectari videmus, si quid ratione per se ipsi invenerint. (C. Fin. 3. 5.)

Bellum pacem fœdera societates per se ipse, cum quibus voluit, injussu populi ac senatus fecit diremitque. (L. 1. 49.)

2. *Se, suus, especially the latter, are also used in reference to some word in the sentence which is not the subject. This is rarely done where the context would create ambiguity.*

Is est servos ipse, neque præter se umquam ei servos fuit. (Pl. Capt. 580.)

Etiam feras inter sese partus atque educatio et natura ipsa conciliat. (C. Rosc. Am. 22.)

Jubet salvere suus vir uxorem suam. (Pl. Merc. 713.)

Nunc, si ille huc salvos revenit, reddam suum sibi (Pl. Trin. 156), *i. e. reddam ei suum sibi. Cf. § 1143.*

Placet ille meus mihi mendicus: suus rex reginæ placet.

(Pl. *Stich.* 133.)

Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt. (C. *Sest.* 68.)

Sua cujusque animantis natura est. (C. *Fin.* 5. 9.)

Suis flammis delete Fidenas. (L. 4. 33.)

Dicæarchum vero cum Aristoxeno æquali et condiscipulo suo, doctos sane homines, omittamus. (C. *T. D.* 1. 18.)

Desinant insidiari domi suæ consuli. (C. *Cat.* 1. 13.)

Hæc assuefaciebant militem minus jam tandem aut virtutis aut fortunæ pænitere suæ. (L. 22. 12.)

Id multos quidem patrum, ipsos possessores, periculo rerum suarum terrebat. (L. 2. 41.)

Insidias veriti, liberam facultatem sui recipiendi Bellovacis dederunt. (Hirt. *B. Gall.* 8. 16.)

Neque occasione tuæ desis, neque suam occasionem hosti des.

(L. 22. 39 fin.)

*But also* Pisonem nostrum merito ejus amo plurimum.

2266

(C. *Fam.* 14. 2.)

Deum agnoscis ex operibus ejus. (C. *T. D.* 1. 28.)

3. **Se, suus** are also used in reference to the subject of the sentence <sup>2267</sup> or clause, on which the subordinate clause containing **se, suus** depends. So regularly when the subordinate clause has a subjunctive of the classes<sup>1</sup> D, G, or H. (See § 1788 sqq.)

(a) Meus me oravit filius, ut tuam sororem poscerem uxorem sibi. (Pl. *Trin.* 459.)

Non enim illum expectare oportet, dum erus se suscitet ad suum officium. (Pl. *Rud.* 922.)

Tum ei dormienti idem ille visus est rogare, ut, quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur. (C. *Div.* 1. 27.)

Qui totos dies precabantur et immolabant, ut sibi sui liberi superstites essent, superstitiosi sunt appellati. (C. *N. D.* 2. 28.)

Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo præsentem conclamavit; quid ad se venirent? (Cæs. *G.* 1. 47.)

Scipionem Hannibal eo ipso, quod adversus se dux potissimum lectus esset, præstantem virum credebatur. (L. 21. 39.)

Domitius ad Pompeium in Apuliam peritos regionum mittit, qui petant atque orent, ut sibi subveniat. (Cæs. *C.* 1. 17.)

<sup>1</sup> In consecutive sentences **eum**, not **se**, is regularly used.

(b) Similarly of what is the logical, though not the grammatical, subject, of the principal sentence.

A Cæsare valde liberaliter invitò, sibi ut sim legatus. (C. *Att.* 2. 18.)  
Jam inde ab initio Faustulo spes fuerat, regiam stirpem apud se educari. (L. 1. 5.)

The rule is that the subject of the principal sentence is referred to *se* by *se* in the dependent sentence, if that dependent sentence have a subjunctive of the classes named above (§ 226-7). But

(a) *Se* is sometimes found, when the dependent sentence has the indicative:

In eis urbibus, quæ ad se defecerant, presidia imponit. (Sall. *J.* 41.)  
Nihil rectum, nisi quod placuit sibi, docuit. (Hor. *Ep.* 2. 1. 83.)

(b) Occasionally *eam, &c.* is found instead of *se*, though the dependent sentence has the subjunctive.

Helvetii persuadent Rauracis, uti, eodem uti consilio, oppidis suis (i.e. Rauracorum) vicisque exiis, una cum his (i.e. Helvetiis) proficiscantur. (Cæs. *G.* 1. 5.)

An, quod a sociis eorum non abstinerem, justam querelam habent? (L. 32. 34.)

Darius captus est Mithridatis dolo. Namque is pollicitus est regi, se eam interfectorum, si ei (i.e. Mithridati) rex permitteret; ut, quodcumque vellet, liceret facere. (Nep. 14. 10.)

4. *Ipsius, ipsi, &c.* are sometimes found for *sum ipsius, sibi, &c.*, and in post-Augustan writers for *single sum, sibi*.

Cæsar milites incusavit: cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? (Cæs. *G.* 1. 10.)

Socrates Xenophoni consulenti sequeretur Cyrus, postquam exposuit quæ lost videbantur...ad Apollinem, inquit, censeo referendum. (C. *Dio.* 1. 34.)

Intemperantiam in morbo sanum experti, parere ipsis in adversa valetudine vetant. (Sen. *Ir.* 3. 13.)

Itaque Græcis nuntium juber, ipsum quidem benivolentiæ illorum gratias agere. (Cic. *J.* 4. 7.)

5. *Se, sum* are also used in reference to the unexpressed subject of *sum* as adverbial infinitives or gerunds.

Honestius est alienis injuriis quam sua commoveri. (C. *Terr.* 3. 12.)

Ceterum et interrogandi se ipsam et respondendi sibi solent esse non ingratæ voces. (Quint. *p.* 1. 12.)

**Quis, quisplam, aliquis, quidam, nescio quis, alteruter, aliquot, nonnemo, &c.**

The pronouns, which correspond to the English 'a' or 'some,' are **quis, quisplam, aliquis, quidam**. Of these **quis** is the least emphatic and **quidam** the most. **Quis** and **quisplam** are best translated by 'a' (*man, thing, &c.*), 'one'; or in the plural by nothing; **aliquis** (*plur. aliqui*) by 'some one,' 'some one or other'; **quidam** means 'a certain person,' &c., **aliquot**, 'a few,' 'several,' **nescio quis**, 'some one or other' (§ 1769), and, of two persons, **alteruter**, 'one or other, no matter which.' More specific are the double negatives **nonnemo**, 'one or two,' **nonnullus** (*adj.*) 'some certainly,' 'some at least,' **nonnihil**, 'something at any rate.' *So est (sunt) qui*, §§ 1686, 1687.

**Quis** is usually in relative sentences, and after **cum, si, nisi, ne, num**; **aliquis** is not uncommon after **si**, and sometimes used after **ne**.

(a) *In affirmative sentences:*

*Dixerit quis. Dixerit fortasse quisplam. Dixerit hic aliquis.*  
(*Cf. § 1545 and Pref. p. ci. foll.*)

*An obsecro hercle habent quas gallinæ manus?* (*Pl. Ps. 29.*)

*Si mala condiderit in quem quis carmina, jus est iudiciumque.*  
(*Hor. S. 2. 1. 82.*)

*Quo enim quis versutior et callidior, hoc invisior et suspectior detracta opinione probitatis.* (*C. Off. 2. 9.*)

*Qui eorum cuiquam, qui una latrocinantur, furatur aliquid aut eripit, is sibi ne in latrocinio quidem relinquit locum.*  
(*C. Off. 2. 11.*)

*Si nulla est (nota), quid istos interpretes audiamus? Sin quæpiam est, aveo scire quæ sit.* (*C. Div. 2. 62.*)

*Communi consuetudine sermonis abutimur, cum ita dicimus velle aliquid quempiam aut nolle sine causa.* (*C. Fat. 11.*)

*Proximo bello si aliquid de summa gravitate Pompeius, multum de cupiditate Cæsar remisisset, et pacem stabilem et aliquam rempublicam nobis habere licuisset.* (*C. Phil. 13. 1.*)

*Commentabar declamitans sæpe cum M. Pisone et cum Q. Pompeio aut cum aliquo cotidie.* (*C. Brut. 90.*)

*Doleo feminam maximam eripi oculis civitatis, nescio an aliquid simile visuris.* (*Plin. Ep. 7. 19.*)

*Id in perpetuitate dicendi non sæpe atque haud scio an numquam, in aliqua autem parte elucet aliquando.* (*C. Or. 2.*)

Habitant hic quædam mulieres pauperculæ. (Ter. *Ad.* 647.) 2275  
His lacrimis non movetur Milo: est quodam incredibili robore animi. (C. *Mil.* 37.)  
Accurrit quidam, notus mihi nomine tantum. (Hor. *S.* 1. 9. 3.)  
Hoc quidem certe video, cum sit necesse alteram utram vincere, qualis futura sit vel hæc vel illa victoria. (C. *Fam.* 6. 3.)  
Ibo ad forum atque aliquot mihi amicos advocabo. (Ter. *Pb.* 3. 2.) 2276  
In hoc alterno pavore certamina aliquot sunt contracta. (L. 23. 26.)  
In urbe, in foro nonnemo etiam in illo sacrario reipublicæ, in ipsa, inquam, curia non nemo hostis est. (C. *Mar.* 39.)  
Dixit esse nonnullum se Cæsaris beneficio affectum, sed plus communi libertati tribuere. (Cæs. *G.* 7. 37.)  
Ideoque nonnulli, senes in schola facti, stupent novitate, cum in judicia venerunt. (Quint. 12. 6. 3.)

(b) *In negative sentences; also with sine, &c.*

Subito, unde minime quis crederet, accepta calamitas. (L. 5. 7.) 2277  
His idem propositum fuit, quod regibus, ut ne qua re egerent, ne cui parerent, libertate uterentur. (C. *Off.* 1. 20.)  
Vidi ego hoc, vidi, nisi recenti memoria senatus auctoritatem hujus indicii monumentis publicis testatus essem, fore, ut aliquando non Torquatus neque Torquati quispiam similis, sed ut aliquis patrimonii naufragus, inimicus otii, bonorum hostis, aliter indicata hæc esse diceret. (C. *Sull.* 14.)  
Expulsus est non alio aliquo, sed eo ipso crimine. (C. *Sext.* 24.)  
A respondendo se sustinet, ut neque neget aliquid neque ajat. (C. *Acad.* 2. 32.)  
Nemo vir magnus sine aliquo adflatu divino umquam fuit. (C. *N. D.* 2. 66.)

Quisquam, ullus, uter, quivis, quilibet, utervis.

The pronouns which correspond most with the English 'any' are quisquam (usually subst.), ullus (adj.), quivis, quilibet. Quisquam and ullus are 'any whatever,' 'any at all,' where all are excluded; and are used in negative or quasi-negative sentences (the negative being always prefixed), or after comparatives, or in relative and conditional sentences, where the barest minimum is sufficient to justify an affirmative. Quivis and quilibet (originally relative sentences, cf. § 995) signify 'any you please,' and imply that all will answer the required conditions. Hence they can be used in either positive or negative sentences.



*When only two persons or things are concerned, uter is (rarely) used corresponding to quisquam; utervis, uterlibet to quivis, quilibet.*

*For non quisquam, non ullus, non quidquam, non uter, &c. are generally used, at least in prose, nemo, nullus, nihil, neuter, &c. (For the use of the forms of quisquam, see § 382; of nemo, nullus, § 372; of nihil, nihilum, § 369.)*

Vivo fit, quod numquam quisquam mortuo faciet mihi.  
(Pl. *Amph.* 459.)

Numquam quicquam facinus feci pejus. (Pl. *Men.* 447.)

Nihil quicquam vidi lætius. (Ter. *Ad.* 366.)

Iste nihil umquam fecit sine aliquo quæstu atque præda.  
(C. *Verr.* 5. 5.)

Nego esse quicquam a testibus dictum, quod aut vestrum cuipiam esset obscurum, aut cujusquam oratoris eloquentiam quæreret.  
(C. *Verr.* 1. 10.)

Metellus edixit, ne quisquam in castris panem aut quem alium coctum cibum venderet. (Sall. *J.* 45.)

Nemo ullius nisi fugæ memor. (L. 2. 59.)

An me existimas ab ullo malle mea legi probarique, quam a te?  
Cur igitur cuiquam misi prius? (C. *Att.* 4. 5.)

Quasi vero quisquam vir excellenti animo in rempublicam ingressus optabilius quicquam arbitretur, quam se a suis civibus reipublicæ causa diligi. (C. *Vat.* 3.)

Quam diu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives.  
(C. *Cat.* 1. 2.)

Laberis, quod quicquam stabile aut jucundum in regno putas.  
(C. *Phil.* 8. 4.)

Quicquid bene dictum est ab ullo, meum est. (Sen. *Ep.* 16, § 7.)

Si qua me res isto adduxerit, enitar, si quo modo potero—potero autem—ut præter te nemo dolorem meum sentiat, si ullo modo poterit, ne tu quidem. (C. *Att.* 12. 23.)

Una horum quævis causa me ut faciam monet. (Ter. *Andr.* 904.)

Faciat quidlibet: sumat, consumat, perdat, decretumst pati.  
(Ter. *Haut.* 464.)

Non recito cuiquam nisi amicis, idque coactus, non ubivis, coramve quibuslibet. (Hor. *S.* 1. 4. 73.)

Cuivis potest accidere quod cuiquam potest.  
(Publ. ap. Sen. *Dial.* 9. 11.)

Ut enim histrioni actio, saltatori motus non quivis sed certus quidam est datus, sic vita agenda est certo genere quodam, non quolibet. (C. Fin. 3. 7.)

Quivis unus homo potest quamvis turpem de quolibet rumorem proferre. (Corn. 2. 8.)

Illa vero præclara est clausula edicti, quod omnium controversiarum, quæ essent inter aratorem et decumanum, si uter velit, edicit se recuperatores daturum. (C. Ferr. 3. 14.)

At minus habeo virium, quam vestrum utervis. (C. Sen. 10.)

Ea non dicere, si utrumlibet esset liberum, maluissemus.

(Quint. 11. 1. 60.)

Utriusque accepi ejusmodi litteras eodem tempore, quo tuas, ut neuter quemquam omnium pluris facere quam me videretur.

(C. Att. 7. 1. § 3.)

### Quisque, uterque: ambo, singuli, alterni, &c.

**Quisque**, 'each' (and sometimes, in *Lucretius* frequently **quisquis**) is used of each several case, where there are more than two: **uterque** (rarely **quisque**, except with **suus**) of each several case, where there are two only. In the plural **quisque** and **uterque** are properly used of 'each party,' or of 'each set of cases.'

When all are spoken of without implying any distinction between them, **omnes** or **nemo** non are used; **ambo** of two only. **Cunctus** (usually in plural), and **universus** are 'all together,' **totus** is 'the whole.' **Unus quisque**, 'every single person,' **singuli**, 'one apiece,' 'several,' **alterni**, 'every other.' (Cf. Vol. I. p. 445.)

**Quisque** is frequently accompanied by **se** or **suus**; and also frequently joined to a superlative or ordinal, which is always placed before **quisque**, e.g. **optimus quisque**, 'all the best people'; **decimus quisque**, 'every tenth'; 'one in ten'; **primus quisque**, 'one after the other'; also 'the very earliest'; **quotus quisque**, 'how few!' To **quisque** correspond generally (though not as distinguished from **omnes**) **ubique**, **usque**; to **uterque**, **utroque** or **utrinque**.

Certum ac dispositumst, ubi quicquit crescat et insit. (Lucr. 3. 787.)

Magni est judicis statuere, quid quemque cuique præstare oporteat.

(C. Off. 3. 17.)

Abduci non potest, quia uterque utrique est cordi. (Ter. Ph. 800.)

Horum pedum nullus non in orationem venit, sed quo quique sunt temporibus pleniores, hoc graviores faciunt orationem.

(Quint. 9. 4. 83.)

Pro se quisque, ut in quoque erat auctoritatis plurimum, ad populum loquebatur. (C. Verr. 1. 27.)

Duas civitates ex una factas: suos cuique parti magistratus; suas leges esse. (L. 2. 44.)

Scrobibus latitudo ternorum pedum in quamque partem satis est.

(Plin. 17, § 167.)

Magnam vim esse in fortuna in utramque partem, vel secundas ad res, vel adversas, quis ignorat? (C. Off. 2. 6.)

Quid ubique habeat frumenti et navium, ostendit.

(Cæs. C. 2. 20.)

Qui timet his adversa, fere miratur eodem, quo cupiens, pacto: pavor est utrobique molestus. (Hor. Ep. 1. 6. 10.)

Ut aliæ bonæ res, ita bonus liber melior est quisque, quo major.

(Plin. Ep. 1. 20, § 4.)

Alius excessisse materiem, alius dicitur non implese: æque uterque, sed ille imbecillitate, hic viribus peccat. (Ib. 221.)

Sed utros ejus habueris libros, duo enim sunt corpora, an utroque, nescio. (C. Q. F. 2. 11 [13].)

Est autem quidam interjectus inter hos medius, vicinus amborum, in neutro excellens. (C. Or. 6.)

Ex ceteris philosophis nonne optumus et gravissimus quisque confitetur multa se ignorare? (C. T. D. 3. 28.)

Multi mortales convenere, maxime proximi quique, Cæninenses, Crustumini, Antemnates. (L. 1. 9.)

In foro vix decumus quisquest, qui ipse sese noverit.

(Pl. Ps. 973.)

Primum quicquid aquai tollitur, in summaque fit ut nil umor abundet. (Lucr. 5. 264.)

Primum quidque videamus. (C. N. D. 3. 3.)

Forma dei munus. Forma quota quæque superbit?

(Ov. A. A. 3. 103.)

Disjunctio est, cum eorum, de quibus dicimus, aut utrumque aut unum quidque certo concluditur verbo. (Corn. 4. 27.)

Unum quicquid, quod quidem erat bellissimum, carpam.

(Ter. Ad. 591.)

Censeo, uti C. Pansa, A. Hirtius consules, alter ambove, si eis videbitur, de ejus honore præmiove primo quoque die ad senatum referant. (C. *Pbil.* 8 fin.)

In viduitate relictæ filiæ singulos filios parvos habentes. (L. 40. 4.)

Si jam campus martius dividatur, et uni cuique vestrum ubi consistat bini pedes adsignentur; tamen promiscue tota quam propria parva, frui parte malitis: qua re etiam, si ad vos esset singulos aliquod ex hoc agro perventurum, tamen honestius eum vos universi quam singuli possideretis. (C. *Agr.* 2. 31.)

Vix hostem, alterni si congregiamur, habemus. (Verg. *A.* 12. 233.)

Nuntiant dictatorem avidum pœnæ venire, alternis pæne verbis T. Manli factum laudantem. (L. 8. 30.)

Cuncta putas una virtute minora. (Hor. *Ep.* 1. 12. 11.)

Est autem, quod omnes et semper et ubique deceat, facere ac dicere honeste. (Quint. 11. 1. 14.)

*Quisque following suus is occasionally attracted into the case of suus: (suis quisque = 'each several,' 'its own proper').*

Postremo quodvis frumentum non tamen omne quique suo genere inter se simile esse videbis. (Lucr. 2. 371.)

Atque hæc aliorum ad alios morbos proclivitas late patet... Hæc igitur proclivitas ad suum quodque genus ægrotatio dicitur. (C. *T. D.* 4. 12.)

Tradunt armatum exercitum decucurrisse cum motibus armorum et corporum suæ cuique genti assuetis. (L. 25. 17.)

Ante omnia colonus curare debet, ut opera rustica suo quoque tempore faciat. (Gai. ap. *Dig.* 19. 2. 25, § 2.)

**Quisquis, quicumque, qualiscunque, utercunque, &c.; utique.**

*The indefinite relative pronouns are sometimes used absolutely, i.e. instead of 'whoever,' 'whichever,' they denote 'any one whatsoever,' 'some one or other,' 'any thing whatever.' So quisquis, quantusquantus, quicumque, qualiscunque, utercunque, &c.*

Ne stirpem domi relinquerent, liberos suos quibus quibus Romanis in eam condicionem, ut manumitterentur, mancipio dabant. (L. 41. 8.)

Quapropter, quoquo pacto, tacitost opus. (Ter. *Ad.* 342.)

De Drusi hortis quanti licuisse tu scribis, id ego quoque audieram, sed quantiquanti bene emitur, quod necesse est. (C. *Att.* 12. 23.)

Quæ sanari poterunt, quacumque ratione, sanabo. (C. Cat. 2. 5.)  
 Læti quamcumque condicionem paciscendi acceperunt. (L. 22. 58.)  
 Tu non concupisces quanticumque ad libertatem pervenire?  
 (Sen. Ep. 80. 44.)

Dixerunt, qualicumque urbis statu, manente disciplina militari, sisti potuisse. (L. 2. 44.)

Si enim libertatem sequimur, qui locus hoc dominatu vacat? sin qualemcumque locum, quæ est domestica sede jucundior?  
 (C. Fam. 4. 8.)

Hoc quaecumque discrimen raro admodum eveniet.  
 (Quint. 11. 1, § 14.)

Si numina divum sunt aliquid, si non perierunt omnia mecum, quandocumque mihi pœnas dabis. (Ov. M. 6. 544.)

Utrocumque modo sequetur summa confusio. (Quint. 3. 6, § 29.)

Nisi mercedem aut nummos unde unde extricat, amaras porrecto jugulo historias, captivus ut, audit. (Hor. S. 1. 3. 88.)

Bonam deperdere famam malumst ubicumque. (Hor. S. 1. 2. 62.)

*So quotquot annis, &c. (§ 1179); quoquo versus (§ 2175).*

(a) *Quisque*, which in early writers used sometimes as a relative = *quicumque*, (e.g. Pl. Mil. 160; so also *quandoque*<sup>1</sup>, Hor. A. P. 359) is even in Cicero, &c. with *modi*, *generis* &c. used as equivalent to *cujusvis*, e.g. *cujusquemodi voluptatis*, C. Fin. 2. 7; *materia cujusque generis*, Cæs. G. 512.

(b) *Similarly utique comes to mean 'anyhow,' 'at all events'; non utique, 'not of course,' 'not necessarily.'*

Velim M. Varronis et Ollii mittas laudationem, Ollii utique, nam illam legi, volo tamen regustare. (C. Att. 13. 48.)

Concurrunt ad eum legati tribunique, monentes ne utique experiri vellet imperium, cujus vis omnis in consensu obedientium esset.  
 (L. 2. 59.)

Sapienti propositum est in vita agenda non utique, quod temptat, efficere, sed omnino recte facere: gubernatori propositum est utique navem in portum perducere. (Sen. Ep. 85, § 31.)

Omnis generalis quæstio speciali potentior, quia universo pars continetur, non utique accedit parti quod universum est. (Quint. 12. 2, § 18.)

<sup>1</sup> *Also* = *aliquando*, e.g. *ne quandoque* (L. 21. 3. fin.); *quandoque* *funt trabes*, *quandoque clipei* (Sen. N. Q. 1. 1. fin.)



## Idem, alius, alter, ceteri.

*Idem* is 'same,' as opposed to *alius*; *alius* is 'other' generally, *alter* 'other of two' or 'the second' of many, *ceteri* is 'the others.' *Reliquus* is 'remaining,' i.e. after something has been subtracted. *Optus* is indistinguishable from *ceteri*.

When *alius* or *alter* is repeated in different clauses, the first is in English often to be translated 'me,' the second *alius* is 'another,' *alter*, 'the other.' In *Liby.* 3-4, *alius* is sometimes used where *ceteri* would be more strictly right. When repeated in the same sentence, *alius* is often to be translated by 'different'; e.g. *alius alium videt* (*videns*), 'Different men see different things,' or 'one sees one thing, another another'; sometimes *alius alium* (after *alterum*) *vident* is 'they see one another.' *Unus et alter* is 'one or two.' (For *idem* see *alius* ac see § 1381; *alius* quam § 1267; *alius* with *ablativus* § 1268.)

Multæ idem istæc aliæ cupiunt. (Pl. *Mei* 1040.)

1040

Equidem certo idem sum qui semper fui. (Pl. *Amph.* 417.)

Alium esse censes nunc me atque olim, cum dābam?

(Ter. *Andr.* 545.)

At primum quot hominum linguz, tot nomina deorum: non enim ut tu Velleius, quocunque veneris, sic idem in Italia Volcanus, idem in Africa, idem in Hispania. (C. N. D. 1. 30.)

Tu autem eodem modo omnis censis ages? aut in eisdem causis perpetuum et eundem spiritum sine ulla commutatione obtinebis? (C. Or. 31.)

Eisdem multis ex illis causis aliquando a se acta, multis ab aliis audita meminerant. (C. Or. 3-4.)

Alias bestias nantis aquarum incolas esse voluit, aliis volucres cælo frui libero, serpentis quasdam quasdam esse gradientis: earum ipsarum partim solvagus, partim congregatis, immanis alias, quasdam autem cicures, nocturnis abditis terræque tectis.

(C. T. D. 5. 13.)

Cum de intercessione referretur, primaque M. Marcelli sententia pronuntiata esset, frequens senatus in alia omnia ut.

(Czł. ap. C. *Fam.* 8. 13.)

Fimbria iis ferebat, ut mirare tam aliis res agere populum, ut esset insano inter desertos locos. (C. *Bru.* 66.)

Non alia ante Romana pugna atrocior fuit. (L. 1. 17.)

Volcanus, Luna, Sol, Dies, dei quatuor, scoliasticorum nullum intulere alterum. (Pl. *Bur.* 134.)

Illi alias aliud eisdem de rebus et sentiunt et judicant. (C. Or. 2. 7.) 2293

Itidem, ut tempus anni, ætatem aliam aliud factum concedet.  
(Pl. Merc. 984.)

Aliud est maledicere, aliud accusare. (C. Cæl. 3.)

Contraria autem ea dico, cum alterum aiat, alterum negat.  
(C. Acad. 30.)

Alius alium percontamur: quojā navis? quid vehit? (Pl. Stich. 370.)

Alterum alteraprehendit eos manu perneciter. (Pl. Amph. 1116.)

Alteri apud alteros formidinem facere. Pro metu repente gaudium  
mutatur: milites alius alium læti appellant. (Sall. J. 53.)

Amicus est tanquam alter idem. (Ib. 21.) 2294

Numero centuriarum Tarquinius alterum tantum adjecit.  
(L. 1. 36.)

Exitus quidem omnium unus et idem fuit. (C. Div. 2. 47.)

Unus et alter adsuitur pannus. (Hor. A. P. 15.)

Ut rem gestam tanto opere laudarem, adductus sum tuis unis et  
alteris litteris. (C. Att. 14. 18.)

Altero vicesimo die litteras reddidit. (C. Fam. 12. 25.)

Ille cohortis veteranas in fronte, post eas ceterum exercitum in  
subsidiis locat. (Sall. J. 59.) 2295

O spectaculum uni Crasso jucundum, ceteris non item!  
(C. Att. 2. 21.)

Quod sparti satis in usum fuit, sublato, ceterum omne incensum est.  
(L. 22. 20.)

Sine manibus trunca esset actio ac debilis: nam ceteræ partes  
loquentem adjuvant, hæ, prope est ut dicam, ipsæ locuntur.  
(Quint. 11. 3, 85.)

Scriptum est 'si mihi filius genitur isque prius moritur' et cetera,  
'tum mihi ille sit heres.' (C. Or. 2. 32.)

Et ipse sentit et reliqui omnes, me ab illo abalienatum.  
(C. Att. 16. 15.)

Alterum periodi genus constat membris et incis: 'aderat janitor  
carceris, carnifex prætoris,' reliqua. (Quint. 9. 4, § 124, re-  
ferring to C. Verr. 5. 45.)

Iter exquisivit per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem  
habebat. (Cæs. G. 1. 41.)

Refugientes pauci aliam omnem multitudinem in potestate hostium  
esse afferebant. (L. 24. 1.)

Quis? quisnam? ecquis? equisnam? numquis?

Of the interrogative pronouns *quis* and (usually) *quisnam* 2296  
(sometimes *namquis*) denote 'who?' 'which (of many)?' *uter*,  
'whether of two'; *ecquis*, *numquis*, and sometimes *siquisnam*,  
*num quisnam* inquire whether 'any' one or thing of the kind exists.  
In all these *quis*, *quid* are substantive, *qui*, *quod* adjective.  
(§ 381.)

TH. Quis fuit igitur? PY. Iste Chærea. TH. Qui Chærea?  
PY. Iste ephēbus frater Phædriæ. (Ter. Eun. 823.)

Canephoræ ipsæ vocabantur; sed earum artificem, quem? quem-  
nam? recte admones. Polycletum esse dicebant.  
(C. Verr. 4. 3.)

In sese redit, atque hominis tandem ore locutus? Nam quis te,  
juvenum confidentissime, nostras jussit adire domos?  
(Verg. G. 4. 445.)

Qui me Thebis alter vivit miserior? (P. Amph. 1046.)

Ecquis in ædibus? Heus ecquis hic est? ecquis hoc aperit ostium?  
ecquis exit? (Pl. Bac. 582.)

Ecquidnam meminit Mnesilochi? (Pl. Bac. 206.)

Numquidnam ad filium hæc ægritudo attinet? (Pl. Bac. 1110.)

Nihil jam querere aliud debetis, nisi uter utri insidias fecerit.  
(C. Mil. 9.)

## Miscellaneous Remarks on Pronouns.

1. The second person plural is not used in Latin (as in English) 2297  
for the singular. e. g. Quid ais? 'What say you?'

The first person plural is sometimes so used, as in English. 2298

Tu, quæso, festina ad nos venire. (C. Art. 3. 36.)

Reliquum est ut de felicitate (Pompeii) timide ac pauca dicamus.  
Ego enim sic existimo. (C. Man. 16.)

Mirum me desiderium tenet urbis, incredibile meorum atque in primis tui, satietas autem provinciæ, vel quia videmur eam famam consecuti ut, &c., vel quia totum negotium non est dignum viribus nostris, qui majora onera in republica sustinere et possim et soleam, &c. (C. Fam. 2. 11.)

2. On the usual omission of any separate personal pronoun, when it would be the subject, see § 1425 sq.

It is also, if no ambiguity is likely to arise, often omitted, when it would be in the accusative or dative.

Fratrem tuum in ceteris rebus laudo: in hac una reprehendere cogor.

Non obsistam fratris tui voluntati, quoad honestas patietur; favere non potero.

Libri, de quibus scribis, mei non sunt: sumpsi a fratre meo.

So always vidi eum rogavique; never vidi eum et rogavi eum. 2300  
Meos Cæsarisque libros reliqui, 'I left my own books and those of Cæsar'; (never eosque Cæsaris.)

The possessive pronoun is similarly omitted. 2301

Roga parentes (sc. tuos).

Patris (sc. mei) animum mihi reconciliasti.

3. The possessive pronouns are sometimes used in the sense of 'favourable to me, you,' &c. (For suus, cf. 1142, 1143, 2288.) 2302

Vadimus inmixti Danaïs, non numine nostro. (Verg. A. 2. 396.)

Loco æquo, tempore tuo pugnasti. (L. 38. 45.)

Alfenus utebatur populo sane suo. (C. Quint. 7.)

Ignoranti, quem portum petat, nullus suus ventus est.

(Sen. Ep. 71, § 3.)

Another application of the notion of 'one's own' is seen in the jurists' phrases, suus heres, sui heredes, 'a man's proper heir (heirs).' 2303

Suos heredes accipere debemus filios filias sive naturales sive adoptivos. (Ulp. Dig. 38. 16. 1, § 2.)

4. The indefinite pronoun 'one' is variously expressed in Latin: but these different modes are not all equally applicable in all circumstances. 2304

(a) By a personal passive: e.g. Rex hic valde diligitur; 'One feels strongly attached to the king.'

(b) By an impersonal expression: e.g. Non licet, 'one may not'; solet dici, 'one often says'; parendum est, 'one must obey.'

(c) By the first person plural: e.g. Quæ volumus, credimus libenter, 'What one wishes, one readily believes.'

(d) *By the second person singular subjunctive*: e.g. putares 'one would have finished.' (§ 134.)

(e) *By quis or aliquis*: e.g. docuit quis, 'should one say.' &c.

(f) *By is with a relative*, e.g. is qui hoc dicit, 'one who says this,' &c.

(g) *By se after, or with, a general infinitive* (§ 135): e.g.

Negligere quid de se quisque sentiat ('what people think of me'), non solum arrogantis est sed etiam omnino dissoluti. (C. Off. 1. 24.)

Melius est ire se ipsum, 'It is better (one does better) to go oneself.'

(h) See also § 136.

Frequently this indefinite pronoun is omitted altogether in Latin: e.g. Libros quæris: bonum affero. 'You seek books: I bring you a good one.'

Se after 'any,' 'each,' 'none,' 'certain,' e.g. quisquam, quæris, 'any one'; quisque, 'each one'; aliquis, 'some one'; quidam, 'a certain one'; or (simply) 'one.'

3. 'Eius alicui,' 'one another,' &c. are expressed in Latin by. 346

(a) alius alium (alter alteram) intueri, 'They began to look at one another.' (Cf. § 134.)

(b) Inter se, inter nos, &c.

Veri amici non solum colunt inter se ac diligunt, sed etiam verebuntur. (C. Lat. 12.) 'Not only look after one here, but also respect one another.'

Quam sancta est societas civium inter ipsos. (C. Leg. 2. 7.)

(c) Simulatus by repetition of the same.

Manus manum lavat. (Similarly, his virtutes impiorum corrumpunt: Vir virum legit. Dies diem docet.)

(Atticus motus) non ex vita, sed ex domo in domum migrare videbatur. (Nep. 27. 11.)

Tantæ fuerunt tenebræ, ut per biduum nemo hominem homo agnosceret. (C. N. D. 2. 31.)

(d) In lines written by invicem ('in turn').

Quæ omnia hoc spectant, ut invicem ardentius diligamus. (Plin. Ep. 7. 20.)

Hæc invicem obstat, et utroque utentibus in neutro haberi fidem putant. (Quint. 4. 3. § 13.)

(e) Simulatus by ultro citra.

Societas inter populum Carthaginiensem regemque data ultro citroque fide affirmatur. (L. 19. 13.)





## Index (to Part II).

See Preface, sub fin.

The numbers denote sections, unless *p* (for page) is prefixed. An asterisk is added to the number of a section, when the section does not professedly relate to the usage in question, but contains an instance of it.

Verbs are sometimes entered in the 1st pers. sing. ind., sometimes in the infinitive. A typical verb (e.g. "dare, facere," &c.) is occasionally named instead of the verb actually occurring.

**A in exclamations** 1532*d*\*.

**A, ab, abs, general use of** 1806—1814; *with gerunds* 1392; *in composition with verbs* 1815, 1816;

*of the agent after passive verbs* 1221, 1812; *after gerundive* 1147, *Pref. p.* lxxiv; *of ancestors* 1265; *of the cause* 1209, 1211, 1811; *in place of abl. of instrum.* 1213; *'on the side of'* 1209, 1813; *with names of towns* 1259; *of places, in Livy* 1257; *with compounds of dis-* 1263:

*a propinquis bene audire* 1812 fin.; *ab herede legare* 1810; *a milibus passuum duobus* 1087, 1206; *a moribus probare* 1813; *servus a rationibus* 1814; *a me stare* 1813; *ab aliquo timere* 1810; *a Tiberi 'on the Tiber side'* 2044\*; *a tergo* 1813, 2105\*.

**Abdicare, with abl.** 1212; *acc.* 1211; fin.

**Abdere aliquid sinu** 1687\*; *ensem lateri* 2163\*.

**Abesse sex milia** 1086, 1690\*; *sex milibus* 1206.

**Abest (tantum) ut** 1699; *with double ut* 1700, 1702, 1581\*, 1894\*; *paulum abest quin* 1702, 1070\*, 1574\*.

**Abhinc, with acc.** 1092; *with abl.* 1091.

**Abire magistratu** 1701\*, 1720\*.

**Ablative, general use of** 1077 foll.; 1164 *with note*; *Pref. p.* lvi; *distinguished from adverbial accus.* 1109; *of gerund how used* 1384 foll., 1391 foll.; *of verbal stems in -tu (supine)* 1387 foll., 1393; *absolute* 1240 foll.; *cognate* 1299, 1725\*:

*. expressing agent (with ab)* 1147; *amount* 1196 foll.; *amount of difference* 1204; *cause* 1230; *circumstances* 1240 foll.; *comparison, standard of* 1266; *cost* 1198; *crime* 1229, 1323; *date of letters* 1260, 1261, 1490\*; *deprivation* 1212, 1335; *description* 1232, 1309; *instrument* 1214 foll., *cf.* 1236; *instrument in appos. to per omnia* 1213; *manner* 1234 foll.; *means* 1214, 1174; *measure* 1204, 1206, 1085; *origin* 1264; *part concerned* 1210; *penalty* 1199, 1200; *place at which* 1170, 1172; *place from which* 1258 foll.; *price* 1196; *road by which* 1176; *separation* 1262; *size* 1085; *space over which (with totus)* 1083; *thing over which movement takes place* 1083; *time when* 1180; *time in course of which* 1182; *time throughout which* 1089, 1184; *tribe* 1264;

*after* abdicare se, 1212; abdere 1687\*; abire 1701\*, 1720\*; absistere 1391, 1674; absolvere 1593\*; abundare 1212; accipere 1720\*; adductus 1222; æque 1272; æquom 1201; afficere 1214; alienus 1263; alius 1268; ante 1204; arcessi 1197; ardere 1667\*; arcere 1263; assuefactus 1216; bene esse 1533c\*; cadere 1260, 1262; canere 1218; captus 1210; carere 1212; carus 1197; cavere 1218; censeri 1229; circumdare 1120b; circumducere 1212; comitatus 1220; constare, 'cost,' 1198; 'consist of' 1216; contentus 1216; contineri 1174, 1217; cumulare 1216; damnari 1200; decorus 1201; deducere 1479\*; delibutus 1216; demptus 1544; desistere 1696\*; dignus 1202; discere 1218; describere 1218; distare 1204; docere 1217; donare 1214; egere 1335; emoriri 1359\*; erudire 1222; expers 1303; extorris 1211; exuere 1211; facere 1224; fidere 1229; florere 1212; frequens 1170\*; fretus 1216; frui 1226; fungi 1226; gestare 1174; haustus 1692\*; jacere 1220; jejunos 1335; implere 1216; indigere 1335; indignus 1201; interdicere 1212; interesse 1285; interitus 1228; invidere 1331; junctus 1216, cf. 1228; laudare 1228; liber 1263; liberare 1593\*; ludere 1218; macte 1228; manare 1212; mergi 1174; miscere 1216; multare 1200; mutare 1198; natus 1264; niti 1226; nudari 1650\*; nudus 1212; oberare 1421\*; occultare 1733\*; opus 1226, 1250, 1256, 1255; ortus 1264; pauperare 1676\*; pellere 1262; perire 1440 fin.\*; plenus 1339; pluire 1212; post 1204; potiri 1226; privare 1335, 1468\*; prohibere 1262; procumbere 'be thrown down' 1491\*; quater 2239b\*; rasilis 2244\*; referre 1285; remotus 1335; replere 1335; sacrificare 1224; satus 1264; secretus 1335; sedere 1170, 1173; semotus 1262;

seorsum 2110; spoliatus 1335; stare 'stand to' 1172; 'stand one in' 1198; sterilus 1335; subtrahere 2233\*; summovere 2133\*; supersedere 1212; surgere 1808\*; triumphare 1535d\*; vacare 1262; vendere 1196; vesci 1226; vivere 1214; usus 1226, 1250, 1256, 1255; uti 1226.

Absente nobis 1249.

Absistere aliqua re 1391.

Absolvere, *with gen. of 'charge'* 1324; peccato 1593\*.

Absolutioni esse, *Pref. p. xxxvii.*

Absque 1817; absque te esset, &c. 1556, 2214\*.

Abstinerere, *with gen.* 1338; *with abl.* 1341, 1263\*; se abstinere, *with abl.* 1262, cf. 1163; abstinere ab 2237\*, 2268\*.

Abundare *with abl.* 1212; abundare, *with gen.* 1211.

Abunde salis 'abundance of wit' 1296.

Abusque 2190.

Abuti, *with acc.* 1223.

Ac 2195; *in comparisons* 1581; *in affirmative clause, following a negative* 2200; *in answers* 2197, 2007\*; *in apodosis to clause with ut* 2199:

æque ac 1275, 1777\*; alius ac 1581; contra ac 1679\*; idem ac 1143; juxta ac si 2014\*; ac non 2235, 2237; plus ac 1553\*; proinde ac 1581; proinde ac si 1580; non secus ac 1583.

Accedit quod 1701; ut 1700; accedere ad rempublicam, 'take part in politics' 1535c\*.

Acceptum retulit alicui, 'acknowledged receipt from' 1134; accepti et expensi codex 1565\*.

Accessionis 1306; accessio crescendi 1394b.

Accidit quod 1701; ut 1700, 1884\*.

Accipere, *with gerundive* 1401; mancipio 1243; in duas sententias, 1973; verberibus, 'treat to blows' 1720\*.

Accompanying circumstances, *ablative of*, 1240.

Accusare tuam superbiam, 'charge

*you with pride* 1746<sup>\*</sup>; cf. 1323c<sup>\*</sup>; te superbiae 1324.

*Accusative, general use of*, 1084 *with note*; *of gerund how used* 1377, 1397; *of gerundive, special use* 1401; *of verbal stem in -tu (supine in -um)* 1114, 1379 *follow.*; *of participles without esse* 1347:

*with infin.* 1351 *follow.*, 1356—1358; *as oblique pred. of unexpressed subject of infin.* 1357, 1726<sup>\*</sup>: *adverbial acc. distinguished from abl.* 1109; *cognate* 1100; *double* 1106 a, 1122, cf. 1094; *in exclamations* 1128, 1532 d, 1660<sup>\*</sup>; *factive* 1059, &c.:

*expressing action as the goal of motion* 1114, 1379 *follow.*; *compass* 1086 *follow.*; *description* 1104; *distance* 1086; *extent of action* 1094 *follow.*; *measure* 1086; *direct object of transitive verb* 1120; *double object* 1122; *object of passive verbs* 1124, 1126; *of verbs originally intransitive* 1121, 1123; *of verbal substantives (e. g. notio, receptio)* 1400; *of supine* 1379; *part concerned* 1102; *penalty* 1199; *place towards which* 1108; *space over which* 1086; *time throughout which* 1090; totum annum 1603<sup>\*</sup>; aliquos viginti dies 1605<sup>\*</sup>:

*after abdicare* 1211; abesse 1086, 1672<sup>\*</sup>; abhinc 1092; abeti 1223; adigere 1118; altus 1086, 1311; animadvertere 1118; anteire 1121, 1647<sup>\*</sup>; auctor 1094; -bundo, stems in 1405; cavere 1120; censeri 1127; coire 1121; condonare 1125; convenire 1120 b; currere 1123; defendere 2241<sup>\*</sup>; deffere 1657<sup>\*</sup>; dignus 1301; frui, fungi 1223; indotus 1127; inluxit 2292<sup>\*</sup>; innatare 2244<sup>\*</sup>; interesse 1129; invadere 1120 b, 1437<sup>\*</sup>; invidere 1331; -ion, stems in 1400; latus 1086, 1305; ludere 1217; meminisse 1333; natus 1090; oblivisci 1333; occumbere 1120 b; offendere 1960<sup>\*</sup>; opus (nihil, &c.) 1094, 1255; permittere 1139; perosus 1120 a; plinere 1211; posse 1094; potiri 1223; praeire 1082<sup>\*</sup>;

praestare 1121; praeverti 1121; precari 1125; prope 2087 *follow.*; propius, proxime 1106 c, 2175<sup>\*</sup>; recordari 1333; referre 1189; ridere 1097, 1123; sapere 1123; sancius 1101; sinere 1139; sonare 1096, 1123; stupere 1123; subire 1572<sup>\*</sup>; traicere 1106 b; vasci 1123; vincere 'win' 1100; uti 1223.

*See also list of compound verbs in 1121.*

Acerbitati esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.

Acervus framenti 1304.

Acie 1239.

Acta 'journals' 1101 *fin.*

Actio depositi, &c. 1232.

*Action as object to a verb* 1344 *follow.*; *as goal of motion* 1114; *used as general term for what a verb denotes, p.* 220 *note*; *without adverb expressed* 1431.

Actutum 'immediately' 1434<sup>\*</sup>.

*Ad general use* 1818 *follow.*; *sometimes put after nouns* 1038, 1805; *in composition with verbs* 1829 *follow.*; *often repeated after compound verbs* 1145; *with gerund* 1377; *also forming a substitute for supine* 1115; *also for genuine gerund* 1313; *with numerals, 'up to the number of,'* 1822, 1823; *with names of towns* 1111; *of part concerned, &c.* 1209, 1826, 1827; *of (place of) penalty* 1199:

*ad hoc, 'besides'* 2212<sup>\*</sup>; *ad id respondere* 1827; *ad litteras rescribere* 1468<sup>\*</sup>; *ad me 'to my house'* 1818, 2007<sup>\*</sup>; *ad me refert or interest* 1287; nihil ad me 1441 *fin.*. 1827; *ad mercatum, ad pastum* 1381; *ad pocula* 1441<sup>\*</sup>; *ad postremum 'at last'* 1824; *ad remum servi* 1828; *ad verbum ediscere 'learn word for word'* 1403; *ad vinum 'over the wine'* 1820; *ad unum omnes* 1829; *ad usque* 1819, 2190.

Addere eodem 1113.

Adeo 1657; atque adeo 1533 a a<sup>\*</sup>; usque adeo 2189, 2192.

Adequitate alicui 1144; ad aliquem 1145.

- Adesse scribendo '*he present at enrolment*' 1264 fin.\*
- Adhibere aliquid alicui 1345\*.
- Adhortor te liberes 1894\*.
- Adicere quod 1427.
- Adigere aliquem arbitrum jusjurandum 1118; ad jusjurandum 1117; jurejurando 1119; sacramento 1245, 1492\*; followed by *orat. obl.* 1752; adigo aliquem facere 1110\*, 1932\*.
- Adjective, definition of 1004, 1015 b; 1060; general use 1061—1069; as attribute or predicate to *abl. of place* 1170; of time 1180; of description, manner, circumstances, 1230; to accusative of extent 1086; to genitive of quality 1308; position of, in sentence 1041:
- instead of adverb 1017 c, 1069; of possessive genitive 1277; of partitive genitive 1295; of objective genitive 1315:
- used with dependent genitive, viz. possessive 1280; partitive 1092, 1290—1300; objective 1314, 1318; of '*respect*' 1320; of matter charged 1326; of things lacking, &c. 1336; with dependent dative 1131, 1142; with dependent ablative, viz. of thing in point of which 1210, 1212, 1339; of thing lacking 1263, 1339; with animi 1321; with supine in -u 1210, 1388; with dependent infinitive 1361:
- not generally used with predicative *dat.* 1158, *Pref. p.* xxix; not used to qualify gerunds 1374:
- as substantive 1060, 1063; in genitive *masc.* 1283; in genitive *neuter* 1299; *neuter accus.* used as adverb 1095, 1097; *neuter locative* so used 1251; with prepositions 1061; especially with *ex* 1941; with *in* 1976.
- Adimere 1832; aliquid alicui 1604\*.
- Adire hereditatem 1716\*.
- Adjumento esse *Pref. p.* xxxvii.
- Admirationi esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.
- Admodum, with *adj.* '*very*' 1978\*, 2019\*; raro 2289\*; with verb 1562\*.
- Admonere, with *gen.* 1332.
- Adque *i.e.* atque 2263\*.
- Adspergere aliquid alicui 1647\*.
- Adventu alicujus 1180.
- Adverb, definition of 1005; use of 1018—1020; position of, in sentence 1039; prepositional adverbs 1800 foll.:
- pronominal, denoting place *whither* 1113; *where* 1153, 1171; *whence* 1263; compounded with prepositions 1802; in comparative sentences 1635—1645, 1271; used when antecedent is in locative 1165:
- used with *accus.* (*propius*, *proxime*) 1106 c; with *dative* 1142; with *partitive genitive* 1294, 1296; with *abl. of standard of comparison* 1270:
- used quasi-substantivally, viz. *abunde*, *adfatum* 1296; *partim* 1294, 1429; *compare pondo* 1209:
- adjectivally, viz. *circa* 1020 b, 1860; *contra* 1895; *palam* 2027; *semper* (*lenitas*) 1754\*.
- Adversaria (*pl.*) '*day-book*' 1565\*.
- Adversative conjunctions 2208—2215; omitted 1027 b.
- Adversum, adversus (*adv.*) general use 1836—1842; *ea* '*against this*' 1603\*, *cf.* 1842; '*in reply to this*' 1840.
- Adversus his 2285\*; *adversa basis* '*the front of base*' 1295.
- Adusque 1819, 2190.
- Ægre, '*hardly*' 1017 f\*, 2132\*.
- Æmulus, with *gen.* 2181\*.
- Æquare aliquem alicui 1622\*.
- Æque, with *abl.* 1272; *ac*, with *indic.* 1275, 1777\*; *ac si*, with *subj.* 1580; *et*, with *nouns* 1566\*.
- Æqui boni facere 1191: *æquo animo* 1237, 1607\*; *æquo gravius* 1270; in *æquo* 1976.
- Æquius erat, '*it were fairer*' 1535c.
- Ære in nieo esse 1687\*.
- Æstimare quanti 1186; *unius assis* 1186; *magno* 1197; *cladibus*, '*by means of disasters*', &c. 1218.
- Æstivo 1181.
- Æstu magno 1242.



Ætatem, '*for his life*' 1090; hoc ætatis 1091; istuc, id ætatis 1092.  
 Æternum 1095.  
 Af 1807, 1812.  
 Afferre alicui *and* ad aliquem 1141.  
 Affis alicuique leto 1588\*.  
 Affinis alicujus 1280; alicui 1281.  
 Age, agite 1553\*, 1603, 1723\*; agendum, agitodum, 1082, 1603.  
 Agere furti 1324; ex empto, ex testamento 1941; primas 1063.  
 Aggredior, *with inf.* 1344.  
 Agmine 1239; longo 1670\*; quadrato 1234; uno 1672\*.  
 Agon? '*shall I strike?*' 1461.  
 Aio, *with infin. object-sentence*, 1698\*, 1745\*; *opposed to* nego 1422\*, 1553\*, 2277\*, 2293\*; ain' tu 1730\*.  
 Alea ludere 1218; aleam ludere 1217.  
 Alias 1885\*, 2239\*, 2293.  
 Alicubi hic, '*somewhere here*' 1535c\*.  
 Alicunde procul '*somewhere far off*' 2080\*.  
 Alienus, *with abl.* 1262.  
 Alimento esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.  
 Alioqui 1534\* (*p.* 226); 1995\*.  
 Aliquando, '*sometime or other*' 1430\*, 1515\*, 1689\*, 1766\*, 2274; tandem aliquando, 1476.  
 Aliquanto æquius 1204; ante 1671\*.  
 Aliquis, *use of* 2271—2277; si numina sunt aliquid 2289\*; aliquid pulchri or pulchrum 1299; dicet, dixerit aliquis 1545; dicat aliquis 1542, *Pref. p.* ci; aliquos viginti dies 1605\*.  
 Aliquo, '*somewhither*' 1690\*, 1571\*.  
 Aliquot 2271, 2276, 1607\*.  
 Aliter ac (*ind.*) 1581.  
 Alius, *with abl.* 1268; *general use of* 2291, 2292; alius alium 1440, 2293; alio die 1180; alii modi 1311; alius omnis, '*all the rest*' 2291, 2295, 2162\*; in alia omnia ire 2292; alias res agere, '*to be inattentive*' 2292\*; alius ac 1581; præter hunc 1302\*; nihil aliud (*sc. fecerunt*) quam 1441; quam ut 1094.  
 Allevatur animum 1127.  
 Alter, *use of* 2291 *fol.*; alter alterum, '*one another*' 1254\*, 2293; alter idem, '*a second self*' 2294; alterum

tantum, '*as much again*' 2294; unus et alter 2294; alteræ (*dat.*) 1968\*.  
 Alterni 2283, 2287; alternis 1237.  
 Alteruter, *use of* 2271, 2275, 1664 *fin.*\*  
 Altrinsecus 2117.  
 Altus ducenos pedes 1311, 1086; ducenum pedum 1308; ducenis pedibus 1085.  
 Amabo, '*prythee*' 1605, 1614\*, 1664\*, 1755\*, 2080\*.  
 Amans, '*a lover*' 1075; amantia verba 1554\*.  
 Amb- 1843.  
 Ambigitur (non) quin 1572\*.  
 Ambiguus, *with gen.* 1318, 1320.  
 Ambo 2287.  
 Amfractus 1843.  
 Amicire 1843.  
 Amictui 1161, *Pref. pp.* xxxiii, xxxvii.  
 Amiculo esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.  
 Amicus, amicissimus, *with dat.* 1142, 1228\*; *with gen.* 1280 (*p.* 118).  
 Amor, *with infin.* 1346.  
 Amori esse, *Pref. p.* xxxvii.  
 Amplector 1419.  
 Amplius, *with abl.* 1273, 1991\*; *without affecting case* 1273, 1557\*, 1692\*; '*any more*' of time 1105\*.  
 An, *in direct questions* 2250, 2254; *in apparently simple (direct) questions* 2255; *in dependent questions* 1764, 1977\*; haud scio, nescio, an 1764, 2256, 2274\*; an non 2254. *See also* Forsitan.  
 An- (*adv.*) 1844.  
 Anaphora 1052.  
 Angere animi or animo 1321.  
 Animadvertere in aliquem 1745\*; fugam fieri 2174\*.  
 Animum advertere aliquid 1118; ne quid oriretur 1606\*; intendere ad aliquid 1151 *fin.*\*; inducere istuc animum 1602\*; inducere animum, uxorem habere 1771\*, peccatum esse 1812; concedere in animum inducere 1344; habere in animo dare, &c. 2020\*.  
 Animi angere, pendere, fallere, &c. 1168, 1169, 1321; animi causa, '*for amusement*' 1280\*; ex animi sententia 1940, 1695\*.

- Animo angere 1321; tenus 2164\*;  
eo animo esse 2237\*.
- Anne 2254, 2255.
- Anno vertente, '*in the course of a year*'  
1182; his annis, '*(within) all these years*' 1777\*; tot annos esse 1610  
(p. 264)\*; totum annum esse, '*all the year through*' 1603\*;  
annorum novem, '*when nine years old*' 1310; minor annos xxx natus  
1273, 1603\*.
- Anquirere capitis 1324, 1134\*.
- Answers, *how expressed* 2251, 2252;  
*made in words co-ordinate to part of question* 1021c.
- Ante, *general use of* 1845—1851; dies  
ante paucos 1848; paucos dies ante  
1207; paucis diebus ante 1206, 1847;  
ante decimum diem 1181; ante  
diem (a. d.) 1443\*, cf. Vol. I. p.  
454;  
ante aliquem natum 1407; ante  
Ciceronem consulem 1017d; ante  
expectatum 1407; ex multo ante  
preparato 1940\*. See also Ante-  
quam.
- Antecedent 1066; *agreeing with rela-  
tive* (arma quæ) 1779\*.
- Antecedere, *with dat.* 1390\*.
- Antecellere, *with dat.* 1140; *with  
acc.* 1121.
- Antecessum, dare in, '*give in ad-  
vance*' 1973.
- Anteferre aliquem alicui 1700\*.
- Antehac 1849.
- Anteire, *with acc.* 1121, 1647\*, 1385\*.
- Anteponere aliquid alicui 1704\*, 2261\*;  
anteponi alicui 1140, 1438\*.
- Antequam, *with indic.* 1671, 1675,  
1475; *with present of future event*  
1462; *with subj.* 1672, 1674, 1391\*.
- Antestari 1851.
- Antidhac 1849.
- Anxius, *with gen.* 1318; animi 1321.
- Aorist (i.e. *historical perf.*) 1448, 1449,  
1452, 1453, 1473—1475.
- Apiscor 1419.
- Apodosis 1025; *of a conditional sen-  
tence*, 1528; *apodosis to a conditional  
subj., various forms of* 1548; *ab-  
sorbed into principal sentence* 1750;  
*expressed by epithet* 1576; *not dis-  
tinctly conceived* 1578, 1754; *omit-  
ted* 1580, 1582;  
*apodosis to an indicative condi-  
tion, various forms of* 1549; *in  
subj. for collateral reasons* 1575;  
*omitted* 1579.
- Apparet, *with infin. sentence* 1471\*.
- Appellare, *with sec. pred.* 1068;  
Græco nomine 1392\*, cf. 1691\*;  
'ask payment from' 1183 fin.\*;  
'appeal to' 1747\*.
- Appellatives 1003b.
- Appellere (sc. navem) 1413.
- Applicare se ad 1145.
- Appone rastos 1830 note, cf. 1691\*;  
aponni gratiæ 1163, Pref. p. xxxvi.
- Apposition 1015; *often same as  
secondary pred.* 1017c, 1058; *posi-  
tion in sentence* 1041; *gerundial  
expressions in appos.* 1377\*, 1395\*;  
id, illud, *in appos. to infin.* 1351,  
1355; *genitive in appos. to posses-  
sive pronouns* 1059; *clause with  
quod in appos. to oblique case* 1701.
- Appropinquare portæ 1094\*, 1720\*.
- Aptus, *with qui* 1634; *with dat.*  
1659.
- Apud, *general use of* 1852—1858;  
apud Numantiam, '*in the camp at  
Numantia*' 1344\*; ædes 1858,  
1398\*.
- Aqua una jugis, '*a single spring of  
water*' 2002\*.
- Arbiter, '*a witness*' 2080\*.
- Arbitratu alicujus or meo, &c. 1246,  
1668\*.
- Arbores abietis 1304.
- Arcere, *with abl.* 1263, 1769\*, 2211  
fin.\*; hinc 1751\*.
- Arcessere capitis 1325; iudicio capi-  
tis 1323; mercede 1197.
- Ardere puellā 1667\*.
- Argumento esse, Pref. pp. xxviii,  
xxxvii.
- Arrhaboni dare, Pref. p. xxxvii.
- Arte 1236.
- Artificio 1239.
- Assentiri litteris 1093; illud Theo-  
phrasto 1094; de triumpho tibi  
1541\*.

Assis aestimare 1186, *cf.* 1187; assecarum est 1197.

Assuefacere, *with dat.* 1215; *with abl.* 1216; *with infin.*, besides personal object, 1348, 2265\*.

Assuetus, *with dat.* 2288\*; *spectaculo* 2147\*; *with infin.* 1349; *assueto longius*, 'farther than usual' 1270.

Ast 2209 *b*, 2211.

Astu 1239.

At, *general use of* 2209 *c*, 2212, 1059\*; *in statement of an opponent's objection*; *at enim*, &c. 1623, 1654\*, 2049\*; *in apodosis to si* 1561 *bis*; *at...certe* 2037\*; *at in answers* 1720\*; *at at* 2260\*.

Atque, *see* Ac.

Atqui 2209 *d*, 2213, 1430\*, 1813\*.

Attinet, quod ad vos 1534\*.

Attraction of subject into case of relative 1067; of pronoun into gender and number of predicate 1068; of gerund 1374, *Pref. p.* lxvii *fol.*; of finite verb into infin. 1784 *b*; (*quibus me ipsum*) 1351\*; of *quisque* into case of *suus* 2288; *mire quam for mirum quam* 1649.

To attraction are sometimes referred the constructions in 1269, 1435, 1677; the dative *Menæchmo*, &c. in 1059, and the predicate, if dative, in 1357. See also some sentences in 1066, where the relative is perhaps attracted.

Attribuere, *see* Unde.

Attribute, *general description of*, 1011, 1015; *position in sentence* 1041—1043; *oblique cases and adverbs as attributes* 1019, 1020.

Auctor sum, *with inf. object-clause* 1352; *quid?* 1094; *with gen.* 1152 *fin.*\*, 2236\*; *genitive gerund* 1093, 1395; *auctore me* 1246.

Audeo, *with infin.* 1344 *fin.*; *ausi capitalia* 1721\*.

Audire eum dicentem 1073; *me stare* 1846\*; *ex eo cum diceret* 1724; *ex eo quid sentiat* 1939\*; *de* ('from') aliquo 1906; *fando* 1239; *audior dicere* 1353; *mihi auditum* 1146;

*dicto audiens esse* 1163; *audio* ('said to be') *fortis* 1059, 1812 *fin.*

Audituus, *gen. sing.* 2027, *cf.* Vol. 1. *p.* 22, *note*.

Aveo scire 2273\*.

Avertere (*pass. imper.*) *perdes*, 'turn your back and you will lose it' 1557; *aversa charta*, 'the back of the paper' 1295; *aversum Buten* 1991\*.

Auferre aliquid alicui 1140, 1532 *b*\*; *ab aliquo* 1141.

Augurato 1253.

Avidus, *with gen.* 1314, 2287\*.

Auscultare alicui 1603\*.

Auscultatio, *with double dat.* 1400.

Ausim 1540.

Auspicato 1254.

Auspicio Teucri, *auspice Teucro* 1246.

Aut, *general use* 2216—2220, 1533 *a*\*, *ib. aa*\*; *distinguish* from an in questions 2257; *aut...aut...aut etiam* 2053\*.

Autem, *general use* 2209 *b*, 2211; *position in sentence* 1055; *use in question by way of answer*, 1613, 1771; *si potero, potero autem, enitar* 2280\*.

Autumno 1181.

Auxilio esse, *ire*, &c. *Pref. p.* xxxviii, 1115, 1162; *auxilium ferre alicui* 1115 (3).

Belli *as locative* 1168; *bellum facere alicui* 1571\*; *indicere* 1558 *fin.*\*; *sumere cum Antiocho* 1751\*.

Bellicum canere 1098.

Bene esse alicui 1153, 1431 *c*; *cf.* 1140\*; *emere* 1197; *credere*, 'lend safely' 1973 *fin.*\*; *bene Messallam* (*sc. valere jubeo*), 'Messalla's health' 1441.

Beneficia in aliquem 1744\*.

Benevolus, *subst.*, 'a well-wisher' 1075.

Bibere, *object to dare*, &c. 1345, *Pref. p.* xxxiii.

-bili, *adjectives ending in*, *used with dat. of agent* 1146.

Bona fide 1234; *ex fide bona* 1959\*; *bona venia* 1245, 1589\*, 1590;

- bonæ frugi 1160, *Pref. p.* xlv;  
bonam partem 1102; boni consu-  
lere, 1191; bono esse, *Pref. p.*  
xxxviii; bono publico (*abl.*) 1245.  
Brevi 2212.  
-bundo, *participles in, with direct obj.*  
*in acc.* 1405, *Pref. p.* lxxviii.  
Cadere, *with abl.* 1260, 1262.  
Cælo (*dat.*) ire 1144; *abl.* 1170.  
Calamitati esse *Pref. p.* xxxviii.  
Caletur 1431*b*.  
Callere, *with acc.* 1120*c*.  
Canere classicum 1097; bellicum 1098;  
receptui 1157, *Pref. pp.* xxxiii, lii;  
fidibus 1218.  
Capere judicem cum aliquo 1770\*.  
Capite damnare 1200; deminutus  
1210; censi 1229; capitis anqui-  
rere, absolvere, damnare, &c. 1324,  
1325, 1199; minor 1320.  
Captioni esse alicui 1654\*, *Pref. p.*  
xxxviii.  
Captus auribus 1210; oculis 1210,  
1724\*.  
Carere, *with abl.* 1212, 1192\*.  
Carus asse 1196; aurichalco contra  
1893.  
Cases, *general use of*, 1018—1020;  
*summary of distinctions* 1076—  
1079.  
Castris habere 1717\*.  
Casu, 'by chance' 1236, 1441\*, 1599  
fin.\*  
Casus dandi, 'the dative case,' &c.  
1297.  
Cave facias 1608; cavere, 'beware  
of' aliquem 1120; ab aliquo 1345\*,  
1651\*; 'take precautions for' ali-  
cui 1393*b*\*; 'give security in' ali-  
qua re 1218; id ut ne fiat 1777\*;  
quo ne plus &c., 'prescribe the  
maximum &c.,' 1634; *with perf.*  
*infin.* 1371*a*.  
Causā, *with gen.* 1244, 1280, 1052\*;  
*with gen. gerund* 1115 (2), 1720\*;  
[supposed by some to be omitted with  
genitives in 1286, 1288;] mea causa  
'for my sake' 1535*a*\*; 'for all  
I care' 1668\*.  
Causæ esse *Pref. p.* xxxviii; quid est  
causæ cur 1762; quin 1768; hæc  
est causa quominus 1644; ut 1696.  
Causor velle 'profess (as a reason) to  
'desire' 1283\*.  
Cautio alicujus 'a mode of guarding  
against' 1312; cautio est ne 'I must  
take care lest' 1400, 1652.  
Cautost opus 1253.  
Cedere 'withdraw from,' *with abl.*  
1262; bonis 1399\*; ex Italia 1399\*;  
ab aqua 1670\*; de sede 1704\*;  
*with dat.* 'yield to' 1040\*, 1061  
(*p.* 25)\*, 1593\*; 'turn out,' 'hap-  
pen,' impune 1745\*; secus 1488\*.  
Cædo, *parenthetical* 1761; *with accus.*  
1120*a*, 1190\*, 1535*a*\*, 1541\*.  
Celare aliquem aliquid 1122, 1371\*;  
de aliqua re 1125; celatum me 'that  
I was kept in ignorance' 1356.  
Cenatus 1848\*; esse 'get supper over'  
1371.  
Censeo faciendum 1399, 1541 fin.\*;  
rem faciendam 1444; me malle  
1101\*; senatui placere 2175\*; edici  
1167 (3); oportere 1175\*; facias  
1606, 1541 fin.\*, 1779\*; ut faciant  
1457\*:  
censendi causa 'for the review'  
1394; censeri 'be assessed at' 1229;  
'be valued for' 1228; *with acc.* 'have  
entered against one' 1126 (2), 1127.  
Centesimis (sc. usuris) 1970\* (*cf. Vol.*  
*I. p.* 450).  
Cernere acutum 'have sharp sight'  
1096.  
Certe 1704\*, 2175\*, &c.  
Certiorum aliquem facere rei 1332.  
Certo 2292\*; discernere 'decide for  
certain' 1618\*.  
Certum est, *parenthetical* 1607; dicere  
1355.  
Cesso, *with inf.* 1611\*, 1642\*; ab  
opere 1707*c*.  
Ceteri, *general use* 2295, *cf.* 2056;  
ceteri præter 2066; cetera 1102,  
1209\*, 1744 (*p.* 326); ceterum  
2209, 2210.  
Ceui, *with subj.* 1580.  
Chiasmus 1051.  
Cibatus esse, *Pref. p.* xxxix.  
Cibo esse, *Pref. p.* xxxix.



- Cingor *with acc.* 1126, 1127.  
 Circa, circum, circiter, *general use of* 1859—1869; *circa, with gerund* 1378; *circum undique 'from all sides'* 1859.  
 Circuitu *'in circumference'* 1209.  
 Circumcirca 1859.  
 Circumdare aliquid alicui 1126 (2)\*; *aliquem aliqua re* 1120 b, 1121.  
 Circumducere *'cheat'* 1869; *aliquem aliqua re* 1212; *'lead round'* *aliquem aliquid* 1106 b.  
 Circumfundere *'surround'* 1121; *'threaten around'* 1144.  
 Circumjectui 1383, *Prof. pp.* xxxiii, xxxix.  
 Circumire orbem 1535 a.  
 Circumvenire *'come round'* i.e. *'cheat'* 1691\*.  
 Cis, *general use of*, 1870—1872; 2179\*.  
 Cito *'readily'*, citius *'sooner'* 1540; dicto citius 1270; citius quam 1676, 1675.  
 Citra, *general use of*, 1870—1876; 2183\*.  
 Citro 1870, 2178\*; ultro citroque obligatio 2185; *comp.* 2306 c.  
 Cladi esse, *Prof. p.* xxxix.  
 Clam, *use as adverb* 1878; *with accus.* 1879; *with abl. (doubtful)* 1877.  
 Clamore 1239.  
 Clanculum *as adverb* 1878; *with accus.* 1879.  
 Classicum canere 1097; classica *'trumpets'* 1097.  
 Co- *in composition* 1886 *fol.*  
 Coepit, coeptum est, *with pass. infin.* 1355, 1422.  
 Cogito plura, 1779\*; *with inf.* 1344, 1422\*; id te esse 1533a\*; liberatum te 1748\*; *with dep. question* 1612; mecum 1711\*.  
 Cognosco hinc hæc fieri 1777\*.  
 Cogor *with inf. and personal object* 1381, 1750\*; cogor pugnare 1353; cogendus id sum 1094.  
 Collective nouns *with plural verb* 1434.  
 Colloquio dies, locus, &c. 1156.  
 Com-, *see* Cum.  
 Comedere aliquem 1629\*.  
 Comitatus *with abl.* 1220.  
 Comitia consulis creandis 1156; augurum creand. 1157; comitiis *'at the comitia'* 1382 a.  
 Commendationi esse, *Prof. p.* xxxix.  
 Commisissor habere, 1594\*.  
 Comminus pugnare 1664\*.  
 Committere ut 1778\*.  
 Commodare alicui omnibus rebus 1694\*.  
 Commodum tuo 1244, 1694\*; per commodum tuum 2037; commodum est alicui 1114 b\*, 1511\*, 1741\*.  
 Commodum *'just' (of time)* 1458\*; cum (*subj.*) 1722.  
 Commonefacio *with gen.* 1332.  
 Communicare aliquid cum aliquo 1145 (*p.* 61).  
 Communis, *with gen.* 1280 bis; *with dat.* 1281; alicui cum aliquo 1281, 1650\*.  
 Comparatives *used absolutely*; asperius 1623\*; longius 1605\*; *comp.* ocus 1613\*.  
 Comparison: *measure of excess expressed by abl.* 1204; *by adverbial accus.* 1203; *by longe* 1203; *standard of, expressed by abl.* 1266—1272, 1273; *by quam after adj. in comp. degree* 1022, 1267—1275; *with correlative adj. and adv.* 1635—1643; *with cum...tum (of two actions)*, ac, tamquam 1581; quasi, ceu, veluti, &c. 1580; (major) quam quæ 1681; quam ut 1700; potius quam 1676, 1677; quam ut 1678; præquam, proquam 1645; præut 1707; proinde, sic, &c. *ut* 1707 *fol.*  
 Compendi facere 1307.  
 Compensare voluptatem cum labore, *'set the pleasure against the toil'* 1392\*.  
 Comperio cognatam esse 1457\*; comperitus *with gen.* 1326.  
 Competit alicui actio *'has a right of suing'* 2183\*.  
 Complacitus alicui 2163\*.  
 Compleri, *with gen. or abl.* 1335; *with abl.* 1578\*.  
 Completeness of action *expressed by perfect tense* 1450—1454.



- Componere 'match' 1145 (*p.* 61).  
 Compos voti 1314; urbis 1534\*.  
 Composito 'as agreed on' 1254; ex composito 1941.  
 Conari facere 1533 *aa*\*.  
 Conatus erumpendi *and* ad erumpendum 1313.  
 Concedere, *with inf. and dat. pred.* 1357; tibi ut disseras 1541\*, 1671\*; conceditur dicere 1873\*.  
 Conceptis verbis 1237.  
 Concession expressed by conditional sentence with *si, si maxime, etsi, &c.* (*subj.*) 1560; (*ind.*) 1561; *by ut, ut non (consecutive subj.)* 1706; *by ut, ita...ut (ind.)* 1707 *b, c, d*; *by rhetorical command (subj.)* 1620; *with sane, fortasse, &c.* 1622; *with quamvis* 1624; *with modo* 1626; *by direct assertion (ind. or imp.)* *with sane, quidem, fortasse* 1621; *quamvis* 1627; *modo* 1629; *with licet, licebit* 1625; *by cum, cum tamen (subj.)* 1730—1732; (*ind.*) 1727, 1731; *by quamquam* 1697; *quamquam, etsi, &c. in independent sentence, 'and yet'* 2215.  
 Conciliare, derivation of 1984.  
 Conclamatum est, as signal for marching &c. 1457\*; ad arma 1422 (*p.* 176), 1818\*.  
 Concutior, middle voice 1553 *fin.*\*  
 Condecere *with accus.* 2293\*.  
 Condemnare *with gen. of charge* 1324; *of penalty* 1325; *dupli* 1190; *with accus. of penalty* 1199; *ad bestias* 1199; *with dat. of creditor* 1199.  
 Condicione 1228; condicionibus 'on conditions' 1239; in eam conditionem dare 2289\*.  
 Condition expressed by subordinate clause with *si, nisi, ni (ind.)* 1533, 1561—1579; (*subj.*) 1532; 1560—1578; typical examples 1518—1521; use of *subj. tenses* 1530; *by si without verb* 1439, 1441, 1563; *by subordinate clause without any particle (ind.)* 1553; (*imper.*) 1557; (*subj.*) 1552—1556; *with relative adjective (ind.)* 1559; (*subj.*) 1558; *by clause with absque* 1556; *with quasi* 1580; *with dum* 1668; *with ut* 1706; *by a word or phrase* 1534; *by ablative of circumstances* 1240—1250.  
 Condition suppressed 1536—1546; reported 1750, 1752, 2133\*; expressing a thing to be done 1754; or to be ascertained 1754, 1755.  
 Condonare aliquid aliquem or alicui 1125.  
 Conducere 'hire,' *with abl. of price* 1198; *with gerundive Pref. p.* lxxvi.  
 Conferre se Romam betake oneself to Rome 1111, 1229\*; iter 1108\*; quo 1113.  
 Confestim 1878\*.  
 Conficientissimus *with gen. of object* 2122\*.  
 Conficio me mærore 1744\*; conficior venisse tempus 1351.  
 Confidere *with dat.* 1134; *with abl.* 1228; see 1229.  
 Conjugatio periphrastica (so called), *with perf. part.* 1453; *with fut. part. (and indic.)* 1494; (*ind. with conditional subj.*) 1520, 1570; (*subj.*) 1521, 1572; (*infin.*) 1784.  
 Conjunctio sua 'union with him,' 1315; Cæsar's 1318.  
 Conjunction, definition of 1006; general use 1022, 1026; copulative 2194—2203; adversative 2208—2215; disjunctive 2216—2220; negative 2235—2242.  
 Conjunctive, see Subjunctive.  
 Conjunctus *with dat.* 1142, 1215; *with abl.* 1216; cum aliquo 1143.  
 Connexive adverbs 1005, 1031.  
 Consciscere mortem sibi 1768\*, 2264\*.  
 Conscius alicui facinoris 1314.  
 Consecutio temporum, general rules for 1509—1517, 1523—1527.  
 Consecutive sentences, Chap. xxii 1678 foll., also 1524; *with subordinate conditional sentence* 1521, 1568, 1572; as equivalent to a conditional clause 1706.

- Consequor ut (*subj.*) 1899\*.  
 Consilium capio *with inf.* 1345; *with gen. gerundive* 1395; meo consilio 1246, 1442\*; consilio '*with judgment*' 1236; '*of design*' 1441\*; in consilio, '*in council*' 1457\*.  
 Consensio *with gen. gerundive* 1395.  
 Consensu 1239, 1389.  
 Consimilis *with dat.* 1725\*.  
 Consistere, *how used* 1217.  
 Consolationi esse *Pref. p.* xxxix.  
 Consors *with obj. gen.* 1300.  
 Conspectus oculorum '*power of seeing*' 1721 *fin.*\*  
 Constare '*cost*' *with abl.* 1198; '*be composed of*' 1218, 1217, 2295\*; auribus '*have the full use of hearing*'; non constat mihi *with dep. question* '*I am not clear*' 1612\*; constat laudari disertum 1668\*.  
 Constituo subeundam condicionem 1677\*.  
 Consuetudine '*according to custom*' 1236.  
 Consulere aliquem 1319; aliquid 1319; aliquem aliquid 1125; alicui 1134; male suis rebus 1558 *fin.*\*; consultum (esse) volo 1304, 1402; consultum videtur 2091\*; boni consulere 1191.  
 Consulibus *as note of the year* 1180, 1181.  
 Consultatio nullast '*no time for deliberation*' 1400.  
 Consulto '*purposely*' 1253.  
 Consultus *with gen.* 1316, 1319.  
 Contemptui esse *Pref. p.* xxxix; 2055\*.  
 Contendere suffragio de principatu 1533 *a*\*.  
 Contingere alicui 1717\*.  
 Continere me risu 1393; contineri '*be contained in*' *with abl.* 1174; virtute 1704\*; quæ solo continentur 1177; '*kept in by*' metu 1638\*; contentus *with abl.* 1216; paucis 1554\*; modicis 1570\*.  
 Continuo (*adv.*) 1253, 1633\*, 1669\*.  
 Contra, *general use of* 1889—1899; *with dative* 1893; *sometimes subjoined to noun* 1805; contra ac 1581, 1779\*, 1894; contra aspicere 1890; contra auro 1893; contra esse 1895; contra ea 1896; 1897; contra pugnare 1745\*; contra quam 1894; quod contra 1896, 1897; quem contra dicit 1038; quem contra venit 1262\*.  
 Contrarius ac 1996\*.  
 Contumacia '*obstinately*' 1239.  
 Conturbare 1413.  
 Convenienter naturæ 1142; cum aliquo 1143.  
 Convenire '*assemble*' 1062, 1349\*; '*visit*' aliquem 1120 *b*, 1671\*; quibus conventis opus est 1740\*; '*sue at law*' aliquem 2185\*; '*agree with*' cum aliquo 1181 *fin.*\*; '*be fit*' esse 1386\*; convenit te interfectum esse '*was (i.e. would have been) right for you to have been killed*' 1371 *d*; '*be agreed upon*' 1061 *b*, 1533 *a*\*, 1567\*, 2151\*.  
 Convivio vigilata nox '*spent in feasting*' 1239.  
 Co-ordinate sentences, *definition* 1024; *kinds of* 1026, 1027.  
 Co-ordinate expressions 1021, 2202—2204; eodem iudicium scelere, quo tyrannorum 1280; opera ut minora, sic laboris majoris 1377\*.  
 Co-ordinatim 1021.  
 Copia feriundi 1892\*; *cf. Pref. p.* lxxviii.  
 Copula, *expression of logical* 1010, 1012.  
 Copulative conjunctions 2194—2203.  
 Coram 1901, 1902.  
 Cordi esse 1260, *Pref. p.* xxxix; 2285\*.  
 Corruptelæ esse *Pref. p.* xxxix.  
 Crassitudine (femoris) '*as thick as a thigh*' 1083.  
 Credere '*trust*' alicui 1134; aliquid alicui 1557\*; '*believe*' omnia (*adv. acc.*) 1656\*; alicui omnium rerum 1334 *fin.*; deos esse 1693\*; mihi crede, *parenthetical* 1535 *b*\*, 1607, 1748\*; credo 1533 *c*\*, 1535 *a*\*, 1607; credor '*I am believed*' 1421; crederes '*one would have thought*' 1544.

- Creduat, creduis (*cf.* 589), 1486, 2240 a\*.
- Crescendi accessio 1394 b; *cf.* *Pref.* p. lxxviii.
- Criminor aliquem 1722\*; aliquem fecisse 1395; *cf.* 1328.
- Crimine eodem &c., *abl. of circumstance* 1323; *cf.* 1327; crimini esse *Pref.* p. xxxix.
- Cuicuiusmodi 1311, 1168\*.
- Culpæ esse *Pref.* p. xxxix.
- Cultui esse *Pref.* p. xxxiii.
- Cum (quom, quum) 1499; *of time, general use of* 1710, 1709; 1716—1735; *typical examples* 1525; 'whenever' (*subj.*) 1716, (*ind.*) 1717, 1460\*; 'when' (*subj.*) 1720, 1468\*, (*ind.*) 1721, 1468\*; 'to the time when' (*ind.*) 1723; 'because' (*ind.*) 1725; 'whereas,' 'since' (*subj.*) 1726; 'in that' (*ind.*) 1729; 'although' (*subj.*) 1730, (*ind.*) 1731; 'and then' (*ind.*) 1733; *with histor. infin.* 1733, 1359; *as relative adverb, fuit (tempus) cum &c., 'during which' (subj.)* 1684, 1686, (*ind.*) 1685, 1687.  
*in subsequent clause (subj.) with interea, præsertim &c.* 1722, 1728, 1732; (*ind.*) *with subito, interea, &c.* 1733, 1460\*; *cum diceret 'saying as he did'* 1722; *cum primum (subj.)* 1720, (*ind.*) 1721, 1723; *cum maxime* 1641; *cum tamen (subj.)* 1722, (*ind.*) 1727; *cum quidem (subj.)* 1732, 1842\*;  
*cum...tum in comparing two actions &c. (subj.)* 1734, (*ind.*) 1735; *tum...cum 'at the time when'* 1721, 1358\*; *cum...tum 'as well as'* 1473\*; *nunc cum (subj.)* 1730, 1726, (*ind.*) 1731, 1721; *hei mihi cum (ind.)* 1632.
- Cum 'with'; *general use of* 1880—1888; *in expressions of manner, dress, &c.* 1235;  
*after communis* 1281; *communicare* 1145; *discrepare, discordare* 1137; *secum agitare* 1716\*; *cogitare* 1711\*; *habere* 1135; *esse (mihi tecum)* 1152, 1885; *par* 1281;  
*cum octavo, decimo &c., 'with (the seed?) the eighth, tenth,' &c., i. e. 'eightfold,' 'tenfold'* 1883; *cum eo ut* 1650, 1884; *quod* 1884: *two nouns joined by cum may have plural predicate* 1437.
- Cumulare *with abl.* 1216.
- Cuneis 'in wedges' 1236.
- Cupio esse (*cf.* 1344) 1365, 1617\*; *me esse* 1351; *me conventum* 1402; *ego sum bellum cupiens* 1683\*.
- Cur *in dependent question* 1465\*; *quid fuit causæ cur* 1762.
- Curā et cogitatione 1239.
- Curæ esse 1669\*, *Pref.* p. xxxix.
- Curare aliquem 1616\*; *aliquid* 1760\*, 1763\*; *aliquid faciundum* 1401, 1258\*; *aliquid factum* 1402; *facere* 1344; *quid faciat* 1532 a\*; *cura ut (subj.)* 1495, 1779\*, 2288\*.
- Currere *with accus. of obj.* 1120 c; *cognate accus.* 1100.
- Curriculo 1236.
- Cursu 'at full speed' 1236, 1389.
- Damnare *with penalty in accus. (pecuniam)* 1199; *in dat. (morti)* 1199; *in locative (quantum)* 1190; *quindecim millibus* 1073\*; *in abl. (morte)* 1200; *in gen. (capitis)* 1325; *with place of penalty in acc. with ad* 1199;  
*with creditor in dative* 1199;  
*with charge expressed by genitive* 1324; *by crimine* 1323 a; *by scelere* 1229; *by de aliquo* 1323 b.
- Damnas esto 1190\*, 1603\* (p. 261).
- Damnationi esse *Pref.* p. xl.
- Damni infecti promittere, 'promise to be answerable for damage not sustained (but expected)' 1324; *damni facere* 1307; *damno esse* *Pref.* p. xli.
- Dare, *with predicative dat.* 1162, *Pref.* p. xxix.; *with acc. of gerundive* 1401; *of past part.* 1402; *with infin. as object* 1344; *with infin. object-sentence* 2252\*; *with cognomen* 1064; *dono* 1162; *donum* 1161; *doti* 1162; *dotem, dotis, in dotem* 1161; *fœnori, in fœnus* 1163; *frenos* 1599\*; *se in fugam* 1962; *medias in acies* 1719\*;

in lectum (dari) 1102\*; litteras alicui ad aliquem 1260\*, 1818; malum 1757\*; mancipio 1243; nomen dare ad 1821; (noxæ dedere *not* dare 1163, *Pref. p.* xlix); nuptum 1114, 1108\*, 1379; operam alicui 1092\*; dis placandis 1382; sermoni 2252\*; operam ut 1638; pessum 1112; pignus ni 1752; potui 1161, 1383; *Pref. pp.* xxxiii. l.; pugnam 1100; quæstioni servos 1143; terga 1973\*; turbas 1067\*; venum 1112; verba (q. v.) 1120, 1460\*; verborum quicquam, 1460\*; dabam (*opposed to* dedi) 'I offered' 1454; so dares 'had you offered' 1552; datur 'it is possible' 1637\*: sic datur 'there you catch it' 1422.

*Dative, general use of* 1130 and *note; compared with other cases* 1076—1079; *use of gerund* 1382; *of stems in -tu* 1383; *use for genitive* 1154; animos ducibus accendere 1492\*;

*expressing agent* 1146, 1397, 1400; *creditor* 1199; *indirect object* 1132—1156; *local relations* 1144; *person interested* (dativus ethicus) 1150, 1118\*; *person judging* 1148; *person possessing* 1152; *place (?) to which* (Orco) 1144, 1484\*; *purpose, comp.* 1156—1162, *Pref. p.* xxxiv; *work contemplated* 1156.

*Predicative dative* e.g. curæ, cordi est 1158—1162, *Pref. pp.* xxv—lvi.

*Dative after, or in special relation to, various words; (specimens in* 1131, *but see* 1132): e.g. abesse 1152; acceptum referre 1134; accipere 1143; accommodatus 1142; addicere 1143; adequitare 1144; adicere 1532b\*; adjungere 1535d; admo- vere 1142; adspargere 1647\*; advorsum 1838; affigere 1410\*; affinis 1281; agere gratias 1443\*; amicus 1142; antecellere 1140; anteponere 1140; apponere 1163; appropinquare 1094\*, 1720\*; aspici 1146; assentiri 1093 (*p.* 39) fin.\*, 1533aa\*, assuetus 1215; auditus est 1146; auferre 1134; auscultare 1603\*; auscultatio 1400; bonus

1443\*; canere (receptui) 1157, 1345; circumdare 1126 (2)\*; circumfun- dere 1144; comitia habere, &c., 1156; commodum est 1114b\*; com- muni 1281; conferre 1306\*; con- fidere 1134, 1229; conicere 1144; conjunctus 1142; consulere 1134, 1598\*; contra 1893; convenienter 1142; credi 1422; dare 1162; debere 1134; decemviri 1156, 1294\*; de- cernere 1553\*; dedere 1143, 1163 (noxæ); deesse 1047\*, 1212\*; de- ligere 1156, *Pref. p.* xlii; denegare 1553\*, dicere (diem) 1134, 1720\*; dicto audiens esse 1163; dies 1156; difficilis 1383a; discolor 1137; dis- cordare 1136; discrepare 1136; dispar 1137; displicere 1545\*; di- versus 1137; dolet 1152; ducere (despicatui) 1162; ecce 1150 *cf.* 1128; eripere 1220\*; esse 1152 (male, bene, &c.) 1153; (solvendo) 1156, 1382; (mihi exitio) 1160; ex- cusare 1144; expensum ferre 1134; exequias ire 1114\*; extorquere 1140; extrahere 1144; facere 1223 (modum, finem, &c.), 1154, 1155; (bellum), 1571\*; facilis 1142; familiaris 2192\*; favere 1422\*, 1429\*; fidere 1229; fides? 1402; flebilis 1146; fretus 1217; gratulari 1120\*; gratus 1134; habere (sibi) 1134, (bene mihi) 1153, (quæstui) 1162; habilis 1382; hei 1152; heres 1154; idem 1142, 1143; ignoscere 1163; imminere 1666\*, 2146\*; includere 1142; incidere 1155\*; includere 1144; incutere 1492\*; indere 1059; indulgere 2182\*; inesse 1062, 4\*; infestus 1069\*; inlacrimari 1130; immolare 1138; inopinata 1545\*; inperare 1140; inpertire 1382; inponere 1144, 1051\*; insidiari 2149\*; in- sidias dare 2175\*; insinuare se 1898\*; insitus 1069\*; instillare 1546\*; intemptatum est 1146; intentus 1142; interdicere 1134; interjacere 1144; intertrahere 1486\*; invidere 1331; inurere 1144; inutilis 1382a; jucundus 1134, 1467\*; iudicium 1156; junctus 1215;



- juxta 2015; libet 1494\*; licet 1357; locus 1156; mederi 1198; minitari 1358\*; miscere 1215; miserabilis 1146; mittere (auxilio, &c.) 1162, 1115(4), (Orco) 1484\*; moderari 1134; molestus esse 1654\*; nocere 1134; nomen esse 1059; nubere 1114\*; obedire 1136; obesse 1640\*; obicere 1140; obsequi 1654\*; obsistere 2290\*; obstar 1750\*; obtemperare 1136; obviam 2018\*; occurrere 1711 fin.\*; officere 1389\*; operam dare 1379\*, 1382a; opportunus 1382a, 1383a; par 1142, 1281; paratus 1142; parcere 1134; parere 1136; patere 1143, 1149; permittere 1382; præbere 1134, 1971\*; præstare 'surpass' 1210\*; præsto esse 1134; prævorti 1140, 2088\*; primus 1148; probare 1149; prodesse 1540\*; promptus 1422\*; propinare 1138; purgare 1149; quo 1152, 1357\*; redire 1750\*; relinquere 1142, 1143; respondere 1134; reticere 1134; scripta sunt 1146; servire 1134, 1598\*; similis 1140, 1317; sinister 2201\*; spatium 1281; spernendus 1146; studere 1382a; succedere 1144; succlamare 1649\*; succumbere 1485\*; sufficere 'suffice for' 1143, 1438\*; suffici 'be elected on a vacancy' 1161; suppetias 1114; supplicare 1142; suscensere 1768\*; suus 1142, 1143, 1848\*; temperare 1658\*, 1646\*; tempus 1156; timere 1143, 1758\*; tribuere 1163; vacare 1134, 1135; vae 1152; videor 1148; -viri (e.g. duoviri) 1156, 1382a; vovere 1751, utilis 1473\*.
- De general use of 1903—1912; in composition with verbs 1913—1922; sometimes placed after relatives 1038, 1912\*; often used after compounds 1263; used of 'matter charged' 1323; after audire 1906; celare, docere, interrogare 1125; mereri 1906; triumphare 1906.
- de cælo servare 1905; de die 1911; diem de die 1907; de inprovisio 1443\*; de industria 'designedly' 1907, 1754\*; de integro 1907, 1403\*;
- de lucro 1307, 1908; de nocte 1911; de plano 1905; de proximo 2258\*; de suo 1909; susque deque 1904.
- Debebam, debui colere 1366, comp. 1535; with conditional subj. in protasis 1520, 1566; debeo, vicisse, 'ought to be declared winner' 1561\*.
- Decemviri with gerundival dat. 1156, 1294\*.
- Decernere imperium alicui 1553\*.
- Decet not really impersonal 1431; quod decet 2287\*; quid me facere decuit 1610\*; erubuisse decebat, 1371c.
- Decidere 'come to terms' de aliquo 1711\*.
- Decipi with gen. 1338.
- Decori esse, Pref. p. xli.
- Decurrere 'manœuvre' 1065\*, 1918, 2288\*.
- Dedecori esse Pref. p. xli.
- Dedere aliquem tormentis 1570\*; noxæ 1163; cruci 1669\*.
- Deesse with dat. 1047\*, 1716 fin.\*, 2253\*, 2263\*.
- Defendere 'keep off' ardores 2241\*.
- Deferre rem ad aliquem 1714\*.
- Deflere aliquid 1657\*.
- Deformitati esse Pref. p. xli.
- Dehonestamento Pref. p. xli.
- Dehortor te scribere 1348, aliquem ab aliquo 1574 (1).
- Dein 1903.
- Deinceps 'in succession' 1754 fin.\*, 1664\*, 2189\*.
- Deinde 'next' 1589\*; after primum 1471, 1546\*, 1640\*, cf. 1719\*; 'for the future' 1715\*.
- Delectare aliquem 1641\*; delectari his 1214, 1735\*, 2244\*; dici 1439\*.
- Delectioni esse Pref. p. xli.
- Delegare aliquid ad aliquem 1302.
- Deligere domum sibi 1701\*; locum domicilio sibi 1159, Pref. p. xlii.
- Delibutus with abl. 1216.
- Delinquere majora 1682\*.
- Deliquio esse p. xli.
- Demonstrative pronouns often used without substantives 1061, 1066; often attracted into gender of substantives predicated 1068; used to in-



- introduce an infin. clause* 1351; *distinguished from one another* 2258—2261; *position in a sentence* 1041.  
*Demum after noctu* 1720 fin.\*; *nunc* 1721\*.  
*Denegare aliquid alicui* 1553\*; *dare* 1553 fin.\*  
*Denique* 2207, 2239\*.  
*Deorsum, deorsus* 2173, 1940\*.  
*Deponent verbs* 1418; *meaning of passive inflexions* 1419. [See list § 734]  
*Derecto 'straight'* 1603 fin.\* (*For form see derigere* 1914; *for case* 1253).  
*Derelictui habere Pref. p. xli.*  
*Deridiculo esse Pref. p. xli.*  
*Derisui esse Pref. p. xli.*  
*Desciscere a patria* 1691\*.  
*Desiderio esse, Pref. p. xli.*  
*Desinere with gen.* 1338; *with accus.* 1341; *with act. infin.* 1180\*; *with pass. infin.* 1344; *desitus est vocari* 1353.  
*Desipere mentis* 1321.  
*Desisto with inf.* 1344\*, 1667\*, 1672\*; *with abl.* 1696\*.  
*Despectui esse Pref. p. xli.*  
*Despero pacem* 1120a; *cf.* 1750\*; *with infin. object sentence* 1567\*.  
*Despicatui habere &c., Pref. p. xli.*  
*Despiciens with gen.* 1314.  
*Destino with inf.* 2163\*; *destinatus operi discendo* 1977\*.  
*Desuper* 2143, 2146.  
*Deterreo ne permaneas* 1587\*.  
*Detrahere alicui 'be a drawback to a man'* 1701\*.  
*Detrimeto esse Pref. p. xli.*  
*Deversorium commorandi* 1394c.  
*Di melius!* 1129; *di vostram fidem!* 1129; *di magni!* 1128.  
*Dico esse=dico me esse* 1347 (*visere dicet*) 1403\*; *with infin. object sentence* 1351; *dicor esse* 1353, *cf. Pref. p. xxii.*; *dico venias* 1571b\*; *dico te peregrinum* 1602\*; *quid dicis melius 'what do you mean by better?'* 1729\*; *vestra quæ dicitur vita 'your so-called life'* 2211\*; *introducing a secondary predicate without affecting its case* 1059, 1283, 1659, 1660;  
*dic mihi, parenthetical* 1761; *dicet, dicat, dixerit aliquis* 1542, 1545, *Pref. p. ci—cvi*; *quod diceret 'because, as he said'* 1746, 1558 fin.\*; *cum diceret 'saying as he did'* 1722; *audivi cum diceret* 1724; *dico often omitted* 1441; *dixisse 'the formula dixi'* 1347; *diem dicere* 1134\*; *duo milia æris 'as a fine'* 1134\*; *fide publica* 1225; *nec recte alicui (=male dicere)* 2231; *sacramento* 1238; *sacramentum* 1245;  
*dictum ac factum* 1485c\*; *dicto audiens esse* 1163, 2072b\*; *dicto citius* 1270; *dictu dignum* 1387; *facile, &c.*, 1388; *pudet* 1388; *opus est* 1253.  
*Dies fem. and masc. see* 1062 (*cf.* 337); *'pay day'* 1172\*; *colloquio* 1156; *colloquendi* 1157, 1394\*; *diem dicere* 1134; *obire* 1721\*; *dies noctesque* 1090, 1181, 1711\*; *cf.* 1558 fin.\*; *die ac nocte* 1181, *cf.* 1707c; *diebus ac noctibus* 1101; *cf.* 1089; *die quinti, &c.*, 1178, 1179; *alio die in adjournments* 1180; *aliquos viginti dies 'for some twenty days'* 1605\*; *aliquot dies* 1607\*;  
*ad diem 'to the day'* 1826; *ante diem (a. d.)* 1443\* [*cf. vol. i. p. 454*]; *de die 'in the daytime'* 1911; *diem de (ex) die 'one day after another'* 1907, 1946; *in posterum diem* 1967; *in dies* 1970; *intra decimum diem, decem dies* 2003; *per decem dies 'for ten days'* 1089, 1473\*; *in centum diebus proximis quibus scies poterisque* 1603\*.  
*Differre cum aliquo, or ab aliquo,* 1263.  
*Difficilis concoctioni, concoctu,* 1383; *transitu* 1068\*, 1716\*; *difficile est servare* 1682\*.  
*Diffidere with dat.* 1533d (*p. 224*); *with infin. object-sentence* 1912\*.  
*Dignitati esse Pref. p. xlii.*  
*Dignus with abl.* 1202, (*supine*) 1387; *with gen. or neut. acc.* 1201; *with inf.* 1361, 1534\*; *with qui and final subj.* 1634; *dignius with double abl.* 1266.

- Dimidius quam 1267; dimidio minoris '(at) half as much' 1188.
- Dis-*in composition* 1923—1928; dis-que tulissent 1817\*; *compounds sometimes have object of difference in dative* 1136, 1137; rarely a simple ablative 1263; sometimes with cum, usually with ab, 1137, 1263; *matter of divergence in abl.* 1210.
- Discedere a te 1764\*.
- Discessus Arpinum '*departure for Arpinum*' 1168\*; animi a corpore 1686\*; discessu oratorum, 1247.
- Disceptato 1253.
- Disciplinæ esse, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Discolor, *see* Dis-
- Discordare, *see* Dis-
- Discrepare, *see* Dis-
- Discribere '*classify*' populum 1218\*; '*allot*' jura ib.; '*pay away*' argentum 1691.
- Discrucior animi, 1321.
- Discursu 1239.
- Disjunctive conjunctions*, 2216—2220.
- Disjunctive questions* 2255.
- Disputare hoc esse '*maintain*' 1517\*; de aliqua re 1352\*.
- Dissensio reipublicae '*political differences*' 1318.
- Dissentire cum aliquo *or* ab aliquo 1263; *comp.* 1319; ab 1622\*.
- Dissidere animo '*in feeling*' 1210.
- Dissimilis *with dat.* 1539 fin.\*.
- Distædet me tui 1686.
- Distance in space, with acc.* 1088; *with abl.* 1087; *in time, with acc.* 1092; *with abl.* 1091.
- Distare duo milia 1086; duobus milibus 1206; alicui 1137; aliquo 1263.
- Diversus *with dat.* 1137; *cf.* 1263.
- Diverticulo passuum, &c., *p.* 103 fin.; 2175\*.
- Dives *with abl.* 1212; *with gen.* 1211.
- Dividere aliquos curandos, 1401, 1395\*.
- Dividiæ esse *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Divisui esse 1383, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Docere aliquem aliquid 1122; aliquem de aliqua re 1125; aliquem tacere 1348; docendus loqui 1349; doceo '*show*' aliquem fecisse 1110\*; quanti docet, '*what does he charge for lessons?*' 1186; mercede docere 1197; equo '*train in riding*' 1217.
- Documento esse, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Dolere casum 1120c, 1123; dolet *impersonal* 1431c, 1152\*.
- Dolo 1239.
- Dolori esse, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Domi tuæ, suæ 1169; domi militiæ-que, domi forisque, 1168; domo petere, unde domo 1258; domo abire 1686\*; domum, domos abire, accipere '*receive at*' 1108; avertere '*carry off to*'; restituendus 1110; domum ad Ciceronem ire 1111; domum regiam comportare, 1457\*.
- Domicilio deligere 1156, *Pref. p.* xlii.
- Donare aliquem aliqua re 1214; alicui aliquid 1740\*; *with Greek inf.* 1363.
- Donec 1681 *note*; *with subj. pres., imperfect, and, rarely, pluperf.* 1664, 1666; *with indic. 'so long as'* 1667; *with indic. perf. 'until'* 1669.
- Donicum 1699.
- Dono dare 1162, 1811\*; *Pref. p.* xlii; *cf. p.* xlviii. s.v. Mancipio.
- Dormire in aurem 1965; dormitur hiemps 1421.
- Doti dicere 1160, *Pref. p.* xlii; in dotem esse *Pref. p.* ib.; dotem, dotis, dare, &c., 1161.
- Dubitatio adventus '*doubt about the arrival*' 1318.
- Dubito *with inf.* 2232\*; dubitatis quin conferatis? 1378\*; Quis dubitet quin 1538.
- Dubius salutis 1318; non (haud) est dubium quin 1768, 1068\*, 1568\*; in dubium venit *with dep. question* 1758; in dubio est 1764; *see also p.* 274 *note*; dubio procul, procul dubio 2086; haud dubio 1253.
- Ducere despiciatui, &c. 1162; *Pref. p.* xxix; tuteke *gen.* 1282; omnia hostilia 1646 fin.\*.
- Dudum 1721\*; jamdudum 1723.
- Duellum 1751.
- Duint 1708\*.
- Dum *enclitic*; agedum 1579\*; agitedum 1599 fin.; diedum 2253; tacedum 1765\*.
- Dum '*until*' (*subj.*) 1664, (*ind.*) 1669,

1462; 'while' (*subj.*) 1666, (*ind.*) 1663—1667, usually with *pres. tense* 1458, 1461, even in oblique language 1784<sup>c</sup>; with *plup.* 1491; 'provided that' (*subj.*) dum, dummodo 1668, with *ne* 1668, 1873<sup>\*</sup>; 'in consequence of' (*ind.*) 1665.

Dumtaxat 1459, 2181<sup>\*</sup>, 2214<sup>\*</sup>.

Dux bello gerendo 1485<sup>d</sup><sup>\*</sup>.

E *see* Ex.

'Each other,' how expressed in Latin 2305

Eadem 'by the same road' 1176; 'on the same journey' 2175<sup>\*</sup>; eadem opera 'while doing that' 1257.

Ecaptor 2231<sup>\*</sup>.

Ecce with *nom.* 1081, 1129; with *acc.* 1128; ecce autem 1569 *fin.*<sup>\*</sup>, 2211.

Eccillam, eccum (*i. e.* ecce illam, ecce eum) 1128; eccos 1758<sup>\*</sup>.

Equis 2296, 1688<sup>\*</sup>, 1978<sup>\*</sup>.

Edepol 1114<sup>b</sup><sup>\*</sup>, 1725<sup>\*</sup>, 1729<sup>\*</sup>; with *acc.* 1128; edepol qui 1651.

Edicere ut *subj.* 1848<sup>\*</sup>; aliquid faciendum, *Pref. p.* lxxvi.

Edocere ceremonias placandosque manes 1401; edoctus aliquam rem 1124.

Efferre aliquid laudibus, 1609; efferri letitiâ 1759<sup>\*</sup>.

Efficere aliquid esse 1351; te iratum 1533<sup>b</sup><sup>\*</sup>; ut 1700; efficere non potest quin 1702.

Efficium 1949.

Egenus with *abl.* (*rare*) 1339; with *gen.* 1336.

Egere with *abl.* 1212, 1335, 1634<sup>\*</sup>, 1714<sup>\*</sup>; with *gen.* 1334.

Ego expressed 1619<sup>\*</sup>, 1704<sup>\*</sup>, 1758<sup>\*</sup>, &c.

Egredi urbem 1488<sup>\*</sup>, *comp.* 1121.

Eho 1771 *fin.*<sup>\*</sup>.

*Ellipse of special substantive with certain adjectives* 1063—1066; of oculis (simulis) 1761<sup>\*</sup>; of templum (ad spei) 1280; of sortes 1513<sup>\*</sup>; of vires (tauri) 1643<sup>\*</sup>; of canere 1218; of bibere 1217;

of quam after plus, &c. 1273; of si after tanquam, &c. 1580;

of verbal predicate 1439—1441;

especially of dico, facio, &c. 1441; in nihil aliud (facit) quam 1441; tantum (verum est) quod 1705; di meliora 1129; with *acc.* of exclamations 1128; of apodosis in wishes o si, &c. 1582; with quid si 1578, 1579; with quam, quam qui, &c. 1637—1641; with quasi, tanquam, &c. 1580, 1583; after querere, tentare, &c. 1754; *comp.* also 1750, 1752.

Possible ellipse with *lucri facere* 1307; with ambitus or capitis accusare 1327; with meâ interest 1285; descensuros pollicentur, *Pref. p.* xxiii.

So-called ellipse of uxor, urbem &c. 1280; of causâ 1286, 1283; of pretii *cf.* 1186, 1187, *Pref. p.* lx; of me, te &c. in dico facere 1347; of est 1442, 1443; of esse 1444; of si 1552, 1553.

Ellum *i. e.* en illam) 1128.

Emere parvo 1186, 1188; quanti 1186, 1187; pluris, minoris, &c. 1186, *Pref. pp.* lvii—lxi; bene, male, &c. 1197.

Emolumento esse 1160, *Pref. p.* xliii.

*Emphasis, effect of, on the position of words in sentence* 1048—1052.

En, with *nom.* 1081, 1129; with *acc.* 1128.

Endo 1961, 1963.

Enim 1687<sup>\*</sup>; in answer 2298<sup>\*</sup>; position in sentence 1055; at enim 1623; neque enim 2235; non enim 1532<sup>\*</sup>, 2292<sup>\*</sup>.

Enimvero 2210<sup>a</sup><sup>\*</sup>, 1881<sup>\*</sup>; in answers 2252.

Eo 'I go,' *see* ire.

Eo 'thither' used also of persons and things 1113; used with *gen.* 1296; 'to such a point' 1568(1)<sup>\*</sup>; usque eo, usque ad eo 2189, 2192.

Eo 'by that much': eo...quo 1205, 1643; eo...quantum 1203; 'on that account' eo...quod 1643; eo ipso...quod 2267<sup>\*</sup>; eo...quo 1228; pro eo ut 1707<sup>b</sup>; pro eo...quanti 2075.

Eodem 'to the same place' 1113; recipere 2242<sup>\*</sup>; eodem loci...est 1296.

Equidem 1460\*, 1609\*, 1693\*, 2096\*, &c.

Equis virisque 1239; equo ire 1716\*; advehi 1174; in equo sedere, ex equo pugnare 1177; ex-equis descendere 1779\*.

Eram in apodosi 'should, would, have been' 1520, 1535, 1570; comp. 1656\*; in protasis 1575\*.

Erga, general use of 1929—1932.

Ergo 'therefore,' 'so then,' 1933, 1532 fin.; in answers 2252; 'on account of' with gen. 1934, 1384 fin.\*.

Eripere alicui alicui 1220\*.

Erubesco, with acc. 1121 c, 1123; with inf. 1344.

Erudire aliquem aliqua re 1222, 2014\*.

Erumpere, with acc. 1121.

Eruptione 'making a sally' 1236.

Esse, use in predication 1012, 1017, 1019; with part. pres. 1074, 1163\*; predication of an adj. or subst. without est, &c. 1009, 1017 a, 1442—1444, Pref. p. xxii; position in sentence 1049, 1707 e.

with dative of ind. obj. e.g. formosa est multis 1148; mihi volenti est 1152, 1153, cf. 1409\*; bene, male, pulchre, est mihi 1152, 1153, 1431 c, 1532 a\*; nulli rei esse 1156, Pref. p. xxxvi.; solvendo, oneri ferendo esse 1156, 1382 b; esui et potui esse 1383, Pref. p. xliii; with nom. in similar expressions 1161, Pref. p. xxviii.

with predicative dative, e.g. bono, curæ, &c. 1160, Pref. p. xxviii, &c. usui 1160, 1383, Pref. p. lv; operæ 1283, 1355\*; with predicate in dat., because subject in dat. 1357, Pref. p. xxiii.

with locative: tanti est 1192, 1193; with ablative of price 1196; of description 1232, 1311; quo statu sit 1232:

with genitive, e.g. est prudentis, prudentiæ, &c. 1282; suarum rerum esse 1282; conservandæ libertatis esse 1286, 1394, 1157; of description 1308, 1233; meum est 1282, 1656\*; tua indicatiost 1400:

esse pro hoste, &c. 1159, 1627\*; pro damnato 'as good as condemned' 2073; pro me 'on my side' 1621\*; in expectatione 'to be waited for' 1390; in potestatem 1963 with note:

with adverbs 1019, 1020; e.g. bene see above; clam 1878; contra 1895; extra 1954; impune 1642\*; ita 1607\*, 1621\*, cf. 2115\*; palam 2027; præsto 1134; procul 2080, 2083; prope (est ut) 2091; retro 2105; susque deque 1904;

longum est 'it were tedious' 1535; moris 2180\*; ut est 'as in fact he is' 1707 a; ut est, erat, furiosus, &c. 1707 c; est qui, quatenus, cum, &c. (subj.) 1684, 1686, (ind.) 1687; est quod, quid est quod 1686, 1687; est-ne 'is it so?' 2252\*.

Esto 'be it so' in concessions 1621, 1620\*, 1371 c\*.

Esui esse, Pref. pp. xxxiii, xliii.

Et, general use of 2195; 'also' 2198, 1706\*, 1589\*; 'even' (et istinc) 1541\*, (et ferentes) 1697\*; et...et, et...que 2201; et...neque 2241; et is 2259, 2261; et quidem in replies 'True but,' aye and 1622, 2197; et ipse 1065\*, 1068\*.

Etenim 1683\*.

Etiā 'even' 1687\*; 'actually' 1729\*; in questions of surprise 1611, 1730\*; implying an exhortation 1613; quin etiam 1617; vel etiam 1990\*; præterquam...etiam 2062\*; as an affirmative answer 1563, 1564, 2251, 2253;

etiam si, with subj. 1560, ind. 1561, 1533 aa.

Etsi, with ind. 1561; 'and yet' 2215, 1535 d\*.

Evertere aliquem fortunis 2036\*.

Ex, e, general use 1935—1946; in composition with verbs 1947—1953; often used with abl. after verbs of separation 1263; after constare, consistere 1217; use of acc. after compounds of ex 1121; of a divided whole 1291, 1942; of origin 1939; e.g. parents 1265, domicile 1265



- (*p.* 113); *of the vehicle of medicines*, &c. 1945;  
 ex eo numero qui sunt &c. 1061 *δ*;  
 ex æquo 1941; ex animi sententia 1940, 1695<sup>+</sup>; ex ante preparato 1939; ex asse, *cf.* 1940; ex composito 1941; ex consule 1941; e contrario 2110<sup>+</sup>; ex empto 1941; ex equo 1937, 1177, 1779<sup>+</sup>; ex hīc bona 1731<sup>+</sup>, *cf.* 1941; ex integro 1941; ex itinere 1937; ex parte 1941; e plano 'from level ground,' i.e. 'not on the bench' 1937; ex post facto 2045, 2050; e regione 1940; e *for* ex *republica* 'for the interest of the state' 1086<sup>+</sup>, 1400<sup>+</sup>, 1940; ex se considerari 'from i. e. *by itself*' *cf.* ex *omni* parte 1380<sup>+</sup>; ex senatus consulto 1747<sup>+</sup>; ex sententia 1940, 1751<sup>+</sup>; ex tempore 1938; e vestigio 1938; ex usu 1941, 2146 *c*<sup>+</sup>.  
 Exactor artis 1300.  
 Exadversum, exadversus 1937.  
 Exanchare 1949.  
 Excedere acie 1719<sup>+</sup>; vita 2015<sup>+</sup>.  
 Excidere uxore 'lose his wife' 1695.  
 Exclamare Ciceronem 'to shout out Cicerō' 1120; maximum 'at the top of his voice' 1090.  
 Excrucior animi 1311.  
 Excusare me *ibi* 1120, 1149; aliquid 1313<sup>+</sup>.  
 Exemplū 'according to precedent' 1236; littere hoc exemplū 'letter in these terms' 1131; esse *Prof. p.* xliii.  
 Exire porta 1711<sup>+</sup>.  
 Existimo te posse 1681<sup>+</sup>.  
 Exitio esse alicui 1160, 1184<sup>+</sup>. *Prof. p.* xliii; exitium esse 1161, *Prof. p.* xxviii.  
 Expellere urbe 2000<sup>+</sup>.  
 Experimento *Prof. p.* xliii.  
 Experti si possimus 1754; utrum (*quid*) 2034<sup>+</sup>; aliquid esse 1659<sup>+</sup>; imperium 1190<sup>+</sup>; multos expertus casus 1617<sup>+</sup>.  
 Experts, *with gen.* 1300, 1043<sup>+</sup>; *with acc.* 1303.  
 Expiare scelus in aliquem 1410<sup>+</sup>.  
 Explorato ante 1253  
 Exscidio venire *Prof. p.* xliii.  
 Exsecror aliquem 1740<sup>+</sup>.  
 Expectationi esse *Prof. p.* xliii; in expectatione esse 'be waited for' 1390.  
 Expecto dum, *with subj.* 1664, 1611<sup>+</sup>; *with indic. cf.* 1663, 1642; quam mox (*ind.*) 1760; quid respondeas 1171<sup>+</sup>.  
 Exspoliare aliquem aliqua re 1665<sup>+</sup>.  
 Exstare litteris 1694<sup>+</sup>.  
 Extemplo 1646<sup>+</sup>.  
 Extent of action, expressed by accus. 1086, 1094.  
 Extersui, *Prof. pp.* xxxiii, xliii.  
 Extorquere aliqua alicui 1140, 1571<sup>+</sup>; ex aliquo 1141.  
 Extorris, *with obj.* 1212, 1211.  
 Extra, *generally* use 1954—1960; jocum 'without joking' 1958; noxam 1958; noxiam 1719<sup>+</sup>; numerum, ordinem, sortem 1958<sup>+</sup>; extra redhibitionem 'not matter for rescission of purchase' 1958<sup>+</sup>; extra quam 1959; extra ea 1960.  
 Extrahere aliquid alicui 1144; ex aliquo 1145.  
 Extremo anno 'at the end of the year' 1295.  
 Extrinsecus 2117.  
 Exuere aliquem aliqua re 1212, 1211; exui casuris 1568 *fin.*; exutus pedem vinculis 1126 *fin.*  
 Fabia, of the Fabian tribe 1264 *fin.*  
 Facere aliquid alicuius, 'make something a man's property' 1282, 2075 *fin.*<sup>+</sup>; aliquid alicui 2179<sup>+</sup>; adversus ea, 'transgress these rules' 1603 *fin.*<sup>+</sup>; æqui boni 1191; certiozem rei 1332; compendi 1307; de me 1911; ditionis alienæ 1282; ex heredem 1486<sup>+</sup>; finem rogandi 1669<sup>+</sup>, sollicitudinis 1155; finem orationi 1155; sollem me, 'make me into a bull' 1579<sup>+</sup>; lucrī 1317; ludos me, 'make sport of me' 1120, 1707<sup>+</sup><sup>+</sup>; ludos mihi, 'make sport for me' 1120; mecum, 'make on my side' 1413, 1533<sup>+</sup><sup>+</sup>; missos, 'dismiss' 1401, 1905<sup>+</sup>; modum legendi 1155; quid modi fendo 1154; pluris, minoris 1186, 1187, *Prof. pp.*



- lviii, lxi; palam 2027; prædam aliquid 1073\*; pretium, 'make a bid,' 'set a price' 1400\*; pretium operæ, 'make (i.e. earn) the value of toil' 1281; quid facias huic homini or hoc homine 1223, 1224, 1553\*, 1610\*; recte 2290; recte alicui 1358\*; reliquum 1301; nihil reliqui 1298, 2246 b\*; terunci, 'value at a farthing' 1186; vitulā (sc. sacra) 1224, cf. 1413:  
 fac sciam 1606; faxo visas 2063\*, but see *Prof. p. ciii note*; fac me ut sciam 1601; face ut deferatur 1616\*; facio ut (subj.) 1700, 1619\*; faxo ne juvet 1303\*; faxo erit 1605; facere non possum, quin 1702; facis humaniter, quod 1701; fac me esse, 'suppose me to be' 1621:  
 quid facto opus est 1255, 1256; quod facto usus est 1255 fin., 1256; factum in answers 2251, 2253; factu, *p. 160 note*; facere omitted in some phrases 1441.
- Facilis with such constructions as partienti 1142; partiendæ rei 1142, cf. 1383 (difficilis); ad partiendum 1143, 1377, *Prof. p. lxxv*; partitu 1388:  
 facile, 'easily' 1262\*.
- Facultas with gen. 1037; gen. gerund 1395, 1396\*, 2242\*, 2265\*, *Prof. p. lxxviii*.
- Fænerato, 'with interest' 1291.
- Fænorī, or in fænus dare 1251; fænore accipere 1163.
- Fallere, with participle as sec. pred. 1073; me animi fallit 1321; with gen. 'to cheat of' 1334; non me fallit quin 1768.
- Famæ esse *Prof. p. xliii*.
- Familiaris, with dat. 2192\*.
- Fando audire, 'hear tell' 1239, *Prof. p. lxxv*.
- Fas est 2037\*.
- Fastidio esse *Prof. p. xliii*.
- Fastidiosus, with gen. 1314.
- Fastidire, with gen. 1328; with acc. 1329.
- Faucibus, 'by the pass' 1457\*.
- Favea, 'a lady's maid' 1580\*.
- Favere alicui 1422\*, 1429\*.
- Fautor, with gen. 1734\*.
- Faxo 1486, 1303\*, 1605, 2063\*.
- Fere qualifying nemo 1569\*; ullus 1729\*; semper 1724\*; eodem 2285\*.
- Ferox linguæ 1320.
- Ferre, 'bear,' with inf. object-sentence 1205\*; moleste, with do. 1589 fin.\*; me ortum, 'report me sprung' 1517\*; feror, with sec. pred. 1065\*; præceps amentia 1682\*; ad populum, 'propose' 1648\*; expensum alicui 1134, 1697\*; ferre sumptui 1697\*; mea refert 1285.
- Fessus aliqua re 1547\*.
- Fide jubere, promittere 1245; jussor 1245; fide publica dicere 1245; fide credi, fidei commissum 1143; di vostram fidem 1129; fidem habere alicui 1532 a\*; fides pelago? 1402\*.
- Fidere with abl. 1228; with dat. 1229, 2242\*.
- Fiducia tua, 'confidence in you' 1315.
- Fieri plurimi 1186; alicujus 1282, 2075 fin.\*; quid fiet mihi 1223; me 1224; de me 1912; fit ut (subj.) 1521, 1700. See also Facere.
- Fine genus, 'as far as the knee,' qua fini, 'how far' 2165.
- Finem facere, reperire, &c. alicui rei 1154; alicujus rei 1155, 1574 (2)\*; with gen. gerund 1731\*; tributorum afferre 1516\*.
- Fingere with gen. of quality 1233; finge me esse cum, 'suppose me to be him' 1599, 1621; equum ire, 'train a horse to go' 1312.
- Finitimus with dat. 1720 fin. (*p. 316*)\*.
- Firmamento esse *Prof. p. xliii*.
- Firmus ab equitatu, 'strong in cavalry' 1813.
- Flagitare aliquem aliquid 1122, 1740\*; me ut eloquar 1731\*.
- Flagitio esse *Prof. p. xliii*.
- Flebilis alicui, 'causing one tears' 1146.
- Flere aliquem: cf. flendus Peleus 1570\*.
- Flocci (non) facio 1186, 1187, 1764 fin.\*; non existumo 1611\*.

*Florens aliquam re* 1312.  
*Flumen in apper. de Dracontia* 1730\*;  
*Rhenus* 1813\*.  
*Fons, fons* 1169; *fons locare* 1110;  
*canare* 1708\*.  
*Fove ut amem, amem, &c.* 1369, 1784,  
 1377\*;  
*fove with past part.* 1369.  
*Formidini esse* *Præf. p. xlii.*  
*Forsit* 1331\*;  
*forsman with subj.* 1766,  
*with ind.* 1767.  
*Fortasse riserit* 1343; *dicet* 1347; *dicet*  
*Præf. p. xlii. in commendat.* 1621—1623.  
*Fortassis with ind.* 1341, 1343.  
*Fortis* 1199; *si forte* 1373, 1754\*;  
*nisi forte* 1369, 1373.  
*Fortuito* 1133.  
*Fortunæ esse* *Præf. p. xlii.*  
*Fortis membra* 1107.  
*Frande* 1136, 1064\*;  
*sed frande sat.*  
*"without risk to himself"* 1111; *frandi*  
*esse* 1060, *Præf. p. xlii.*  
*Frequens esse ad signa* 1730\*.  
*Fortis with obj.* 1116; *with dat.* 1117.  
*Frontem vates* 1107.  
*Frontal esse* *Præf. p. xlii.*  
*Fragi* 1160, 1331\*, *Præf. p. xlii.*  
*Fra with obj.* 1116; *with dat.* 1113.  
*Franki with dat.* 1113.  
*Fratura esse* *Præf. p. xlii*\*; *conci-*  
*pere, propere* 1421\*.  
*Frumentum aliquem habere* *Præf. p.*  
*xlii.*  
*Fuas* 1390.  
*Fugiens vitem "wine growing fast"*  
*or "spreading"* 1338\*.  
*Fal amaris different from vum amarus*  
 1433, *and more* (p. 1388, 1479; *for-*  
*rum, with past part.* 1426, 1433;  
*with future part.* 1424; *future with*  
*past part.* 1426, 1433; *with future*  
*part.* 1424; *future, future, with*  
*past part. on dependent hypothetical*  
*statement* 1320, 1377; *future, with*  
*past part.* 1784; *verumtamen* 1422.  
*Fandus evenit* 1663\*;  
*volere* 1600\*.  
*Fungi, with obj.* 1106; *with acc.*  
 1103, 1430\*.  
*Future tense, ind.* 1480—1483; *in*  
*conditional protasis without* 1333;  
*after vum* 1701; *if repeated action*

1717; *obj.* 1369. *For truly, simply,*  
*fall, complete* 1307, *and see under*  
*Perfor* *Latin*.  
*Future participle action with verb*  
*esse ut ind.* 1494, 1500; *in subj.*  
 1507, 1511, 1526;  
*future simple ind.* 1484—1486;  
*in conditional protasis without*  
*acc. hanging with past part.* (p. 120  
*note); in verb part. used for imper.*  
 1389, 1391; *verbum* 1395;  
*future imper.* 1495, 1507, 1603;  
*future inf.* 1369;  
*future in -so, 1486; also 603;*  
*fuso* 1603; *si capso* 1516; *respice*  
 1663\*;  
*in iterasse, emississe* 1575;  
*iniquam dixit, ind.* 1601; *se*  
*emissit* 1631; *surripit* 1641.  
*Fortum esse ut* 1369; *false* 1784.  
*Gander, gaudium* 1100; *manere* 1717\*;  
*vates* 1331, 100\* (p. 100; *Fortum*  
*false* 1600\*;  
*gaudio esse* *Præf. p. xlii.*  
*Gauder, use of infinitive of* 1060—  
 1063; *attraction of gauder* 1068.  
*Geminare (see also Latinate)*;  
*geminal use* 1000, 1176 *and note*;  
*different from other nouns* 1078,  
 1079; *use of geminal geminare*  
 1394—1396; *expressing age* 1310;  
*ornd* 1322; *gemination, verbal, material*  
 1301—1306, *cf.* 1309 *fin.*; *divided*  
*while (partitive geminatus)* 1390—  
 1396; *usual dicit* 1310—1316; *re-*  
*mitter* 1318; *unimodary* 1321—1326;  
*gemality* 1305; *geminal* 1178, *cf.*  
 1130; *place where (iteration)* 1180;  
*gerae, vates* 1186, 1187; *gemine*  
 1157, 1186, 1188, 1394; *gemity or*  
*diminutive* 1133, 1305, 1309; *un-*  
*iter hanging with dicit* 1154, 1155,  
 1157, 1317; *with obj. temp.* 1200  
*with* 1305; 1310 *with* 1320; 1311,  
 1309; 1334—1339; *with acc.*  
 1310—1309; *with acc.* *and ad*  
 1313; *with omission of acc.* 1188,  
 1411, 1480; *rare after geminative*  
*dicit*, *Præf. p. xlii*.  
*Dependent on germinare, as indica-*  
*tion for a noun elsewhere expressed,*

*e. g.* quo tyrannorum 1280; hanc laudis 1302; quam annorum nonaginta 1311 (*p.* 129).

*Genitive in various uses, dependent on various words, e. g.:*

absolvere 1324, 1325; abstinere 1338; abundans 1211; abunde 1296; acervus 1304; adfatim 1296; adfinis 1280; adhuc (locorum) 1299; adligare 1324; admonere 1332; adpetens 1314; æmulus 2181\*; æstimare 1186; agere 1324; aliquid 1296; ambiguus 1318; amicus 1280; anquirere 1324; anxius 1318; arbitrato 1246; arbor 1304; arguere 1324; auctor 1152 fin.\*, 1395, 1396; auspicio 1246; casus 1279; causa 1302, &c.; causā 1115 (2), 1280; cautio 1312; certiorē facere 1332; classis 1302; coactu 1389; commonefieri 1332; communis 1280; compertus 1326; complere 1215, 1335; compos 1314, 1534\*; condicio (paciscendi) 2289\*; conscius 1314; consensio 1395; consilia 1395; consors 1300; conspectus (oculorum) 1721 fin.\*; constare 1188; constrata 1293; consuetudo 1280; consultus 1316, 1319; copia 1395, 1396; credere 1334; cunctatio 1312; damnare 1324, 1325; decipi 1338; deprecator 1312; desinere 1338; desipere 1321 fin.; despiciens 1314; deversorium 1394 *c*; dies 1157, 1394 *a*; dignus 1201; disertus 1320; dissensio 1318; diverticulo 1248 *note*; dives 1211; dolor (injuriae) 'arising from' 1545 (*p.* 233); dubitatio 'doubt respecting' 1318; dubius 1318; ducere 1282; edax 1314; egere 1334, 1335; emere (pluris) 1186; eo 1296; ergo 1934; esse 1282; exactior 1320; expers 1300; extracta (*plur.*) 2144; extremum 1292; facere 1306; facultas 1037\*, 1395; fallere 1334; fastidire 1328; fautor 1734\*; ferox 1320; fertilis 1443\*; fessus 1337; fieri 1282; fine 2165; finis 1155; genus 1302; gerens 1314; gratia 1115 (2), 1280; habere (pensi) 1300; hoc 1296; id

(ætatis) 1092; ignarus 1745 fin.\*; imber 1304; immunis 1336; imperium 'command over' 1318; implere 1215, 1334, 1335; impotens 1314; impunitas 1318; incertus 1318; incuriosus 1665\*; indoctus 1316; ingens 1320; inimicus 2277\*; injussu 1246; inops 1336; insimulare 1324; insons 1326; instar 1280; intemperantia 1565\*; interest 1284, 1285; interritus 1318; invidere 1330; ira 1409, 1227\*; irritus 1320; istuc (ætatis) 1092; judicari 1325; iudicium 1156\*; lacrimæ (sunt rerum) 1433\*; lassus 1337; lepidus 1320; levare 1334; lex 1157; liberare 1324; lites 1324; locus 1157; ludus 1304; majores 1273; manifestus 1321, 1326; maturus 1320; maximē 1294; maximus 1290; medium 1242; meminisse 1332; memor 1314; minor (capitis) 1320; minores 1273; minime (gentium) 1299; mirari 1330; misereri 1328; misericordia 1409; missu 1389\*; modicus 1320; modus 1155, 1395; monstrum (hominis) 1299; mos (impigræ linguæ) 1545\*; multi 1290; naufragus 2277\*; nemo (omnium) 1688\*; nihil 1296; nomine 1244; nudus 1211 (*p.* 89); numerus (trecentorum) 1302; (equorum) 1304; occultus 1320; omnia (retinendæ dominationis) 1394; onustus 1337; opinio 'reputation for' 1318; opus 1225; orator 1310; orbus 1211 (*p.* 89); otium 1395; pænitet 1328; par 1280; particeps 1281, 2192\*; partim 1294, 2292; patiens 1314, 1730\*, 2159\*; periculum 1315; peritus 1314; permissu 1746\*; piget 1328; pigritia 1312; plenus 1336; pondo 1209; popularis 1117\*; possessio 1312; postulare 1324; potestas 1312, 1396; potire, potiri 1334; prædæ 1304; præsidium (legum 'afforded by the laws') 1545\*; in prætervectione 1963; precatio 1312; pretium 1280; profugus 1318; promittere 1324; proprius 1280; prudens 1314;

prudencia 1316; pudet 1328; pudor 1409. 1053<sup>+</sup>; purgare 1324; quid (mulieris) 1296; quidquam 1296; quod 1296; quod (ejus) 1297; rectus 1320; refert 1284, 1285; refertus 1336; regione 1170. 1173; e regione 1940; in rem 1588<sup>+</sup>; reminisci 1333; res minus commode gestæ 1686<sup>+</sup>; respectu 1389; reus 1326; ritu 2165<sup>+</sup>; satur 1336; scelus 1299; secretus 1335; seras 1320; signum 1280; similis 1314. 1317; similitudo 1314 (p. 130); socius 1300; solus 1290; spatium 1248. 1280; spernendus 1320; stare 1188; scudere 1328; subita 1280; suspectus 1326; tacita 1280; tædet 1328; tantumdem 1296; tenax 1314; teneri 1324; tenuis 2161; trepidus 1318; vacatio 1318; vacuus 1533<sup>+</sup>; ubicunque 1294; vectioes 1389<sup>+</sup>; venire in mentem 1332; vereri 1328, 1329; vicinus 2285<sup>+</sup>; viduatus 1211; virtus 1302; ultimum 1296; vicivus 1336; voluntate 1246; voluptas 1428<sup>+</sup>; urbs 1302; usus 1225; uterque 1292.

*Genium after ubicunque, &c.* 1294. 1559<sup>+</sup>.

*Genus* (id. quod, omne) = ejus generis, &c. 1104; quod genus 'as for instance' 1103; quo genere 1103. 1132; cujus generis 1103. 1328 (p. 146). cf. 1308; cujusque generis 2290; in isto genere esse 1721<sup>+</sup>; hoc in genere 'in a thing of this kind' 1732<sup>+</sup>.

*Gerens negotii* 1075. 1314; gerere morem alicui 1399<sup>+</sup>; aurum alicui coribus 1571<sup>+</sup>; rem laurocinis 1488<sup>+</sup>.

*Gerund and gerundium: nature of* 1374; origin of form. *Prof. p.* lxxxv; general use of. 1376; in oblique (locative and instrumental) 1384—1586; 1222. 1238. 1250; of place whence 1291. 1392; in accusative 1377. 1378; in dative 1156. 1389; in genitive 1394. with causā, gratiā 1115 (2); (gerund) with plural noun 1396; *Prof. p.* lxxviii; (gerun-

dium) after esse to denote purpose 1286. 1288:

in nominative (and oblique accusative) 1398. 1399; with agent in dative 132; also 1146; notion of obligation. *Prof. pp.* lxxi—lxxviii.

*Gerund, limitations of use* 1375; sometimes apparently passive 1584<sup>+</sup>. *Prof. pp.* lxxii—lxxv; use in nominative, &c. with direct obj. 1298. *Prof. pp.* lxxi—lxxiii; English gerund. *Prof. p.* xcii.

*Gerundive formed from deponents, Prof. p.* lxxv; as substitutes for gerund: in oblique cases. *Prof. pp.* lxxvii—lxx; in nominative. *Prof. p.* lxxiii; with agent expressed by abl. with ab 1147. *Prof. p.* lxxiv; as oblique gerund. to object of curare, dare, &c. 1401. *Prof. p.* lxxvi; as a mere attribute with meaning of destiny 1403. *Prof. p.* lxxvii; with meaning of possibility 1404. *Prof. p.* lxxvii; as present part. *Prof. p.* lxxviii; use of form in -bando with direct object 1405:

use of gerundive agreeing with unexpressed antecedent of a relative clause. e.g. ad sepeliendos 1377; populandis 1585; a violandis 1392; comp. ad prohibendos. si, 1750 Æ.<sup>+</sup>

*Gignentia* 'growing things' *Prof. p.* lxxvii.

*Gladiatoribus* 'at the gladiator-show' 1180. 2173<sup>+</sup>.

*Glorie esse* *Prof. pp.* xxxvi. xlv.

*Glorie aliquid* 1094; aliqua re, or in aliqua re 1093.

*Gratiam habere alicui* 'feel thankful to one' 1120—1711<sup>+</sup>; referre 1147<sup>+</sup>; inire apud aliquem 1884; gratias agere alicui 'return thanks to one' 1147<sup>+</sup>. 1443<sup>+</sup>:

gratiā. with gen. or obj. pron. 1044. 1052<sup>+</sup>; quā gratiā 'wherefore' 1765<sup>+</sup>; with gen. of gerund 1115 (2); gratiis, gratiis 1198. 1229. 1642<sup>+</sup>.

*Gratuito* 1255.

*Gratulari alicui recuperatam libertatem* 1120; de reditu 1721<sup>+</sup>; cum venit 1725.



Gratulationi esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Habere annos decem '*be ten years old*' 1185\*; febre 1120; gratiam alicui 1711\*; in gratiam, *p.* 397 *note*; honorem alicui 1725\*; metum 1399\*; in hostium numero 1175; rectam viam ad '*make straight for*' 1398\*; susque deque 1904; tecum 1135; tibi 1134, 1599\*:

*with obl. pred. noun* (bellum integrum habeo) 1456\*; *with gerundive as pred. of obj.* (dicendum habui) 1401; *with past part.* (dictum habui) 1064, 1402: *with infin.* (dicere habui) 1345; *with final relative clause* (quæ dicerem habui) 1345, 1468\*; *with predicative dat.* 1162, *Pref. p.* xxix: = habitare ' *dwell*' 1413:

haberi *with sec. pred.* 1061b; aliquid 1061b; iudicium numero 1172.

Habilis tundendo '*for beating*' *passively* 1382\*, *cf. Pref. p.* lxx.

Hactenus 2164; hac...tenus 1588\*.

'*Half as much*' dimidio minoris, 1188.

Haud, haud 2229, 2231; haud scio an 1764, 2256; haudquaquam 1570\*; neque haud (= neque) 2248.

Hei mihi 1152; hei mihi quom nihil est 1632.

Hem 1120\*; *comp. em* 1114b.

Hercle 1395, 1398, 1532b\*; *put between prep. and its case* 1872; hercule 1540\*; mehercules 1129, 1958\*.

Herctum (or erctum) ciere '*to summon to divide (an inheritance)*' 1114; iudicium fam. erciscundæ 1156.

Heres ex deunce 1940.

Heus 1618\*, 2221\*.

Hic distinguished from ille, iste 2258—2261; '*latter*' 1534 *fin.*\*; *referring to what is subsequent* 2027\*; his quattuor annis '*within four years from now*' 1182; hic terror = huius rei terror 1279; hoc præmi 1296; hoc litterarum 1720\*; hoc non dolere 1707d *fin.*\*; hoc ipsum nihil agere 1717\*; hoc pugnatur 1423; hoc luciscit 1431b; præter hanc laudis (*sc. mercedem*) 1302; quicquid huius 1290; huius (*accom-*

*panied with gesture*) of price 1187; hoc noctis '*at this time of night*' 1092, 1091; hoc populo '*with a people like this*' 1242; quo...hoc *with comparatives* 1643; *cf.* 1204.

Hic *locative of persons, things, &c.* 1171.

Hiemabit '*there will be wintry weather*' 1431.

Hieme 1178\*, 1180.

Hinc 1807; *of persons, things, &c.*, 1263, *cf.* 1751\*; hinc...inde 2215\*.

Homo frugi 1195, *Pref. p.* xlv; nihili 1195; trium litterarum 1308; multarum imaginum 1310; plebis 2246a\*.

Honorem alicui habere 1725\*, 1745\*; honoris causa nominare '*name with respect*' 2052\*; honori esse *Pref. p.* xlv; honore me honestare 1725\*; honore honestiorem 1099.

Horrere *with acc.* '*shudder at*' 1123, 1901\*, 1960\*.

Horsum 2175.

Hortamento esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Hortari milites pauca 1094, 1093; faciant 1606; ut faciant 1371c, 1779\*; ne faciant 1218\*, 1371c\*.

Hospitio patere *Pref. p.* xlv.

Huc *of persons, things, &c.* 1113.

Humi '*on the ground*' 1168; humo 1258.

Hypothecæ esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

*Hypothetical sentences* (i.e. *apodosis of conditional*), in subj. 1528—1546, 1552—1562; *use of tenses*, 1518, 1530; *with condition expressed by phrase only* 1534; *not expressed at all* 1536—1542; *hypothetical subj. in 2nd pers. sing.* ('you' = 'one') 1544; *hypothesis in dep. interrog. or consec. sentence* 1521, 1568, 1572: ausim 1540; censuerim 1540; cuperem 1536; dicat aliquis 1542, *Pref. p.* ci; mallet 1536; putes, putares 1544; quis dubitet? quis dixerit? 1538; velim, vellem 1536.

Jacere aliqua re '*be overthrown by*' 1220.

Jam, in argument, '*then again*' 1283\*;



- jam...jam, 'at one time'... 'at another time' 2205; jam diu, jam pridem, jam dudum *with pres. tense* 1460, 1723; *with perfect* 1476 fin.
- Ibi of persons, things, &c., 1153, 1171.
- Ictus femur, 1127.
- Id ætatis, id temporis, 1092, 1684\*; id genus 'of that sort' 1104.
- Idcirco 1868; *answering to* quia 2214\*; *to* quod 1558\*, 2232; *to* si 1533 aa; *to* ut 1868, 1638.
- Idem *general use* 2291—2294; *with dative* 1142, 1143; idem ac 1581; idem et 1897\*; idem = 'at the same time,' 'notwithstanding' 1732\*; alter idem 'a second self' 2294.
- Identidem 2263\*.
- Ideo ut *with subj.* 1465\*, 1642\*.
- Idibus, 1180.
- Idoneus qui 1634; alicui rei 2035\*; ad aliquam rem 1610\*.
- Jejunus *with abl.* 1335.
- Igitur, *position in sentence* 1055; *as second, &c. word* 1616\*, 1632 fin.\*; *as first word* 1645 fin.\*.
- Ignarus *with gen.* 1745 fin.\*.
- Ignominia esse *Pref. p.* xlv.
- Ignoscere *with dat.* 1422\*, 1599\*; *with double indirect obj.* 1163.
- Ilico 'on the spot' i.e. 'at once' 1120 a fin.\*.
- Illabi cerebro 1574 (4)\*.
- Ille, *general use distinguished from hic*, istic 2258—2261; 'former' 1534 fin.\*; *with adj. e.g.* miser ille 1772\*; illis quattuor annis 'in four years from then' 1182; ille of future time 1684\*, 1685\*; of something subsequent 1552\*, 1741\*; ille qui 1533 fin.\*; ille quidem, *in making concessions*, 2259, 2261.
- Illo 'thither' 1108\*.
- Imber lapidum, &c., 1304.
- Immane quantum 1647.
- Imminere spei, 1666\*; urbi 2146\*.
- Immo 2252, 2254, 1619\*, 2184\*; vero 1652\*, 2211; certe 2184\*.
- Immolare alicui alicui 1138.
- Immunis *with abl.* 1263, 1339; *with gen.* 1336.
- Impedimento esse 1160, *Pref. p.* xlv;
- impedimentum esse 1161, *Pref. p.* xxviii.
- Impedire aliquid 1604\*; aliquem facere 1348; ne faciat 1535b\*; quominus faciat 1644.
- Impendio *with comparative* 1204, 1205; *with constare*, 1198.
- Impensæ esse *Pref. p.* xlv.
- Imperare, 'put as a task on one,' alicui aliquid 1140, cf. 1347; alicui agere 1345; ut agat 1648; 'command' alicui 1344; quæ imperantur 1347, 1643; deduci imperantur 1353.
- Imperative, *general use* 1597—1603; *distinction of tenses* 1495; *as apodosis of conditional sentence* 1571; *as protasis of do.* 1557; *used parenthetically* 1607, 1761; *expressed by subj. in orat. obl.* 1783.
- Imperfect indic., *general distinction from other tenses* 1448—1454; *different meanings* 1467—1471; *use in letters* 1468; *after postquam*, 1471; *in hypothetical and conditional sentences* 1533; *in statements of duty, possibility, &c.* 1535.
- Imperfect subjunctive: *general uses* 1507—1510; *in hypothetical and conditional sentences* 1530; *dependent on historical present* 1512, 1514; *in hypothetical sentences, how expressed in orat. obl.* 1784; *in consecutive sentences* 1696.
- Impersonal verbs 1431; *often with infinitive clause for subject* 1355—1357; *passive verbs used impersonally* 1422; *with neuter pronoun* 1423; *impersonal use of passive participle* 1411.
- Impertire alicui periculis sublevandis 1382a; populo 1557.
- Impingere fustem alicui 1579\*.
- Implere aliquem aliqua re 1216, 1572\*; alicujus rei 1334, 1335.
- Imploro deum fidem 1129.
- Imponere aliquid alicui 1144, 1051\*, 1066\*; *in aliquem* 1145.
- Impune credit alicui aliquid 1745\*; esse 1642\*; includere 1642\*.
- In, *general usage* 1961—1978; *in composition* 1979—1985, 1121; *in with*

*abl. used parallel to dative* 1145; *to simple abl. of place where* 1167, 1175, 1177; *after inesse* 1153; *of a divided whole* 1291, 1972; *tota Italia and in tota Italia* 1173; *of time within which* 1183, 1968; *with accus. of place to which* 1111:

*in antecessum dare*, 'advance' 1973; *in aurem dormire*, 'sleep on an ear' 1965; *in dies*, '(increasing) every day' 1970; *in eum diem*, 'up to that day' 1990\*, 1967; *in expectatione esse*, 'be expected' 1390; *in incertum decernere*, 'decree while this or that was undecided' 1973; *in integro*, 'untouched' 1975; *in noctem*, 'till night' 1967; *in numerum*, 'keeping time' 1973; *in ordinem cogi*, 'forced into the ranks,' i.e. 'to have one's authority set at naught' 1962; *in ore*, *in oculis*, 'before the face,' 'eyes' 2026\*; *in potestatem esse*, *p.* 397 *note*; *in rem præsentem venire*, 'to come to the spot' 1962; *in præsens*, *in præsentia*, 'for the present' 1967, 1968; *in præsentiarum* 529; *in promptu esse*, *trahere* 1390; *in quæstione esse*, 'be to seek' 1390; *in hanc rem arbitri* 1592\*; *in rem esse*, 'to concern the matter' 1973, *cf.* 1755\*; *in rem Bacchidis* 1588; *in parentis re et periculo*, 'when it touched his parent's property or life' 1978; *in solidum agere*, 'bring an action for the whole' 2164\*; *in tempore*, 'in good time' 1179, 1968; *in ea verba accipere*, 'to accept on those terms' 1973; *in vicem*, 'in turn' 1973; *in usu esse* 1390.

*Inanis with abl.* 1183 *fin.*\*

*Inaugurato* 1253.

*Inaurari aliquem* 1588\*.

*Incertus*, *with dependent question* 1762.

*Incidere huc*, 'fall on this expression' 1608\*.

*Incitare* 1980.

*Includere aliquem urbi* 1144; *in urbe* 1145.

*Inconciliare* 1984.

*Inconsulto* 1253.

*Incultu* 1239.

*Incuriosus*, *with gen.* 1665\*.

*Incutere terrorem plebi* 1492; *pollicem limini* 1663\*.

*Inde*=*ea de re* 1263; *stupor silentium-que inde* (= *ex stupore ortum*) 2056\*; *hinc...inde* 2215 *fin.*\*

*Indecere* 1984.

*Indicative: general use* 1445; *distinction of tenses* 1447—1454; *in statements of duty, power, &c.* 1520, 1535; *of wish* 1587; *command* 1589, (*vide-ris, videbis*) 1593, 1595; *purpose with future participle* 1494, 1570;

*In the following sentences:*

*Causal*, *quod, quia, &c.* 1745—1749, *comp.* 1701—1705; *cum* 1725;

*Comparative*, *alius ac, idem ac, tam...quam*, 1581, 1583; *tantus...quantus, tam...quam, sic...ut* 1635—1641; *eo...quo, quam, 'than'* 1643; *ut, sicut, ita ut* 1707; *citius quam* 1671—1675;

*Concessive*, 1621—1629; *etsi* 1561; *quamvis* 1627; *quamquam* 1697; *ut* 1707 *b, c, d*; *cum* 1731;

*Conditional, in apodosis* 1533; *with subjunctive protasis* 1554, 1556, 1570, 1574; (*indicative in protasis without si* 1553; *with si* 1533, 1561—1579, 1717, 1751—1755;

*Dependent, on infinitive* 1777, 1784*c*; *in orat. obl.* 1797—1799; *on subjunctive* 1779;

*Definitive*, 1681—1691 (*see also below under Relative*);

*Interrogative*, 1609—1619, 1759, 1761; *repeating words of other speaker* 1771;

*Limiting*, 1693—1697;

*Relative*, *qui* 1633, 1681—1695, 1711, 1741; '*such*' 1715; *ut qui* 1641; *quam qui* 1641; *quippe qui* 1711, 1713; *quantus* 1637, 1693; *quisquis, quicumque, &c.* 1697, 1717;

*Substantival, with quod* 1701—1705;

*Temporal, cum* 1719—1723, 1733; *donec, dum, quoad, quamdiu* 1661—1669, 1458, 1784; *antequam, priusquam* 1671, 1675, 1462; *ubi, quoties, simul ac, postquam* 1717, 1719;

*Indicative in clauses with fæxo* 1605; forsitan 1767; fortasse 1547, 1621; nescio quis 1769; nisi forte, nisi vero 1569; modo 1693; præquam 1645; præut 1707; proquam 1645; prout, pro eo ut 1707; quasi 1583; quo 1643; seu, sive 1563—1567; sunt qui 1687; tantum quod 1705;

*In the following and the like expressions:* dicet aliquis 1545, *Pref. p. cii*; fortasse dices 1547, *Pref. p. ciii*; dico quod sentio 1763; etiam taces? 1613; licet, licebit 1625, 1606; peream si (si non) 1575; quam vis, quam volet 1624; quid ago? adeo? 1609; quid si manebo? 1579; quod dicis 1749; quod facere poteris 1695; quantum in te est, quod ad te attinet 1695; satius est, 'it were better' 1708\*, cf. 1535; videro, viderit 1593, *Pref. p. cvi*.

Indicio esse *Pref. p. xlv*; indicium esse *Pref. p. xxviii*.

Indico bellum alicui 1058\*, 1064\*; exercitum Romam, 'summon to Rome' 1108; ut convenient 1513.

Indigere *with genitive* 1334; *with abl.* 1335, 1828\*.

Indignor quod spiras 1745; te spirare 1745\*; indignatur se 1546\*.

Indignus *with ablative* 1202; *with genitive* 1201.

Indo nomen alicui 1059.

Indu 1961.

Induco animum, *see under* Animum.

Inducor artus tūnica 1126(1); inductus cornibus aurem 1126(2).

Indulgere, 'concede,' *with acc.* 1123.

Induor faciem 1126(2); indutus *with acc.* 1127(2).

Indutui *Pref. pp.* xxxiii, xlv.

Inesse, *of mental qualities*, alicui *or in aliquo* 1153, 1145 (*p.* 61).

Infamiae esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Inficior genas 1126.

Inferre deos Latio (*dat.*) 1664\*.

Infestus alicui 1069\*.

*Infinitive: its substantival character* 1160; *its verbal character* 1161;

*use of its tenses* 1364—1368; *special use of perfect tense* 1370—1372; *completed future* 1369; *periphrasis for fut. infin.* 1369;

*use as direct object to a verb* 1344, 1345; *to a verb of saying or thinking* 1347, 1777\* (*putas posse*); *object of thing (besides an object of person)* 1348; *to passive verbs* 1349; *in exclamations* 1358;

*use as primary (direct) predicate or historic infinitive* 1359; *after cum* 1733; *as (primary) oblique predicate (i. e. acc. and infin.)* 1351, 1367; *as secondary (direct) predicate* 1353;

*use as subject or in apposition to subject* 1355, 1532aa\* (*p.* 222);

*use with pronouns like articles (hoc non dolere, &c.)* 1355, 1707d\*, 1717\*; *after substantive* 1346, 1360; *comp.* 1345; *after adjectives* 1361; *denoting purpose* 1115, 1362;

*use with sec. pred.* 1017, *Pref. p. xxii*; *but with no subject expressed* 1357, *Pref. p. xxiii*, 1726\*;

*use in orat. obl.* 1352, 1781; *after cum* 1796; *in questions* 1782, 2132\*, 2151\*; *by attraction* 1784;

*simple infinitive, used after (or with) the following words:* adactus 1932\*; æcum erat 1566; ægrotus 1361; aggrediōr 1344; amo (*scripsisse*) 1848\*; amor 1344; apparo 1733\*; assuefieri 1349; audeo 1344; aveo 2273\*; blandus 1361; causor 1283\*; certum est 1355; cesso 1642\*; cogito 1344; cogor 1353; comminiscor 1594\*; concedo 1357; conceditur 1873\*; consilium capio 1345; conor 1533aa\*; cupio 1365; curo 1344; curro 1362; damnas 1190\*, 1603\*; debeo 1344, 1371a; delector 1439\*; desino 1344; desisto 1344; desitus 1353; destino 2163\*; dico 1347; dicor 1353, 2285; difficile est 1682\*; dignus 1361; disco 1344; do 1345; doceor 1349; dono 1363; enitescor 1344; est 1354; est in animo 1459\*; fingo 1363; habeo 1344; impero 1345; imperor 1353; induco in animum 1344; induco

animum 1771\*; insto 1344; insuesco 1344; intelligor 1353; inter 1363; intermitto 1561\*; introeo 1362; jubeo 1344, 1371*d*; jubeor 1350, 1353; licet 1355, 1357; longum est 1535*a*; maturo 1068\*, 1344; metuo 1771\*; ministro 1345; mitto 1115, 1362; modus 1360; moneo 1345; natus 1363; necesse est 1357; nefas est 1534; nequeo 1611\*; nescio 1344, 1471\*; nolo 1345; obstino 1344; occipio 1611\*; occupo 1344; operæ est 1345; operam do 1345; oportet 1430\*; opus est 1255; parco 1344; paro 1344; pergo 1386\*, 1432 fin.\*; periculum 1360; peritus 1361; piger 1361; possum 1344, 1371, 1520, 1521; prodest 1371*c*; prohibeor 1349; propero 1422; putor 1353; ratio 1360; reformido 1978\*; religio 1360; remitto 1600\*; reperior 1353; satius est 1708\*; scio 1344, 1465\*; soleo 1344, 1427\*; statuo 1344; studeo 1350; suadeo 1345; tempus est 1360; timeo 1371*c*; turpe est 1726\*; valeo 1931\*; venio 1362; venio in suspicionem 1347; vereor 1344; veto 1344; vector 1349, 1728\*; videor 1353; volo 1344, 1371.

*Accusative with infin. (both as object-sentence and as combination of objects of thing and person), after, or with, the following:* accipio 1351, 1784\*; adigo 1110\*, 1932\*; admonéo 1351; affirmo 1617\*; ago illud 1533*c*; animadverto 2174\*; apparet 1471\*; arbitror 1633 fin.\*; arguo 1348; assuefacio 1348; auctor sum 1352; audio 1672 fin.\*; censeo 1352; cogito 1533*a*\*; cognosco 1644 fin.\*; concedo 1179; conficior 1351; constat 1702\*; constituo 1677\*; criminor 1395; cupio 1351; decet 1356; dehortor 1348; despero 1567\*; dico 1784\*; dicitur 1351; disputo, 'maintain' 1517\*; do 2252\*; doceo 1348, 1110\*; doleo 1677\*; dolore afficior 1352; edico 2288\*; efficio 1351; est 1356; pro Cæsare fuit 2072*a*\*; existimo 2280\*;

fac 1621; fama est 1104\*; fateor 1535*c*; ferò 1205\*; fero præ me 2053; fidem do 1475; fingo 1599\*; impero 1351; impedio 1348; indignor 1745\*; infitias eo 2016\*; insimulo 1348; intelligitur 1672\*; jubeo 1348, 1351; juvat 1356; me mini 1351, 1372; moneo 1348; narro 1352; necesse est 1356; nego 1538\*; nolo 1621\*; obliviscor 1458\*, 1653\*; opinio 1351; oportet 1356, 1371; opus est 1253, 1356; paret 1753; patior 1747\*; persuadeo 1422 (*p.* 176)\*; prohibeo 1348; propero 1776\*; puto 1351, 1533*c*\*; recordor 1643\*; religio est 1161\*; rumor 1733\*; scisco 1351; scribo 1784*d*\*; sentio 1535*a*\*; signum est 1729\*; sino 1348, 1351; spero 1436\*; spes 1352; suspicor 1351; ille timor 1717\*; trado 2288\*; verum est 1706\*; veto 1348; utile est 1638\*; video 1351; videtur 1356; volo 1351.

Infitias ire 1114*b*; hoc 1407\*; *with infin. object-sentence* 2016\*.

Infra, *general use of* 1986—1990; infra quam 1986.

Ingratis 1239.

Inhibere 1413, 1983.

Inibi 1964, 1969.

Inicere eo 2143\*.

Inimicus, *with dat. or gen.* 1143; Milonis 1351\*; otii 2277\*.

Inire prælium 1217; consilia 1756\*.

Initio 1180.

Injuria 1239.

Injussu 1544\*; meo 1239, 1532*b*\*, 1728\*; alicujus 1246, 2264 fin.\*

Inlucere, *with acc.* 2292\*.

Inopinatum omnibus 1545 fin.\*

Inops, *with gen.* 1336, 2214\*; *with dat.* 1339.

Inquam, *in repeating and emphasizing a statement* 1094\*, 2277\*; *comp.* 1601\*; *inquiet, with subj. unexpressed* 1430; *inquiet (inquiāt) aliquis* 1545, *Pres. p. ci*; *inquires, inquis, Pres. p. ciii.*

Inridere nos 1611\*.

Insanum, *used adverbially* 1095.



- Inscribere ædis 1120*a*; inscriptus nomina 1126*b*.  
 Insectari aliquem 1625\*.  
 Insidere locum 1121, 1377\*.  
 Insidiari ovili (*dat.*) 2149\*.  
 Insidias alicui dare 2175\*.  
 Insignis ad iridendum 1377.  
 Insimulo 1984; aliquem fecisse 1348; aliquem fraudis 1324.  
 Insinuare se plebi 1898\*.  
 Insistere rationem 1612\*.  
 Insitus alicui 1069\*.  
 Insons culpæ 1326.  
 Instar *with gen.* 1280, 1345\*; *cf.* 897.  
 Instillo lumini oleum 1546\*.  
 Insto, *with infin.* 1344; *with acc.* 1123.  
 Insuesco, *with infin.* 1344, 1574(3)\*; insueta rudentem 1097.  
 Intellego deos esse 1693\*; castra muniri 1672\*.  
 Inter, *general use of* 1991—1997; *in composition* 1998—2000; *used with inf.* 1363; *with gerund and gerundive* 1378; *separated from its case by simul* 1992; *put after its case* 1805, 1991;  
     inter cæsa et porrecta, 'between the slaughter and the offering,' = 'between cup and lip' 1994; inter falcarios, 'in the scythe-makers' quarter;' inter lignarios, 'in joiners' street' 1991; inter hæc, 'while this was going on' 1992; inter manus, 'in one's arms' 1991; inter nos, i.e. 'confidentially' 1997; inter paucos 1995; inter se, *used for se (sibi)* inter se 2306, 1997, 1670\*, 2034\*, 2288\*; inter sicarios, 'on a charge of being among the assassins' 1327, 1995; inter vias, 'on the road' 1946\*.  
 Intercedere legi 2233\*.  
 Intercludere aliquem aliqua re 1262.  
 Interdicere aliquem aliqua re 1212; alicui aliqua re 1135.  
 Interdicto 1239.  
 Interdus 1993.  
 Interdum 1714\*, *contrasted with non-nunquam*, &c. 1304\*.  
 Interea 1993; interea loci 1993; cum interea 1732, 1733; interea cum 1458.  
 Interesse alicui rei 1674\*; in aliqua re 1729\*; interest Ciceronis 1284; meâ 1188, 1285; ad meam rem 1287, 1574(3)\*; tanti, tantum, magis, &c. 1189.  
 Interjacere, *with dat.* 1144; *with acc.* 1145.  
 Interibi 1993.  
 Interim, 'meanwhile' 1458\*; cum interim 1732, 1733; interim dum 1458, 1663; interim.....interim, 'sometimes'... 'at other times' 1993.  
 Interior ictibus 1266.  
 Interitus fame, 'death by starvation' 1228.  
 Intermitto dare 1561\*; nunquam diem quin 1698.  
 Interpellare aliquem 1708\*.  
 Interpres ei rei, 'a go-between in the business' 1580\*.  
 Interrogative particles 2249—2256; pronouns 2296; dependent interrog. sentences 1758; quasi-dependent do. 1761.  
 Interrogo aliquem aliquid 1122; de aliqua re 1125.  
 Intertraho aliquid alicui 1486\*.  
 Intervallo sex milium 1087; longo 1248, 1610\*.  
 Intervenie alicui discenti 1284\*.  
 Intestato 1253.  
 Intra, *general use of* 2001—2004; intra dies centum, intra Kalendas 2003.  
 Intransitive verbs: defined 1414; become transitive by stretch of conception 1123, 1120*c*; or by composition 1121, 1120*b*; sometimes have a personal pass. 1421; are usually impersonal in pass. 1416, 1422; with acc. of extent 1094; or cognate 1100; with indirect obj. 1132; with abl. of part concerned 1210; have gerund, but not gerundive 1374; except sometimes Pref. p. lxxvii.  
 Intrare mundum 1553\*.  
 Intrinsecus 2117.  
 Intro 2001.  
 Introrsus 2175.  
 Intus, *general use* 2006—2009; as prep. with abl. 2010.  
 Invadere civitatem 1120*b*; hostes 2122 fin.\*; aciem 1437\*.



Inventrix, *with gen.* 1058\*.

Invidere, *construction of* 1330, 1331.

Invidi mei 1280; invidia mea, 'envy of me' 1315; senatoria 1315.

Invidiæ esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Invito me 1246, 1536\*; invita Minerva 1589\*.

Inurere notam alicui 1144.

Inutilis rei 1382a; ad rem 2037\*.

Joco, joculo 1239.

Ipse, *general use* 2262, 2263; me ipse, me ipsum 2264; ipsum *for se* 2269; suo ipse casu 1070, 1073\*, *Pref. p.* xxiii; is et ipse 1068, 1065\*; triginta dies ipsi, 'exactly thirty days' 1723\*; nunc ipsum, tum ipsum 1095; in ipso tempore 1179; re ipsa 1639\*.

Ira interfecti domini, 'on account of the killing' 1409; diremptæ pacis 1227\*; iræ esse *Pref. pp.* xxix, xlv.

Irascor alicui 1578\*, 1747\*.

Ire, *with supine* 1379; iri, *with supine* 1380; ire exequias, infitias 1114b, 2016\*; venum, pessum 1112; auxilio, &c. 1162, *Pref. pp.* xxix, xxxi, xxxviii, &c.; via 1176, *comp.* 1099; viam 1100, 1363\*; obviam alicui 1599\*; pedibus ire in sententiam 1241; in alia omnia ire 2292; cælo 1144.

Irridiculo haberi *Pref. p.* xlv.

Irrisui esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Is, *general use of* 2258; *often attracted into gender and number of predicate* 1068; eo consilio = eorum consilio 1279; et is 2259; idque 2261; nec is (usura nec ea solida contentus) 1216\*; eum *for se* 2268b.

Iste, *general use of* 2258—2260.

Istic, 'where you are' 1749\*.

Isto, 'thither' 1113, 2280\*.

Istorsum 2175.

Ita...ut (ne, ut ne) *with final subj.* 1638, 1650; ita...ut (ut non) *with consecutive subj.* 1696, 1704, 1238\*, 1468\*, 1813\*; ita vivam ('so may I live')...ut 'as' *with indic.* 1707c, 1778\*, 1383b, *comp.* 1588; ita...ut (utei) 'so'... 'as' 1812, 2004\*; ut (uti) 'as'...ita 'so' *with indic.* 1707a,

1486\*, *comp.* 1544\*; *with subj.* (in orat. obl.) 1752; prout...ita *with indic.* 2107\*; ut 'although'...ita 'yet' 1707c; ita...ut si 1430\*; ita...quasi 1580, 1210\*; quasi...ita 1593\*; ita = 'since thus' 1699; ita nescio 'so completely ignorant am I' *absolute ly* 1758; ita fatuus es 1588\*; non ita pridem 'not so very long ago' 1704\*; ita 'yes' 2251, 2252; ita est 'so it is' 1617; ita facere = id facere 1486\*; si ita vis 1622\*; ita 'in these words' 1695\*; ita *in apposition to an infin. object-sentence* 1473\*; itan (for itane) 1611, 1856\*.

Item 2018\*.

Iterum 1095, 1719\*.

Itidem...ut 2293.

Jubeo canere or cani 1344; aliquem ire 1348; jubetur aliquis ire 1350\*; jubeo aliquem mitti 1351, 1106\*, 1721\*; aliquis jubetur mitti 1353; jube veniat 1236 (*p.* 100).

Jucunditati esse *Pref. p.* xlv.

Jucundus alicui 1134, 1467\*, 2295\*; cognitu 1210; potui 1383c.

Judicare aliquem capitis 1324, 1325; *with infin. object-sentence* 1351, 1906\*, *cf.* 1567\*.

Judice te 1246; judicem ferre alicui 'propose an arbitration (arbitrator)' 1752; capere cum aliquo 1770\*.

Judicio capitis aliquem arcessere 1323; judicio pati 1239; judicio 'deliberately' 1236.

Junctus *with abl. or dat.* 1215; *with abl. of cause* 1228, 1229.

Jungere aliquem alicui 1058\*.

Jurare in verba 1382a\*, 1606\*.

Jure 1239; summo jure, meo jure 1237.

Jusjurandum, *origin of phrase* *Pref. p.* lxxxiii; adigere 1118, 1695\*; adigere ad 1117; jurejurando adigere 1119.

Jussu meo 1246.

Justo lætior 1266.

Juvo aliquem aliquid 1094; aliqua re 1572\*; me juvat rem ita esse 1356.

Juxta *general use of* 2011—2016; *position in sentence* 1805; juxta mecum 2014; *with dative* 2015; juxta ac

- 1383*b*; ac si 2014; procul juxta sitos 1646 fin.\*  
 xtim 2011, 2012.
- aborare aliqua re 1677\*.  
 abori esse *Pref. p.* xlv.  
 accessere sponione 1752.  
 ætitiæ esse *Pref. p.* xlv.  
 ætor aliqua re 1443\*; aliquid esse 1483\*.  
 aniatui esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.  
 apidavit (*impers.*) 1431.  
 argior hoc alicui 1687\*.  
 assus maris 1337; *with abl.* 1337.  
 latine loqui 'to speak Latin' 1344\*, 2207\*.  
 latinis indictis 'on the proclamation of the Latin games' 1350\*.  
 latitudinis in measurements 1304; latitudine 1085, 1209; in latitudinem 1305.  
 latus 'broad' *with acc. of measure* 1086; *with abl.* 1085; *with gen. of quality* 1308; *in comparisons, various constructions* 1273.  
 laudare utilitate 'for its usefulness' 1228.  
 laudi esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.  
 lege agere 'to bring a statutable action' (*esp. as authorised by the lex xii. tab.*) 1236.  
 lessum (*acc.*) 'lamentation' 1934\*.  
 Letters, mode of dating 1260, 1261, 1168, 1490\*; tenses used—*imperf.* 1468, *plup.* 1490.  
 levamento esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.  
 levare aliquem onere 1212, vitiis 1052\*, vectigali 1683\*; laborum 1334.  
 levationi esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.  
 Lex mancipii 1243, 1280; operi faciundo 1156.  
 Liber *with ael.* 1263.  
 Liberare aliquem culpæ 1324; dominatu 1262; supplicio 1593.  
 Libertati esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.  
 libet (lubet) id mihi 1741\*, 1747\*; *with inf.* 1617, 1689\*; si credere libet 2001\*; libeat as *protasis of conditional sentence* 1574; libens, libenter 1540\*, 1541\*.
- Libidine 1239; libidini esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.  
 Libro dixi 1174; in libro 1177.  
 Licere: quiqui licebunt 'at whatever price they shall be bid for' 1196; quanti licuisse 2289\*; liceri 'to bid' 1633 fin.\*  
 Licet lascivire 1355; mihi negligenti esse 1357; mihi negligentem esse *p.* 145 note, *Pref. p.* xxiii; licet (licebit) dicant 1606, 1534\* (*p.* 226); quamvis licet dicant 1625; si licuerit 1483; omnia licere tibi 1575\*; per aliquem licet 2037, 1574 (3)\*, 1741\*.  
 Limulis (*sc. oculis*) contueri 1761\*.  
 Litato 'after favourable sacrifice' 1254.  
 Litteras dare alicui 1260\*, alicui ad aliquem 1818; hoc litterarum 1720 fin.\*; *with place of despatch in abl.* 1260; *in loc.* 1261.  
 Locare opera facienda 1401, *cf. Pref. p.* lxxvi; locare non nummo sed partibus 'to lease not for a moneyrent, but a share of produce' 1198.  
 Locative, general use of 1164; followed by relative adverb, not adjective 1165; of place 1168; in apposition to ablative *with in* 1167*c*; of time when 1178, 1179; of amount (*genitive of price*) 1186—1192; reasons for assigning this to locative, *Pref. p.* lvii; for not assigning predicative dative thereto, *Pref. p.* xxxvi:  
   æqui boni 1191; alii modi (?) 1311; animi 1168, 1169, 1321; centussibus 1187; cotidie 1178; cuicumodi (?) 1168, 1311; domi 1168; humi 1168; fœnori (?) 1163; foris 1169; meridie 1178; quanti 1192; quotannis 1178; tanti 1187, 1189, 1192; temperi 1178.  
 Locative adverbs, used of persons and things 1113, 1153, 1171, 1263; used *with prepositions* 1802.  
 Loci, locorum of place and time; used after quo 1172; eodem, post id 1296; adhuc 1299; ad id 1744\*; interea 1993;  
 Loco 1170; 'in his proper place' 1172, 2116\*; in loco 1175, 1713\*; suo quisque loco, 'each in his turn' 2116\*;

- argumenti loco sumere 1457\*; patris loco colere 1566\*; alio loco demonstrare 1695\*.
- Locus *with dat.* 1156, 1382 *b*, 1512\*, 2182\*, 2273\*; *with gen.* 1157; locum ludis habere 'to have a reserved place at the games' 2175\*.
- Longe 1203; digitum longe (ire) 'a finger's length' 1086; longius abire 'to go away so far' 1605.
- Longus, longitudinis, &c., *in measurements, see under* Latus; longum est (erit) dicere 1535 *a*.
- Lubet, *see* Libet.
- Luce 1778\*; luci 1178; prima luce 1176\*; cum primo luci, cum prima luce 1882; palam luci, luce palam 2026.
- Lucet, luciscit 1431.
- Lucri 1306; lucri facere, facere lucri 1307; de lucro 1908, 1307; lucro esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Ludere ludo 1099; alea 1218; aleam 1217; aliquem, 'make sport of one' 1441\*.
- Ludibrio esse 1760\*, *Pref. p.* xlvii; *abl. after* lædi 2075\*; *after* dignus, *Pref. p.* xxxii; ludibrium esse *Pref. p.* xxviii.
- Ludificatui habere *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Ludus discendi 1304; ludis, 'on festival days' 1181; 'at the games' 2175\*; in ludo 'in the exercise ground' 1732\*; ludo ludere 1099; ludos facere mihi 1120; me 1120, 1707\*.
- Luxuriæ esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Macte (*cf.* 516), *with abl.* 1228, 1540\*, 1384 *fin.*\*
- Maculæ esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Mærori esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Magis quam 1271; non magis quam 1552\*; magis quia...quam quod 1744; magis est ut 'there is more reason that' 1700; magis interest, refert, 1189, 1284; magis juvare, laudare, &c. 1532 *b*, 1534 *fin.*\*, 1544\*, 2236\*; exercitus sum 1747 *fin.*\*
- Magni of price 1187; interest, refert 1188; magno of price 1197, 1198; magno opere 1237, 1769\*; silentio 1241; æstu 1242; illorum malo 1244; *with predicative dative* 1158, *Pref. p.* xxix.
- Major opinione dolor 1266; major trimus 'more than three years old' 1398; annos natus quadraginta 1090; *in other statements of age* 1273: majoris of price 1187, *Pref. p.* lx.
- Male emere 1197; esse alicui 1153; nunquam tam male est quin 1698; almost a negative (*e.g.* male sanus) 2234.
- Maledicto esse *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Malo non roges 1535 *a*\*; taceas 1537\*; id probatum esse 1371 *d*; cives recte fecisse 1371 *c*; malo existimari bonus 1704\*; malim, mallem 1536; *with accus.* 1269\*; mallem traderet 1606.
- Malum 'plague take it', 'it's a plague' 1081, 1188\*; magno illorum malo 1244 (*cf.* pessimo publico 1245); malo reipublicæ 1721\*; malo esse 1160, *Pref. p.* xlvii.
- Manare mella 1123.
- Mancipi lex 'the terms of the conveyance' 1280; res mancipi, mancipio dare, &c. 1243, 2289, *Pref. p.* xlvii; mancipium 1243.
- Mane 'in the morning' 1178\*, 1179\*.
- Manere 'await' aliquem 1613; 'remain' alicui 1626\*, 1627\*; in villa apud aliquem 1720\*; in condicione 'abide by terms' 1669\*.
- Manifestus culpæ (*gen.*) 1326; vitæ 1320; manifesto 1253.
- Mansio Formiis 'staying at Formiæ' 1168.
- Manu mittere 1262; emittere 1708\*; decertare 1438\*; manum de tabula (*sc. tolle*) 1441; manum conserere 'to join issue' 1114, 1263 *fin.*\*; manibus ingredi 1241, 1845\*; ad manus 1820; in manibus 1963; inter manus 1991; per manus 'from hand to hand' 2032; præ manu 2053; sub manus 2131; sub manu 2132.
- Marte nostro 1234.
- Materialiter, words used, *i.e. as names of themselves* 1003 *d*; usually put in the appropriate case *e.g.* nomen mihi Titius or Titio est 1058, 1059, *Pref. p.* xxiii; (legem a

- legendo) 1392; (vox voluptatis) 1302; (optimam matrem) 1120:  
*but also* 'veto' 1303; 'scripserunt' 1538\*; 'specierum, speciebus' 1536; 'quasi corpus' 1583; 'hoc facito' 1603 fin.\*; 'adduxi' 1771\*; 'ad arma' 1818; 'sodes pro si audis' 2073;  
*after* non dico, ne dicam 1283, 1659, 1660.
- Maturo proficisci 1068\*, 1344; quam maturato opus est 1637.
- Maturus ævi 1320.
- Maximē omnium 1294; si maxime 1560, 1561; quam qui maxime 1641; ut qui maxime 1641; cum maxime 1641.
- Maximus omnium 1290; inter omnes 1291.
- Me miserum 1128.
- Measure in accus. 1086; in abl. 1085; in gen. 1308; measure of difference in abl. 1204; in acc. 1203.
- Mecastor 1761\* (p. 335); see also 1120.
- Med (acc.) 1698\*, 1931\*.
- Mederi alicui 1198, 1954\*.
- Medius fidius 1120, 1573 (3)\*, 1675\*, 1721\*, &c.
- Medium viæ 1292; medio ædium, medio oppido 1170; in media urbe 1294; media æstate 1180; medius with gen. 'between' 1988\*; pacis mediusque belli 1047 fin.
- Mehercules, mehercule 1129, 1562\*, 1648 fin.\* See also Hercle.
- Mei as *partitive genitive* 1290; as *objective gen.* 1312; as *secondary object* 1328.
- Melius est, with pres. inf. 1463; with perf. inf. 1371 c; melius fuit, with pres. inf. 1535 b; melius fuerat, with perf. inf. 1535 d.
- Melli esse Pref. p. xlviii.
- Memini, with gen. 1332, 1653\*; with accus. 1333; with pres. and perf. inf. 1351, 1372; cum videbare 1687.
- Memoria tenere 1174; in memoria habere 1177; memoriæ prodi 2037\*; supra hanc memoriam 'before our time' 2158 b\*.
- Memoriter 'with good memory' 1707 b fin., 1827.
- Mercede 'for pay' militare, conducere, &c. 1198, 1197.
- Mereri bene de aliquo 1906.
- Mergere se in with acc. 1177; with abl. 1177; mersus, with abl. 1174.
- Meridie 1179.
- Merito 1253; quis dixerit 1540; fecerit 1532 b; non meo merito 'not by my fault' 1769\*; merito populi Romani 1789\*.
- Metuo ut, metuo ne 1652; metuo credere 1771\*; aliquem 1770\*; mihi 2256\*; aliquid mihi 2205\*; ab aliquo 1758\*; metuens rixarum 2160\*.
- Meus as *possessive gen.* 1278—1282; as *objective gen.* 1315; mea interest, refert 1285.
- Mi (voc.) 1082.
- Middle voice, see 1417; cf. concutitur 1553\*.
- Mihi as *ethical dat.* 1150, 1151; 'in my judgment' 1148; quo mihi? (sc. prodest) 1152; (prodest habere or di dant, &c.) 1441.
- Militiæ domique 'in the (war) field and at home' 1198.
- Mille Thracum 1304, 1305.
- Minari alicui 1722\*; minatur nisi, with subj. 1750; minari daturos 1617\*.
- Minime as *negative* 2230 d, 2234; in (negative) answers 2251, 2252; minime gentium 1299; omnium 1533 c\*.
- Minimo of price 1196.
- Minor in expressions of age 1266, 1273, 1389\*; capitis minor 1320; minoris as gen. of price 1186, 1270\*, Pref. p. lviii; dimidio minoris 'at half as much' 1187; minore of price 1187, Pref. p. lviii.
- Minus with or without quam 1086\*, 1273; uno minus est 'there is one less in the world' 1204; nihilo minus 1204; as *negative* 2230 d, 2234; si, or sin minus 1563, 1565; minus commode 'not very well' 1686\*; minus lætum 1534\*; minus posse



- (=non posse) 1476\*; nihil minus quam 'anything but' 1733\*.
- Miraculo esse *Pref. p.* xlviii.
- Miror aliquem or aliquid 1331; with secondary obj. in gen. 1330; miror si (subj.) 1754; (ind.) 1757, 1610\*; with inf. obj. sentence 1569\*, 1578\*, 1160\*; with dep. interrog. (e.g. quo abire possit) 1605\*.
- Mirum ni, mira sunt ni, with indic. 1757; nisi mirumst, ni mirum 1757, cf. 2226; mirum quam with indic. 1647; mire quam 1649; mirumst quomodo, with indic. 1765; mirum quantum, with indic. 1647; with subj. 1760; mirum quin, with subj. 1768.
- Miscere aliquid aliqua re 1216, 1277\*; alicui rei 1215.
- Miseratus labores 1588\*.
- Misereri, with gen. 1328.
- Miseret me tui 1328, 1431, 1591\*.
- Miseriæ esse *Pref. p.* xlviii.
- Missu Cæsaris 1389.
- Mittere qui dicat 1632; ut dicat 1377\*; with supine 1114, 1379; ad dicendum 1115 (1); dicendi gratia 1115 (2); dicere 1115 (4); auxilio 1115 (5); Orco 1484; manu 1262; mitto 'I say nothing of' 2027\*; mitto quod, with indic. 1701; missum facio 1402; missus stipendiis 'discharged from service' 1695\*.
- Moderor with acc. 1135; with dat. 1136
- Modi: ejus modi 1308; cujusque modi 2290 a; cuiusmodi 1311; istius modi 1150\*; quid modi 1154\*.
- Modicus virium 1320.
- Modo 'in moderation' 1172\*; meo modo 'after my fashion' 2090\*; 'only' in wishes modo, ut modo 1594; in provisoes, dummodo 1668; qui modo 1692, 1264\*; in concessions with subj. 1626, cf. 1595\*; modo ut 1706; with imperative 1629, 1534\* (p. 226), 1557\*, 1579\*; in limitations with indic. qui modo 1693, 1264\*; si modo 1676\*: in a climax non modo 2239, 2240 and note; non modo...sed 1657, 2246.
- modo ivit 'just gone' 1069\*, 1115 b\*, 1615\*; modo.....modo 1716\*, 2174\*, 2205\*.
- Modus with dat. 1154; with gen. 1155, 1395, 1567\*; with inf. 1360.
- Molestē ferre 'to be vexed' with inf. object-sentence 1589 fin.\*
- Molestiæ esse *Pref. p.* xlviii.
- Moneo aliquem aliquid 1348; quæ moneor 1094; moneo ne (subj.) 2290\*.
- Monumento esse *Pref. p.* xlviii; monumentum esse *Pref. p.* xxviii.
- Moræ esse *Pref. p.* xlviii; moram certamini facere 1714\*.
- Morbo esse *Pref. p.* xlviii.
- Moror nihil aliquem 'I care nothing for a man' 1094.
- Morte multare, damnare 1200; morte damnare 1199; esse *Pref. p.* xlviii; mortem occumbere 1120 b; obire 2211\*; sibi consciscere 1768\*.
- Mos vendendi 1302; mos erat vendere 1354; moris non erat 2180\*; in morem alicujus 'after the manner of one' 2239\*; more 1236; more majorum 2030\*; alieno 2090\*; moribus 'by custom' 1239.
- Movere aliquem senatu 1262; tribu 1720 fin.\*; intrans. ex stativis 1721\*; res moventes *Pref. p.* lxvii.
- Multæ esse *Pref. p.* xlviii.
- Multare aliquem morte 1200; poculo 1486\*.
- Multimodis 1881\*.
- Multitudinis esse 'to be of the plural number' 2175 fin.\*
- Multus 'frequent,' 'troublesome,' 1069; quos multos habet 1295; multi vestrum 1290; multa (adv. acc.) 1125; multum te fallo 1094; refert, interest 1189; multo '(by) much,' multis partibus 'many times,' with compar. or superl. 1204; multis annis non 'not for many years' 1182; multi of price (rare) 1187, *Pref. p.* lx.
- Muneri accipere, dare, &c. *Pref. p.* xlviii.
- Munimento esse *Pref. p.* xlviii.
- Mutare, commutare aliquid aliqua re cum aliquo, 'change a thing for a thing with some one' 1198; uvam strigili 'purchase grapes with a



- scraper* 2129\*; *crinem in hydros* 1642\*; *folia sanguineo colore mutantur* 1674\*; *pro metu mutari* 2293\*.
- Mutua adverbially used* 1096, 1097.
- Nam position in sentence* 1055 *a*; *nam-quis, quis nam* 2289, 2296; *nam-que position in sentence* 1055 *a*; *put second* 1490\*.
- Natione* 1210, 1065\*.
- Natu grandis* 1210; *cf. p. 160 note.*
- Naturā* 1061 *b*, 1662\*; *suā naturā* 2036\*.
- Natus patre* 1264; *ex patre* 1265; *ab Inacho* 1265; *nobili genere* 1232; *viginti annos* 1090; *annis* 1089; *plus viginti annos natus, and other expressions of age* 1273, 1090; *natus with inf.* 1363; *ad decus* 1609\*.
- Nauti non facio* 1187.
- Naufragus patrimonii* 2277\*.
- Navigare, with direct obj.* 1123.
- Navigazione tridui esse ab* 'to be a three days' voyage distance from' 1206.
- Ne (rai) in affirmations* 1114 *b*, 1422\*, 1534\*, 1707 *b* *ñn.*\*, 1721.
- Ne negative: old forms of* 2225; *with certain classes of subj.* 1498; *in wishes* 1588, 1592; *in prohibitions* 1596—1604, 1371; *with pres. subj.* 1600 *and note*; *with perf. subj.* 1602; *with plup. subj.* 1604, 1575\*; *with imperative* 1597, 1601; *in concessions* 1622; *in premisses, dum ne, dummodo ne* 1668; *in (ordinary) final sentences ne, ut ne, ne* 1636—1642, 1648—1650; *qui ne* 2233; *quo ne* 1634; *after verbs of fearing ne, ne non* 1652; *used absolutely in similar sentences* 1654; *ne, nedum* 1658; *ne dicam, &c.* 1660, 1460\*; *appended as the reason for making a previous statement, = 'this I say lest'* 1662, 1118\* (*ne immittas*); 1377\* (*ne...credas*); *used after the following (among other) verbs and expressions: ad-*
- niter* 1642; *adverto animum* 1606; *cavetur* 2065\*; *cautost* 1400; *consaefacio aliquem* 1879\*; *deterreo* 1587\*; *efficio (non ne...sed ut non)* 1700\*; *formido* 1649\*; *ita gero* 1638; *ita aequumst* 1650\*; *obsecro* 1533 *a a*\*; *obsisto* 1642 *fin.*; *signum do* 1890\*; *teneo* 1648; *timeo* 1652, 1879\*; *vide (ne, ne non)* 1656; *video* 1648;
- ne...quidem* 1657, 2230 *b*, 2231 *b*, 2280\*; *after a negative* 2246 *a*, 1536\*.
- Nē in composition* 2224; *cf. 984, 985; as enclitic interrogative* 2250, 2254; *-ne...an* 1168\*; *in second member* 1612\*; *joined to relative adjective qui* 1691\*; *in questions of surprise* 1708.
- Nec, use as simple negative* 2227; 'not even' 2230 *b*, 2231 *b*, 1534\* (*p. 226*).
- Nec, neque as conjunction* 2227; *following non* 2235, 2236; *neque...* 2240, 2246 *b*; *neque...et, et...neque* 2241, 1533 *a*\*; *neque aut...aut, &c.* 2242 *b*; *ut neque...* 2016\*; *nec dum* 1566\*; *necnon* 2244; *neque hand (=neque)* 2248; *neque see s. v.*; *neque enim* 2235, 1560\*; *nec nunc quidem* 1643\*;
- belonging to participial clause* 2238; *with jussive subj.* 1602.
- Necesse est with inf. obj. clause* 1356, 1198\*, 1533 *a a*\*, &c.; *with simple infin.* 1561\*; *with subj.* 1606, 1545\*, 2218\*; *nisi quid necesse erit* 1535 *a*; *necessum st* 1747\*.
- Necessario* 1253.
- Necne* 2255, 1420\*, 1477\*, 1764.
- Necnon* 2244.
- Necopinus* 2227; *necopinatus* 2231.
- Necubi* 2230 *c*.
- Nedum* 1658.
- Nefas est tendere* 1534\*.
- Negative particles distinguished* 2223—2230; *may destroy one another* 2243; *may strengthen* 2244—2248; *negative in first clause, not carried on to second* 2243, 1476 *a*\* (*nemo extulit...sed contempsit*).

Neglectui esse *Pref. p.* xlviil.

Nego *in contrast to* ajo 1422\*, 2277\*; *with inf. object clause* 1729\*; '*I say ...not*' 2243; '*I refuse*' 1744\*; *with pres. inf. object-clause* 1291\*, 1768\*.

Negotium alicui dare, faciat '*appoint to do*' 1606.

Nemo non 2244, 2283; nemo neque... neque 2246 *b*; non nemo 1610\*, 2244, 2271, 2276; nemo homo 1623 *fin.*\*; orator 1639\*; nemo omnium militum 1688\*.

Nempe 1933\*, 2030\*, 2188\*.

Nequaquam 2225, 2246 *b*.

Neque, *see* Nec.

Nequiquam 2225, 1537\*, 1544\*; nequicquam 2225.

Nescio an 2256; nescio quis 1769; nescio quo pacto 1244.

Neve, neu, *general use of* 2235, 2240; 1596, 1602, 1603; 2236\*, 2239\*.

Neuter, *general use of* 2278 (*p.* 484).

*Neuter adjectives, general meaning* 1060; *form special substantives* 1061, 1063; *used as predicate to subjects of other genders* 1061; *in nominative* (meum est, optimum est, &c.) 1282, 1356, &c.; *neuter participle pass. used as subject* 1411:

*pronouns, &c. used with partitive gen.* 1296, 1299; *in accus. of extent* 1094—1097, 1189; *after dignus* 1201; *after passives* 1423; *in locative of price* 1187, *Pref. pp.* lvii—lx; *in ablative of price* 1196; *of amount of difference* 1204:

*neuter adjectives and part. in abl. of circumstances* 1252; *used absolutely* 1251, 1256; *in partitive gen.* 1296, 1298, 1301.

*Neuter verbs* 1414; *used impersonally in passive* 1422, 1423; *used in lieu of the passive voice of other verbs, e.g.* jacere 1220\*; audire 1812; procumbere 1491\*.

Nexu 1239.

Ni (nei), *general use* 1226; *in reported conditions* 1750, 1752; *why used in affirmative wagers, p.* 331 *note*; ni ...nive 1486\*, 1562; ni...et ni 1575;

peream ni (*ind.*) 1575, 1588; quid ni 1614; quippini 1616; nimirum 1757. *See also* Nisi.

Nihil *origin* 2225; *used adverbially* 1094, 1439, 2230, 2231; nihil aliud quam 1094, 1441; si nihil aliud 1384<sup>a</sup>\*; nihil aliud nisi 1574(4)\*; nihil opust 1094; nihil ad me (*sc.* pertinet) 1441; nihil negoti 1296; nihil pacati, &c. 1298, 1299; nihil reliqui facere 1298, 2246<sup>b</sup>\*; nihil est, '*it's no good*' 1481\*; nihil est quod (*subj.*) 1686, 1535<sup>a</sup>\*; nihil non 2244.

Nihili (nili) *as locative of price* 1186; nihili homo, servus, &c. 1194, 1195; nihilo minus 1204, 1039\*; pro nihilo ducere 1187.

Nimio, *with compar.* 1204.

Nimirum 1757, 2229.

Nimis quam 1649; nimis valde, sæpe 1540\*; nimis novit 1714 *fin.*\*

Nimum quantum (*ind.*) 1647.

Nisi (ni), *general use, with subj.* 1532 *fol.*; *with indic.* 1533 *fol.*; *with compl.fut.* 1486; *with plup.subj. after exaggerated statements* 1573<sup>c</sup>, <sup>d</sup>; *with subjunctive where protasis is an adjective* 1576; *with reported condition, after minatur, &c.* 1750; ferre iudicem 1752; *with indic. appended as afterthought, nisi forte, nisi vero, nisi tamen* 1569, 1573\*; nisi si 1605\*;

*with subject* 1439; *with object* 1229\*; *with infin.* 1465\*; *with infin. object clause* 1182\*; *with predicate in nom.* 1442; *in accus.* 1428\*, 1535<sup>c</sup>, 1822\*; *in dat.* 1073; *in gen.* 1623\*; *with abl. of means* 1533<sup>c</sup>, 1544 *fin.*\*; *with abl. of circumstances* 1250; *with prepositional phrase* 1907\*, 1977\*;

quis alius nisi 2036\*, 2085\*; quis nisi qui 2096\*; nihil nisi quod 1352; nullus nisi verborum 1351\*; parum est nisi 1715\*; nihil aliud nisi ut 1574(4)\*; uter 2296; numquam nisi 1443\*, 1623\*; nisi cum (*subj.*) 1716\*, (*ind.*) 1717\*; nisi quantum 1694\*; nisi quod (*adv.*) 1745.

Nitor, 'rest on,' mulierculā 1226; corporibus, 'strain with their bodies' 1580\*.

Ni-ve 1486\*, 1562; see also Ni.

Nobis absente 1251.

Nocere alicui 1134, 1594; nihil iis noceri potest 1423, 1238\*.

Nocte, 'by night' 1180; nocte dieque, noctes ac dies 1181, 1090; non nocte, non die 1707c; nocte ac die, 'within a day and a night' 1182; diem ac noctem 1181; duabus noctibus *for* duas noctes 1184; hoc noctis, 'at this time of night' 1091, 1092; de media nocte 1910; de nocte 1911; in noctem 1967; sub noctem 2129.

Noli esse 1597, 1599; nollem dixisset 1608, *cf.* 1536; nolo videat 1537, 1608; nolo me esse 1652\*, 1759\*; nolo pluribus 1237; quod nollem 1931\*.

Nomen mihi est Menæchmus 1058; Menæchmo 1059, 1154\*;

suonimine, 'on their own account' 1746\*; nomine negligentie, 'on the score of' 1244, 1282\*, 1323; notus nomine tantum 2275\*; uno nomine appellare 1234; Greco nomine 1392\*; servus nomine illo 1232;

homines nominis Latini 1233; nomina dare ad aliquem 1820.

Nominal predicate, *cf.* 1009—1012, 1014, 1015.

Nominative, general use 1009, 1076; as subject 1080: as subject to historical infin. 1359; as vocative 1082; with en, ecce 1081, 1129; as secondary predicate 1059, 1061, 1069, &c.; after object-infin. 1350; after passive verb with inf. 1353, 1401, *Pref. p.* xxii.

of gerund and gerundive 1376, 1397—1399; of stems in -ion 1400; of stems in -bundo 1405; of passive part. with subst. in lieu of abstract nouns 1410; neuter part. so used absolutely 1411; neuter adj. possibly subject to impersonal verb 1423.

Non, general use 2228; in jussive (dubitative) questions 1610; in con-

secutive sentences 1660 *fol.*; qui non 1686, 1714; ut non 1696 *fol.*; ut non in concessions 1706; ne non 1652, 1656; adeo non 1657; ac non, et non 2235, 2237, 1233 *fin.*;

attached closely to a word, hoc non dolere 1707d\*; adnondolendum. ad non parendum 1377; non acerbum 1386\*; non omnia, non semper 1598\*; non dico, non dicam 1659; non enim 1532c\*, 2292\*; non modo 2239, 2240 *note*; non modo (solum) ...sed (verum) 1657, 2240—2246; non nemo, non nullus, &c. 2244, 2276; non omnis 1381\*; non possum quin 1646; non possum non 2244; non quod, non quo, &c. with subj. 1744; non si (*ind.*)...adeo 1533a; non si (subj.) 1532b; si non 1563; non utique 2290b.

Nonne 2251, 2252.

Nonnemo 1610\*, 2244, 2271, 2276.

Nonnihil 2231, 2244.

Nonnullus 2271, 2276, 2292\*.

Nonnunquam (contrasted with saepe, interdum) 1304\*, 1632\*, 1716 *fin.*\*

Nos, noster *for* me, meus 2298; in orat. obl. of *Cæsar* and his army 1786.

Noster *for* possessive gen. 1278; nostri as objective gen. 1312, 1759\*; nostrum as possessive gen. with omnium 1278, 1280; as partitive gen. 1290; *for* meus 2298; noster (Dæmones), i.e. 'I myself' 2234\*.

Noxæ, noxiæ, esse 1163, *Pref. p.* xlix.

Nubere alicui 1995\*, 1581\*; nuptum alicui dare 1114, 1379; Romam 1108; quo? 'into what family?' 1113.

Nudari, with ael. 1650\*.

Nudus, with ael. 1212; with gen. 1211.

Nugas, in exclamations, 'nonsense.' 1578.

Nullus, general use 2278; *for* non (e.g. nullus dixeris, nullus venit) 1069, 2231; nullo equitatu, 'without cavalry' 1234, *cf.* 1244; nullus (*for* nemo st) 1688\*; nullo as dative, *Pref. p.* xxix; nullus non 2244.

- Num 2250, 2252, 2097\*; numquis 1761 fin.; numnam 2252; num in indirect questions 1762, 1389\*, 1458\*.
- Number: noun inflexions, use of 1061, 1062, 1068; verb inflexions 1425 foll., 1433—1439.
- Numero 1159, 1172, 1175, 1865; in numero 1175; numero versuque 1239; extra numerum 1958.
- Numerare a se, 'to count on one's side' 1813.
- Numnam, numne 2252.
- Nunc...cum (subj.) 1726, 1730; (ind.) 1721, 1731; nunc, 'as things are' 1532c\*; ib. d.\*; 1534 fin.\*; nunc ipsum 1095; nunc demum 1721.
- Nunciam (i.e. nunc jam) 2051\*.
- Nunquam non 2244.
- Nuntiare Romam, 'bring news to Rome' 1108; patribus muniant, 'bid the fathers fortify' 1606.
- O with voc. 1082; with acc. 1128; o si in wishes 1582.
- Ob, general use of 2017—2020; in composition 2021—2025; use with gerund 1378, 2020; ob rem 2018; quam ob rem 2019; obviam alicui venire 2017, 1685\*; ire 2018, 1599\*.
- Obducor, 'I am covered,' cortice 1644\*.
- Obedire alicui 1136; obediens esse 1074.
- Obesse with dat. 1640\*.
- Obesus 2025 fin.
- Obicere aliquid alicui 1140, 2260\*; ad aliquid 1141; alicui quod neglexerit 1744.
- Object, several kinds of 1079; object sentence 1029; direct object to active verbs (accus.) 1013, 1120; (infinitive) 1344; to a verb of saying, &c. (e.g. dicit dividere, 'talks of dividing') 1347; two direct objects (both nouns) 1122; (noun and infinitive) 1348; object to passive verbs (rogatus sententiam) 1124; (percussus mentem, &c.) 1126, 1127; (doctus loqui) 1349; to verb understood 1128; (accus.) after supine in -um 1379; after stems in -iōn 1400; after ge-
- rundive in -bundo 1405; after nom. gerund 1397, 1398, Pref. p. lxxii; after other cases of gerund 1375, &c. Pref. p. lxxvii;
- direct object (genitive) to nouns 1312;
- indirect (or remoter) object (dat.) to verbs and adjectives 1132—1152; rarely expressed by gen. after nouns 1318; two indirect objects (both dat.) 1163; secondary object (gen.) to verbs 1322—1334, cf. Pref. p. lix.
- Obire mortem 2211\*; diem (=mori) 1721\*; omnia, 'go over' 1572\*.
- Ob iter 2017, 1856\*.
- Objurgare 2022.
- Oblectamento esse Pref. p. xlix.
- Obligare se nexu 1120b.
- Obliqua oratio, see Oratio.
- Oblique cases, use of 1018—1020; 1076—1079.
- Oblivisci 2022; with gen. 1332; with accus. 1333; me senem esse 1458\*, 1653\*.
- Obruere aliquem ære alieno 1745\*.
- Obsæpire iter 1675 fin.\*.
- Obsequi alicui 1654, 1784c.
- Obsistere with dat. 2299\*.
- Obstare alicui 1750\*; hoc mihi obstat quin faciam 1646.
- Obstrepere portis 1675 fin.\*.
- Obtemperare alicui 1134, 1677\*.
- Obtendere lateribus (dat.) 1670\*.
- Obtinere, 'carry one's point,' de aliqua re 1392; 'maintain,' legem 1598.
- Obtrectationi esse Pref. p. xlix.
- Obviam, see Ob.
- Occidione occidere, 1099, 1239.
- Occultare se tugurio 1733\*.
- Occumbere mortem 1120b.
- Occupo with infinitive. 1344, 1838\*; locum 1610\*.
- Occurrere malivolentiæ 1483\*; hostibus 1711 fin.\*; tibi 1717\*.
- Oculis captus 1210, 1724\*; vix constare 1210.
- Odio esse 1160, Pref. p. xlix; odium esse 1161.
- Odorari omnia, 'scent out' 1544.
- Offendere aliquem crudelem, 'find a



- man cruel* 1960\*; *pedem*, 'strike a foot' 1663\*.
- Offensioni esse *Prof. p. xlix.*
- Offerre se alicui 1604\*; *moram* alicui 1687\*.
- Officere *with dat.* 1389 *fin.* \*.
- Olere alumnus, 'small of a nursing' 1120c, 1123.
- Olim *with pres. tense* 1460; 'in former days' 1576 *fin.* \*.
- Omnino, 'at all hazards' 1190b\*; *omnino* quinque, 'five in all' 1122\*; *with negative* 1132\*, 1463\*, 1569\*, 1246a.
- Omnium *as part. gen.* 1190, 1068\*; *primus*, *solus* 1075; *quisquam* 1182; *ex omnibus* 1191; *ex omni parte* 1941.
- 'One', *indef.*, *how expressed in Latin* 1303, 1371; 'one another' 1305.
- Oneri esse *Prof. p. xlix.*
- Onustus *with abl.*, *rarely gen.* 1337.
- Opera dedita, una opera, eadem opera 1237; *qua opera*.....*eadem opera* 1558;  
operæ esse 1181, *Prof. p. xlix*;  
operæ pretium esse 1180, 1778\*;  
facere 1778 *fin.* \*; *operam dare with dat.* 1379\*, 1382; *ut veniat* 1589\*;  
venire 1545.
- Opere magno, summo, &c. 1137—1769\*; *tanto* 1194\*.
- Operire 1012.
- Opinio 'reputation for' *with gen.* 1318; *opinionem præcipere* 1138; *major* 1166; *celerius* 1170; *opinionem omnium*, *following the general opinion*, 1073\*.
- Opinor, *parenthetical*, 1607; *hoc esse* 1552 a\*.
- Oportet faciam 1606, 1779\*, 1404\*;  
facere 1638\*; *hoc fieri* 1356, 1701\*;  
*hoc factum or factum esse* 1371 *l.*, 1402, 1444; *fieri oportuit*, *oportuerat* 1566, 1535 *l. l.*
- Opperi alicuiem 1663; *dum exeat* 1664; *dum exit* 1663.
- Oppetere letum 1385\*; *mortem* 1610\*.
- Oppido *cf.* 511 (1); 'utterly' 1007\*;  
*quam with ut*, 1649.
- Opportunus, *with dat.* 1382 a, 1383 a.
- Opprobrio esse *Prof. p. xlix.*
- Oppugnari capite ac fortunis 'in respect of' 1019 *fin.* \*.
- Optative subjunctive 1586—1592.
- Optentui esse *Prof. p. xlix.*
- Opto aliquid 1120 z; *decorari* 1587.
- Opus est, *general use* 1255, *cf. Prof. p. lxxi*; *mihî gladius* 1125; *gladio* 1126; *gladii* 1125; *sumpti* 'costs' 1113\*; *videre*, *me videre* 1255; *viso* 1136; *tacito* 1290\*; *hoc viso* 1255; *visu* 1255; *optare with quid* 1155; *nihil* 1094.  
*per opus* 'very necessary' 1839\*.
- Orare alicuiem 1612; *alicuiem aliquid* 1122; *aliquid alicui* 1138; *ut redeas* 1468 *fin.* \*.
- Oratio obliqua *defined* 1780; *use of nouns* 1781—1784 (*for infim. comp.* 1351, 1352; *for sui*, 1774 and 1736; *use of pronouns* 1786; *use of nouns* 1785, 1527; *substantive statement of conversion of or. rect. into or. obl.* 1787; *instances* 1788; *expression of passions* 1782; *occurrences of indicative in midst of or. obl.* 1797, 1798.
- Orari pacis petendæ 1310, *Prof. p. lvii.*
- Orbus, *with abl.*, 1112, 1335; *with gen.* 1311.
- Ordine 1136; *recte atque ordine* 1940\*; *extra ordinem* 1958, 1112\*.
- Ornamento esse *Prof. p. l.*
- Ornari esse *Prof. p. l.*
- Oritur, *with abl.* 1164, 1517\*; *with ex* 1777\*; *with a* 1687\*; *ab aliquo oriri* 1768\*.
- Ostentui esse 1160, *Prof. pp. xxxiv, l.*
- Pace tua, *or* alicuius, *dixerim* 1246, 1390; *bona cum pace* 1883.
- Pacto nescio quo 1144; *quo* 1215\*; *eodem quo* 1285\*; *quoquo pacto* 1190\*.
- Pæne, *with perf. ind. in apodosis* 1574 *or with must.* 1153\*.
- Pœnitet me tui 1318, 1265\*; *quod*



- traduxerim 1744; pœnitebit curasse 1371c.
- Palam, *general usage* 2026; *with abl.* 2028; palam esse, facere 2027; fieri 1717\*; palam facto 1253.
- Pallere, *with acc.* 1123.
- Par alicui 1142, 1281, 1153\*, 1460\*; alicujus 1280; cum aliquo 1281.
- Parare 'procure' aliquid aliqua re 1218; 'set about' *with infin.* 1344; bellum 1533 a\*; omnia ad ludos 1642\*.
- Paratus 'ready' *with dat.* 1142; *with infin.* 1382\*; ad vim 1557\*; ad pugnandum 1696\*.
- Parcere alicui 1134; dignitati 1571\*; vitæ 2014\*; *with infin.* 1344.
- Parenthetical verbs, &c. 1607, 1761.
- Parere 'obey' alicui 1136, 1668\*, 1750\*; si paret, 'if it appears' 1753.
- Pars militum 1290; *with sing or plur. verb* 1434; pars...pars *in apposition to the whole* 1289, 1434\*.
- partem maximam, bonam 1102; magnam partem ætatis 'for a great part of' &c. 1643\*; multis partibus major 'many times greater' 1204; omnibus part. maj. 'infinitely greater' 1204.
- 'Part concerned,' *in abl.* 1210; *in acc.* 1102; *in gen. after adjectives* (Tacitean use) 1320; *part of body after passive verbs (acc.)* 1126, 1127.
- Particeps, *with gen.* 1300, 1281\*, 2192\*.
- Participles: *general use* 1014, 1017f, 1071—1075; *as simple adjectives* 1074; *as simple substantives* 1075; *in abl. of circumstances, with substantive* 1250; *with sentence* 1252; *alone* 1254, 1253; *dependent on opus, usus* 1250, 1256, 1255; *with quasi, nisi* 1250.
- Partic. Future: *with sum to form future tenses* 1494; *as apodosis of certain conditional sentences, (indic.)* 1570; (fuerim) 1521, 1572; *in accus. without esse* 1347, 1444; *denoting a purpose* 1115 (3), 1073.
- Partic. Perfect: *use to form perfect tenses of passive* 1450—1453; *used predicatively without est, &c.* 1443b; *in accus. without esse* 1347, 1444; *with substantive to express abstract notion* 1406—1411, 1556\*; *also by itself in neuter* 1411; *having part of body, or thing worn, as object in accus.* 1126, 1127; *used as obl. predicate after habeo, curo, volo, &c.* 1402.
- Partim 1429, 1294, 2292\*.
- Partitive genitive 1290—1300; *not used, when the whole is not divided* 1295; *exchanged for an apposition* 1289; *for a prepositional phrase* 1291, e.g. *with ex* 1942; *de* 1908; *in* 1972; *inter* 1995.
- Parum *as adverbial accus.* 1095; parum optimate esse 1665\*; parum prudentiæ 1296; parum est rebus servandis (dat.) 1382\* a; parum est, *with inf.* 1715\*.
- Parvi esse 1186; interest, refert 1189; parvo emere 1186, 1197.
- Pascor, *with ablat.* 1214, 1104\*.
- Passive: *general meaning of inflexions,* 1415—1417; *passive of intransitive verbs rarely personal* 1421; *generally impersonal* 1422; *change of active expression to passive* 1420, 1353.
- Passive verbs with cognate nominative 1424; *with neut. pron. (acc. or nom. ?) of extent* 1423; *with object of thing asked* 1124; *of part of body, or thing worn,* 1126, 1127; *with infinitive object* 1349; *with infin. as secondary predicate* 1353; *with agent expressed by ablative with ab* 1221, 1812; *by dative* 1146; *substitutes for passive future infin.* 1369, 1380; *for pluperf. subj.* 1521.
- Patere *with dat.* 1401, 1153\*.
- Patior te ire 1099\*, 1553\*, 1747; navium patiens esse 1730\*; inediæ, &c. 2159\*.
- Paucis te volo (i.e. verbis monere) 1237; ausculta paucis (possibly = mihi paucis monenti) 1763\*.
- Pauperare aliquem nuce 1676\*.
- Peccare libidine, fraude 1777\*; imbecillitate, viribus 2285\*.
- Pecunia vœnire, &c., 1196; pecuniæ judicari, damnare, &c., 1325.

*Pedes in measurements* 1086; *pedum* 1304, 1308; *pedibus proeliari* 1236; *metiri, iter conficere*, 1241; *ire, &c.* 1170\*, 1716\*, 1957\*; (*ire in sententiam alicujus* 'vote for a man's resolutions') 1241; *trahi* 1575\*, 2037\*.

*Pellere aliquem sede* 1261.

*Pendere animi, animis* 1321.

*Penes, general use* 2029, 2030, 1810\*, 1818\*.

*Penetro me* 'hide myself' 1615\*.

*Pensi nihil habere* 'to have no consideration' 1298, 1301; *nec fidem pensi habere* 'not to hold honour in consideration' 1301.

*Penus defined* 1383 a\*.

*Per general usage* 2031—2037; *in composition* 2038—2040; *of thing along which* 1083, 1173, 2032; *of time throughout which* 1089, 1515\*; *in the course of which* 1183, 2034; (*per imbrem*) 1533; *of personal (and other) instruments* 1213, 2035, 1233\*, 1691\*; *in style, e.g.* *per quicquid deorum est, per hanc dextram, &c.* 2035; *of the manner* 1239; *per domos* 'in the several houses' or 'from house to house' 2033; *per manus* 'from hand to hand' 2032; *per me* 'for all I care' 2037; *per me stare quominus* 2035, 1644; *per aliquem licere* 1574 131\*, 1741\*; *per mutua* 1097; *per obliqua* 2032; *per pedes lora trajectas* 1117; *ipse per se* 2036; *per turmas* 'in squadrons' 1538 fin.\*.

*Percontari aliquem aliquid* 1112.

*Perduint* 1588, 1594.

*Peream ni. si non nisi indic.* 1575; *perilisti si* 'you are a dead man, if' 1533 b.

*Perfect indicative: corresponds to two English tenses* 1452; *contrasted with imperfect tenses* 1454; *general use, historical perfect (i.e. aorist)* 1473—1475; *perfect proper (= present perfect or absolute perfect)* 1476—1479; *Perfect passive with sam as distinguished from fui* 1453;

*in absolute statements of power,*

*duty, &c.* 1535 b; *of repeated action in principal clause* 1479; *in subordinate clause with cum* 1478, 1717; *corresponding to English pluperfect, with paene, prope* 1474, 1574; *with postquam, antequam* 1475, 1671; *in sentences with dum* 1663—1669; *for perfect future* 1533 b\*.

*Perfect subjunctive, general use* 1507, 1509; *in apodosis to conditional sentences* 1530, 1532 b; *in modest assertions, e.g.* *crediderim, dixerim* 1538, 1540; *in prohibitions* 1596, 1602; *in final sentences* 1642; *after verbs of fearing* 1652; *in consecutive sentences* 1510, 1524, 1696, 1700; *in concessive clauses* 1622; *with ut* 1706.

*Perfect infinitive: general use* 1364—1367; *of repeated acts* 1370; *after volo, possum, satis est, &c.* 1371; *melius (utilius) fuerat* 1535 d; *after memini* 1372; *potest optasse contrasted with potuit optare* 1366; *amat scripsisse* 1848\*.

*Perfectus litteris græcis* 'accomplished in Greek literature' 1314.

*Pergo with infin.* 1386\*, 1432\*; *Romam* 1750\*.

*Periculo tuo* 'at your risk' 1244, cf. 1958\*; *periculo esse Pref. p. 1*; *periculum est ne* 1652; *with infin.* 1360.

*Perinde celebris* 1665\*; *ac* 1707 a; *ut* 1547\*.

*Periphrastic conjugation, see Conjugatio.*

*Perire ferro, morbo* 1440 fin.\*; *eodem leto* 1624\*.

*Peritus, with gen.* 1314; *juris* 1706\*; *regionum* 2267\*; *with infin.* 1361.

*Permissu Hannibalis* 1746\*.

*Permitto alicui ire* 1138, 1139; *corpora cremari* 1139.

*Pernicii esse Pref. p. 1.*

*Per opus est* 1839\*.

*Perosus, with accus.* 1120 a.

*Perpetuitate dicendi* 'in the whole of a speech' 2274\*.

*Perquam* 1649.

*Person of verb when the subject is com-*

- posed of several persons 1436; second person subjunctive of an assumed subject ('you' = 'one') 1544, 1546; third person sing. of indefinite person without expressed subject 1430; third pers. plural 1428.
- Personal pronouns, *see* Pronouns.
- Persuadere, with dat. of person 1422, 1539\*; animus persuasus est 1421; persuadetur mihi animos emori 1422; ut with subj. 1671\*, 2268\*.
- Pertæsum est me tui 1328.
- Pertinet ad te 1533 c.
- Pes, *see* Pedes.
- Pessimo publico (abl.) 'to the greatest possible injury of the state' 1245, 1572\*.
- Pessum 'to the bottom' ire, dare, premere 1112.
- Petere 'be a candidate for' consulatum 1439\*; supra 'aim higher' 1569\*; abs te ut (subj.) 1694\*.
- Piget me tui 1328; me civitatis morum 1665\*; quod piget 1329; me vidisse 1687\*.
- Pignori (pigner) opponere 2018\*; ponere 2053\*; retinere 1162; esse, &c., *Pref. p.* 1; pignus esse, *Pref. p.* xxviii.
- Pili non facere 'not to value at a hair' 1187.
- Place from which 1258 sq.; (with prep.) 1259; at which 1168, 1170; (with prep.) 1167; whither 1108, &c.; (with prep.) 1111; about which 1086; (with prep.) 1083.
- Placet with infin. obj. sentence 1749\*; alicui 1728\*.
- Plane 'quite' with verbs 1638\*, 1757\*, 2232\*; bene peculiatius 1041; dicere 'to say plainly' 1690\*.
- Plebis homo 2246 a\*.
- Plenus with gen. 1336, 1648\*, 1684; with abl. 1339, 1039\*.
- Plerumque 1095, 1874\*, 1885\*.
- Ploro commissum 1123; subducta viatica 1120 c.
- Pluit lapidibus 1212; lapides 1211.
- Pluperfect indicative: contrasted with imperfect 1454; amatus eram and fueram 1449, 1453; amaturus fueram 1494; general use 1487—1493: in absolute statements of power, duty, &c. 1535 d; in apodosis of conditional sentences 1533 d; of repeated actions 1493, 1717; use in letters 1490; in reference to time of action named in subsequent sentence 1489; of action immediately consequent upon another 1492; pluperf. of act used as imperfect of state 1491; with dum, postquam, &c. 1491.
- Pluperfct subjunctive: in conditional sentences (protasis and apodosis) 1533 d; in reported conditions 1750; not found in dependent apodosis 1521 and note; used after ni, nisi in qualifying extravagant statements 1574 (3); in wishes 1588, 1592; in concessions 1622; with quamvis 1624; with cum 'although' 1730; jussive subjunctive 1604; in final sentences 1642; after donec 1670; of repeated actions 1716; of occasion, with cum 1720; with qui relative (for cum) 1714.
- Plural predicate when subject is noun of multitude 1434, 1061 b; or is composed of several substantives 1436; or of two substantives united by cum or nec 1437; or is distributed by alius...alius, &c. 1440: ex eo numero, qui (plur.) 1061 b; uter eratis 1434; nos, &c. for ego 2208; verb in third person plural of 'persons in general' 1428; predicative dative not found in plural, *Pref. p.* xxvii; plural noun with singular gerundive in genitive 1396, *Pref. p.* lxviii.
- Plure, pluris of value and price 1187, *Pref. p.* lviii; pluris emere 1186, 1634\*, stare 1188; facere 2282\*.
- Plures = mortuos 1615\*; nolo pluribus (i.e. verbis dicere) 1237.
- Plus qualifies adjectives 1021, and verbs 1095, 1643\*, with and without quam 1273; plus ac 1553\*; plus eo 1270; unā plures tribus 'the tribes by a majority of one' 1204; plus frumenti' 1643\*.
- Pœnæ esse *Pref. p.* 1; pœnas dare alicui 2290\*.

Poenitet, *ae* Poenitet.

Poli 1725\*.

Pollus est artibus 1683\*.

Pollere 1042.

Pollicetur auxilium Ubis 1750\*.

Pondo 1109.

Pone *prop.* with *accus.* 1041; pone versus '*hinduwardis*' 1041 (11).

Pono in *with* *abl.* 1963, 1066\*.

Populabundus agros 1405\*.

Regularis sceleris '*comparisons in crime*' 1117\*.

Per- in *composition* 1042.

Perricare, porrigare 1042.

Porro 1339\*; porro dare, '*to pass a thing*' in 1530\*; describere 1691\*.

Perta ingredi, eruptionem facere 1176; se protipere 1110\*.

Pertare 1042.

Pescere aliquem aliquid 1122; ab aliquo 1115.

*Position of words in sentence* 1035—1036; of *subordinate sentences* 1036, 1057.

Possidere 1042.

Possum *with* *inf.* 1344; *with* *perf. inf.* 1371; in *proper sense* 1532\*; possum omnia 1094; persuaderi potuit 1422; nihil noceri potest 1423.

possum, poteram, potui, &c. *where* possim, &c. *might have been expected* 1535; in *apostrophe of conditional sentences* 1520, 1566; use in *form of dependent pluperf. subj.* 1521, 1568; potui optare, '*I might have wished*' 1366, 1420\*; si possit, '*whether he can*', '*in order that he may if possible*' 1754; potui at *subj.* 1642 fin.; at ne *subj.* 1642; non possum facere quin 1703; non possum quin 1646; non possum non 1243;

quanta maxima potest esse 1637; quam maximas potest copias 1637; quibus scilicet scies poterisque 1603\*; quam potes ambiguis notis 1639.

Post, *general use of* 1043—1049; in *composition* 1050; post fuere 1048; post memoriam 1075\*; ex post facto

1045; post paulo 1073\*; post tanto 1045; paucis post diebus 1106; post sextum annum 1310; post spei &c. *idem* 1044. *See also* Postquam.

Poste 1043, 1045.

Postea 1047; *if logical consequence* 1048; posteaquam, *ae* Postquam.

Posthac 1047, 1602\*.

Postibi 1047.

Postid lecorum 1045; postidea 1047.

Postilla 1047.

Postquam (posteaquam) *with* *pres. indic.* 1460, 1719; *with* *imperf. indic.* 1491, 1759; post diem tertium quam 1180, 1719.

Postidie 1174; *with* *accus.* 1106; ejus diei 1060\*.

Postulo aliquid ab aliquo 1115; aliquem repetundarum 1324; majestatis 1010\*; facias 1606; ut ne facias 1643.

Potential mood—a name often given to the uses of the subjunctive in 1536—1546.

Potestas *with* *gen. gerund.* 1396, 1553 fin.\*.

Potior *with* *abl.* 1126, 1532; *with* *gen.* 1334, 1776\*; *with* *accus.* 1123.

Potivi eam servituti 1334.

Potius quam *with* *subj.* 1676, 1603\* bis; *with* *inf.* 1677; potius quam ut *with* *subj.* 1678; ave potius 1219; vel potius 1722\*, 1219\*.

Potui esse, &c. *Pres. pp.* xxxiii, l, lxxxix.

Pre, *general use of* 1051—1056; in *composition* 1057—1059; *comparative of transition* 1011; used if a *transition* 1117, 1056; of a *cause* 1056, 1761\*; praequam 1645, 1054; prae ut 1707, 1054; prae quod ut velis &c. prae eo quod 1054; prae manu, '*ready to hand*' 1053; prae se ferre, '*to exhibit*' 1053, 1764\*.

Præbere aliquid alicui 1134, 1971\*.

Præcepit = præcepit 1649\*, 417.

Præcipio hoc alicui ut faciat 1545\*.

Præcipitare se in Tiberim 1674\*.

Prætere esse *Pres. p.* l.

Prædictis cavere 1114.

Prædictis *with* *abl.* 1677\*.



Præesse alicui 1134; *used absolutely* 1135.  
 Præficere aliquem legioni 1290\*.  
 Præire verba 1121.  
 Præmio esse *Pref. p. li.*  
 Præpedire 2057.  
 Præquam 1645, 2054; præquod 2054.  
 Prærodere unguis 2264\*.  
 Præsentare nobis 1251.  
 Præsertim qui (*ind.*) 1432\*; qui præsertim (*subj.*) 1714 fin.; præsertim cum (*ind.*) 1725; (*subj.*) 1728, 1732.  
 Præsidere *with dat.* 1073 fin.\*.  
 Præsidio esse, &c. 1162, *Pref. p. li.*; præsidium esse *Pref. p. xxviii.*  
 Præstare, 'excel' 1066\*; aliquem 1121, 1203\*; alicui 1203\*, 1205\*, 1210\*, 1939\*; 'exhibit,' se invictum 1221\*; 'perform,' aliquid 1541\*.  
 Præsto esse alicui 1134, 1621 fin.\*, 1807\*.  
 Præter, *general use of* 2060—2067; *in composition* 2068; ceteris præter condemnatis 2066.  
 Præterea, præterhac 2063.  
 Præterpropter 2061.  
 Præterquam 2062, 2064, 2066.  
 Prævaricari 2047.  
 Prævorti alicui rei 1140, 1135\*, 2088\*.  
 Præut, *see* Præ.  
 Præsum 1732\*, *cf.* 735.  
 Precor deos, precor salutem 1125; aliquid alicui 1138.  
*Predicate defined* 1008; *contrasted with attribute* 1012, 1015:  
     *primary* 1016; *formed by finite verb* 1017; *by noun* 1017, 1442, 1443; *by participle*, 1072; *by infinitive* 1359:  
     *secondary* 1016, 1017; *formed by substantive* 1059, 1357; *by adjective* 1060, 1357; *by participle* 1072, 1073; *by infinitive* 1353: *in special case* 1019, 1020, *viz.* *genitive* 1282; *dative* (*i.e.* *curæ esse*) 1158, *Pref. p. xxviii.*:  
     *oblique* 1017 d, e; *formed by infinitive* (*primary*) 1351; (*in exclamations*) 1358; *gerundive* 1401; *past part.* 1402; *with accus. in exclamations* 1128; *cognate* 1100; *in ablative of description, manner, circumstances*

1230 *fol.*, especially 1242—1250; *secondary pred. of unexpressed subject of infin.* 1357, *Pref. p. xxiii.*; 1726\* (*inanem redire*).

*Noticeable secondary predicates:*  
 facio exheredem 1486; fero expensum 1134\*; gero majus 1633; habeo fidelissimum 1291; indictum 1064; nisi admonito 1073; nisi victores 1428\*; nomen mihi est Menæchmo 1059; potissimum temptabat 1383a\*; præceptis quærebat 1383a\*; repetit insaniens 1532aa\* (*p. 222*); proponi cereus 1587\*; quamvis audaci 1627; Jovi Statori 1751\*; video callidiorum 1249\*; uti me æquo 1762\*; ut Poenus 1059; ut suffecturas 1073.

*Prepositions: general use of* 1005 e, 1800—1803; *position* 1038, 1804, 1805; *not prefixed to supine* 1381, *comp.* 1390; *when used with gerund* 1375, 1376; *when used in expressing 'place whither'* 1111; 'place where' 1167; 'place whence' 1259; *repeated after compounds* 1263; *often compounded with intransitive verbs, make them intransitive* 1120b, 1121; *prepositional phrases used as predicates* 1019, 1020a; *as attributes* 1019, 1020b.

*Present tense: indicative, general use of* 1455; *in apodosis to subj. protasis* 1574; *historic present* 1457; *with dum* 1458, 1663; *with jam pridem, olim, &c.* 1460; *for future* 1461; *with dum, 'until'* 1462, 1663; *in orat. obl.* 1784a:

*imperative* 1495; *in prohibitions* 1597:

*subjunctive* 1507—1509; *interchangeable with future indic. in conditional sentences* 1531 and *note*; *in prohibitions* 1596, 1600:

*infinitive, general use of* 1364, 1368; *after memini* 1372; *historic* 1359.

Pretio (*abl.*) 'for a price' 1196, 1218.  
 Pridie 1178; pridie Compitalia 1106c.  
 Primus, primum *as second. pred.* 1017 c, d, 1122\*, 1124\*; primus quisque



1284, 1464 fin. \*, 1598\*; primum  
omnium 1543\*; cum primum (*subj.*)  
1710. (*ind.*) 1731; quam primum  
vel Quam: simul primum (*subj.*)  
1710; simul ac primum (*ind.*) 1719;  
primum... deinde 1471\*, 1640\*, 1107;  
primo... deinde 1545\*.  
vivere *vixi* *abi.* 1335, 1468\*, 1621\*.  
tuncquam *vixi* *subj.* 1671, 1674; *vixi*  
*ind.* 1671, 1675, 1476; *vixi* *pre-*  
*sent.*, of future *vixit* 1462; *vixi*  
*ind.* 1677; amicitiam prius quam  
suis 1665\*; priusquam.....prius  
1100\*.  
pro, general use of, 1069—1073; *vixi*  
*gerund* 1386; in compositum 1075—  
1079 :  
for instruct *obicit* 1135; for *prae-*  
*dictio* *dictio* 1039, 1160\*;  
pro tanto tantum (*recare* 1606\*;  
pro dimittit 1073; pro eo quasi  
1073; pro eo quod 1074; pro eo  
ut 1707; pro imperio 1071; pro  
iudicio 1073; pro amico 1134; pro  
noxia instigare 1083\*; pro parte  
1075; pro quam 1645; pro vixi  
parte 1075; pro se proque Remo  
esse 1617\*; pro solido 1075; prout  
1707 c. 2, 1107\*.  
pro, in exclamatione *vixi* *nam*, in *voc.*  
1081; pro di immortales 1539\*;  
pro deum immortalium *sc.* *idem*,  
1119; *vixi* *sc.* 1118.  
probare *pro* *ind.* *aggravi* of all-  
quid alicui 1146, 1041\*, 1131\*,  
1537\*; *aggravi* of allquid 1066\*.  
probe reatus 1640\*.  
probre esse *Prop.* p. 11.  
procul, general use of, 1080—1086;  
*vixi* *ind.* 1081, 1086, 1136\*; procul  
juxta sites 1646 fin.\*.  
Procumbere terre 1168; anni tem-  
pore atque in diebus 1491\*.  
Profecio, *no* *ind.* 1538\*, 1571\*, 1716.  
Proficere se philosophum 1694.  
Profluvium regni 1308.  
Prohibere aliquem aliquam se 1161.  
1063\*, 1140 c.\*; in aliqua se 1163;  
munitiones 1360\*; nequeam habere  
classis 1371\*; prohibere ponere  
1349, 1118\*.

Proin 1069, 1178\*.  
Proinde, *whence* *pro* 1533 a\*, 1546\*,  
1611\*; *ut* (*ind.*)... *proinde*, *consequen-*  
*ter* *ac* 1707 a; *proinde* *ac* (*ind.*)  
1581; *ac* si (*ind.*) 1580.  
Prompta, esse in, habere in 1390;  
promptus esse venire danda 1411\*.  
Pronomen *divin* 1003, 1004; *gene-*  
*ral* *distinctions* of *demonstrative*  
*pron.* 1158—1161; of *indefinite*  
*pron.* 1171—1181; of *interrogative*  
*pron.* 1196; *dependent* (*interrog.*)  
1738—1764; *copulative*, *not* *gram-*  
*matically*, *dependent* 1761 :  
use of *personal* *pron.* 1416,  
1195—1199; *expressed* 1615, 1618,  
1609; of *possessive* *pron.* 1178—  
1184, 1301; for *objective* *pron.*  
1315; of *reflexive* *pron.* 1162—  
1170; of *relative* *pron.* in *im-*  
*perative* *distinctions* 1633, 1681—1693,  
*conj.* 1016 d, 1710—1715, 1741;  
in *finite* *sentences* 1631, 1634; in  
*conditional* *sentences* 1680—1690; in  
*limiting* *sentences* 1691, 1694; in  
*subordinate* *sentences* 1538, 1559;  
of *attendant* *circumstances* 1714; in  
*reported* *distinctions*, *sc.* 1740; *dis-*  
*tinct* *formal* *pron.* *interrogative* 1763,  
1765; in *finite* *relative* *clauses*  
1697, 1400\* *ind.* *abi.* 1190.  
Prope, general use of 1087—1093;  
prope *ab* *natura* 1088, 1092; prope  
*diem* 1074\*; prope *est* *in* *est* *fact-*  
*um*, *ut* (*ind.*) 1091, 1095\*; prope  
*vixi* *perfect* 1474; prope *similis*  
1675\*.  
Propter *vixi* *ind.*, *object-clause*  
1175\*.  
Propter hoc alicui 1138.  
Propter, propter *vixi* *sc.* 1106 c;  
*vixi* *sc.* 1107, 1066\*, 1033\*.  
Propter *vixi* *gen.* 1180; *vixi* *dat.*  
1180.  
Propter, general use of 1094—1097;  
propter *quod* 1540 fin.\*, 1745\*;  
*quod* 1097; *ut* (*ind.*) 1603\*; *qua-*  
*propter* 1097; propter propter 1061.  
Propterquod esse *Prop.* p. 11.  
Propterea, *ita* 1045.  
Perversus, *sursum* 1173; *quidam*

- 2173 fin.; nihil prorsus 1363; nullus prorsus 1583\*.  
*'Protasis' explained* 1025; *comp.* 1518, 1519, &c.  
 Protinam 2166.  
 Protinus (protenus) 2166, 2105\*; protinus juxta, *'close to,' 'immediately after'* 2016.  
 Providere loca idonea 1398\*.  
 Prout 1707 b, 2107\*.  
 Proximus, proxime *with accus.* 1106 c, 2175\*; *with dative* 1107, 1248\*, quam proxime 1637.  
 Prudens *with gen.* 1314.  
 Pudet 1431; me alicujus 1328; prodire 1725\*; optimatem esse 1665\*; id pudet, hæc pudent 1329.  
 Pudor *with obj. gen.* 1409; pudori esse 1638\*, *Pref. p.* lii; pudor esse *Pref. p.* xxviii.  
*Punishment in locative* 1190; *in abl.* 1200; punire capite 1407\*; *in genitive* 1325; (*strictly place of punishment*) *in accus. with ad* 1199.  
 Purgare se alicui 1149; aliquem culpæ 1324.  
 Puto posse facere 1777\*; me videre 1533 c\*; hæc eventura 1532 c\*; te crudelem civem *ib. cf.* 1602\*; puta ita esse 1621; putes, *'one would think'* 1544.  
 Qua modo 1692; qua opera...eadem opera 1237, 1558\*; qua...qua (= et ...et) 1176, 1177, 1180\*, 2205.  
 Quadam tenus 2164.  
 Quæro ab or ex aliquo 1125; quæro si 1754; quid quæris? *'in short'* 1764; si quærimus 1573.  
 Quæsito opus est 1538\*, *cf.* 1256.  
 Quæso *parenthetically* 1607, 1761, 1729\*; liberum quæsundum gratia 1115 (2).  
 Quæstione, esse in, *'to be to seek'* 1390; abesse ab, *'be out of the way when sought'* 1393 fin.  
 Quæstui esse *Pref. p.* lii.  
 Qualiscumque 2290.  
 Quam *'how?'* 1759; *dependent* 1760, 1762; quam mox? 1759; clam me est, quam graviter, &c. *'concealed from me, how greatly,' &c.* 1879; *'how!'* 1759, 1761; quam clementer, *'so mildly!'* 1579; quam familiariter 1965\*; quam non laboriosa 2222\*;  
*'as; after tam* 1639; quam maxime, quam possum maxime 1637, 1146\*, 1733\*; quam minumo, *'at the lowest possible price'* 1196; quam primum, *'as soon as possible'* 1694\*, 1287\*, 1379\*; quam sæpe, *'as often as'* 1639; quam volet &c. 1624; quam vellet 1535 c\*;  
*'than; with coordinate words* 1021, 1267, 1269, 1271, 1682\*; *with new sentence* 1269, 1243; *after dative* 1180, 1673, 1674; major quam qui 1682; quam qui maxime 1641; quam quantus 1204\*, 1641, 1778\*; (plus) quam est necesse 2247\*; quam pro 2075; potius (nihil longius) quam ut 1678; nihil putat optabilius quam me diligi 2280\*; magis quia...quam quod 1744;  
*'how; than; &c., after the following words:* admodum 1649; advorsum 1841; æque 1275; alius 1277; ante 1671—1675; citius 1541, 1671, 1676; citra 1873; contra 1894; dimidius 1267; extra 1959; infra 1986; in-super 2150; intra 2003; libentius 1676; magis 1271; mire 1649; mirum 1647; nimis 1649; oppido 1649; per 1649; post 1471, 1475, 1719; potius 1676, 1677, (*with infin.*) 1784 b; præ 1645, 2054; præter 2062, 2064, 2066; pridie 1674; prius 1671—1677; pro 1645; sane 1649; super 2150; supra 1645, 1873\*, 2159; tam 1580, 1583; tantum 1639; triduum 1673; valde 1649; vide 1762, 1763; ultra 1645, 2182: *often omitted after plus, amplius* 1273, 1557\*.  
 Quamobrem, *relative* 2019; *direct interrog.* 1441; *dependent interrog.* 1575\*.  
 Quamquam, *'although,' with indic. and subj.* 1697; (*subj.*) 1670 fin.\*; *'and yet'* 2215, 1708\*.

namvis *with* *subj.* 1624, 1707d;  
*with* *indic.* 1627; *with* *acc.* 1625;  
*with* *adjectives* 1627, 1188\*, 1580\*,  
 2241.

*quando* 'when?' 1622\*; *in dependent*  
*clauses* 2263\*; 'since' 1747, 1611\*,  
*cf.* 1358; 'at any time' 1779\*.

*quandocumque* 'sometimes or other'  
 2290; *quandoquidem* (*ind.*) 1797.

*quantus maximus potest*, &c. 1637,  
 1570\*; *quantum in te est* 1693;  
*quantum vis* 1283; *quantum potest*  
 1779\*; *nisi quantum* (*subj.*) 1694;  
*immense, mirum*, &c. *quantum* 1647;  
*quantum... habent*, 'so great... have  
 they' 1715; *tantum... quanto* 1204; *eo*  
*... quantum* 1203; *quanti* 'at how  
 much' 1186; *quanti... tanti* 1533a\*;  
*quanti damnatus* 1190; *as depend.*  
*inter.* 1760; *pro eo quanti te facio*  
 1075; *quantiquanti* 2290.

*quancumque* 1697, 2290.

*Quapropter*, *rel. and interr.* 2097,  
 1189\*.

*quare* 1768\*.

*Quasi*, *with* *ind.* 'just as' 2173\*;  
*with* *subj.* 1580, 1569\*, 1619\*, 2237\*;  
*with* *noun* 1583, 1110\*, 1593\*, 1977\*,  
 2030\*; *quasi quidam* 1081\*; 'about'  
 11202 *fin.*\*; *pro eo quasi* 2075;  
*quasi... ita, ac ita*.

*Quatenus* 1163; 'inasmuch as' (*ind.*)  
 1747; 'how far', *dep. interr.* (*subj.*)  
 1762; *est quatenus* (*subj.*) 1686.

*Quasere aliquem mente* 'from his  
 mind' 2239\*.

*Que difference from et, ac* 2195; *ap-*  
*pended (rarely) to word common to*  
*the joined members* 1047 *fin.*; *quod-*  
*que* 1233\*.

*Quoror* *with* *acc.* 1072\*, 11204; *ques-*  
*tum injurias* 1379; *de se* 1114; *de*  
*meta* 1468\*.

*Questions single, with particles* 2249,  
 2251—2253; *with pronouns* 2249,  
 1609, 1610, 1613—1615, 1619;  
*without either* 2249, 2254; *induc-*  
*tive i.e. with jussive subj.* 1610;  
*repeated in surprise (with pro-*  
*nouns subj.* 1770; *in reply, taking*  
*up another's words (subj.)* 1618;

(*ind.*) 1619; (*without change of*  
*mood*) 1771;

*quasi-dependent (ind.) e.g. after*  
*audin'*, *scio*, &c. 1761; *dependent,*  
*ordinary (subj.)* 1758—1764; *with*  
*jussive subj.* 1612; *with* *quin* 1768;  
*use of tenses* 1526;

*alternative* 2250, 2254; (*depend-*  
*ent*) 2253.

*Direct questions with an* 2256;  
*etiam* 1611; *nonne* 2251, 2253;  
*-ne* 2251; *num* 2251, 2254; *numne*  
 2254; *quam mox* 1759; *quid* 1609,  
 1610; *quidni* 1614; *quin* 1615;  
*quipprimi* 1616; *satin'* 1611; *ut*  
 1759; *utrum* 2256.

*Dependent in (amongst others) agi-*  
*tatur* 1612; *ausculto* 1758; *causa*  
 1760; *cerno* 1688\*; *ciam me est*  
 1879; *cogito* 1612; *constat* 1612;  
*curte est* 1669; *dico* 1760; *disco* 1671  
*fin.*\*; *disputo* 1622\*; *doceo* 1764;  
*forsitan* 1766; *habeo* 1612; *impero*  
 1612; *interest* 1764; *mirum est*  
 1760; *nescio* 1758; *nosco* 1760;  
*paenitet* 1760; *quaero* 1758; *quam*  
 1760; *quam mox* 2175\*; *quatenus*  
 1762; *quin* 1768; *rationem habeo*  
 1902\*; *refero* 1626; *rogo* 1758;  
*scio* 1764; *statuo* 1612; *si* 1754;  
*timeo* 1758; *video* 1760; *vide quam*  
 1762; *vide ut* 1762.

*Qui rel. subj. (see Pronoun): position in*  
*sentence* 1041, 1045; *often before*  
*preposition* 1038, 1805; *attracted in*  
*case (?)* 1066; *in gender and num-*  
*ber* 1068; *qui*, 'such' 1715; *sunt*  
*qui* *with* *subj.* 1686, 1432\*; *est*  
*quod* (*subj.*) 1533a\*; *with* *indic.*  
 1687, 2185\*; *qui*, 'since he' 1714,  
 1512\*; *praesertim qui* (*ind.*) 1432;  
*qui praesertim* (*subj.*) 1714; *quippe*  
*qui* *with* *subj.* 1714; *with* *indic.*  
 1711; *at qui*, *at pote qui* *with* *subj.*  
 1714; *ut qui* *maxime* 1641; *quam*  
*qui* *maxime* 1641; *qui quidem*, *qui*  
*modo* *with* *subj.* 1692, 1264\*, *with*  
*indic.* 1693; *qui non* *with* *subj.*  
 1686; *with* *indic.* 1689; *qui-ne*  
 1691; *qui ne* 1634; *prae quod* (= *prae*  
*eo quod*) 1053; *praeter quae sunt*

- (=præter ea quæ) 2066; quos= quod aliquos 1743; qui=et is 1781, 1794; =si is 1698\* (quem invitus facias).
- Qui, 'at what price' 1196; quiqui, 'at whatever price' 1196.  
'with which' 1152\*, 1218, 1632\*, 2258\*.  
'how?' interrog. and rel. 1228 fin., 1074\*, 1590\*, 1761 (qui possum); ut qui 1696; quippe qui 1713; qui in wishes 1794; 'so that' with subj. 1604\*; cf. 2223\*.
- Quia with subj. 1744; with ind. 1745, 1747; propterea quia 2097.
- Quicunque in limiting clauses (ind.) 1697; of frequent occurrences (ind.) 1717: (subj.) 1716; in protasis of a quasi-conditional sentence 1558; cf. 1560\*; quodcunque militum 1779\*; qui separated from cunque 1717; as indefinite pron. 1482\*, 1540\* (p. 230), 2289.
- Quid prodest? quid hoc juvat? &c. 1094; quid ea commemoro? 1609; quid mi auctor es? 1609; quid opust gladio? 1094, 1255; quid opust facto? 1255, 1256; quid usust facto? 1250, 1255; quid tua refert? 1188, 1189; quid mulieris 1296, 1299; quid est? imusne? &c. 1613; quid ago? 1609; quid est quod with subj. 1632; with ind. 1633; quidni? 1614; quid si with subj. 1578, 1236\*; with indic. 1519, 1110\*, 1441\*; quid faciam, facerem? 1610; scio quid quæras, quod quæris 1763; quid quæris? 'in short' 1764\*; elliptical expressions with quid 1441, 1442.
- Quidam 2271, 2275; quandam suam 1621\*.
- Quidem in concessions 1621, used after cum 1732, 1842\*; et 1623, 1690\*; ille 2259, 2261; non tu quidem 2055\*, 2261; quando 1747; qui adj. 1692, 1693; si 1747; ut 'as' 1707b. For ne...quidem, see Nē.
- Quilibet 1626\*, 2278, 2281; sis qui lubet 1668\*.
- Quin interrog. 1615; with imperat. 1617; with indic. 1617; dependent (e.g. non est dubium quin) 1768, 1378\*, 1568(2).  
relative with subj. in final clauses 1636 and note, 1646; non recusare quin 1622\*, 1973\*; non possum (facere) quin 1646, 1702; in consecutive clauses, for qui non, 1680 and note, 1688, 2085\*; for ut non 1698 nunquam est emptum quin 2075\*; haud multum abest quin (subj.) 1574(3); neque abest suspicio quin 1768; non quin...sed quia 1744.
- Quin etiam 1617, 1606\* (p. 262).
- Quippe, 'since of course' 1701\*; qui (adj.) with subj. 1714; with ind. 1711; qui (adv.) 1713.
- Quippini 1616.
- Quiritare 1732\*.
- Quis, indef. pron. 2271, 2272, 1648\*; nescio quis 1769; dicet, dicat, dixerit quis 1542, 1545, Pref. pp. ci—cvi.  
interrog. 1759, 1761; quis dubitet? 1538; quis negat? 1539; quis dixerit? 1538; in subordinate clause 1638; with participle 1073 (p. 29 fin.); dependent interrog. 1758. See also Quid.
- Quispiam 2271, 2273.
- Quisquam 2278—2280.
- Quisque meaning 2283; with superlative 2284, 2286; primus quisque 1464\*, 2284, 2286; after quo 1643; quotus 2286, 1706\*, 1779\*; unus 2283, 2287; ut 1707, 1716, 1717; with se, suus 2285, 2265, 1069; attracted into the case of suus 2288; used to distribute the first person plur. 1440; as a relative=quisquis 2290 c.
- Quisquis in limitative clauses with ind. 1697, 1569\*, 1611\*, 1717; used absolutely 2289; ut quicquid=ut quidque 1533c\*, 2283, 2285; quicquid hujus 1292; per quicquid deorum est 2035; cuicuiusmodi 1311, 1168\*; quicquid appropinquabant, 'the nearer they approached' 1094; arbitrum adegit, quicquid oporteret &c. 1752; quiqui licebunt 'at whatever price they shall be bid for' 1196.
- Quivis 2278, 2281; quem volest 1557\*.







- Re-, red- *in composition* 2098—2104.  
 Recedere ab armis 1719\*.  
 Receptaculo esse *Pref. p. lii*.  
 Receptio est *with accus.* 1400.  
 Receptui esse, &c. *Pref. pp. xxxiii, lii*;  
 receptui signum 1156; canere 1157.  
 Recessim, 'back' 2173\*.  
 Recipere aliquem tecto 1174; in tec-  
 tum 1177; ex hostibus 1673\*.  
 Recordor aliquid 1333, 1473\*; de ali-  
 qua re 1333; hæc me vidisse 1657\*.  
 Rectā, 'straightway' 1176; recta re-  
 gione 1173; recto litore, 'along the  
 shore' 1176.  
 Recte (*in answers*), 'all right' 1458\*;  
 recte sane 1713; nec recte 2227,  
 2231.  
 Rectus iudicii 1320.  
 Recusare (non) quin (*subj.*) 1622\*,  
 1973\*; quominus 1644, 2132\*.  
 Red-, *see* Re-.  
 Reddere. *with two nouns in accus.*  
 1059; *with pass. part. as obl. pred.*  
 1402.  
 Redit animus hosti 1750\*.  
 Redolere aliquid 1123.  
 Referre alicui acceptum, 'to enter to  
 one's credit' 1134; gratiam 1138;  
 refero ad vos, 'refer it to you' 1626\*;  
 (Actiam pugnam) 'rehearse' 1664\*.  
 Refert meā, *or* Ciceronis 1284, 1285;  
 ad me 1287; magni 1188, 1189;  
 magis, magnopere 1189.  
 Refertus *with abl.* 1606\*, 1692\*; *with*  
*gen.* 1336.  
 Reformido dicere 1978\*.  
 Regione 1170; recta, certa 1173; e  
 regione 1940.  
 Regnari, 'be under a king' 1421.  
 Relative pronouns, *see* Pronouns, and  
 Qui.  
 Religioni haberi 1162; esse, &c. *Pref.*  
*p. lii*; religio est hoc fieri 1161;  
 religionem rumpere 1691\*.  
 Relinquere locum mihi 1511\*; aliquid  
 direptioni 1142; prædæ *Pref. p.*  
*xxxv*; præsidio 1162.  
 Reliqui, 'left,' nihil facere 1298,  
 2246b\*;  
 reliquum, 'left' 1301; 'left un-  
 done' 1301, 1384a\*; reliquum dici  
 1384a\*; reliquum est ut *with subj.*  
 1721\*.  
 Remedio esse *Pref. p. lii*; remedium  
 esse *Pref. p. xxviii*; remedium *with*  
*gen.* 1713\*.  
 Remigio sequi 1719\*, *cf.* 1236.  
 Reminiscor *with gen.* 1332; *with accus.*  
 1333.  
 Remis navigare 1210.  
 Remitto quærere 1600\*.  
 Reperior venisse 1353.  
 Res, *see* Re.  
 Resonant Amaryllida 1120c.  
 Rescribere ad ea 1593\*; argentum,  
 'pay back' 1691\*.  
 Respondere alicui 1134; benevolentiae  
 1977\*.  
 Restat ut *with subj.* 1441\*.  
 Retinere pignori 1162.  
 Retro 2105—2108.  
 Retrorsum 1839\*, *cf.* 2175.  
 Reus, 'answerable for,' *with gen.* 1326,  
 1854\*; capitis 1356\*; 'answerable  
 to,' *with gen.* 1280 (*p.* 1118).  
 Rideo perfidum *or* inamabile 1097;  
 hoc præceptum 1545\* (*p.* 233).  
 Ridiculo esse *Pref. p. lii*.  
 Risui esse 1160, *Pref. p. lii*; risus  
 esse *Pref. p. xxviii*; risu emoriri  
 1470\*.  
 Rite 1233, 1714\*.  
 Ritu alicujus 1266\*, 2165\*.  
 Rivis 1239.  
 Rogare aliquem sententiam, &c. 1122;  
 in hæc verba 1536\*; de aliqua re  
 1125; aliquid utendum 1401; num-  
 quid velit 1458\*; ut faciat 1511.  
 Rubori esse *Pref. p. lii*; rubor esse  
*Pref. p. xxviii*.  
 Rure, 'from the country' 1258; rure  
 meo, 'at my country house' 1170;  
 ruri 1168.  
 Rursum vorsum 2173.  
 Sacramento dicere 1238; rogare, a-  
 digere 1245, 1492\*; sacramentum  
 dicere 1245.  
 Saltare Cyclopa 1120, 1123.  
 Saltem 1751\*, 1761\*.  
 Salva fide 1576\*; salvo te 1573\*.  
 Salvere jubet, *i. e.* 'says salve' 2165\*.

- Salutare aliquem Caium, 'greet one by the name of Caius' 1745\*.
- Saluti esse, *Pref. p. lii*; salus esse, *Pref. p. xxviii*.
- Sane in concessions 1622, 1599\*; abi sane 2175\*; with *obl. pred.* 1593\*; nisi sane 1569; sane quam 1649; recte sane 1713\*; sane exsomnis, 'quite sleepless' 1716\*.
- Sapere, 'taste of,' mare 1123.
- Sat, *see* Satis.
- Satiare aliquem libertate 1557 fin.\*
- Satin' abiit? 1611, 1639\*; satin' ut 1653.
- Satis agere, 'be pretty busy' 1581 (*p. 251*); satis cum periculo 1883\*; satis dato 1253; sat diu esse 1626\*; satis bono viro est 1371c; satis superque humili est 1385; satis facere alicui 1700\*; sat habeo, 'I am content' 1601\*; satis impavidus 1975\*; politus 1683\*; valere 1683\*; validus ad 2246b\*:
- satis diei 1568(2)\*; tritici quod satis est 1296.
- Satius est emori 1708\*.
- Satui semen 1157, *Pref. p. xxxiii*.
- Satur with *gen.* 1336; with *abl.* 1339.
- Satus, 'sprung from' 1264.
- Saucia pectus 1102, 1101 fin.
- Scatere aliqua re 1212.
- Scilicet, 'you may be sure' 1468\*.
- Scio quid quæras, quod quæris 1763; scire licet aliquid esse 1546\*; scio *parenthetical* 1607; scire volo 1761; scin' 1616\*, 1761; quod sciam 1694; sciens, 'knowingly' 1588\*.
- Sciscere with *infin.* sentence 1351.
- Scribere Romā 1260; with *inf. object-sentence* 1260\*, 1721\*; de aliqua re 1728\*.
- Se, sibi, *general use* 2262; refer to the grammatical subject 2263; to a word in the sentence, not the subject 2265; to the subject of the principal sentence 2267, 2268a; to the unexpressed subject of an *infin.* 2270, 2304g:
- se ipse 2264; se quisque 2285; se inserted by way of emphasis (se quisque conspici poterat) 1776\*;
- inter se, *see* Inter;
- secum habere, 'keep to oneself' 1135; cogitare, 'picture to oneself' 1232\*, 1711\*; volutare 1663\*; agitare animo 1716\*.
- Se, *sed*, *prep.* 2109—2111.
- Secretus with *gen.* 1335; with *abl.* 1325.
- Secundum 2112—2116.
- Secus=secundum *p. 438 note*.
- secus, *e.g.* altrinsecus, &c. 2117.
- Secus, 'otherwise' 1593\*, 1639\*; ac, 'otherwise than' 1583\*; cedere, 'turn out badly' 1488\*.
- Secus virile, 'of the male sex' 1104.
- Sed 2208—2210; sed tu videris 1593; sed tamen 1621\*; sed...tamen 2034\*, 2234\*.
- Sedere, with *abl.* carpento, vestibulo 1170; culmine 1173; sede 2153\*.
- Semper used *adjectively* (eri semper lenitas) 1754\*.
- Senecta ætate, 'in old age' 1180.
- Senio esse *Pref. p. liii*.
- Sensim excitare, 1672\*.
- Sententia mea 1246; ex animi sententia 1941, 1695\*; ex sententia senatûs 1751\*; in qua sententia fuit, 'was of this opinion' 1439\*; in hanc sententiam ire 1241.
- Sentio aliquem aliquid 1228 fin.\*
- Seorsum, seorsus, sorsum 2174; seorsum corpore toto 2110.
- Sepondere aliquid aliquo 1436\*.
- Sermoni esse *Pref. p. liii*.
- Serva (*neut. adj.*) 1646 fin.\*
- Servire salutem alicujus 1134; alicui 1134; servitutem 1100, 1073\*.
- Sestertium: in sestertio vicies 'with a property of 2,000,000 sesterces' 1975 (*cf. vol. I. p. 446*).
- Seu with *verb (ind.)* 1533c, 1563, 1567; (*subj.*) 1716; with *nouns* 1154\*, 2220c.
- Si in regular conditional sentences with *subj.* 1532; with *ind.* 1533; in *protasis*, when *apodosis* has *fut. part.* or *gerundive* 1570; with *pres. subj.* when *apodosis* has *fut. ind.* 1574(2); in reported condition 1750, 1752; sub conditione, si 2133\*; used without *verb* 1439, 1441, 1604\*; with *infin.* 1784;

- si, 'whenever' (*subj.*) 1716; (*ind.*) 1717; 'whether' (*subj.*) 1754; (*ind.*) 1755; 'because' 1533*b* fin. (si fefellerat); 1761\* (si disertus est):  
*in protasis, with at in apodosis* 1561; *with tamen in apod.* 1560 &c. (*see Tamen*):  
 si diis placet 1533; si etiam 1563, 1565; si forte 1441, (*subj.*) 1754, (*ind.*) 1573; si maxime (*subj.*) 1560, (*ind.*) 1561; si minus 1563, 1565, 1726\*; si modo (*ind.*) 1533*a*; sin (*subj.*) 1562, (*ind.*) 1533*a*, 1563; si nihil aliud, 'if he did nothing else' 1384*a*; si non 1533*aa*, 1563, 1565; si quærimus 1573; si quidem 1747, 1533*a*; si tamen 1533*b*: sive 1563, 1567:  
 ac si (*subj.*) 1580; etsi (*ind.*) 1561, (= 'but') 1609\*, 1613\*; etiam si (*subj.*) 1560, (*ind.*) 1561; ideo... si 1761\*; miror si (*subj.*) 1754; (*ind.*) 1757; moriar &c. si (*ind.*) 1575, 1588; nisi 1569, 1574, &c.; non si 1533*aa*; o si (*subj.*) 1562; qua si (*subj.*) 1580, (*ind.*) 1581; (*qualifying a word only*) 1583; quæro si (*subj.*) 1754; quam si (*subj.*) 1580, (*ind.*) 1533*aa*; quid si (*subj.*) 1578, (*ind.*) 1579; quod si 2209*e*, 2212; sic...si 1571; tametsi (*subj.*) 1560, (*ind.*) 1561; tamquam si (*subj.*) 1580; tento si (*subj.*) 1754; velut si (*subj.*) 1580; vide si, viso si (*ind.*) 1755; ut si 1430\*.  
*Sic referring to what follows* 1533; illud sic habeto 1603; sic existumo 2298\*; sic...ne 1650; sic...si 'on this condition, if' 1571*a*\*; *see also* sic ut (*below*):  
*referring to what precedes* 1672\*, 1757\*; *in answers* 'so' = 'yes' 1616; sic datur, 'there's for you' 1422\*; sic rideant 1592; 'on these terms' 1668\*; ut...sic 1377 fin.\*, 1581\*, 1717\*:  
 sic...ut (*subj.*) 1535*d*\*; *f*\*; (*ind.*) 1591, 1357\*; sicut 1583, 1600\*, 1624\*, 1707*a*, *e*; sicuti 1810\*, 2212\*.  
*Siccata manu capillos* 1126 (2),  
 Sicut, sicuti, *see* Sic.  
 Signo esse *Pref. p.* liii; signo funebri (*abl.?*) 'by way of notifying a death' 1231\*; signum receptui 1156, *Pref. p.* xxxiii.  
 Silentio 1236 (*p.* 100), 1371*d*; magno silentio 1241; cum silentio 1241, 1883.  
 Sileo rem 1123.  
 Similis *with dat.* 1142, 1052\*, 1314, 1464, 1568\*, &c.; *with gen.* 1314, 1039\*, 1101\*, 1532*c*\*, 2257\*, &c.; *summary of usage* 1317; similis ac 1581.  
 Simitu 2118, 2119.  
 Simul *as adv.* 2118, 2119; *with cum* 2120; *with abl.* 2121; simul ac (*primum*) *with ind.* 1719, *cf.* 1717; ubi...simul 1717; simul primum (*subj.*) 1720; simul...simul 2205.  
 Simulare se esse uxorem 1580\*.  
 Sin *with subj.* 1562; *with ind.* 1533*a*, 1563, 1575\*.  
 Sine *with abl.* 2122; *never with gerund* 1392; non sine aliquo 2279.  
 Singuli 2283, 2287, 1690\*.  
 Singultim 'with gasps' 1901\*.  
 Sinister *with dat.* 2201\*.  
 Sinistrorsus 2175.  
 Sino 'leave alone' aliquem 1120*a*; 'allow' aliquem ire 1139, 1348, 1355\*; aliquid fieri 1351; sine faciam 1462\*, 1906; ne dem 1336\*.  
 Siquidem 'if indeed' (*of things not assumed to be true*) 1533*a*, 1080\*, 1603 fin.\*, 1684\*, 2252\*; 'since' 1747, 1988*b*\*.  
 Siremps 'in the same way' 1325\* (*cf.* 542).  
 Sis (*i.e.* si vis § 725, 2073) 1606\*, 1629\*; vide sis 1656\*; sis vide 1655\*.  
 Sisti non potest 'a stand cannot be made,' 'all is over' 1422, 1704\*, 2290\*.  
 Sistis = sivistis 1722\*.  
 Sitire sanguinem 1123.  
 Sive *with verb* 1563, 1567; *with noun* 2216, 2219, 1222\*, 2303\*.  
 'So-called' qui dicitur &c. *Pref. p.* lxxxiv.  
 Socius regni 1300; in decumis 1752\*.

- Sodes 2073\*.  
 Solacio esse *Pref. p. liii*; solacium esse *Pref. p. xxviii*.  
 Soleo *with infn.* 1344; solent *without expressed subject* 1428; solitus *with dat.* 1382a; solito magis 1270.  
 Solutum, in 'for the whole value' 2164\*.  
 Sollicitudini esse *Pref. p. liii*.  
 Solvere aliquem 'to set free' 1607\*; solvendo esse 1156, 1382b; solutus opere 1262; legibus 1750.  
 Solum: non solum...sed 2240—2242; etiam, non solum 1750\*.  
 Sonare atavos 1123; hominem 1097; contrarium, raucum &c. 1096, 1097; sincerum 1546\*.  
 Sonarius (Σων) 'of purses' 1757\*.  
 Sorsum 2173.  
 Sortiri iudices 1741; sortito 1254.  
 Spatium consilii habendi 1280; *with dat. and gen.* 1281; spatii sex dies 1304; spatio XV milium abesse 1248; spatium habere ut (*Lucy*) 1907\*.  
 Spectaculo esse *Pref. p. liii*; spectaculis 'at the shows' 1180.  
 Spectare ad 'tend to' solitionem 1818.  
 Sperendus morum 1320.  
 Spero campum itineris finem 1144\*; aliquid esse 1436\*; aliquid futurum 1599\*; aliquid fuisse 1569 fin.\*; spero *parenthetical* 1607.  
 Spes hoc futurum 1039a\*, 1352; ea spes bellatum icti et finem adesse 1422\*; ad aliquam spem reservare 1610\*; spe *qualifying comparative* 1266, 1270a.  
 Spirare flammam 1123.  
 Splendori esse *Pref. p. liii*.  
 Spoliatus *with abl.* 1335.  
 Spoudeo *with inf.* 1753.  
 Sponsione lacerare 1752; sponsonem facere 1752; sponsonis condemnari 1324; *example of wages* 1753.  
 Sponte 1239; sua sponte 1749 fin.\*, 2036\*; sponte sua 1758\*.  
 Stare *with abl.* 'stand by means of' 1384\* (*p.* 159); 'stand to' 1172, 1279\*, 1959\*; in eo 1175; pluris stare, 'of cost' 1188; magno 1198; per aliquem stare quominus 1644, 2035.  
 Statim 1779\*.  
 Stativa (*i.e.* castra) 1063, 1721\*; castra 1717\*.  
 Statu liber 1239.  
 Statuere contra aliquem 'decide against one' 1899.  
 Sterilis *with abl.* 1335.  
 Stillare rorem 1123.  
 Stomacho esse *Pref. p. liii*.  
 Strati esse *Pref. pp. xxxii, liii*.  
 Strepitu 1239.  
 Studere alicui rei 1382a; alicui 1329; alicujus 1328; mi studere 1725\*; eadem 1094; *with infn.* 1350, 1939\*, 2164\*.  
 Studio esse *Pref. p. liii*.  
 Stultus *with gen.* 1318.  
 Supere *with accus.* 1123; *with abl.* 2277\*.  
 Suadeo alicui agere 1345; *with infn. sentence* 1360.  
 Suapte natura 1759\*.  
 Sub, *general use of* 2123—2133; *in comparison* 2131—2141; sub conditione 2133; sub manus succedere 2131; sub manu esse 2132.  
 Subinde 1719\*.  
 Subire, 'pass under' 1696\*; tectum 1092; 'undergo' *with accus.* 1192; *cf.* 1717\*; alicui in custodiam 'send a person on guard' 2031\*; pone subire, 'submit to' 2041 (1).  
 Subita belli 1280 fin. (*p.* 1189).  
 Subit defined 1008; *contained in finite verb* 1425; *not separately expressed*, e.g. 'persons in general' 1428; (quod aiant) 1535\*; *inferred from a preceding clause* 1420; *from a subsequent clause* 1432, b; *of impersonal verbs* 1431; *compound of several persons or things* 1436, 1437; *expressed by indefinite mood* 1355; *quod with indic.* 1701.  
 Superfluous, *general use* 1496—1505; *use of tenses* 1507—1517; *see also* 1530, 1596, 1630; *typical examples* 1518—1527; *in the following sentences: Concessive* 1620—1626; *with ut* 1706;



*Conditional* 1548 sqq.; *reported condition* 1750; *Consecutive* 1678 sqq.; *Dependent on subjunctive* 1778; *on infinitive* 1766; *dependent question of fact* 1758—1766; *of command* 1612; *with quin* 1766; *Final* 1628 sqq.; *Hypothetical* 1528 sqq.; *Interrogative of command* 1610; *of supposition with ut* 1708; *repeated in surprise* 1770, cf. 1618; *Jussive* 1596—1626; *Optative* 1588—1594; *in orat. obl.* 1780—1791; *Restrictive with qui quidem, &c.* 1692; *with ut* 1650, 1704:

*with or after the following words:* absque te 1556; antequam 1672; cave 1608; censeo 1606; ceu 1580; cum, 'whenever' 1716, 'when' 1720—1724, 'since' 1726, 1728, 'although' 1730, 1732, 'such that then' 1684, *in contrasts* 1734; dico 1606; dignus qui 1634; donec 1664, 1670; dum, 'until' 1664, 'while' 1666, cf. 1756, 'provided that' 1668; dummodo 1668; est cum 1684; est quod 1686, 1533a\*; etiamsi 1561; etsi 1560; fac 1606; faxo 2063\* (*but cf. Pref. p. ciii, note*); forsitan 1766; hortor 1606; ita (*in wishes*) 1588; licet, licebit, &c. 1606; modo (*in wishes*) 1592; (*in concessions*) 1626; (*with qui*) 1692; ne, 'not' 1596, 1600—1602, 'lest' 1636—1650; necesse est 1606; nedum 1658; negotium do 1616; nihil est quod 1535a\*; nolo 1608; non quia, non quo, &c. 1744; nuntia 1606; O si 1582; oportet 1606; optimumst 1616\*; postulo 1606; potin' ut 1643; potiusquam 1676, 1603\*; potiusquam ut 1678; præcipio 1205\*; priusquam 1672; quamquam 1697; quam quia 1288; quam si 1580; quamvis 1624; quasi 1580; qui (*adj.*) *causal* 1714, 1716; *conditional* 1558; *consecutive* 1680—1686; *final* 1632, 1634; *restrictive* 1692, 1694; qui (*adv.*) *in execration* 1594; quicunque, 1716; quidni 1614; quid si 1578; quin *p.* 274 *note*; quippe qui 1714; quis est qui, &c. 1686;

quo 1644; quoad, 'until' 1664; quod 1744, 1748; quom, *see* Cum; quominus 1644; si, *see* s.v.; sicuti 1580; si maxime 1560; sine 1606; sive 1562; sunt qui 1686, 1432; tametsi 1560; tamquam, tamquam si 1580; timeo ut 1652; ubi, 'when-ever' 1716; velut, velut si 1580; vide quam 1762; vide ut 1640, 1656; volo, vis, &c. 1606 (*p.* 262); ut, *see* s.v.; uti (*in reported statement*) 1752; utinam 1592; ut qui, ut pote qui 1714; ut qui (*adv.*) 1696:

*in such expressions as:* censuerim, non facile dixerim 1540; crederes 1544; dicat aliquis 1542, *Pref. p. ci*; ne dicam 1660; pace tua dixerim 1590; putares 1544, 1546; quod dicas 1748; quod diceret 1746; quod sciam 1694; velim, vellem 1536.

Subsidio missus 1115 (5), 1568 fin.; proficisci 1162, *see Pref. p. liii*; subsidium mihi diligentiam comparavi 1643\*.

*Substantive defined* 1003; *as subject* 1008, 1009; *as attribute* (i.e. *in apposition*) 1012, 1015, 1058; *as predicate* 1012, 1016, 1017, 1059; *often omitted* 1063—1066; *qualified by genitive* 1020, 1276, *by dative of 'work contemplated'* 1156, *by infinitive* 1346, 1360; *oblique cases how used* 1018—1020:

*verbal substantives (with verbal qualifications): viz. gerund* 1373 sqq.; *infinitive* 1342 sq.; *stems in -iōn* 1400; *supine in -um* 1114, 1379. *Compare also:* concursatio Lamiam 1110; discessus Arpinum 1168\*; exequias 1114 (2); fides pelago? 1402\*; hospes Zacyntho 1264; infitias 1114; interitus 1228; introitus Zmyrnam 1110; mansio Formiis 1168; opus 1226, 1255; reditus Narbone 1258; suppetias 1114 (2), 1117; usus 1226, 1255.

Subter, *general use* 2124—2127; *in composition* 2142.

Subtrahere aliquem aspectu 2233\*.

Subvenire mihi 1599\*, 2267\*.



Succedere tecto 1144; sub manus 2131.

Succensere 2135; alicui 1745\*.

Succlamare alicui 1649\*.

Sudare mella 1123.

Sufficere, *see under Dative*.

Sui *as partitive gen.* 1290; *as objective gen.* 1312; sui colligendi facultas (*where sui is for plural*) 1395, 2242\*.

Sum, *see Esse*.

Summovere urbe aliquem 2133\*; sum-moto, 'when the lictors had cleared a way' 1254; *comp.* summoventes 1073\*.

Summus mons, 'the top of the mountain,' &c. 1295; summum, 'at most' 1095, 1196\*.

Sumptui esse *Pref. p.* liv; ferre expensum, 'to pass to expenditure account' 1697 *fin.*

Sunt qui *with subj.* 1686; *with ind.* 1687.

Super, *general use of* 2143—2154; *with gerundive* 1386; *in composition* 2155; super quam 2150; satis superque 2150, 1539 *fin.*\*; super omnia esse, 'to beat everything' 2153.

Supera = supra 2157.

Superare aliquem 1384\*; veriverbio 1686\*; proelio 1744\*.

Superbire *with abl.* 2286\*.

Superimposita monumento 1473\*.

*Superlatives with partitive gen.* 1290; *with abl. of measure of difference* 1204; *with longe* 1203; *in expressions like extremus annus*, 'end of year' 1295; *with quisque*, e.g. optimus, primus quisque 2284, 2286; *with tam...quam* 1637; *cum maxime* 1641; *quam maximus* 1637; *quam qui maxime* 1639.

Supersedere *with abl.* 1212.

Superstes suorum 2263\*, sibi 2267\*.

*Supine (1) in -um* 1114, 1379; *with iri forms fut. pass. inf.* 1380; *not used after prepos.* 1381; *used after following verbs*: abire 1283\*; advenire 1619\*; agere 1663\*; cieri 1114; conduci 1114; dari 1114, 1379; dilabi 1379; dimittere 1538\*; ire 1114, 1371 c\*, 1379; migrare 1618\*; mittere 1114, 1379; proficisci 1379;

recipere 1114; venire 1114, 1379; vocare 1114, 1379.

(2) *in -u* 1210, 1387, 1388 *and note*: *cf. also* 1383, 1393; *with dignus* 1387; *opus* 1255, 1389\*; *surgere cubitu* 1262; *arcere transitu* 2071\*.

Suppetias alicui venire 1114(2), 1117; ferre 1117, 2258\*.

Supplemento, *cf. Pref. p.* liv.

Supplicare alicui 1142, 2236\*.

Supra, *general use* 2156—2160; *qualifying numerals* 2159; supra adicere, 'bid higher' 1633 *fin.*\*; supra quam 1645, 2159; *with indic.* 1569\*.

Surgere solio 1808\*; cubitu 1262.

Surrepsit (surrîpere) se mihi 1642.

Sursum 2173, 2175.

Suscipere juvenem regendum 1401; maculam sibi 1648 *fin.*\*, *cf.* 1696\*.

Suspensus lacerto loculos 1126 (2).

Suspectus *with gen.* 1326.

Suspicio cælum, 'look up to' 1120b.

Suspicio: *in suspicionem venire alicui* 1566\*; *in susp. ven. expilasse* 1347.

Suspignor te commoveri 1351; id fore 1561\*.

Suspirare Chloen 1123.

Susque deque 1904.

Susum 2175.

Suus *for possessive gen.* 1278—1282; *for objective gen.* 1315; *distinguished from ejus* 2262; *refers to subject of sentence* 2263; *to word other than subject* 2265; *to subject of principal sentence* 2267; *to subject of general infinitive* 2270:

suus heres 2303; suum ipse, &c. 1070, 2264; suum quisque 1070, 1440, 2150\*, 2285; suus sibi 1142; 'favourable' 2302, 1848\*, 2263\*.

Tacere clades 1123; etiam taces? non taces? 1613, 1618\*; tacedum 1765\*? tacitus *as sec. pred.* 1069; tacitost opus 2290\*; usus 1255.

Tædet me alicujus 1328.

Tædio esse *Pref. p.* liv.

Tam...quam 1635—1641; tam diu...

- quamdiu 1667; non tam propter id ...quam propter, &c. 1227; tam multa quam paucis diebus 1659\*; numquam tam facilis...quin 1698; tam sceleratus...ut 1572\*; tam, *without any correlative expressed* 1441\*, 1539\*, 1572\*, 1729\*, 1730 fin.\*; tam mane, 'so early' 1441\*.
- Tamen 2115; *after* dum 1668\*; et 1562; nec 2206; nisi 1569; sed 1621\*, 2234\*; verum 1571a\*, 1638; *in same clause as* cum 1722, 1359\*; *as* quamquam 2215; *in apodosis to concessive subjunctive* 1624; *to* cum 1730, 1734; *to* etiamsi 1560; *to* etsi 1457\*, 1561; *to* quamquam 1697; *to* quamvis 1533b\*, 1624, 1627; *to* si 1533b, 1545\*, 1560, 1566, 1568, 1574 (4); *to* sive 1567; *to* tametsi 1561; *to relative clause* 1266.
- Tametsi *with subj.* 1560; *with indic.* 1561.
- Tamquam (tanquam) *with indic.* 1581; *with subj.* 1580, 1622 fin.\*, 2237\*; *with fut. part.* 1250\*; *with noun* 1583, 1399\*, 1533c\*, 1546\*, 1726\*, 1962\*; tamquam si 1580.
- Tandem, 'almost' = 'pray' 1610\*, 1622 fin.\*, 1726 fin.\*.
- Tantillum 1605\*.
- Tantisper 1485d\*, 1663\*.
- Tantummodo 1546\*, 1476\*.
- Tantundem 2252\*.
- Tantus...ut, *with subj.* 1682\*, 1696; alterum tantum 2294; tanti est 1192, 1193; tanti refert, interest 1189; tanto opere 1237; tanto *with comparative* 1204; Tacitean use 1205; tanto vincere 1204; tantum præstare 1203, crescere 1516; tantum refert, interest 1189; tantum abest ut (*subj.*) 1699; tantum abest ut... ut (*subj.*) 1702; tantum quod 1705; tantum, 'only' 1180\*; ideo tantum 1642\*; non tantum...sed 2241; nec tantummodo...sed 1476\*; tantum vide ne 1640.
- Tegimento esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Temere non dico 1467\*; non temerest quod 1619\*.
- Temperi 1178, 1114b\*.
- Tempero animis (*dat.*) 1646\*, 1658\*; ab aliqua re 1475\*.
- Tempore brevi 1182; in tempore, in ipso tempore 1179 (*p. 77*); in tempore hoc 1608\*; quibusdam temporibus, 'under certain circumstances' 1533c\*; temporibus errare 1210.
- Tempus est colloqui 1360; colloquendi 1157, 1313; colloquio 1156; ad colloquendum 1313, *cf.* 1828; ad tempus redire 1179 (*p. 77*), 1822; id temporis, *see* Id.
- Tendere, 'make for,' limina 1110; 'encamp' 1413.
- Tenere memoria 1174; se oppido 1667 fin.\*; teneri cædis 1324; ad exhibendum 1323; dolum malum 1776; ex empto 1941; hereditatibus, 'by rights of inheritance' 1228.
- Tenses of indicative 1447—1493; of imperative 1495; of infinitive 1364—1372; of subjunctive 1506—1527; in hypothetical and conditional sentences 1530; in jussive 1596; in final 1630; in reported speech (*or. obl.*) 1785, 1787.
- Tenus, meaning of 2161; general use of 2161—2164; hactenus, &c. 2163, 1588\*; protenus 2166.
- Terræ, 'on the ground' 1168 fin. (*p. 70*), 1169; terra marique 1170, 1177 (*p. 75*); in terra 'on land' 1178.
- Terrori esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Testimonio esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Time 'when' (*loc.*) 1178; (*abl.*) 1180, 1181; (*acc.*) 1092; 'in the course of which' (*abl.*) 1182; with in 1183, 1967; with per 2034; with de 1089, 1911; with inter 1089, 1993; 'throughout which' (*acc.*) 1090; (*abl.*) 1089, 1184, 1185; (*acc.*) with per 1089; 'by' or 'up to which' (*acc.*) with ad 1183, 1822; 'from which' (*abl.*) with ab 1808; 'after which' (*abl.*) with ex 1946; with de 1910; (*acc.*) with post 2045.
- Timeo iram 1750; ab aliquo 1810; alicui 1758; ne, ut, ne non (*subj.*)

- 1523, 1652; *verb omitted* 1654; *used with dependent question* 1758.
- Timori esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Tis (cf. 386) 1334\*.
- Tonat 1431; *with accus.* 1123.
- Tormento esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Tota Italia, 'all over Italy' 1170, 1083; tota in Italia 1173; æstate tota 1990\*; toto opere 1086\*; totum diem, 'all through the day' 1090; per noctem totam 1089; nocte tota 1090\*.
- Tradere aliquem alicui 1606 fin.\*; 1675\*.
- Traducere aliquos Rhenum, 'lead some across the Rhine' 1105; trans Rhenum 1105; Romam 'to Rome' 1108.
- Traicere aliquos Rhenum 1106 b; trajectus lora 1127 (2).
- Tramittere maria 'cross the seas' 1115 (2)\*.
- Trans *with accus.* 2167, 2168; *in composition* 2169—2171; *verbs compounded with, have double accus.* 1106 b.
- Transferre, 'translate' (of language) 1534\*.
- Transfundere aliquid ad aliquid 1676 fin.\*
- Transitive verbs defined 1413; *verbs become transitive by composition* 1120 b, 1121; *or by metaphor* 1120 c, 1123; *often have abl. of means* 1214.
- Transportare milites flumen 1106.
- Transvorsus 2173; transversum unguem 'a nail's breadth' 1086; transversa tiens 'sprinting' 1097.
- Tremo artus 1102; artubus cf. 1101.
- Tribuere aliquid alicui ignavie 1163; ultro tributa 2184.
- Triumphare gaudium 1535 d\*.
- Tu, *emphatic* 1426; *in addresses* 1082, 1441; *rarely of hypothetical subject* 1544.
- Tum, *in a series* 2207, 1640\*; tum... tum, *as coordinate particles* 2205; cum...tum vero, 'as well...as' 1473\*; tum...cum, 'at the time when' 1721, 1358\*; cum...tum (*in contrasts*) 1734, 1735; si...tum 1751\*; tum ipsum 1095.
- Turpitudini esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Tutelæ esse *Pref. p. liv.*
- Tutus frontem 1127 (1).
- Tuus, *for possessive gen.* 1278; *with gen. in appos.* 1059; *for objective gen.* 1313; *tui, as partitive gen.* 1290; *as objective gen.* 1312; tempore tuo 2301.
- Vacare pecunia 1262, 1135\*, 2290\*; a scribendo &c. 1392; philosophia 1135; vacat mihi prætere 1134.
- Vacatio muneris 1318; a munere 1319.
- Vacuus (vocivus) labore 1262; laboris 1336, 1533 e\*.
- Vae victis 1152; misero mihi 1771\*.
- Valde quam pauci 1649.
- Vale, 'farewell' 1601, 1660\*: valebis 1589; valeant 1588; valens 'in health' 1074, 1589\*; idem valere, 'to have the same force' 1690\*; plus valere 1378\*; quantum 1434\*; valeo commutare 1931\*.
- Ubi, 'when' *with ind.* 1719, 1471\*; ubi primum 1073; 'whenever' (*ind.*) 1717, 1493; (*subj.*) 1716; 'where?' 1633; 'where' 1494\*; ut ubi *with subj.* 1714; ubi, *relating to persons or things* 1171; ubiubi 'wheresoever' 1402\*.
- Ubicumque, 'anywhere' 2290.
- Ubi que 2284, 2287.
- Ubivis 2281.
- ve, *general use of* 2216, 2218; *see also Neve, Sive; ve...ve* 2220 b.
- Vel, *general use of* 2216, 2218; vel potius 1722\*, 2218; vel dicam 2218; vel...vel 2220; vel...vel...vel etiam 1741\*; vel, *with superlative &c.* 2221; vel tres 1540\*; *introducing a special instance* 2222; scio vel exsignavero, 'why I'll even write them out' 1541.
- Velle, velim, vellem, *see Volo.*
- Velor, 'cover myself' 1102 fin.\*
- Velut, *with indic.* 1581; *with subj.*

- 1580; *with noun* &c. 1232\*, 1845\*; *velut si, with subj.* 1580, 1901\*.
- Vendere auro 1196; auro contra 1893; plure 1187, *Pref. p.* lviii; magno 1039\*.
- Veneno esse *Pref. p.* liv.
- Venerationi esse *Pref. p.* liv.
- Venia sit dicto, bonā veniā vestrā &c. 1590; *with future indic.* 1589 fin.
- Venire *with infin.* 1362; *supine* 1114; subsidio *cf.* 1162, *Pref. p.* xxix; adversum mihi 1838; usu venire 1238, 1389; venit mihi in mentem, *with gen.* 1332; *with nom.* 1333; *with infin.* 1355; ventum est eo ut (*subj.*) 1568 (2).
- Venum dare 1112; ire 1112, 1356\*; asportare 2167\*.
- Verb finite, definition of 1002; use of 1009; *transitive and intransitive* 1412—1414; *deponent* 1418, 1419; *use of verb-inflexions* 1425 *fol.*; *qualifications of verb*, 1018; *verb omitted* 1439—1444.
- Verba dare, 'give words' (and nothing more) i.e. 'cheat' 1120, 1461\*; unoverbodicere 1617\*; verbisconferi 1439\*; discrepare 1137\*; efferre 1476\*; prosequi 1476\*; alternis verbis laudare, 'every other word' 2287; eisdem verbis reddere 1778\*; *verbis omitted in paucis te volo*; nolo pluribus 1237; ausculta paucis 1763\*.
- Verbal nouns, *see* *Chapp.* XII—XIV; and *under Substantives.*
- Verbero (*subst.*) 1698.
- Verecundiae esse *Pref. p.* liv; quæ verecundia est *Pref. p.* xxviii.
- Vereor facere 1344; ne faciam 1652; vereor te 1329; tui 1328.
- Veriverbio 'in truth telling' 1686\*.
- Vero 'indeed,' 'but' 2209 *b*, 2210 *b*, 1282\*; enimvero 2210 *a*, 1881\*, 1331, 2252; at vero 1623; immo vero 2251, 2252, 1652\*; nunc vero 2065\*; neque vero 1745\*; tum vero 1070\*, 1473\*.
- Versibus scribere 1238.
- Versum, versus (vorsum, vorsus), 2172—2177; pone versus 'hindwards' 2041.
- Vertere vitio, *see* Vitio; quod bene vertat (verteret) 1588; di bene vortant, *parenthetical* 1611\*; anno vertente, 'in the course of a year' 1182.
- Verum 'but' 2209, 2210 *a*, 1473\*, 2173\*; verum enimvero 2210 *a*; verum etiam 1614\*, 1622\*; verum tamen 1571\*, 1638\*; 'true' in answers 2251.
- Vescor *with abl.* 1226; *with accus.* 1223; 'take food' absolutely 1716\*.
- Vesperī 1178.
- Vester, *for possessive genitive* 1278; followed by qui *with verb* 1066; vestrum *as partitive genitive* 1290, 1545\* (*p.* 233); *with omnium as possessive genitive* 1278; vestri, *as objective gen.* 1312.
- Vestigium 'a foot's breadth' 1086; vestigiis sequi 'follow in the track' 1177 (*p.* 75), 1344\*.
- Vestitui (*predicative*) 1160, *Pref. p.* liv.
- Veto facere 1345; te facere 1348; vetor facere 1349, 1728\*.
- Vi 'by force' 1238; per vim 1239.
- Viā 'methodically' 1236, 'by the road' 1176; sua via 1177 fin.; in via 'on the road' 1177 (*p.* 75); ire viam 1100; aliquot dierum viam abesse 1672\*.
- Vicem alicujus 1102, *cf.* 1101; invicem 1973; vice 'like' *with gen.* 1101.
- Vicinus amborum 2285 fin.\*; vicino (sita) 'in the neighbourhood' 1173 (*p.* 73).
- Vicissim *in quasi-correspondence to partim* 1211\*.
- Victui (*predicative*) 1160; *Pref. p.* liv.
- Vide ut...detur 'see that it be given,' vide ne 1640; vide ut sit, 'perhaps it is not,' ne sit 1656; vide ut 'see how,' vide quam (*subj.*) 1762 (*cf.* 1392\* videmus ut); vide quid (*subj.*) 1706\*; vide si (*with indic.*) 1755; vide, viden *parenthetical with ut* 1655, 1761; *with noun* 1761; vide sis 1656, sis vide 1655 fin.; me vide



- '*trust to me*' 1594\*, 1601; viderent ne quid detrimenti resp. caperet 1648.
- Idelicet '*it is plain*' 1604\*, 1672\*.
- Ideo me esse 1352; civem duci '*see a citizen led*' 1532 b\*, 1676\*; hæc picta 1560\*; hos petentes 1583\*; hoc consecuturum 1561\*; vidimus eum facerent 1724; quid facias 1526; videres '*one might have seen*' 1544; video, videris, &c. 1593, *Prof. p. cvi*; videbis 1595, *Prof. p. cvii*.
- Videor facere 1353; videtur eum facere 1356; mihi 1148; futurus 1570\*.
- Vigilata nox '*night spent in watching*' 1123.
- Vin faciam? 1606.
- Vincere sponsonem '*win a wager*' 1100; sponstone 1099; prælio 1532 b\*; cantando 1610 fin.\*; ut crearent 1648; vicisse debeo '*ought to be declared winner*' 1561\*.
- Viso si, *with ind.* 1755.
- Vitalbundus castra 1405, *cf. Prof. p. lxxviii*.
- Vitio aliquid vertere 1162, 2113\*, *Prof. p. lv*; vitio creari 1238; dare 1743\*; meum vitium esse 1161.
- Vituperationi esse *Prof. p. liv*.
- Vivere vitam 1100; Baccanalia 1123; carne 1214.
- Vix 2230 r, 2234; vix temperavere quin (*subj.*) 1646; non modo non ...sed vix 2240 c; vix homines 2001\*.
- Ullus 2278—2280; ullius (*subst.*) '*of any thing*' 2280.
- Uls, ultra *general use of* 2178—2183; ultra fidem 1627\*; ultra quam 1645, 2182.
- Ultro '*to that side*' 2178; *opposed to* citro 2178, 1870, 2173\*, 2185; *metaphorically* 2184, 1731\*, 2071\*; ultro tributa 2184.
- Unā '*together*' 1176; una opera '*just as well*' 1237, 1540 fin.\*, 1558\*.
- Unde *of persons*, unde petitur '*the defendant*' 1263, 1779; unde attributa erat pecunia '*on whom he had received an order for the money*' 1198; unde = qua de re 1263 fin.:
- unde unde '*from somewhere or other*' 2290.
- Universus 2283, 2287, 2290\*.
- Unus *with* quisque 2283, 2287, 1760\*; *with* quicquid 2287; *with superlatives* '*above all*', '*singularly*' 1232 fin.\*, 1233 fin.\*; una altissimis defixa radicibus 1683\*; unus et idem 2294; unus et alter '*one or two*' 2294; unus qui (*subj.*) 1692; omnes ad unum 1822, 1719\*; uno minus '*one less*' ('*less by one*') 1204.
- Vobis *as* dativus ethicus 1150.
- Vocative, *use of* 1022, 1082.
- Vocivus, *see* Vacuus.
- Volo id 1289; facere 1344, 1588\*; me facere 1351, 1588\*; numquid me vis 1094; rempublicam salvam velle 1606; plebem fuisse, '*will have it, that the people was, &c.*' 1533 d\*; nequis velit emi-se 1371 a; hoc emptum esse 1371 d; volo te levatum 1402; volo, velim sis, vellem esses 1606; volo ut sit 1648; volo scire *parenthetical* 1761; quam vis, quam volent, &c. 1624; velim, vellem 1536; velitis, jubeatis 1536, 2204 c; voluero 1454 (2), 1483:
- volenti mihi est 1152, 1153; volvendis mensibus, volventibus annis *Prof. p. lxxix*.
- Voluntate 1239, 1535 c\*; alicujus 1246; sua 1706 fin.\*.
- Voluptas facit contumeliæ 1428\*; voluptati esse 1725\*, *Prof. p. lv*.
- Vorsum, versus, *see* Versum.
- Voveo templum Divo 1750; tibi Jovi Statori 1751\*, *Prof. p. xxii*.
- Urgeo illud '*press that point*' 1552\*.
- Uspiam 1565\*.
- Usquam 1973\*.
- Usque, *general use of* 2186—2192, 2284; usque adhuc 1590\*; adusque 1819, 2190; usque eo (adeo) dum, donec, quead 2189, 2192, 1664, 1669; usque eo ut 2192; usque dare '*continue to give*' 1642\*.
- usque quaque 1747\*, 2066\*, 2187.
- Usus aliqua re 1226; aliqua re facta



1250; quod facto usust 1256, 1255 fin.; alicujus rei 1225; in usum satis 2295\*:

usui esse, &c. 1160, *Pref. p. lv*; usu capere 1243; venire 1238; usu dare 1238; in usu esse 1390.

Ut (uti) 1499; (1) '*how?*' (ind.) 1759, 1940\*; *in depend. question (subj.)* 1758 fin., 1762, 1221\*, 1695\*: *so probably* timeo ut 1652; vide ut 1656 (*comp. videmus ut* 1392\*):

'*how!*' (ind.) 1759, 2247\*; *with parenthetical* viden, scio 1761; *in wishes* 2592, 1594:

(2) '*how*' *relative: so perhaps* satin ut (ind.) 1653; vide ut (ind.) 1655:

'*as*' (ind.) 1707, 1532 c\*, 1686\*; ut fit 2214\*; *with infin.* 1784, 1351; *with noun* 1377 fin.\*; *with noun as sec. pred.* 1050\*, 1059 (*p. 24*), 1073 fin., 1075, 1547\*; ut in re trepida 1470\*; ut adversus magistrum 1840; ut tam multa '*considering the number*' 1707 b:

(3) '*although*' (ind.) 1707 c:

(4) '*when*' (ind.) 1719, 1080\*, 1222\*, 1461 fin.\*:

'*since*' (ind.) 1719 fin.; *in clause depend. on infin. (subj.)* 2122\*:

(5) '*in order that*' (subj.) 1638—1642, 1648, 1650, 1660; *with perf. and pluperf.* 1642; *with interrogative* quo 1638:

(6) '*so that*' (subj.) 1596, 1700, 1714; = '*if only*' (ut liceat) 1540\*; (ut effugiat) 1539\*:

(7) '*supposing that*' *in concessions (subj.)* 1706, 1883\*; (*with si in same sentence*) 1328\*:

*in questions to express surprise* 1708, 1839\*:

utcumque (ind.) 1697; ut cum maxime 1641; ut modo (subj.) 1594; ut ne 1636; ut non 1696; ut neque ...neque 2016\*; ut qui maxime 1641; ut qui (adv.) 1698, 1700 fin.; (adj.) 1714; ut quisque 1707, 1716, 1717, 1778\*, 2264\*; ut quicquid 1533 c; ut ubi (subj.) 1714; utut 1697:

ut revertar '*to return*,' ut sic dixerim, &c. 1660:

ut (*in various senses*) *after the following words or expressions*: abest, *see tantum below*; accedit 1700; accidit 1700; additum 2162\*; adeo 1696, 1358\*; id ago 2071\*; ad id venit 1568 (2); altera est res 1648; caveo 1777; causa 1696; censeo 1457\*; cogo id 1094; committo 1778\*; concedo 1541\*, 1672\*; consequor 1899\*; constituo 1560\*; contigit 1029 d; cum eo 1656, 1884; curo 1648, 1495\*, 1779\*; decerno 2037\*; edico 1848\*; efficio 1700; eo 1642; eo ventum est 1568 (2); evenit 2248\*; facio 1700; fieri potest 1700, (ut ne) 2035\*; fit 1700, 1745\*; flagito 1731\*; fore 1369, 1771\*; hoc copiae 1086\*; hortor 1371 c; huc tendere 1642; idcirco 1638, 1868\*; ideo 1465\*, 1642; impero 1648; impetro 1607\*; indico 1513; insto 1359; integrum est 1382; is 1696; ita *see s. v.*; longius quam 1678; magis est 1700; mando 1094; metuo 1652; modo 1706; mos est 1700; munus est 1648; negotium do 1457\*; operam do 1638; oro 1648, 1469\*; perinde 1547\*, 1707; persuadeo 1671 fin.\*; peto 1029 d, 1977\*; postulo 1648, 2063\*; potin' 1642, 1842\*; potius quam 1678, 1842\*; prae 1707 b; praecipio 1545\*; precor quæsoque 1099\*; pro, pro eo 1707 a, b; pronuntio 2030\*; prope est 2091, 2295\*; propterea 1603\*; proximum est 1648; quam, *see potius, &c.*; quando fuit 1029 d; relinquitur 1895; reliquum est 1721\*; restat 1441\*; rogo 1511, 1641\*; satin 1653; scio 1761; scribo 1818\*; sic, *see s. v.*; spatium habeo 1907\*; tam excors 1885\*; tantus 1696; tanti est 1192; tantum abest 1699, 1702, 1894\*; timeo 1652; valeo 2220 fin.\*; vide, *see s. v.*; viden 1761; vinco 1648; ultra quam 2182\*; volo 1648.

Utcumque '*in whatever manner*' 1697, 2290.

Uter, *interrog.* 1430 f: *uter eratis?* 1434: *ex duobus* 1491: *dependent* 1500<sup>+</sup>, 1585:

*velut* 1436<sup>+</sup>: *utrum est* 'which-  
ever it is' 1697:

*indefinite* 1578 (p. 484), 1581,  
1584.

*verba* 1581.

*utque*, *with plural verb* 1434: *two usually singular*: *utrumque* 1491 (p. 111): *utrumque* *frater* and *fratrum* 1493: *Utrumque* *et* *fratrum* 1583: *utrumque* *per* *utrumque* 1605<sup>+</sup>.

*Utervis* 1578 (p. 484), 1581, 1579<sup>+</sup>.

*Uti*, *after* *habe* 1505: *ut* 1500<sup>+</sup>: *utro-*  
*que* 1578: *posuisti* 1648: *utro* 1510  
fin.<sup>+</sup>: *utrumque* *utroque* *utro* 1513:  
*'ut'* 1480: *ut*: *see* U.

*Utiis* *seipulchre* 1473: *ad* *utiam*  
*rem* 1532 f<sup>+</sup>.

*Utiam*, *in* *utiles* 1592, 1572<sup>+</sup> fin.<sup>+</sup>

*Utique* 1589 f: *non* *utique* 1599 f:  
*ne* *utique* 1579<sup>+</sup>.

*Uter*, *with* *ut*, 1516: *with* *accus.*  
1513.

*Utere* *qui*, *with* *ut*, 1514.

*Uterque* *ut*, 1596, 1596, 1590 fin.

*Utrumque* *seus* 1517.

*Utrumque* 1585.

*Utrum*, *in*, *in* *independent question*  
1581: *in* *dependent question* 1580<sup>+</sup>,  
1580<sup>+</sup>: *utrum*, *neque* 1480<sup>+</sup>, 1584.

*Utriusque* *generis* 1545<sup>+</sup>: *ut* *of* *per*  
*'persons in general'* 1413.

*'Uter'* *i.e.* *'aut'* *ut*, 1576: *i.e.*  
*'utrumque'* *ut*, 1574.

*'Utriusque'* *expressed in Latin by* *ut*  
*ut*, 1504: *hinc* *ut*, 1511: *utrum*  
*ut*, 1597: *utrum* *ut*, 1598: *ut-*  
*que* *et* *utroque* *equum* 1534: *ut-*  
*que* *et* *utroque*.

*'utrumque utroque'* *See*, *utrumque* *pro-*  
*ferens* 1577: *utrumque* *compositum*  
1591: *utrumque* *utrumque* *utroque* *utroque*  
*perfectum* *et* *utroque* *utroque* *utroque*  
*utroque* 1598: *utroque* *utroque* 1598.

**Cambridge:**

PRINTED BY C. J. CLAY, M.A.

AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

# A CATALOGUE OF CLASSICAL WORKS,

PUBLISHED BY

**MACMILLAN AND CO.**

BEDFORD STREET, STRAND, LONDON.

---

- Æschylus.**—THE EUMENIDES. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation. By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- Aristotle.**—AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC. With Analysis, Notes, and Appendices. By E. M. COPE, late Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 14s.
- ARISTOTLE ON FALLACIES; OR, THE SOPHISTICAL ELENCHI.** With Translation and Notes by E. PUGH, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. 8s. 6d.
- Aristophanes.**—THE BIRDS. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s.
- Belcher.**—SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND EXAMINATION PAPERS IN LATIN GRAMMAR, to which is prefixed a Chapter on Analysis of Sentences. By the Rev. H. BELCHER, M.A., Assistant Master in King's College School, London. 18mo. 1s. 6d. Key, 1s. 6d.
- Blackie.**—GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By JOHN STEWART BLACKIE, Professor of Greek in the Univ. of Edinburgh. Fcp. 8vo. 2s. 6d.
- Cicero.**—THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION. With Introduction and Notes. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by JOHN E. B. MAYER, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Fourth Edition, revised. Fcp. 8vo. 5s.
- THE ORATIONS OF CICERO AGAINST CATILINA.** With Notes and an Introduction. From the German of KARL HALM, with additions by A. S. WILKINS, M.A., Owens College, Manchester. New Edition. Fcp. 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- THE ACADEMICA OF CICERO.** The Text revised and explained by JAMES REID, M.L., Assistant Tutor and late Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. Fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- Demosthenes.**—ON THE CROWN, to which is prefixed ÆSCHINES AGAINST CTESIPHON. The Greek Text with English Notes. By B. DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Fifth Edition. Fcp. 8vo. 5s.

**Ellis.**—PRACTICAL HINTS ON THE QUANTITATIVE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN, for the Use of Classical Teachers and Linguists. By A. J. ELLIS, B.A., F.R.S. Extra fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**Greenwood.**—THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR, including Accidence, Irregular Verbs, and Principles of Derivation and Composition; adapted to the System of Crude Forms. By J. G. GREENWOOD, Principal of Owens College, Manchester. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

**Hodgson.**—MYTHOLOGY FOR LATIN VERSIFICATION. A Brief Sketch of the Fables of the Ancients, prepared to be rendered into Latin Verse for Schools. By F. HODGSON, B.D., late Provost of Eton. New Edition, revised by F. C. HODGSON, M.A. 18mo. 3s.

**Homer's Odyssey.**—THE NARRATIVE OF ODYSSEUS. With a Commentary by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Part I. Book IX.—XII. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.

**Horace.**—THE WORKS OF HORACE, rendered into English Prose, with Introductions, Running Analysis, and Notes, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 4s. 6d.

THE ODES OF HORACE IN A METRICAL PARAPHRASE. By R. M. HOVENDEN, B.A., formerly of Trinity College, Cambridge. Extra fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**Juvenal.**—THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL. With a Commentary. By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Second Edition, enlarged. Vol. I. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d. Or Parts I. and II. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. each.

**Marshall.**—A TABLE OF IRREGULAR GREEK VERBS, classified according to the arrangement of Curtius' Greek Grammar. By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., Fellow and late Lecturer of Brasenose College, Oxford; one of the Masters in Clifton College. 8vo. cloth. New Edition. 1s.

**Mayor (John E. B.)**—FIRST GREEK READER. Edited after KARL HALM, with Corrections and large Additions by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. New Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**Mayor (Joseph B.)**—GREEK FOR BEGINNERS. By the Rev. J. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature in King's College, London. Part I., with Vocabulary, 1s. 6d. Parts II. and III., with Vocabulary and Index, 3s. 6d., complete in one vol. fcap. 8vo. cloth, 4s. 6d. New Edition.



**Nixon.**—**PARALLEL EXTRACTS** arranged for translation into English and Latin, with Notes on Idioms. By J. E. NIXON, M.A., Classical Lecturer, King's College, London. Part I.—Historical and Epistolary. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**Peile (John, M.A.)**—**AN INTRODUCTION TO GREEK AND LATIN ETYMOLOGY.** By JOHN PEILE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge. Formerly Teacher of Sanskrit in the University of Cambridge. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**Plato.**—**THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO.** Translated into English, with an Analysis and Notes, by J. L. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A. Third Edition, with Vigorous Portraits of Plato and Socrates, engraved by J. E. from an Antique Gem. 8mo. 4s. 6d.

**Plautus.**—**THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS.** With Notes, Prolegomena, and Emendations. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., formerly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. Edited by Professor GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., of the University of Glasgow. 8vo. 14s.

**Potts (Alex. W., M.A.)**—**HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.** By ALEX. W. POTTS, M.A., late Fellow of St John's College, Cambridge; Assistant Master in Rugby School; and Head Master of the Scotch College, Edinburgh. Third Edition, enlarged. Extra Cop. 8vo. 10s. 3s.

**Roby.**—**A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE,** from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., late Fellow of St John's College, Cambridge. In Two Parts. Part I. containing:—Book I. Sounds. Book II. Inflections. Book III. Word-formation. Appendices. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. Part II.—Syntax, Propositions, &c. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**Rust.**—**FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.** By the Rev. G. RUST, M.A. of Pembroke College, Oxford, Master of the Lower School, King's College, London. New Edition. 18mo. 7s. 6d.

**Sallust.**—**CAMI SALLUSTII CRISPI CATILINA ET JUGURTHA.** For Use in Schools. With copious Notes. By C. MERIVALE, B.D. New Edition, carefully revised and enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d. Or separately, 2s. 6d. each.

**Tacitus.**—**THE HISTORY OF TACITUS TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.** By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRICK, M.A. With Notes and a Map. New and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

**TACITUS, THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA OF.** A Revised Text, English Notes, and Mss. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRICK, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d. Or separately, 2s. each.

**THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA.** Translated into English by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. Maps and Notes. Extra fcp. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**Theophrastus.**—THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS. An English Translation from a Revised Text with Introduction and Notes. By R. C. JEBB, M.A., Public Orator of the University of Cambridge. Extra fcp. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

**Thring.**—Works by the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., Master of Uppingham School.

**A LATIN GRADUAL.** A First Latin Construing Book for Beginners. New Edition, enlarged, with Coloured Sentences. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**A MANUAL OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS.** Fcp. 1s. 6d.

**A CONSTRUING BOOK.** Fcp. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**Thucydides.**—THE SICILIAN EXPEDITION. Books VI. and VII. of Thucydides, with Notes. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Map. By the Rev. PERCIVAL FROST, late Fellow of St John's College, Cambridge. Fcp. 8vo. 5s.

**Virgil.**—THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE, with Notes, Introductions, Running Annotations, and an Index, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEITCH. Second Edition. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 4s. 6d.

**Wright.**—Works by J. WRIGHT, M.A., late Headmaster of Sutton Coldfield School.

**HELLENICA; OR, A HISTORY OF GREECE.** GREEK, as related by Diodorus and Thucydides; being a Greek Reading Book, with explanatory Notes, Critical and Historical. Third Edition, with a Vocabulary. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**A HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR; or, the Form and Use of Words in Latin,** with Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. 4s.

**THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME.** An Easy Narrative abridged from the First Book of Livy by the omission of 100 Passages; being a first Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes. Fifth Edition. Fcp. 8vo. 3s. With Vocabulary, 3s. 6d.

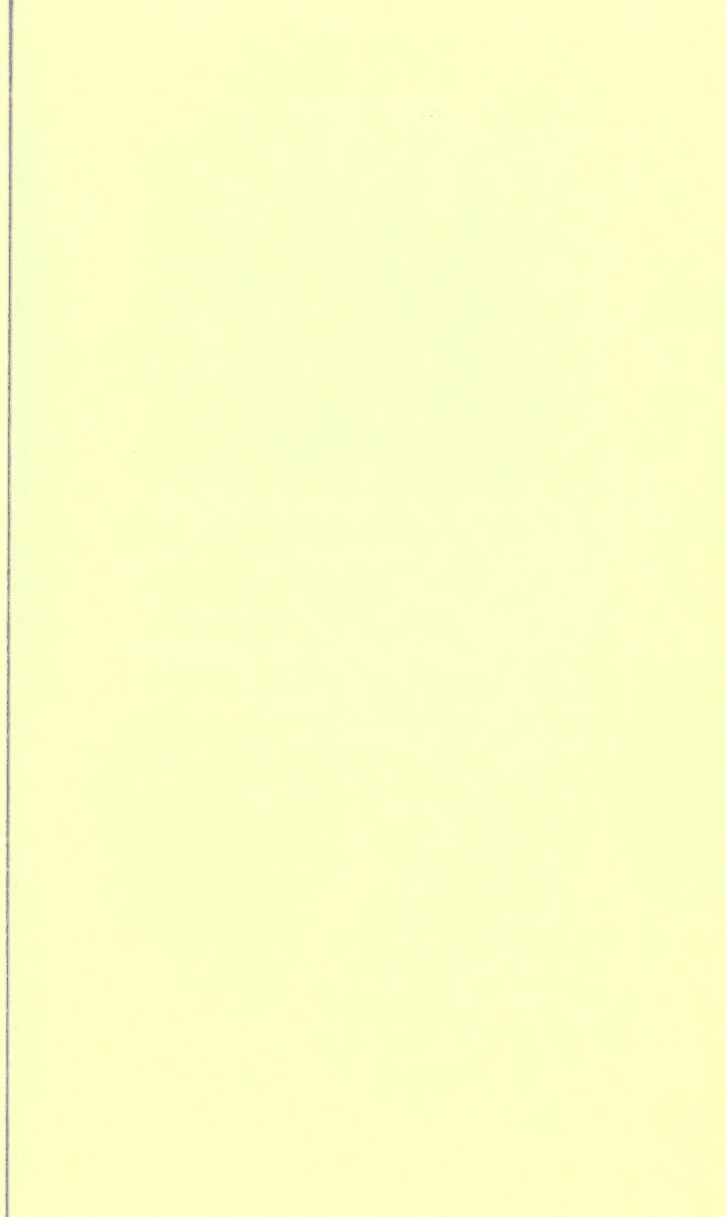
**FIRST LATIN STEPS; OR, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF LATIN LANGUAGE.** A SERIES OF EXAMPLES TO THE STUDY OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE. Crown 8vo. 5s.

**ATTIC PRIMER.** Arranged for the Use of Beginners. Extra fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

E  
E  
e  
a  
v  
ni  
ti  
ti  
is  
EI  
F  
U  
iv  
lic  
ot  
NF  
R  
ne









~~BINDING~~ SECT. MAY 22 1963

PA  
2079  
R63  
1376  
pt.2

Roby, Henry John  
A grammar of the Latin  
language from Plautus to  
Suetonius. 3d ed.

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

